













**DEWEY**  
**Decimal Classification®**



DEWEY

Decimal Classification  
and  
Relative Index

*Devised by*  
MELVIL DEWEY

*Edition 17*

Volume 1  
Introduction  
General Tables

FOREST PRESS, INC.  
OF  
LAKE PLACID CLUB EDUCATION FOUNDATION

LAKE PLACID CLUB  
NEW YORK 12948 U.S.A.

First Published in 1876

1885, 1911, 1913, 1915, 1919  
by Melvil Dewey  
1888, 1891, 1894, 1899  
by Library Bureau  
1922, 1927, 1932, 1942, 1952, 1958  
by Lake Placid Club Education Foundation  
1951, 1965  
by Forest Press, Inc.

**Dewey, Melvil**, 1851-1931.

Dewey decimal classification and relative index. Ed. 17. Lake Placid Club, N.Y., Forest Press, Inc. of Lake Placid Club Education Foundation, 1965.

2 v. (ix, 2153 p.) 26 cm.

CONTENTS.—v. 1. Introduction. General tables.—v. 2. Auxiliary tables. Relative index.

1. Classification, Decimal. I. Title.

Z696

025.43

THIS BOOK WAS COMPOSED, PRINTED AND BOUND  
IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA  
AT KINGSPORT PRESS, INC., KINGSPORT, TENNESSEE

# Contents

## Volume 1

Publisher's Foreword	1
Preface	3
Editor's Introduction	5
1. Book classification	5
2. Dewey Decimal Classification	7
2.1 History	7
2.2 Basic plan	8
2.21 Discipline	9
2.22 Hierarchy	11
2.3 Memory aids and synthesis of notation	13
2.4 Versatility and flexibility	15
2.5 Faults and virtues	15
3. How to use DC	18
3.1 Preliminaries	18
3.2 Analysis of a book	19
3.3 Selection of class number	20
3.31 Approach	20
3.32 Headings	21
3.33 Definitions and scope notes	21
3.34 Inclusion notes	22
3.35 Instruction notes	22
3.351 Optional provision	22
3.352 Use of more than one 0 in standard subdivisions	22
3.353 Synthesis of notation	22
3.353 1 Area notation	22
3.353 2 Division	23
3.354 Priorities of arrangement	24
3.355 Relocations	26
3.36 Cross references	26
3.37 Standard subdivisions	27
3.38 Subject not provided for	29
3.4 Compound and complex subjects	29
3.41 More than one subject	29
3.42 More than one aspect	30



## *Decimal Classification*

3.43	Centered headings	31
3.44	Applications	31
3.5	Reduction	31
3.6	Index	33
3.7	General suggestions	36
4.	Variations from recommended practice	38
4.1	Principle of usefulness	38
4.2	Officially recognized variations	38
4.21	Options	38
4.22	Optional alphabetical arrangement	39
4.23	Artificial digits	40
4.3	Unofficial variations	40
4.31	Attraction	40
4.32	Expansion	40
4.33	Alphabetical arrangement	41
4.34	Relocations	42
4.35	Standard subdivisions	42
4.36	Dropping digits	42
5.	Features of Edition 17	43
5.1	Subject integrity	43
5.11	Structure	44
5.12	Division by more than one principle	45
5.13	Relocation	45
5.2	Degree of expansion	52
5.3	Standard subdivisions and area table	54
5.4	Use outside United States	55
5.5	Index	56
5.6	Relation to Edition 16 and <i>DC6</i>	56
5.7	Spelling	57
6.	Toward Edition 18	58
7.	Acknowledgments	59
8.	Conclusion	61
Melvil Dewey's Introduction		63
Description		63
Origin and growth		63
Extent of use		64
What is the system?		65
Notation		66
Best known decimal form		66

## *Contents*

Relativ subject index	67
What relativ index includes	69
Tables	69
Coordination	71
New subjects	71
Choice and arrangement of heds	71
Sequence of allyd subjects	71
Cachtitles	72
Form distinctions	72
Minute clasing	73
Tentativ tables	74
Nemonics	74
Decimalism	76
Relativ location	77
Sizes on shelvs	79
Catalogs	79
Name catalog	79
Shelflist	79
Clas catalog	79
Dictionary catalog	80
Advantajes	81
Shelvs	81
Shelflist	81
Accession book	81
Pamflets	81
Sale duplicates	81
Charjing sistem	82
Subject references	82
Recataloging or reclassifying	82
Adaptability	82
Arabic numerals	83
Endowment of special departments	83
Summary	83
Sugjestions to uzers	84
Numeration	84
Plan of book	84
Familiarity with clasification	85
Subject of a book	85
Assyning clas numbers	86
Number of figures uzed in clas number	88

## *Decimal Classification*

Bilding numbers	89
Book numbers	90
Variations practicabl	91
Cautions	91
Letter or simbol notations for chanjes or aditions	93
Fiction	93
Juvenils	94
Biografy	94
Paralel libraries	95
Combining languaj and literature	95
Reference library	95
Contractions for specialists	96
Use of alfabet or cronology for final subdivisions	97
Broken order	97
Pro and con division of topics	98
Bibliografic modifications	99
Accretion syn +	100
Cupling syn –	100
Relation syn :	100
Form syn (0)	101
Universality syn ∞	101
Place syn (3)–(9)	101
Languaj syn =	101
Time syn “ ”	101
Jeneral points of view syn 00	101
A to Z	102
Sequence	102
Other uses	102
Bookstores	102
Offis files	102
Scraphooks	103
Index rerums	103
Topical indexes	105
Acknowledgejments	105
Future of D C	107
Summaries	109
General Tables	123

## **Volume 2**

Table of Standard Subdivisions	1255
Area Table	1263
Synthesis of Notation	1505
Abbreviations Used in the Index	1519
Relative Index	1521



## Publisher's Foreword

Agreeably to the plan announced when the 16th edition appeared in 1958, this 17th edition of the Dewey Decimal Classification (DC) is published on schedule in June 1965. In conformity with the same plans its preparation has respected "integrity of numbers" to the fullest extent compatible with "keeping pace with knowledge." More than its predecessors, too, it reflects not only the needs of libraries throughout the world, but also the increasingly universal scope of American libraries.

This is likewise the first edition of DC to reflect the consolidation of the editorial work in the same office with the application of the Classification to a large and important representation of current publications. The 4th to 6th, 11th and 12th editions were prepared in the New York State Library at Albany, where Melvil Dewey had gone in 1888 as State Librarian and whither he had transferred the library school from Columbia University, while the 7th to 10th editions were prepared at Lake Placid. But in 1927, in anticipation of an arrangement for printing DC numbers on Library of Congress catalog cards, the editorial office was moved to Washington and given space in the Library of Congress, with the motive, as expressed by Mr. Dewey of "extending still further the [Library's] already great services to the country at large."

The arrangement for printing DC numbers on the Library of Congress catalog cards became a reality in 1930 when the American Library Association established at the Library of Congress its ALA Office for DC Numbers on LC Cards, at the head of which was Mr. David J. Haykin, who was later to become the first editor of the 16th edition of DC. This Office was so successful (in three and a quarter years it added DC numbers to 102,282 cards) that in 1933 the Library of Congress took over the work which it has continued ever since as a self-supporting operation, part of the catalog card distribution activity.

Meanwhile the editorial work, pursued under the same roof though still directed by the Lake Placid Club Education Foundation (a nonprofit body to which Mr. Dewey had entrusted the DC in 1924), produced the 13th, 14th, 15th editions in 1932, 1942, 1951 respectively.

In 1953 the Library of Congress, under a contractual arrangement with the Foundation, undertook the preparation of the 16th edition of DC, and for this purpose took over the staff and files of the Editorial Office. Though carried on in separate offices, the editorial activity and the assignment of DC numbers to LC cards were thus united in the same organization.

## *Decimal Classification*

But its own experience convinced the Library of Congress that these two operations could be most effectively executed by a single staff. Accordingly, when the agreement between the Foundation and the Library was renewed in 1958 to cover the preparation of the 17th edition, it was planned that the Editorial Office and the DC Section of the Library's Subject Cataloging Division should be amalgamated. The consolidation, effected on November 24, 1958, gave birth to the present Decimal Classification Office and was announced by the Library as expected to result in the assignment of DC numbers "to a progressively larger portion of the titles for which the Library of Congress prints cards, and to produce future editions of the classification solidly rooted in daily experience in applying it to books." The 17th edition is the product of this new Office.

Increasingly in recent years those concerned with the preparation and publication of the DC have needed first hand information regarding the manner in which it is used abroad and the wants of its users there. To supply this information a Field Survey of the Dewey Decimal Classification Abroad was planned under the auspices of the American Library Association with assistance from the Asia Foundation, the Council on Library Resources and Forest Press. As reported in the Preface by Mr. Wright, the Survey became a reality in 1964. Its final report is now being written, and the major portion of its recommendations must await consideration in connection with the preparation of the 18th edition.

Still another development, during the period covered by the preparation of this edition, was intended to improve the responsiveness of the Classification to the needs of its users. In 1961 the Lake Placid Club Education Foundation delegated to its non-profit subsidiary, Forest Press (whose directors, serving without compensation, are drawn from activities supporting library work) substantial autonomy with respect to the publication of the DC.

The 17th edition reflects the collaborative work of many hands. In it the advisory contributions of the American Library Association, the (British) Library Association and the Catholic Library Association support the editorial activity of the Library of Congress and the publishing activity of the Lake Placid Club Education Foundation thru Forest Press. In his Introduction the Editor has named a number of individuals to whom this edition is indebted. To all of these, and to still others not named, Melvil Dewey gave a task—and with it a reward.

## Preface

In the preparation of this 17th edition of the Dewey Decimal Classification the editorial criteria that were adopted for the 16th edition have been largely continued. A moderate amount of change, hopefully not more than will be found acceptable in the majority of libraries, has been authorized to bring certain sections into line with modern thought. A classification that does not keep reasonably abreast of current thinking must in time die, but one that imposes on its users the tremendous costs of reclassification too recklessly will die also. The Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee hopes that this edition will be found to have avoided both extremes.

The provision of the new area table, which divorces the geographical subdivision of all classes from the confining limits of history, is perhaps the most far-reaching change in this new edition; it is hoped that it will greatly simplify the process of number-building thruout the schedules. The revision of the schedule of standard subdivisions both adds to the consistency of the schedule itself and provides an opportunity to make more consistent the application of these numbers under various subjects. Other changes made in the main schedules have served to update some of the more obsolescent classes.

During the year 1964 Miss Sarah K. Vann, assisted by Miss Pauline A. Seely, visited 23 countries thruout the world to discuss with librarians in the field the deficiencies of the Dewey Decimal Classification that have been discovered by users outside the United States. A number of the suggestions received from these sources had already been incorporated into the new edition; most of them, because of the advanced state of the editorial work when the survey was undertaken, will have to await the preparation of the 18th edition. The Committee is deeply appreciative of the work of the two surveyors and the many librarians who gave liberally of their time and thought in making the classification a better instrument for libraries everywhere.

Classification shares with other human productions the attribute of imperfection. The Committee hopes that this edition will be found bet-



## *Decimal Classification*

ter than its predecessors. It also hopes that future editions will be better still.

Members of the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee during the preparation of this edition have been Elizabeth C. Borden, Edwin B. Colburn, Godfrey Dewey, Virginia Drewry, Carlyle J. Frarey, Bertha M. Frick, Harriet D. MacPherson, Lucile M. Morsch, Esther J. Piercy, Joseph W. Rogers, Pauline A. Seely, Marietta Daniels Shepard, and Wyllis E. Wright.

Wyllis E. Wright

CHAIRMAN, DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION  
EDITORIAL POLICY COMMITTEE

# Editor's Introduction

## 1. Book classification

A major objective of libraries is to see that optimum use is made of their collections, to bring the right reader to each book and the right book to each reader. As an aid to the achievement of this purpose, nearly all libraries find it helpful, indeed necessary, to impose upon their books and other materials one or more forms of subject control.

One such form is classification. To classify a collection of objects or concepts is to place together in "classes" those objects or concepts which have certain characteristics in common and to separate from them the objects or concepts which do not have those characteristics. For instance, one might classify a collection of postage stamps according to countries of issue, each of which would be a separate class, e.g., stamps issued by Canada, by Italy, by Japan. Or one might choose another principle as the basis of division: color, size, shape, subject pictured, or for that matter any other characteristic that has significance for the utilization and enjoyment of a specific collection. If division were by country of issue, one might then classify the stamps of each country by monetary denomination, each of which would be a subclass, e.g., one-cent, two-cent, five-cent, one-dollar stamps issued by Canada; and each of these might then be further separated into subsubclasses according to date of issue.

A system of "notation," while not an essential part of a classification system, is a major convenience, (1) in designating briefly the different classes and subclasses, especially if there are a great many of them in a complex pattern of relationships, (2) in identifying the objects that belong in the various classes, and (3) in determining, for some categories of objects, the slots, bins, envelopes, or shelves where they belong according to a desired and usually systematic sequence.

Libraries classify their "books" or "works"—in this introduction, either term is used to mean all printed and written forms, sound recordings, films, slides, pictures, prints, globes, and other mediums of information and communication collected by libraries and related institutions—according to various kinds of characteristics. For example, because of

## *Decimal Classification*

differing problems of shelving, handling, and giving service, they usually separate recordings, films, atlases, newspapers, and the like from bound volumes of more or less conventional size; in this case the characteristic of division is physical form. Libraries of rare books often classify their works according to date and place of publication. Another common characteristic upon which division is based is specific kind of use, so that reference books, children's books, books in specific languages, books for popular reading collections, books of current interest may be set aside in separate groups. But most commonly, either overall or within such categories as those named above, libraries classify books according to subject. Such an arrangement is most useful for maximum retrieval of the kind of information wanted by the majority of patrons and the librarians serving them.

Like the amateur stamp collector, the librarian may develop his own system of subject classification for the book collection for which he is responsible, catering to the special needs of its users. In the past a good many librarians did just this, and some, usually in special libraries, still do. (Numerous public libraries have recently organized their collections of current popular interest in somewhat heterogeneous groups according to a "reader-interest" arrangement, rearranging titles and developing new categories as interests of patrons shift. Practical as this has proved to be, it is not classification by *subject*.) However, the development of an integrated plan that will provide systematically for the tens and hundreds of thousands of subjects on which books are and may be written in this age of multiversity and specialization is no part-time occupation or avocation. It requires the intense efforts of specialists in librarianship, in subject classification, and in the countless disciplines of which the world of knowledge is composed, from religion to mathematics to musicology to public administration to aeronautical engineering. For this reason, librarians have generally found it advantageous to follow, with local adaptations where necessary to meet local needs, one or another of the commonly used book classification systems, among the best known of which are Bliss's Bibliographic Classification, Ranganathan's Colon Classification, Dewey's Decimal Classification, Cutter's Expansive Classification, the Library of Congress Classification, Brown's Subject Classification, and the Universal Decimal Classification.

## 2. Dewey Decimal Classification

Of all these, Dewey's Decimal Classification—or, more commonly, the Dewey Decimal Classification, or merely the Decimal Classification, or the DDC or the DC; we shall call it all of these in this introduction—is the oldest and most widely used. In the United States it is the system followed by perhaps 90% of all libraries, including nearly all public libraries, and school libraries virtually without exception; in other English-speaking countries and countries now or formerly part of the British Commonwealth it is followed by a majority of libraries; elsewhere, it has adherents in almost every nation on the globe. It has been translated, with or without abridgment, expansion, adaptation, into scores of languages, from Spanish, Danish, and Turkish to Japanese, Sinhalese, and Portuguese.

**2.1 History** Devised by Melvil Dewey for the Amherst College Library, it first appeared, anonymously, in 1876 as *A Classification and Subject Index for Cataloguing and Arranging the Books and Pamphlets of a Library*. The second edition, "revised and greatly enlarged," appeared in 1885, carrying Dewey's name and the title *Decimal Classification and Relative Index*. Between 1888 and 1959 came fourteen more full editions and eight abridgments. From the beginning DC's acceptance by the library profession and others was widespread and rapid, and, even today, for every library that abandons it for another system, many new ones adopt it and old ones turn to it. In 1930, because of popular demand, the Library of Congress, which uses its own classification system, nevertheless set up an office solely for the purpose of assigning centrally and printing on its widely distributed catalog cards DC numbers for the majority of titles that American libraries using the system might be expected to acquire. At present the system is used, in one form or another, by such varied current services as the American Library Association's *Booklist*; the H. W. Wilson Company's *Standard Catalog Series*, *Book Review Digest*, and catalog cards; the R. R. Bowker Company's *Publishers' Weekly*, *American Book Publishing Record*, and *Libros en Venta*; the *British National Bibliography* and the *Indian National Bibliography*. Titles in thousands of reading lists, book guides, and bibliographies have been arranged or their subjects identified by the Dewey Decimal Classification.

In 1895 the forerunner of today's International Federation for Documentation (FID), by agreement with Melvil Dewey as to concordance

## *Decimal Classification*

and bibliographic use, adopted the Decimal Classification as the basis for its international subject index; this grew into the *Classification Décimale*, otherwise known as the Brussels Classification or, now, as the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC), which has itself been translated into many languages. Differences between DDC and UDC have appeared in the intervening years, due in part to the more complex requirements of a bibliographic classification, but, even with the substantial revisions now under consideration for the UDC, the foundation of the two remains recognizably the same.

**2.2 Basic plan** The Dewey Decimal Classification arranges all knowledge as represented by books within ten "classes" numbered 0, 1, 2, thru 9. Class 0 is used for works like general newspapers and encyclopedias that are on many subjects from many points of view, and also for certain specialized disciplines that deal with knowledge generally, such as information theory, library science, and journalism. Classes 1-9 consist each of a major discipline or group of related disciplines, and together with class 0 they embrace the whole of human knowledge and intellectual endeavor. Thus, class 1 consists of philosophy and related disciplines, class 2 of religion, class 3 of the social sciences, class 5 of the pure sciences, class 6 of the applied sciences. The notation used to designate each class consists of 100 three-digit numbers, e.g., 000-099 for generalities, 300-399 for social sciences, 600-699 for applied sciences. Each class is divided into ten subclasses, or "divisions," with the first division being devoted to general works on the entire class. Thus, 600-609 is given over to general works on the applied sciences, 610-619 to the medical sciences, 620-629 to engineering and allied operations, 630-639 to agriculture and agricultural industries, 640-649 to domestic arts and sciences. Again, each division is separated into ten subsubclasses, or "sections," with the first section devoted to general works on the entire division. Thus, 630 is assigned to agriculture and agricultural industries in general, 631 to farming activities, 632 to plant diseases and pests and their control, 633 to production of field crops, 636 to livestock and domestic animals. The system permits further subdivision to any degree desired, with a continued decimal notation, which consists of the addition, following any set of three digits from 000 to 999, of a decimal point and as many more digits as may be required. Thus, 631 Farming is divided into 631.2 for farm structures, 631.3 for farm tools, machinery, appliances, 631.5 for crop production, and others; 631.5 is further divided into 631.51 for tillage, 631.53 for propagation methods, 631.55 for harvesting, and others.

## *Editor's introduction*

No notation is ever less than three digits, zero (0) being used with its normal arithmetical value to fill vacant digital positions. Hence the notation for class 6 Applied sciences is 600.

Preceding the full classification "tables" or "schedules"—this introduction uses both terms—are three summaries, showing the ten classes, the 100 divisions, and the almost 1000 sections. These start on page 109.

Every book acquired by a library may be assigned to one of the classes, divisions, sections, or sub-(to whatever degree)-sections provided by the tables of the DDC, and may be identified as belonging to its specific class by use of the appropriate notation. (From this point forward, the word "class" will be used to refer to a subdivision of any degree; the 10 major classes will be called "major" or "main" classes.) The notation, or "number," designates the book's class; when written on the book and on the cards that describe the book, it provides a shorthand identification of the book's subject, and determines its relative position within the library's entire collection and within the appropriate discipline.

This class number and the book number used by most libraries together constitute the call number, which is unique for each book and distinguishes it from all others in the library. The book number usually is based on authorship, but may, as in biography, be based on alphabetical subarrangement of individual subjects within the class notation. For the use and construction of book numbers the reader should consult Bertha R. Barden's *Book Numbers* (Chicago, American Library Association, 1937). Most libraries follow the Cutter or Cutter-Sanborn alphabetic-order tables, or the Library of Congress author numbers. A special book number arrangement for works by and about William Shakespeare, which may be adapted for use with any specific author, appears in the DC tables that follow, under class 822.33. Other systems frequently used for arrangement within classes are by authors' surnames spelled out, by initials of authors' surnames, and by dates of publication.

A class is not necessarily limited to a specific subject. Altho many subjects have their own numbers, e.g., representative democracy as a political entity 321.8, many other specific notations denote groups or collections of specific subjects, e.g., aristocracy, oligarchy, theocracy, plutocracy as political entities all 321.5. The extent to which the system provides specific classes for specific subjects is explained in section 5.2 of this introduction.

**2.21 DISCIPLINE** The concept of "discipline," or field of specialization, is basic to an understanding of Dewey's system. The primary basis

## *Decimal Classification*

for DDC arrangement and development is by discipline, while subject, strictly speaking, is secondary. There is no one place for any subject in itself; a subject may appear in any or all of the disciplines. No class can be said to cover the scope of marriage, or water, or tomatoes, or Brazil; in common parlance, there is no single number for any of these concepts or subjects. A work on marriage belongs in 301 if it deals with the sociological aspects of the subject, in 155 if the psychological, in 173 if the ethical, in 234 or 265, depending on the aspect, if the sacramental (Christian), in 296 if Jewish and 297 if Islamic; in 390 if it deals with marriage customs, in 613 if hygiene; in 700 or 800 if it deals with marriage as a subject of art or literature (*belles-lettres*). Similarly, a work on water may fall in one of many disciplines: metaphysics, religion, economics, commerce, physics, chemistry, geology, oceanography, meteorology, history, and various others. Tomatoes may fall under economics, botany, horticulture, cookery, the art of painting, and elsewhere. Brazil's geography goes in 918, its general history in 981, its social situation in 309, its political situation in 320; and Brazil may turn up as an area concept under any discipline, such as arts of Brazil, languages of Brazil, paleozoology of Brazil.

No other feature of the DDC is more basic than this: that it splits subjects by discipline. This becomes quite obvious when one consults the index, which appears in volume 2. Here, under each subject, will be found the places to class it according to its "aspects," that is, the disciplines under which it may fall. Two examples will suffice here, one simple and one complex:

Gambling	
customs	394.3
ethics	175.9
mathematics	519.1
recreation	795.01
Metals	
chemistry	546.3
geology	
general works	553.1
mineralogy	549.23-.25
industries	
extractive	
metallurgy	
economics	338.47+
technology	669
mining	
economics	338.27+
technology	622.34

### *Editor's introduction*

---

manufacturing	
economics	338.47+
technology	671
properties	
chemistry	546.3
engineering	620.16
metallography	669.95

**2.22 HIERARCHY** The system is hierarchical both as to disciplinary and subject relationships and, with certain minor exceptions, as to notation.

**2.221** Hierarchy in notation means that, for the most part, each successive division of the discipline or subject corresponds to a lengthening of the significant notation by one digit, e.g.,

600	Applied sciences
630	Agriculture and agricultural industries
631	Farming
631.5	Crop production
631.58	Special cultivation methods
631.587	Irrigation farming
631.587 2	By furrow system

The reader will observe that "600" is main class 6 plus two zeroes to fill out the three-digit number, and "630" is division 63 plus one such zero. He will also observe the space between the sixth and seventh digits of the last number; this space is not a basic part of the notation, but, in this book for ease in reading, is left between each successive set of three digits after the decimal point.

The digit 0 is used to indicate a different basis for division of the discipline or subject represented by the digits preceding the 0, e.g.,

500	Pure sciences
550	Earth sciences
551	Physical and dynamic geology
551.4	Geomorphology
551.46	Oceans and sea waters
551.460	[Indicates special basis for division]
551.460 1	Composition and properties of sea water
551.460 9	Special oceanographic forms
551.461	North Atlantic Ocean
551.462	Mediterranean and Black Seas



## Decimal Classification

Here the reader will observe that 551.460 1-.460 9 are used for topical (or "problem") subdivisions of the subject oceans and sea waters *in general*, and 551.461-.469 are used for specific oceans and seas. 0 is never used as a terminating digit following the decimal point; 551.460 is not itself used and has no meaning.

Sometimes, it will be found, there is a step in the successive divisions of the discipline or subject for which a position in the lengthening digital notation is not available. Such steps are shown in the tables by spans of numbers; these are called "centered headings." For example, 631-632 deals with general principles of agriculture, 633-635 with production of specific crops, 636-638 with animal husbandry. Each of these major subdivisions of 630 is without the possibility of digital expression in the notation, and is shown in the tables, therefore, by a centered heading, e.g.:

---

►	633-635 Production of specific crops
633	Field crops
.1	Cereal grains
.11	Wheat

In a few instances the indention is "irregular," that is, the notation is not hierarchically expressive. For example, in 583-584 there are scores of botanical orders, all equal in subject value, represented by numbers varying in length from four to six digits. The tables show the equality of subject value by printing all the headings at the same indention. Similar situations exist among the books of the Bible in 222-229, among the counties under some U.S. states in the area table, and at a few other places.

**2.222** Hierarchy in disciplinary and subject relationships means, for example, that whatever applies to or is true of 600 applies to or is true of *all* its subdivisions, what applies to 630 applies to all *its* subdivisions, what applies to the span 631-632 applies to all its subdivisions, what applies to 631 applies to all its subdivisions, on to the finest subdivision. Hence the note under 631.2 Farm structures, "Description, maintenance, use and place in farming," applies to each subdivision: to 631.21 Farmhouses, to 631.23 Granaries, silos, elevators, to 631.27 Fences, walls, hedges, and all the others. Similarly, the instruction under 631-632 General principles, "Class general principles applied to specific crops in 633-635," applies to every part of 631-632; consequently, harvesting corn

should be placed not in 631.55 Harvesting but in 633.15 Corn, and damage to cherry trees from hail not in 632.14 but in 634.23. (By the principle of hierarchy, "in 634.23" means in that number or a subdivision thereof, as will be shown in section 2.33.)

**2.3 Memory aids and synthesis of notation** We have said in section 1 that notation is not an essential part of a classification system. However, arrangement and manipulation of a system without notation would be most difficult and awkward, and it is, in fact, Dewey's notation system rather than any theoretical excellence of his arrangement and development of the world of knowledge that has been largely responsible for the widespread acceptance and usage of his Decimal Classification. The notation is simple, consisting only of ten digits and a decimal point, is almost universally understood, and lends itself readily to subject synthesis with the benefit of numerous memory aids, or, as Dewey called them, *mnemonics*.

**2.31** Most notable memory aid is the constant repetition of a standard pattern of areal arrangement. In nearly all areal developments, the digits 44, for instance, stand for France, 45 for Italy, 46 for Spain, 52 for Japan, 73 for United States. General history is class 9 (or 900 with two zeroes filling in the empty spaces), and it follows that 944 is general history of France, 945 of Italy, 946 of Spain, 952 of Japan, 973 of United States; general geography is division 91 (or 910 with the empty space filled), and it follows that (with a decimal point following the third digit) 914.4 is general geography of France, 914.5 of Italy, 917.3 of United States; international relations is 327, and 327.44 is international relations of France, 327.73 of United States, and even 327.440 73 international relations between France and United States; distribution of precipitation is 551.577 2, distribution of precipitation in France 551.577 244. The "area table" appears in volume 2 on page 1263.

**2.32** Another common repetition is that of the arrangement of languages in class 4. Instead of a more or less systematic sequence by location on the surface of the earth like the area table, this sequence emphasizes, by bringing forward and assigning short notation, those languages, races, cultures most likely, as it seemed to Dewey in 1876, to be emphasized in American libraries; in 1965, with many values changed, we may regret that it does less well by Russian (917) than by Provençal (49), Latin (7), and Greek (8), but the classifier will find that it is not invariably followed to the hilt, so that in some sequences Russian does manage to fare better than it does under linguistics, e.g., general

## *Decimal Classification*

periodicals in Russian 057.1, in Provençal 054.91, in Latin 059.7. The reader will observe a degree of repetition and memory pattern between the language sequence and that for European countries in the areal arrangement: 2 English (and Anglo-Saxon), 3 German (and Germanic), 4 French (and related), 5 Italian (and related), 6 Spanish, 69 Portuguese, compared with 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 469 for England (and Wales), Germany (and other central European countries), France, Italy, Spain, Portugal, respectively. In most occurrences of the language sequence 1 is used for either United States or United States and Canadian. Thus, encyclopedias are 030 (03 plus a zero to fill in), and United States and Canadian English-language encyclopedias are 031, other English-language 032, Portuguese 036.9; literature (*belles-lettres*) is 800 (8 plus two zeroes), and American literature is 810 (81 plus one zero), other English-language 820, Portuguese 869.

2.33 Many other patterns appear in full development at one place with repetition by analogy at other places. To name but a few, each book of the Bible is given the same development as the Bible as a whole ("divided like" 220.1-220.9); each language is given the same development as English ("divided like" 421-428); each agricultural crop is given the same development as the general principles in 631-632, so that damage to cherry trees from hail (cited in section 2.22) does, indeed, go not in 634.23 itself but in a subdivision based on the division of 634.23 like 632.14. In fact, some topics, among them bibliographies and catalogs of specific subjects in 016 and libraries devoted to specific subjects in 026, are given the same development as the whole classification, e.g., bibliography of applied sciences 016.6, of agriculture and agricultural industries 016.63, of irrigation farming 016.631 587.

2.34 Still another patterned repetition is that of the "standard subdivisions," the table of which appears on page 1255. Virtually any subject or discipline may be presented in various forms: as a synopsis or outline, as a periodical, as a collection of writings, in tables, in illustrations. Similarly, most subjects may have certain modes of treatment in common: theory, technique, study and teaching, history. These common forms and modes are known collectively as the "standard subdivisions," and may be applied to any class to which they are appropriate. The notation consists of two or more digits, of which the first is zero, e.g., 05 Serial publications, and may be added to any DC notation taken or derived from the main tables, e.g., serials on the applied sciences 605 (class 6, without the two zeroes that fill empty spaces in 600, plus

standard subdivision 05), serials on agriculture and agricultural industries 630.5 (division 63, without the zero that fills an empty space in 630, plus 05, with a decimal point following the third digit), serials on farming 631.05, on crop production 631.505, on harvesting 631.550 5.

**2.4 Versatility and flexibility** A valuable feature of the DC notation, not shared by some of the other commonly used classification systems, is its adaptability to the needs of libraries of different sizes and natures. The DC can be used equally well for broad classification and for close. For example, a small library or a large one with only a few titles on the subject can class the production of field crops in 633 without subdivision. A somewhat larger library can class general works in 633, works on production of cereal crops in 633.1, of forage crops in 633.2, and so on. A library with a still larger collection can divide its books into such detail as it requires. As any library's collection increases in size, it can differentiate its books to a finer and finer degree of specificity simply by adding further digits to the notation. A work on damage to cherry trees from hail can be placed in 634, 634.2, 634.23, 634.239, 634.239 1, 634.239 14, depending on the degree of closeness in classification required. The full edition of the DDC may be used by general libraries of any size, from the largest, which may follow it in full detail at least in some subjects, to the smallest, which may reduce ("cut back") any or all schedules to the degree considered desirable. The abridged edition supplies reduction on a ready-made basis and is convenient for small libraries to use on that account, but, except at its own level, it does not allow for judicious decision on what schedules to reduce and how far to reduce them to meet specific local needs.

**2.5 Faults and virtues** The faults inherent in the DDC are many. No serious student of classification since 1876 has failed to note them, and numerous critics have arisen to attack the system because of them. Among the more important are: (1) its weaknesses in overall arrangement of the world of knowledge, separating general history from social sciences, language from literature, political science from public administration and law, economics from commerce, and others; (2) its failure to assemble at one point all that a student or reader may want on a topic; (3) its preoccupation with decimal notation and its tailoring of subject relationships to the rule of ten. Brief comment on each of these criticisms follows.

**2.51** The overall arrangement does not necessarily follow theoretical or logical concepts, nor did Dewey intend it to do so. DDC's aim was and is

## *Decimal Classification*

to provide a practical system for storage and retrieval of books. Consistency it must have, but logic not necessarily; for example, class 3, comprising 300–399, must be consistent in containing only what its heading “The social sciences” says it contains, but the illogic of separating political science from law by the interposition of economics is of less consequence. As to language and literature, it may be argued that, while colleges teach them together, and no doubt professors would find it convenient to find the two together on library shelves, language has no theoretical affinity with literature, is in fact used by all disciplines, is a basic tool of communication, and therefore falls with a certain reasonableness between social and pure sciences. In any event, no library of any size arranges all classes in one grand sequence 000–999, not even the Library of Congress, which devised its own classification system to meet its own unique requirements.

2.52 No system of classification can assemble at one point all that each student or reader may want on the topic of his current interest, because no two students or readers are alike. And no linear system of classification can arrange topics in a schedule or books on the shelves so as to display every point of view and all practical and theoretical relationships.

2.53 If notation is one of the DC’s weaknesses, it is also its greatest strength. Its flexibility and memorability have already been mentioned; means for coping with its occasionally extreme length will be dealt with in section 5.2. Dewey was never as fascinated by the number 10 as his critics would lead one to think; he was chiefly concerned with practicality; and his successors have devised ways that he did not require to work around the limitations of but ten different notational symbols.

2.54 In short, the DDC has been criticized in large part for not being what it does not set out to be: a detailed fully logical system for classified catalogs and classified bibliographies, with specific separate provision for every minute topic on which books, if not also reports and articles, have been or are likely to be written.

As W. C. B. Sayers says, in his *A Manual of Classification for Librarians and Bibliographers* (London, Grafton, 1959, p. 125):

No one now rushes to defend the D. C. on the grounds of the modernity of its order or the brevity of its notation. The curious fact remains that more and more libraries throughout the world continue to use it, many of them modifying it; somehow it works. We should fail in our appreciation of services rendered if we did not say that a scheme which has survived for eighty years in ever-growing currency in spite

### *Editor's introduction*

of merited criticism must have virtues which in practice outweigh our theoretical objections. These are its accessibility and the ease with which it may be applied in whole or in part to collections of books and other material of any size, and expanded as these collections grow. Even if the order of the main classes and of some divisions is unacceptable to many minds, there is in ordinary general library practice no obvious necessity for an optimum order, although such an order is in some way necessary to the ideal scheme, which should be one of logical classes in logical relations.

### 3. How to use DC

To the beginner, whether student or practitioner, a first view of the Dewey Decimal Classification may be somewhat intimidating; it is the purpose of this, the practical part of the introduction, to lay open DDC's fundamental simplicity by presenting advice on how to use it to class a book or classify a library. What follows is intentionally didactic in form.

**3.1 Preliminaries** Before you try to use it, acquaint yourself with the system. Study the three main summaries preceding the general tables. Learn the ten main classes, and look thru the sequence of divisions and sections. Then leaf thru the tables. Observe the many summaries to specific schedules. Knowledge of the pattern will come rapidly with use, and especially so if the tables rather than the index are consulted first in classifying. Notice the effect of the principle of hierarchy: Each entry except the ten main classes is a part of and governed by every entry superior to it. To understand the full meaning and force of 631.587 2, you must view it as a part of 631.587, which, in turn, is a part of 631.58, which is a part of 631.5, which is a part of 631, which is a part of 631-632, which is a part of 630, which is a part of 600. (This is known colloquially in the Decimal Classification Office as the "drip" principle: the qualities of each superior entry "drip" to those below it.)

Do not fail to look thru the special tables of standard subdivisions and areas, both in volume 2.

Be sure also to observe the special nature of main classes 8 and 0. In class 8, subject is disregarded for works of belles-lettres, e.g., a play about Julius Caesar and Roman history, whether by Shakespeare or an amateur, is a piece of imaginative literature, good, bad, or indifferent, and belongs in the appropriate part of 800 instead of under history or biography. Arrangement of belles-lettres is first by the discipline belles-lettres, then by original language, then by form, then by period of composition (but note that literature itself may be a subject). In class 0, general encyclopedias (030), periodicals (050), newspapers (071-079), collections and anthologies (080), and general publications of general societies (060-068) have no specific subject and form part of no one discipline; the most significant thing about them, after their generality, is their respective forms. Arrangement of generalities is first by form, then by language or place as the tables provide. In all other classes (including 000-029, 069, 070.1-9, 090) arrangement is first by most specific discipline and most

specific subject under it, then by areal specification of the subject if the tables permit, then by temporal specification if the tables permit, then by form of presentation.

**3.2 Analysis of a book** Before you can fit a book into the system, or "class" it, you must know exactly what its subject is, and from what point of view and in what form that subject is treated. To discover this is not always easy:

Sometimes the *title* indicates what the book is about; however, it is often misleading, and some further method should always be used as a check.

The *table of contents* is usually an excellent guide.

If there is no table of contents, *chapter headings* and *marginal notes* are likely to give a good indication of the contents. Clues may also be provided by bibliographies and lists of sources used by the author.

It is always wise to scan the *preface* for the author's point of view, even if it merely verifies a decision already based on some other aid.

If the sources named above prove unsatisfactory, a careful examination of the *text* may be necessary.

If the subject is complex or unfamiliar to you, you may have to go to external sources. Information regarding the subject of the book may be obtained from bibliographies, catalogs, biographical dictionaries, histories of literature, encyclopedias, reviews, and other *reference books*.

Subject *experts* should be consulted when all other methods fail, and sometimes for verification of a tentative decision. But do not let the subject experts who are not also book classification experts occupy your time telling you how to remake the classification tables; what you need from them is assistance in placing given books on difficult subjects within an existing scheme.

Note well that many books are on two or three or many subjects, considered separately or in their interrelationships; and that many books are on two or more aspects of one or more subjects, that is, on a subject or subjects within two or several disciplines, e.g., on both the economics and the technology of the textile manufacturing industry, or on both nuclear physics and nuclear engineering, or on both architectural design and construction principles of dwelling houses, or on the sociological, ethical, religious aspects of divorce. Note, too, the current trend toward interdisciplinary studies in depth, particularly in the social sciences. To become a good classifier, it is most important that you analyze each book carefully, not only to ascertain its subject or subjects but also to determine to what extent it crosses traditional lines of study.



## *Decimal Classification*

**3.3 Selection of class number** Before becoming involved in the application of the tables to such compound and complex subjects as those just mentioned, we shall consider the procedures for classing a book on one subject in one discipline.

**3.31 APPROACH** Having determined the book's subject, and the point of view from which the subject is treated, you are ready to class it. There are two basic approaches to the classification tables: direct, and thru the index. Beginners will usually find the latter approach speedier, but it is not recommended because it delays the process of becoming fully acquainted with the system. Note that, whether you are beginner or expert, you must not and, in fact, you cannot class directly from the index. The index provides leads to the tables but is not exhaustive and can never be a substitute for them. In any event, if your approach in a given situation is thru the index, find first the subject and then look under it for the proper aspect. If, for example, your book is on metals, you will find under "Metals" various aspects, most with subaspects and subsubaspects. Finding the one that characterizes your book, you can then turn to the correct part of the tables and analyze the specific number that appears to fit. The better approach is to go direct to the tables, using the index if necessary to locate the proper discipline; only when you are lost in the tables is it recommended that you turn to the index for your initial subject lead-in. For more detailed information on use of the index, see section 3.6.

If your approach is direct, first determine into which of the ten major classes the book falls. If the subject is metals, is it the science of metals (class 5), the technology (class 6), the economics (class 3), artistic work in or on metals (class 7), or even metals in the Bible (class 2)? Having chosen the proper major class, then, as if there were no other, determine into which of its divisions the book falls. If the subject is metal technology, is it metals as engineering materials (division 62), mining of metals (also 62), treatment (66), fabrication (67), metals in hardware (68), in building (69)? Then in the same way determine the proper section, subsection, and subsubsection, until you have come to the most specific head (used by your library) that will encompass the subject of the book. Even if that head is less specific than the subject of the book, you have arrived at the right place; possibly a future expansion will give you an even more detailed number; for example, a book on education of royalty belongs under 371.96, even tho the head encompasses other topics

## *Editor's introduction*

as well. At each stop on the way look carefully at the notes and directions, making certain that you have not followed a false trail. Do not depend solely on the main or any of the 240 special summaries; they exist only to speed you to tentative decisions and lack the fine distinctions that must be considered before any decision is final.

If you know the tables well or if you come to them via the index, you may start at once with a specific number. In that case it is most important that you go up the ladder, testing at each level to see if the particular subject of your book belongs within the concept named and described. Whether you go up or down, analyze every step, including centered headings, which are readily spotted by the inch-long lines preceding them and the indicators adjacent to them. Read every heading, note, and cross reference carefully.

**3.32 HEADINGS** Each heading consists of a word or phrase so inclusive that it covers all subordinate topics and entries. The actual wording may be incomplete, because the heading must be read as part of the larger group that includes it, e.g., in 440 "French, Provençal, Catalan" means those languages, but in 840 the same heading means those literatures; in 336.294 2 "On persons" means incidence (336.294) of taxation (336.2) on persons.

**3.33 DEFINITIONS AND SCOPE NOTES** In some instances a heading requires, for complete understanding, the qualifications stated in the note following, e.g., 336.274 Licenses: "To engage in specific acts, businesses, professions." Others are followed by definitions, e.g., 330 Economics: "The science that deals with production, distribution, consumption of wealth." (Observe that this definition, and the one at 300 The social sciences, "The sciences that deal with social activities and institutions," rule out home economics as a subdivision of 330; the latter is, in fact, an applied science, is defined as "Care of household, family, person," and belongs in 640.) When no definition is given, the term is understood to be used as delimited by its subdivisions, or as defined in Webster's *Third New International Dictionary* or in other general unabridged dictionaries of the English language. Still other headings are followed by notes enumerating specific qualifications applicable to the subject and its subdivisions, e.g., 631.2 Farm structures: "Description, maintenance, use and place in farming" of farmhouses (631.21), barns (631.22), and so on, as distinct from "design and construction" (725-728) of the same buildings (728.67, 728.9). Still others are followed by notes stating the "scope," that is, subordinate qualifications not obviously part of the

## Decimal Classification

heading, that "drip" down thru the subdivisions, e.g., 362.2 welfare services to the mentally ill, "Scope: psychiatric social work," a concept that applies to each subdivision of the number.

**3.34 INCLUSION NOTES** Notes beginning "Including" do *not* "drip"; they are enumerations of subordinate topics not obviously part of the heading on which there is as yet insufficient literature to justify separate provision. For example, 301.428 Family disorganization, dissolution, adjustment is a subject with four named subdivisions: divorce and remarriage each with its own number, death and separation each given "standing room" in the general number.

**3.35 INSTRUCTION NOTES** Notes of instruction are of various kinds.

**3.351 *Optional provision*** If you desire for local reasons to place books in numbers other than those provided by the schedules, you will do so without official encouragement. However, a few official alternatives are provided, but with the editors' preference, which will be followed by the printed catalog card service of the Library of Congress, always clearly shown. For example, 229.24 deuterocanonical book of Judith: "If preferred [i.e., if you prefer], class in 222.88"; 222.88: "(Optional; [the editors] prefer 229.24)." Again, 901.9 Civilization: "If preferred, class in 909"; 909 World history: "(Optional: civilization; prefer 901.9)."

**3.352 *Use of more than one 0 in standard subdivisions*** As stated in section 2.34, standard subdivisions, which generally consist of two or more digits, the first being 0, may be used with any number at any level whenever they are appropriate. But in some places, for various reasons, notation beginning with 0 is used for another purpose, in which case you are instructed (for example) to "Use 335.001-335.009 for standard subdivisions," or, sometimes, to "Use 361.001-361.008 for standard subdivisions" (the concept normally belonging in 09 being otherwise provided for). On occasion you are instructed to use three or even four 0's for standard subdivisions. This instruction does not "drip"; it applies only exactly as stated.

**3.353 *Synthesis of notation*** Frequently the opportunity is presented to expand a given number synthetically without enumerating its subdivisions.

**3.353 1 *Area notation*** When a given heading has particular geographic significance and there are numerous books dealing with the subject in a given continent, country, locality, or other area, provision is made to expand the number for that heading by area. For example, under 331.29

### *Editor's introduction*

Historical and geographical treatment of wages, you will find the instruction, "Add area notations 1-9 to 331.29." This means that a book on wages in Japan is to be placed in 331.295 2, that is, 331.29 plus the number 52 for Japan from the area table on page 1263. Wages in Tokyo would fall in 331.295 213 5, wages in rural regions in general in 331.291 734. Observe that wages in rural regions of Japan does not belong in 331.291 734 • (because under area 1 appears the note, "Not limited by continent, country, locality"), but rather in 331.295 2; an optional note under the centered heading for areas 3-9 tells you that, "if desired," you may add 009 to the number for Japan or any other continent, country or locality and divide like area notation 1. (Even where specific provision for adding area numbers is not stated, they may be added to standard subdivision 09, as shown in the table of standard subdivisions, e.g., special education in Japan 371.909 52. For full information see section 3.37.) The instruction to add area notations does not "drip" to subdivisions of the number under which it appears; instead it is an instrument for authorizing the formation of those subdivisions without explicitly stating them.

**3.353 2 Division** The same is true of the instruction to "divide like" another number or sequence. This is another important basis for synthesis of notation, or "number building." It may appear under a single number or a sequence of numbers, and it directs you to divide that number or sequence like a single number or like a sequence. Actually, in every case, one sequence, the primary one, is to be divided like another sequence, the secondary one. Many classifiers have found the procedure confusing, but it need not be so if one works methodically. First, determine and set down the full span of the secondary sequence. Second, set down the number from that sequence that is appropriate to the work in hand. Third, cancel the repeating digits of the secondary sequence, i.e., the digits that appear thruout its entire length without change. (There may be none.) Fourth, substitute for them the repeating digits of the primary sequence. Fifth, insert the decimal point appropriately and delete any terminal 0's. For example, class infant baptism under 234.16, and "divide like 265.1-265.7":

- |                |  |
|----------------|--|
| 1. 265.1-265.7 | Full span of secondary sequence.                   |
| 2. 265.12      | Number in this span for infant baptism.            |
| 3. (265.) 12   | Cancel all repeating digits of secondary sequence. |
| 4. (234.16) 12 | Substitute repeating digits of primary sequence.   |
| 5. 234.161 2   | Desired number.                                    |

## *Decimal Classification*

Class crossbreeding in sheep under 636.308, and "divide like 636.08":

1. 636.081-636.089
2. 636.082 43
3. (636.08) 2 43
4. (636.308) 2 43
5. 636.308 243

Class adaptations of mammals to drought under 599.01-599.09, and "divide like 591.1-591.9":

1. 591.1-591.9
2. 591.542
3. (591.) 542
4. (599.0) 542
5. 599.054 2

Class bibliography of agriculture under 016, and "divide like 001-999," with no digits common to secondary sequence:

1. 001-999
2. 630
3. 630                      Nothing to cancel.
4. (016) 630              Prefix 016.
5. 016.63

"Divide like" means to divide like the secondary sequence to the extent that is appropriate to the heading, definition, and scope governing the primary sequence. For example, area notation 174 Ethnic groups is to be divided like 420-490. In the sequence 420-490 appears 499.992 Esperanto. Since this is an artificial language, area notation 174 999 92 is not applicable to ethnic groups, and is, in fact, an absurdity.

**3.354 Priorities of arrangement** As we saw in section 1, many subjects may be divided according to more than one principle. We also saw (in section 2.221) that the digit 0 is used to introduce a change in the basis of division. Two 0's and three 0's may be used to introduce still other bases of division, as, for an extreme example, 350.000 1-.000 9, 350.001-.009, 350.01-.09, 350.1-.9, 351-359. A given book may divide its subject simultaneously according to two or more principles, e.g., composition and properties (551.460 1) of the water of the North Atlantic Ocean (551.461). This raises a question of priority: by which characteristic should one class the book? With rare exceptions where the schedules themselves specify otherwise, such as at 808.89, subdivisions without 0 take precedence in choice over those with one 0, those with one 0 over those with two 0's, those with two 0's over those with three 0's.

### *Editor's introduction*

Consequently, the book goes in 551.461 not 551.460 1. But two or more principles of division may be provided for in numbers none of which have 0's (or all of which have the same number of 0's). Then the schedules themselves give instructions on priority of choice, so that the classifier may avoid the confusions of cross classification. You may have a book on labor by aged Negro women slaves; should you class it in 331.398, 331.4, 331.582, or 331.639 6? The instruction under centered heading 331.3-331.6 tells you, by a table of precedence, to use 331.398. Now, suppose your book is on night work by aged Negro women: 331.398 or 331.81? The first note under 331.3-331.6 specifies that work periods of special classes of workers belong there, but, if you happen to arrive first at 331.81, you will find at 331.8 an instruction to class the topics that follow in relation to special classes of workers in 331.3-331.6. Either way, the correct number is 331.398.

We have not yet come to cross references, but it is appropriate to point out here that many cross references serve the same purpose of eliminating the dangers of cross classification by indicating the preferred basis of division, e.g., the cross reference from 331.2 to 331.3-331.6 tells you that books on wages of aged Negro women are to be placed in the latter span.

In any case of cross classification where the bases of division include subject, place, form, the order of preference is as follows, regardless of the absence of instructions or cross references: (1) subject, (2) place, (3) form. Only the presence of explicit directions to the contrary and the rule that non-0 takes precedence over 0 supersede this order of precedence. Examples: (1) The general principle tells you to class guaranteed-wage plans in the United States in 331.230 973 not in 331.297 3. (2) Explicit directions to the contrary at 325.309 tell you to class colonization in Australia in 325.94 not in 325.309 94. (3) The rule of non-0 preceding 0 tells you to class composition and properties of the water of the North Atlantic Ocean in 551.461 not in 551.460 1. (4) The general principle tells you to class a periodical on science research methodology in 501.8 not in 505, i.e., standard subdivisions of a substantive nature take precedence over those that are forms.

Otherwise, the editors have tried to anticipate most situations where cross classification is likely to be a problem, and to provide specific guidance. Where they have not anticipated the need for a note, the following precedence formula is a generally reasonable and helpful one to follow, altho it may require modification in certain places: Class the

## Decimal Classification

subject by (1) kinds, (2) parts, (3) materials, (4) properties, (5) processes within it, (6) operations upon it, (7) agents. (Observe that, while North Atlantic Ocean is a place, it is also a part of oceans and sea waters, so that classing composition of its waters in 551.461 reflects this formula by giving parts precedence over properties.)

**3.355 Relocations** A relocation is an adjustment in the tables resulting in the shifting of a topic from the number provided for it in Edition 16 to a number in the present edition that differs in respects other than length, e.g., the shift of astronautics from 629.138 8 to 629.4, whereby the original digits are not added to or cut off, but all following 629 is changed. If the relocation is total, i.e., the entire number formerly used is to be vacated, the number is enclosed in square brackets, and there is an instruction showing where the subject formerly in that number is now placed, e.g., [629.138 8] Astronautics: Class in 629.4. If the relocation is only partial, it is indicated in a note of instruction, e.g., 243 Evangelistic writings: Class evangelistic sermons [*formerly* 243] in 252. Total relocations are not to be confused with entries and instructions showing that concepts normally belonging in standard subdivision notations are to be placed instead in other numbers, e.g., [331.209] Historical and geographical treatment: Do not use; class in 331.29. Relocation notes "drip." For example, the note under 336.2, "Class tax administration [*formerly* 336.2] in 350.724," applies to this subject thruout 336.2. In Edition 16 administration of specific kinds of taxes was provided for with other works on those taxes in 336.21-.27, and general works on tax administration were provided for in 336.292; this relocation note tells you to class all works on tax administration, formerly in 336.2 and various of its subdivisions, in 350.724 *and its subdivisions*.

**3.36 CROSS REFERENCES** These direct you from the stated or implied totality of a given subject to component parts of that subject provided for elsewhere than in the number referred from or numbers subordinate to it, e.g., under 385 Railroad transportation: *For local rail transit systems, see* 388.4. Cross references are not used to lead from a subject in one discipline to the same or a related subject in another discipline. They lead only from the whole subject within its discipline to parts of the subject within the same discipline located elsewhere. However, a few subjects from a single point of view are considered parts of two separate disciplines, e.g., the scientific aspect of geomagnetism, which is equally part of physics and of earth sciences. This subject is

### *Editor's introduction*

provided for in 538.7 under magnetism with a cross reference from 551.1 Gross structure and properties of the earth.

Cross references "drip." For example, the reference from 331.2 to 331.3-331.6 means that any subdivision of 331.2 if applied to specific classes of workers belongs in 331.3-331.6, e.g., wages of women in specific occupations in 331.42 not in 331.28.

On very rare occasions one reference may appear to cancel part of the effect of another; in such cases, the reference at the more specific level overrides the other. An example is 322-323: at 323 Relation of state to individuals and groups is a reference, "*For relation of state to organized groups, see 322,*" but under 322.4 Protest and pressure groups is an overriding reference, "*For relation of state to revolutionary and subversive groups, see 323.2.*" This means that the relation of the state to revolutionary and subversive groups, even tho organized, is placed in 323.2 in spite of the reference at 323 implying otherwise.

**3.37 STANDARD SUBDIVISIONS** Having analyzed thru all the steps of the ladder the number chosen for the book in hand, and decided that it is the correct and most specific number, you are now ready to consider what further specification is desirable, i.e., whether any of the standard subdivisions are applicable. If your book deals with technique and apparatus of the subject, you may add 028; if it consists of a collection of articles on the subject, you may add 08; most common of all, if the book deals with the subject in the United States only (or in Marrakesh), you may add 097 3 (or 096 46). See the table on page 1255.

Observe here a very important limitation in the use of standard subdivisions: do not add them to the number chosen for a book that deals with a subject more specific than the content of the number, i.e., if the subject of the book does not have its own specific number. For example, class a collection of writings on architecture of office buildings in 725.230 8, but class a collection of writings on architecture of television towers in 725.23. The reason is that there is always the chance that in a later edition the subject will be subdivided and you will then face complications in adjustment; for example, perhaps in Edition 18 television towers will be provided for specifically in some such number as 725.237, and you can then use 725.237 08 for your book.

It is their standard meanings that make these subdivisions "standard." Nevertheless, sometimes a given standard subdivision when applied to a given subject may logically be given one or more meanings that are extensions of and compatible with the basic meaning, and you will then



## *Decimal Classification*

find in the tables an entry or group of entries specifying the extension. A simple example is 720.223 Plans and detail drawings in architecture, an extension of standard subdivision 022 3 Plans. A more elaborate one is 669.028 2-.028 4 for a special expansion, applicable only to metallurgy, of standard subdivision 028 Techniques, apparatus, equipment.

Frequently standard subdivisions are to be placed in 001-009 or 000 1-000 9; as we have seen in section 3.352, instruction notes tell you when.

Sometimes, most often for 09, a concept ordinarily placed in a standard subdivision number is found instead with an irregular notation; most of these date from earlier editions of the DC that were prepared before the table of standard subdivisions became so detailed. These instances are all noted under the numbers where you would normally expect to find them.

Examples:

[730.28] Techniques, apparatus, equipment

Do not use; class in 731.3-731.4

[747.09] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 747.2

328.309 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world in 328.4-328.9

(That is, use 328.309 01-328.309 04, 328.309 1-328.309 3, but instead of 328.309 4-328.309 9 use 328.4-328.9.)

602.7 Identification marks

Class patents and inventions in 608.7

(That is, use 602.75-602.78, but instead of 602.72 use 608.7.) It is obvious that you should not use a standard subdivision until you have made sure from the tables that its use is not irregular as to notation or meaning. The warning not to use standard subdivisions for a book that deals with less than the whole subject covered by the number applies equally to those situations where standard subdivision concepts, including areal and temporal specification, appear in irregular notation.

When a standard subdivision or span of standard subdivisions is specifically named in the tables, it is understood that, unless there are contrary instructions, the usual subsubdivisions may be used, e.g., 332.673 09 Historical and geographical treatment is to have area notations 1-9 added to it just like any standard subdivision 09, 332.06 Organizations is to be divided into 332.061, .062 and so on just like any standard subdivision 06.

**3.38 SUBJECT NOT PROVIDED FOR** In the world of today, knowledge grows so fast that any edition of the DDC is outdated before it appears. With little doubt, you will have books on subjects for which the tables and index have provided a place neither explicitly nor implicitly. Do not make up your own number for such a subject; as sure as you do, the next edition will place the subject in another number and use the number you chose for something else! The guiding principle is to follow exactly the same procedure outlined above: determine the correct main class, then the correct division, then the correct section, continuing until you have arrived at the most specific head that will contain the subject of your book. It may be that you cannot go beyond three digits; stop right there and give your book standing room, and wait for the editors to supply a more detailed number, which you may then use simply by adding digits to the number you have already chosen. Do this carefully, and you will rarely go wrong. An example for the future is a bit difficult to imagine, but two from the past may be illustrative. Edition 16 provided for astronautical engineering in 629.138 8 (now relocated to 629.4) but for no other aspects of man in space. A classifier with a book on the physiology of man in space might have been tempted to class it in 629.138 8, but that would have been wrong; he should have used 612.01 or even just 612, which is now expanded to 612.014 5 for the precise subject. Edition 16 provided no place for transportation by overland air-cushion vehicles (hovercraft), but a classifier following the principles outlined here would have used 388.3, and found his decision confirmed by the appearance of 388.35 in the present edition.

**3.4 Compound and complex subjects** The foregoing rules and principles provide a basis for classing a book on one subject in one discipline. But, as we have seen, your analysis of the book may have shown that it deals with two or three or many subjects, considered separately or in their interrelationships; or with two or more aspects of one or more subjects. Assuming that you are using the DDC as a shelf classification, obviously you must choose one place and class the book there. Since most libraries employ other methods of subject control in addition to shelf classification, the chances are that the subject catalog, whether alphabetical or itself classified, will provide additional leads. Where, then, should you class the book?

**3.41 MORE THAN ONE SUBJECT** (1) Class a book dealing with two or more interrelated subjects with the one that receives the chief emphasis. For example, class an analytical work dealing with Shake-

### *Decimal Classification*

Shakespeare's influence on Keats with Keats. The emphasis may be a reflection of the relative amount of space devoted to each subject, or of the author's purpose, or of both. The author's purpose in the work imagined above may be said to be an exposition of Keats's work. If the treatment of Keats occupies only a small portion of the book, say less than a third, and does not permeate the portion that deals specifically with Shakespeare, then the heavy preponderance of space devoted to Shakespeare should carry more weight than the author's purpose of explaining Keats, and the book should be placed with other works on Shakespeare. But if the author's purpose is pervasive throughout the book, even though the treatment of Shakespeare actually occupies more space, then greater weight should be given to purpose, and the book should be placed with other works on Keats. Such decisions are sometimes very difficult to make. (2) Class a book dealing with two or more subjects, not particularly interrelated, e.g., a descriptive work on the beliefs and practices of Judaism, Christianity, and Islam, with the one that preponderates. (3) If no emphasis or preponderance is apparent, (a) class a book on two subjects with the one coming first in the classification tables, or (b), optionally, class a book on two subjects that are both subdivisions of a broader subject with the broader one; and (c) class a book on three or more subjects that are all subdivisions of a broader subject with the broader one. Examples: (a) class a book dealing with equal emphasis with Judaism (296) and Islam (297) in 296, or (b), optionally, in 290; (c) class a similar book dealing with Hinduism (294.5), Judaism, and Islam in 290.

**3.42 MORE THAN ONE ASPECT** (1) Class a book dealing with a subject from two or more points of view or aspects, i.e., within two or more disciplines, with the aspect that receives the most emphasis. For example, class a book dealing with both the scientific and engineering principles of electrodynamics in 537.64 if the engineering aspects are introduced primarily for illustrative purposes, in 621.31 if the basic scientific theories are introduced primarily as a preliminary to the author's development of an exposition of engineering principles and practices. (See also section 3.44.) (2) Class a book dealing with a subject from two or more aspects but having no apparent emphasis with the one that preponderates. (3) If no emphasis or preponderance is apparent, class a book dealing with a subject from two or more aspects with the underlying or broader discipline, e.g., science underlies technology, art is broader than belles-lettres. (4) Lacking any other principle, class in the discipline that comes first in the schedules.

## *Editor's introduction*

To class a book on two or more interrelated subjects considered from two or more aspects, you may have to apply a combination of all the foregoing rules. Do not overlook the possibilities of class 0, e.g., 001.3-001.4, 080.

**3.43 CENTERED HEADINGS** As seen above in section 2.221, centered headings are steps in the successive divisions of a discipline or subject for which positions in the lengthening digital notation are not available. Since a given book can have but one class number, it is necessary to indicate how to class books dealing with concepts in centered headings. (1) If the span of entries directly subordinate to the centered heading is three or more, (a) class comprehensive works in the next higher number, e.g., classical physics (531-538) in 530, dental surgery (617.64-617.67) in 617.6, England (area 421-428) in area 42; but (b) always check to see if a general-special subdivision of the next higher number has been provided, i.e., a subdivision based on a 0-notation, e.g., transportation services (385-388) in 380.5, applied ethics (172-179) in 170.202; and (c) class elsewhere only in the rare instances where you are so instructed in a note under the centered heading, e.g., Romance languages (440-460) in 479.1, metallurgy of nonferrous metals (669.2-669.7) in 669.7; but (d) note that when the centered heading covers "specific" parts of something, general works may be in a preceding specific number without notice at the centered heading, e.g., Old Testament (specific parts 222-224) in 221. (2) If the span of entries directly subordinate to the centered heading is only two, (a) class comprehensive works in the first of the two numbers, e.g., valves in electronic circuits (621.381 51-621.381 52) in 621.381 51; but (b) class elsewhere if you are so instructed, e.g., public revenues (336.1-336.2) in 336.02, technology of food and drink (663-664) in 664.

**3.44 APPLICATIONS** Class an application of a principle, concept, science, procedures, technique with application. For example, class general principles of radio communication engineering in 621.384 1; special developments of radio engineering, e.g., the circuitry and instruments used in space communication, in 621.384 19; but the application of space communication to astronautics in 629.437 and 629.457.

**3.5 Reduction** We have indicated in section 2.4 that a valuable feature of the DC notation is its adaptability to both close and broad classification. How close or how broad the classification of a specific library should be is a matter of administrative determination. It is likely that only a very large general library or a library with enormous collections in certain

## *Decimal Classification*

subjects will follow the present edition to its fully expanded detail, and none of those in every section. In short, every library using these tables will reduce them in some or many parts. The detail supplied herein is intended to be more rather than less than what most libraries will require, because it is easy to cut back, either from the tables themselves or from the numbers recommended by central classification services for specific titles, but not easy, or advisable, to expand beyond what is officially provided. According to the printed tables, a book on the fresh-water plants of Lake Pontchartrain would fall in 581.929 763 34, a number likely to be required only for a botanical library or a general library with a very large collection in botany; most libraries will be adequately served by 581.9, or at most 581.929.

Do not cut notation to less than three digits, no matter how small your collection may be. A library specializing in science and technology may have half a dozen books on religion, and the classifier may be tempted to class them all just in 200. In the long run this is false economy; it is better to class the King James Bible in 220 (cut back from 220.520 3), the work on palaeontology and religion in 215 (cut back from 215.6), the work on YMCA organization in 267 (cut back from 267.33).

Do not cut a number so that it ends in a 0 to the right of the decimal point.

Cut at a reasonable spot, i.e., one that will bring about a useful grouping. This requires special care when applied to synthesized numbers. For example, if you have a large collection on the subject, you may find it desirable to class a book on economic conditions in Oxfordshire in 330.942 57. But if your collection is not of such a size as to justify a breakdown by counties, it is unlikely that you will consider 330.942 5 (East Midlands) a very useful grouping; instead you will probably use 330.942. On the other hand, a similar work covering Glamorgan can be quite satisfactorily assigned to 330.942 9 (Wales), because this is more likely to be a useful grouping. Many libraries consider geographic breakdown below country unnecessarily detailed except in 9+ for general history and 91+ for geography. Indeed, with a quite small collection you may consider 330.94 satisfactory for books on economic conditions in all parts or any part of Europe. For another example, you may find the detail of 331.287 721 necessary in a large collection for wages in the cotton textile industry, or you may find 331.287 7 (wages in the textile industry) or 331.287 (wages in manufacturing) or 331.28 (wages by occupation) useful groupings in smaller collections, but it is doubtful if 338.287 72

### *Editor's introduction*

(wages in textile industries using seed-hair fibers) would prove very useful.

Be sure that when you cut you do just that; do not change digits. For example, if your collection of books on birds is so small that you do not wish to take advantage even of the differentiation provided by 598.3, 598.4 . . . 598.9, do *not* use 598.2 as a general gathering place for all books on birds, even tho it is headed "Aves (Birds)"; instead cut right down to 598. (You can still use 598.1 for books on reptiles.) If you use 598.2, you will be obliged, if future growth requires that your books on birds be divided, to remove the "2" and substitute "3," "4" . . . "9."

Record in the schedules all decisions for reduction. Do not try to record decisions of this nature in the index; an index entry (like a cross reference, relocation, or other note of instruction) leading to a number that is cut back will then be understood to lead only to the most detailed number that has been retained. Thus, if the schedule 551 is cut back to four figures (i.e., to 551.1, 551.2, 551.8, etc.), the index entry for dike leading to 551.88 will be understood to lead only to 551.8, and the cross reference from 525.2 to 551.12 will be understood to lead only to 551.1.

**3.6 Index** In the event that your initial lead-in to the classification is thru the index, which, as we saw in section 3.31, is not recommended except when a direct approach to the tables has proved fruitless, you should know how the index is constructed and how to use it.

**3.61** The index is *relative* (and is traditionally known as the "relative index"): rather than recapitulate the tables alphabetically, it reverses them, in that it brings together the various aspects of a subject to show their dispersion thruout the tables. For example, if you have a book on botanical drugs and look under that term, you will find several aspects and subaspects, including chemistry, general pharmacology, and veterinary pharmacology, each leading you to a number in the tables. This number may be the most precise and specific one available, as is the case with 547.72 for the chemical aspects. Or, it may be a general number of which a subdivision best fits your book, as is the case with 615.32 for the general pharmacological aspects; this index entry and number are set in **boldface**, which means that the topic is subdivided in the tables, either by stated subdivisions or by provision for number building. Finally, it may be an incomplete number which must be built onto thru synthesis in order to arrive at the number required, as is the case with 636.089+ for veterinary pharmacological aspects; the plus sign means that, when you turn to the table, you will find that 636.089 is to be divided like 611-619. The proper

## Decimal Classification

suffix is easy to establish without scanning the many pages of 611-619, because the analogous number in 611-619 is the general pharmacological aspects number 615.32, which, thru operation of the "divide-like" process, produces 636.089 532. (In this illustration 636.089+, i.e., 636.089 532, is set in boldface because, like 615.32, it is itself subject to further subdivision.)

It may be that your book deals with the botany or the agriculture of botanical drugs. These aspects are not enumerated under the entry "Botanical drugs," but you will find there a cross reference, "*see also* Medicinal plants." Looking under the latter heading, you will find the aspects botany and agriculture, as well as a reference from the aspect pharmacology back to Botanical drugs. Under the botanical aspect you will find a number for general works and a reference to see also specific plants. (Of course, if your book is on the botany of a specific plant, say poppies, you would have consulted the index directly under that name, found the aspects agriculture and pharmacology and a reference to Rhoeadales, under which you would have found the aspect botany in 583.12.) Under the agricultural aspect you will find two subaspects, **economics 338.17+** and **technology 633.88**. The tables reveal that 338.17 is divided like 633-638, so that 338.17+, using the analogy of 633.88, becomes 338.173 88.

Having read this far, you will have observed that the index entries are closely interrelated and that the index cannot be used carelessly.

3.62 The index is *limited*: only those aspects appearing most frequently in the literature are included. It is clear by now to the reader of this introduction that almost any subject can be treated within almost any discipline. Botanical drugs and medicinal plants may turn up not only in botany, chemistry, agriculture, and general and veterinary pharmacology, but also in bibliography, library science, psychology, ethics, Christian or other religion, sociology, political science, economics, and right on thru general history. (You are dubious about political science and general history? Consider the possibility of a title on the effect of drugs on a given statesman's personality and its results in history.) Obviously, the index cannot enumerate all these aspects; if your book deals with an unusual aspect of a subject, you must classify direct from the tables by successive narrowing of choices as suggested above in section 3.31.

Aspects are often replaced by blanket references. For example, under Evils are the aspects ethics and religion; and under the religious aspect two subaspects are named and numbers shown for them, Christian 241.3

### *Editor's introduction*

and general works 291.5, with a blanket reference, "*see also other spec. rel.*" To find evils under Buddhism, you must first find Buddhism, note that it is in 294.3, and then scan the subdivisions of that number in the schedule. Since all religions other than Christian are arranged generally like 291.1-9, it is not too difficult to locate the correct number 294.35.

Generally speaking, under each subject entered in the index there appear from two to five aspects or references, but in a few cases only one; remember that *in no case* does this exhaust the aspects from which the subject may be treated and under which you may class it. Entries under geographical names lead only to the area table; as we have seen in section 3.353 1, area numbers may be added, either directly or with standard subdivision 09, under any number in the general tables.

Another form of limitation is the use of individual cross references leading from one heading to another. These may be from synonyms or near-synonyms, e.g., Vegetable-derived drugs *see* Botanical drugs, or from specific topics to broader or related terms, e.g., Haggai *see* Minor prophets, Sabellianism *see* Heresies, Water lilies *see* Ranales. In the third example, the number for the botany of Ranales is used without further subdivision for all its parts, including water lilies. But the number for the minor prophets in the Old Testament, 224.9, is set in boldface, and Haggai is, in fact, in 224.97, which may be found by surveying in the schedule the subdivisions of 224.9. Similarly, 273 for heresies in Christian church history is boldface, and Sabellianism may be found, by inspection of the schedule, to be in 273.3.

Still another form of limitation is the deliberate omission of thousands of terms, obviously parts of broader concepts, the inclusion of which would make the index look more like an unabridged dictionary. If you have a book on how to pitch in baseball, you will find no index entry for pitching. It should require little thought to send you next to Baseball, where you will find a reference to Bat games. Under the latter you will find 796.35, a single index entry covering nearly 50 schedule entries. With the help of the summary under 796.35 you will quickly find that the desired and precise number is 796.357 22. Similarly, with a handful of exceptions, the area numbers for cities and towns can be found only by looking for the countries, states, counties in which they are located.

3.63 The index is *coordinated with the tables*: it is a guide to them but must not, in fact cannot, be used without them. Suppose your book were on the Old Testament book Hosea instead of Haggai: you would find the same reference in the index to Minor prophets, and would turn to **Minor**



## Decimal Classification

prophets 224.9. But when you examine the schedule, you will find that Hosea is not even in a subdivision of 224.9, but, as the cross reference shows, has its own number 224.6; if you classified from the index alone, the number you chose would be not merely cut back, but actually wrong. As we have already demonstrated, you cannot find the Buddhist concept of evils without consulting the tables. Without observing all the instructions, definitions, references in the tables at the numbers to which the index has led you, you can never be sure that your work is correct; in fact, you must be guided not only by the information at the exact number and its subdivisions to which the index has led you, but also, in accordance with the suggestions made in section 3.31, you must test that number all the way up the hierarchical ladder. It is obvious that you must **never** classify from the index alone.

If the subject you want is not found in the index, look for it under a synonym, under another word of the same root, under a related term (for example, if what is wanted is not found under "heart," try "cardi-"), or under a broader subject.

**3.54** Index entries are arranged alphabetically by word. Explanatory words in parentheses are not considered in alphabetizing. When the same word appears in both geographic and subject senses, the geographic comes first. Hyphenated words are considered to be single words. Abbreviations are filed as if spelled out; a list of those used precedes the index.

Most nouns are entered in the plural form; the singular form is more often employed for nouns used as adjectives.

Names beginning with Mc and M' are arranged as if spelled Mac. Germanic modified vowels, such as ä, ö, ü, are arranged as a, o, u.

Numbers preceded by "s.s.—" are to be found in the table of standard subdivisions, and may be added to class numbers as appropriate. Numbers preceded by "area—" are to be found in the area table, and may be added to class numbers as appropriate. Both these auxiliary tables appear in volume 2 preceding the index.

A dagger (†) preceding a number indicates that one or more topics—not necessarily the topic named at that entry—have been relocated to the number from elsewhere in Edition 16. Details of relocation appear only in the tables.

**3.7 General suggestions** Class translations, reviews, keys, and analyses of, indexes to, and other works about a specific work with that work.

### *Editor's introduction*

Save time by seeing if one of the centralized classification services has already assigned a number; even if you do not follow the same edition of DDC or the policies of the central service, or have made local adaptations of your own, the decision of experts will be helpful. Among the more important sources for DC numbers from the latest unabridged edition are Library of Congress catalog cards, the *ALA Booklist*, *Publishers' Weekly*, and *American Book Publishing Record*; numbers from the latest abridged edition appear on H. W. Wilson Company catalog cards and in *Book Review Digest* and the various parts of the *Standard Catalog Series*. The *British National Bibliography*, altho it follows a combination of the latest and earlier unabridged editions, with numerous special detailed subdivisions (using letter notation) not officially authorized by the DDC editors, may be found useful for classification analysis.

To promote consistency and future efficiency, make a record of all decisions. This should consist of a shelflist or record of each book in classified order, and a record of decisions on specific problems, which may be kept separately or written in the margins of the classification tables.

## 4. Variations from recommended practice

**4.1 Principle of usefulness** Every library has its own unique clientele, and, in serving that clientele's special needs, may find it desirable to modify specific printed provisions in ways other than reduction. An important advantage of the DDC is that its notation provides a universal language that can be understood from one library to another and even from one country to another; for example, in the primary school, the metropolitan public library, and the university, in the U.S.A. and India, in Israel and Brazil, 623 always means military and naval engineering. This advantage, however, should not be permitted to outweigh a *real* and *permanent* local need. By "real" we mean that each variation should have a demonstrable reason that can be recorded and defended. By "permanent" we mean that a specific need of a temporary or short-term nature may be met by special displays and rearrangements; it should not be met by adjustment of class numbers.

Record in the schedules every decision for variation. As with reduction (section 3.5), do not try to record decisions of this nature in the index.

**4.2 Officially recognized variations** A number of important variations appear in the printed tables. They are officially recognized and recommended for use by libraries whose needs they will serve, but are not reflected in the practices of the Decimal Classification Office as printed on Library of Congress catalog cards.

**4.21 OPTIONS** Certain topics are given two specific placements. One placement is considered to be preferred by the editors, and at it, in each case, appears a note, "If preferred [i.e., if you prefer], class [this subject at another location]"; the other placement is considered by the editors to be optional, and at it, in each case, appears a note, "(Optional; prefer [the location preferred by the editors])." There are 54 such options, and several examples follow.

Most public libraries prefer to have their belles-lettres in each language divided by form, and this is the traditional DC arrangement, e.g., 820 English literature, 821 Poetry, 822 Drama, 823 Fiction, 824 Essays. This procedure separates the poetry of, say, Matthew Arnold from his prose. However, most college and university libraries prefer to have all works of a given author together, and all authors writing in each language arranged either in one alphabetical sequence or in a temporal sequence. Consequently, under centered heading 821-828 Specific forms, you will find a

note, "If preferred, class . . . single authors regardless of form in 828 with or without period subdivision," and under 828, "(Optional: class here with or without period subdivision . . . single authors regardless of form; prefer 821-828)." If a library wants its authors arranged in this way, it may still choose to separate literary forms under a given author by use of appropriate book numbers, e.g., Victor Hugo 848.7 H9, Hugo's poetry 848.7 H901, his drama 848.7 H902, his fiction 848.7 H903.

Traditionally, DC has placed the various branches of geography under the specific topics that are areally considered, e.g., economic geography 330.9, phytogeography 581.9, medical geography 614.42. However, with a growing academic and research interest in geography, numerous libraries have in recent years come to prefer an arrangement that brings all geography together. This is supplied optionally at 910.1 Topical geography, which is divided by subject, e.g., economic geography 910.133, phytogeography 910.158, medical geography 910.161 4.

Treatment of biography varies greatly from one library to another. Many academic libraries prefer it arranged with pertinent subjects, e.g., biography of engineers with engineering, of statesmen with general history, of artists with art. Most popular libraries prefer all or most biography together, either subarranged by subject or (for individual biography) in one alphabet by biographee. Accordingly, while standard subdivision 092 with each subject is the editors' preferred treatment of biography, there appears a note under 092, "If preferred, class biography in 920.1-928.9," and under 092 4 Individual, "If preferred, class in 92 or B," the latter being traditional notations used widely for individual biography in one alphabetical span.

General geography of specific continents, countries, localities is placed by editors' preference in 913-919, but, optionally, may be placed in 930-990 with general history of these areas.

The deuterocanonical books of the Bible fall by editors' preference in 229 as apocrypha, but, optionally, may fall in 222-224 in the sequence provided for them by the Douay Bible.

**4.22 OPTIONAL ALPHABETICAL ARRANGEMENT** In a relatively few places, e.g., at 598.8 and at area table 74-79, where a subject has many coordinate subdivisions with accepted names, the option is provided of alphabetical instead of systematic arrangement. It is assumed that alphabetizing will be effected by use of the Cutter or Cutter-Sanborn alphabetic-order tables, or the Library of Congress author numbers.

## *Decimal Classification*

**4.23 ARTIFICIAL DIGITS** The decimal notation being limited to nine significant digits, Melvil Dewey usually assigned 1-8 to those places, races, languages, cultures, that were most significant to American libraries of 1876, grouping others as "minor" in 9. As a result, we now find places, races, languages, cultures on which there is considerable literature assigned notations that are very long, e.g., English language 42 but Urdu language 491.439, Christian doctrine 23 but Hindu doctrine 294.52. Consequently, libraries serving eastern and other cultures are likely to find their own literature near the end of long sequences and denoted by long numbers. To correct this situation, the tables frequently suggest as an option that a letter or other symbol be used as an artificial digit to bring into prominence any desired lingual, ethnic, or cultural approach. For example, a note at 080 provides that general Urdu anthologies may be placed in 08U (or 08\* or 08†), instead of 089.914 39, and shelved before 081; a note at 292-299 provides that Hinduism may be placed in 2H0 (or 2\*0 or 2†0), instead of 294.5, and shelved before 220, or, as another option, 29H may be used preceding 292.

**4.3 Unofficial variations** Other variations may prove to be useful in specific situations even tho not recognized in the tables.

**4.31 ATTRACTION** Because of special local interest or special collections of books, it may on occasion be desirable to class a given subject in the wrong discipline, e.g., all works on Jews, not just their religion, in 296, all works on automobiles, not just their engineering, in 629.2.

An extension of this practice is the complete reversal of DC order. For example, a library devoted to travel and area study might make an administrative decision to arrange its collections by place; if so, it could use the area notations for the basic classes, and divide each after 0 by subject. Then everything on Japan would be placed in class 52: religion in 520 2, economic situation in 520 33, art in 520 7. In such a system works not areally specified could be placed in notation 0 followed by the regular DC notation, e.g., economic conditions of the whole world 033. Needless to say, this kind of use of DC, while thoroly practical, would also be purely local.

**4.32 EXPANSION** The demands of an extraordinarily large collection in a given subject may appear to dictate the development of a home-made expansion. This is strongly discouraged. An institution needing an expansion should consult with the Decimal Classification Office, which, if the need appears to have general support, will undertake to prepare it. If

an expansion is not immediately available, the broad classification should be made to serve until the official expansion is ready. A good expansion takes a great amount of time for study, research, interviewing, and correspondence, and necessitates a broad and dispassionate overall approach. Such a project is generally of too great magnitude for the majority of librarians with their full quota of other duties. The librarian going ahead on his own to make changes or expansions should remember that, once a change is made, whether good or bad, the library, because of the expense of reclassifying, is likely to have to live with it indefinitely, unable to make use of official expansions and improvements in subsequent editions. This warning applies also to the unauthorized synthesis of notation, including successive division by more than one principle. For example, there are excellent if not always immediately obvious reasons why, altho most subdivisions of 633-635 are divided like 631.5 and 632 (as authorized under 633-635), some are not. It is best, if local additions must be made and cannot await editorial action, that letters or other artificial digits be used.

**4.33 ALPHABETICAL ARRANGEMENT** As an alternative to systematic arrangement, or as a means for home-made expansion, alphabetical arrangement (using the Cutter, Cutter-Sanborn, or Library of Congress tables) may serve specific local purposes. It is most useful when there is a very large number of specifics. When names of specifics are not precise and generally accepted, it should be used with great caution lest the same concept turn up under two or more terms, e.g., the use of names of specific occupations under various subdivisions of 331 might call welders metalworkers and shoemakers cobblers.

Sometimes the editors are asked why a given subject should not be given alphabetical geographical arrangement, e.g., by U.S. states alphabetically instead of by notation 74-79 and 969. It is true that the sequence Alabama, Alaska, Arizona, Arkansas, California . . . Wyoming is quite familiar and easy to understand. It is true also that under many subjects, e.g., statistics, such an arrangement is entirely satisfactory. But under others, e.g., fauna and flora, it is more satisfactory to find Virginia and West Virginia side by side rather than separated by Washington state. And a separate arrangement for cities, distinct from that for states, will bring close together treatment of churches (or any other subject you choose) in Baltimore and Boston, but only separate churches in Boston from those in Quincy, Newton, and Lynn. On the whole, it is best to follow the area table.

## *Decimal Classification*

**4.34 RELOCATIONS** Libraries that have followed the recommendations of earlier editions may find it inconvenient to adopt the relocations in the present edition. A full review of the need for facing up to necessary relocations, and taking advantage of or compromising with them, follows in section 5.13. If you find that you must ignore any or all relocations, you will do so in full awareness that you may be blocking yourself from taking advantage of future editorial improvements.

**4.35 STANDARD SUBDIVISIONS** Some libraries will prefer to keep their employment of standard subdivisions regular, always using regular notations instead of the irregular notations described in section 3.37. This is not likely to create future difficulty, and may be effected by canceling the special instructions to use irregular notation under specific subjects.

**4.36 DROPPING DIGITS** As described in section 5.2, some notations are inconveniently long, and may be replaced in part by letters. In some situations you may even be willing to forego the use of certain subdivisions in order to employ the notations officially assigned to them for other more frequently used concepts for which the official notation is longer. For example, in main class 8 the notations for general period divisions under given literatures are very long, e.g., United States literature 810.900 1-.900 5, Armenian literature 891.992 090 01-.992 090 05. The schedules provide 810.900 1+ and similar numbers for periods because 810.91-.99 have other, tho perhaps less frequently used, meanings, and 810.901-.905 cannot be used because this would conflict with the provision in earlier editions of 810.903-.904 based on standard subdivisions 090 1-090 4. (See section 5.134 on reuse of numbers.) However, any library that has not previously used 810.903-.904 may drop one of the zeroes and class periods of U.S. literature in 810.901-.905; and any library that is sure it will never have occasion to use the authorized meanings of 810.91-.99 may drop both zeroes and class periods of U.S. literature in 810.91-.95. Such decisions should be made *with great caution*.

## 5. Features of Edition 17

This part of the introduction is directed primarily to librarians and teachers who are well acquainted with the Dewey Decimal system and its earlier editions, but it should not be ignored by the student or new practitioner. It points out the special features of the present edition.

**5.1 Subject integrity** Other features of Edition 17, some of them described below, show up more obviously as new departures from preceding editions, but none is as fundamental as the new or renewed emphasis on subject integrity and subject relationships, on the fundamental process of classification as distinct from what has been called "slot-ification."

Encouraged by Melvil Dewey's notable preference for practicality over theory in all activities, misled by the common American view of classification as little more than a system for assigning each book a convenient address or "slot" at which it can be stored and from which it can be retrieved, influenced by the failure of earlier editions of the DDC to provide under every discipline an expansion as full as was warranted by the literature acquired by libraries, classifiers of the past many times unwittingly abandoned the most fundamental feature of the system (and of all other major systems except Brown's Subject Classification), that of arrangement of subjects by discipline, and tended more and more to "classify by attraction" new topics and topics not specifically provided for by name. For example, works on sociology of the Jews were at one time placed in 296 instead of 301, works on cultural anthropology in 572 as well as 390, works on public administration in 342 as well as 350. These practices, in turn, crept gradually into the printed tables, reaching a climax in Edition 16, which gave its seal of approval to scores of such "attractions," thus affirming or reaffirming in print incompatibilities like the art of flower arrangement appearing as a subdivision of 635.9 Floriculture (which, by successive steps, is a subdivision of technology), conservation of wildlife appearing as a subdivision of 790 Recreation, choice of vocation appearing as a subdivision of 370 Education, the religious life appearing as a subdivision of 270 Christian church history, internal migration of peoples appearing as a subdivision of 320 Political science.

The editors and the members of the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee, perceiving that the ultimate consequence of such



## *Decimal Classification*

yielding to "attraction" would be complete chaos, wherein no "classifier" would know in what "slot" to place a book on a new or old subject not specifically named in the tables or index, determined for Edition 17 to return to a policy of integrity of subjects.

**5.11 STRUCTURE** This edition emphasizes the hierarchical nature of true classification and restores the hierarchical feature of Dewey's notation. To this end, the editorial rules for this edition specify: (1) that each heading, definition, scope note, instruction, cross reference should consist of words or phrases so inclusive that they will cover or govern all the subordinate topics; (2) that inclusion notes should be limited to topics subordinate to the heading on which there is as yet insufficient literature to justify separate provision, that they should not contain large haphazard groupings of terms, and that they should not name concepts obviously part of the broader concept named in the heading; (3) that inverse subordination should be eliminated; (4) that cross references should be made only to direct the classifier from a subject as stated or implied in a heading to component parts of that subject in areas other than the number referred from or its direct subdivisions, and not to remotely related or unrelated areas (even if the terminology is similar) or to the same subject in another discipline, and not from a main heading or from a standard (or other 0) subdivision thereof to one of its subdivisions or vice versa; and (5) that indention should be made "regular," i.e., that, so far as reasonably possible, notation should be made hierarchically expressive, by (a) leading from comprehensive concepts to subordinate topics in coordinate numbers by notes and references (as at 596-599 and 881-884), and (b) broadening main headings to cover all coordinate concepts falling in subdivisions of the appropriate numbers, and using centered headings to indicate the distribution of parts (as at 797).

Centered headings and summaries within the tables are used with great frequency to make subject structure and relationships clear: there are 1122 of the former and 240 of the latter.

This edition emphasizes the traditional DC principle of development from the general to the specific. For example, Edition 16 under 371 advised, thru a cross reference, that the topics in 371 when applied to a specific level of education were to be placed with education at that level, but contradicted itself by dividing 371.21, 371.732, 371.85 by levels, and by failing to supply appropriate means for topical division under each level; this edition clearly provides for all these topics treated generally in 371, and treated by level with each level. Also, Edition 16 under 351 advised that administration of specific central governments was to be

placed in 353–354, but failed to provide at those places for the many specific topics enumerated under 351, and contrariwise, under 353.09, advised that those topics even when applied to the United States should go in 351 after all; this edition clearly and fully implements the distribution by country in 353–354 of all topics of central government administration.

**5.12 DIVISION BY MORE THAN ONE PRINCIPLE** Division of a given subject in DC by more than one principle, or characteristic, is as old as the first edition, wherein the language class was divided both by individual languages (420–490) and by problems (411–418), and each language by problems (e.g., 421–428). The same was true of the literature class. Only the word “facet” is of recent origin; Dewey understood the concept. It is true that editions prior to the present one did not always recognize and make provision for division by more than one principle, even when the literature would seem to have warranted it; and when they did make such provision, they did not always clearly differentiate among the various principles.

To clarify these issues and further to emphasize subject integrity, this edition makes many new provisions for division by more than one principle, as at 599.01–599.09; and it specifies clearly which of two principles of division is to be followed first, either by cross references or instruction notes, as at 331.18 and 631–632, or by tables of precedence, as at 331.3–331.6 and 641.5, or by directing generally that subdivisions in notations 1–9 take precedence over those in 01–09, those in 01–09 over those in 001–009, and so on. New provision for division by a principle not previously recognized is usually effected by using 01–09 and shifting the standard subdivisions to 001–009. Edition 17 also provides many new opportunities for synthesis of notation, so as to permit division by two or more principles in sequence, as at the majority of the subdivisions under 633–635.

**5.13 RELOCATION** Renewed attention to the integrity of subject relationships has not been achieved without numerous relocations. It is assumed that libraries can cope without undue difficulty with any number of reductions, e.g., of mowing, stacking, reaping crops from 631.552, 631.553, and 631.554 respectively to 631.55, and of expansions, e.g., of specific systems of irrigation farming from 631.587 to 631.587 2–631.587 5; if this assumption is false, we might as well still be using the DC of 1876 and classing steam locomotives, radar, rocket engines, chain hoists, and thermonuclear power plants all in 621 without further specification. On the other hand, such shifts as that of the cost of irrigation water from

## *Decimal Classification*

631.75 (under applied sciences) to a subdivision of 338.2 (under economics), or that of astronautics from 629.138 8 to 629.4, raise the question of the degree to which the DC should adopt relocations and to which libraries can conveniently live with them; this has been a topic of long and sometimes vigorous debate.

5.131 In the making and editing of any enumerative classification, two basic principles are constantly in conflict. One is the DC traditional policy of integrity of numbers, which enables its users to depend on each new edition to include few or no relocations of topics but to include expansions that are based on the tables in earlier editions, thereby achieving continuity and avoiding the cost of reclassification. The other principle is the philosophy of keeping pace with knowledge, which holds that any classification scheme, to retain its usefulness must, from time to time, restate or redefine and regroup or rearrange subjects according to the changed concepts of a new generation. The first principle, strongly urged by Melvil Dewey, governed largely the editorial policy of the first 14 editions (tho there were more changes than most librarians realize); the second principle governed largely the editorial policy of Edition 15, resulting in 1015 relocations from its immediate predecessor. Edition 16, somewhat more conservative than 15, restored 528 of these back to the locations provided in Edition 14; on the other hand, it reaffirmed 487, and initiated 498 new ones of its own from Edition 14 as well as 90 from Edition 15. Unfortunately, as we have seen in section 5.1, Edition 16 also affirmed for the first time various practices that had grown up contrary to the consistent development of subjects by discipline.

5.132 Numerous factors now lead the editors and the members of the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee to the conclusion that a reasonable amount of continuing change thru relocation is not only desirable but inevitable.

5.132 1 First, in a world where knowledge is growing and changing at a rate increasing by geometric progression, where as a result demands on libraries and information services become increasingly pressing and exacting, it is easy enough to see that a static and inflexible, "leave-well-enough-alone," system for the subject organization of book collections will in a short time lose most and eventually virtually all its utility, except perhaps as a vestigial system of addresses or "slots," in which case arrangement of books by author or size would commend itself as equally if not more satisfactory.

5.132 2 Second, classifiers following a system that lacks the subject integrity and consistency of which relocation is an unavoidable concomi-

tant cannot properly class titles on new or old subjects not specifically named in the tables or index, lest an arbitrary editor later prove their guesses to be wrong. In the past, the editors have been recipients of a constant flood of inquiries where to class specific topics. With proper and consistent development, the classification automatically becomes hospitable to any topic whatever; classifiers need only identify the proper discipline, subdiscipline, and so on down to the most specific place available, there class the book in hand, and confidently await a future expansion that will provide a more specific number (if the amount of literature warrants it) but not a different number. By including a considerable amount of relocation in Edition 17 today, the editors anticipate better and more consistent classification tomorrow.

5.132 3 Third, while the older and larger libraries using DDC have a vested interest in its stability, it is not reasonable that this interest give them the right or power to veto the benefits of modernity to the ever-growing number of new libraries at home and abroad.

5.132 4 Fourth, it appears that a major deterrent in libraries to the acceptance of a relocation, or of the principle of relocation, is the feeling of responsibility to reclassify older books: the compulsion for consistency within the collection. However, the continuing phenomenal increase in the size of libraries makes it progressively less feasible for students and readers to browse comprehensively, even if all the books in the collection were present and available. Selection from the shelves becomes more and more a matter of accident. Leaving the catalog, manual or electronic, to serve its proper function of making total resources available, the librarian will surely be making a better and more effective use of his shelf collection if he abandons outmoded concepts in arrangement and permits the classification to reveal a profile of scholarship in a given era. Melvil Dewey's Yankee ingenuity would be outraged by the thought that librarians were unable to devise ways by which an outmoded past could be prevented from tyrannizing over the future. We ourselves have great faith in the adaptability of librarians and in their ability to devise techniques by which to "cope."

5.132 5 Fifth, even phenomenal growth has its present-day reaction in the burgeoning programs in college, university and research libraries to withdraw or retire into closed-shelf storage obsolescent and little-used books; popular and school libraries have always kept their collections live and active. This trend obviously reduces the pressure to reclassify for consistency's sake.

5.132 6 Sixth, virtually every library using DDC deviates to a greater

## *Decimal Classification*

or lesser degree, for real or fancied local advantage, from even those printed schedules that have been unchanged for generations; in doing so, it annotates its schedules and ignores the recommendations of the various central classification services. Under the circumstances, it is at the least inconsistent to resist printed relocations on the grounds that these relocations will force libraries unable to accept them to annotate their schedules and forego the benefits of central classification.

5.133 For all these reasons, the editorial rules for this edition specify: (1) that, if headings cannot be broadened or limited to tolerate the location of a specific topic, and if cross references cannot be used to reconcile its location, then it should be relocated to a more hospitable position; (2) that, if the location of a topic in Edition 16 makes it impossible to provide for the literature, it should be relocated; (3) that a topic should be relocated to eliminate dual provision, provided it really is dual provision and not another aspect of the same subject; and (4) that, if the known amount of material to be reclassified is of insignificant extent, a topic should be relocated to secure proper relationships and sequences, and uniformity in development. As a result of the application of these rules, the general tables of this edition contain 746 relocations of topics from the places provided for them in Edition 16. 378 are total, that is, they vacate an entire number and discontinue an entry; 368 are partial, that is, while some concepts in a number have been removed, others remain and keep the number in force as an entry. This compares with 1603 relocations in Edition 16 from provisions of Editions 14 and 15; of these 832 were total and 771 were partial. The number of relocations in each main class in both Editions 16 and 17 is as follows:

Class	Edition 16	Edition 17
0	29	39
1	61	11
2	38	55
3	286	189
4	31	36
5	361	72
6	489	200
7	199	86
8	18	9
9	91	49
Total	1,603	746

### *Editor's introduction*

Even tho the total number of relocations in this edition is less than half the number in Edition 16, the average effect of each is probably greater; some of these relocations are of topics on which there is a great deal of literature.

5.134 A special kind of relocation is the reuse with a new meaning of a notation devoted in an earlier edition—not necessarily the 16th—to a different meaning. This violation of what may most truly be called the “integrity of numbers” is potentially very disrupting, since it permits a given notation to have two different interpretations; it is as if the word “horse” yesterday meant an equine animal but today means a bovine one. Consequently the reuse of a given number is surrounded by safeguards: (1) it must have been vacated and stood empty for at least 25 years, i.e., at the present time since Edition 13; (2) otherwise it must be specifically approved by the DC Editorial Policy Committee, which is inclined to grant permission only when two conditions are met, that the number’s previous use has been slight and can be adequately met elsewhere, and that the proposed reuse is imperative to provide for the literature and no other satisfactory provision is possible. In this edition ten numbers have been reused in this way. These numbers are set in italics, and they are 321.9, 363, 372.1, 373.11, 551.6, 576.1, 576.2, 576.4, standard subdivision 017, area notation 549.

5.135 Reuse of number on a rather broader scale appears in the “preferred” or completely remodeled schedule; such a schedule is approved by the Committee only when the provisions of earlier editions are entirely inadequate for classification of modern concepts, as was the case when a remodeled schedule 546–547 for inorganic and organic chemistry was approved for Edition 16. In Edition 17 a similar schedule is 150 Psychology, which reuses 65 numbers, and relocates 27 topics. Two others have been authorized for future development and distribution: 340 Law and 510 Mathematics. Each completely remodeled schedule is built on the same base number as the schedule it supersedes, but any other resemblance is likely to be incidental. Even so, new 150 is not as changed from former 150 as might have been feared, and all changes are shown in the schedule itself.

5.136 Relocations in geographical or area concepts and in standard subdivisions constitute an even greater problem than ordinary relocations because they have such wide repercussions. Every heading in the entire classification may be subdivided geographically and may have standard

## *Decimal Classification*

subdivisions applied to it. For this reason Edition 15, for all its devotion to the "new look," made no relocations in these schedules, and Edition 16 made only a few insignificant ones. In geography, it said explicitly (p. 15): "The editors have decided to follow the principle that position on the map rather than political ties should determine classification, so far as 'editors' preference' goes, but still to permit alternative arrangements for those libraries which require them."

5.136 1 For the present edition, the enlarged emphasis on provisions to meet non-United States requirements (considered at more length in section 5.4), the greater liberality generally in relocating topics, and the recognition that, in a century of wars, growing nationalism, and a constantly shifting political situation, failure to recognize changes would doom the DDC to moribundity, all have led to a moderate amount of area relocation. In no case, be it noted, is subject integrity compromised: Hawaii is not part of North America, and, instead of being relocated to a heading under United States, is gathered in only by a cross reference. The same is true of the Bornean part of Malaysia, the European part of Turkey. On the other hand, Pakistan is not a subdivision of present-day India, and it is absurd, to say the least, that its whole and its parts should be placed in several nonconsecutive numbers, all of which are both preceded and followed by numbers for parts of India; the whole and the parts are, therefore, relocated and brought together in a sequence following the whole sequence for India. But both are still subdivisions of the broader concept of South Asia. There are 89 relocations in the area table, 71 total and 18 partial.

It should be pointed out that relocations of area concepts are intended to cover books that deal with subjects in the period before as well as the period after a given political change, e.g., both before and after the partition of India and Pakistan in 1947. This means that a work on East Bengal (or Dacca) and one on West Bengal (or Calcutta) fall in widely separated numbers whether dated 1925 or 1965. Some librarians will not approve of this. They will say that scientific and technical subjects do not change because of politics, and that the botany of East Bengal in both 1925 and 1965 is more nearly like that of West Bengal than it is like that of Sind. And they will say that, while social science subjects do change with politics, they do not do so retroactively, that education and social conditions in East Bengal were in 1925 more like those in West Bengal than those in Sind, but in 1965 tend to be more like those in Sind than

those in West Bengal. These librarians may, of course, feel free to relocate to the extent dictated by their own needs: (1) no relocation; (2) relocation only of publications that deal with the period following the political change; (3) relocation only of social science subjects; (4) a combination of (2) and (3).

5.136 2 As for the standard subdivisions (previously "form divisions"), they have, over many years, tended more and more to depart from the concept of subject integrity, especially in 02 and 08. Taking note of this, the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee directed the editors to revise the standard subdivisions, even to the extent of reusing one number with a new meaning. Most notable change is the abandonment of 04 for essays and lectures and the relocation of collected essays and lectures to 08, which is now reserved for collections and anthologies only. It is expected that a given library will probably make no effort to follow the new standard subdivisions under those headings with which it has already freely used the old ones, but that it will nevertheless benefit by using the new ones under headings being used or being divided by standard subdivisions for the first time. There are nine total relocations in the table of standard subdivisions.

5.137 The inconvenience caused by the amount of relocation in this edition is ameliorated by two factors. In the first place, Edition 16, which clearly identifies previous relocations, will remain in print for the present. In the second, some relocations are noted as being only optional, e.g., the deuterocanonical book of Ecclesiasticus from 229.4 to 223.98, and a very few others retain their former locations as optional, e.g., biography of specific classes of persons from 920.1–928.9 to standard subdivision 092 under each subject.

5.138 Relocations are shown in the tables as indicated in section 3.355. In the index, every number to which any topic is relocated is preceded by a dagger (†), no matter whether the topic specified in the immediate entry is relocated or not.

One kind of relocation and reuse of number is not shown as such, namely, relocation of standard subdivision concepts from single-0 notation to double-0 or triple-0 notation, and reuse of single-0 notation for other purposes. For example, in Edition 16 599.01–599.09 was used for the standard subdivisions of 599; in Edition 17 these numbers are used for general principles of mammalian biology, and the classifier is instructed to use 599.001–599.009 for standard subdivisions.



## *Decimal Classification*

5.14 In summary, it may be said that relocation, division by more than one principle, emphasis on hierarchical structure and notation, in fact the overall display of subject integrity, are designed to make the DDC easier to teach, to learn, to understand, and to use for both classification and retrieval.

5.2 Degree of expansion Since this edition is intended for use in general libraries of any size, its fullness is based upon the number of titles that large general libraries may be expected to acquire in any given subject. The editors have tried to provide enough subdivisions but not too many, and have been guided by the principle that the existence in American libraries of more than ten to twenty titles on specific topics in a given general number raises a presumption in favor of subdivision. The detail varies from one part of the tables to another, depending on the number of books that have appeared and are likely to be acquired by libraries. Many new entries appear in the tables of Edition 17 and there are far more numerous opportunities for repetition of development by analogy, that is, for expansion thru "divide-like" notes. Some tables are fully revised and expanded for this edition, e.g., 350-354; others, e.g., 100-199 exclusive of the 130's and 150's, await more detailed study at another time and have been expanded little or none from the provisions of Edition 16. In a very few cases, provisions have been reduced, not usually because the literature does not justify the amount of detail in the previous edition, but to clear out the dead brush of a poor development so that it may be superseded later with minimum disruption by an improved expansion, e.g., 301.2. Because there is not time from one edition to the next to revise all schedules with equal care, the minuteness of subdivision is greater in some classes than in others.

A comparative table of number of entries in Editions 16 and 17 follows. Since a single entry may be expanded manyfold by a "divide-like" or an "add" note, the number of these is shown as "entries with built-in expansion." When one considers that *every* number may be enriched by all the wealth of the table of standard subdivisions, it is obvious that the DC's potential for detailed classification is a hundred- or a thousandfold greater than the existence of 17,132 general tables entries might lead one to expect. The reduction of 4650 entries in class 9 is offset by the new area table.

*Editor's introduction*

	EDITION 16		EDITION 17		INCREASE	
	Entries with		Entries with		Entries with	
Class	Total entries	built-in expansion	Total entries	built-in expansion	Total entries	built-in expansion
0	333	55	341	51	8	-4
1	499	8	641	24	142	16
2	760	80	1,191	225	431	145
3	1,703	69	2,545	311	842	242
4	324	52	369	135	45	83
5	2,083	53	2,603	183	520	130
6	4,031	115	5,170	789	1,139	674
7	1,407	180	1,785	254	378	74
8	302	72	651	231	349	159
9	6,486	158	1,836	448	-4,650	290
Total General Tables	17,928	842	17,132	2,651	-796	1,809
Standard Subdivi- sions	69	9	113	15	44	6
Arcas	0	0	5,110		5,110	
Grand Total	17,997	851	22,355	2,670	4,358	1,819

We have referred in 2.53 to the occasionally extreme length of the DC notation. Without doubt, the apportionment is poor in the light of present knowledge (e.g., the schedule for 621 is longer than that for 000-099 or that for 400-499 and only 10% shorter than that for 100-199), and virtually impossible to repair in view of the traditional policy of reusing numbers only most sparingly; to reapportion the notation so that it would be equally hospitable to all disciplines and subjects held by libraries today would require the development of a wholly new system and would only establish a base for other inequities of a future that today cannot be imagined, just as much of the world of 1965 could not be imagined in 1876. So long as DC continues to expand, its users will have to live with long numbers. However, suggestions appearing thruout this edition for

## Decimal Classification

the guidance of libraries specializing in or emphasizing certain disciplines and subjects may be applied in other contexts also: arbitrary signs can be used as substitutes for much-used long numbers, just as B has been used for many years in many libraries as a substitute for 920. For example, an engineering library can substitute letters of the alphabet for some of the larger engineering subdisciplines with long notations, such as E in lieu of 621.3 or of 621.38, or X (or A) in lieu of 629.13. If this is not feasible, the difficulties that are inherent in transcription and reading of long numbers can be reduced by writing each long class number on two or three lines, e.g.,

574.929	574	574	and even 574
	.929 7	.929 747	.929 747
			65

Some few libraries shelve by numbers of limited length but give on catalog and shelflist cards and inside each book a complete number based on the full DC schedules, with the shelving digits in black and the non-shelving digits in red.

**5.3 Standard subdivisions and area table** The table of "form divisions" of earlier editions has not only been substantially revised, as noted in section 5.136 2, but retitled table of "standard subdivisions," a term that recognizes that at least half of these convenient subdivisions are modes of treatment rather than forms. If even one standard subdivision of a specific class appears in a double-0 or a triple-0 notation, then all, with the occasional exception of 09 Historical and geographical treatment, appear in that sequence; in this way each standard subdivision sequence is kept intact, e.g., no longer do we find 300.1, 302-309 for standard divisions of the social sciences, broken by the very substantial 301 schedule for sociology. This is the more important in this edition because of the much greater reliance on zero-divisions for special meanings, most frequently (1) for subdivision by a second principle of division, e.g., 599.01-599.09, and (2) for standard subdivisions of a part of the complete heading, e.g., 201-209 for standard subdivisions of Christianity, which has no other notation that can be so divided, and 200.1-200.9 for standard subdivisions of religion.

The **area table** is perhaps the most obvious innovation of Edition 17. Geographic detail has been removed from the general history schedules 930-990 and incorporated in a special table, leaving the history schedules for history. The new table, printed without the traditional digit 9,

contributes to both theoretical understanding of the DDC and its practical application. On the theoretical level, it makes clear that the number for, say, France is *not* 944, which is for the general history of France and that only, but 44. On the practical level, it greatly simplifies number building for areas. No longer need the classifier be confused by "dividing like 940-999," or concern himself with elusive 0's and 9's that disappear in one sense and stand pat in another; now he simply adds the area number, e.g., 94 Australia, to the base named, e.g., 027.4 (in the entry under 027.43-027.49).

Almost equally useful will be the very considerable expansion of area 1 (previously form division 091), providing for treatment of any subject by zonal, physiographic, and socioeconomic regions, by ethnic and religious groups, and even by hemispheres and space. Of special note, perhaps, is area 171 2 Empires and political unions, a device that libraries can use to bring together, under selected subjects, those countries having political ties but geographic diversity, e.g., constitutional law of United Kingdom, Canada, New Zealand together in 342.171 242 instead of scattered in 342.42, 342.71, and 342.931 respectively.

The standard subdivision and area tables both appear in volume 2, preceding the index.

**5.4 Use outside United States** Altho the Dewey Decimal Classification is widely used outside the United States because of its numerous virtues, it has been much criticized for its historical bias toward a Protestant Anglo-Saxon culture. Some efforts were made in Edition 16 to reduce this bias, but the present edition represents the first full-scale attack upon it by the general editors. Without reducing the traditional emphasis on and featuring of things American, such as literature in 810 and political parties in 329.1-8, on things Western, such as languages in 420-480 and philosophy in 182-199, on things Christian, such as religion in 220-280, it introduces a whole series of devices thru the use of which classifiers who need to do so may feature other cultures. It suggests frequently, e.g., under area notations 4-9 and under 420-490, that a letter or other symbol may be used as an artificial eleventh digit to bring forward works on the desired place, language, literature, or other subject. (It is important that this symbol be understood to be an artificial digit: it can be a Latin, Greek, Cyrillic, Arabic, Tamil letter, a Chinese ideograph, an asterisk, dagger, arrow, or what you will, and has no meaning except digital.) It sometimes introduces the option of de-emphasizing United States concerns by arranging them geographically in the midst of others, e.g., in 354

## Decimal Classification

instead of 353, in 329.9 instead of 329.1-.8. It provides history periods for nearly every country (but does not reduce those under 940 and 973), and for many literatures, including "colonial" literatures. As already noted, the area table recognizes current political alignments. Separate provision is made for important Oriental languages, e.g., Hindi and Urdu. There are expansions in 796 for cricket, soccer, and rugby, as well as for golf and tennis. Schedules for Buddhism, Hinduism, Judaism, Islam are expanded and further specified, and instructions and references throughout, as well as index entries, make it clear that religion as a whole and Christianity in particular are not considered synonymous. Provision is made in 181.04-181.09 for philosophy based on specific religions. For the benefit of American no less than foreign libraries the Protestant orientation of 200 has been lessened by the addition of provision for numerous topics of chiefly Roman Catholic concern.

The year 1964 saw the field work take place for the long-projected survey of DDC use abroad. The present edition reflects the early results of this survey, and it is the editors' and publishers' earnest hope that the DDC of the future will be made continuously more and more useful for librarians of Europe, Asia, Africa, and the Pacific, as well as for those of America.

The language of basic editions, of course, continues to be English.

**5.5 Index** The index is completely new, and more tightly constructed than previous ones; it is, in fact, unique. As described in section 3.6, it is *relative*, in that it brings together the various aspects of a subject to show their dispersion throughout the tables; it is *limited*, because exhaustiveness would be confusing and, if it could be kept up to date, would make the tables unnecessary; it is *coordinated with the tables*, serving as a guide to them, not a substitute for them.

**5.6 Relation to Edition 16 and DC6** Even where the present edition does not vary substantively from Edition 16, observance of the editorial rules emphasizing subject integrity gives a quite different appearance to the schedules, with more centered headings, fewer cross references and notes of inclusion, a larger number of more comprehensive headings, more scope notes, asterisks used freely to remind classifiers of instructions that apply to many subdivisions of a heading, and other devices. The same is true of variations in Edition 17 from provisions disseminated through the earlier issues of *Decimal Classification Additions, Notes and Decisions*.

## *Editor's introduction*

**5.7 Spelling** As is well known, the founder of DC (who was christened Melville Dewey, and for a time styled himself Melvil Dui) was deeply devoted to the cause of simplified spelling. The forms that it took may be seen in his introduction, which follows this one. The present edition, in observance of the Dewey spelling tradition, pursues the following practices: (1) it uses *catalog*, *decalog*, *demagog*, *pedagog*, *prolog*, *program*, *tho*, *altho*, *thoro*, *thorofare*, *thru*, *thruout*; (2) it follows, to the extent that the editors found them, the shortest or most phonetic spellings recognized by Webster's *Third New International Dictionary*, e.g., *canceled*, *lacker*, *alinement*; (3) except in the index and where the meaning might be misunderstood, it modifies the spelling to reflect the pronunciation of past tenses and past participles that have the hard "t" sound, e.g., *pitcht*, *divorst*, but not *produst*, *bast*.

## 6. Toward Edition 18

Not all of Edition 17 has benefited equally from application of the renewed emphasis on subject integrity and the other principles described above. Within the editorial criteria, which are intended to safeguard the DDC's traditional virtues as well as to open the system up to a greater degree of modernization than in the past, we believe that most of 400-600, 800-900, and parts of the other classes will be generally fairly successful in meeting the needs and classifying the literature of the 1960's, but some of the other sections will be less so. Substantial development is required in 029, most of 100, parts of 200, 301, 330, 360, 380, 390, 640, 780, and other schedules. A complete overhaul with reused notation is planned for 340 and 510. It may be expected that Edition 18 will reflect (1) review and study in many of these, (2) normal updating in science, technology, history, (3) further refinement of the index, and (4) more detailed study of the results of the 1964 survey of DC use abroad.

## 7. Acknowledgments

It is my pleasant duty to give public thanks to those who have contributed materially to such success as this 17th edition may merit.

Thanks, first, to DDC's users. To the scores of librarians who studied and criticized or reviewed Edition 16, some in print, some in correspondence, some face to face, and to the reviewers and critics of draft schedules of this edition, both at home and abroad; I name eight at random to represent them all: John Metcalfe of Australia, B. S. Kesavan of India, Curt Wormann of Israel, Anis Khurshid of Pakistan, Mahmud Sheniti of the United Arab Republic, E. J. Coates and W. H. Phillips representing very different points of view in the United Kingdom, Sarah K. Vann of the United States of America. To the hundreds of individuals who took time to answer questions posed in *Decimal Classification Additions, Notes and Decisions*. To interested groups in formal organizations, notably the Classification Committee and the Policy and Research Committee of the Cataloging and Classification Section of the Resources and Technical Services Division of the American Library Association, and the Dewey Decimal Classification Revision Sub-Committee of the Research Committee of the (United Kingdom) Library Association. To the Reverend Timon Cook, O.F.M., who provided most able liaison with the Catholic Library Association by soliciting and synthesizing opinions on Roman Catholic library requirements thruout class 200, and interpreting them to the editors with full understanding of the criteria for DC development; if, as we hope, this edition provides valuable new assistance to Catholic librarians, the credit is largely Father Cook's.

Thanks, second, to all those officially connected with the Dewey Decimal Classification. To the directors of Forest Press, Inc., scholars, gentlemen, keen businessmen all: Verner W. Clapp, Deo B. Colburn, Jack Dalton, Walter A. Hafner, and Howard Haycraft. To the present members of the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee and to the former members who have served since 1960: Elizabeth C. Borden, Edwin B. Colburn, Godfrey Dewey, Virginia Drewry, Carlyle J. Frarey, Bertha M. Frick, Harriet D. MacPherson, Lucile M. Morsch, Esther J. Piercy, Joseph W. Rogers, Pauline A. Seely, Mrs. Marietta Daniels Shepard, and Wyllis E. Wright; to their statesmanship, foresight, and imaginative understanding of libraries' needs may be credited the basic principles, enduring and new, which underlie this edition. To my



## *Decimal Classification*

superiors in the Library of Congress for support and encouragement at all times: L. Quincy Mumford, Rutherford D. Rogers, John W. Cronin, Lewis C. Coffin, William J. Welsh.

Thanks, third, to the staff of the Decimal Classification Office, who really did the grubbing. To the former members who contributed to this edition: Mrs. Dorothy F. Gover, Mrs. Peggy C. Kans, Alice M. Kenton, Mrs. Edith B. Moore, Julia C. Pressey, Mrs. Mary C. Schloeder, Mrs. Ruby Y. Weinbrecht, and Mrs. Elsie K. Yoder. To the present members: Harriet Helliwell, Elaine Hicks, and Edna E. Van Syoc. To the Editorial Reviser, Mrs. Emily K. Spears, for significant contributions to the format and style of the manuscript, and for its final preparation in impeccably neat and clean condition. To the Assistant Chief, Decimal Classification Office, Elva L. Krogh, for numerous profitable suggestions based on her daily use of the DC to class books, notably the new and striking concept of the area table. To the Assistant Editor, Dewey Decimal Classification, Mrs. Marie M. Henshaw, for her uncompromising insistence that the editorial operations hew to the line of consistency, and for her brilliant development of many original ideas, including various new techniques for emphasizing subject integrity and relationships, and including also the new index, which is almost wholly hers in conception and mostly hers in execution.

## 8. Conclusion

The foreword to the 15th edition “earnestly” requested “all users to give us the benefit of their criticism in order that sometime our successors may actually bring out ‘the perfect book.’” It appears unlikely that this or any other general classification will ever be “perfect,” especially in view of the traditional dichotomy of demands for a system that will be both stable and up-to-date. Melvil Dewey recognized this in 1876, when he wrote, in “The Amherst classification” (*Library Journal*, 3:231–232, Aug. 1878):

Long study of the subject makes it clear that a classification satisfactory in *theory* is, in the nature of things, an impossibility, and that a scheme can be satisfactory in *use* only to those who realize these inherent difficulties and are satisfied because of their knowledge that a plan free from annoying difficulties is wholly unattainable.

Nevertheless, improvement is always possible and devoutly to be pursued. So, once again, we urge all who use the DC, whether students, teachers, or appliers, to continue to give us the “benefit of their criticism.”

There follows Melvil Dewey’s own introduction of 1926, which is reprinted, with a few minor changes, just as he wrote and spelled it. Some of its statements and examples are now obsolete, and it should be read in the context of its time.

Benjamin A. Custer

EDITOR



# Melvil Dewey's Introduction

**Orijin and growth** The plan of this Clasification and Index was de-veloppt erly in 1873, the result of long study of library economy as found in hundreds of books and pamphlets, and in over 50 personal visits to libraries. This study convinst me that usefulness of libraries myt be greatly increast without aded expense. Only a fraction of the servis posibl cud be got from them without clasification, catalogs, indexes and other aids, to tel librarians and readers what they containd on any givn subject; yet, by methods then uzed, this cud be dun satisfactorily only at a cost so great as to be prohibitiv to all but a few welthy libraries. With rare exceptions, libraries wer growing rapidly. Catalogs, made at great cost, soon became antiquated. Methods uzed involvd frequent re-arrangement, renumbering and remarking of books, and of necessity re-making of catalogs and indexes, as the only escape from a confuzion that seriously cripld usefulness. In this costly repetition, work of previus librarians was larjly lost. The great need was a sistem which wud enable each to stand on the sholders of his predecessors, and fully utilize their labors; which wud make work dun today permanent, insted of sumthing to be superseded in so few years as not to be worth doing in the best way; which wud supply the best applyances, insted of leaving yung librarians not only to lern how to work, but to make all their own tools.

Practical use for 54 years proves that this sistem wil accomplish this result; for with its aid catalogs, shelflists, indexes and references, essential to this increast usefulness, can be made faster and cheaper than by any method not having its essential features, and, when dun, they ar better and vastly more permanent. Practical utility and economy ar its keynotes and no theoretic refinement has been allowd to modify the skeme, if it wud detract from usefulness or ad to cost.

It was chiefly necessary to find a method that wud clas, arrange and index books and pamphlets on shelvs, cards of a catalog, clippings and notes in scrapbooks and index rerums, references to all these items, and indeed any literary material in any form, as redily as an ordinary index gyds to proper pajе of a bound book. This difficult problem was solvd by uzing

## *Decimal Classification*

no reference marks except the simplest symbols known to the human mind, arabic numerals with their usual arithmetic values, and by aiding their unequald simplicity by many practical nemonic [mnemonic] devices.

Tho the importance of clasification was recognized, the filosofic sistems proposed wer so difficult fully to understand or apply that not 1 person in 1000 cud uze them practicaly. Decimal Clasification simplicity and even more its Relativ Index hav made this work 10-fold eazier. In recent years, use of the sistem has spred rapidly in all civilized cuntries, meeting success in thousands of different applications. In its simpl form a skoolboy can quikly master it and keep for instant reference not only his books but every note, clipping or pamflet. Almost every profession and occupation has lernd its wonderful laborsaving powers. It is in daily use by miriads of business and professional men who wud never even attempt to understand or uze the old sistems.

By mere adition of figures, without chanjing this shorter form, this very simpl sistem is redily made to record the utmost refinements of specialists, and the Relativ Index, as simpl as a, b, c, sends the novis to the exact place where the expert has clasifyd the matter sought. Thus 942 is history of England, and 942.99055 is history of County Pembroke in Wales, under Elizabeth, 5th of the Tudors. A colon between 2 numbers to mean 'in relation to', and other combining symbols for time, languaj etc. make of the sistem a compact shorthand for each fact. But this brevity is les important than the eaz with which matter so markt can be arranjed (giving figures and decimal point their common arithmetic value), stored as compactly as wisht and found again in the least posibl time.

The sistem has been found equally valuabl for cataloging, indexing, analyzing and summarizing, and for clasifying, numbering and arranjing books and pamflets on shelvs.

The 1st edition, publisht in 1876, 12 pajes of tables containing 1000 sections, was criticized as altogether too elaborate for even a larj library. As fast, however, as the Relativ Index with its remarkabl powers became known, the rapidly increasing uzers askt for further subdivisions, til Tables hav grown from 2600 entries in Index of 1876 to 43,000 in this edition 12, becauz it has been found so eazy to gain the admitted great advantajes of close clasification, and yet, by means of this Index, avoid the old difficulties.

**Extent of use** The rejister of libraries which hav actualy adopted it, tho growing rapidly, is incomplete. Libraries often uze the sistem for

### *Melvil Dewey's introduction*

many years before we learn the fact. We register all buyers of the Classification, so far as known, but do not assume that a library has adopted the system because it has ordered the book. *A L A Bulletin*, Sep. 1926, p. 167, estimates a use by about 14,000 libraries. There is also an immense use (for which not even approximate statistics can be furnished) by individuals, with their private, business and professional collections of books, pamphlets etc., and in their correspondence and notes files. The system has been adopted, not only throughout U S, but in other parts of North America, in South America, in many European countries, and, still more distant, in Asia, Hawaii, Philippines, Java, Australia and Africa, and the Tables are known to have been translated, either wholly or in part, into French, German, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, Norwegian, Russian, Hungarian, Bohemian, Chinese and Japanese.

The table below shows the growth of the editions.

Edition	Date	Number of pages				Copies
		Preface	Tables	Index	Total	
1	1876	12	12	18	42	1000
2	1885	66	162	86	314	500
3	1888	4	227	185	416	500
4	1891	41	234	191	466	1000
5	1894	"	235	"	467	2000
6	1899	"	260	210	511	7600
7	1911	48	420	324	792	2000
8	1913	"	462	340	850	2000
9	1915	"	465	342	856	3000
10	1919	"	517	374	940	4000
11	1922	61	551	376	988	5000
12	1927	67	683	491	1243	9340
13	1932	75	902	670	1647	9750
14	1942	80	1048	799	1927	15632
15	1951	55	469	192	716	11200
15 Rev.	1952	56	"	402	927	11045
16	1958	121	1314	1004	2439	29138

**What is the System?** A Subject Classification with a Relative Index<sup>1</sup> so numbered or lettered that reference is compact, accurate and quick, is the

<sup>1</sup> Though the author is interested only in the usefulness of the system, not in questions of priority of its invention, extended investigation by others fails to show that this most important feature of the system—the Relative Index, on which all else hinges—had ever before been used as here to index by a single reference most diverse mate-

## *Decimal Classification*

essential feature; anything beyond this is merely applying this plan with various helps and accessories. Any subject classification with a *relativ* index in which the entry indexes a book in the ordinary way, and also indexes shelves, cards, clippings or any other literary material, is a form of this system.

**Notation** We devised and experimented with several notations by means of numbers, letters, and combined numbers and letters, with bases of 26, 35, 50, 100 and 150, yet none seemed good enough to warrant publishing details, except that here printed, based on simple arabic numerals with their usual decimal powers. International adoption of this system is largely because no one ever complains that any classification is too simple, while there is constant complaint of complexity. Decimal simplicity has so commended itself that many think of it as the only form, though obviously it would be just as much a 'relativ index system' if the classification were wholly marked by letters or other symbols.

The Subject Index is the simplest application of a, b, c, the symbols next in simplicity to 1, 2, 3. This use of the simplest 2 sets of symbols known, with their common meanings, has given our notation its worldwide reputation as the simplest yet devised.

**Best known decimal form** Decimal form means simply that heads are grouped and numbered with common arithmetic figures used decimally. This, the only decimal form thus far carefully elaborated and published, is commonly spoken of as if it were the only possible form of our original plan; though obviously an infinite variety of 'relativ index systems' in decimal form *could* be made by filling the outline with different heads, or with the same heads in different order.

To make out new heads involves labor and cost vastly beyond the dreams of any person who has not tried exactly this work. Time actually spent on tables here printed, by various committees and individuals, totals hundreds of years and has cost an immense sum. Uniform and urgent advice of the experientist is to adopt a poorer scheme already made rather than undertake so herculean a labor. When done, the maker may possibly be

relied on. Relativ location had been used, but not in the present combination with the subject index, which gives it most of its value. The Classification Tables, while adopting suggestions from many sources, are original in their system of arrangement and notation, and in many minor features. The decimal form and many mnemonic features have not been found in earlier use, though since their invention in 1873 these as well as the Subject Index and other features have been very frequently copied, often with, but oftener without, acknowledgment of their source. But we are glad to find this system, which has cost so much labor, doing good service even for those who neglect to mention where they found so valuable a labor-saving literary tool.

### *Melvil Dewey's introduction*

better suited with it, but few if any others will be. It is wiser for anyone whose time is of value, to use it in something more practically useful to himself and his library than in trying to construct a 'satisfactory' scheme of classification. No one yet ever wholly suited himself or anyone else, and probably no one ever will. By adopting this already worked out he saves much time and money, and gains the immense advantage of using a system in common with thousands of others, so that he may utilize their labors and investigations and share with them economies of cooperation.

**Relative Subject Index** This alphabetic Index, the most important feature of the system, consists of headings gathered from a great variety of sources, as users of the system have found them desirable in 54 years experience. After all these efforts, many new heads are added in each new edition.

The Index guides in both numbering and finding books. In assigning numbers, the most specific head that will contain the book having been determined, reference to that head in Index gives proper class number. Conversely, in finding books on any given subject, reference to Index gives number under which they are found on shelves, in shelflist, or in class catalog. When any new subject comes up, interline it and its synonyms in Index, with class number decided on, so classifier may be uniform with himself in future work.

The Index gives similar or synonymous words, and the same words in different connections, so any intelligent person will surely get the right number. A reader wishing to know something of the tariff looks under T, and, at a glance, finds 337 as its number. This guides him to shelves, to all books and pamphlets, to shelf catalog, to class subject catalog on cards, to class record of loans, and, in short, in simple numeric order, throughout the whole library to *anything* bearing on his subject. If he turns to Tables, he sees that it means class 3, Sociology; division 3, Economics; section 7, Protection and free trade; but the number alone is enough to class the book or find it, for either classifier or reader. If he had looked under P for protection, or F for free trade, or D for duties, or C for customs, or under any other leading word relating to his subject, he would have been referred to 337, or some one of its subdivisions.

Had he looked for 'railroad' he would have found after it 22 separate entries, each preceded by a word or phrase indicating the phase of the subject in the scheme. A book on railroads may treat of the desirability of government ownership, control etc. and then is clearly a question of social science; or it may be a practical handbook for an employee, ex-



## *Decimal Classification*

plaining business methods of railroading, running trains, handling freight, etc. when it is as clearly one of the useful arts. The classifier knows to which of these heads his book belongs, and the reader knows in which of its faces he wishes to examine the subject. Moreover, 3 and 6 beginning the numbers clearly indicate character of each class. But even if significance of these figures is entirely disregarded, no confusion results, for, on consulting the numbers in catalog, in scheme, or on shelves the difference is clearly seen. In other cases, it is more useful to keep books on the same subject together, though treated from different standpoints. A glance at the Index tells either reader or classifier which plan has been adopted.

All topics in blackface type in Index are further divided in Tables, where one may see the subheads. This saves reprinting all these subdivisions, which would increase Index bulk many-fold; e.g. if one having a book on 'prison labor' looks in the Index for 'Convict labor' or 'Prison contracts', he finds at once its special number 331.51; but if, on the other hand he thinks to look only for general subject 'Labor', he finds in blackface type the entry 'Labor, political economy, 331', and turning to Tables he finds under 331 the subdivision '331.51, Convict labor', the exact topic in hand.

The greatest objection to a class catalog has always been the difficulty in knowing just where to class a book and just where to look for it when again wanted. Different librarians, or the same librarian at different times, class the same or similar books in widely different places. Where one man did all the work for many years, there was a degree of uniformity; but even then there was danger of looking at the same book at different times from different viewpoints, thus causing confusion. When the daily press is full of one face of a subject, tendency is strong to class all books on this subject from current viewpoint; and next year, if a different side of this same subject is before the public, there is same tendency to class books from new viewpoint, thereby separating similar books and bringing together books on different faces. But fortunately, practical usefulness does not require that the ideas of this or that one be followed, but only that books of same character be always put in same place, and that there be some means of knowing readily what that place is. The Relative Index, with its catchwords, was designed and is found in use to meet both these requirements, for it insures that books on same face of any subject coming before the classifiers shall be assigned to same place, and that any reader seeking these books shall be referred instantly to that

## *Melvil Dewey's introduction*

place. If this is dun, all requirements of a good clasification ar fild. If it is not dun, the sistem is a failure; for the only real test of any skeme is its helpfulness to its uzers.

Sum prominent opponents of clast catalogs admit that the Relativ Subject Index, in deciding where to clas a book at first and where to look for it ever afterwards, has removed their strongest objections. Certainly it wud be imposibl to make an Index more compact or eazier of reference.

This Index allows a great part of the work of clasifying to be dun in advance by experts in larj central libraries with ampl resources, thus securing, at a mere fraction of uzual cost, better and more uniform results than wud be posibl to the ordinary clasifyer and reducing labor to much narrower limits than ever before.

To these thousands of subjects hav been carefully assynd their individual numbers, many of them after long consideration and consultation with specialists. No one person is lerned enuf to clas wizely books on all subjects and syences; but botanists can assyn all botanic subjects to the ryt number, mathematicians all mathematical topics, and thus the Index wil in time becum as accurate as the best skolarship of the day can make it. Even if the decision reacht is not always wizest, all practical purposes ar servd, becauz, as each clasifyer copies the number from same Index, all books on that subject ar together; and, as each reader get his number from this same Index, he goes directly to the book he seeks.

**What Relativ Index includes** The Index, containing 43,000 entries and constantly being enlarjd by ading new subjects, aims to include all topics exprest or implyd in Tables, together with every corresponding sinonim likely to be sought, but does not include most names of cuntries, towns, animals, plants etc. except when mentiond in Tables; e.g. it can not enumerate all species of trilobites, but when clasifyer has found from proper reference books that Remopleurides is a trilobite, the Index sends him to 565.393, and he can clas his monograf on that subject.

**Tables** The essential complement of the Subject Index is the Tables of Clasification, so mapt out as to show in 4 ways—i.e. by size of typ, face of typ, indention, and number of figures prefix—each subject's rank in the Clasification.

The field of knowlej is divided into 9 main clases, numberd 1 to 9, and cyclopedias, periodicals etc. so jeneral as to belong to *none* of these clases ar markt 0 (naught) and form a 10th clas; e.g. clas 1 is library of Filosofy; clas 5, library of Syence; clas 9, History, etc. These special

## Decimal Classification

classes or libraries are then considered independently, and each is separated again into 9 special divisions of the main subject, numbered 1 to 9, as were the classes, general works belonging to no division having 0 for their division number. Thus 59 is division 9 (Zoology) of class 5 (Science). A 3d division is then made by separating each of these divisions into 10 sections, numbered in same way with 0 and the 9 digits; and this decimal subdivision is repeated, till it secures as many subsections as may be needed in any topic. Thus 513 is section 3 (Geometry) of division 1 (Mathematics) of class 5 (Pure science). This number, giving class, division, section and subsection, if any, is called the class number, and is applied to every book and pamphlet belonging to the library. All geometries are thus numbered 513, all mineralogies 549, and so throughout the library, all books on any given subject bear the number of that subject in this scheme.

Where 0 occurs before the decimal point in a class number, it has its normal zero value. Thus a book numbered 510 is class 5, division 1, but no section; i.e. treats of division 51 (Mathematics) in general, and is limited to no 1 section, as is geometry, marked 513. 500 indicates a treatise on science in general, limited to no division. 0 occurring in the 1st place would in the same way show that the book was limited to no class; e.g. a general cyclopedia which treats of all 9 classes.

With the same 'general' sense, 0 is often used to indicate change in character of subdivision, meaning in this case 'basis of subdivision changes at this point', i.e. figure (or figures) following 0 apply to what precedes in general, e.g. 505 indicates science in general treated in the form of a periodical. In history, classification is by countries (i.e. *jeographic*) and as minute geographic divisions are needed for travels, guide books, and various other uses, the figures 1-9 are generally used for geographic subdivisions and again for further geographic subdivisions, as far as needed, and 0 followed by another figure for time division, i.e. the figures before the 0 indicate the locality as a whole, while figures after the 0 indicate the special time at which the history of the locality is being considered; e.g. 942.06, consisting of 942 (*jeographic* division) and 06 (*time* division), means history of England in general in time of the Stuarts, while 942.6 and 942.67 mean respectively history of eastern England and history of Essex co., to which the same time division may be added, giving 942.606 and 942.6706 as the history of those localities under the Stuarts. As any subdivision may, by adding figures 1-9, be given 9 further subdivisions, any desired degree of minuteness may be secured in classing special subjects.

First subdivision under many rubrics is used for General and theoretic

## *Melvil Dewey's introduction*

questions to provide for such specific topics as are common to all or most of the principal subdivisions of a relatively broad subject.

**Coordination** Theoretically division of every subject into just 9 parts is absurd. Practically it is desirable to classify as minutely as possible, without use of added figures; and decimals, on which our scheme hinges, allow 9 divisions as readily as fewer. This has proved wholly satisfactory in practice, though apparently destroying proper coordination in some places.

Where more than 9 divisions are needed the difficulty is commonly obviated by grouping on single numbers the subjects most closely allied, or by assigning 1-8 specifically to most important subjects and grouping minor subjects on 9 as 'Other.' Since any of these groups may be further subdivided for specific topics as needed, provision is thus made for an unlimited number of subjects.

As in every scheme, many minor subjects are under general heads to which they do not strictly belong. In some cases, these heads are printed in distinctive type; e.g. 829 Anglo-Saxon, under English literature. The rule has been to assign these subjects to the most nearly allied heads, or where it was thought they would be most useful. The only alternative was to omit them altogether. If any such omission occurs, it will be supplied as soon as discovered, for we intend to provide in the Tables a place for every known topic.

**New subjects** A new topic is always closely related to some existing head. If there is no blank number available it is combined with the head nearest allied, and, when important enough, distinct provision for the new number is made by adding another decimal. The system is thus capable of unlimited expansion, and can never break down for lack of room for growth.

**Choice and arrangement of heads** Detailed explanation of selection and arrangement of the many thousand heads would be tedious; but everywhere philosophical theory and accuracy have yielded to practical usefulness. The impossibility of making a satisfactory classification of all knowledge as preserved in books, has been appreciated from the first, and theoretical harmony and exactness have been repeatedly sacrificed to practical requirements.

**Sequence of allied subjects** Wherever practicable, heads have been so arranged that each subject is preceded and followed by most nearly allied subjects, and thus added convenience is secured both in class catalogs and on shelves; e.g. Building (690) follows Mechanical trades (680) at end of Useful arts, and Architecture follows at beginning of Fine arts.

Students of Biology (570) find fossil life or Paleontology (560) before, and vegetable life or Botany (580) after, this followed in turn by animal

## Decimal Classification

life or Zoology (590), ending with Mammals (599); while Useful arts (600) begin with human Anatomy (611) under Medicin, thus giving a regular growth from fossil plant thru vejetabl and animal kingdoms to living man.

**Cachtitles** In naming hedings, strict accuracy has often been sacrificed to brevity, for short familiar titles ar more important than that terms chosen shud express fully and exactly carактер of all books clast under them. Many subjects, apparently omitted, wil be found in the Index, assynd, with allyd subjects, to a hed which bears the name of the most important only. Reference to the Index wil decide at once most doubtful points.

**Form distinctions** The clasification is mainly by *subject* or *content* regardless of form but an aded form distinction for jeneral treatises is found practicaly useful.

Thus, in Syence there ar many compends, dictionaries, essays, periodicals and socyeties, treating of Syence in jeneral, and so having 0 for the division figure, but treating it under different forms, and therefore divided into sections according to this form: 501 for filosofy or theories of Syence, 502 for compends, 503 for dictionaries, etc. This treatment is as nearly as practicabl, uniform in all clases. Creasy's '15 decisiv battles' is 904, the 1st figure being 9, becauz the book is clearly history; the 2d figure 0, becauz limited to *no* division of clas 9; and the 3d figure 4, becauz the book is a colection of essays.

The 10 main clases ar regularly divided by form, e.g. 809, history of literature in jeneral. For divisions, sections or subsections having *enuf* jeneral material to make such division advizabl, form numbers, preceded by 0, may be uzed (e.g. 820.9, history of English literature; 821.09, history of English poetry), except when 0 and the following number hav been otherwise assynd, e.g. 821.04 English lirc poetry, *not* essays on English poetry; 942.05 England in time of the Tudors, *not* a periodical on English history. A history of English literature is 820.9, not 809, becauz every book belongs to the *most specific hed* that wil contain it; so 809 is limited to histories of literature in jeneral. Books treating of many clases, such as jeneral cyclopedias or periodicals, go in clas 0 and ar then divided by form into cyclopedias, periodicals, socyeties or newspapers.

Do not confuze form number 07, meaning 'methods of study or teaching', with number for same subject under 375, which is for its value as a means of education, or for its curriculum place.

These form distinctions ar introduced at the beginning of the clas be-

### *Melvil Dewey's introduction*

cauz the number of jeneral works is larj, and these 1st numerals wud otherwise be unuzed.

Form divisions always hav the same set of numbers, preceded by 0, i.e. 1 filosofy, theories etc.; 2 compends, outlines; 3 dictionaries, cyclopedias; 4 essays, lectures, letters etc.; 5 periodicals, magazines etc.; 6 so-cyeties, associations, transactions, reports etc.; 7 education, study, teaching, training etc.; 8 poligrafy, colections etc.; 9 history. Thus a periodical on a subject has the subject number followd by 05; e.g. a periodical on public helth, 614.05.

But if the number alredy ends in 0, 0 is not repeated before form-division figures; e.g. a zoologic magazine is 590.5, not 590.05.

**Minute clasing** On first publication in 1876, a common criticism was that 1000 heds cud never be successfully uzed, however desirabl so close clasification myt be. As soon, however, as actual experience proved it as eazy to uze 1000 heds in the new sistem as 100 in the old, the obviously great practical value of close clasing led one uzer after another to urj strongly publication of more subdivisions. Minute as ar many now givn there ar none that sum hav not askt for and almost none that others hav not declared needless. Subdivisions ar made in such a way that one may uze all, or any part and ignore the rest without difficulty or confuzion, thus allowing each to uze minute subdivisions where he wishes or needs them, without being forst into refinements in subjects where he has few books or litl interest. Since the degrec to which any skeme shal be applyd is optional with each clasifyer and close analisis is useful to everyone in defining content or in clarifying differences between related subjects, even elaborate skemes ar printed in ful if no essential objection has been bro't against them by the best qualifyd critics. The 1st 3 figures only may be uzed when preferd, and the rest show the scope of the subject. On many topics minute subsections ar printed simply for this purpose, and for use in indexing periodicals and socyety transactions, and in keeping notes. Note typ is uzed for topics clearly useful only to specialists or as showing scope. Many others probably belonging in same category, if doubtful ar in regular typ of their grade.

The advantaj of close clasing is unquestiond, if the uzer knows just what it is. With this plan it is not only practicabl, but comparatively eazy. If there ar only 10 books on a givn topic, it is useful to hav them in groups among themselves, for otherwise they wud hav only accidental order, which is of servis to no one. A reader wishing a specific book shud go, not to shelvs, but to catalog, where he can find its place quickest. If

## Decimal Classification

he wishes a specific subject, he is sent instantly to its exact place by the Subject Index. If he wishes to study the library's resources at the shelves, he will be *greatly helped by minute clasings*. A teacher showing his pupil the material on any subject wud, if there wer only 20 books, surely *put together* those covering same points, even if there wer only 2. Much more shud librarians group closely their greater collections, that readers may gain sumthing of the advantajes of an experienst gyd.

Thus every specialist has his own special library. If a student of syence in jeneral, he is sent to clas 5; if his department is zoolojy, his library is 59; if his specialty is shels, he finds all works and references on that subject in library 594. Whether a specialist needs it or not, every subject, being a library by itself, shows resources and wants as no catalog can. A catalog can not be made to take satisfactorily the place of handling books themselvs. This advantaj weighs most in a colej or socyety library, where many go to the shelves; but even if only librarians ar admitted, close clasings is worth its cost becauz of aded power givn.

**Tentativ tables** More and more minute subdivisions hav been specially cald for til the 1000 heds of 1873, with 2600 index entries in edition 1, hav increast til they command 43,000 index entries, in edition 12. After getting many sugjestions, sumtimes hundreds, for aditions or further subdivisions of sum subject, we draft a skeme and test it on a sampl colection. To get larjer cooperation in perfecting it we sumtimes print the new draft in Tables without including its new words in Index, so every uzer wil see what is proposed and if interested may test it on his own work and submit sugjestions for improvement. Then in the next edition, with this great help, needed revisions can be made and all new words inserted in Index.

As result of agreement between Institut International de Bibliographie and ourselvs we hav included in edition 12 many I I B expansions, while sum other expansions recently prepared by us hav not yet, for lak of time, been submitted to I I B and must therefore, strictly speaking, be regarded as tentativ til accepted by that body, but as these expansions wer developpt with view to such acceptance we look for litl chanje, and their larj number has made it impractical to designate them.

**Nemonics** [mnemonics] Heds hav sumtimes been arranjed to secure nemonic aid in numbering and finding books without the Index; thus China has always number 1. In Ancient history, it has the 1st section, 931; in Modern history, under Asia, it has 951. Similarly the Indian number is 4; English, 2; German, 3; French, 4; Italian, 5; Spanish, 6; Russian,

### *Melvil Dewey's introduction*

7; European, 4; Asian, 5; African, 6; North American, 7; South American, 8; and so for all divisions by languages or countries. Italian 5, for instance, is in 035, 055, 065, 450, 850, 945, and other many others. This mnemonic principle is specially prominent in Filology and Literature, and their divisions, and in *form* distinctions used in the 1st 9 sections of each class. Philosophy, methods or theory, occurring as a head, is always 1; dictionaries and cyclopedias are 3; essays, 4; periodicals, 5; associations, societies and institutions, 6; education, 7; bibliography or collections, 8; history, 9. In numerous cases several minor heads are grouped together as Other, usually numbered 9.

While Italian is always 5, 5 is by no means always Italian. Grammar is 5, Periodicals are 5, Asia is 5, Oratory is 5, etc. Even were it possible, to limit 5 to Italian would waste numbering material, and results would not justify cost. The purpose is to give practical aid, not to follow fanciful theory. A classifier marking a French grammar, remembers that all Filology begins with 4, and, as French is always 4 and grammar 5, he knows the number *must* be 445. Italian (5), poetry (1), is plainly 851 with no danger of being mistaken for 'poetry of grammar' or 'theory of Asia,' because the numbers also have those meanings. This feature is an *aid*, not regular method, and in all doubtful cases one refers at once to Index or Tables. Suggested difficulties are usually creations of ingenious theorists and not outgrowth of practical experience.

Wherever practical, this mnemonic principle is used in subdividing sections. 558, Jeology of South America, is subdivided by adding the *sections* of 980, History of South America. Jeology of Brazil then *must* be 558.1: mnemonically, the 1st 5 is Science; 2d 5, Jeology; 8, South America; and 1, Brazil. Any library attendant or regular user of the scheme recognizes 558.1 at a glance as Jeology of Brazil. This mnemonic feature occurs in several hundred places, and is of great practical utility in numbering and finding books without catalog or index, and in determining character of any book simply from its call number. Extent of use is shown in 5 tables appended to main Index, giving alphabetic lists of (1) subjects, with class number of each, which may be subdivided geographically; (2) form divisions, with figures to be added in making such division; (3) languages, with their class numbers, which may be further subdivided filologically by adding figures given in Index table 4; (4) filologic divisions, with figures to be added in subdividing any language in Index table 3; (5) literatures, with their class numbers, which may be further subdivided by adding form divisions from English literature.



## Decimal Classification

As in close subdivision, wish for mnemonic correspondence has never outweighed any claim of greater usefulness. In many cases choice between numbers was hardly perceptible: e.g. whether in filology order should be French, Spanish, Italian, or French, Italian, Spanish. In such cases mnemonic numbers were given preference, and 54 years use has proved this wisest. Great gain, beside ease of remembering, results from this *uniform* use of same numbers with same meaning whenever similar division is made. Wherever division by languages or countries is made, it follows filology or history numbers, and in Tables, the note 'Divided like 900' fully takes the place of reprinting all history subdivisions. This saving justifies use of these numbers in sum cases, even where a somewhat different order might seem more nearly fitted to the special case; e.g. in 342, constitutional history of Canada (342.71) and Australia (342.94) next that of England (342.42) would be better than our order, which separates them both from England and from each other. Still by following the usual 'procrustean' numbers, many topics can be subdivided minutely without further study, by simply applying history or language subdivisions. A single illustration of the astonishing power this principle gives will suffice, though thousands might be given: 016 is 'Bibliography of special subjects, divided like main classification', therefore by aid of tables under 581, 016.581974742 readily translates itself to all users into 'Bibliography of flora of Albany co., N Y'. While these 12 figures might never be used, if a specialist wishes minute division, it is ready to his hand, conforms to Index, and will be clearly understood by anyone familiar with our plan. A specialist would in such cases probably adopt a contraction for his long number, and use in full only the minute divisions.

**Decimalism** Utility has not been sacrificed in order to force subjects on the 'decimal procrustean bed'. *Decimals have been used as servants, not as masters.* When subjects are combined or separated into just 10 heads, it has been from no necessity of the scheme, but because it seemed most useful, all things considered. In many cases there were originally only 3 to 7 heads instead of 10; but usually, during years of testing before publication, it proved advisable to divide some of these heads, as it took no added space or labor. On the other hand, there were cases where more than 10 heads seemed more natural; and, as any number up to 100 is provided for by adding one decimal, this was done in most cases. As only 1000 sections were first printed, it was often necessary to put 2 or more closely allied topics together under the same number, as must still be done whenever a library limits number of figures used to 3; but during 54

### Melvil Dewey's introduction

years use subdivisions hav multiplyd, til now nearly every topic has its own special number. The skeme givs us for each topic, as it wer, a case of 9 pijeonholes, with a larj space at the top; and we uze them as every practical business man uzes such pijeonholes about his desk. If, as in 220, there ar les than 9 main topics, it is often convenient to uze the extra spaces for subdivisions. Thus we keep separate, under Old Testament, historic, poetic, and profetic books; and under New Testament, the Gospels, Epistls and Apocalips. Spaces ar there, and it is convenient to uze them for jeneral works on those groups—a reason that experience proves a good anser to the charj of lak of coordination, tho indention and typ in Tables make that charj baseless. Then in 280, having more than 9 topics, if we ar uzing only 3 figures we put Congregational in same space with Presbyterian, and small denominations together in the last box, just as a business man puts his papers in his pijeonholes. If he insisted on having a different case made to order for each use, it wud cost over twice as much; he cud not group them together or interchanje them, and they wud not fit offis shelves.

There has been perverse misapprehension of this feature, and critics oftenest stumbl over 'procrustean 10'. In fact, this is an element of usefulness. A railroad also has the fault that it is procrustean in its path and in its times. It can not cum to yur door nor wait yur convenience, as does the automobile; it can not go to the fields for its loads of produce; it can not turn out for obstacks; but *becauz it is procrustean* it can do its larj-scale work much better and quicker and cheaper. The paralel cud be fairly extended to many other cases, but any tho'tful mind wil recognize that the economy and eaz of working the Decimal sistem ar larjly dependent on its being procrustean. To this we owe much of the great simplicity of the Relativ Index, many nemonic correspondences, and the useful 0 to indicate form and period divisions. Our intersecting lines of space and time in History, etc., of languaj and form in Filolojy and Literature, and scores of similar advantajes, depend wholly on 'procrustean 10', or else on sum other number equally procrustean, but lacking the advantajes of exact correspondence to our arithmetic.

**Relativ location** Economy and simplicity cald not only for the Subject Index, but also for sum plan of consolidating the 2 sets of marks previously uzed; one teling *what* subject a book treated, the other *where* the book was shelvd. By relativ location and decimal clas numbers we make our simpl arabic numerals tel of each book and pamflet, both *what* it is, and *where* it is.

## Decimal Classification

In fixt relation, to find book, pamphlet, clipping or note is like finding a man when yu know his town, street, hous and room.

In relativ location it is like finding a soldier if yu know his army, division, rejiment and cumpany. If John Smith is 3d man in 2d row of Cumpany B, rejiment 69, 4th division, whether the rejiment is in camp, on parade or on march, his place is not determind by the bit of ground on which he stands, but by his relation to the rest of the army. If soldiers ar ded and in the cemetery they ar as eazily found by fixt as by relativ location. But if the army is alive and militant, as every library or private working colection o't to be, its resources shud be *findabl* whether in camp, on march or in action.

In arranjing books on shelvs, the formerly common absolute or fixt location by shelf and book number is wholly abandond, relativ location by clas and book number being our chief feature. Accompanying clas number is the book number, which prevents confuzion of different books on the same subject. In finding books, numbers markt on baks ar followd, the upper being the clas and the lower the book number. Clas is found in its numeric order amung clases, just as shelf is found in fixt sistems. Shelvs ar not numbrd, as increasing different departments, opening new rooms, and any arranjing of clases to bring books most circulated nearest delivery desk, wil at different times bring different clas numbers on any givn shelf. New books, as reciev'd, ar numberd and put in place, in same way that new titles ar aded to card catalog.

Thus all books on any givn subject stand together, and no aditions or chanjes ever separate them. Not only ar found together all books on subject sought, but most nearly allyd subjects precede and follow, they in turn being preceded and followd by other allyd subjects as far as practicabl. Readers not having access to shelvs find short titles arranjed in same order in shelflist, and ful titles, imprints, aded subject entries, references, notes etc. in clast catalog.

Parts of sets, and books on same or allyd subjects, ar never separated as they ar sure to be, sooner or later, in a library arranjed on fixt plan, unless it be frequently rearranjed and recatalogd, a procedure too expensiv even for very welthy libraries. Relativ sistem clas and book numbers remain unchanjed thru all chanjes of shelving, bildings or order of clases.

Amung hundreds of points raizd by librarians as to its practical workings and usefulness, the only one in which it was not shown to be equal

## *Melvil Dewey's introduction*

or superior to earlier systems was that in this relative location a book which this year stands, e.g. at the end of a certain shelf, may not be on that shelf at all another year, because of uneven growth of parts of the library. This slight objection, however, inheres in any system where books are arranged by subjects, rather than by shelves, windows, doors, and similar non-intellectual distinctions.

**Sizes on shelves** Most libraries have abandoned close distinction of sizes. It is true that this distinction saves a little space, but at far too great a cost; for every distinction of sizes makes a parallel classification. If books are grouped in 5 sizes, one must look in 5 places before he can be sure of having seen them all.

It is better to shelf octavos and all smaller books together in 1 series, and arrange in parallel libraries only quartos and folios, which are too large to stand on regular shelves, showing series in which any oversize book is put by a size letter prefix to the book or class number; e.g. 749 qA or q749 A shows that book A on Artistic furniture is too large for regular shelves, and so is placed in q or quarto series. Or use a wood or pasteboard dummy to show location of a book not in its regular place. But, however solved, size problems are no more troublesome with Decimal than with any other classification.

## **Catalogs**

Any system of catalogs may be used with this scheme, but the 2 essentials of even the simplest system are name or author catalog and shelf-list. The chief uses of this system for catalogs are for shelflists and for class catalogs on cards.

**Name catalog** In this, arranged strictly by names of authors and of persons or places written about, the class number holds a subordinate place, yet is constantly useful. If printed, it appears in a single column as in the Relative Index, and where there is no subject catalog one can rapidly pick out books on any topic by glancing down column for class number wanted.

**Shelflist** Here class number is again highly important, as it makes this list the most useful form of brief subject catalog, giving author's name and brief title of every book on specific subject bearing that class number.

**Class catalog** In the class card catalog the classification is mapped out

## Decimal Classification

abov the cards by projecting gyds, making reference almost instantaneous. Subjects ar arranged in 1, 2, 3 order of their decimal subject numbers exactly as in clas tables, and cards of each subject ar then subarranged alfabetically by authors (or, in sum cases, e.g. biograpy or local history, by subjects) or cronologicly, or by book numbers.

The printed subject catalog on this plan is also most compact and satisfactory in use. Under each clas number ar givn the library's resources on that subject, the heding giving, for convenience, name as wel as number of subject; e.g. '513 Jeometry'. Jeneral notes ar printed in finer typ under jeneral heds, and a relativ index at the end shows just where to open the book to find any topic. As clas numbers ar put in place of page numbers, this index serves for *any* catalog, list or library arranged on this plan.

**Dictionary catalog** The dictionary catalog is as eazily uzed with this sistem as with any other, and is at present on the crest of its wave of popularity. Its failure to meet skolars' requirements has often been pointed out. While far the best for an index, it stil leavs much need of a good clast catalog. But difficulties both of making and of uzing a clast catalog wer formerly so great that there was a conviction among many librarians that notwithstanding its great advantajes, the idea must be abandond as impracticabl, tho other eminent authorities ably argued that the poorest clast catalog was better than one unclast, and that any use of such a catalog was in itself a lesson in bibliograpy. Now that the serius difficulties of making a good clast catalog hav been so larjly removed by the simpl arabic numerals and Relativ Index of this decimal plan, the merits of clast over the more common dictionary sistems ar dubly prominent.

The Subject Index of this sistem is a skeleton dictionary catalog, covering everything not fully covered by the 'name catalog'. Insted of giving book titles under each hed, the number *refers* to all those titles simply and directly. The index may be made on any of the varius dictionary plans, with all the advantajes it may possess. To us, simplest seemd best. We giv only short heds with brief indication in doubtful cases of viewpoint taken in assyning clas numbers.

We therefore unite advantajes of dictionary and clast catalogs, not by mingling them and so losing much of simplicity of one and as much of excellence of the other, but by really uzing both, each with its own merits. Only one set of titles is needed, for our clas numbers make this availabl for both catalogs.

## Advantajes

**Shelvs** The sistem on the shelvs is the simplest form of relativ location. Many libraries hav adopted it for shelf arrangement, where catalogs recently printed, or larj investment in another plan, made it too expensiv to chanje anything else.

**Shelflist** By simply printing the shelflist at any time an admirabl subject clas list is made for any topic on which there may be present interest; e.g. if a town contemplates a new water supply, interest is greatly stimulated, and everything about waterworks is wanted. The librarian has only to open his shelflist to 628.1 and 352.6 and print it. This great advantaj is gaind with but slyt variation from the form found best in its regular use as a shelflist for examination of shelvs to detect losses and misplacements.

**Accession book** Where shelf mark colums ar uzed, tables of number of books aded on each subject ar redily made. A glance shows caracter, by subjects, of books aded during any givn period; for, wherever this clas number occurs, it tels not only *where* the book is shelvd but also *what* it is about.

**Pamflets** These clas numbers applyd to pamflets, whether catalogd or uncatalogd, hav proved specially satisfactory. Number is writn on upper left corner, and pamflets ar shelvd in pamflet boxes, side by side with books on same subject, or they may be kept in vertical files or on special shelvs divided every 10 cm by perpendicular partitions, or, if preferd, each pamflet may be put in exact place as if bound. Litl expense is incurd, and yet entire pamflet resources of the library on any subject can be produced almost instantly. The immense advantajes of this clast arrangement, both in economy and usefulness, wil be appreciated by every keeper of a pamflet colection. A name or author catalog is made on slips if time allows. The pamflets themselvs ar the best subject catalog. Placing all material under its clas number on regular shelvs, has the great advantaj of enabling anyone examining a subject to see all resources in 1 place, so far as posibl.

**Sale duplicates** The same arrangement is admirabl here. Duplicates ar so constantly chanjing that a catalog can hardly be afforded, and a subject arrangement on any other plan that this is difficult to maintain. Stil, it is very important that there be sum means of knowing what duplicates there ar on any givn subject. By simply penciling clas numbers on books

## *Decimal Classification*

and arranging these numerically, it is possible to give the information more quickly, cheaply and satisfactorily than in any other way.

**Charging system** Class numbers may be used for charging with the following advantages: Minute statistics of circulation can be made by simply counting charges and entering the number for each class on a report sheet. If filing is done by call numbers, as either a primary or a secondary consideration, whereabouts of any book lent or amount of use of any subject is quickly found; file gives an up-to-date record of all books lent in any subject; e.g. cards filed under 52 show for Astronomy or those under 822 for English drama just how many and what books are out and who has them. Such a circulation table, always at hand, and with no extra expense or labor, since it is a natural part of the system, is highly prized by all interested in character of general use of the library, while it can by trifling labor be converted into a permanent record by entering on a report sheet. If a reader's card is used, character of the individual's reading is here shown and never before has so much attention as now been given to educating readers' tastes.

**Subject references** For these it has peculiar advantages. Many users are undertaking analyses and cross references to an extent hitherto thought wholly or almost impossible. These few figures tell as clearly as a long heading exactly what the reference is, while gain in ease of use is even greater than in time and space saved in recording. The clearness and directness of the method aid wonderfully in this work. References to transactions, or chapters in essays, may be made in the most compact and usable form.

**Recataloging or reclassifying** When Amherst College in 1873 first adopted this plan and began to recatalog its library, it was found (as in hundreds of cases since) entirely practicable to change to the new system gradually, as means allowed, without interfering in any appreciable degree with circulation. Methods employed for thus changing without interrupting use must vary according to different conditions. The essential feature is enough distinction between old and new call numbers to be easily recognized by attendants. If old call numbers consist wholly of figures, the initial letter of the Cutter author numbers furnishes this requisite. All numbers of figures only are then recognized as old, and all numbers containing a letter as in the new system.

**Adaptability** The system is so flexible that it adapts itself to almost any circumstances. It may be used with proportionate results in almost any one of its applications without the others. It may be applied to pamphlets alone, bringing order out of chaos, and solving this vexatious and vexing prob-

## *Melvil Dewey's introduction*

lem; or it may be used for catalogs, leaving shelf arrangement as before; or it may be applied to shelves, while the catalog is dictionary or any other type.

**Arabic numerals** Arabic numerals can be written and found quicker and with less danger of confusion or mistake than any other symbols. Therefore roman numerals, capitals and small letters, and similar symbols found in most classification systems are entirely discarded, and by exclusive use of arabic numerals throughout shelves, and indexes, catalogs and other records, there is secured the greatest accuracy, economy and convenience. This advantage is specially prominent in comparison with systems where author's name or the title must be written, in calling for or charging books and in making references.

**Endowment of special departments** Another great advantage is peculiar adaptability to special endowments. One specially interested in any subject can often be induced to endow that subject, thus providing for buying each year all the best publications.

If John Doe is specially interested in opera, the library says: 'Give us \$1000 as endowment of 782, and we will call it the 'Doe Library of Dramatic Music'. There will be found every book, pamphlet, newspaper clipping, or manuscript that the library has or can get on this subject. Gifts from others will be placed in the Doe Library, the donor's name being given on the bookplate, and for generations to come every person interested in opera will be grateful for your foundation'. In this way 782 is assigned to John Doe, and his pride is stimulated in developing it. If another man with larger means and interest will endow the whole subject of music 780, there is no difficulty or impropriety in including 782, the Doe Dramatic Music Library, as the 2d section of 780, the Roe Music Library.

This is one of the most promising fields for development, for almost every library has among its readers some specially interested, who if properly approached would endow some topic, even if a small one, and this relative location, with its definite number expressing just the ground covered, may be of great service in working up these special endowments.

**Summary** To sum up its claims: It is by far most inexpensive; easily understood, remembered and used; practical rather than theoretic; brief and familiar in nomenclature; susceptible of partial and gradual adoption without confusion; convenient for arranging pamphlets, sale duplicates, and notes, and for indexing, and in keeping statistics and checks for books off shelves; a satisfactory adaptation of card catalog principle to shelves. It



## *Decimal Classification*

shelves books compactly; uses simple and few symbols; can be expanded, without limit and without confusion or wasted labor, both in catalogs and on shelves or in catalogs alone; checks thoroughly and conveniently against mistakes; admits readily numerous cross references; is unchangeable in its call numbers, and so gives them in all places where needed; in its Index affords an answer to the greatest objection to class catalogs, and was the 1st satisfactory union of the advantages of class and dictionary systems.

### **Suggestions to users**

Hold book in right hand and turn with left, then both class numbers and index heads show most plainly on left margins and reference is quicker when eye follows left pages only.

**Numeration** In thinking or speaking of class numbers, to avoid confusion always divide at the decimal point, and name it; e.g. read 942.27 'nine forty-two, point twenty-seven', never 'ninety-four two twenty-seven'. If 'point' were omitted, the ear might readily interpret 270.2 (two seventy, two) as 272, while 'two seventy, point two' can never be misunderstood.

### **Plan of book**

**Tables** First page shows 10 classes into which all topics are divided. Next page shows 9 divisions of each of these 10 classes, in a birdseye view of the whole scheme on a single page. Then follows a sinoptic view of 10 pages, one for each class, showing the 9 sections of each division of each class.

Following these sinopses is the complete classification, which repeats in proper order, classes, divisions and sections, with all subsections. For convenience of users, who thus get fuller and clearer ideas of the field which each number covers, synonymous terms, examples, brief notes, dates and various catchwords are often added to main heads. Therefore all references to numbers **should be looked up in the full tables** of subsections, using summaries only when a merely sinoptic view is wished.

**Index** Next an alphabetic index of all heads refers by class number to exact place of each in Tables. This Index includes also, as far as found, all synonyms or alternative names for heads, and any other entries likely to help a reader find his subject more readily. Even a user who knows just

## *Melvil Dewey's introduction*

where to turn to his subject in the Tables, may, by consulting the Index, be put on the trak of valuabl allyd matter which he myt otherwise overlook.

### **Use of Tables and Index**

**Familiarity with Clasification** Get a jeneral knowlej of the skeme by lerning the 10 main clases [yu wil soon know the 100 divisions also without special study], so that yu can tel to what subject a givn number belongs from its 1st figure, without referring to Tables. Specific knowlej of minute divisions wil cum gradually, but rapidly, from use. Assyn numbers by uzing Tables alone, and then always verify yur result by the Index. Thus yu wil more rapidly acquire knowlej of the Clasification and facility in its use. To do this, decide first to which of the 10 clases the subject belongs; next, take that clas as if there wer no other, and decide to which of its 10 divisions the subject belongs; then, in the same way, select section and subsection, thus running down yur topic in its grooves, which becum 10-fold narrower at each step. **As a chek against error, even tho familiar with the skeme, uze Index freely.**

**Subject of a book** To find this out, consult:

1 **Title**, since it is jeneraly chosen to show what the book is about, but as many titles ar vague or misleading, never clas from title alone but always examin also

2 **Contents table**, which is best gyd to true subject. If there is no contents table read

3 **Hedings of chapters**, or marjinal topics

4 **Preface** Unless alredy certain, glance thru this to cach author's viewpoint and verify impressions gaird from title and contents

5 **Reference books** If preceding means fail, consult relyabl bibliographies, clast and annotated catalogs, biografic dictionaries, histories of literature, cyclopedias, reviews etc. for information about caracter of book.

6 **Subject matter** If 5 shorter methods abuv fail, examin subject matter of book itself, and if stil in dout, to avoid mistakes, put aside on an 'under consideration' shelf til yu can examin more thuroly or consult

7 **Specialists** Experts ar uzually glad to examin any new books in their departments, enuf to clas them, i.e. to define their true subject and relations. Old ones they know where to put alredy.

Be specially careful when dealing with flexibl terms, e.g. child welfare,

## Decimal Classification

to make sure of the character of its application in that individual book.

After deciding what the book is about, find this subject in Tables, either thru Index or by using Tables directly, which for beginners is a longer process, seldom to be trusted without subsequent reference to Index; e.g. Pollock's *Land laws* myt naturally be clast from Tables alone as '333, Land: ownership; ryts; rent', which seems exactly to fit this book. Index, however, shows 2 numbers, both referring to land laws, but from different viewpoints; i.e. 347.2, legal, and 333, economic. The object of this book, as seen in the preface, is to giv a popular presentation of English statutes pertaining to landholding, not to discuss history and theory of land laws from economist's viewpoint. It should be clast '347.2, Realty', which myt hav been overlookt but for Index.

**Assyning clas numbers** 1 Practical usefulness controls. *Put each book under the subject to the student of which it is most useful*, unless local reasons 'attract' it to a place stil more useful in yur library.

2 *Content* or real subject of which a book treats, and not *form* or accidental wording of title, determins its place. Following this rule, put a filosofy of art with Art, not with Filosofy; a history of mathematics with Mathematics, not with History; for filosofy or history is simply the *form* which these books hav taken. Their true content or subject is Art or Mathematics, and to the student of these subjects they ar most useful.

3 Always remember that the question is not 'where wil one probably look for a certain book', but 'under what subject is the book of greatest value'; e.g. it is of litl consequence whether 'one wud be apt to look' under 595.16 for Darwin's *Formation of vegetable mould*, but of much consequence that one studying erthworms shud find that book in 595.16 Erthworms, since it is chiefly valuabl as a study of erthworms' habits. Anyone wanting that special book shud look for it in catalog under Darwin.

4 Giv every book most specific number which wil contain it. This varies in different libraries according to number of figures uzed, e.g. specific number for 'compulsory vaccination' is 614.4738; but in a library using only 3 figures, 'most specific' number posibl is 614, which must take everything on Public helth.

Sumtimes a library unwizely puts all books of a division together, if but few; e.g. all mathematical works ar markt 510. It takes just as many figures and in most cases just as much labor and if a man wants the 1 calculus in the whole library he has to serch thru perhaps 100 volumes in 510, when otherwise he wud instantly find it standing alone as 517.

### *Melvil Dewey's introduction*

5 'Predominant tendency' or obvious purpose of a book usually decides its number at once. Still a book often treats of 2 or more subjects. In such cases put it where it will be most useful, and make added entries for all subordinate subjects. For a class catalog give the added entry numbers on both bookplate and main subject card as well as on added entry cards.

It is a marked advantage that these added entries, notes etc. may be made from time to time at convenience. It is necessary at first to determine only predominant tendency of book in order to class it; added entries are made whenever found desirable.

Supply these numbers indicating more closely character of book as rapidly as possible, and invite all specialists, in connection with their reading, to call attention to every desirable added topic notice. The numbers take little room, are easily added, and in most cases are very valuable.

6 If 2 subjects have distinct page limits, generally class under 1st and make analytic entry under 2d; but if 2d is decidedly more important or much greater in bulk, class under that, with analytic entry under 1st. Always put a book under 1st subject, unless there is good reason for entering it under another.

7 Consider not only scope and tendency of each book, but also nature and specialties of each library.

Any subject of which a library makes a specialty naturally 'attracts' allied subjects. This influence is strongest in minute classing. To admit this variation, many subjects have in this scheme 2 or more places, according to these different sides; e.g. a book on 'school hygiene', which a medical library puts under 613, has also a place in 371.7, where education specialists require it.

8 If a book treats of a majority of the sections of any division, give it division number, instead of most important section number with added entries. Unless some one section is so prominently treated as to warrant placing the book in it, class a book covering 4 or more sections under division number; e.g. class a volume on light, heat and sound, under heat most fully discussed, with added entries for the others; but if it treats also of mechanics, hydrostatics and pneumatics, class as 530, or general physics, though no mention be made of electricity, magnetism or molecular physics.

9 When a book deals with 2 consecutive and closely allied subjects, generally class with 1st and regard this as including 2d, but if 2d is decidedly predominant, class with this and either disregard 1st or make added entry, according to importance of that portion.

10 To secure uniformity, make for future reference full notes of all

## Decimal Classification

difficulties and decisions, for it is more important to put books on same subject *together* than to put them in a more nearly absolutely correct place. These notes shud be writn on broad marjins of the Clas Tables or in an interleavd copy or on P slips arranjed by clas numbers like a clast catalog.

11 Keep colected works, libraries etc. together, and assyn, like individual books, to most specific hed that wil contain them; or assyn to most prominent of varius subjects treated, with aded entries for others; or, better, separate and clas parts as independent works.

This last practis constantly grows in favor, and many librarians now larjly disregard uniform bindings and 'series' lettering, and, unless contents of volumes ar so connected that they can not be separated, clas each under most specific hed that wil contain it.

12 Clas translations, reviews, keys, analyses, ansers and other books *about* specific books with orijinal book, as being there most useful.

**Number of figures uzed in clas number** Decide this according to circumstances in each library. Small libraries often uze minute subsections beyond 3 figures only in certain divisions like Travel, 913-919, where closer jeografic division is specially needed, and in 400 and 800, when a 4th figure is needed to separate different languajes.

In very small collections 2 figures myt do til growth required further division; but it is economy, and saves handling books again, to uze at least 3 figures at first, even in smallest collections. In larjer or rapidly growing libraries all subdivisions may be uzed for same reason, tho number of books may not then seem to justify it. Whether there ar 1 or 1000 books on any topic, they take no more shelf space if clast minutely, and work is dun once for all. When larj accessions cum, even if a century later, this number wil not hav to be alterd. A library having but 20 books on Education myt think it unwize to uze the ful skeme, but the whole 20 wud go on a singl shelf, and take no more room, and the Index wud refer more exactly to what was wanted. Number of books yu hav on any subject has in this sistem no special weight. In relativ location, any number of consecutiv topics without a book wastes no space on shelvs or in catalogs. Numbers ar merely skipt. This not only does no harm, but has great negativ value, as looking for a number and finding it blank or skipt shows that yu *hav nothing on that subject*—information 2d in value only to finding sumthing, for one need no longer serch.

The practical objection to close clasing is that it givs a longer number, when this is uzed to charj by in a lending library. In a reference library

ful subsections shud always be uzed. Where short numbers ar imperativ, giv ful clas number on another part of the bookplate, not to be uzed in charjing, but as a gyd to contents. Thus when a clasifyer has once examind a book and found out just what it is about, he records it to benefit others.

### **Bilding numbers**

**Jeografic divisions** In dividing by cuntries according to note 'Divided like 930-999', found so often in Tables, ad only the number following initial 9, for this 9 means not locality but simply clas 9, History; e.g. 942, history of England, analyzd is 9 history, 42 England (4 Europe, 2 England). If jeology of England is wanted, ad to 55 (jeology number) 42 (number for England) and yu hav 554.2. History of N Y state is 974.7, of which 747 is locality number; 353.9747, number for N Y state administration, is bilt by ading to number for state administration, 353.9, number for N Y state, 747.

**Languaj and literature** In 890, where directed to 'divide like 490', note that 890, Minor literatures, and 490, Minor languajes, correspond exactly, so that only figures following 49 ar to be aded to 89 to bild a minor literature number; e.g. Polish languaj is 491.85; ading 185 to 89, Minor literatures, givs 891.85 Polish literature. In brief, to form literature from filology numbers substitute 8 for 1st figure, 4; e.g. Sanskrit languaj 491.2, Sanskrit literature 891.2. Under 490, the filologic divisions (dictionaries, grammar etc.), and under 890 the form divisions (poetry, drama etc.) shud be uzed only when clas number represents a *specific* languaj or literature, e.g. 491.7 Russian, but *not* 497 North American, awaiting further division by languaj.

If directed to 'divide like main clasification', as in 016, number for required subject is aded exactly as it stands in Tables; e.g. bibliography of Polish poetry, 016.891851.

Combining numbers in a way not printed in Tables must be dun with great care, or confuzion results. Many uzers, fascinated with the possibilities of the sistem, make combinations more injenius than useful; e.g. 'The horse's foot and how to shoe it' was once markt 636.1682, i.e. blak-smithing number, 682, aded to horse number, 636.1. Horseshoeing is now in Tables as 682.1, while 636.168 means American ponies.

Often a clasifyer ads a figure to show sum distinction. It seems short and desirabl, but later he may find he has shut himself off from uzing

## *Decimal Classification*

sum other division greatly preferd. For his personal aditions, letters or other simbols not numbers shud be uzed. Every aded simbols must be clearly writn in Tables and Index. Never trust memory for decisions.

### **Book numbers**

The call number of a book (number by which it is cald for) jeneraly consists of both clas and book numbers. The same clas number applys to all books on same subject; the book number distinguishes each individual work from all others in that clas, and is the same for all volumes or copies of same work. When a specific volume is wanted the number for that volume must be aded to clas and book numbers to complete the call number. Most important methods of assyning book numbers ar:

**Author numbers** Invention of translation sistems by which a name is represented by its initial, with remaining letters translated into numbers, e.g. Freeman, F85, has led most libraries to arranje books under each clas number alfabeticly by authors, or in local history by towns, or in individual biograpy and bibliograpy by biografees and bibliografees. This keeps together all works by same author or on same town or same biografees, etc. and even in larj clases enables one to find any book redily without consulting catalogs. One great advantaj is that same author has same book number in every subject; i.e. figures ar 'significant' like our clas numbers, and translate themselvs into names. Great practical ne-monic convenience results from this form of book number. Most widely uzed of these translation sistems is C. A. Cutter's, known as 'Cutter numbers', publisht by Library Bureau.

**Special author tables** A 2d method, for authors having special numbers, e.g. Shakspere, 822.33, or Milton, 821.47, is uniform use for such authors, of book numbers A-N, with O-Z assynd on basis of their individual works, as ilustrated under 'Special author tables', on pajes following Relativ Index.

**Time numbers** A 3d arrangement of books under clas numbers is cronologic by date of 1st publication. Its advantaj is in presenting historic development of subject, the book writn erliest being on the left, the latest work on the ryt, and then of any givn book it is evident that all those on the left wer writn before it, all those on the ryt after it. In syence and useful arts this has special value, while in literature author arrangement is better. W. S. Biscoe's translation sistem of dates givs a more compact and satisfactory mark for year than date writn in ful. (For ful

### *Melvil Dewey's introduction*

explanations and table see 'Biscoe time numbers', on pages following Relativ Index)

**Accession order** A 4th arrangement, simpler but otherwise less desirable, is in accession order; 1st book put in a class being numbered 1, and 2d 2, the 3d 3.

It is entirely practicable to use 2, 3 or all 4 of these methods at same time in same library, one peculiarity of the system being the ease with which it may be adapted to almost any special circumstances. The advantages of the chronological numbering are most marked in science and useful arts; the alphabetic is best in classes where names of authors or subjects outrank dates; and special author numbers in cases where class number already indicates author, so corresponding indication in book number would be useless duplication; while the old accession-order plan is good in special collections which must be kept separate and are no longer added to, since here the extreme simplicity of 1, 2, 3 order is secured with no sacrifice. It is still better, if this last method is used, to adopt A, B, C, instead of 1, 2, 3, as 26 instead of 9 books may be marked with 1 character, and chiefly because it is highly desirable that each book number begin with a letter, which can not be mistaken for end of class number if written on same line; e.g. 1st book under 513, if numbered 1, might be so written as to confuse with subsection 513.1, but 513A could not be misinterpreted. If figures are used, take care to write them as a fraction or with separating dash; e.g. 513 or 513-1.

1

### **Variations practicable in adjusting to special local requirements**

Some users assume that adopting Decimal Classification and Relativ Index carries with it other parts of the system used by the author at Amherst, Wellesley or Columbia colleges or in New York State Library. In fact, the plan in each differs somewhat from all the others, and many of the thousands of public and private libraries now using it have adopted still other variations; for special constituency, circumstances and resources of each library must be considered in deciding what is best for it. This decision should be made by one familiar, not only with the library and its needs, but also with all methods of any merit and with comparative ease and cost of introducing them into any given library.

**Cautions** Having decided to adopt this system in its *decimal* form as worked out and printed, determine whether to adopt certain variations,



## Decimal Classification

noted in 1-5 below as practicabl, and in sum cases useful and desirabl. The inexperienst uzer is very likely to feel entirely competent, without reading more than a singl paje of the Tables, regardless of its bearings on hundreds of other places, and without so much as looking at the author's explanations, to institute a series of 'improvements'. Experience shows that nothing cud be more disastrus. It seems a simpl matter to put a topic a line hyer or lower, but in sum cases this may affect over 100 Index entries, and there is no posibl way to be sure of correcting them except by examining each of 43,000 heds. Proposed chanjes, carefully studid out and submitted as improvements, ar frequently shown by our old records to hav been adopted and uzed in the exact form proposed til unforeseen considerations forst us to chanje to the form as printed. Even after years of experience one is not safe in pronouncing on an apparent improvement without consulting voluminus records of previus experiments.

Even sum who hav uzed the sistem longest hav been misled into adopting chanjes which on tryal they wer compeld to reject, going bak to orijinal form at cost and confuzion of 2 chanjes. In so apparently simpl a thing as introducing subdivisions on blank numbers, mistakes ar often made; and when too late to correct them the makers regret their neglect to consult the editor and secure advice and cooperation of those most familiar with the manifold interrelations. Even wer the independent divisions equally good, they do not agree with those which wil later be printed in Tables and Index, so that every copy of the printed skeme wil hav to be corrected in manuscript before it is uzabl in that library. The only safe rule is to *make no chanjes or subdivisions* without submitting them to the editor, who wil gladly advize on such matters without charj, not on ground of any superior wizdom, nor even becauz of larjer experience in this special work, but becauz in this way only can it be lernd if corresponding subdivisions hav been alredy assynd sumwhat differently.

A uzer who adopts printed form avoids criticizm sure to be aimd at any posibl skeme. The moment he makes 1 'improvement' he must defend all his heds or alter them to suit each critic. Much time is saved by saying that the skeme is uzed as **printed**, and blunders ar the author's, not the uzer's. A list of chanjes made by others without consultation was writn for this caution, but is omitted lest it seem invidius. It illustrates how eazy it is for able men to make what no one questions after explanation to hav been outryt blunders, in 'improving and ading to' the

printed skeme. We ar always grateful for sugestions from anyone, and, having alredy spent so much time in efforts to improve this sistem for the common good of all uzers, invite cooperation of those interested in completing needed subdivisions and eliminating any errors that remain in either Tables or Index.

### Sugested variations

The following brief notes show the most important variations found practicabl in the 'relativ index and location sistem,' oftener cald the Decimal Clasification or 'Dewey sistem', or oftenest simply 'D C'.

**1 Letter or simbol notations for chanjes or aditions** To protect other uzers from confuzion, the publishers insist, as entitled to by copyryt, that D C numbers shal not be printed with chanjed meanings or aditions, without sum clear indication of the fact in the number itself. If reazons which led to adoption of form printed ar not conclusiv to another, we wish to remove any obstacks to his use of the sistem with such chanjes as shal satisfy him. This can redily be dun by uzing a letter or sum other carактер than the 10 dijits, to mark chanjes; e.g. if yu wish a different set of subdivisions under any number, make it out to suit, and letter it a, b, c, etc. It wil arrange in its exact place and exact order without difficulty, and no other uzer of the sistem wil be confuzed by yur forms. In Index, cancel 1, 2, 3, etc. yu hav discarded, and write in a, b, c, etc. adopted. **Whenever yu uze our exact numbers, uze also our exact and universal meanings for them as indext.** For any aditions or chanjes of yur own, uze letters or simbols of yur own which can not be mistaken for ours, uzing, of course, our figures to the place where difference begins; e.g. if yu want a new heding next to 551.34, Icebergs, it can not properly go as decimal 1. Mark it 551.34a, and it arranjes as wisht. If yu wish to chanje a hed from one place to another, cancel it where it stands, and *leav that number blank* in Tables. Then insert the hed in its new place as abuv, as if it had never been in our Tables. Unuzed decimals ar often *alredy appropriated* for authorized subdivisions, tho they may not be printed til several editions later.

This plan of introducing letters or other simbols wherever each uzer pleazes, wil giv all needed freedom to the personal equation and desire for 'orijinality', and meet all real wants for peculiar clasification in peculiar cases.

**Fiction** In sum cases it is uzualy best to modify clas numbers by letters as abuv. In popular libraries half the circulation is often fiction. It

## Decimal Classification

is a great saving to omit clas number entirely and use merely book number, it being understood that *no* clas number means 'fiction'. Sum libraries go still further and for fiction omit book number as well as clas number. Sum even omit book numbers in other classes.

**Juvenils** After fiction, great circulation makes juvenils a good place to economize, if they are kept separate, as is usually desirable in popular libraries. Books are classed as if for adults (except that a short number may be used) J being prefix to show their special character. This gives J alone as clas number for juvenil fiction; J942 is a child's history of England. These books are arranged in a parallel library by themselves, so J942 comes between J941, juvenil history of Scotland, and J943, juvenil history of Germany.

The separate J library can at any time be abandoned by distributing J books among the regular classes, either ignoring J entirely, or preferably by putting all J books by themselves at end of each clas number. In former case, if shorter numbers have been used for juvenils than for adults they should be extended to correspond; in latter case, numbers may either be extended and the books shelved at end of exact subdivision, or the shorter numbers may be retained and the books grouped at end of entire section, e.g. *all* juvenil works on English history may be kept under short number J942 and shelved after all adult works on English history, both 942 alone and 942 with subdivisions.

There are thus 3 methods: 1, to have a separate J library; 2, to have J books by themselves at end of each clas number; 3, to have J books in alphabetic order among other books on same subject. In this last case J is useful only to call attention plainly to their juvenil character.

Unless shorter numbers are used for juvenils than for adults the same marking is used for all these plans, and one can be changed to another by simply distributing books the other way and telling attendants.

**Biography** For this large class, opinions differ as to best treatment. Beside the plan printed in Tables the following methods are widely used.

For *individual* biography, i.e. that relating to a single person (including books containing biographies of not more than 4 persons)

1 Put all biographies in one alphabet of names of *persons written about*, using 92 for clas number, and indicating the subject or biographee by a Cutter book number; e.g. life of Grant, 92 G76. This is most compact for charring, and is preferred in popular libraries of large circulation. Instead of 92 for clas number, B is often used, but is less desirable, since it has no logical place in a numeric arrangement on shelves and is sometimes confused with the author's initial in fiction.

2 Distribute biography as far as posibl to subjects it ilustrates, leaving, of course, under 920 the lives not bearing specially on any subject; e.g. all lives of musicians go under 780 and its subdivisions, life of Wagner being 782.2 insted of 927.82 as in Tables. When 9 is uzed to indicate history of a special subject, 92 may be uzed for its biography; e.g. 780.9 History of music, 780.92 Biography of musicians.

*Collectiv* biography may be clast in a singl group under 920, or by subject under 920-928, as in Tables, or distributed thruout the clasification, according to 2d plan givn abuv for individual biography, subarrangement with any of these methods being alfabetic by author.

**Paralel libraries** This treatment of fiction, juvenils and biography ilustrates the principl. Its other chief application is for languaj collections. Sum libraries hav a constituency not reading English, and so need a paralel library in Italian or Swedish, etc. This is most eazily made by simply prefixing languaj initial to clas number. If arranjed in one series of subjects this initial is ignored, or all books in the special languages may be groupt under initial letters at end of each clas number. The paralel library is made by simply putting together all books having same languaj initial and then arranjing by clas numbers. Initials uzed ar F, French, G, German, I, Italian, Sp, Spanish, Sw, Swedish, Dn, Danish, Du, Dutch, N, Norwegian, W, Welsh, A, Arabic, etc. Where only 1 languaj is so markt in a givn library, jeneraly only 1 letter shud be uzed, so as to avoid an extra letter in charjing; e.g. S wil anser for either Spanish or Swedish if uzed in only 1 sense. A prefixt letter may, however, hav been uzed with a different meaning, e.g. R for Reference, necesitating more than 1 letter for the languaj prefix, *even if only 1 languaj* is represented by the initial, e.g. Ru for Russian. This plan has proved very satisfactory in actual use.

**Combining languaj and literature** Same principl can be applyd also in combining each languaj with its literature, if it is preferd to abolish class Filolojy, and make it simply an appendix to Literature; e.g. uzing 82f for English filolojy and ading filolojy subdivisions, English dictionaries wud becum 82f3, English grammars 82f5, etc. arranjed either just before or just after English literature, 820, 821, etc. and reverse wud hold true if a filolojist wisht to abolish Literature and make it an appendix to Filolojy.

**Reference library** To separate books most needed, the best plan is to mark R before clas numbers, and arranje books together as an R library. When books ar to go into jeneral colection again, draw a line thru this letter.

## Decimal Classification

In same way it frequently happens that a jeneral private library is givn on condition that it be kept together; e.g. Phoenix library of Columbia University. This has P prefix to clas number, and thus is a paralel library by itself. An initial is better than \* or similar mark, for it helps memory and is just as brief. Same plan applys if the library has an 'inferno' for books not uzed without permits, or for distant rooms where books worth keeping but seldom cald for can be arranged in a paralel storaj library.

Stil another provision is made in 080, 8 being regular number for jeneral collections (as in 508, 520.8 etc.), for those special libraries which can not be separated becauz of binding or conditions of gift; but insted of the 3 figures in 080, a singl letter, as described abuv, indicates the special colection, and it is eazy to lern location of the few special colections of any one library.

Omission of initial O in the clas 'Jeneral works' has been tryd; e.g. 51 insted of 051 for an American periodical, but is not advized, for the eye gets so in the habit of reading as *Syence* any number beginning with 5, that there is a mental hich if, e.g. jeneral periodicals ar writn 51, etc. insted of 051, etc. Another reazon is that Institut International de Bibliographic regards as negligibl a final 0 and uzes the 1 and 2 figure numbers as we uze those same numbers fild out by 0 to 3 figures, e.g. 1 for filosofy, like our 100, 22 for Bible, like our 220. Also in clasification it sumtimes happens that the 1st 2 figures ar obvius at a glance, but time must be taken to determin the 3d. It is convenient to write these 1st figures, but if a mathematical book reccivs its 1st 2 figures (51), this unfinisht number is likely to be confuzed with the 2-figure number 51. This danjer may be larjly avoided by writing the decimal point after a blank; e.g. 51 ., to show that a figure is omitted.

**2 Contractions for specialists** The sitem is often uzed by specialists for very minute work, where decimals run out to 6 or more places. Theoreticly it is better to write all these figures, thus showing relation to the universe of knowlej, but there is no practical gain to justify the labor if a great quantity of slips must be numberd. A specialist working on 'Swedish poetry of the aje of Gustavus' can uze a singl letter insted of the ful 839.715 and save 5 caracters in numbering each note; or a dash may be writn for all but the last figure, thus '—5'. A body of such notes can be inserted together in their place in an index at 839.715, with a colord card to mark the special groups, with litl danjer of confuzion. Stil a stickler for theoretic completeness wil write a ful index number for each separate slip.

**3 Use of alfabet or cronology for final subdivisions** While our plan is decimal as distinguisht from 'dictionary' we *always alfabet* wherever that is more useful. Indeed, the main feature of our plan is its alfabetic Relativ Index. Frequently in minute divisions it is economy to arrange alfabetically or by dates without izing a translation sistem. This is specially true in index rerums and notes of specialists. After numbers have been ized as far as that is the most useful form, then either the name chosen for hed or the year can be inserted at the end; e.g. towns in a givn state, individual birds or insects cuming under one number, names of men writn about in biograpy, etc. Sum may prefer to adopt this plan in places where we hav chosen a grouping; e.g. in chemistry, to put all metals in one alfabet under 546.3, insted of izing numbers 546.3-.99. If this chanje is wisht, a more complete one wil probably be better: put all elements, metallic and nonmetallic, in 1 alfabet under 546. Such use of the alfabet cauzes no confuzion with the Index, as it simply subdivides more closely, unless, as in the case of 546.3, the alfabet replaces heds alredy printed. In this case, cancel all subsections in the Tables by drawing a line obliquely thru heds discarded, and mark in marjin 'Alfabet by elements,' e.g.

546.3	Metals	Alfabet by elements
.31	Alkali group	
.32	Potassium	
.33	Sodium	
.34	Lithium	
.35	Rubidium	
.36	Caesium	

Then find each of these heds in Index and cancel all figures after 546.3, e.g.

Potassium, inorganic chemistry, 546.3~~2~~  
 Rubidium, " 546.3~~5~~

This plan has special value in this place, as new elements ar discovered from time to time, and can redily be inserted in alfabetic place. Stil many chemists think it valuabl to hav similar metals group together for convenience of study, and to cover books writn on the group as a whole, and also think it important to hav a number for rejected elements, becauz literature and references about them remain, and must be provided for.

**4 Broken order** Another common and often desirabl variation for shelf arrangement is to break sequence of numbers, to get most-ized books nearest delivery desk. Theory keeps numbers in strict sequence;

## Decimal Classification

but a hyer rule everywhere is 'sacrifice any theory for a substantial gain'. Practically there ar few libraries where it is not best to break order of clases. Often divisions ar best arranjed out of numeric place; e.g. 520 Astronomy may be wanted in a room accessibl at nyt; fiction, juvenils and biograpy ar always wanted near the delivery desk in a public library, and in strict order ar as likely to cum at the most distant point. Numberless local reazons may make a broken order desirabl. There need be no hesitation in adopting it if enuf is gaind, but there shud be charts clearly showing where each division starts; e.g. after 430 'Preceding 830'; after 520 'In observatory', it being necessary to specify room for books entirely removed from jeneral library arrangement. The summary of 100 divisions is furnisht by Library Bureau, on celluloid charts, to show location. Opposit each division shud be markt its beginning on shelvs, and it is eazy to vary the order as much as desirabl, tho of course the nearer the divisions run in regular order, 000-999, the eazier it is for a stranjer to find his way about. Variations in order of sections ar les wize and seldom necessary, but if made, a wood or cardboard dummy in regular place shud hav markt on its side the actual location of any section removed.

This broken-order plan is best for bringing together filolojy and literature of each languaj without altering numbers or prefixing any letter. Let 420 be shelvd just ahed of 820, 430 ahed of 830, and so for all languages, making the jeneral note that all 400s ar shelvd just ahed of corresponding 800s, and remembering that after main languages 4 or more figures ar required to indicate languaj alone, so Portuguese filolojy goes between 868 and 869, Russian between 891.69 and 891.7, Bohemian between 891.85 and 891.86, etc.

**5 Pro and con division of topics** It is very useful in many cases to separate books on a topic with strongly markt sides, so either set of views and arguments may be seen by itself. This has been dun in sum cases by subdivision, e.g. 337 Protection and free trade. In others it is equally useful, and can be indicated by an aded mark, e.g. 324.3 Woman suffraj. The number may be uzed for jeneral works, giving facts etc. and advocates and opponents may be separated by + and - for positiv and negativ, or by p and c, the initials for pro and con, which tho short, ar too long for a circulating library to uze in charjing but may be disregarded for that purpose if book numbers ar so assynd as to distinguish. In reference libraries, on cards, etc. most wil prefer to write out *pro* and *con*, to mark the 2 groups. The order on shelvs is, of course, alfabetic, i.e. 324.3, 324.3c, 324.3p; or if + and - ar uzed, the uzual order is fol-lowd: +, -.

## *Melvil Dewey's introduction*

These 5 notes suggest the range of variations which may be made, and illustrate D C adaptability to widely different conditions.

### **Bibliographic modifications**

After study of all other available systems the Decimal Classification was adopted in 1895 by the newly organized Institut International de Bibliographie (known as I I B) as best adapted for its projected universal subject bibliography to cover ultimately all subjects in all languages in all periods of the world's history.

Determining factors were:

- 1 Decimal Classification was of topics, independent of language or exact synonym by which expressed
- 2 Its notation was in itself the only international language, since it consisted solely of arabic numerals, used all over the world
- 3 Its decimal principle allowed indefinite intercalation

Overdetail as the Classification already seemed to many librarians, lack of subdivision was the Institute's 1st difficulty and it urged us at once to enlarge the Tables. State Library duties at that time made concentration on this impossible, but we promised cooperation and criticism if I I B would draft required extensions. When its remarkably rapid work precluded even adequate criticism, it was authorized to publish its tables and assured that the American revision would vary from them as little as practicable. At Geneva in 1924 the harmonizing of the American and European editions was agreed on and to D C editor was delegated the very extensive work of checking the variant forms and recommending which should be kept, a work which is now well under way.

Obviously, bibliographic and general library use are so different that in some cases what is clearly best for real needs of scholarly specialists, where any symbols can be used on index cards, would be quite impracticable for a public library, which must have symbols that can be marked on the back of books, readily used by the unskilled public in writing call slips, and rapidly handled by low-priced runners and young clerks. This difficulty can, however, often be obviated by allowing alternative forms.

I I B has devised and uses ingenious symbols, expressing many interrelations and greatly increasing numbering capacity. But these new symbols are though by many too complex for ordinary shelf or catalog use, though 25 years use by I I B with unskilled clerks has proved that this objection is more fear than result of fair trial. They are given here broadly for personal notes of specialists and other close classifiers, to whom their vast prac-



## Decimal Classification

tical advantages will strongly appeal, and as a key to notation on IIB bibliographic cards. Elaborate details and explanations are in *Classification décimale*, Brussels, 1905, of which a new edition is announced for 1927. Obviously these symbols allow subdivision of the same number in many different ways without confusion.

The most important of these devices are 3 *Relation syn* and 6 *Place syn* and their use in libraries where they have been tried has proved that it is entirely practicable, even for marking books.

The wide and ever-growing range of application of certain subjects makes it impossible to subdivide satisfactorily by assigning definite numbers, but use of colon to show relation between 2 subjects provides an automatic method which can be used with any subject for unlimited subdivision. (For illustration see note under 150 Sykology.)

Use of ( ) round a local number provides an automatic method of local subdivision for any subject, as there may be need in an individual library, while the symbol shows instantly the *local* nature of the subdivision.

**1 Accretion syn +** This simplest of symbols, equivalent to 'and', indicates exactly what it suggests, that the article so numbered treats of all subject numbers connected by +; e.g. 637+614.32 a work concerning dairies and also on inspection of dairy products.

**2 Cupling syn -** This is used for coupling to a subject a series of subdivisions common to a group of subjects, as 400 Filology (e.g. 45-3 Italian dictionary, 45-4 Italian synonyms, 45-5 Italian grammar; 46-3 Spanish dictionary, 46-4 Spanish synonyms, 46-5 Spanish grammar), 800 Literature (85-3 Italian fiction, 85-4 Italian essays, 85-5 Italian oratory; 86-3 Spanish fiction, 86-4 Spanish essays, 86-5 Spanish oratory), 546 Inorganic chemistry (546.51-3 Oxides of lead, 546.51-4 Sulfide of lead, 546.51-5 Chloride of lead; 546.56-3 Oxides of copper, 546.56-4 Sulfide of copper, 546.56-5 Chloride of copper; 546.57-3 Oxides of silver, 546.57-4 Sulfide of silver, 546.57-5 Chloride of silver). It should, however, be used only where such use is specifically mentioned in the Tables, as confusion would otherwise result. This syn is so similar to that commonly used for 'to and including' that when it is used with Institut meaning it is advisable to use word 'to' for the other meaning.

**3 Relation syn :** This is most useful symbol of all, as it involves no change of number except omission of final 0 by those preferring shortest form. It indicates merely that subjects so connected are *considered in relation to each other*, thus affording means of expressing almost limitless

interrelations: e.g. ethics in relation to fine arts is 17:7 (or, better, in full 170:700). Vice versa, art in its ethical aspect is 7:17 (or 700:170); order of numbers before and after colon depending on emphasis, or on subject with which they are to be arranged.

**4 Form syn (0)** Form or generalities are expressed by a parenthetic number beginning with 0. This is further subdivided as follows:

(0:) Form symbol; e.g. 335 (0:843) means Socialism treated in form of a French novel.

(00) Subdivisions peculiar to a subject; e.g. for history it means sources. It is further subdivided and in some cases modified by a hyphenated figure; e.g. 9(44) (001-3) means *Catalog of official sources of French history*, (001) meaning official sources and -3 meaning catalogs, indexes, lists etc.

(01)-(09) are the same as our regular form numbers 01-09. Obviously we can not replace our long established simple form numbers by something so much more complex that it is impracticable for shelf use.

**5 Universality syn  $\infty$**  The mathematical syn of infinity is used with place and time syns to mean 'Without limitation': with place syn (see 6 below) it means 'including all places', e.g. 9 ( $\infty$ ) History of all countries; with time syn (see 8 below) it means 'covering all periods', e.g. 9 ( $\infty$ ) " $\infty$ " History of all countries at all times.

**6 Place syn (3)-(9)** These replace our regular country subdivisions found in 930-999, but do not conflict, as I I B merely leaves D C 930-999 vacant, and writes History of France 9(44) instead of 944. Other auxiliary place numbers indicating general region, direction, geologic place, prehistoric time, etc. are also provided in place curves.

**7 Language syn =** This syn preceding language numbers as found in 400 Filology, indicates subdivision by language; e.g. 523.5=9185 means a work on meteors, in Polish, 91.85 being filology number for Polish language in 400.

**8 Time syn " "** Numbers denoting time division are written in quotes. I I B scheme gives an elaborate time-division system based on exact dates; e.g. "1922. 12. 11", meaning year 1922, 12th month, 11th day.

**9 General points of view syn 00** Each of the following numbers for point of view (except 005) has also a series of subdivisions:

001 Speculative: idea, purpose, plan etc.

002 Realization: execution, construction etc.

003 Economic: industrial production, cost and sale prices, etc.

004 Service and use: workings, administration

## *Decimal Classification*

005 Equipment and apparatus

006 Buildings and establishments: details of organization and service

007 Special personnel

10 A to Z Alphabetic arrangement by name of person, place or thing is indicated according to circumstances by initial or whole name.

Sequence of these symbols in class number may be varied by users to produce any special arrangement wished, but unless distinct notice of this is given, sequence is arbitrary in the following order:

( ) " " = : - A-Z

e.g. 9(44)"17"=2 History of France in 18th century, written in English

### **Other uses**

Though this system was devised first for library catalog and shelf arrangement, 54 years have developed many new applications. Nearly every administrative department feels directly the great economy, and in every field of literary activity this classification has been found a great labor-saver, whose practical usefulness has exceeded the most sanguine hopes of its early friends.

**Bookstores** The plan is a great convenience to both dealers and customers, when applied to miscellaneous stock. Very often a much wanted book, specially if not recently published, is reported 'not in stock', when D C arrangement by subject would have revealed its place at once. Specialists often find on shelves books they would never have ordered, but are glad to buy after examination. Experience proves it profitable for a dealer to arrange his books so each person may find what he is interested in without examining entire stock.

**Office files** A great file of papers is like a library in miniature. Experience the world over proves that while alphabetic and numeric systems are invaluable for many purposes, complete usefulness demands close classing as material grows. The best plan is to combine simplicity of numeric and utility of class as in this Decimal Classification and Relative Index used by most libraries. The simplest possible printed index of 43,000 heads tells instantly by what number to mark or to find any paper. Insurance is marked 368. This means: class 3, Sociology; division 6, Associations and institutions; section 8, Insurance. Fire insurance is first subdivision, so every paper about fire insurance is marked 368.1 and goes in the drawer in numeric order, where it can instantly be found through the printed Index.

54 years use in a score of countries has proved this numeric system, with

## *Melvil Dewey's introduction*

its Relativ Index, a marvelous laborsaver. Clasification is a necessity if all material on any givn subject is to be redily found. The labor of making one's own clasification is uzually prohibitiv, if wel dun. By adopting the skeme in jeneral use by libraries this labor is saved and numbers ar in harmony with those of thousands of other catalogs and indexes in which the same number has the same meaning; for, as pointed out at a recent international congress, these numbers ar the only international languaj of perfectly definit meaning amung all civilized nations; and also cheapest and quickest in application.

A successful man is uzually a clasifyer and chartmaker. This applys as much to modern business as to syence or libraries. Hyer education differs from elementary in studying not mere facts, but their *relations to all other facts*. Alex. Bain wizely said 'to lern to clasify is in itself an education'. The man of much business or affairs must study every problem in its manifold relations; i.e. must clasify and make charts of his results. Without these he is like a sailor in stranje waters, sooner or later shipreckt unless he uzes charts to find safe channels as wel as to avoid roks and shoals. A larj business or work unclasifyd or uncharted is not a worthy organization but mere material from which a clever brain may construct one. It differs in efficiency from the ideal as a mob of men differs from a wel disciplind army. Piles of brik and mortar ar not a templ any more than heaps of typ ar Shakspere's works, tho if 'clasifyd' and set, each in ryt relation to the rest, the transformation is bro't about.

**Scrapbooks** The plan has proved the best for keeping newspaper clippings. Uze manila sheets of uniform size (we find 20x25cm best) Write clas number of subject in uzual place on page, and mount clippings on sheets as in a common scrapbook. These sheets ar arranjed numericly like a clast card catalog, sheets of each clas being further arranjed, when desirabl, under alfabetic subheds. When one sheet is ful, insert another at the exact place. Thus perfect clasification is kept up without blank sheets, and at smallest outlay of money and trubl. Scraps thus mounted ar shelvd either in manila pamflet cases or in patent binders, or ar kept in vertical files.

**Index rerums** These ar best made on standard P size (7.5x12.5cm) cards or slips. Lyt weight catalog card stok is best for private indexes, etc. It costs only  $\frac{2}{3}$  as much as hevvy bristol, takes only  $\frac{2}{3}$  room, and handls eazily.

Where durability and convenience of handling ar les important than cheapness uze common hevvy writing paper. Novises often greatly di-

## *Decimal Classification*

minish usefulness of the card sistem by uzing ordinary machine-cut cards or slips varying in hyt so much as to make quik and accurate manipulation imposibl. Extreme variation to be tolerated is 1 mm or  $\frac{1}{25}$  inch. This wil be understood by placing a 7.4cm card between two 7.5cm cards. In rapid turning, fingers make a brij across taller cards and mis the lower one entirely. Cards must be accurately cut or they lose half their value and in many cases necesitate recopying material at a cost 10-fold greater than to hav thrown away imperfectly cut cards or slips at the outset.

Clas number is writn in upper left corner, any alfabetic subject hed follows at ryt, and notes fil card below. Cards ar then filed in order of clas numbers, the cards of each clas being further arranjed like scrap sheets, according to any alfabetic subheds.

Paper the size of scrap sheets, 20x25cm, arranjed and stored the same way may be uzed insted of cards. This has the advantaj of a ful letter paje in syt at once, and holds over 5 times as much as card. While the sistem can be applyd to slips or sheets of any size, there ar literally hundreds of accessories and conveniences exactly adapted to these 2 sizes, which ar uzed much more than all others combined; so it is folly to begin on another size, and lose the advantajes of this uniformity. If intermediate sizes must be had, the best ar Billet 10x15cm, Note 12.5x20cm, and Ms 15x25cm. Often uzers of sum other size finally find it profitabl to chanje to either P, 7.5x12.5, or to L, 20x25cm, even at cost of re-writing many notes.

After 50 years use of P size, countless millions of cards ar in catalogs and indexes in scores of cuntries, so it wud be quite imposibl to chanje from 7.5x12.5cm. But recent study and experiments hav shown that sheet or room proportions ar most pleazing in ratio of 1 to square root of 2, or about 5 to 7, i.e. ratio of the side of an equal-side triangel to its hypotenuse. An immense practical advantaj is that this is the only ratio where continuus halving givs always the same ideal proportion. This results in markt economy in cutting sizes from larj standard sheets. The favorit letter sheet is 19x27 cm. This fits most vertical and other files. We now uze it insted of 20x25 and 15x25. Half this size is a pleazing small quarto, 13.5x19, and its quarter is a very convenient pocket size, 9.5x13.5cm. These replace our old Note and Billet sizes.

Note books ar best in loos-leaf form. A much poorer method is to take a bound blank book, and assyn clas numbers in order, giving about the space it is tho't each wil require, and, when pajes so assynd ar ful, note at bottom where rest of the material may be found. This has all objec-

## Melvil Dewey's introduction

tions of old fixt location as compared to relativ, and wil hardly be adopted by any person who has ever seen loos-leaf simplicity and economy.

Scores of devices for convenient handling and storing of these slips and sheets and of pamphlets ar manufactured. The ful descriptiv and ilustrated catalogs of Library Bureau giv details.

**Topical indexes** Clas numbers ar ized to index books red. Simpl numbers take the place of a series of words, and results can be handld, ar-ranjed and found much quicker. Such entries may be kept separate or combined with index rerums.

Advantajes for making topical indexes of colected works, periodicals, transactions etc. wil be evident to every indexer or librarian. These consolidated indexes may be arranjed together with the card catalog of the books, or by themselves, as seems best in each case.

These ar only a few of the sistem's varid applications. Enuf hav been mentiond to show its wide adaptability to wants of librarian, student and business man.

This brief account has probably faild to meet sum objections which may be raizd and could eazily be ansercd.

Tho much elaborated and in sum few points alterd, the essential caracter of the plan has remaind unchanjed from the first. Revision and expansion constantly in progress involv many new interrelations. As extensiv advance testing of new skemes is not always posibl, practical applications ar sure to develop unnotist faults. Clasifyers ar therefore askt to uze new tables critically and report defects of any kind, with proposed remedies and any needed subdivisions, also any heds needed for the Index. All such criticizms ar a decided help and favor.

## Aknowlejments

The labor on Clasification and Index has been wholly beyond appreciation of any who hav never attempted a similar task.

In his varid reading, correspondence and conversation on the subject, the author has doutless recieved many sugjestions and gaind ideas which it is now imposibl for him specifcly to aknowlej. The *Nuovo sistema di catalogo bibliografico generale* of Natale Battezzati, of Milan, adopted by the Italian publishers in 1871, tho he copid nothing from it, more

## *Decimal Classification*

than any other singl sistem stimulated his study of the problem. The plan of the St Louis Public School Library and that of the Apprentices' Library of New York, which in sum respects resemd his own, wer not seen til all essential features wer decided on, tho not givn to the public. In filling the 9 clases of the skeme, the inverted Baconian arrangement of the St Louis Library was followd. The author has no wish to claim orijinal invention for any part of his sistem where another has been before him, and wud gladly make specific aknowledgejment of every aid and sugjestion wer it in his power. Tho at its start a litl book, it came not forth except by grievus labor.

Much valuabl aid has been renderd by specialists, who hav assisted greatly in developing tables. Among these ar many wel-known skolars, and to all most cordial aknowledgejment is made. Without such assistance, the present development cud not hav been attaind, for many minds wer necessary to supply teknical and special lerning absolutely essential in filling minute heds. Indeed, in many subjects the author's share has been limited to modification necessary for teknical adjustment to his skeme, of material prepared by specialists. To many prominent librarians we ar indetted for valuabl sugjestions and appreciativ criticizm. While these frends ar in no way responsibl for any remaining imperfections, they shud hav credit for many improvements made in these 54 years of revision, during the 1st 3 of which the skeme was kept in manuscript, that its many details myt be subjected to actual tryal, and modifyd where improvement was found practicabl.

We ar under deep obligation to Institut International de Bibliographie for its great volume of valuabl work, covering almost the whole ranje of subjects, and also for its advice and criticizm during progress of our own expansions. To Dr C W Andrews, John Crerar Librarian, Chicago, and to American Library Association clasification committee, of which for past 10 years he has been chairman, we ar greatly indetted for interest and advice.

**W S Biscoe** From 1st publication to the present, the most extended and valued assistance has cum from my colej clasmate, associate and frend, Walter Stanley Biscoe, my 1st assistant in Amherst College Library, in charj of which he succeeded me, resyning to accept again in 1883 the place next me in Columbia College Library, and again resyning in 1889 to becum librarian in charj of clasification and catalogs in New York State Library. This book is witness to the rare unselfishness with

### *Melvil Dewey's introduction*

which he has given time taken from rest and recreation to this work, in which he shared my interest and faith.

**May Seymour** Except a year in charge of classification in the Osterhout Library she was with me 34 years, from her entrance to the 1st Library School class in 1887 till her death, June 14, 1921. At New York State Library, classification was her department till she was made director's assistant. For 32 years every item of work on new editions past through her hands. For each of editions 4-10 she did all editorial and much constructive work, secured expert cooperation, called attention to faults or omissions, and sought the best available compromise where doctors disagreed, devoting to this vast labor rare scholarly industry and a loyalty for which no words of thanks can be adequate. She shared my faith in its immense usefulness, did the hardest work, and deserves the gratitude of all who profit by this invaluable laborsaver. I often asked that her name appear on the title-page of the book to which she gave so much, but she persistently refused.

Her place as editor was taken by one of her own choosing, Dorcas Fellows, who more than anyone else had worked closely with Miss Seymour for 25 years, and who will give future editions the benefit of cumulative experience in which she so largely shared. D C users are congratulated that Miss Seymour's position is held by the one whom she herself chose as best adapted to carry on her work. For 5 years past her headquarters have been in New York State Library at Albany, which has long been regarded by many as D C's library home, but recent developments in relations of American Library Association, Library of Congress and Decimal Classification have resulted in an invitation from L C to D C to make its home henceforth at that Library, where, most appropriately, D C's service to American libraries, which is the chief factor in its work, will be coordinated with undertakings previously installed by the national library, extending still further the latter's already great services to the libraries of the country at large.

### **Future of D C**

Miss Seymour had a steadily growing wish to make D C a permanent force for education, by greatly improving its full, short and outline editions, and by printing cheap special editions (indexes) for many prominent divisions; e.g. education, medicine, engineering, agriculture. As a



### *Decimal Classification*

memorial to her, all copyrights and control of all editions have been given to Lake Placid Club Education Foundation, in establishing which she had been warmly and actively interested, and which was chartered by the University of the State of New York, Jan. 26, 1922, with these objects:

'as an educational institution, to restore to health and educational efficiency teachers, librarians and other educators of moderate means, who have become incapacitated by overwork; to establish, maintain and aid schools, libraries or other educational institutions, specially at Lake Placid; and to institute, organize or foster other movements to advance public welfare through education, by means of the Foundation press, conferences, forums, addresses, guided reading, and similar agencies'.

To this Foundation was at once given all voting stock and surplus of Lake Placid Co. which owns the 10,000 acres and 391 buildings of Lake Placid Club, thus assuring permanent financial support, which has already been further increased by gifts and bequests from interested friends. Under Foundation auspices future editions of D C will be published, on absolute condition that entire receipts above necessary expenses be used forever solely for improving D C and extending its usefulness, thereby preventing possibility that the work should ever be made a source of either individual or institution profit. A committee on D C, consisting of the most interested Foundation trustees, in consultation with committees of American Library Association and Institut International de Bibliographie, will insure observance of the above condition.

D C has become an international labor-saver. It therefore justly belongs to its users as a whole. All who contribute to the steady improvement of future editions may know that they are helping to make still more useful a system which is so greatly helping steadily increasing thousands scattered all over the civilized world.

MELVIL DEWEY

Previous editions have been dated Amherst College Library, June 10, 1876; Columbia College Library, Aug. 10, 1885, and Aug. 30, 1888; New York State Library, Dec. 25, 1890; Lake Placid Club, Apr. 10, 1911, Apr. 10, 1913, Oct. 1, 1915, Aug. 11, 1919, and Aug. 31, 1922.

# Summaries

## *First Summary* *The 10 Classes*

- 000 Generalities**
- 100 Philosophy & related disciplines**
- 200 Religion**
- 300 The social sciences**
- 400 Language**
- 500 Pure sciences**
- 600 Technology ( Applied sciences )**
- 700 The arts**
- 800 Literature & rhetoric**
- 900 General geography, history, etc.**

## *Second Summary* *The 100 Divisions*

000	<b>Generalities</b>	500	<b>Pure sciences</b>
010	Bibliographies & catalogs	510	Mathematics
020	Library science	520	Astronomy & allied sciences
030	General encyclopedic works	530	Physics
040		540	Chemistry & allied sciences
050	General periodicals	550	Earth sciences
060	General organizations	560	Paleontology
070	Newspapers & journalism	570	Anthropolog. & biol. sciences
080	General collections	580	Botanical sciences
090	Manuscripts & book rarities	590	Zoological sciences
100	<b>Philosophy &amp; related</b>	600	<b>Technology (Applied sci.)</b>
110	Ontology & methodology	610	Medical sciences
120	Knowledge, cause, purpose, man	620	Engineering & allied operations
130	Pseudo- & parapsychology	630	Agriculture & agric. industries
140	Specific philosophic viewpoints	640	Domestic arts & sciences
150	Psychology	650	Business & related enterprises
160	Logic	660	Chemical technology etc.
170	Ethics (Moral philosophy)	670	Manufactures processible
180	Ancient, med., Oriental philos.	680	Assembled & final products
190	Modern Western philosophy	690	Buildings
200	<b>Religion</b>	700	<b>The arts</b>
210	Natural religion	710	Civic & landscape art
220	Bible	720	Architecture
230	Christian doctrinal theology	730	Sculpture & the plastic arts
240	Christ. moral & devotional theol.	740	Drawing & decorative arts
250	Christ. pastoral, parochial, etc.	750	Painting & paintings
260	Christ. social & eccles. theol.	760	Graphic arts
270	Hist. & geog. of Chr. church	770	Photography & photographs
280	Christ. denominations & sects	780	Music
290	Other religions & compar. rel.	790	Recreation (Recreational arts)
300	<b>The social sciences</b>	800	<b>Literature &amp; rhetoric</b>
310	Statistical method & statistics	810	American literature in English
320	Political science	820	Engl. & Anglo-Saxon literature
330	Economics	830	Germanic languages literature
340	Law	840	French, Provençal, Catalan lit.
350	Public administration	850	Italian, Romanian etc. literature
360	Welfare & association	860	Spanish & Portuguese literature
370	Education	870	Italic languages literature
380	Commerce	880	Classical & Greek literature
390	Customs & folklore	890	Lits. of other languages
400	<b>Language</b>	900	<b>General geog. &amp; history etc.</b>
410	Linguistics & nonverbal lang.	910	General geography
420	English & Anglo-Saxon	920	General biog., geneal., etc.
430	Germanic languages	930	Gen. hist. of ancient world
440	French, Provençal, Catalan	940	Gen. hist. of modern Europe
450	Italian, Romanian, etc.	950	Gen. hist. of modern Asia
460	Spanish & Portuguese	960	Gen. hist. of modern Africa
470	Italic languages	970	Gen. hist. of North America
480	Classical & Greek	980	Gen. hist. of South America
490	Other languages	990	Gen. hist. of rest of world

# *Third Summary* *The 1000 Sections*

## Generalities

### **000 Generalities**

- 001 Knowledge
- 002
- 003
- 004
- 005
- 006
- 007
- 008
- 009

### **010 Bibliographies & catalogs**

- 011 General bibliographies
- 012 Of individuals
- 013 Of specific classes of writers
- 014 Of anonymous & pseudon. works
- 015 Of works from specific places
- 016 Of specific subjects
- 017 General subject catalogs
- 018 General author catalogs
- 019 General dictionary catalogs

### **020 Library science**

- 021 The library
- 022 Physical plant of libraries
- 023 Library personnel & positions
- 024 Regulations for use of libraries
- 025 Library economy
- 026 Special libraries
- 027 General libraries
- 028 Reading & reading aids
- 029 Indexing & documentation

### **030 General encyclopedic works**

- 031 American
- 032 Other English-language
- 033 Other Germanic languages
- 034 French, Provençal, Catalan
- 035 Italian, Romanian, etc.
- 036 Spanish & Portuguese
- 037 Slavic languages
- 038 Scandinavian languages
- 039 Other languages

### **040**

- 041
- 042
- 043
- 044
- 045
- 046
- 047
- 048
- 049

### **050 General periodicals**

- 051 American
- 052 Other English-language
- 053 Other Germanic languages
- 054 French, Provençal, Catalan
- 055 Italian, Romanian, etc.
- 056 Spanish & Portuguese
- 057 Slavic languages
- 058 Scandinavian languages
- 059 Other languages

### **060 General organizations**

- 061 In North America
- 062 In England & Wales
- 063 In central Europe
- 064 In France
- 065 In Italy & adjacent territories
- 066 In Iberian Peninsula etc.
- 067 In eastern Europe
- 068 In other countries
- 069 Museums

### **070 Newspapers & journalism**

- 071 In North America
- 072 In England & Wales
- 073 In central Europe
- 074 In France
- 075 In Italy & adjacent territories
- 076 In Iberian Peninsula etc.
- 077 In eastern Europe
- 078 In Scandinavia
- 079 In other countries

### **080 General collections**

- 081 American
- 082 Other English-language
- 083 Other Germanic languages
- 084 French, Provençal, Catalan
- 085 Italian, Romanian, etc.
- 086 Spanish & Portuguese
- 087 Slavic languages
- 088 Scandinavian languages
- 089 Other languages

### **090 Mss. & book rarities**

- 091 Manuscripts
- 092 Block books
- 093 Incunabula
- 094 Notable printing
- 095 Notable binding
- 096 Notable illustrations & materials
- 097 Notable ownership & origin
- 098 Notable content
- 099 Notable format

## Philosophy and related disciplines

<b>100 Philosophy &amp; related</b>	<b>150 Psychology</b>
101 Theory	151
102 Miscellany	152 Physiological & experimental
103 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, etc.	153 Intelligence & intellect
104	154 Subconscious states & processes
105 Serial publications	155 Differential & genetic psychology
106 Organizations	156 Comparative psychology
107 Study & teaching	157 Abnormal & clinical psychologies
108 Collections & anthologies	158 Applied psychology
109 Historical treatment	159 Other aspects
<b>110 Ontology &amp; methodology</b>	<b>160 Logic</b>
111 Ontology	161 Induction
112 Classification of knowledge	162 Deduction
113 Origin of universe	163
114 Space	164 Symbolic & mathematical logic
115 Time, duration, eternity	165 Fallacies & sources of error
116 Motion & change	166 Syllogism
117 Matter & form	167 Hypothesis
118 Force & energy	168 Argument & persuasion
119 Number & quantity	169 Analogy
<b>120 Other metaphysical topics</b>	<b>170 Ethics (Moral philosophy)</b>
121 Epistemology	171 Systems & doctrines
122 Cause & effect	172 Ethics of political relationships
123 Freedom & necessity	173 Ethics of family relationships
124 Teleology	174 Profes. & occupational ethics
125 Finite & infinite	175 Ethics of recreation
126 Consciousness & personality	176 Sexual ethics
127 Unconscious & subconscious	177 Ethics of social relations
128 Man	178 Ethics of temperance etc.
129 Origin & destiny of soul	179 Other applications of ethics
<b>130 Pseudo- &amp; parapsychology</b>	<b>180 Anc., med., Oriental</b>
131 Pseudopsychology	181 Oriental
132	182 Pre-Socratic
133 Parapsychology & occultism	183 Sophistic, Socratic & related
134	184 Platonic
135 Dreams & the mystic traditions	185 Aristotelian
136	186 Skeptic & Neoplatonic
137 Personality anal. & improvement	187 Epicurean
138 Physiognomy	188 Stoic
139 Phrenology	189 Medieval Western
<b>140 Specific viewpoints</b>	<b>190 Modern Western philosophy</b>
141 Idealism & related systems	191 United States & Canada
142 Critical philosophy	192 British Isles
143 Intuitionism & Bergsonism	193 Germany & Austria
144 Humanism & related systems	194 France
145 Sensationalism & ideology	195 Italy
146 Naturalism & related systems	196 Spain & Portugal
147 Pantheism & related systems	197 Russia & Finland
148 Liberalism & other systems	198 Scandinavia
149 Other systems & doctrines	199 Other

## Religion

<b>200 Religion</b>	<b>250 Christ. pastoral &amp; parochial</b>
201 Philosophy of Christianity	251 Preaching (Homiletics)
202 Miscellany of Christianity	252 Sermons
203 Dictionaries of Christianity	253 Pastor
204	254 Parish govt. & administration
205 Serial publs. on Christianity	255 Religious congregations & orders
206 Organizations on Christianity	256
207 Study of Christianity	257
208 Collections on Christianity	258 Parochial welfare work
209 Hist. & geography of Christianity	259 Other parochial activities
<b>210 Natural religion</b>	<b>260 Chr. social &amp; eccles. theol.</b>
211 Knowledge of God	261 Social theology
212 Nature of God	262 Church govt., org., nature
213 Creation	263 Times of religious observance
214 Theodicy	264 Public worship
215 Science & religion	265 Other rites & ceremonies
216 Good & evil	266 Missions
217 Worship & prayer	267 Associations for religious work
218 Immortality & eternity	268 Religious training & instruction
219 Analogy	269 Organized spiritual renewal
<b>220 Bible</b>	<b>270 Hist. &amp; geog. of Chr. church</b>
221 Old Testament	271 Religious congregations & orders
222 Historical books	272 Persecutions
223 Poetic books	273 Heresies
224 Prophetic books	274 Christian church in Europe
225 New Testament	275 Christian church in Asia
226 Gospels & Acts	276 Christian church in Africa
227 Epistles	277 Christian church in No. America
228 Revelation (Apocalypse)	278 Christian church in So. America
229 Apocrypha, pseudepigrapha, etc.	279 Christian church elsewhere
<b>230 Christian doctrinal theology</b>	<b>280 Christ. denominations &amp; sects</b>
231 God, Trinity, Godhead	281 Primitive & Oriental churches
232 Jesus Christ & his family	282 Roman Catholic Church
233 Man	283 Anglican churches
234 Salvation (Soteriology)	284 Protestants of Continental origin
235 Invisible world	285 Presb., Amer. Ref., Congr. chs.
236 Eschatology	286 Bapt., Disc. of Christ, Adventists
237	287 Methodist churches
238 Creeds & confessions of faith	288 Unitarianism
239 Apologetics & polemics	289 Other denominations & sects
<b>240 Christ. moral &amp; devotional</b>	<b>290 Other religions etc.</b>
241 Moral theology	291 Comparative religion
242 Prayers & meditations	292 Classical (Gr. & Rom.) religion
243 Evangelistic writings	293 Germanic religion
244	294 Brahmanism & related religions
245 Hymns	295 Zoroastrianism
246 Symbolism etc.	296 Judaism
247 Sacred furniture etc.	297 Islam & its derivatives
248 Personal religion	298
249 Worship in family life	299 Other religions

## **The social sciences**

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| <b>300 The social sciences</b>                 | <b>350 Public administration</b>     |
| 301 Sociology                                  | 351 Central governments              |
| 302  | 352 Local units of government        |
| 303  | 353 United States federal & states   |
| 304  | 354 Other central governments        |
| 305  | 355 General military administration  |
| 306  | 356 Foot forces                      |
| 307  | 357 Mounted forces                   |
| 308  | 358 Armored, technical, air, space   |
| 309 Social situation & conditions              | 359 Sea (Naval) forces               |
| <b>310 Statistical method &amp; statistics</b> | <b>360 Welfare &amp; association</b> |
| 311 Statistical method                         | 361 Organization of social welfare   |
| 312 Statistics of populations                  | 362 Welfare services to spec. groups |
| 313  | 363 Other services                   |
| 314 General statistics of Europe               | 364 Criminology                      |
| 315 General statistics of Asia                 | 365 Penology                         |
| 316 General statistics of Africa               | 366 Association                      |
| 317 Gen. statistics of North America           | 367 Social clubs                     |
| 318 Gen. statistics of South America           | 368 Insurance                        |
| 319 Gen. statistics of rest of world           | 369 Other kinds of associations      |
| <b>320 Political science</b>                   | <b>370 Education</b>                 |
| 321 Types & forms of states                    | 371 The school                       |
| 322 Relation of state to org. groups           | 372 Elementary education             |
| 323 Rel. of state to individuals etc.          | 373 Secondary education              |
| 324 Suffrage                                   | 374 Adult education                  |
| 325 International migration                    | 375 Curriculums                      |
| 326 Slavery & emancipation                     | 376 Education of women               |
| 327 International relations                    | 377 Schools & religion               |
| 328 Legislation                                | 378 Higher education                 |
| 329 Practical politics                         | 379 Govt. supervision & support      |
| <b>330 Economics</b>                           | <b>380 Commerce</b>                  |
| 331 Labor                                      | 381 Internal commerce                |
| 332 Lucrative capital                          | 382 International commerce           |
| 333 Land (Natural resources)                   | 383 Postal communication             |
| 334 Cooperative systems                        | 384 Other systems of communication   |
| 335 Collectivist systems & schools             | 385 Railroad transportation          |
| 336 Public finance                             | 386 Inland waterway transportation   |
| 337  | 387 Water, air, space transportation |
| 338 Production                                 | 388 Ground transportation            |
| 339 Distribution & consumption                 | 389 Metrology & standardization      |
| <b>340 Law</b>                                 | <b>390 Customs &amp; folklore</b>    |
| 341 Internat. law (Law of nations)             | 391 Costume                          |
| 342 Constitutional law                         | 392 Customs of life cycle            |
| 343 Criminal law                               | 393 Death customs                    |
| 344 Martial law                                | 394 Public & social customs          |
| 345 United States statutes & cases             | 395 Etiquette                        |
| 346 British statutes & cases                   | 396                                  |
| 347 Private law & judicial system              | 397                                  |
| 348  | 398 Folklore                         |
| 349 Statutes & cases not U.S.-Brit.            | 399 Customs of war                   |

## Language

<b>400</b>	<b>Language</b>	<b>450</b>	<b>Italian, Romanian, etc.</b>
401	Philosophy & theory	451	Written & spoken Italian
402	Miscellany	452	Italian etymology
403	Dictionaries, encyclopedias, etc.	453	Italian dictionaries
404		454	
405	Serial publications	455	Italian structural system
406	Organizations	456	Italian prosody
407	Study & teaching	457	Nonstandard Italian
408	Collections & anthologies	458	Standard Italian usage
409	Hist. & geographical treatment	459	Romanian & Rhaeto-Romanic
<b>410</b>	<b>Linguistics &amp; nonverbal</b>	<b>460</b>	<b>Spanish &amp; Portuguese</b>
411	Notations	461	Written & spoken Spanish
412	Etymology	462	Spanish etymology
413	Polyglot dictionaries	463	Spanish dictionaries
414	Phonology	464	
415	Structural systems	465	Spanish structural system
416	Prosody	466	Spanish prosody
417	Dialectology & paleography	467	Nonstandard Spanish
418	Usage (Applied linguistics)	468	Standard Spanish usage
419	Nonverbal language	469	Portuguese
<b>420</b>	<b>English &amp; Anglo-Saxon</b>	<b>470</b>	<b>Italic languages</b>
421	Written & spoken English	471	Written & spoken Latin
422	English etymology	472	Latin etymology
423	English dictionaries	473	Latin dictionaries
424		474	
425	English structural system	475	Latin structural system
426	English prosody	476	Latin prosody
427	Nonstandard English	477	Old, Postclassical, Vulgar Latin
428	Standard English usage	478	Standard Latin usage
429	Anglo-Saxon (Old English)	479	Romance & other Italic langs.
<b>430</b>	<b>Germanic languages</b>	<b>480</b>	<b>Classical &amp; Greek</b>
431	Written & spoken German	481	Written & spoken classical Greek
432	German etymology	482	Classical Greek etymology
433	German dictionaries	483	Classical Greek dictionaries
434		484	
435	German structural system	485	Class. Greek structural system
436	German prosody	486	Classical Greek prosody
437	Nonstandard German	487	Postclassical Greek
438	Standard German usage	488	Standard classical Greek usage
439	Other Germanic languages	489	Other Greek languages
<b>440</b>	<b>French, Provençal, Catalan</b>	<b>490</b>	<b>Other languages</b>
441	Written & spoken French	491	East Indo-European & Celtic
442	French etymology	492	Semitic languages
443	French dictionaries	493	Hamitic & other languages
444		494	Ural-Altaic, Dravidian, etc.
445	French structural system	495	East & Southeast Asian langs.
446	French prosody	496	African languages
447	Nonstandard French	497	North American Indian langs.
448	Standard French usage	498	South American Indian langs.
449	Provençal & Catalan	499	Austronesian & other languages



## Pure sciences

<b>500 Pure sciences</b>	<b>550 Earth sciences</b>
501 Philosophy & theory	551 Physical & dynamic geology
502 Miscellany	552 Petrology
503 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, etc.	553 Economic geology
504	554 Geology of Asia
505 Serial publications	555 Geology of Africa
506 Organizations	556 Geology of North America
507 Study & teaching	557 Geology of South America
508 Collections, travels, surveys	558 Geology of other parts of world
509 Hist. & geographical treatment	
<b>510 Mathematics</b>	<b>560 Paleontology</b>
511 Arithmetic	561 Palaeobotany
512 Algebra	562 Invertebrate paleozoology
513 Synthetic geometry	563 Protozoa, Parazoa, Metazoa
514 Trigonometry	564 Mollusca & molluscoidea
515 Descriptive geometry	565 Other invertebrates
516 Analytic (Coordinate) geometry	566 Vertebrate paleozoology
517 Calculus	567 Anamnia (Fishes etc.)
518	568 Sauropsida (Reptiles & birds)
519 Probabilities & statistical math.	569 Mammalia (Mammals)
<b>520 Astronomy &amp; allied sci.</b>	<b>570 Anthropol. &amp; biological sci.</b>
521 Theoretical astronomy	571
522 Practical & spherical astronomy	572 Human races (Ethnology)
523 Descriptive astronomy	573 Somatology (Phys. anthropol.)
524	574 Biology
525 Earth (Astronomical geography)	575 Organic evolution
526 Mathematical geography	576 Microbiology
527 Celestial navigation	577 Gen. properties of living matter
528 Ephemerides (Naut. almanacs)	578 Microscopes & microscopy
529 Chronology	579 Coll. & preservation of specimens
<b>530 Physics</b>	<b>580 Botanical sciences</b>
531 Mechanics	581 Botany
532 Mechanics of fluids	582 Spermatophyta
533 Mechanics of gases	583 Dicotyledones
534 Sound & related vibrations	584 Monocotyledones
535 Visible light etc.	585 Gymnospermae
536 Heat	586 Cryptogamia
537 Electricity & electronics	587 Pteridophyta
538 Magnetism	588 Bryophyta
539 Modern physics	589 Thallopiphyta
<b>540 Chemistry &amp; allied sciences</b>	<b>590 Zoological sciences</b>
541 Physical & theoret. chemistry	591 Zoology
542 Laboratories & equipment	592 Invertebrates
543 General analytical chemistry	593 Protozoa, Parazoa, Metazoa
544 Qualitative analytical chemistry	594 Mollusca & molluscoidea
545 Quantitative analytical chemistry	595 Other invertebrates
546 Inorganic chemistry	596 Chordata (Vertebrates)
547 Organic chemistry	597 Anamnia (Fishes etc.)
548 Crystallography	598 Reptiles & birds
549 Mineralogy	599 Mammalia (Mammals)

## Technology (Applied sciences)

<b>600 Technology (Applied sci.)</b>	<b>650 Business &amp; related</b>
601 Philosophy & theory	651 Office services
602 Miscellany	652 Writing
603 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, etc.	653 Shorthand
604	654
605 Serial publications	655 Printing & related activities
606 Organizations	656
607 Study & teaching	657 Accounting
608 Collections, patents, etc.	658 Management
609 Hist. & geographical treatment	659 Other activities & techniques
<b>610 Medical sciences</b>	<b>660 Chemical technology etc.</b>
611 Human anatomy	661 Industrial chemicals
612 Human physiology	662 Explosives, fuels, etc.
613 General & personal hygiene	663 Drinks, stimulants, etc.
614 Public health	664 Food technology
615 Therapeutics & pharmacology	665 Industrial oils, fats, gases
616 Medicine	666 Ceramic & allied industries
617 Surgery	667 Cleaning, color & related
618 Other specialized medicine	668 Other organic products
619 Compar. & experim. medicine	669 Metallurgy
<b>620 Engineering &amp; allied</b>	<b>670 Manufactures processible</b>
621 Applied physics	671 Metal manufactures
622 Mining engineering & operations	672 Ferrous metals manufactures
623 Military & naval engineering	673 Nonferrous metals manufactures
624 Civil engineering	674 Lumber, cork, wood-using indus.
625 Railroads & highways	675 Leather & fur industries
626	676 Pulp & paper industries
627 Hydraulic engineering etc.	677 Textiles
628 Sanitary & municipal engineering	678 Elastomers & their products
629 Other branches	679 Other products
<b>630 Agriculture &amp; agr. indus.</b>	<b>680 Assembled etc. products</b>
631 Farming	681 Precision mechanisms etc.
632 Plant pathology & its control	682 Small forge work
633 Field crops	683 Hardware
634 Orchards, small fruit, forestry	684 Furnishings & wheeled supports
635 Garden crops (Horticulture)	685 Leather goods & substitutes
636 Livestock & domestic animals	686
637 Dairy & related industries	687 Clothing
638 Insect culture	688 Other final products
639 Nondomesticated animals	689
<b>640 Domestic arts &amp; sciences</b>	<b>690 Buildings</b>
641 Food & drink	691 Materials
642 Food & meal service	692 Construction practices
643 The home & its equipment	693 Systems of construction
644 Household utilities	694 Wood construction
645 Household furnishings	695 Roofing & auxiliary structures
646 Clothing & care of body	696 Plumbing, heating, ventilating
647 Housekeeping	697 Heating, ventilating, etc.
648 Household sanitation	698 Detail finishing
649 Child rearing & home nursing	699

## **The arts**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>700 The arts</b>                      | <b>750 Painting &amp; paintings</b>      |
| 701 Philosophy & theory                  | 751 Processes & forms                    |
| 702 Miscellany                           | 752 Color theory & practice              |
| 703 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, etc.    | 753 Abstractions, mythology, etc.        |
| 704 Collections, iconography, etc.       | 754 Subjects of everyday life            |
| 705 Serial publications                  | 755 Religion & religious symbolism       |
| 706 Organizations                        | 756 Historical events                    |
| 707 Study & teaching                     | 757 Human figures & their parts          |
| 708 Galleries, museums, etc.             | 758 Other subjects                       |
| 709 Hist. & geographical treatment       | 759 Hist. & geographical treatment       |
| <b>710 Civic &amp; landscape art</b>     | <b>760 Graphic arts</b>                  |
| 711 Area planning (Civic art)            | 761 Relief processes for prints          |
| 712 Landscape design                     | 762                                      |
| 713 Landscape design of trafficways      | 763 Lithographic processes               |
| 714 Water in landscape design            | 764 Chromolithography & serigraphy       |
| 715 Woody plants in landscape design     | 765 Metal intaglio processes             |
| 716 Herbaceous plants in design          | 766 Mezzotinting etc. processes          |
| 717 Structures in landscape design       | 767 Etching & drypoint processes         |
| 718 Landscape design of cemeteries       | 768                                      |
| 719 Natural landscapes                   | 769 Prints                               |
| <b>720 Architecture</b>                  | <b>770 Photography &amp; photographs</b> |
| 721 Architectural construction           | 771 Equipment, supplies, chemistry       |
| 722 Ancient period                       | 772 Metallic salt processes              |
| 723 Medieval period                      | 773 Pigment processes of printing        |
| 724 Modern period                        | 774                                      |
| 725 Public structures                    | 775                                      |
| 726 Buildings for religious purposes     | 776                                      |
| 727 Bldgs. for educational purposes      | 777                                      |
| 728 Residential buildings                | 778 Specific fields of photography       |
| 729 Design & decoration                  | 779 Collections of photographs           |
| <b>730 Sculpture &amp; plastic arts</b>  | <b>780 Music</b>                         |
| 731 Processes etc. of sculpture          | 781 General principles & techniques      |
| 732 Ancient nonclassical sculpture       | 782 Dramatic music                       |
| 733 Ancient classical sculpture          | 783 Sacred music                         |
| 734 Medieval sculpture                   | 784 Voice & vocal music                  |
| 735 Modern sculpture                     | 785 Instrumental ensembles & music       |
| 736 Carving & carvings                   | 786 Keyboard instruments & music         |
| 737 Numismatics                          | 787 String instruments & music           |
| 738 Ceramic arts                         | 788 Wind instruments & their music       |
| 739 Art metalwork                        | 789 Percussion, mechan., electr. inst.   |
| <b>740 Drawing &amp; decorative arts</b> | <b>790 Recreation (Recr. arts)</b>       |
| 741 Freehand drawing & drawings          | 791 Public entertainment                 |
| 742 Perspective                          | 792 Theater (Stage presentations)        |
| 743 Freehand drawing by subject          | 793 Indoor games & amusements            |
| 744 Technical drawing                    | 794 Indoor games of skill                |
| 745 Design & crafts                      | 795 Games of chance                      |
| 746 Textile handicrafts                  | 796 Athletic & outdoor sports            |
| 747 Interior decoration                  | 797 Aquatic & air sports                 |
| 748 Glass                                | 798 Equestrian & animal sports           |
| 749 Furniture & accessories              | 799 Fishing, hunting, shooting           |

## Literature ( Belles-lettres ) and rhetoric

<b>800 Literature &amp; rhetoric</b>	<b>850 Italian etc. literature</b>
801 Philosophy & theory of literature	851 Italian poetry
802 Miscellany about literature	852 Italian drama
803 Dictionaries etc. of literature	853 Italian fiction
804	854 Italian essays
805 Serials of & about literature	855 Italian speeches
806 Organizations on literature	856 Italian letters
807 Study & teaching of literature	857 Italian satire & humor
808 Rhetoric & collections of lit.	858 Italian miscellany
809 History & criticism of literature	859 Romanian & Rhaeto-Romanic
<b>810 American lit. in English</b>	<b>860 Spanish &amp; Portuguese lit.</b>
811 Poetry	861 Spanish poetry
812 Drama	862 Spanish drama
813 Fiction	863 Spanish fiction
814 Essays	864 Spanish essays
815 Speeches	865 Spanish speeches
816 Letters	866 Spanish letters
817 Satire & humor	867 Spanish satire & humor
818 Miscellany	868 Spanish miscellany
819	869 Portuguese
<b>820 English &amp; Anglo-Saxon lit.</b>	<b>870 Italic languages literature</b>
821 English poetry	871 Latin poetry
822 English drama	872 Latin dramatic poetry & drama
823 English fiction	873 Latin epic poetry & fiction
824 English essays	874 Latin lyric poetry
825 English speeches	875 Latin speeches
826 English letters	876 Latin letters
827 English satire & humor	877 Latin satire & humor
828 English miscellany	878 Latin miscellany
829 Anglo-Saxon ( Old English )	879 Other Italic languages
<b>830 Germanic languages lit.</b>	<b>880 Classical, modern Greek lit.</b>
831 German poetry	881 Classical Greek poetry
832 German drama	882 Classical dramatic poetry
833 German fiction	883 Classical epic poetry & fiction
834 German essays	884 Classical Greek lyric poetry
835 German speeches	885 Classical Greek speeches
836 German letters	886 Classical Greek letters
837 German satire & humor	887 Classical Greek satire & humor
838 German miscellany	888 Classical Greek miscellany
839 Other Germanic languages	889 Modern Greek
<b>840 French etc. literature</b>	<b>890 Lits. of other languages</b>
841 French poetry	891 East Indo-European & Celtic
842 French drama	892 Semitic languages
843 French fiction	893 Hamitic & other languages
844 French essays	894 Ural-Altaic, Dravidian, etc.
845 French speeches	895 East & Southeast Asian langs.
846 French letters	896 African languages
847 French satire & humor	897 North American Indian langs.
848 French miscellany	898 South American Indian langs.
849 Provençal & Catalan	899 Austronesian & other languages

## General geography and history and related disciplines

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>900 Gen. geog. &amp; history etc.</b></p> <p>901 Philos. &amp; theory of gen. hist.</p> <p>902 Miscellany of general history</p> <p>903 Dictionaries etc. of gen. hist.</p> <p>904 Collected accounts of events</p> <p>905 Serial publications of gen. hist.</p> <p>906 Organizations on gen. hist.</p> <p>907 Study &amp; teaching of gen. hist.</p> <p>908 Collections of general history</p> <p>909 World history</p> <p><b>910 General geography</b></p> <p>911 Historical geography</p> <p>912 Atlases, maps, charts, etc.</p> <p>913 Geography of ancient world</p> <p>914 Geography of modern Europe</p> <p>915 Geography of modern Asia</p> <p>916 Geography of modern Africa</p> <p>917 Geography of North America</p> <p>918 Geography of South America</p> <p>919 Geography of rest of world</p> <p><b>920 Gen. biography, geneal., etc.</b></p> <p>921</p> <p>922</p> <p>923</p> <p>924</p> <p>925</p> <p>926</p> <p>927</p> <p>928</p> <p>929 Genealogy, names, insignia</p> <p><b>930 Gen. hist. of ancient world</b></p> <p>931 China</p> <p>932 Egypt</p> <p>933 Palestine</p> <p>934 India</p> <p>935 Mesopotamia &amp; Iranian Plateau</p> <p>936 Northern &amp; western Europe</p> <p>937 Italian peninsula &amp; adjacent</p> <p>938 Greece</p> <p>939 Other parts of ancient world</p> <p><b>940 Gen. hist. of modern Europe</b></p> <p>941 Scotland &amp; Ireland</p> <p>942 British Isles</p> <p>943 Central Europe</p> <p>944 France</p> <p>945 Italy &amp; adjacent territories</p> <p>946 Iberian Peninsula &amp; adjacent isls.</p> <p>947 Eastern Europe</p> <p>948 Scandinavia</p> <p>949 Other parts of Europe</p> | <p><b>950 Gen. hist. of modern Asia</b></p> <p>951 China &amp; adjacent areas</p> <p>952 Japan &amp; adjacent islands</p> <p>953 Arabian Peninsula &amp; adj. areas</p> <p>954 South Asia</p> <p>955 Iran (Persia)</p> <p>956 Middle East</p> <p>957 Siberia (Asiatic Russia)</p> <p>958 Central Asia</p> <p>959 Southeast Asia</p> <p><b>960 Gen. hist. of modern Africa</b></p> <p>961 North Africa</p> <p>962 Egypt &amp; Sudan</p> <p>963 Ethiopia</p> <p>964 Northwest coast &amp; offshore isls.</p> <p>965 Algeria</p> <p>966 West Africa &amp; offshore islands</p> <p>967 Central Africa &amp; offshore islands</p> <p>968 South Africa</p> <p>969 South Indian Ocean islands</p> <p><b>970 Gen. hist. of North America</b></p> <p>971 Canada</p> <p>972 Middle America</p> <p>973 United States</p> <p>974 Northeastern states of U.S.</p> <p>975 Southeastern states of U.S.</p> <p>976 South central states of U.S.</p> <p>977 North central states of U.S.</p> <p>978 Western states of U.S.</p> <p>979 Great Basin &amp; Pacific Slope</p> <p><b>980 Gen. hist. of South America</b></p> <p>981 Brazil</p> <p>982 Argentina</p> <p>983 Chile</p> <p>984 Bolivia</p> <p>985 Peru</p> <p>986 Northwestern South America</p> <p>987 Venezuela</p> <p>988 Guiana</p> <p>989 Other parts of South America</p> <p><b>990 Gen. hist. of rest of world</b></p> <p>991 Malay Archipelago</p> <p>992 Sunda Islands</p> <p>993 New Zealand &amp; Melanesia</p> <p>994 Australia</p> <p>995 New Guinea (Papua)</p> <p>996 Other parts of Pacific</p> <p>997 Atlantic Ocean islands</p> <p>998 Arctic islands</p> <p>999 Antarctica</p> |
|--|--|

# General Tables

## Use of the General Tables

Full instructions on use appear in the Editor's Introduction, section 3.

A number in square brackets is not in force or is no longer in force with the meaning indicated.

## 000 Generalities

### 001 Knowledge

.09 Historical and geographical treatment

Scope: spread of knowledge

#### SUMMARY

001.2 Intellectual life (Scholarship and learning)

.3 Humanities

.4 Research

.5 Communication

.9 Controversial and spurious knowledge

.2 Intellectual life (Scholarship and learning)

.3 Humanities

.4 Research [*formerly* 007]

[.401 8] Methodology

Do not use; class in 001.42

.42 Methodology

Scope: surveys and appraisals

.422 Statistical method

.424 Operations research

Experimental models, design, programing

.425 Empirical tests and testing

.426 Case studies

.429 Collecting and collections

.44 Incentives

Endowment [*formerly* 378.32], prizes, awards, scholarships, fellowships, medals, certificates, honors



## *Decimal Classification*

- 001.5      **Communication [*formerly* 384]**
  - .501      Philosophy and theory
    - Class theories in 001.51
  - .51      Theories [*formerly* 006]
  - .53      Cybernetics [*formerly* 006]
  - .532      Prototypes ( Bionics )
  - .533      Self-organizing systems
  - .534      Perception theory
  - .535      Artificial intelligence
  - .539      Information theory
    - .539 2      Recall
    - .539 3      Uncertainty
    - .539 4      Relevance and irrelevance
  - .55      Communication thru records
    - .552      Printed and written mediums (The book [*formerly* 002] )
      - .552 2      Conventional size
      - .552 3      Microreproductions [*formerly* 099]
    - .553      Other visual mediums
      - .553 2      Motion-picture films
      - .553 3      Filmstrips
      - .553 4      Slides
      - .553 5      Unprojected illustrations
    - .554      Audio mediums
      - .554 2      Mechanical
      - .554 3      Magnetic
      - .554 4      Electronic
    - .555      Other

**001.9      Controversial and spurious knowledge**

.92      Controversies

.93      Curiosities

.94      Mysteries

.95      Deceptions and hoaxes

.96      Errors, delusions, superstitions

**[002]      The book**

Class generalities in **001.552**, bookmaking and book arts in **655**

**003**

**004**

**005**

**[006]      Communication theories and cybernetics**

Class communication theories in **001.51**, cybernetics in **001.53**

**[007]      Research**

Class in **001.4**

**008**

**009**

## **010 Bibliographies and catalogs**

Of books, other printed and written mediums, nonmusical recordings, information films and slides

Class book collecting in 020.75, documentation in 029.7 [*both formerly 010*]

*For bibliographies and catalogs of books for children and young adults, see 028.52*

.28 Preparation

## **011 General bibliographies**

Lists of works not limited to a specific kind of coverage or place of publication

Including general classified bibliographies [*formerly 016*]

.02 Reference works

## **► 012–016 Special bibliographies and catalogs**

### **012 Of individuals**

Works by or about persons not clearly associated with a specific subject

### **013 Of specific classes of writers**

Works whose authors have common characteristics

Divide like 920.1–928.9, e.g., bibliographies and catalogs of writings of librarians 013.02

*For bibliographies and catalogs of individuals, see 012*

.9 Residents of specific continents, countries, localities

Add area notations 3–9 to 013.9

### **014 Of anonymous and pseudonymous works**

Divide like 031–039, e.g., bibliographies of anonymous and pseudonymous works in French 014.41

### **015 Of works from specific places**

Works issued or printed in specific continents, countries, localities, or by specific firms

Scope: national bibliographies

Add area notations 3–9 to 015

**016 Of specific subjects**

If preferred, class in standard subdivision 016

Use 016.000 1 – 016.000 9 for standard subdivisions

Divide like 001–999, e.g., bibliographies of mathematics 016.51, of newspapers in England 016.072

Class general classified bibliographies [*formerly* 016] in 011

*For bibliographies and catalogs of music scores and parts, see 781.97*

---

**017–019 General catalogs**

Lists of works held in a specific collection or group of collections and not limited to a specific kind of coverage or place of publication

**017 Subject catalogs**

---

**017.1–017.4 Classified**

- .1 Catalogs of non-private libraries
- .2 Catalogs of private and family libraries
- .3 Auction catalogs
- .4 Booksellers' catalogs

*For auction catalogs, see 017.3*

---

**017.5–017.8 Alphabetically arranged [*formerly* 019]**

- .5 Catalogs of non-private libraries
- .6 Catalogs of private and family libraries
- .7 Auction catalogs
- .8 Booksellers' catalogs

*For auction catalogs, see 017.7*

**018 Author catalogs**

Divide like 017.1–017.4, e.g., catalogs of private and family libraries 018.2

**019 Dictionary catalogs**

Divide like 017.1–017.4, e.g., auction catalogs 019.3

Class alphabetically arranged subject catalogs [*formerly* 019] in 017.5–017.8

## *Decimal Classification*

### **020 Library science**

The knowledge and skill by which printed and written records are recognized, collected, organized, utilized

*For bibliographies and catalogs, see 010*

#### **.6 Organizations**

Class friends-of-the-library organizations [*formerly 020.6*] in 021.7

#### **.62 Permanent nongovernment organizations**

##### **.621 International**

##### **.622 National**

Add area notations 3–9 to 020.622

##### **.623 Regional, state, provincial**

##### **.623 2 Regional**

Add area notations 3–9 to 020.623 2

##### **.623 4 State and provincial**

Add area notations 3–9 to 020.623 4

##### **.624 Local**

Add area notations 3–9 to 020.624

#### **.7 Study and teaching**

##### **.71 Institutions offering instruction in library science**

##### **.711 Library schools**

##### **[.713] In-service training**

Class in 023.5

##### **.715 Institutes and workshops**

##### **.75 Book collecting [*formerly 010*]**

### **021 The library**

Use 021.001–021.008 for standard subdivisions

#### **.009 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class specific libraries and kinds of libraries in 026–027

- 021.1–021.8 Establishment and purpose of libraries
- 021.1 Libraries as storage centers
- : .2 Libraries as educational force
- .3 Libraries in relation to other educational institutions
- .4 Libraries as social force
- .6 Library extension and cooperation
  - .62 Extension units
    - Class branches [*formerly* 021.62] in 027.4
  - .63 Centralization of systems
  - .64 Cooperation
    - Including union catalogs, bibliographical centers [*both formerly* 025.35]
    - For cooperation in a specific activity, see the activity, e.g. cooperative cataloging* 025.35
- [.65] Bookmobiles
  - Class in 027.4
- .7 Promotion of libraries
  - Including friends-of-the-library organizations [*formerly* 020.6]
  - For friends of specific libraries, see* 026–027
- .8 Libraries and the state
- .82 Library commissions
  - Including governing boards [*formerly* 023.3]
- .83 Monetary aid and subsidies
- .84 Gifts of books and copyright deposits
- .85 Official exchange of publications
  - Class United States Book Exchange [*formerly* 021.85] in 025.26
- .88 Political pressures
- [.89] Library laws
  - Class in 340

## *Decimal Classification*

### **022 Physical plant of libraries**

Scope: school libraries [*formerly also 371.622*]

*For maintenance of physical plant, see 025.9*

#### **.1 Location and site**

#### **[.2] Building materials and insurance**

Class building materials in 022.3, insurance in 368

#### **.3 Planning for buildings**

Requirements based on function

Including building materials [*formerly also 022.2*]

Class library architecture [*formerly 022.3*] in 727.8

#### **[.309] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 022.33

#### **.31 By kinds of libraries**

Divide like 027, e.g., planning of college libraries 022.317

*For geographical treatment, see 022.33*

#### **.33 Historical and geographical treatment**

Add area notations 1–9 to 022.33

#### **.4 Stacks and shelving**

#### **.5 Reading rooms**

*For reading rooms for special materials, see 022.6*

#### **.6 Administrative and special rooms**

Including reading rooms for special materials

#### **.7 Lighting**

#### **.8 Heating, ventilation, air conditioning**

#### **.9 Furniture and equipment**

*For stacks and shelving, see 022.4*

### **023 Library personnel and positions**

#### **[.3] Governing boards**

Class in 021.82

## *Library science*



### **023.4–023.5 Personnel**

*For titles and job descriptions, see 023.7*

#### **023.4 Administrative**

##### **.5 Staff**

Qualifications and organization

Including in-service training [*formerly 020.713*]

[.502 02] Staff manuals, rules, codes  
Do not use; class in 023.9

##### **.7 Titles and job descriptions**

Use 023.700 1 – 023.700 9 for standard subdivisions

##### **[.8] Classification, pay, retirement plans**

Class pension and retirement plans in 658.325, classification and pay plans in 658.322 2

##### **.9 Staff manuals, rules, codes**

#### **024 Regulations for use of libraries**

##### **.6 Interlibrary loans**

#### **025 Library economy**

Practical application of library science to the founding, organizing, administration of libraries

Use 025.001–025.009 for standard subdivisions

*For indexing and documentation, see 029*

##### **.02 Technical processes**

### **SUMMARY**

- 025.1 Administration
- .2 Acquisitions
- .3 Cataloging
- .4 Classification
- .5 Services to patrons
- .6 Circulation services
- .7 Binding and repair services
- .8 Maintenance and preservation of collections
- .9 Maintenance of physical plant



## *Decimal Classification*

- 025.1      **Administration**
- .11      **Finance**  
            Class accounting [*formerly 025.11*] in 657.834
- .12      **Printing and publishing**
- .129     **Duplication processes**
- .17      **Treatment of special materials**  
            Arrangement, care, use  
            *For a special kind of treatment, see the kind, e.g., catalogin,  
            of special materials 025.34*
- .171     **Manuscripts, archival materials, rarities**
- .172     **Vertical file [*formerly also 029.3*]**  
            Including clippings [*formerly 025.175*]
- .173     **Serials, documents, report literature**
- [.175]     **Clippings**  
            Class in 025.172
- .176     **Maps, atlases, globes**
- .177     **Audio-visual materials**  
            *For recordings, see 025.178; maps, atlases, globes, 025.176;  
            realia, 025.179*
- .177 1   **Art materials**  
            Pictures and prints
- .177 3   **Films and slides**
- .178     **Recordings and music scores**
- .179     **Other special materials**  
            Including microreproductions, realia
- .179 2   **Books in raised characters**  
            Braille and others

## *Library science*

### **025.2 Acquisitions**

Selecting and acquiring books, periodicals, other materials by purchase, exchange, gift

#### **.21 Book selection**

Principles and theory

#### **.23 Order work**

#### **.25 Physical preparation for shelves**

#### **.26 Exchange and gift work**

Including United States Book Exchange [*formerly 021.85*]

### **.3 Cataloging**

#### **.32 Descriptive cataloging**

#### **.33 Subject cataloging**

Use **025.330 001 – 025.330 009** for standard subdivisions

*For classification, see 025.4*

#### **.330 01–.339 99 Subject headings**

Divide like **001–999**, e.g., subject headings in science  
**025.335**

#### **.34 Cataloging of special materials**

Divide like **025.17**, e.g., cataloging of maps **025.346**

#### **.35 Cooperative cataloging**

Class union catalogs, bibliographical centers [*both formerly 025.35*] in **021.64**

#### **.37 Filing**

### **.4 Classification**

Principles, systems, notations

#### **.43 General classification schedules**

#### **.46 Classification of special subjects**

Use **025.460 001 – 025.460 009** for standard subdivisions

Divide like **001–999**, e.g., classification of music **025.467 8**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **025.5 Services to patrons**

*For a specific service, see the subject, e.g., circulation services 025.6; reference and reader advisory services to special groups, 027.6*

#### **.52 Reference services**

*Class reference and research libraries [formerly 025.52] in 027.424*

*For use of books as sources of information, see 028.7*

#### **.54 Reader advisory services [formerly also 028.8]**

*For books as sources of recreation and self-development, see 028.8*

#### **.542 To individuals**

#### **.544 To groups**

### **.6 Circulation services**

*Lending materials, keeping records of loans*

*For regulations for interlibrary loans, see 024.6*

#### **.7 Binding and repair services**

### **.8 Maintenance and preservation of collections**

#### **.81 Arrangement**

#### **.82 Inventory**

#### **.84 Preservation**

*For binding and repair, see 025.7*

### **.9 Maintenance of physical plant**



## **026–027 Specific kinds of libraries**

*Scope: specific libraries, friends of specific libraries*

*Class a specific library activity or service with the subject*

### **026 Special libraries**

*Use 026.000 1 – 026.000 9 for standard subdivisions*

*For libraries for special groups and specific organizations, see 027.6*

#### **.001–.999 Libraries devoted to specific subjects**

*Divide like 001–999, e.g., medical libraries 026.61*

**027 General libraries**

Use **027.001–027.008** for standard subdivisions

**.009 Historical treatment**

Class geographical treatment in **027.01–027.09**

**.01–.09 Geographical treatment**

Add area notations **1–9** to **027.0**, e.g., general libraries in France **027.044**

► **027.1–027.5 By form of ownership**

*For libraries for special groups and specific organizations, see 027.6; libraries devoted to specific subjects, 026.001–026.999*

**.1 Private and family libraries**

Add area notations **1–9** to **027.1**

**.2 Proprietary libraries**

Semiprivate libraries requiring subscription or membership fees for general use

Add area notations **1–9** to **027.2**

**.3 Rental libraries**

Libraries whose materials are available for use on commercial basis

Add area notations **1–9** to **027.3**

**.4 Public libraries**

Institutions that serve free all residents of a community, district, or region, usually receiving their financial support, in whole or in part, from public funds

Including bookmobiles [*formerly 021.65*], branches [*formerly 021.62*]

**.409 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in **027.43–027.49**

**.42 Specific kinds of public libraries**

*For treatment by continent, country, locality, see 027.43–027.49*

## *Decimal Classification*

- 027.422      County and regional libraries
- .424      Reference and research libraries [*formerly* 025.52]
- .43-.49      Treatment by continent, country, locality  
            Add area notations 3-9 to 027.4
- .5      Government libraries**  
            National, state, provincial
- .50<sup>9</sup>      Historical and geographical treatment  
            Class specific institutions in 027.53-027.59
- .53-.59      Specific institutions  
            Add area notations 3-9 to 027.5  
            Class United Nations Library [*formerly* 027.574 71] in 027.68
- .6      Libraries for special groups and specific organizations**  
            Scope: reference and reader advisory services to special groups  
            *For libraries for educational institutions, see 027.7-027.8;*  
            *libraries devoted to specific subjects, 026.001-026.999*
- .62      Libraries for specific age groups
- .622      For old-age groups
- .625      For children
- .625 1      Storytelling
- .626      For young adults
- .63      Libraries for minority groups
- .65      Government libraries for special groups
- .66      Welfare institution libraries
- .662      Hospital libraries  
            Comprehensive works on patient and medical libraries  
            Class medical libraries in 026.61
- .663      Libraries for the blind
- .665      Prison libraries
- .67      Religious organization libraries

## *Library science*

- 027.68      **Non-profit organization libraries**  
              Including libraries of learned societies [*formerly* 027.7], United Nations Library [*formerly* 027.574 71]
- : .69      **Business and industrial libraries**
- 027.7–027.8 Libraries for educational institutions**  
              *For libraries devoted to specific subjects, see* 026.001–026.999
- .7      **College and university libraries**  
              Class libraries of learned societies [*formerly* 027.7] in 027.68
- .709      **Historical and geographical treatment**  
              Class specific institutions in 027.73–027.79
- .73–.79      **Specific institutions**  
              Add area notations 3–9 to 027.7
- .8      **School libraries**
- .809      **Historical and geographical treatment**  
              Class specific libraries in 027.823–027.829
- .82      **By level and by place**  
              *For libraries in church-supported schools, see* 027.83
- .822      **Types by level**  
              *For specific libraries, see* 027.823–027.829; *college and university libraries, 027.7*
- .822 2      **Elementary**
- .822 3      **Secondary**
- .823–.829      **Specific libraries**  
              Add area notations 3–9 to 027.82
- .83      **Libraries in church-supported schools**  
              Libraries in schools conducted by religious groups, usually without tax support

## *Decimal Classification*

### **028 Reading and reading aids**

.074 Exhibits and displays

#### **.1 Book reviews**

Class technique of book reviewing in 808.066 028 1, critical appraisal of literature in 809

#### **.5 Reading of children and young adults**

#### **.52 Bibliographies and catalogs**

#### **.7 Use of books and libraries as sources of information**

#### **.8 Use of books as sources of recreation and self-development**

Class reader advisory services [*formerly* 028.8] in 025.54

#### **.9 Reading interests and habits**

### **029 Indexing and documentation**

Former heading: Literary methods and labor savers

#### **[.1] Study techniques**

Class in 371.302 81

#### **[.3] Clippings and files**

Class vertical file in libraries in 025.172, filing systems in office services in 651.53

#### **.5 Indexing**

#### **[.6] Authorship and editorial techniques**

Class in 808.02

#### **.7 Documentation [*formerly* 010]**

Assembling, coding, disseminating recorded knowledge as an integral procedure to achieve maximum accessibility and usability, utilizing semantics, psychological aids, techniques of reproduction

Including information storage and retrieval

## **030 General encyclopedic works**

Divide by language in which originally written as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to encyclopedias of a specific language, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., Arabic-language encyclopedias **03A** (preceding 031)



### **031–032 English-language**

#### **031 American**

English-language encyclopedias originating in Western Hemisphere and Hawaii

.02 Books of miscellaneous facts

#### **032 Other English-language**

Encyclopedias originating outside Western Hemisphere and Hawaii

.02 Books of miscellaneous facts

#### **033 Other Germanic languages**

.1 German

.9 Other

Class Scandinavian-language encyclopedias in **038**

.92 Frisian

.93 Dutch, Flemish, Afrikaans

.931 Dutch

.932 Flemish

.936 Afrikaans

.94 Low German

#### **034 French, Provençal, Catalan**

.1 French

.9 Provençal and Catalan

.91 Provençal

.99 Catalan



**035 Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic**

.1 Italian

.9 Romanian and Rhaeto-Romanic

.91 Romanian

.99 Rhaeto-Romanic

**036 Spanish and Portuguese**

.1 Spanish

.9 Portuguese

**037 Slavic languages**

.1 Russian

.8 Other

*For Ukrainian- and Belorussian-language encyclopedias, see 037.9*

.81 Bulgarian and Macedonian

.811 Bulgarian

.819 Macedonian

.82-.89 Other

*Divide like 491.82-491.89, e.g., Polish-language encyclopedias  
037.85*

.9 Ukrainian and Belorussian

.91 Ukrainian

.99 Belorussian

**038 Scandinavian languages**

.6 West Scandinavian

.61 Old Norse (Old Icelandic)

.69 Modern Icelandic and Faeroese

.691 Modern Icelandic

.699 Faeroese

.7-.8 East Scandinavian

*Divide like 439.7-439.8, e.g., Swedish-language encyclopedias  
038.7*

**039 Other languages**

*Divide like 420-490, e.g., Japanese-language encyclopedias 039.956*

*General collected essays, addresses, lectures*

**[040] General collected essays, addresses, lectures**

**Class in 080**

**041**

**042**

**043**

**044**

**045**

**046**

**047**

**048**

**049**

## **050 General periodicals and their indexes**

Divide by language as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to periodicals of a specific language, place them first by use of a letter, e.g., Hindi-language periodicals **05H** (preceding **051**)

If preferred, arrange periodicals alphabetically under **050**, using **A1** for comprehensive works about them and **Z9** for general indexes to them

### **► 051–052 English-language**

#### **051 American**

English-language periodicals of Western Hemisphere and Hawaii

#### **052 Other English-language**

Periodicals outside Western Hemisphere and Hawaii

#### **053 Other Germanic languages**

Divide like **033**, e.g., German-language periodicals **053.1**

Class Scandinavian-language periodicals and their indexes in **058**

#### **054 French, Provençal, Catalan**

Divide like **034**, e.g., Catalan-language periodicals **054.99**

#### **055 Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic**

Divide like **035**, e.g., Romanian-language periodicals **055.91**

#### **056 Spanish and Portuguese**

Divide like **036**, e.g., Spanish-language periodicals **056.1**

#### **057 Slavic languages**

Divide like **037**, e.g., Polish-language periodicals **057.85**

#### **058 Scandinavian languages**

Divide like **038**, e.g., Swedish-language periodicals **058.7**

#### **059 Other languages**

Divide like **420–490**, e.g., Japanese-language periodicals **059.956**

## **060 General organizations**

Societies, academies, foundations, associations, conferences, congresses whose activity is not limited to a specific field

Scope: comprehensive works on organizations

Including general international organizations [*formerly also* 341.11]

Class organizations having a specific purpose, field or subject with the subject

Divide geographically as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to organizations in a specific country, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., organizations in Pakistan **06P** (preceding **061**)

## **061 In North America**

Class organizations in Middle America in **068.72**

### **.1 Canada**

Divide like area notation **71**, e.g., general organizations in British Columbia **061.11**

### **.3-.9 United States**

Divide like area notations **73-79**, e.g., organizations in Ohio **061.71**

Class organizations in Hawaii in **068.969**

## **062 In England and Wales**

Divide like area notation **42**, e.g., organizations in London **062.1**

Class organizations in Scotland and Ireland in **068.41**

## **063 In central Europe**

Divide like area notation **43**, e.g., organizations in Poland **063.8**

## **064 In France**

Divide like area notation **44**, e.g., organizations in Lyons **064.582**

## **065 In Italy and adjacent territories**

Divide like area notation **45**, e.g., organizations in Rome **065.632**

## **066 In Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands**

Divide like area notation **46**, e.g., organizations in Portugal **066.9**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **067 In eastern Europe**

Divide like area notation **47**, e.g., organizations in Ukraine **067.71**

### **068 In other countries**

Add area notations **3–9** to **068**

### **069 Museums**

Class museums specializing in a specific subject in standard subdivision **074**

#### **.00 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class specific museum buildings [*formerly 069.09*] in **069.2**

#### **.1 Educational functions**

#### **.2 Buildings and service facilities**

Including specific museum buildings [*formerly 069.09*], school museums [*formerly also 371.622*]

#### **.3 Equipment and furnishings**

#### **.4 Collecting and preparing specimens**

#### **.5 Collections and exhibits**

#### **.51 Acquisition and disposal**

#### **.52 Registration and recording**

#### **.53 Exhibit methods and techniques**

#### **.54 Thefts and forgeries**

#### **[.6] Office methods and accounting**

Class office methods in **651.9**, accounting in **657.834**

#### **.7 Printing and publishing**

## **070 Newspapers and journalism**

Use 070.01–070.08 for standard subdivisions



### **070.1–070.4 Journalism**

Collecting, writing, editing information and opinion of current interests for presentation in newspapers, periodicals, newsreels, radio, television

Class journals on a specific subject with the subject, general periodicals in 050, general newspapers in 071–079

#### **.1 The press**

Dissemination of news and opinion thru publication and broadcasting

#### **.11 Responsibility to the public**

#### **[.13] Press law**

Class in 340

#### **[.3] Business management of newspapers and periodicals**

Class in 658

#### **.4 Editorial management and journalistic techniques**

#### **.41 Journalistic editing**

#### **.43 News and news sources**

Class news and editorial writing [*both formerly 070.43*] in 808.066

#### **.44 Features and special topics**

#### **.48 Journalism for special groups**

*For school journalism, see 371.897*

#### **.482 Religious groups**

#### **.484 Foreign-language groups**

Journalism in languages foreign to the country where disseminated

#### **.486 Occupational and employee groups**

#### **.9 Historical and geographical treatment of newspapers and journalism**

Class treatment by country and locality in 071–079



## **071–079 Treatment of newspapers and journalism by country and locality**

Scope: specific general newspapers and works about them

Divide geographically as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to newspapers and journalism of a specific country, place them first by use of a letter, e.g., newspapers and journalism in Nigeria **07N** (preceding **071**)

If preferred, arrange newspapers alphabetically under **070**, using **A1** for comprehensive works about them

### **071 In North America**

Class newspapers and journalism in Middle America in **079.72**

#### **.1 In Canada**

Divide like area notation **71**, e.g., newspapers and journalism in British Columbia **071.11**

#### **.3–.9 In United States**

Divide like area notations **73–79**, e.g., New York Times **071.471**

Class newspapers and journalism in Hawaii in **079.969**

### **072 In England and Wales**

Divide like area notation **42**, e.g., Times of London **072.1**

Class newspapers and journalism in Scotland and Ireland in **079.41**

### **073 In central Europe**

Divide like area notation **43**, e.g., newspapers and journalism in Austria **073.6**

### **074 In France**

Divide like area notation **44**, e.g., newspapers and journalism in Lyons **074.582**

### **075 In Italy and adjacent territories**

Divide like area notation **45**, e.g., newspapers and journalism in Rome **075.632**

**076 In Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands**

Divide like area notation **46**, e.g., newspapers and journalism in Portugal **076.9**

**077 In eastern Europe**

Divide like area notation **47**, e.g., newspapers and journalism in Ukraine **077.71**

**078 In Scandinavia**

Divide like area notation **48**, e.g., newspapers and journalism in Sweden **078.5**

**079 In other countries**

Add area notations **3–9** to **079**

**080 General collections and anthologies**

Scope: general collected essays, addresses, lectures [*all formerly 040*], quotations

Divide by language as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to collections and anthologies in a specific language, place them first by use of a letter, e.g., collections and anthologies in Urdu **08U** (preceding **081**)

If preferred, arrange collections and anthologies alphabetically under **080**

► **081–082 English-language**

**081 American [*formerly also 082*]**

English-language collections and anthologies of Western Hemisphere and Hawaii

Class other English-language collections and anthologies in **082**, collections and anthologies in other languages in **083–089** [*both formerly 081*]

**082 Other English-language [*formerly also 081*]**

Collections and anthologies outside Western Hemisphere and Hawaii

Class American collections and anthologies in **081**, collections and anthologies in other languages in **083–089** [*both formerly 082*]



- **083–089 Other languages [*formerly* 081–082]**
- 083 Other Germanic languages**  
Divide like **033**, e.g., German-language collections and anthologies **083.1**  
Class Scandinavian-language collections and anthologies in **088**
- 084 French, Provençal, Catalan**  
Divide like **034**, e.g., Catalan-language collections and anthologies **084.99**
- 085 Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic**  
Divide like **035**, e.g., Romanian-language collections and anthologies **085.91**
- 086 Spanish and Portuguese**  
Divide like **036**, e.g., Spanish-language collections and anthologies **086.1**
- 087 Slavic languages**  
Divide like **037**, e.g., Polish-language collections and anthologies **087.85**
- 088 Scandinavian languages**  
Divide like **038**, e.g., Swedish-language collections and anthologies **088.7**
- 089 Other languages**  
Divide like **420–490**, e.g., Japanese-language collections and anthologies **089.956**

**090 Manuscripts and book rarities**

Description and history

**091 Manuscripts**

**092 Block books**

**093 Incunabula**

Books printed before 1501

Including books printed by Caxton [*formerly 094*]

**094 Books notable for printing**

Limited editions, special editions, typographic masterpieces

Class books printed by Caxton [*formerly 094*] in 093

*For block books, see 092; incunabula, 093*

**.4 First editions**

**095 Books notable for bindings**

**096 Books notable for illustrations and materials**

**.1 Illustrations**

**.2 Materials**

Leaves of vellum and silk, letters of silver and gold

**097 Books notable for ownership or origin**

**098 Works notable for content**

**.1 Prohibited works**

**.11 By religious authorities**

**.12 By civil authorities**

**.3 Literary forgeries and hoaxes**

**099 Books notable for format**

Miniature editions, unusual dimensions and shapes

Class microreproductions [*formerly 099*] in 001.552 3

# 100

## 100 Philosophy and related disciplines

Use 100.1–100.9 for standard subdivisions

Class philosophy of a specific subject with the subject, e.g., philosophy of history 901

### ► 101–109 Standard subdivisions of philosophy

101 Theory

102 Miscellany

103 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

104

105 Serial publications

106 Organizations

107 Study and teaching

108 Collections and anthologies

Class collected writings of individual philosophers in 180–190

109 Historical treatment

Not limited by period or place

Class history, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment of philosophy of specific periods and places in 180–190

### ► 110–120 Metaphysics (Speculative philosophy)

110 Ontology and methodology

111 Ontology

Nature of relations and being

*For cosmology, see 113–119*

## *Ontology and methodology*

- 111.1      **Existence and essence**  
            Class existentialism [*formerly* 111.1] in 142.7

.8      **Transcendental properties of being**

.82      Unity

.83      Truth

.84      Goodness and evil

.85      Beauty (Esthetics)

112      **Classification of knowledge**

---

►                      113–119 Cosmology

113      **Origin of universe**

.2      Nature

.6      Cosmic harmony

.8      Life

114      **Space**

            Including relation of space and matter

115      **Time, duration, eternity**

            Including relation of time and motion

.4      Space time

            Implications of theories of relativity

116      **Motion and change**

117      **Matter and form**

118      **Force and energy**

119      **Number and quantity**

120      **Knowledge, cause, purpose, man**

121      **Epistemology**

            Origin, sources, limits, validity of knowledge

            For logic, *see* 160

- 121.5      **Doubt and denial**
- .6      **Belief and certitude**
- .7      **Faith**
- .8      **Worth and theory of values**
- 122      **Cause and effect**
  - Including chance versus cause
  - For final cause, see 124*
- 123      **Freedom and necessity**
  - Determinism and indeterminism
- .3      **Chance**
  - For chance versus cause, see 122*
- 124      **Teleology**
  - Design, purpose, final cause
- 125      **Finite and infinite**
- 126      **Consciousness and personality ( The self )**
- 127      **The unconscious and the subconscious**
- 128      **Man**
  - .1      **Soul**
    - For origin and destiny of the individual soul, see 129*
  - .2      **Mind**
  - .3      **Man's nature**
    - For soul, see 128.1; mind, 128.2*
  - .5      **Nature of life and death**
- 129      **Origin and destiny of the individual soul**
  - .4      **Incarnation and reincarnation**
  - .6      **Immortality**

## **130 Pseudopsychology, parapsychology, occultism**

### **131 Pseudopsychology**

Class physiological psychology [*formerly* 131] in 152

*For pseudopsychology of character and mental capacity, see*  
137-139

#### **.3 Personal well-being, happiness, success**

Class mental hygiene [*formerly* 131.3] in 614.58

#### **.32 Favorable factors**

Tranquility, personal insight, self-confidence, faith, harmonious  
living

#### **.33 Adverse factors**

Ill health, fear, anxiety, frustrations, fatigue, tension

#### **[.34] Psychoanalysis**

Class psychoanalytic systems in 150.195, psychoanalysis as  
therapy in 616.891 7

#### **.35 Dianetics**

Extrascientific methods of eradicating mental disturbances thru  
reliving traumatic experiences

### **[132] Abnormal and clinical psychologies**

Class in 157

## **133 Parapsychology and occultism**

*For esoteric and cabalistic traditions, see* 135.4

### **SUMMARY**

- 133.1 Apparitions (Ghosts)**
- .3 Divinatory arts**
- .4 Magic, witchcraft, demonology**
- .5 Mundane astrology**
- .6 Palmistry**
- .7 Frauds in occultism**
- .8 Extrasensory perception**
- .9 Spiritualism**

## Decimal Classification

- 133.1      **Apparitions (Ghosts)**
    - .12          Haunted places
    - .122          Ghosts in specific types of locale
      - Haunted graveyards, churches, forests, houses
      - For ghosts in specific places, see 133.129*
    - .129          Ghosts in specific places
      - Add area notations 3–9 to 133.129
    - .14          Specific kinds of apparitions
      - Poltergeists, hobgoblins, disembodied spirits
  - .3          **Divinatory arts**
    - For chiromancy, see 133.64; dream books, 135.3; divinatory graphology, 137.7*
    - .32          Predictions
    - .322          Crystal gazing
    - .323          Radiesthesia
      - Location of living and inert substances thru human sensitivity to latent radiations and use of divining rods, pendulums, other devices
- 
- 133.323 2 – 133.323 7 Location of specific substances
- .323 2          Water
  - .323 3          Metals
  - .323 7          Petroleum and gases
  - .323 9          Telediesthesia (Distant prospection)
  - .324          Fortunetelling
    - For fortunetelling by numbers, see 133.335 4; horoscopes, 133.54*
    - .324 2          Cartomancy
    - .324 24          By tarot
    - .324 29          By other kinds of cards
    - .324 4          By tea leaves and coffee grounds
    - .324 8          By oracles and sibyls

*Pseudopsychology, parapsychology, occultism*

- 133.33      **Symbolic divination**
  - For cartomancy, see 133.324 2*
- .333      **Geomancy**
- .334      **Divinatory signs and omens**
- .335      **Numerology**
- .335 4      **Fortunetelling by numbers**
- .335 9      **Symbolism of specific numbers**
- .4      **Magic, witchcraft, demonology**
- .42      **Demonology**
- .422      **Satanism (Devil worship)**
- .423      **Evil spirits**
  - Incubi, succubi, vampires, werewolves**
- .425      **The evil eye**
- .426      **Demoniac possession**
- .427      **Exorcism of demons**
- .43      **Magicians' manuals**
  - Grimoire, black books, magic formulas, incantations**
- .44      **Charms, amulets, talismans, mascots**
- .442      **Love charms**
- .443      **Good luck charms**
- .446      **Therapeutic charms**
- .47      **Voodooism**
- .5      **Mundane astrology**
- .52      **Zodiacal signs**
- .53      **Planets**
  - Aspects, houses, positions of planets**
- .54      **Horoscopes**
- .540 4      **Daily guides and birthday books**
- .542      **Casting horoscopes**
- .548      **Horoscopes of specific individuals**



## *Decimal Classification*

- 133.55      **Ephemerides**
- .56      **Horary astrology**
- .58      **Specific applications**  
             Use 133.580 001 – 133.580 009 for standard subdivisions  
             Divide like 001–999, e.g., medical astrology 133.586 1
- .6      **Palmistry**
- .62      **Chiromnomy**  
             Determination of character and latent abilities thru study of  
             shape and physical characteristics of hand
- .64      **Chiromancy**  
             Divination thru study of mounts, lines, signs on hands
- .7      **Frauds in occultism**
- .8      **Extrasensory perception**
- .82      **Telepathy**
- .84      **Clairvoyance**
- .85      **Clairaudience**
- .86      **Precognition**
- .9      **Spiritualism**  
             Communication with discarnate spirits
- .901      **Philosophy and theory**
- .901 3      **Personal survival**
- .91      **Mediumship**  
             Development and practice of mediums, psychic experiences of  
             individual mediums  
             *For a specific phenomenon, see the subject, e.g., levitation*  
             133.92
- .92      **Physical phenomena**  
             Table-tipping, rapping, levitation, dematerialization, ectoplasm
- .93      **Psychic phenomena**  
             Ouija board messages, automatic writings and utterances

**[134] Hypnotism**

Class in 154.7

**135 Dreams and the mystic traditions**

Class sleep phenomena [*formerly* 135] in 154.6

• **.3 Dream books**

[.37] Daydreams

Class in 154.3

**.4 Esoteric and cabalistic traditions**

.42 Mysteries of the ancient elements

.43 Rosicrucian mysteries

**[136] Differential and genetic psychology**

Class in 155

---

► **137–139 Pseudopsychology of character and mental capacity**

**137 Personality analysis and improvement**

Class psychology of personality [*formerly* 137] in 155.2

*For physiognomy, see 138*

**.7 Analytic and divinatory graphology**

**138 Physiognomy**

Determination of character from analysis of features

**139 Phrenology**

Determination of mental capacities from skull structure

**140 Specific philosophical viewpoints**

Class specific philosophers in 180–190, a specific branch of philosophy with the subject

**141 Idealism and related systems and doctrines**

Including spiritualism, panpsychism, subjectivism, voluntarism, Platonism, Neoplatonism

.3 **Transcendentalism**

.4 **Individualism**

.5 **Personalism**

.6 **Romanticism**

**142 Critical philosophy**

*For critical realism, see 149.2*

.3 **Kantianism and neo-Kantianism**

.7 **Phenomenalism and phenomenology**

Including existentialism [*formerly 111.1*]

**143 Intuitionism and Bergsonism**

*For mysticism, see 149.3*

**144 Humanism and related systems and doctrines**

.3 **Pragmatism**

.5 **Instrumentalism**

.6 **Utilitarianism**

**145 Sensationalism and ideology**

**146 Naturalism and related systems and doctrines**

Including dynamism, energism

.3 **Materialism**

Including dialectical materialism

.4 **Positivism (Comtism)**

Including logical positivism

*Specific philosophical viewpoints*

- 146.5      **Atomism**
- .6      **Mechanism and neomechanism**
- .7      **Evolutionism**
- .
- 147      **Pantheism and related systems and doctrines**
  - Including panentheism, animism, vitalism, parallelism, occasionalism
- .3      **Monism**
- .4      **Dualism and pluralism**
- 148      **Liberalism, eclecticism, syncretism, traditionalism, dogmatism**
- 149      **Other philosophical systems and doctrines**
  - .1      **Nominalism and conceptualism**
  - .2      **Realism, neorealism, critical realism**
  - .3      **Mysticism and anthroposophy**
  - .5      **Optimism and meliorism**
  - .6      **Pessimism**
  - .7      **Rationalism and related systems and doctrines**
    - Including intellectualism, innatism, nativism
  - .72      **Agnosticism**
  - .73      **Skepticism**
  - .8      **Nihilism and fatalism**
    - For existentialism, see 142.7*
  - .9      **Other systems and doctrines**
  - .94      **Semantics**

## 150 Psychology

This schedule is completely new, prepared with little reference to earlier editions and assigning new meanings to many numbers. Such numbers are italicized

- [.13]           Applied psychology
  - Class in 158
- .19           Systems, schools, viewpoints
- .192           Speculative systems
  - Rational, faculty, phenomenological, existential schools
- [.192 4]       Gestalt psychology
  - Class in 150.198 2
- .193           Functionalism
- .193 2         Dynamic psychologies
- .193 3         Purposive psychologies
- .193 32        Holistic
- .193 33        Hormic
- .193 34        Organismic
- .194           Reductionism
- .194 3         Behaviorism
- .194 32        Watsonian behaviorism
  - Systems of Watson, Spranger, Hunter, Lashley
- .194 34        Neobehaviorism (Pragmatic reductionism)
  - Systems of Guthrie, Hull, Skinner, Tolman
- .194 4         Reflexology (Associationism)
  - Systems of Pavlov, Bekhterev, Thorndike
- .195           Psychoanalytic systems [*formerly* 131.34]
- .195 2         Freudian
- .195 3         Adlerian
- .195 4         Jungian
- .195 7         Neopschoanalytic
  - Systems of Horney, Fromm, Sullivan

## *Psychology*

- 150.198      Other systems
- .198 2      Gestalt psychology [*formerly* 150.192 4]
- .198 4      Field theory
- .72      Research
- Class experimental psychology [*formerly* 150.72] in 152

### [151]    **Intelligence and aptitudes**

Class in 153.9

### [.3]      **Comparative psychology**

Class in 156

## 152      **Physiological [*formerly* 131] and experimental [*formerly* 150.72] psychology**

### SUMMARY

- 152.1      Sensory perception
- .3      Movements and motor functions
- .4      Emotions and feelings
- .5      Motivation (Drives)
- .8      Quantitative psychology
- .1      **Sensory perception**
- Receptive processes and functions
- Scope: attributes, thresholds, discrimination, tests
- .14      **Visual perception**
- .142      **Spatial perception**
- .142 2      Visual acuity
- Discrimination of spatial distribution of dark and light in  
            visual field
- .142 3      **Pattern perception**
- 142 5      **Movement perception**
- Real and apparent
- 143      **Brightness perception**
- 145      **Color perception**
- 148      **Other perceptual attributes**
- Optical illusions, afterimages

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 152.15      Auditory perception [*formerly* 152.2]
  - .152      Pitch perception
  - .154      Volume perception
  - .157      Timbre perception
    - Tone discrimination, musical psychology
  - .158      Localization
- .16      Chemical sensory perception
  - .166      Olfactory perception [*formerly* 152.3]
  - .167      Gustatory perception [*formerly* 152.4]
  - .18      Other types of sensory perception
  - .182      Cutaneous (Tactile) perception [*formerly* 152.5]
    - .182 2      Thermal perception
    - .182 3      Pressure perception
    - .182 4      Pain perception
    - .182 8      Derived sensory perception
      - Perception of vibration, itch, tickle
  - .188      Proprioceptive perceptions [*formerly* 152.6]
    - .188 2      Orientational perceptions
    - .188 6      Visceral perceptions
      - Hunger, thirst, well-being, fatigue
  - .189      Synesthesia
  - [.2]      Auditory perception
    - Class in 152.15
  - .3      Movements and motor functions [*formerly* 158.3]
    - Class olfactory perception [*formerly* 152.3] in 152.166

---

152.32–152.33 Automatic movements [*formerly* 158.4]

  - .32      Involuntary movements
    - .322      Reflexes
      - .322 3      Innate reflexes
      - .322 4      Conditioned reflexes

152.324	Instinctive movements
.33	Habits and habit formation
.334	Motor learning
.335	Handedness and laterality
.35	Voluntary movements [ <i>formerly</i> 158.5]
.38	Special motor functions [ <i>formerly</i> 158.8]
.382	Locomotion
.384	Expressive movements
.384 2	Vocal expressions
.384 5	Graphic expressions
.385	Coordination
.4	<b>Emotions and feelings [<i>formerly</i> 157]</b>
	Affective processes and reactions
	Class gustatory perception [ <i>formerly</i> 152.4] in 152.167
.42	Expression of emotions
.43	Types of emotions
.432	Primitive and uncontrolled emotions
.434	Secondary emotions
.44	Feeling and feelings
	Including conation and feeling [ <i>formerly</i> 158.1]
.442	Expression of feelings
.443	Types of feelings
.444	Feeling tone
.45	States affected by feelings
.452	Sentiments and attitudes
.454	Moods and dispositions
.5	<b>Motivation (Drives) [<i>formerly</i> 159.4]</b>
	Class cutaneous (tactile) perceptions [ <i>formerly</i> 152.5] in 152.182
.52	Types
	Biological, secondary, social drives
.58	Measurements



## *Decimal Classification*

- [152.6]    **Proprioceptive perceptions**  
            Class in 152.188
- [.7]        **Perceptual processes**  
            Class in 153.7
- .8          **Quantitative psychology**  
            Psychophysical methods  
            Class a specific application with the subject
- .82        **Threshold and discrimination studies**
- .83        **Reaction-time studies**
- 153        **Intelligence, intellectual and conscious mental processes**

### **SUMMARY**

- 153.1    **Memory and learning**
- .2        **Ideation**
- .3        **Imagination and imagery**
- .4        **Cognition ( Knowledge )**
- .7        **Perceptual processes**
- .8        **Volition ( Will )**
- .9        **Intelligence and aptitudes**

### **Memory and learning [*formerly* 154]**

Class concepts and concept formation [*formerly* 153.1] in 153.23

- 12        **Memory processes**
- 122       **Retention**
- 123       **Recall and reproduction**
- 124       **Recognition**
- 125       **Forgetting**
- 13        **Types of memory**
- 132       **Visual**
- 133       **Auditory**
- 134       **Visual-auditory**
- 136       **Other**

153.14	Mnemonic systems
.15	Learning
.152	Methods
.152.2	Repetition and rote learning
.152.3	Imitation
.152.4	Trial and error
.152.6	Association
.152.8	Discrimination
.153	Factors
.153.2	Attention and concentration
.153.3	Interest and enthusiasm
.153.4	Motivation
.154	Transfer of learning
.158	Learning curves
.2	Ideation
.22	Association of ideas
.23	Concepts and concept formation [ <i>formerly</i> 153.1]
.24	Abstraction [ <i>formerly</i> 153.3]
.25	Inspiration
.3	Imagination and imagery [ <i>formerly</i> 155]
	Class abstraction [ <i>formerly</i> 153.3] in 153.24
.32	Eidetic imagery
.35	Creativity
.4	Cognition (Knowledge)
	<i>For ideation, see</i> 153.2
.42	Thought and thinking
	<i>For reasoning, see</i> 153.43
.422	Reflective thought
.423	Imageless thought

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 153.43      Reasoning [*formerly* 153.6]
- .432      Inductive
- .433      Deductive
- .44      Intuition [*formerly* 156]
- .45      Value
- .46      Judgment [*formerly* 153.5]
- [.5]      Judgment
  - Class in 153.46
- [.6]      Reasoning
  - Class in 153.43
- .7      Perceptual processes [*formerly* 152.7]
  - Perceptual apprehension and understanding
    - For sensory perception, see 152.1; extrasensory perception 133.8*
- .73      Basic elements
- .733      Attention
- .734      Apperception
- .735      Preperception
- .736      Subliminal perception
- .74      Errors (Normal illusions)
- .75      Types of perception
- .752      Space perception
- .753      Time and rhythm perception
- .754      Movement perception
- .8      Volition (Will) [*formerly* 159.2]
  - Class depth psychology [*formerly* 153.8] in 154
- .83      Choice and decision [*formerly* 159.1]
- .85      Modification of will
  - .852      Persuasion
  - .853      Menticide (Brainwashing)
  - .854      Conformity

## *Psychology*

### **153.9 Intelligence and aptitudes [*formerly* 151]**

.92 Factors affecting intelligence

.93 General intelligence tests

.932 Individual

.932 3 Verbal

.932 4 Nonverbal

.933 Group

.933 3 Verbal

.933 4 Nonverbal

.94 Aptitude tests

Individual, group, verbal, nonverbal tests for special abilities

Use 153.940 001 – 153.940 009 for standard subdivisions

Divide like 001–999, e.g., tests for musical ability 153.947 8

.98 Superior intelligence

*For exceptional children, see 155.45*

### **154 Subconscious states and processes**

Depth psychology [*formerly* 153.8]

Class memory and learning [*formerly* 154] in 153.1

.2 The subconscious

.22 Elements

Id, ego, superego

.24 Activities

Sublimation, transference, reasoning, conflicts, complexes

.3 Secondary consciousness

Daydreams [*formerly* 135.37], fantasies, reveries

.6 Sleep phenomena [*formerly* 135]

.62 Sleep

.63 Dreams

.632 Types

.634 Analysis

## *Decimal Classification*

- 154.64      Somnambulism
- .7      **Hypnotism [*formerly* 134]**
- .72      Mesmerism and animal magnetism
- .76      Induction of hypnosis
- .77      Hypnotic phenomena
- .772      Trance phenomena
- .774      Posthypnotic phenomena
- .78      Special developments
- 
- 155      **Differential and genetic psychology [*formerly* 136]**
  - Class imagination and imagery [*formerly* 155] in 153.3

### **SUMMARY**

- 155.2      Individual psychology
- .3      Sex psychology
- .4      Child psychology
- .5      Adolescents
- .6      Adults and aged
- .7      Evolutional psychology
- .8      Ethnopsychology and national psychology
- .9      Psychology of influence, pattern, example
- 
- .2      **Individual psychology**
  - Personality [*formerly* 137], character, individuality
- 
- .22      Individual differences
- .23      Personality traits and determinants
- .232      Specific traits
- .234      Determinants
  - Biological, moral, social, mental determinants
- 
- .24      Adaptability [*formerly* 159.3]
- .25      Personality development and modification
- .26      Typology
- .262      Classical (Hippocrates' theory of temperaments)
- .264      Modern
  - Classification schemes of Jung, James, Stern, Rorschach, Kretschmer, Sheldon

155.28	Appraisals and tests
.282	Diagnostic graphology
.283	Inventories and questionnaires
.284	Projective techniques
.284 2	Rorschach tests
.284 3	Szondi tests
.284 4	Thematic apperception tests

.3	Sex psychology
.31	Erogenity and libido
.32	Sex and personality
.33	Sex differences
.332	Masculinity
.333	Femininity
.334	Bisexuality
.34	Sex relations

---

**155.4–155.7 Developmental psychology**

*For sex psychology, see 155.3*

.4	Child psychology
	Thru age eleven
.41	Basic behavior patterns
.41 2	Motor behavior
	Development of posture, locomotion, coordination
.413	Adaptive behavior
	Development of intelligence, intellectual and conscious mental processes
.418	Personal-social behavior
	Development of interpersonal relations, responsiveness to gestures and speech, self-help habits

## *Decimal Classification*



### 155.42–155.45 Specific groupings

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., preschool boys **155.423**

Exceptional children

By class, type, relationships

By age groups

By sex

155.42 By age groups

.422 Infants

From birth to age two

.423 Preschool children

Ages three to five

.424 School children

Ages six to eleven

.43 By sex

.432 Boys

.433 Girls

.44 By class, type, relationships

.442 The only child

.443 Siblings

Brothers and sisters not of the same birth

.444 Twins, triplets, quadruplets

Brothers and sisters of the same birth

.445 Adopted and foster children

.446 Institutionalized children

.45 Exceptional children

Divide like 371.9, e.g., psychology of gifted children **155.455**

155.5 Adolescents

Ages twelve to twenty

.53 By sex

.532 Young men

.533 Young women

.6 Adults and aged

---

155.61-155.64 Adults

.61 Mental and creative productivity

.63 By sex

*For adults by status, type, relationships, see 155.64*

.632 Men

.633 Women

.64 By status, type, relationships

.642 Single status

.642 2 Bachelors

.642 3 Spinsters

.643 Divorst status

.643 2 Men

.643 3 Women

.644 Widowed status

.644 2 Men

.644 3 Women

.645 Married status

.645 2 Men

.645 3 Women

.646 Parents

Class divorst parents in 155.643, widowed parents in 155.644

.646 2 Fathers

.646 3 Mothers



## *Decimal Classification*

- 155.67      Aged
  - .671      Mental and physical impairments
  - .672      Adaptability problems
    - Psychological aspects of retirement, change in status,  
        institutional life
  - .7        Evolutional psychology
    - Influence of heredity on personal characteristics
  - .8        Ethnopsychology and national psychology
  - .81      Primitive man
- 
- 155.82-155.84 Ethnopsychology
- .82      Race differences
  - .84      Specific races
    - Divide like 420-490, e.g., psychology of Jews 155.849 24
  - .89      National psychology
    - Add area notations 3-9 to 155.89
  - .9        Psychology of influence, pattern, example
  - .91      Physical influences
  - .911     Sensory
    - Divide like 152.1, e.g., psychology of color 155.911 45
  - .915     Climatic
  - .916     Deformities, injuries, diseases
  - .92      Social influences
    - Divide like 158.2, e.g., influences of family members 155.924
  - .93      Situational influences
  - .935     Catastrophic disasters
    - Behavior patterns during earthquakes, floods, hurricanes,  
        fires, bombings
  - .936     Accidents

## *Psychology*

- 155.94      Housing and community influences  
    .942-.944      Specific types of communities  
                Divide like area notations 173 2-173 4, e.g., urban influences  
                155.942
- .945      Housing
- .95      Clothing
- .96      Spatial and restrictive influences
- .962      Prisons
- .963      Submarine structures
- .964      Subterranean structures  
                Behavior patterns in underground shelters, caves, mines,  
                tunnels and similar structures
- .965      Aircraft (Aviation psychology)
- .966      Spacecraft (Space psychology)

### **156      Comparative psychology [*formerly* 151.3]**

    Ontogenic and phylogenic studies of behavior mechanisms in lower organisms

    Class intuition [*formerly* 156] in 153.44



---

### **156.2-156.7 Animal psychology**

- .2      Physiological psychology  
                Divide like 152, e.g., reaction-time studies of animals 156.283
- .3      Intelligence and intellectual processes  
                Divide like 153, e.g., learning curves of animals 156.315 8
- .4      Subconscious states and processes
- .7      Abnormal behavior
- .9      Plant behavior

**157 Abnormal and clinical psychologies [both formerly 132]**

Class emotions and feelings [*formerly 157*] in 152.4

---

► **157.1–157.8 Abnormal psychology**

Study of behavior patterns of psychotic, psychoneurotic, mentally deficient individuals

*For exceptional children, see 155.45*

---

► **157.1–157.2 Psychoses**

**.1 Organic**

Paresis, cerebrovascular disorders, chorea, epilepsy

**.2 Functional**

Divide like 616.895–616.898, e.g., manic-depressive psychoses 157.25

---

► **157.3–157.7 Psychoneuroses**

**.3 Hysteria and related disorders**

Divide like 616.852, e.g., amnesias 157.33

**.5 Speech and language disorders**

Divide like 616.855, e.g., aphasias 157.52

**.6 Psychoneurotic addictions and intoxications**

Divide like 613.8, e.g., alcoholism 157.61

**.7 Disorders of character and personality**

Divide like 616.858 2 – 616.858 4, e.g., homosexuality 157.734

**.8 Mental deficiency**

Divide like 616.858 8, e.g., imbeciles 157.823

**.9 Clinical psychology**

**.92 Psychodiagnoses**

Appraising adjustment problems of individuals

**.94 Rehabilitation**

## *Psychology*

### **158 Applied psychology [*formerly* 150.13]**

Class specific applications with the subject

#### **.1 Successful living**

Class conation and feeling [*formerly* 158.1] in 152.44

#### **.2 Interpersonal relations**

.24 With family members

.25 With friends and neighbors

.26 With work associates

.27 With strangers

#### **.3 Interviewing**

Class movements and motor functions [*formerly* 158.3] in 152.3

#### **.4 Leadership**

Class automatic movements [*formerly* 158.4] in 152.32-152.33

#### **.5 Cooperation**

Class voluntary movements [*formerly* 158.5] in 152.35

#### **.6 Vocational interests**

#### **.7 Industrial psychology**

#### **[.8] Special motor functions**

Class in 152.38

### **159 Other aspects**

#### **[.1] Choice and decision**

Class in 153.83

#### **[.2] Volition ( Will )**

Class in 153.8

#### **[.3] Adaptability**

Class in 155.24

#### **[.4] Motivation ( Drives )**

Class in 152.5

**160 Logic**

Science of reasoning processes

**161 Induction**

*For hypothesis, see 167; analogy, 169*

**162 Deduction**

*For syllogism, see 166*

**163**

**164 Symbolic and mathematical logic**

**► 165–169 Specific topics**

**165 Fallacies and sources of error**

Contradiction, paradox, fictions

**166 Syllogism**

**167 Hypothesis**

**168 Argument and persuasion**

**169 Analogy**

## **170 Ethics (Moral philosophy)**

.202            **Practical ethics (Conduct of life)**

---

170.202 2 – 170.202 4 For specific classes

.202 2            **Specific age groups**

.202 22           **Children**

.202 23           **Young adults (Adolescents)**

.202 232           **Men**

.202 233           **Women**

.202 26           **Aged**

.202 4            **Groups by sex**

*For practical ethics for specific age groups, see 170.202 2*

.202 42           **Male**

.202 44           **Female**

## **171 Systems and doctrines**

.1            **Based on authority**

Class morals and duties in comparative religion in 291.5; in a specific religion with the religion, e.g., Christian moral theology 241

.2            **Based on intuition and moral sense**

*For systems and doctrines based on conscience, see 171.6*

.3            **Perfectionism**

Systems and doctrines based on self-realization, fulfilment of personality

.4            **Hedonism**

Systems and doctrines based on achievement of individual pleasure or happiness

.5            **Utilitarianism**

Systems and doctrines based on achievement of the greatest happiness of the greatest number

.6            **Based on conscience**

Including casuistry, conflict of duties

## *Decimal Classification*

**171.7      Based on evolution and education**

**.8          Based on altruism**

*For utilitarianism, see 171.5*

**.9          Based on egoism**

*For hedonism, see 171.4*



---

### **172–179 Applied ethics**

Inherent rightness and wrongness of specific human qualities, relationships, activities

Class comprehensive works on practical ethics in 170.202

**172      Ethics of political relationships**

**.1          Citizenship**

Duties of citizens to community, state, nation with respect to defense, obedience to law, payment of taxes, civic and political activity, revolution, civil war

**.2          Public office**

Duties of officials with respect to public administration and welfare, security, justice, education, freedom of citizens

**.4          International relations**

Foreign policies, war and peace, disarmament, espionage

**173      Ethics of family relationships**

Marriage, separation, divorce, responsibilities of parents for children and home life, of children to parents

**174      Professional and occupational ethics [*formerly*  
standard subdivision 069]**

*If preferred, class in standard subdivision 017*

**.1          Of clergy**

**.2          Of medical professions**

**.22        Hippocratic oath**

**.24        Euthanasia**

**.26        Economic questions**

**Medical advertising, fee splitting**

*Ethics (Moral philosophy)*

**174.3 Of legal professions**

**.4 Of trade, manufacture, finance (Business ethics)**

**.6 Of gambling business and lottery management**

Class ethics of games of chance in 175.5, of betting in 175.9

**.9 Of other professions and occupations**

Including military ethics [*formerly* 355.13], ethics of musicians [*formerly* 780.071]

Divide like 001–999, e.g., ethics of librarianship 174.902

**175 Ethics of recreation**

Scope: sportsmanship, fair play

**.1 Of radio, television, motion pictures, circuses**

**.2 Of theater, opera, musical performances**

**.3 Of dancing**

**.4 Of games of skill**

*For ethics of card games, see 175.5*

**.5 Of games of chance**

Including card games, dice games, roulette

**.6 Of human and animal combat**

Boxing, wrestling, bullfights, cockfights

**.7 Of racing**

Man, animals, vehicles

**.8 Of recreational reading**

*For ethics of obscenity in literature, see 176.8*

**.83 Reading comics**

**.9 Of betting**

*For ethics of games of chance, see 175.5*



## *Decimal Classification*

### **176 Sexual ethics**

Including chastity, celibacy, continence, adultery, artificial insemination

**.5 Of prostitution**

**.7 Of obscenity in art**

**.8 Of obscenity in literature**

### **177 Ethics of social relations**

**.1 Of courtesy, politeness, hospitality**

Class etiquette in 395

**.2 Of conversation, gossip, scandal**

**.3 Of slander, flattery, truthfulness, lying**

**.4 Of personal appearance**

Exposure of person, display of dress

**.5 Of slavery, discriminatory practices**

**.6 Of friendship and courtship**

*For sexual ethics, see 176*

**.7 Of philanthropy, benevolence, kindness**

Including liberality, charity [*both formerly also 179.9*]

### **178 Ethics of temperance and intemperance**

**.1 In use of alcoholic beverages**

Abstinence, moderate or social drinking, heavy drinking

**[.5] Prohibition**

Class in 340

**.7 In use of tobacco**

**.8 In use of narcotics**

**.9 In other forms**

Gluttony, greediness

*Ethics (Moral philosophy)*

**179 Other applications of ethics**

.01-.09 Standard subdivisions of cruelty

**179.2-179.3 Cruelty**

Class standard subdivisions in 179.01-179.09

**.2 To children**

**.3 To animals**

*For vivisection, see 179.4*

**.36 Birds**

**.4 Vivisection**

**.5 Profanity, blasphemy, obscenity in speech**

**.6 Courage and cowardice**

**.7 Respect for human life**

Genocide, homicide, suicide, capital punishment, dueling

*For ethics of war, see 172.4; of civil war, 172.1; of euthanasia, 174.24*

**.8 Vices, faults, failings**

Not otherwise provided for

Pride, covetousness, envy, anger, sloth, jealousy, avarice, hatred, cheating

**.9 Virtues**

Not otherwise provided for

Humility, gentleness, patience, diligence, self-reliance, self-control, toleration, honesty, modesty, prudence, cheerfulness, gratitude

Class liberality, charity [*both formerly 179.9*] in 177.7



## **180–190 Historical and geographical treatment of philosophy**

Scope: development, description, critical appraisal, collected writings, biographical treatment of individual philosophers regardless of viewpoint

Class historical treatment not limited by period or place in 109

## **180 Ancient, medieval, Oriental philosophy**

Use 180.01–180.09 for standard subdivisions

### **.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of ancient philosophy**

## **181 Oriental**

Not limited by period

Use 181.001–181.009 for standard subdivisions

### **.04–.09 Based on specific religions**

Divide like 294–299, e.g., Buddhist philosophy 181.043

Class Hindu-Brahmanical philosophy in 181.41–181.48,

Judaistic philosophy in 181.3, Christian philosophy in 189–199

### **181.1–181.9 Of specific places**

Divide geographically as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to philosophy of a specific country, place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., philosophy of Lebanon 181.L (preceding 181.1)

### **Far East and South Asia**

*For philosophy of India, see 181.4*

11 China and Korea

12 Japan

15 Pakistan

16 Indonesia

17 Philippines

19 Southeast Asia

Divide like area notation 59, e.g., philosophy of Thailand 181.193

**181.2 Egypt**

**.3 Palestine, Judea, Israel**

: Class here Judaistic philosophy

**.4 India**

Class philosophy of Pakistan in 181.15

---

► 181.41–181.48 Hindu-Brahmanical

.41 Sankhya

.42 Mimamsa

.43 Nyaya

.44 Vaisheshika

.45 Yoga

.452 Patanjali

.48 Vedanta

.482 Sankaracharya (Advaita)

.483 Ramanujacharya (Visistadvaita)

.484 Dualistic school

.484 1 Madhvacharya (Dvaita)

.484 2 Bhedabheda

.484 3 Nimbarka (Dvaitadvaita)

.484 4 Vallabhacharya (Suddhadvaita)

.49 Other

**.5 Persia and Iran**

**.6 Mesopotamia**

Philosophy of Assyria, Babylonia, Chaldea

**.8 Phoenicia**

**.9 Other**

Divide like area notation 39, e.g., philosophy of Arabia 181.947



---

**182–188 Ancient Western**

---



**182–185 Greek**

Class comprehensive works in 182

*For Skeptic and Neoplatonic philosophy, see 186*

**182 Pre-Socratic**

- .1 Ionic
- .2 Pythagorean
- .3 Eleatic
- .4 Heraclitean
- .5 Empedoclean
- .7 Democritean
- .8 Anaxagorean

**183 Sophistic, Socratic and related philosophies**

- .1 Sophistic
- .2 Socratic
- .4 Cynic
- .5 Cyrenaic
- .6 Megaric
- .7 Elian and Eretrian

**184 Platonic**

**185 Aristotelian**

**186 Skeptic and Neoplatonic**

- .1 Pyrrhonic
- .2 New Academy
- .3 Eclectic
- .4 Neoplatonic and Alexandrian



---

**187–188 Roman**

---

*For Skeptic and Neoplatonic philosophy, see 186*

**187 Epicurean**

**188 Stoic**

**189 Medieval Western**

Scope: early Christian philosophy

**.2 Patristic**

**.4 Scholastic**

**.5 Mystic**

**190 Modern Western philosophy**

Scope: Christian philosophy

Class here comprehensive works on modern philosophy, on Western philosophy

Divide geographically as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to philosophy of a specific country, place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., philosophy of Mexico **19M** (preceding 191)

*For ancient, medieval, Oriental philosophy, see 180*

**191 United States and Canada**

**192 British Isles**

**193 Germany and Austria**

**194 France**

**195 Italy**

**196 Spain and Portugal**

**.1 Spain**

**.9 Portugal**

**197 Russia and Finland**

**.1 Finland**

**.2 Russia, Ukraine, Belorussia**

**198 Scandinavia**

**.1 Norway**

**.5 Sweden**

**.9 Denmark**

**199 Other**

Add area notations 4-9 to 199

## 200 Religion

Class comparative religion in 291

- .1 Philosophy and theory
- .19 Psychological aspects
  - Including religious emotions [*formerly 291.12*]
- .2-.3 Miscellany, dictionaries, encyclopedias
- .4 Religious mythology
- .5-.9 Other standard subdivisions

### ► 201-209 Standard subdivisions of Christian religion

- 201 Philosophy and theory
- 202 Miscellany
- 203 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances
- 204
- 205 Serial publications
- 206 Organizations
- 207 Study and teaching
  - Class religious training and instruction in Sunday schools, church schools, vacation Bible schools in 268
  - .1 Schools and courses
  - .11 Colleges and universities
    - Divide like 281-289, e.g., Roman Catholic seminaries 207.112
    - For colleges and universities in specific places, see 207.4-207.9*
  - .12 Secondary schools
    - Divide like 281-289, e.g., Adventist training schools 207.126 7
    - For secondary schools in specific places, see 207.4-207.9*

**207.3      Research, museums, collecting, review, use of equipment, competitions**

Divide like standard subdivisions 072-079, e.g., museums and exhibits on Christian religion 207.34

**.4-.9      Schools in specific places**

Colleges, universities, secondary schools

Scope: specific schools

Add area notations 4-9 to 207

**208      Collections and anthologies**

**209      Historical and geographical treatment**

Class historical and geographical treatment of Christian church in 270

**210      Natural religion**

Religious belief attained thru observation and interpretation of evidence in nature, speculation, reasoning

**211      Knowledge of God**

.3      Theism

.4      Rationalism (Free thought)

.5      Deism

.6      Humanism, secularism, humanitarianism

.7      Agnosticism and skepticism

.8      Atheism

**212      Nature of God**

.2      Polytheism

.3      Dualism

.4      Monotheism

.5      Pantheism

Including theosophy

.8      Anthropomorphism



- 213      Creation**  
By fiat, by evolutionary growth and change
- .5      Of life**  
        Including man
- 214      Theodicy**  
Vindication of God's justice and goodness in permitting existence of evil and suffering
- .8      Providence**
- 215      Science and religion**  
Antagonism and reconciliation  
    *For creation, see 213*
- .1      Mathematics**
- .2      Astronomy**
- .24      Life on other worlds**
- .25      Man in space**
- .3      Physics**
- .4      Chemistry**
- .5      Geology**
- .6      Paleontology**
- .7      Anthropological and biological sciences**
- .72      Anthropology and ethnology**
- .74      Biology and natural history**
- .8      Archeology**
- .9      Medical science**
- 216      Good and evil**  
    *For theodicy, see 214*
- 217      Worship and prayer**
- 218      Immortality and eternity**
- 219      Analogy**  
Religious belief based on correspondences

## 220–280 Christian religion

### 220 Bible

*For Biblical theology, see 230*

- .01 Philosophy and theory
- .013 Value [*formerly* 220.6]
- .02–.09 Other standard subdivisions
  - Class concordances in 220.2, dictionaries and encyclopedias in 220.3

#### 220.1–220.9 General principles

##### SUMMARY

- 220.1 Origins and authenticity
- .2 Concordances and indexes
- .3 Dictionaries and encyclopedias
- .4 Original texts and early versions
- .5 Modern versions
- .6 Criticism and interpretation
- .7 Commentaries
- .8 Special subjects treated in Bible
- .9 Geography, history, chronology of Bible lands in Bible times
- .1 Origins and authenticity
- .12 Canon
  - Bible as Holy Scripture
- .13 Inspiration
- .14 Authorship
- .15 Prophetic message
- .2 Concordances and indexes
- .3 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

#### 220.4–220.5 Texts and versions

Scope: textual criticism

*For commentaries with text, see 220.77*

#### Original texts and early versions

Codices and translations into modern languages

## *Decimal Classification*

- 220.42 Chaldee
- .43 Syriac
- .44 Hebrew
  - For translations of Hebrew*
  - 220.5**
- .45 Samaritan
- .46 Other Semitic
  - Including Ethiopic, Arabic
- .47 Latin
  - Including Itala, Vulgate
  - Class translations of Vulgate text into modern languages  
[formerly 220.47] in 220.5
- .48 Greek
  - Including Septuagint
  - For translations of Greek texts into modern languages, see*
  - 220.5**
- .49 Other early versions
  - Including Armenian, Coptic, Gothic
- .5 **Modern versions**
  - Translations into modern languages from Vulgate [formerly also  
220.47], Hebrew, Greek texts
- .51 Polyglot
- .52 In English
  - .520 1 Early before 1582
  - .520 2 Douay
  - .520 3 Authorized (King James)
  - .520 4 Revised
    - English revised, American revised, revised standard,  
American standard
  - .520 5 Confraternity
  - .53-.59 In other languages
    - Divide like 430-490, e.g., German-language versions **220.53**

- 220.6 Interpretation and higher criticism**  
Class value of Bible [*formerly 220.6*] in 220.013  
*For commentaries, see 220.7*
- .61 Isagogics
- .63 Hermeneutics  
Science of interpretation
- .64 Symbolism and typology
- .65 Harmony
- .66 Exegesis (Higher criticism)
- .67 Historical criticism
- .68 Mythological, allegorical, numerical, astronomical  
interpretations
- .7 **Commentaries**  
Criticism and interpretation arranged in textual order
- .77 With text
- .8 **Special subjects treated in Bible**  
Use 220.800 01 – 220.800 09 for standard subdivisions  
Divide like 001–999, e.g., natural science in Bible 220.85
- [.88] Bible as literature  
Class in 809.935 22
- .9 **Geography, history, chronology of Bible lands in Bible  
times**
- .91 Geography (Description and civilization)
- .92 Collective biography
- .93 Archeology (Material remains)
- .95 History of events  
Use 220.950 01 – 220.950 09 for standard subdivisions
- .950 5 Bible stories retold

## Decimal Classification

### ► 221–229 Specific parts of Bible

#### 221 Old Testament

*For specific parts of Old Testament, see 222–224*

##### .1–.8 General principles

Divide like 220.1–220.8, e.g., exegesis 221.66

##### .9 Geography, history, chronology of Old Testament lands in Old Testament times

##### .91 Geography (Description and civilization)

##### .92 Biography

Divide like standard subdivision 092, e.g., individual biography 221.924

##### .93 Archeology (Material remains)

##### .95 History of events

Use 221.950 01 – 221.950 09 for standard subdivisions

##### .950 5 Old Testament stories retold

### 222–224 Specific parts of Old Testament

Use 001–009 for standard subdivisions under each subdivision identified by \*

Add 0 to each subdivision identified by \* and divide as follows:

#### 1–8 General principles

Divide like 220.1–220.8, e.g., exegesis 66

#### 9 Geography, history, chronology

Divide like 221.9, e.g., biography 92

#### 222 \*Historical books

##### .1 \*Pentateuch (Torah)

##### .11 \*Genesis

##### .12 \*Exodus

*For Ten Commandments, see 222.16*

##### .13 \*Leviticus

Make standard subdivisions and divide as instructed under 222–224

## Bible

---

- 222.14      **\*Numbers**
- .15      **\*Deuteronomy**  
             *For Ten Commandments, see 222.16*
- .16      **\*Ten Commandments (Decalog)**
- .2      **\*Joshua (Josue)**
- .3      **\*Judges**
- .35      **\*Ruth**
- .4      **\*Samuel**
- .43      **\*Samuel 1**  
             *Also called Kings 1*
- .44      **\*Samuel 2**  
             *Also called Kings 2*
- .5      **\*Kings**
- .53      **\*Kings 1**  
             *Also called Kings 3*
- .54      **\*Kings 2**  
             *Also called Kings 4*
- .6      **\*Chronicles (Paralipomena)**
- .63      **\*Chronicles 1 (Paralipomenon 1)**
- .64      **\*Chronicles 2 (Paralipomenon 2)**
- .7      **\*Ezra (Esdras 1)**
- .8      **\*Nehemiah (Esdras 2, Nehemias)**
- .86      **\*Tobit (Tobias)**  
             *(Optional; prefer 229.2)*
- .88      **\*Judith**  
             *(Optional; prefer 229.24)*
- .9      **\*Esther**  
             *(Optional: deuterocanonical part of Esther; prefer 229.27)*

**\* Make standard subdivisions and divide as instructed under 222-224**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **223      \*Poetic books**

**.1      \*Job**

**.2      \*Psalms**

Including authorship and chronology [*both formerly 223.3*],  
special groups [*formerly 223.4*], metrical versions [*formerly*  
*223.5*], commentaries [*formerly 223.6*]

**[.3]      Authorship and chronology of Psalms**

Class in 223.2

**[.4]      Special groups of Psalms**

Class in 223.2

**[.5]      Metrical versions and liturgical use of Psalms**

Class metrical versions in 223.2, liturgical use in 264

**[.6]      Commentaries on Psalms**

Class in 223.2

**.7      \*Proverbs**

**.8      \*Ecclesiastes**

**.9      \*Song of Solomon (Canticle of Canticles)**

**.96      \*Wisdom of Solomon (Wisdom)**

(Optional; prefer 229.3)

**.98      \*Ecclesiasticus (Sirach)**

(Optional; prefer 229.4)

### **224      \*Prophetic books**

**.1      \*Isaiah (Isaias)**

**.2      \*Jeremiah (Jeremias)**

**.3      \*Lamentations**

**.37      \*Baruch**

(Optional; prefer 229.5)

**.4      \*Ezekiel (Ezechiel)**

\* Make standard subdivisions and divide as instructed under 222-224

## *Bible*

### **224.5      \*Daniel**

(Optional: Song of the three children, prefer 229.5; Susanna, Bel and the dragon, prefer 229.6)

#### **.6      \*Hosea (Osee)**

#### **.7      \*Joel**

#### **.8      \*Amos**

#### **.9      \*Minor prophets**

*For Hosea, see 224.6; Joel, 224.7; Amos, 224.8*

#### **.91      \*Obadiah (Abdias)**

#### **.92      \*Jonah (Jonas)**

#### **.93      \*Micah (Micheas)**

#### **.94      \*Nahum**

#### **.95      \*Habakkuk (Habacuc)**

#### **.96      \*Zephaniah (Sophonias)**

#### **.97      \*Haggai (Aggeus)**

#### **.98      \*Zechariah (Zacharias)**

#### **.99      \*Malachi (Malachias)**

#### **.997      \*Maccabees 1 and 2 (Machabees 1 and 2)**

(Optional; prefer 229.73)

### **225      New Testament**

*For specific parts of New Testament, see 226–228*

#### **.1–.8      General principles**

*Divide like 220.1–220.8, e.g., canon 225.12*

#### **.9      Geography, history, chronology of New Testament lands in New Testament times**

#### **.91      Geography (Description and civilization)**

#### **.92      Biography**

*Divide like standard subdivision 092, e.g., individual biography  
225.924*

*For life of Jesus, see 232.901*

**\* Make standard subdivisions and divide as instructed under 222–224**



## *Decimal Classification*

- 225.93 Archeology (Material remains)
- .95 History of events
  - Use 225.950 01 – 225.950 09 for standard subdivisions
- .950 5 New Testament stories retold



### **226–228 Specific parts of New Testament**

Use 001–009 for standard subdivisions under each subdivision identified by \*

Add 0 to each subdivision identified by \* and divide as instructed under 222–224

### **226 \*Gospels and Acts**

- .1 Harmonies of the Gospels

#### **226.2–226.5 Specific Gospels**

*For miracles, see 226.7; parables, 226.8*

- .2 \*Matthew
  - For Lord's Prayer, see 226.9*

- .3 \*Mark

- .4 \*Luke

- .5 \*John

- .6 \*Acts of Apostles

- .7 \*Miracles

- .8 \*Parables

- .9 \*Lord's Prayer

### **227 \*Epistles**

- .1 \*Romans

- .2 \*Corinthians 1

- .3 \*Corinthians 2

- .4 \*Galatians

- .5 \*Ephesians

\* Make standard subdivisions and divide as instructed under 222–224

- 227.6      **\*Philippians**
- .7      **\*Colossians**
- .8      **\*Other Pauline epistles**
- .81      **\*Thessalonians 1**
- .82      **\*Thessalonians 2**
- .83      **\*Timothy 1**
- .84      **\*Timothy 2**
- .85      **\*Titus**
- .86      **\*Philemon**
- .87      **\*Hebrews**
- .9      **\*Catholic epistles**
- .91      **\*James**
- .92      **\*Peter 1**
- .93      **\*Peter 2**
- .94      **\*John 1**
- .95      **\*John 2**
- .96      **\*John 3**
- .97      **\*Jude**

**228      \*Revelation (Apocalypse)**

**229      Apocrypha, pseudepigrapha, deuterocanonical works**

Use 229.001–229.009 for standard subdivisions

- .01–.08      **General principles**  
                 Divide like 220.1–220.8, e.g., commentaries 229.07
- .09          **Geography, history, chronology of lands of Apocrypha in times of Apocrypha**
- .091          **Geography (Description and civilization)**
- .092          **Biography**  
                 Divide like standard subdivision 092, e.g., individual biography 229.092 4

<sup>1</sup> Make standard subdivisions and divide as instructed under 222–224

## *Decimal Classification*

229.093 Archeology (Material remains)

.095 History of events

Use 229.095 001 – 229.095 009 for standard subdivisions

.095 05 Stories of Apocrypha retold

### **229.1–229.9 Specific books**

Use 001–009 for standard subdivisions under each subdivision identified by \*

Add 0 to each subdivision identified by \* and divide as instructed under 222–224

.1 \*Esdras 1 and 2

Also called Esdras 3 and 4

.2 \*Tobit (Tobias)

If preferred, class in 222.86

.24 \*Judith

If preferred, class in 222.88

.27 \*Esther

If preferred, class in 222.9

.3 \*Wisdom of Solomon (Wisdom)

If preferred, class in 223.96

.4 \*Ecclesiasticus (Sirach)

If preferred, class in 223.98

.5 \*Baruch, Epistle of Jeremy, Song of three children

If preferred, class Baruch in 224.37, Song of the three children in 224.5

.6 \*Susanna, Bel and the dragon, Prayer of Manasses

If preferred, class Susanna, Bel and the dragon in 224.5

Make standard subdivisions and divide as instructed under 222–224

## *Bible*

---

- 229.7      \*Maccabees (Machabees)**
- .73      \*Maccabees 1 and 2 (Machabees 1 and 2)**  
            If preferred, class in **224.997**
- .75      \*Maccabees 3 and 4 (Machabees 3 and 4)**
- .8        \*Pseudo gospels**
- .9        \*Other pseudepigrapha**
- .91        \*Old Testament**
- .911      \*Historical books**
- .912      \*Poetic books**  
            Including Odes of Solomon
- .913      \*Prophetic books**  
            Including Jewish apocalypses, Book of Enoch, Assumption  
            of Moses, Vision of Isaiah, Apocalypse of Elias or Elijah
- .914      \*Testaments**  
            Including Testament of the twelve patriarchs
- .915      \*Other books by or about the prophets**
- 229.92–229.95 New Testament**  
            Class pseudo gospels in **229.8**
- .92        \*Acts of Apostles**
- .93        \*Epistles**
- .94        \*Apocalypses**
- .95        \*Other**

· Make standard subdivisions and divide as instructed under **222–224**

► **230–270 Specific elements of Christian religion**

If preferred, class specific elements of specific denominations and sects in 280

**230 Doctrinal theology (Dogma)**

Scope: Biblical theology

Use 230.01–230.09 for standard subdivisions

**.1–.9 Doctrines of specific denominations and sects**

Divide like 281–289, e.g., Methodist doctrines 230.7

(Optional: specific doctrines of specific denominations and sects; prefer 231–236. If option is chosen, add 0 to number resulting from division like 281–289 and divide further like 231–236, e.g., Methodist doctrines on salvation 230.704)

**231–236 Specific doctrines**

Scope: specific doctrines of specific denominations and sects; if preferred, class in 230.1–230.9

Class doctrines on church government, organization, nature in 262

**231 God, Trinity, Godhead**

**.1 God the Father, Creator**

**.2 God the Son, Redeemer**

*For Jesus Christ, see 232*

**.3 God the Holy Ghost (Holy Spirit), Giver of Life, Sanctifier**

**.4 Attributes**

Omniscience, omnipresence, omnipotence

**.5 Providence**

**.6 Love and wisdom**

**.7 Divine law**

Including Kingdom of God, sovereignty of God

**.73 Miracles**

Miraculous places, events, objects, cures

Including stigmata

## *Doctrinal theology (Dogma)*

### 231.74      **Revelation**

Vision and appearing of God, disclosure to men of divine purpose and superhuman knowledge

### .8      **Theodicy**

Vindication of God's justice and goodness in permitting existence of evil and suffering

*For Providence, see 231.5*

### 232      **Jesus Christ and his family**

Including person and offices, royal office, priesthood, intercession of Jesus Christ

#### **232.1–232.8 Christology**

*For doctrines on life of Jesus, see 232.9*

#### .1      **Incarnation and messiahship**

Including typology

#### .12      **Messianic prophecies**

#### .2      **Logos (Word of God)**

#### .3      **Atonement**

#### .4      **Sacrifice**

#### .5      **Resurrection**

#### .6      **Second coming**

#### .7      **Judgment**

#### .8      **Natures (Divinity and humanity)**

#### .9      **Doctrines on family and life of Jesus**

Use 232.900 01 – 232.900 09 for standard subdivisions

#### .900 1–.900 9      **Standard subdivisions of life of Jesus**

#### .901      **Life of Jesus**

Class specific events in 232.92, 232.95–232.97

#### .903      **Character and personality of Jesus**

#### .904      **Influence of Jesus**

#### .908      **Historicity of Jesus**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **SUMMARY**

- 232.91      Mary, mother of Jesus (Mariology)**
- .92          Infancy of Jesus**
- .93          Mary's husband and parents**
- .94          John the Baptist**
- .95          Public life of Jesus**
- .96          Passion and death of Jesus**
- .97          Resurrection, appearances, ascension of Jesus**
- .98          Agrapha**

232.91      Mary, mother of Jesus (Mariology) [*formerly* 232.931]

.911          Immaculate Conception

.912          Annunciation

.913          Virginity

.914          Assumption (Ascent to heaven)

.915          Sanctity and virtues

.916          Spiritual powers

.92          Infancy of Jesus

                Including Holy Family [*formerly* 232.93]

.921          Nativity

.922          Adoration of the shepherds

.923          Three wise men (Magi)

.924          Circumcision

.925          Massacre of innocents

.926          Flight into Egypt

.927          Childhood in Nazareth

.928          Presentation in temple

.929          Jesus among doctors in temple

.93          Mary's husband and parents

                Class Holy Family [*formerly* 232.93] in 232.92

[.931]          Mary, mother of Jesus (Mariology)

                Class in 232.91

[.931 7]          Sanctuaries and shrines

                Class in 246.9

## *Doctrinal theology (Dogma)*

[232.931 8]

Veneration, prayers, hymns

Class veneration in **248**, prayers in **242.74**, hymns in **245**

: .932

Joseph

Class veneration in **248**, sanctuaries and shrines in **246.9** [*all formerly 232.932*]

.933

Joachim and Anne

Class veneration in **248**, sanctuaries and shrines in **246.9** [*all formerly 232.933*]

.94

John the Baptist

.95

Public life of Jesus

Including baptism, temptation, calling of apostles

.954

Teachings

.956

Transfiguration

.957

Last Supper

.958

Last words to disciples

Class seven last words on cross [*formerly 232.958*] in **232.963 5**

.96

Passion and death of Jesus

.961

Betrayal by Judas

.962

Trial and condemnation

.963

Crucifixion and death

.963 5

Seven last words on cross [*formerly 232.958*]

.964

Burial

.966

Relics of Passion

.967

Descent into hell

.97

Resurrection, appearances, ascension of Jesus

.98

Agrapha

Jesus's words not appearing in canonical Gospels



## *Decimal Classification*

### **233 Man**

Including moral and spiritual heredity, personality, natural and spiritual body

*For future state of man, see 236.2; intermediate state, 236.4*

#### **.1 Creation and fall**

##### **.11 Creation of man**

##### **.14 Original sin and fall of man**

#### **.2 Sin**

*For original sin, see 233.14*

##### **.21 Mortal and venial sin**

##### **.22 Sins against the Holy Ghost**

Class specific mortal and venial sins in 233.2

#### **.4 Accountability**

#### **.5 The soul**

#### **.7 Freedom of choice between good and evil**

### **234 Salvation (Soteriology)**

#### **.1 Grace**

Including actual and sanctifying grace, merit, innate virtues, gifts of the Holy Ghost, righteousness, holiness, universal priesthood

#### **.16 Sacraments**

Divide like 265.1–265.7, e.g., baptism 234.161

#### **.2 Faith**

#### **.3 Redemption**

#### **.4 Regeneration**

#### **.5 Repentance**

#### **.6 Obedience**

#### **.7 Justification**

#### **.8 Sanctification**

#### **.9 Predestination and free will**

235     **Invisible world**

.2     **Saints**

Class veneration in 248, sanctuaries and shrines in 246.9 [*all formerly 235.2*]

*For Mary's husband and parents, see 232.93; John the Baptist, 232.94*

.24     Canonization and beatification

---

235.3–235.4   **Spirits**

.3     **Angels**

.4     **Devils and demons**

.47     **Satan**

236     **Eschatology**

.1     **Death**

.2     **Future state of man (Life after death) [*formerly 237*]**

Eternal reward and punishment

.21     **Eternity**

.22     **Immortality**

.23     **Annihilationism (Conditional immortality)**

.24     **Heaven**

.25     **Hell**

.3     **Millennium**

.4     **Intermediate state of man**

Probation after death

*For purgatory, see 236.5; limbo, 236.6–236.7*

.5     **Purgatory**

---

236.6–236.7   **Limbo**

**Limbo of fathers (Limbus patrum)**

Abode of souls of the just who died before coming of Jesus Christ

**Limbo of infants (Limbus infantum)**

Abode of souls of the unbaptized but just

## *Decimal Classification*

**236.8      Resurrection of the dead**

**.9          Last judgment**

**[237]      Future state of man (Life after death)**

Class in 236.2

**238          Creeds, confessions of faith, covenants, catechisms**

Class a specific doctrine with the subject

**.1          Early**

**.11          Apostles' Creed**

**.14          Nicene and post-Nicene creeds of Western Church**

Including Constantinopolitan Creed

**.142          Nicene Creed**

**.144          Athanasian Creed**

**.19          Creeds and confessions of Eastern Church**

Confession of Gennadius II, Answers of Jeremiah II, Confession of Metrophanes, Orthodox Confession of Peter Mogila, Confession of Dositheus

**.2          Later Roman Catholic**

Including Creed of Pius IV

**.3-.9      Other**

Divide like 283-289, e.g., Augsburg Confession 238.41

**239          Apologetics and polemics**

Exposition of Christian doctrines refuting alleged errors in other systems

Use 239.001-239.009 for standard subdivisions

Class apologetics and polemics on a specific doctrine with the subject

**.1          In apostolic times**

*For polemics against doctrines of specific groups in apostolic times, see 239.2-239.4*

*Doctrinal theology (Dogma)*

**239.2–239.4 Against doctrines of specific groups in apostolic times**

- 239.2      Jews**
- .3        Pagans and heathens**
- .4        Neoplatonists**

**239.5–239.9 Against doctrines of specific groups in post-apostolic times**

Class comprehensive post-apostolic defenses of and attacks on doctrines of a specific denomination or sect in 230.1–230.9; of a specific religion with the religion, e.g., doctrines of Judaism 296.3

- .5        Deists**
- .6        Encyclopedists**
- .7        Rationalists and agnostics**
- .8        Scientists and materialists**
  - For communists, see 239.9*
- .9        Communists and other denials**

**240 Moral and devotional theology**

**241 Moral theology**

*For conduct of Christian life, see 248.4*

.1 Conscience

.2 Laws

Natural, human, divine

*For codes of conduct, see 241.5*

.3 Sins and vices

.4 Virtues

.5 Codes of conduct

---

► 241.52–241.54 Biblical precepts

.52 Ten Commandments

.54 Golden Rule

.57 Precepts of church

---

► 242–245 Devotional texts

*For texts used in public worship, see 264*

**242 Prayers [*formerly* 248.37], meditations, contemplations**

Class value of contemplation in 248.3, devotional sermons in 252  
[*both formerly* 242]

.1 Classics of meditation and contemplation

Including *Imitatio Christi* of Thomas à Kempis

242.2–242.4 Prayers, meditations, contemplations for  
specific times and occasions

.2 Daily

.3 For religious occasions

.33 Advent and Christmas

## *Moral and devotional theology*

242.34      Lent

*For Holy Week, see 242.35*

.35      Holy Week

.36      Easter

.37      Other feast and fast days

.4      For consolation in times of illness, troubles, bereavement

.6      Meditations and contemplations for specific classes of persons

Divide like 248.8, e.g., meditations for young women 242.633

Class meditations and contemplations for specific times and occasions in 242.2–242.4

### **242.7–242.8 Prayers**

Class prayers for specific times and occasions in 242.2–242.4

.7      Specific prayers and groups of prayers

.72      To God the Father, the Son, the Holy Ghost

.722      Lord's Prayer

.74      To Mary [*formerly* 232.931 8]

.742      Rosary

.75      To Joseph, Joachim, Anne

.76      To other saints

.8      Collections of prayers

*For specific groups of prayers, see 242.7*

.801–.809      By specific denominations and sects

Divide like 281–289, e.g., collections of private prayers for Methodists 242.807

.82–.89      For specific classes of persons

Divide like 248.82–248.89, e.g., collections of private prayers for young women 242.833

## **243      Evangelistic writings**

Works designed to convert readers, promote repentance

Class evangelistic sermons [*formerly* 243] in 252

## *Decimal Classification*

244

245 **Hymns**

Without music

Including hymns to Mary [*formerly 232.931 8*]

Divide like 420–490, e.g., hymns in English 245.2

*For metrical versions of Psalms, see 223.2*

► 246–247 **Art, artifacts, places**

246 **Symbolism and symbolic objects and places**

► 246.1–246.7 **Art and decoration in Christian services and buildings**

.1 **Byzantine and Gothic symbolism**

.2 **Primitive church art**

.3 **Statuary and icons**

.4 **Protestantism and religious art**

.5 **Emblematic and cryptographic art**

.6 **Liturgic symbolism**

Altar, colors, lights

.7 **Music and rhythmic arts**

Including the dance

.9 **Buildings, sanctuaries, shrines**

Including sanctuaries and shrines to Mary [*formerly 232.931 7*], to Joseph [*formerly 232.932*], to Joachim and Anne [*both formerly 232.933*], to other saints [*formerly 235.2*]

247 **Sacred furniture, vestments, insignia**

.1 **Church furniture**

Fonts, baptisteries, lecterns, pulpits, tabernacles, rood screens, reredoses

.4 **Stained glass, mosaics, enamels**

.5 **Paintings**

## *Moral and devotional theology*

### **247.6 Insignias of rank**

#### **.7 Vestments and altar cloths**

#### **.8 Eucharistic vessels**

Chalice, ciborium, monstrance, paten, pyx

#### **.9 Ecclesiastical emblems**

Including banners, thuribles, incense

#### **.92 Cross and crucifix**

## **► 248–249 Practice of religion in personal and family life**

### **248 Personal religion**

Christian religion as an inner experience and guide to daily living

Including veneration of Mary [*formerly 232.931.8*], of Joseph [*formerly 232.932*], of Joachim and Anne [*both formerly 232.933*], of other saints [*formerly 235.2*]

Class devotional texts in **242–245**

#### **.2 Religious experience**

##### **.22 Mysticism**

##### **.24 Converts and conversion**

##### **.242 Conversion of Protestants to Roman Catholicism**

##### **.244 Conversion of Roman Catholics to Protestantism**

##### **.246 Conversion of non-Christians to Christianity**

##### **.25 Moral rearmament**

##### **.27 Self-discipline**

Aids to perfection

##### **.272 Strict self-denial**

##### **.273 Fasting and abstinence**

##### **.274 Other austerities and self-denials**

##### **.29 Other**

Including stigmata, pilgrimages



## *Decimal Classification*

### **248.3 Private worship, prayer, meditation, contemplation**

Including value of contemplation [*formerly 242*]

#### **[.37] Prayers**

Class in **242**

#### **.4 Conduct of Christian life**

Application of Christian virtues to everyday living

#### **.42 General guides**

#### **.48 Guides for specific denominations and sects**

Divide like **281–289**, e.g., Roman Catholic guides **248.482**

#### **.5 Witness bearing**

#### **.8 Personal Christianity for specific classes of persons**

Class a specific aspect with the subject

248.82–248.85 For specific age groups

*For personal Christianity for other groupings of persons, see  
248.86–248.89*

#### **.82 Children**

#### **.83 Young adults (Adolescents)**

Scope: students

#### **.832 Men**

#### **.833 Women**

#### **.84 Adults**

*For personal Christianity for aged, see 248.85*

#### **.842 Men**

#### **.843 Women**

#### **.85 Aged**

## *Moral and devotional theology*

248.86–248.89 For other groupings of persons

248.86

**Afflicted**

.88

**Working and professional classes**

Including those engaged in specific occupations

*For personal Christianity for religious groups, see 248.89*

.89

**Religious groups**

.892

**Clergy and lay ministers**

Priests, ministers, rectors, vicars, elders, deacons

.894

**Persons in religious orders**

Religious and monastic life [*formerly 271*]

.894 2

**Men**

.894 22

Vocation

.894 25

Selection and novitiate

.894 28

Rules

Including vows of poverty, chastity, obedience

.894 3

**Women**

.894 32

Vocation

.894 35

Selection and novitiate

.894 38

Rules

Including vows of poverty, chastity, obedience

249

**Christian worship in family life**



## 250–260 Practical theology

### 250 Pastoral theology, parishes, religious orders

Use 250.01–250.09 for standard subdivisions

*For public worship, see 264; missions, 266; religious training and instruction, 268*

#### .1–.9 Standard subdivisions of pastoral theology

---

### 251–253 Pastoral theology

#### 251 Preaching (Homiletics)

Use 251.001–251.009 for standard subdivisions

*For sermons, see 252*

- .01 Preparation
- .02 Sermon outlines
- .03 Delivery
  - Voice, expression, gesture
- .07 Radio and television preaching
- .08 Homiletic illustrations

#### 252 Sermons

Scope: devotional sermons [*formerly 242*], evangelistic sermons [*formerly 243*]

Use 252.001–252.009 for standard subdivisions

Class sermons on a specific subject with the subject

- .01–.09 By specific denominations and sects
  - Divide like 281–289, e.g., Anglican sermons 252.03

#### 252.1–252.9 For specific occasions and audiences

- .1 For baptisms, confirmations, weddings, funerals

*For memorial sermons, see 252.9*

- .5 For specific classes of persons

- .53 Children

- .55 Young adults (Adolescents)

Including academic, chapel, convocation, commencement sermons

- 252.56 Afflicted and aged
- .58 Working and professional classes
- .59 Religious groups
- .592 Clergy
  - Priests, ministers, rectors, vicars, elders, deacons
- .594 Persons in religious orders
  - Monks, friars, nuns

**.6 For church and public occasions**

---

► 252.61–252.67 Church year

- .61 Advent and Christmas
- .62 Lent and Holy Week
- .63 Easter
- .67 Other feast and fast days
- .68 Secular occasions
  - Including elections, thanksgivings, holidays
- .7 For consecrations, ordinations, installations
- .9 For memorial occasions

**253 Pastor**

- .2 Life and person
  - Qualifications, celibacy, wife, family

► 253.5–253.7 Duties and responsibilities

*For preaching, see 251*

- .5 Counseling
- .7 Evangelism
- .73 Outdoor
- .75 In prisons
- .76 In homes
- .78 By radio and television

## *Decimal Classification*

### **254 Parish government and administration**

Use **254.001–254.009** for standard subdivisions

Class parish office methods [*formerly 254*] in **651**

#### **.01–.09 By specific denominations and sects**

Divide like **281–289**, e.g., government and administration of Roman Catholic parishes **254.02**

#### **.2 In specific kinds of communities**

Divide like area notation **173**, e.g., government and administration of rural parishes **254.24**

#### **.3 Radio and television work**

#### **.4 Public relations and publicity**

*For radio and television work, see 254.3*

#### **.5 Membership**

Promotion and service

#### **.6 Programs**

Planning and executing

#### **.7 Buildings and equipment**

#### **.8 Finance**

Budget, income, methods of raising money, expenditures

Class compensation of clergymen [*formerly 254.8*] in **331.2**

### **255 Religious congregations and orders ( Monasticism )**

Government, organization, administration

Use **255.001–255.009** for standard subdivisions

Divide like **271.01–271.98**, e.g., Jesuits **255.5**

**256**

**257**

### **258 Parochial welfare work**

Provision by parish and religious orders of assistance, guidance, cheer to disadvantaged members of parish

### **259 Other parochial activities by parish and religious orders**

Recreation, work with children, soldiers, students, foreigners



## **260–280 Christian church**

Class local church in 250

### **260 Social and ecclesiastical theology**

Institutions, services, observances, disciplines, work of Christianity and Christian church

Including Christian church and the apostate and indifferent

### **261 Social theology**

Attitude of Christianity toward and influence on secular matters and other religions

#### **.2 Christianity and other religions**

#### **.5 Christianity and intellectual development**

Including attitude toward science [*formerly 261.75*], growth of knowledge

#### **[.6] Christianity and world order**

Class in 261.87

#### **.7 Christianity and civil government**

Attitude toward and influence on political activities and ideologies

#### **.72 Religious freedom**

#### **.73 Theocracy (Supremacy of church over civil government)**

#### **[.75] Attitude toward science**

Class in 261.5

#### **.8 Christianity and socioeconomic problems**

*For Christianity and civil government, see 261.7*

#### **.83 Social problems**

#### **.85 The economic order**

#### **.87 International affairs**

Including Christianity and world order [*formerly 261.6*]

#### **.873 War and peace**

Including attitude of Christianity toward pacifism, conscientious objectors

## Decimal Classification

### 262 Church government, organization, nature (Ecclesiology)

Use 262.000 1 – 262.000 9 for standard subdivisions

- .001 Philosophy and theory of government and organization  
Including ecumenicalism [*formerly 280.1*]
- .002–.009 Other standard subdivisions of government and organization
- .01–.09 Government and organization of specific denominations and sects  
Divide like 281–289, e.g., government and organization of the Methodist Church 262.076

#### SUMMARY

- 262.1 Governing leaders
    - .2 Parishes and religious orders in church organization
    - .3 Systems governed by episcopacy
    - .4 Systems governed by election
    - .5 General (Ecumenical) councils
    - .7 Nature of the church
    - .8 Church and ministerial authority
    - .9 Church law and discipline
  - .1 Governing leaders
    - .11 Apostolic succession
- 
- 262.12–262.15 By rank
- .12 Bishops and archbishops
  - .13 Popes and their administration
    - .131 Papal infallibility
    - .132 Temporal power of the pope  
Including extranationality
  - .135 College of Cardinals
  - .136 Administration  
Congregations, tribunals, offices of Curia Romana  
*For College of Cardinals, see 262.135*
  - .14 Local clergy

*Social and ecclesiastical theology*

- 262.15      **Laity**
- 262.17–262.19 By system of government
- .17      Episcopal system
- .18      Presbyterian system
- .19      Congregational system
- .2      **Parishes and religious orders in church organization**
- .22      Parishes
- For parish government and administration, see 254*
- .24      Religious congregations and orders
- For government, organization, administration of religious congregations and orders, see 255*
- 262.3–262.4 **Government and organization of specific church systems**
- Class a specific aspect with the subject, e.g., parishes 262.22
- .3      **Systems governed by episcopacy**
- Sees, dioceses, cathedral systems
- .4      **Systems governed by election**
- Synods, presbyteries, congregations
- .5      **General (Ecumenical) councils**
- [.6]      **Canons and decrees**
- Class in 262.91–262.93
- .7      **Nature of the church**
- .72      Attributes, marks, notes
- Apostolicity, catholicity, holiness, unity, credibility, infallibility, necessity, visibility and invisibility
- .73      Communion of saints
- .77      Mystical body of Christ



## *Decimal Classification*

### **262.8 Church and ministerial authority**

[.82] Encyclicals, papal bulls and decrees

Class in **262.91**

### **.9 Church law [*formerly* 348] and discipline**

Canon or ecclesiastical law

262.91–262.93 Roman Catholic

Scope: canons and decrees [*both formerly* **262.6**]

#### **.91 Acts of the Holy See**

Encyclicals, papal bulls and decrees [*all formerly* **262.82**],  
briefs, apostolic letters

#### **.92 Early codes and treatises on them**

.922 To Gratian, ca. 1140

.923 Corpus iuris canonici

.924 Quinque compilationes antiquae

.925 Other

#### **.93 Codex iuris canonici (1917)**

.931 General principles (Canons 1–86)

.932 Persons (Canons 87–725)

Clergy, religious, laity

#### **.933 Things (Canons 726–1551)**

Sacraments, sacred times and places, worship, teaching  
office, benefices, temporal goods

#### **.934 Procedure (Canons 1552–2194)**

Trials, cases of beatification and canonization

#### **.935 Crimes and penalties (Canons 2195–2414)**

#### **.98 Other denominations**

Divide like **281–289**, e.g., Anglican ecclesiastical law **262.983**

**263 Days and times of religious observance**

▶ **263.1–263.8 Sabbath and Sunday**

**.1 Biblical Sabbath**

**.2 Observance of seventh day**

**.3 Christian Sunday**

*For Sunday observance, see 263.4*

**.4 Sunday observance**

**[.8] Laws on Sunday observance**

Class in 340

**.9 Other days and times**

**.91–.97 Church year**

Divide like 252.61–252.67, e.g., observance of Advent 263.91

**.98 Specific saints' days**

**264 Public worship**

Divine services, religious ceremonies, their conduct and texts

Scope: liturgical use of Psalms [*formerly 223.5*]

Use 264.001–264.009 for standard subdivisions

*For Sunday school services, see 268.7; other rites, ceremonies, ordinances, 265*

**264.01–264.09 By specific denominations and sects**

**.01 Primitive and Oriental churches**

Divide like 281, e.g., liturgy and ritual of Eastern Orthodox churches 264.019

**.02 Roman Catholic Church**

Use 264.020 01 – 264.020 08 for standard subdivisions

**.020 09 Historical and geographical treatment [*formerly 264.029*]**

**.020 1–.020 9 Specific elements**

History, meaning, place in public worship

Divide like 264.1–264.9, e.g., scripture readings 264.020 3

## Decimal Classification

---

- 264.021–264.028 Texts of liturgy, ritual, prayers
- 264.021 Calendars and ordos
- .022 Ceremonials  
Class lectionary [*formerly* 264.022] in 264.024
- .023 Missals  
Including epistles, gospels [*both formerly* 264.026]  
Class morning prayer [*formerly* 264.023] in 264.024
- .024 Breviaries  
Including lectionary [*formerly* 264.022], morning prayer [*formerly* 264.023]  
*For psalter, see* 264.028
- .025 Rituals
- [.026] Epistles and gospels  
Class in 264.023
- .027 Special books
- .027 2 For specific times of year  
Including Holy Week
- .027 4 For special liturgical services  
Including Forty Hours devotion
- .028 Psalter
- [.029] Historical and geographical treatment  
Class in 264.020 09
- .03 Anglican churches  
Use 264.030 01 – 264.030 08 for standard subdivisions
- .030 09 Historical and geographical treatment [*formerly* 264.039]
- .030 1–.030 9 Specific elements  
History, meaning, place in public worship  
Divide like 264.1–264.9, e.g., prayer 264.030 1

## *Social and ecclesiastical theology*

- 264.031–264.038 Texts of liturgy, ritual, prayers
- 264.031 Calendars, festivals, fasts
- .032 Lectionary and rubrics
- .033 Morning prayer and litany
- .034 Evening prayer and vespers
- .035 Sacraments, ordinances, services
- .036 Collects, epistles, gospels
- .037 Ordinal, articles, creeds
- .038 Psalter
- [.039] Historical and geographical treatment
- Class in 264.030 09
- .04–.09 Other specific denominations
- Divide like 284–289, e.g., Methodist Episcopal services 264.076

### **264.1–264.9 Specific elements**

Class specific elements in public worship of specific denominations and sects in 264.01–264.09

- .1 **Prayer**
- Scope: comprehensive works on public and private prayer
- For private prayer, see 248.3*
- .13 Prayers
- Including litanies
- .2 **Music**
- Class musical scores and parts in 783
- .3 **Scripture readings and the Mass**
- .4 **Responsive readings**
- .5 **Creeds and confessions of faith**
- Class texts in 238
- .6 **Sermons, exhortations, instructions**
- Class texts of sermons in 252

## *Decimal Classification*

**264.7 Prayer meetings, Holy Hours, novenas**

**.9 Sacramentals**

*For consecrations and dedications, see 265.92*

**265 Other rites, ceremonies, ordinances**

Scope: preparation, instruction, performance

Use 265.001–265.009 for standard subdivisions

**.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of sacraments**

### **265.1–265.7 Sacraments**

Class liturgy and ritual of sacraments in specific denominations  
in 264.01–264.09

**.1 Baptism**

**.12 Infant**

**.13 Adult**

**.2 Confirmation**

**.3 Eucharist, Holy Communion, Lord's Supper**

Including transubstantiation

*For viaticum, see 265.7*

**.4 Holy Orders**

**.5 Matrimony**

**.6 Penance**

**.61 Contrition**

Examination of conscience, prayers preparatory to confession

**.62 Confession**

**.63 Satisfaction**

Penitential prayers and acts for the remission of sin

**.64 Absolution**

**.65 Censures**

Excommunication, suspension, interdiction, withholding  
absolution

**.66 Indulgences**

## *Social and ecclesiastical theology*

- 265.7 Anointing of the sick and viaticum**  
Including extreme unction
- .8 Rites in illness and death**
- : .82 Religious ceremonies for the afflicted**  
*For anointing of the sick, see 265.7*
- .85 Religious ceremonies for the dead**
- .9 Other acts**  
Including love feasts (agapes), foot washing, laying on of hands, exorcism, ceremonies of joining church
- .92 Consecrations and dedications**
- 266 Missions [*formerly also 274–279*]**  
Scope: missionary societies  
Use **266.001–266.009** for standard subdivisions  
*For mission schools, see 377.6*
- .02 Kinds of missions**
- [.021] Missionary stories**  
Class in **266.09**
- .022 Home**
- .023 Foreign**
- .025 Medical**
- .09 Missionary stories [*formerly 266.021*]**
- .1–.9 Of specific denominations and sects**  
Divide like **281–289**, e.g., Seventh-Day Adventist missions **266.673**
- 267 Associations for religious work**  
*For missionary societies, see 266; religious congregations and orders, 255*
- .1 Of both men and women**
- .15 Salvation Army**
- .18 Of specific denominations and sects**  
Divide like **281–289**, e.g., Baptist Adult Union **267.186**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 267.2 Of men**
- .23 Interdenominational and nondenominational  
*For Young Men's Christian Associations, see 267.3*
- .24 Of specific denominations and sects  
Divide like 281–289, e.g., Baptist societies 267.246
- .3 **Young Men's Christian Associations**  
[.309] Historical and geographical treatment  
Do not use; class in 267.39
- .31 Program and objectives
- .32 Buildings and equipment
- .33 Organization and administration
- .34 Staff  
Duties, qualifications, training
- .35 Departments  
Religious, educational, physical, boys'
- .36 Work among special classes  
Service to travelers, foreign and racial groups, migrants
- .39 Historical and geographical treatment  
Add area notations 1–9 to 267.39
- .4 **Of women**  
Divide like 267.2, e.g., Baptist societies 267.446  
*For Young Women's Christian Associations, see 267.5*
- .5 **Young Women's Christian Associations**  
Divide like 267.3, e.g., staff 267.54

## *Social and ecclesiastical theology*

### **267.6 Of young adults**

#### **.61 Interdenominational and nondenominational**

*For Young Men's Christian Associations, see 267.3; Young Women's Christian Associations, 267.5*

#### **.613 Young People's Society of Christian Endeavor**

#### **.62 Of specific denominations and sects**

Divide like **281–289**, e.g., Methodist Young People's Society  
**267.627**

#### **.7 Of boys**

*For Young Men's Christian Associations, see 267.3*

#### **.8 Of girls**

*For Young Women's Christian Associations, see 267.5*

### **268 Religious training and instruction**

*In Sunday schools, church schools, vacation Bible schools*

*For religious instruction in nonsectarian schools, see 377.1*

#### **268.1–268.7 Specific elements**

#### **.1 Administration**

#### **.2 Buildings and equipment**

#### **.3 Personnel**

#### **.4 Teaching departments and divisions**

*Organization, methods, records, rules, services*

#### **.43 Specific departments and divisions**

#### **.432 Children's division (Ages 1–12)**

*Cradle roll, beginners', primary, junior departments*

#### **.433 Young people's division**

*Intermediate, senior departments*

#### **.434 Adult division**

*Men's, women's departments*

#### **.435 Home departments**



## *Decimal Classification*

- 268.5      **Records and rules**
  - Attendance, promotion, prizes, decorations, honor rolls
  - Class records and rules for specific departments and divisions in 268.43
- .6      **Methods of instruction and study**
  - Scope: curriculums
  - Class methods for specific age groups in 268.43
- .61      **Textbooks**
  - For catechisms, see 238*
- .62      **Textbook method**
  - For textbooks, see 268.61*
- .63      **Lecture and audio-visual methods**
- .632      **Lecture method**
- .635      **Audio-visual methods**
- .67      **Dramatic method**
- .68      **Laboratory methods**
- .7      **Services**
  - Order of service, music, rallies, anniversaries, special days and festivals
  - Class services for specific departments and divisions in 268.43
- .8      **Specific denominations and sects**
  - Divide like 281–289, e.g., Presbyterian religious training and instruction 268.85
  - For specific elements, see 268.1–268.7*
- 269      **Organized spiritual renewal**
  - .2      **Revivals and camp meetings**
  - .6      **Retreats**
    - Divide like 248.8, e.g., retreats for men 269.642

## **270 Historical and geographical treatment of Christian church**

Use 270.01–270.08 for standard subdivisions

*For denominations and sects, see 280*

### **270.1–270.8 Historical periods**

- .1 Apostolic period to 325**
- .2 Period of ecumenical councils, 325–787**
- .3 Struggle between papacy and empire, 787–1054**
- .38 Great schism, 1054**
- .4 Period of papal supremacy, 1054–1200**
- .5 Late Middle Ages to Renaissance, 1200–1517**
- .6 Reformation and Counter-Reformation, 1517–1648**
- .7 Peace of Westphalia to French Revolution, 1648–1789**
- .8 Modern church, 1789–**
- .81 19th century, 1789–1900**
- .82 20th century, 1900–**



### **271–273 Special topics of church history**

## **271 Religious congregations and orders**

Use 271.001–271.009 for standard subdivisions

Class religious and monastic life [*formerly 271*] in **248.894**

---

### **271.01–271.09 Specific kinds**

- .01 Contemplative**
- .02 Eremitical**
- .03 Teaching**
- .04 Preaching**
- .05 Military**
- .06 Mendicant**
- .07 Nursing**
- .08 Canons regular**

*Decimal Classification*

- 271.09 Brothers, lay brothers, third orders
- .092 Brothers
- .093 Lay brothers
- .094 Third orders

---

► 271.1–271.8 Specific orders of men

---

► 271.1–271.7 Roman Catholic

.1 **Benedictines**

Including Celestines, Cluniacs

.12 Cistercians (Bernardines)

.125 Trappists

.13 Olivetans

.2 **Dominicans (Friars Preachers, Black Friars)**

.3 **Franciscans (Gray Friars)**

Including Observants, Recollects, Alcantarines

.36 Capuchins

.37 Conventuals

.4 **Augustinians**

Including Augustinian Recollects

.5 **Jesuits (Society of Jesus)**

.6 **Passionists and Redemptorists**

.62 Passionists

.64 Redemptorists

.7 **Other**

.71 Carthusians

.73 Carmelites (White Friars)

.75 Sulpicians

.76 Oblates

.77 Lazarists

.78 Christian Brothers (Brothers of the Christian Schools)



*Christian church history*

- 271.79      Other orders  
             Including specific orders of knighthood, e.g., Knights of Malta
- .8          Non-Roman Catholic
- .9          Of women  
             Sisterhoods, convents, nunneries  
             Use 271.900 1 – 271.900 9 for standard subdivisions
- .901–.909      Specific kinds  
             Divide like 271.01–271.09, e.g., contemplative orders  
             [formerly 271.96] 271.901
- 271.91–271.98 Specific orders
- 271.91–271.97 Roman Catholic
- .91          Sisters of Charity  
             Including Sisters of Charity of Saint Vincent de Paul
- .92          Sisters of Mercy
- .93          Sacred Heart orders
- .94          Sisters of Bon Secours
- .95          Little Sisters of the Poor
- [.96]        Contemplative nuns  
             Class in 271.901
- .97          Other
- .971        Carmelites
- .972        Dominicans
- .973        Franciscans (Poor Clares)
- .974        Ursulines
- .975        Visitation orders
- .976        Saint Joseph orders
- .977        Presentation orders
- .979        Other orders
- .98          Non-Roman Catholic

- 272      Persecutions**
- .1      Of Apostolic Church by imperial Rome, 1st–4th centuries
  - .2      By Inquisition
  - .3      Of Waldenses and Albigenses, 11th–12th centuries
  - .4      Of Huguenots
  - .5      Of Molinists and Quietists
  - .6      Of Anglican reformers by Mary I
  - .7      Of Roman Church by Elizabeth I and the Anglicans
  - .8      Of Quakers, Baptists, witches by Puritans and others
  - .9      Other
- 273      Heresies**
- .1      Gnostic heresies
  - .2      Third-century heresies
    - Including mystic heresy
  - .23      Manicheism
  - .25      Parsee dualism
  - .3      Sabellian heresy
  - .4      Arian heresy
  - .5      Pelagian heresy
  - .6      Antinomian heresy
  - .7      Molinist, Jansenist, Pietist heresies
  - .8      Agnostic heresy

► **274–279 Treatment by continent, country,  
locality**

Class missions [*formerly 274–279*] in 266

Class geographical treatment of a specific element of the  
Christian church with the subject

**274 Europe**

Add area notation 4 to 27, e.g., Christian church in France 274.4

**275 Asia**

Add area notation 5 to 27, e.g., Christian church in Japan 275.2

**276 Africa**

Add area notation 6 to 27, e.g., Christian church in South Africa  
276.8

**277 North America**

Add area notation 7 to 27, e.g., Christian church in Pennsylvania  
277.48

**278 South America**

Add area notation 8 to 27, e.g., Christian church in Brazil 278.1

**279 Other parts of world**

Add area notation 9 to 27, e.g., Christian church in Australia 279.4

## 280 Denominations and sects

Scope: general historical and geographical treatment of, comprehensive works on specific denominations and sects and their individual local churches

Use 280.01–280.09 for standard subdivisions

(Optional: specific elements of specific denominations and sects, subarranged as below; prefer 230–270)

To subarrange specific elements, divide each specific denomination, sect, group as follows:

- |         |  |
|---------|--|
| 001–008 | Standard subdivisions  |
| [009]   | Historical and geographical treatment                              |
|         | Do not use; class in 07  |
| 02      | Basic textual sources  |
|         | Class Bible in 220   |
| 03–06   | Doctrinal and practical theology                                   |
|         | Divide like 230–260, e.g., the denomination and world order 061 87 |
| 07      | Historical and geographical treatment                              |
|         | Divide like 270, e.g., 20th century 070 82                         |

### [.1] Ecumenicalism

Class in 262.001

## ► 280.2–280.4 Branches

Class specific denominations and sects in 281–289

### .2 Catholicism

### .4 Protestantism [*formerly* 284]

## 281 Primitive and Oriental churches

### ► 281.1–281.4 Apostolic Church to time of great schism 1054

Scope: works of apostolic and church fathers

Class general history in 270.1–270.3, comprehensive work 281.1

### .1 Comprehensive works

*For specific periods, see 281.2–281.4*

### ► 281.2–281.4 Specific periods

### .2 Primitive Apostolic Church to 100

## *Denominations and sects*

**281.3 Ante-Nicene church, 100–325**

**.4 Post-Nicene church, 325–1054**

**: .5 Oriental churches**

*For specific Oriental churches, see 281.6–281.9*

► **281.6–281.9 Specific Oriental churches**

**.6 Monophysite**

Including Eutychian

**.62 Armenian**

**.63 Jacobite**

**.7 Coptic and Abyssinian**

**.8 Nestorian**

**.9 Eastern Orthodox**

**.909 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
**281.94–281.99**

**.93 Specific churches**

Greek, Russian, Syrian, Ukrainian, other

*For treatment by continent, country, locality, see  
281.94–281.99*

**.94-.99 Treatment by continent, country, locality**

Add area notations 4–9 to 281.9

**282 Roman Catholic Church**

Class Oriental churches in communion with Rome in 281.5–281.8

**.09 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 282.4–282.9

**.4–.9 Treatment by continent, country, locality**

Add area notations 4–9 to 282



## *Decimal Classification*

### **283 Anglican churches**

- .09 Historical and geographical treatment  
Class treatment by continent, country, locality in **283.4–283.9**

**.3 Specific branches**

Including Reformed Episcopal Church and its affiliates  
*For treatment by continent, country, locality, see 283.4–283.9*

**.4–.9 Treatment by continent, country, locality**

Add area notations **4–9** to **283**

### **284 Protestant denominations of Continental origin**

Class comprehensive works on Protestantism [*formerly 284*] in **280.4**

*For Baptist churches, see 286.1–286.5; Church of the New Jerusalem, 289.4; Mennonites, 289.7*

**.1 Lutheran churches**

Scope: Scandinavian Lutheran churches [*formerly 284.7*]

**.109 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
**284.14–284.19**

**.13 Specific churches, branches, synods**

*For treatment by continent, country, locality, see 284.14–284.19*

**.14–.19 Treatment by continent, country, locality**

Add area notations **4–9** to **284.1**

**.2 Calvinistic and Reformed churches in Europe**

**.209 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
**284.24–284.29**

**.23 Specific churches and branches**

*For Huguenots, see 284.5; treatment by continent, country, locality, 284.24–284.29*

**.24–.29 Treatment by continent, country, locality**

Add area notations **4–9** to **284.2**

- 284.3      Hussites and Anabaptists**
- .4      Albigenses and Waldenses**
- .5      Huguenots**
- .6      Moravians**  
            *For Hussites, see 284.3*
- .609      Historical and geographical treatment**  
            Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
            **284.64–284.69**
- .64–.69      Treatment by continent, country, locality**  
            Add area notations 4–9 to **284.6**
- [.7]      Scandinavian Lutheran churches**  
            Class in **284.1**
- .8      Modern schisms in Catholic Church**  
            Including Old Catholic, Gallican schismatics, Constitutional  
            Church, Little Church of France
- .84      Jansenists**
- .9      Arminianism and Remonstrants**
- 285      Presbyterian, American Reformed, Congregational  
            churches**  
            Use **285.001–285.009** for standard subdivisions
- .01–.09      Standard subdivisions of Presbyterian churches**

**285.1–285.2 Presbyterian churches**

(If option under **280** is followed, use **285.000 1 – 285.000 9** for standard subdivisions of Presbyterian, American Reformed, Congregational churches, **285.001–285.008** for standard subdivisions of Presbyterian churches, **285.02–285.07** for specific elements of Presbyterian churches)

## *Decimal Classification*

### **285.1 United States origin**

Scope: Cumberland Presbyterian Church [*formerly 285.3*], United Presbyterian Church of North America [*formerly 285.4*], Reformed Presbyterian churches [*formerly 285.5*], other sects [*formerly 285.6*]

#### **.109 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
285.14–285.19

#### **.13 Specific denominations**

*For treatment by continent, country, locality, see 285.14–285.19*

#### **.131 United Presbyterian Church in the United States of America**

#### **.132 Presbyterian Church in the United States of America**

#### **.133 Presbyterian Church in the United States**

#### **.134 United Presbyterian Church of North America**

#### **.135 Cumberland Presbyterian Church**

#### **.136 Reformed Presbyterian churches**

#### **.14–.19 Treatment by continent, country, locality**

Add area notations 4–9 to 285.1

### **.2 British Commonwealth origin**

#### **.209 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
285.24–285.29

#### **.24–.29 Treatment by continent, country, locality**

Add area notations 4–9 to 285.2

*For United Church of Canada, see 287.92*

#### **[.3] Cumberland Presbyterian Church**

Class in 285.1

#### **[.4] United Presbyterian Church of North America**

Class in 285.1

*Denominations and sects*

- [285.5]      **Reformed Presbyterian churches**  
                Class in 285.1
- [.6]          **Other Presbyterian sects**  
                Class in 285.1
- .7            **Reformed churches in America**
- .709          Historical and geographical  
                Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
                285.74–285.79
- .73          Specific denominations  
                *For treatment by continent, country, locality, see 285.74–285.79*
- .731          Christian Reformed Church
- .732          Reformed Church in America ( Dutch )
- .733          Reformed Church in the United States ( German )
- .734          Evangelical and Reformed Church
- .74–.79      Treatment by continent, country, locality  
                Add area notations 4–9 to 285.7
- .8            **Congregationalism**
- .809          Historical and geographical treatment  
                Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
                285.84–285.89
- .83          Specific denominations  
                *For treatment by continent, country, locality, see 285.84–285.89*
- .832          Congregational Churches  
                *For United Church of Canada, see 287.92*
- .833          Congregational Christian Churches  
                *For Christian Church, see 286.63*
- .834          United Church of Christ  
                *For Evangelical and Reformed Church, see 285.734*

## *Decimal Classification*

285.84-.89      Treatment by continent, country, locality  
Add area notations 4-9 to 285.8, e.g., United Church of Christ  
in Pennsylvania 285.874 8

.9      Puritanism

## 286      Baptist, Disciples of Christ, Adventist churches

Use 286.001-286.009 for standard subdivisions

.01-.09      Standard subdivisions of Baptist churches

---

### ▶      286.1-286.5 Baptist churches

(If option under 280 is followed, use 286.000 1 - 286.000 9 for  
standard subdivisions of Baptist, Disciples of Christ, Adventist  
churches, 286.001-286.008 for standard subdivisions of Baptist  
churches, 286.02-286.07 for specific elements of Baptist  
churches)

.1      Regular (Calvinistic) Baptists

.109      Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
286.14-286.19

.13      Specific denominations

*For treatment by continent, country, locality, see 286.14-286.19*

.131      American (Northern) Baptist Convention

.132      Southern Baptist Convention

.133      National (Negro) Baptist Convention

.14-.19      Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add area notations 4-9 to 286.1

.2      Freewill Baptists

.3      Seventh-Day Baptists

.4      Old School Baptists

Including Primitive, Antimission, Hard-Shell Baptists

.5      Other

Including Dunkers, Church of the Brethren

*Denominations and sects*

**286.6 Disciples of Christ ( Campbellites )**

.609 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
**286.64–286.69**

.63 Specific denominations

Including Christian Church, Church of Christ

*For treatment by continent, country, locality, see*  
**286.64–286.69**

.64–.69 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add area notations **4–9** to **286.6**

.7 **Adventists**

.709 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
**286.74–286.79**

.73 Specific denominations

Seventh-Day Adventists, Church of God ( Adventists ), Advent  
Christian Church

*For treatment by continent, country, locality, see*  
**286.74–286.79**

.74–.79 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add area notations **4–9** to **286.7**

**287 Methodist churches**

.1 **Wesleyan Methodist Church**

.109 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
**287.14–287.19**

.14–.19 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add area notations **4–9** to **287.1**

.4 **Primitive Methodist Church**

.409 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
**287.44–287.49**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 287.44-.49      Treatment by continent, country, locality  
                    Add area notations 4-9 to 287.4
- .6                **The Methodist Church**
- .609             Historical and geographical treatment  
                    Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
                    287.64-287.69
- .63             Specific divisions  
                    *For Methodist Protestant Church, see 287.7; treatment by  
                    continent, country, locality, 287.64-287.69*
- .632             Methodist Episcopal Church
- .633             Methodist Episcopal Church, South
- .64-.69        Treatment by continent, country, locality  
                    Add area notations 4-9 to 287.6
- .7                **Methodist Protestant Church**
- .8                **Negro Methodist churches in United States**
- .83             Specific denominations  
                    African Methodist Episcopal Church, African Methodist  
                    Episcopal Zion Church, Christian Methodist Episcopal Church  
                    *For treatment by continent, country, locality, see  
                    287.84-287.89*
- .84-.89        Treatment by continent, country, locality  
                    Add area notations 4-9 to 287.8
- .9                **Other Methodist churches**
- .92             United Church of Canada
- .97             Other  
                    Including Free Methodist Church of North America,  
                    Congregational Methodist Church

*Denominations and sects*

**288 Unitarianism**

Scope: Socinianism, Anti-Trinitarianism

- .09 Historical and geographical treatment
  - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 288.4–288.9
- .3 Specific denominations
  - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 288.4–288.9
- .32 Unitarian Universalist Association
  - For Universalist Church, see 289.1*
- .33 Unitarian Church
- .4–.9 Treatment by continent, country, locality
  - Add area notations 4–9 to 288

**289 Other denominations and sects**

- .1 Universalist Church
- .109 Historical and geographical treatment
  - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 289.14–289.19
- .14–.19 Treatment by continent, country, locality
  - Add area notations 4–9 to 289.1
- .2 [Permanently unassigned]
  - If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific denomination or sect not separately provided for, class it here



## *Decimal Classification*

### **289.3 Latter-Day Saints (Mormons)**

.309 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
**289.34–289.39**

.32 Sources (Sacred books)

.322 Book of Mormon

.33 Specific branches

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints, Reorganized  
Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints

*For treatment by continent, country, locality, see*  
**289.34–289.39**

.34–.39 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add area notations 4–9 to **289.3**

### **.4 Church of the New Jerusalem (Swedenborgianism)**

.409 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
**289.44–289.49**

.44–.49 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add area notations 4–9 to **289.4**

### **.5 Church of Christ, Scientist (Christian Science)**

.509 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
**289.54–289.59**

.52 Sources

.522 By Mary Baker Eddy

.523 Others

.54–.59 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add area notations 4–9 to **289.5**

*Denominations and sects*

- 289.6 Society of Friends ( Quakers )**
- .609 Historical and geographical treatment  
Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
289.64–289.69
- .63 Specific branches  
Orthodox and Hicksite  
*For treatment by continent, country, locality, see*  
289.64–289.69
- .64–.69 Treatment by continent, country, locality  
Add area notations 4–9 to 289.6
- .7 Mennonites**
- .709 Historical and geographical treatment  
Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
289.74–289.79
- .73 Specific branches  
Amish, Church of God in Christ, Defenceless Mennonites,  
General Conference Mennonites, Hutterian Brethren  
*For treatment by continent, country, locality, see*  
289.74–289.79
- .74–.79 Treatment by continent, country, locality  
Add area notations 4–9 to 289.7
- .8 Shakers**  
United Society of True Believers in Christ's Second Appearing
- .9 Others**  
Including Assemblies of God, Churches of God, Church of the  
Nazarene, Jehovah's Witnesses, Pentecostal Assemblies, New  
Thought, United Brethren, Unity School of Christianity  
If desired, class a specific denomination or sect requiring local  
emphasis in 289.2  
*For Salvation Army, see 267.15*

## **290 Other religions and comparative religion**

Scope: ecclesiastic laws [*formerly* 348]

### **291 Comparative religion**

[.012] Classification

Do not use; class in 291.14

#### **SUMMARY**

- 291.1 Relationships and attitudes of religions
- .2 Doctrinal theologies (Dogmas)
- .3 Forms of worship and other rites and ceremonies
- .4 Personal religion
- .5 Moral theology
- .6 Leaders and organization
- .7 Activities inspired by religious motives
- .8 Sources
- .9 Sects and reform movements

#### **.1 Relationships and attitudes of religions**

[.12] Religious emotions

Class in 200.19

#### **.13 Mythological foundations**

Constituent elements, growth, changes in form of religious myths

#### **.14 Classification of religions**

Polytheistic, pantheistic, monotheistic

#### **.17 Social theologies**

Attitude of religions toward and influence on secular matters and other religions

Divide like 261, e.g., attitude of religions toward science  
291.175

#### **.2 Doctrinal theologies (Dogmas)**

##### **.21 Objects of worship and veneration**

Attributes and functions

##### **.211 Gods, goddesses, other divinities and deities**

Including animism, spiritism

## *Other religions and comparative religion*

- 291.212 Nature
  - Sun, water, fire, trees, sex, other natural phenomena
- .213 Persons
  - Ancestors, the dead, monarchs, heroes, saints
- .214 Personified abstractions
- .215 Angels and other good spirits
  - Servants and messengers of divinity
- .216 Devils, demons, other evil spirits
- .218 Images of divinity
- .22 Man and his soul
  - Creation, sin, salvation, repentance, atonement
- .23 Eschatology
  - Death, resurrection, immortality, other worlds, heaven, purgatory, hell, rewards, punishments, reincarnation
- .3 **Forms of worship and other rites and ceremonies**
  - For personal religion, see 291.4*
- .32 Divination
  - Omens, oracles, prophecies
- .33 Witchcraft
- .34 Offerings, sacrifices, penances
- .35 Sacred places
  - Holy buildings, temples, shrines, pagodas, grottoes
- .36 Sacred times
  - Liturgic year, religious calendar, religious festivals
- .37 Symbolism, symbolic objects, emblems
- .38 Rites and ceremonies
  - Liturgy, public prayer, public feasts and fasts, pilgrimages, processions

## *Decimal Classification*

### **291.4      Personal religion**

Religion as an inner experience and guide to daily living

*For moral theology, see 291.5*

#### **.42      Religious experience**

Mysticism, conversion, asceticism, self-discipline

#### **.43      Private worship, prayer, meditation, contemplation**

#### **.44      Conduct of life**

Application of religious virtues to everyday living

### **.5      Moral theology**

Conscience, sins, vices, virtues, duties

### **.6      Leaders and organization**

291.61–291.64 Leaders and their work

#### **.61      Priests, ministers, pastors**

Class messiahs [*formerly 291.61*] in 291.63

#### **.62      Men endowed with supernatural power**

Thaumaturgists, sorcerers, magicians, exorcists

#### **.63      Divinely inspired men**

Messiahs [*formerly 291.61*], founders of religions [*formerly 291.64*], prophets

#### **.64      Interpreters of religion**

Writers, reformers

Class founders of religions [*formerly 291.64*] in 291.63

*For priests, ministers, pastors, see 291.61*

#### **.65      Organization and organizations**

Institutions, associations, orders, parties, congregations

*For laws and decisions, see 291.84*

### **.7      Activities inspired by religious motives**

Religious wars, missions, religious training and instruction

## *Other religions and comparative religion*

### **291.8 Sources**

- .82 Sacred books and scriptures
- .83 Oral traditions
- .84 Laws and decisions

### **.9 Sects and reform movements**

Class a specific aspect of a specific sect or reform movement with the subject



## **292–299 Specific religions**

Divide as below, but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific religion, place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., Hinduism **2H0** (preceding **220**), or **29H** (preceding **292**); divide as provided under the appropriate subdivision of **292–299**, e.g., Shivaism **2H5.13** or **29H.513**

## **292 Classical (Greek and Roman) religion**

Use **292.001–292.009** for standard subdivisions



### **292.07–292.08 By specific culture**

Class specific elements in **292.1–292.9**

- .07 Roman
- .08 Greek

### **.1–.9 Specific elements**

Divide like **291.1–291.9**, e.g., classical gods and goddesses **292.211**

## **293 Germanic religion**

Divide like **291**, e.g., eschatology **293.23**

## **294 Brahmanism and related religions**

- .1 The Vedas
- .12 Rigveda
- .13 Samaveda
- .14 Yajurveda
- .15 Atharvaveda

## *Decimal Classification*

### ► 294.3–294.4 Heterodox movements

#### 294.3 Buddhism

[.300 2–.300 8] Doctrines, organization, activities, sources

Class in 294.34–294.38

[.31] Hinayana (Southern, Theravada) Buddhism

Class comprehensive works in 294.391; doctrines, organization, activities, sources in 294.34–294.38

[.32] Mahayana (Northern) Buddhism

Class comprehensive works and sects and reform movements in 294.392, doctrines, organization, activities, sources in 294.34–294.38

.33 Relationships and attitudes

Divide like 291.1, e.g., attitude toward other religions 294.337 2

294.34–294.38 Doctrines, organization, activities, sources [*formerly* 294.300 2 – 294.300 8, 294.31, 294.32]

.34 Doctrines and practices

Divide like 291.2–291.4, e.g., liturgy 294.343 8

.35 Moral theology

Conscience, sins, vices, virtues, duties

.36 Leaders and organization

.361–.364 Leaders

Divide like 291.61–291.64, e.g., the Buddha 294.363

.365 Organization and organizations

Including institutions, associations, parties, congregations

.365 7 Monasticism and monasteries

.37 Activities inspired by religious motives

Missions, religious training and instruction

## *Other religions and comparative religion*

- 294.38      **Sources**
- .382      **Sacred books and scriptures (Tripitaka)**
- .382 2      Vinayapitaka
- .382 3      Suttapitaka
- .382 4      Abhidhammapitaka
- .383      **Oral traditions**
- .384      **Laws and decisions**
- .39      **Branches**
- Class a specific aspect of a specific branch with the subject
- .391      **Hinayana (Southern, Theravada) Buddhism**  
         [formerly 294.31]
- .392      **Mahayana (Northern) Buddhism** [formerly 294.32]
- .392 3      Lamaism
- .392 7      Zen
- .4      Jainism**
- .41-.48      **Relationships, doctrines, organization, activities, sources**  
         Divide like 291.1-291.8, e.g., moral theology 294.45
- .49      **Sects and reform movements**  
         Class a specific aspect of a specific sect or reform movement  
         with the subject
- .492      Svetambara
- .493      Digambara
- .5      Hinduism**
- .51      **Relationships and attitudes**  
         Divide like 291.1, e.g., attitude toward science 294.517 5
- .52      **Doctrinal theology (Dogma)**
- .521      **Objects of worship and veneration**  
         Attributes and functions  
         Divide like 291.21, e.g., avatara 294.521 1
- .522-.523      **Man and his soul, eschatology**  
         Divide like 291.22-291.23, e.g., karma 294.523



### *Decimal Classification*

- 294.53      Forms of worship and other rites and ceremonies  
Divide like 291.3, e.g., symbolism in Hinduism 294.537  
For personal religion, see 294.54
- .54          Personal religion and moral theology
- .542-.544      Personal religion  
Hinduism as an inner experience and guide to daily living  
Divide like 291.42-291.44, e.g., Hindu asceticism 294.542
- .548          Moral theology [*formerly* 294.598]  
Conscience, sins, vices, virtues, duties  
Including dharma
- .55          Sects and reform movements  
Class a specific aspect of a specific sect or reform movement  
with the subject  
For heterodox movements, see 294.3-294.4
- .551          Early
- 551 2          Vishnuism [*formerly* 294.554]
- 551 3          Shivaism
- 551 4          Shaktatism
- 551 5          Ganapataism
- 551 6          Shanmukaism
- 551 7          Sauraism
- [.552]          Brahma Samaj, Arya-Samaj  
Class in 294.556
- .553          Sikhism
- [.554]          Vishnuism  
Class in 294.551 2
- .555          Ramakrishna movement
- .556          Reformed Hinduism  
Brahma Samaj, Arya-Samaj [*both formerly* 294.552]

- 94.56-.57      Leaders, organization, activities  
                     Divide like 291.6-291.7, e.g., gurus 294.561
- .59              Sources
- .592              Sacred books and scriptures  
                     *For the Vedas, see 294.1*
- .592 1            Upanishads
- .592 2            Ramayana
- .592 3            Mahabharata  
                     *For Bhagavad Gita, see 294.592 4*
- .592 4            Bhagavad Gita
- .592 5            Puranas
- .592 6            Dharmasastras
- .593              Oral traditions
- .594              Laws and decisions
- [.598]            Moral theology  
                     Class in 294.548

## 295      Zoroastrianism ( Mazdaism, Parseeism )

Divide like 291, e.g., virtues 295.5

## 296      Judaism

### SUMMARY

- 296.1            Sources
- .3                Doctrinal, moral, social theology
- .4                Public services, rites, traditions
- .6                Leaders, organization, activities
- .7                Personal and family religion
- .8                Sects and movements

### .1                Sources

*For Old Testament, see 221*

## *Decimal Classification*

### 296.12 Talmudic literature

Use 296.120 01 – 296.120 09 for standard subdivisions

296.120 4 – 296.120 7 General considerations



296.120 4 – 296.120 5 Texts

Scope: textual criticism

*For commentaries, see 296.120 7*

296.120 4 Hebrew and Aramaic

.120 5 Translations

Divide like 420–490, e.g., English translations 296.120 52

.120 6 Interpretation and higher criticism

Divide like 220.6, e.g., hermeneutics 296.120 63

*For commentaries, see 296.120 7*

.120 7 Commentaries

Criticism and interpretation arranged in textual order

296.123-296.129 Specific works

Add 0 to each subdivision identified by \* and divide like  
296.120 4 – 296.120 7, e.g., commentaries on Mishnah  
296.123 07

123 \*Mishnah

124 \*Palestinian Talmud

125 \*Babylonian Talmud

126 Tosefta and Baraita

126 2 \*Tosefta

126 3 \*Baraita

129 Other Talmudic texts

\* Divide as instructed under 296.123–296.129

*Other religions and comparative religion*

296.14 Midrash

Use 296.140 01 – 296.140 09 for standard subdivisions

.140 4–.140 7 General considerations

Divide like 296.120 4 – 296.120 7, e.g., Hebrew and Aramaic texts 296.140 4

296.141–296.142 Specific works

Add 0 to each subdivision identified by \* and divide like 296.120 4 – 296.120 7, e.g., criticism and interpretation of Haggadah 296.142 06

.141 \*Halakah

.142 \*Haggadah

.16 Cabala

.17 Early rabbinical writings to 1400

.172 Maimonides

.179 Responsa

.18 Laws and decisions

Scope: later Halakah

.182 Joseph Caro

.19 Later Haggadah

.3 Doctrinal, moral, social theology

296.31–296.33 Doctrinal theology (Dogma)

.31 Spiritual world

Attributes and functions

.311 God

.315 Angels

.316 Devils and demons

.32 Man and his soul

Creation, sin, salvation, repentance, atonement

\* Divide as instructed under 296.141–296.142

## *Decimal Classification*

- 296.33      Eschatology
  - Death, resurrection, immortality, messianism
- .38      Moral and social theology
- .385      Moral theology
  - Conscience, sins, vices, virtues, duties
- .387      Social theology
  - Attitude toward and influence on secular matters
  - Divide like 261, e.g., attitude toward science 296.387 5
- .4      **Public services, rites, traditions**
  - Scope: liturgy, hymns, prayer, responsive reading, symbolism, ceremonies, comprehensive works on public and private worship and prayer
  - For personal and family religion, see 296.7*
- .41      Sabbath
- .42      Sermons and homiletics
  - Class sermons on a specific subject with the subject
- .43      Festivals, holy days, fasts
  - For Sabbath, see 296.41*
- .431      Rosh Hashanah (New Year)
- .432      Yom Kippur (Day of Atonement)
- .433      Sukkoth (Feast of Tabernacles)
- .435      Hanukkah (Feast of the Dedication)
- .436      Purim (Feast of Lots)
- .437      Pesach (Passover)
  - Including Seder service
- .438      Shabuoth (Feast of Weeks, Pentecos)
- .439      Other
  - Including Tishah b'Ab, Lag b'Omer

*Other religions and comparative religion*

- 296.44 Rites and customs for specific occasions
- .442 Special rites for male Jew
  - .442 2 Berith milah (Circumcision)
  - .442 3 Pidyon haben (Redemption of first-born male)
  - .442 4 Bar mitzvah
  - .443 Bath mitzvah
  - .444 Marriage and divorce rites and traditions
  - .445 Burial and mourning rites and traditions
- .6 **Leaders, organization, activities**
- .61 Leaders
  - .65 Synagogues
  - .67 Organization and organizations
    - Institutions, associations, polity
  - .673 Young Men's Hebrew Associations
  - .675 Young Women's Hebrew Associations
  - .68 Religious education
    - Sunday schools, afternoon weekday schools, parochial schools
- .7 **Personal and family religion**
- For moral theology, see 296.385*
- .71 Religious experience
    - Mysticism, conversion, asceticism, self-discipline
  - .72 Daily devotions and worship
    - Morning, afternoon, evening prayers, blessings at meals, meditation, contemplation
  - .73 Observance of dietary laws
  - .74 Conduct of life
    - Application of religious virtues to everyday life
    - For observance of dietary laws, see 296.73*

## *Decimal Classification*

- 296.8      Sects and movements**  
Class a specific aspect of a specific sect or movement with the subject
- .81          Ancient  
Karaites, Pharisees, Sadducees, Essenes, Samaritans, Hellenistic movement, Qumran community
- .82          Medieval  
Including Sabbatianism
- .83          Modern
- .832          Orthodox Judaism
- .833          Mystical Judaism  
Including modern Hasidism
- .834          Reform movements
- .834 2          Conservative Judaism
- .834 4          Reconstructionist Judaism
- .834 6          Reform Judaism

**297      Islam and religions derived from it**  
Use 297.001–297.009 for standard subdivisions

- .01–.09      Standard subdivisions of Islam

### **SUMMARY**

- 297.1      Sources, relationships, attitudes of Islam
- .2          Islamic doctrinal theology (Aqaid and Kalam)
- .3          Islamic forms of worship and other rites and ceremonies
- .4          Personal religion in Islam
- .5          Islamic moral theology
- .6          Islamic leaders and organization
- .7          Islamic activities
- .8          Islamic sects and other religions
- .1          Sources, relationships, attitudes of Islam

## *Other religions and comparative religion*

- 297.12–297.14 Sources

297.12 Sacred books and scriptures

.122 Koran

---

► 297.122 1 – 297.122 8 General principles

.122 1 Origins and authenticity

---

► 297.122 4 – 297.122 5 Texts

Scope: textual criticism

*For commentaries, see 297.122 7*

.122 4 Arabic

.122 5 Translations

Divide like 420–490, e.g., Urdu translations

297.122 591 439

.122 6 Interpretation and higher criticism

Divide like 220.6, e.g., historical criticism 297.122 67

*For commentaries, see 297.122 7*

.122 7 Commentaries

Criticism and interpretation arranged in textual order

.122 8 Special subjects treated in Koran

.122 9 Individual suras and groups of suras

Origins, authenticity, texts, criticism, interpretation, commentaries, special subjects

.124 Hadith

.124 01–.124 08 General principles

Divide like 297.122 1 – 297.122 8, e.g., origins

297.124 01

297.124 1 – 297.124 8 Specific Hadith

Add 0 to each subdivision identified by \* and divide like 297.122 1 – 297.122 8, e.g., Arabic text of Hadith of Al-Bukhari

297.124 104



## *Decimal Classification*

- 297.124 1      \*Al-Bukhari
- .124 2      \*Abu Daud
- .124 3      \*Muslim
- .124 4      \*Al-Tirmidhi
- .124 5      \*Al-Nasai
- .124 6      \*Ibn Majah
- .124 7      Other Sunni Hadith
- .124 8      Hadiths of other sects
- .13      Oral traditions
  - For Hadith, see 297.124*
- .14      Laws and decisions (Fiqh)
  - Religious and ceremonial
  - Class Islamic law on other subjects in 340
- .19      Relationships and attitudes
- .197      Social theology
  - Attitude toward and influence on secular matters and other religions
  - Divide like 261, e.g., attitude toward Judaism 297.197 296
- .2      **Islamic doctrinal theology (Aqaid and Kalam)**
  - For Koran, see 297.122; Mohammad the Prophet, 297.63*
- .21      Spiritual world
  - Attributes and functions
- .211      God
- .215      Angels
- .216      Devils and demons
- .22      Man
  - Creation, fall, sin, salvation, grace, faith, repentance, intercession
- .23      Eschatology
  - Death, intermediate state, resurrection, day of judgment, future life, eternity, heaven, hell

\* Divide as instructed under 297.124 1 – 297.124 8

## *Other religions and comparative religion*

### **297.3 Islamic forms of worship and other rites and ceremonies**

*For personal religion, see 297.4*

#### **.301–.303 Specific sects**

Divide like 297.81–297.83, e.g., Sunni rites 297.301

#### **.32 Divination**

Omens, oracles, prophecies

#### **.33 Witchcraft**

#### **.35 Sacred places**

Mecca, Medina, Jerusalem

#### **.36 Sacred times**

#### **.38 Rites and ceremonies**

Public prayer, public feasts and fasts, pilgrimages

### **.4 Personal religion in Islam**

Religion as an inner experience and guide to daily living

Divide like 291.4, e.g., conduct of life 297.44

*For moral theology, see 297.5*

### **.5 Islamic moral theology**

Conscience, sins, vices, virtues, duties

*For Jihad (holy war), see 297.72*

#### **.51 Profession of faith**

#### **.52 Prayer five times daily**

#### **.53 Fasting**

#### **.54 Almsgiving (Zakat)**

#### **.55 Pilgrimage to Mecca**

### **.6 Islamic leaders and organization**

---

297.61–297.64 Leaders and their work

#### **.61 Functionaries**

Muezzins and imams

## *Decimal Classification*

- 297.63 Mohammed the Prophet
- .64 Mohammed's family and companions
- .65 Organization and organizations
  - Institutions, associations, orders, parties, congregations
  - Including caliphate
  - For laws and decisions, see 297.14*

### **.7 Islamic activities**

Including missions, religious training and instruction

### **.72 Jihad (Holy war)**

### **.8 Islamic sects and other religions**

---

#### **► 297.81–297.85 Sects and reform movements**

Class a specific aspect of a specific sect or reform movement with the subject

*For Sikhism, see 294.553*

### **.81 Sunnites**

#### **.811 Hanafites**

#### **.812 Shafites**

#### **.813 Malikites**

#### **.814 Hanbalites**

Including Wahhabis

### **.82 Shiites**

#### **.821 Twelvers (Ithna Ashirites)**

#### **.822 Seveners (Ismailites)**

#### **.824 Zaydites**

### **.83 Other**

#### **.835 Kadarites**

#### **.837 Murjiites**

### **.85 Druzes**

## *Other religions and comparative religion*

- ▶ 297.87–297.89 Religions derived from Islam
- 297.87 Religion of Black Muslims
- .88 Babism [*formerly* 297.89]
- .89 Bahai faith

Divide like 291, e.g., duties 297.895

Class Babism [*formerly* 297.89] in 297.88

### **298 [Permanently unassigned]**

If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific religion, class it here

### **299 Other religions**

- .1–.4 Of Indo-European, Semitic, Hamitic, Ural-Altaic origin

Divide like 491–494, e.g., Druidism 299.16

- .5 Of East and Southeast Asian origin

- .51 Chinese

- .512 Confucianism

Divide like 291, e.g., virtues 299.512 5

- .514 Taoism

Divide like 291, e.g., forms of worship 299.514 3

- .54 Tibeto-Burman

- .56 Japanese

- .561 Shintoism

Divide like 291, e.g., shrines 299.561 35

- .57–.59 Other

Divide like 495.7–495.9, e.g., religions of Burmese origin 299.58

- .6 Of African and Negro origin

*For religion of Black Muslims, see 297.87*

- .7 Of North American Indian origin

- .8 Of South American Indian origin

- .9 Of Austronesian and Oceanic origin

# 300

## 300 The social sciences

The sciences that deal with social activities and institutions

Use 300.1–300.9 for standard subdivisions

Class social, political, economic, diplomatic, welfare aspects of a specific war with history of the war

### 301–309 General considerations

#### 301 Sociology

The science that deals comprehensively with social activities and institutions

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

#### SUMMARY

- 301.1 Social psychology
- .2 Cultural processes
- .3 Human ecology
- .4 Institutions and groups
- .5 Sociology of everyday activities and preoccupations

#### .1 Social psychology

Interaction between personality, attitudes, motivation of individuals and structure, dynamics, behavior of groups

#### .15 Group behavior

#### .152 For stability

Social control by coercion, persuasion, custom, taboo

#### .152 2 Group morale and loyalty

#### .152 3 Control of opinion

By public relations, publicity, indoctrination, rumor

#### .153 For change (Social movements)

- 301.154      In opinion formation  
                 Uses, measurement, effect of public opinion
- .155          For leadership
- [.158]        Behavior groups  
                 Class in 301.18
- .16          Mass communication processes  
                 Including comprehensive works on mass communication  
                 [formerly 384]  
                 *For control of opinion, see 301.152 3; effects of mass  
                 communication on cultural processes, 301.24*
- .18          Behavior groups [formerly 301.158]
- .181         The public at large
- .182         Crowds and mobs
- .183         Associations and meetings  
                 Formation, structure, workings
- .185         Cliques and gangs
- .186         Pressure groups [formerly 301.43]
- .2          Cultural processes  
                 Conflict, compromise, assimilation, acculturation, cooperation,  
                 communication, others
- [.209]        Historical and geographical treatment  
                 Do not use; class in 301.29
- .24          Means and kinds  
                 Including effects of invention, discovery, war, technology,  
                 automation, mass communication
- 301.245-301.246 Kinds
- .245         Progress
- .246         Regress

## Decimal Classification

- 301.29      Historical and geographical treatment
- Add area notations 1–9 to 301.29, e.g., cultural processes of the Occident 301.291 821; then, for cultural processes and general relations between two countries, regions, areas, places, groups, add 0 and again add area notations 1–9, e.g., cultural processes and general relations between Occident and Orient 301.291 821 05
- Give priority in notation to the country, region, area, place, group requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class cultural processes and general relations between United States and Islamic world in 301.297 301 767. If the two require equal emphasis, give priority to the one coming first in the sequence of area notations
- Class cultural situation and progress in 901.9
- .3          Human ecology
- Adaptation to spatial and temporal environment
- .32        Population
- Density, increase, decrease, movement, characteristics
- Including migration within a country [*formerly 325.1*]
- .320 212      Tables, formulas, specifications
- Class statistical tables in 312
- [.320 9]      Historical and geographical treatment
- Do not use; class in 301.329
- .329        Historical and geographical treatment
- Add area notations 1–9 to 301.329
- .34        Community organization and development
- Areal distribution, location, expansion, pattern of growth
- For planning social conditions, see 309.2; kinds of communities, 301.35–301.37*
- 
- 301.35–301.37 Kinds of communities
- .35        Rural
- .36        Suburban and urban
- .362      Suburban
- .364      Urban

## *The social sciences*

301.37      State, provincial, national

.372          State and provincial

.377          National

**.4      Institutions and groups**

Social characteristics and problems, impact on society as a whole

Use 301.400 1 – 301.400 9 for standard subdivisions

*For behavior groups, see 301.18*

.402          Small groups

.403          Large groups

.404          Informal organizations

.405          Formal organizations

.406          Institutionalism

## **SUMMARY**

301.41      The sexes

.42          Marriage and family

.43          Groups of specific ages

.44          Systems and criteria of social distinction and stratification

.45          Nondominant groups

.47          Groups of persons with physical and mental illnesses and handicaps

.41          The sexes [*formerly* 301.424]

.411          Man

.412          Woman [*formerly also* 396]

Scope: feminism, superiority

.412 1          Emancipation

.412 2          Careers

.412 6          In the home

.412 9          In history, public affairs, war

.413          Celibacy

.414          Courtship [*formerly* 301.425]

Including preparation for marriage [*formerly* 301.426]



## *Decimal Classification*

- 301.415      Sex life outside marriage  
                 Concubinage, premarital relations, adultery, prostitution,  
                 homosexuality and other perversions
- .42          Marriage and family
- .421          Structure and functions of family
- .422          Nature and forms of marriage  
                 Monogamy, polygamy, polyandry; interracial, intercultural,  
                 interreligious marriage; marriage between kin
- .423          Family and social change  
                 Including effects upon family of urbanization, mobility,  
                 technology, industrialization, war
- [.424]        The sexes  
                 Class in 301.41
- [.424 3]      Regulation and control of prostitution  
                 Class in 350.764
- [.425]        Courtship  
                 Class in 301.414
- .426          Husband-wife relationship  
                 Including planned parenthood  
                 Class preparation for marriage in 301.414, marriage and  
                 family counseling in 362.82 [*both formerly 301.426*]
- .427          Intrafamily relationships  
                 Including mutual responsibilities  
                 *For husband-wife relationship, see 301.426*
- .428          Family disorganization, dissolution, adjustment  
                 Including death, separation
- .428 4        Divorce
- .428 5        Remarriage

*The social sciences*

- 301.43      Groups of specific ages  
            Class pressure groups [*formerly* 301.43] in 301.186
- .431      Minors
- .431 4      Children  
            Thru age eleven
- .431 5      Adolescents  
            Ages twelve to twenty
- .434      Middle-aged
- .435      Aged (Social gerontology)  
            Including retirement
- .44      Systems and criteria of social distinction and stratification
- .441      By economic status  
            Wealth, property, income  
            Including entrepreneur, self-employed, wage-earning status  
            *For systems and criteria by occupation, see 301.444*
- .442      By family and kinship
- .443      By location and duration of residence
- .444      By occupation
- .445      By amount of education
- .446      By religion
- .447      By race
- .448      By language
- .45      Nondominant groups  
            Scope: prejudice, discrimination, segregation, desegregation, integration; refugees and displaced persons
- .451      Ethnic  
            Indigenous and nonindigenous  
            Divide like 420-490, e.g., Negroes 301.451 96; then add 0 and add area notations 1-9, e.g., Negroes in South Africa 301.451 960 68

## *Decimal Classification*

- 301.452            Socioeconomic and religious
- .452 1            Distinctive because of cultural practices
- .452 2            Distinctive because of condition of servitude  
                        Slavery [*formerly* 326], serfdom [*formerly* 323.34]
- .452 3            Distinctive because of low economic status  
                        *For groups distinctive because of condition of servitude,*  
                        *see 301.452 2*
- 301.452 8 – 301.452 9 Distinctive because of religious beliefs
- .452 8            Christians
- .452 81–.452 89    Specific denominations and sects  
                        Divide like 281–289, e.g., Mennonites in Ohio  
                        301.452 897 771
- .452 9            Communicants of other religions  
                        Divide like 292–299, e.g., Moslems 301.452 97; then add  
                        0 and add area notations 1–9, e.g., Moslems in India  
                        301.452 970 54
- .453            Of specific national origin  
                        Add area notations 3–9 for country of origin to 301.453, e.g.,  
                        groups from Switzerland 301.453 494; then add 0 and add  
                        area notations 1–9 for place where located, e.g., groups from  
                        Switzerland in United States 301.453 494 073  
                        *For ethnic groups, see 301.451*
- .47            Groups of persons with physical and mental illnesses and  
                        handicaps  
                        Divide like 616–617, e.g., alcoholics 301.476 861
- .5            Sociology of everyday activities and preoccupations  
                        Social characteristics and problems, impact on society
- .52            Securing food
- .53            Securing clothing
- .54            Securing shelter (Housing [*formerly* 331.833])
- .55            Working
- .56            Securing education

*The social sciences*

301.57      Enjoying leisure and recreation

.58      Worshiping

302

303

304

305

306

307

308

**309      Social situation and conditions**

[.09]      Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 309.1

**.1      Historical and geographical treatment**

.101-.104      Historical periods

Divide like standard subdivisions 090 1 - 090 4, e.g., social situation in year 1000 309.102 1

.11-.19      Geographical treatment

Add area notations 1-9 to 309.1

**.2      Planning**

Development of programs to bring about desired change in conditions

.22      International

.223      Technical assistance

.223 5      Peace corps

.223 54-.223 59      By country of origin

Add area notations 4-9 to 301.213 5

.23      National

.25      State, provincial, county

.26      City



## **310–390 Specific social sciences**

The sciences that deal with specific social activities and institutions

### **310 Statistical method and statistics**

Use 310.01–310.09 for standard subdivisions

#### **.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of statistics**

Class general statistics by continent, country, locality in modern world in 314–319

### **311 Statistical method**

Science of analysis and presentation of quantitative or qualitative data secured thru enumeration or experiment

Class mathematical calculations in 519.6–519.9, statistical method applied to a specific subject in standard subdivision 018.2

#### **.01 Philosophy and theory**

Class theories in 311.2

#### **.2 Preparation of statistics**

Scope: principles and theories

#### **[.206] Organizations**

Do not use; class in 311.3–311.4

#### **311.21–311.26 Specific elements**

#### **.21 Sampling**

Scope: reliability and validity

#### **.212 Random sampling**

#### **.214 Quality control**

Including relative sampling

#### **311.22–311.24 Treatment of data**

*For graphic presentation of data, see 311.26*

#### **.22 Collection**

Questionnaires, field work, enumeration

## *Statistical method and statistics*

- 311.23      **Analysis**  
              Including determination and interpretation of statistical constants
- .24      **Tabulation**  
              Arrangement, layout, construction of tables and series
- .25      **Coefficients and ratios**  
              Including index numbers, skewness, correlation
- .26      **Graphic presentation of data**  
              Charts, graphs, nomograms
- .28      **Public opinion surveys and polls**  
              *For specific elements of preparation, see 311.21–311.26*
- 311.3–311.4 **Organizations preparing statistics**
- .3      **Official**
- .31      **International**
- .39      **In specific countries and localities**  
              Add area notations 3–9 to 311.39
- .4      **Nonofficial**



## **312–319 Statistics**

Class statistics of a specific subject other than populations with the subject

## **312      Statistics of populations (Demography)**



### **312.1–312.4 Vital statistics**

- .1      **On births**  
              Add area notations 1–9 to 312.1
- .2      **On deaths (Mortality)**
- .22      **Maternal deaths in childbirth**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 312.23      **Infant deaths**  
Statistics of deaths of persons after live birth and before  
attaining age of one year  
Add area notations 1–9 to 312.23
- .24      **Stillbirths**
- .26      **Deaths caused by disease**  
Divide like 616.1–616.9, e.g., statistics of deaths by pulmonary  
tuberculosis 312.262 46  
*For infant deaths, see 312.23*
- .27      **Deaths caused by accidents and crimes of violence**  
*For infant deaths, see 312.23*
- 
- 312.272–312.275 By accidents
- .272      **Home**
- .273      **Industrial**
- .274      **Traffic**
- .275      **Recreational**
- .276      **By crimes of violence**  
Deaths by homicide and suicide
- .3      **On illness (Morbidity)**  
Divide like 616.1–616.9, e.g., statistics on incidence of measles  
312.391 5
- .4      **On accidents and crimes of violence**  
Divide like 312.27, e.g., statistics on incidence of traffic accidents  
312.44
- .5      **On marriage and divorce**
- .6      **On physical features and measurements (Somatology)**
- .8      **On density, increase, decrease, movement of populations**
- .9      **On other specific characteristics of populations**  
Age, sex, nationality, race, language, religion, education,  
occupation

**313**

**314–319 General statistics by continent,  
country, locality in modern world**

**314**

**Europe**

Add area notation 4 to 31, e.g., general statistics of England 314.2

**315**

**Asia**

Add area notation 5 to 31, e.g., general statistics of Japan 315.2

**316**

**Africa**

Add area notation 6 to 31, e.g., general statistics of Tanganyika  
316.782

**317**

**North America**

Add area notation 7 to 31, e.g., general statistics of British Columbia  
317.11

**318**

**South America**

Add area notation 8 to 31, e.g., general statistics of Buenos Aires  
318.21

**319**

**Other parts of world**

Add area notation 9 to 31, e.g., general statistics of Australia 319.4



## **320 Political science**

The science that deals with the institutions and processes of governmental regulation and control of men living in society

*For public administration, see 350; law, 340*

- .01      **Philosophy and theory**
  - Class political theories and ideologies in 320.5
- .02-.09      **Other standard subdivisions**
- .1      **The state (The body politic)**
- .11      **Theory of origin**
  - Source and basis of political authority
- .12      **Geopolitics**
  - Class geopolitics in international relations in 327
- .13      **National self-determination**
- .15      **Nature, entity, concept of the state**
- .155      **Emerging states (New states)**
- .157      **Internal sovereignty**
- .158      **Nationalism and unity**
- .159      **"Pan" movements**
  - Add area notations 1-9 to 320.159
- .18      **Symbolism and emblems of state**
- .3      **Comparative government**
  - Comparison of general structure of governments
- .5      **Political theories and ideologies**
- .51      **Liberalism**
- .52      **Conservatism**
- .53      **Collectivism**
- .531      **Socialism**
- .532      **Communism**
- .533      **Fascism**
- .9      **Political situation and conditions**
  - Add area notations 1-9 to 320.9

**321      Types and forms of states**

Use 321.001–321.009 for standard subdivisions

**321.01–321.08 Forms**

Based on location of sovereignty in government

**.01      Unitary state**

State in which control over policy is centralized in national government

**.02      Federal state ( Federalism )**

State in which local units have stated powers of which they may not be deprived by action of central government alone

*For world state, see 321.04*

**.025–.028]      Semisovereign and dependent states**

Class in 321.08

**.03      Empires**

**.04      World state**

**.07      Ideal state**

Anarchy [*formerly 321.9*], Utopias

**.08      States with special limitations**

Including semisovereign and dependent states [*formerly 321.025–321.028*]

**.09      Change of form of state**

**321.1–321.9 Types**

Based on evolution of government

**.1      Primitive and despotic states**

**.12      Primitive**

Including tribal state [*formerly 321.2*]

**.14      Despotic**

Before 1500 A.D.

Including Caesarism [*formerly 321.6*]

## *Decimal Classification*

### **[321.2] Tribal state**

Class in 321.12

#### **.3 Feudal system**

#### **.4 Pure democracy (Greco-Roman republicanism)**

#### **.5 States controlled by select few**

Aristocracy, oligarchy, theocracy, plutocracy

### **► 321.6–321.9 Modern nation states**

#### **.6 Monarchical absolutism**

16th–18th centuries

Class totalitarian states in 321.9, Caesarism in 321.14 [*both formerly 321.6*]

#### **.7 Modern constitutionalism**

*For representative democracy, see 321.8*

#### **.72 Constitutional or limited monarchy**

#### **.74 Socialistic state**

#### **.8 Representative democracy**

#### **.9 Totalitarian states [*formerly 321.6*]**

Class anarchy as a type of state [*formerly 321.9*] in 321.07

#### **.92 Bolshevik**

#### **.94 Fascist**

## **322 Relation of state to organized groups**

*For political parties, see 329.02; relation of state to communities, 323.35; relation of government to education, 379*

#### **.1 Christian church and other religious bodies (State and church)**

#### **.2 Labor movements and groups**

#### **.3 Business and industry**

#### **.4 Protest and pressure groups**

Including reform movements

*For relation of state to revolutionary and subversive groups, see 323.2*

**323      Relation of state to individuals and groups**

*For relation of state to organized groups, see 322*

**SUMMARY**

- 323.1      Nondominant groups
- .2      Revolutionary and subversive groups and individuals
- .3      Communities and social classes
- .4      Individuals
- .5      Political rights
- .6      Citizenship

**.1      Nondominant groups**

**.109      Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
323.13–323.19

**323.11–323.12 Specific groups**

*For slaves, serfs, see 323.3*

**.11      Socioeconomic, religious, ethnic**

**.111      Socioeconomic and religious**

**.112–.119      Ethnic**

Divide like 420–490, e.g., relation of state to Negroes  
323.119 6; then add 0 and add area notations 1–9, e.g.,  
relation of state to Negroes in United States 323.119 607 3

**.12      Of specific national origin**

Add area notations 3–9 for country of origin to 323.12, e.g.,  
relation of state to groups from Ireland 323.124 15; then add 0  
and add area notations 1–9 for place where located, e.g.,  
relation of state to groups from Ireland in United States  
323.124 150 73

*For ethnic groups, see 323.112–323.119*

**.13–.19      Treatment by continent, country, locality**

Add area notations 3–9 to 323.1

*For specific groups, see 323.11–323.12*

**.2      Revolutionary and subversive groups and individuals**

Organized and unorganized groups

## *Decimal Classification*

- 323.3 Communities and social classes**  
Including slaves [*formerly* 326], serfs  
Class sociology of serfdom [*formerly* 323.34] in 301.452 2
- .35 Communities  
Divide like area notation 173, e.g., urban communities 323.352
- .4 Civil rights**
- .42 Equality before the law
- .43 Rights of personal security
- .44 Personal liberty and freedom of press  
Including freedom of action and movement  
*For right of assembly and association, see 323.47*
- .442 Freedom of conscience and religion
- .443 Freedom of speech
- .445 Freedom of press
- .46 Right of private property
- .47 Right of assembly and association
- .48 Right of petition
- .49 Limitation and suspension of individual rights and guarantees
- .5 Political rights**  
Including representation  
*For suffrage, see 324*
- .6 Citizenship**
- [.61] Laws  
Class in 340
- .62 Naturalization
- .63 Nationality
- .631 Aliens  
Including rights and protection [*formerly* 323.67]
- .632 Statelessness [*formerly* 323.64]

## *Political science*

- 323.634      Dual nationality
- .636      Marriage and nationality
- .64      Expatriation and repatriation
  - Class statelessness [*formerly* 323.64] in 323.632
- .65      Duties and obligations of citizens
- .67      Passports and visas
  - Class rights and protection of aliens [*formerly* 323.67] in 323.631
- 324      Suffrage**
  - .09      Historical and geographical treatment
    - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world in 324.4–324.9
  - .1      Qualifications for voting
  - .2      Elections
    - .202 1      Election returns
      - Add area notations 1–9 to 324.202 1
  - .21      Electoral systems
  - .22      Basis of representation
    - For representation in legislative bodies, see 328.334*
  - .23      Nomination systems
    - For nominations of party candidates, see 329.022*
  - .24      Voting
    - Including voting machines [*formerly* 324.25]
  - .241      Voter registration
  - .242      Voting procedures
  - .25      Ballot systems
    - Class voting machines [*formerly* 324.25] in 324.24

## *Decimal Classification*

- 324.27      Corruption and irregularities in elections
- .271      Electoral frauds
- .273      Irregular contributions and expenditures  
            Class political contributions [*formerly* 324.273] in 329.025
- .277      Contested elections
- .3        Woman suffrage
- .4-.9    Treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world  
            Add area notations 4-9 to 324
- 325        International migration
- .09      Historical and geographical treatment  
            Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world  
            in 325.4-325.9
- .1        Immigration  
            Entrance into a country for the purpose of permanent residence  
            Class migration within a country [*formerly* 325.1] in 301.32
- .109     Historical and geographical treatment  
            Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern  
            world in 325.4-325.9
- .2        Emigration  
            Departure from a country for residence elsewhere
- .209     Historical and geographical treatment  
            Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
            325.23-325.29
- .21      Political refugees
- .22      Transfer of population
- .23-.29   Emigration from specific continents, countries, localities  
            Add area notations 3-9 to 325.2, e.g., emigration from Japan  
            325.252; then add 09 and add area notations 1-9 for place  
            entered, e.g., emigration from Japan to United States  
            325.252 097 3

## *Political science*

### **325.3 Colonization**

#### **.309 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class colonization in specific places of modern world in  
**325.4–325.9**, colonization by specific countries in  
**325.33–325.39**

#### **.31 Colonial administration and policies**

Class internal administration of specific colonies in **354**

#### **.33–.39 Colonization by specific countries**

Add area notations **3–9** to **325.3**, e.g., colonization by United Kingdom **325.342**; then add **09** and add area notations **1–9** for place colonized, e.g., colonization by United Kingdom in West Africa **325.342 096 6**

#### **.4–.9 International migration by continent, country, locality in modern world**

Migration to and colonization in specific places

Add area notations **4–9** to **325**

*For emigration from specific continents, countries, localities, see  
325.23–325.29; colonization by specific countries, 325.33–325.39*

### **326 Slavery and emancipation**

Class relation of state to slaves in **323.3**, sociology of slavery in  
**301.452 2** [*both formerly 326*]

#### **[.1] Slave trade**

Class in **380.144**

#### **[.92] Biography of slaves**

Class biographies of persons associated with a specific subject  
in standard subdivision **092**, of persons not so associated in **920**

### **327 International relations**

Affairs of the world political community

#### **.09 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class foreign policies of specific nations in **327.3–327.9**



## *Decimal Classification*

- 327.1 International politics**
  - Competition among states for power and influence
  - .11 Power politics
    - Processes of finding and using the power necessary to reach selected goals
  - .112 Balance of power system
  - .114 Spheres of influence
  - .116 Collective security
    - Class cooperation to promote peace and order in 341.1
  - .12 Espionage
  - .14 Conduct of propaganda and psychological warfare
  - .2 Diplomacy
    - Conduct of negotiations between governments
    - Class laws, rules, customs governing diplomatic conduct in 341.7
  - .3-9 Foreign policies of specific nations
    - Attitudes, courses of action, objectives adopted by the government of a state in its relations with other states and regions
    - Add area notations 3-9 to 327, e.g., foreign policy of United Kingdom 327.42; then, for foreign relations between two nations, add 0 and again add area notations 3-9, e.g., foreign relations between United Kingdom and France 327.420 44
    - Give priority in notation to the nation requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class foreign relations between United States and United Kingdom in 327.730 42. If the two nations require equal emphasis, give priority to the one coming first in the sequence of area notations
- 328 Legislation**
  - .1 Parliamentary rules and procedures [*formerly also 328.37*]
  - .2 Legislative function
  - .3 Legislative branch of government
    - Parliaments, congresses, assemblies
  - .309 Historical and geographical treatment
    - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world in 328.4-328.9

**SUMMARY**

<b>328.31</b>	<b>Upper house</b>
<b>.32</b>	<b>Lower house</b>
<b>.33</b>	<b>Membership</b>
<b>.34</b>	<b>Prerogatives, powers, privileges</b>
<b>.35</b>	<b>Sessions</b>
<b>.36</b>	<b>Internal organization and discipline</b>
<b>.37</b>	<b>Enactment of bills and resolutions</b>
<b>.39</b>	<b>Forms and types</b>

- 328.31–328.32 Specific houses  
*For specific elements, see 328.33–328.37*

328.31	Upper house
.32	Lower house

- 328.33–328.37 Specific elements

.33	Membership
	<i>For discipline of members, see 328.366</i>
.333	Compensation
.334	Representation
.334 5	Election districts
.334 52	Apportionment and reapportionment
.334 54	Redistricting
.334 55	Gerrymandering
.334 7	Proportional representation
.34	Prerogatives, powers, privileges
	Including impeachment
.341	Power over revenue and appropriations
.345	Legislative investigation
.346	Treaty-making powers
.347	Privileges of legislators
.348	Immunities of legislators
.35	Sessions

## *Decimal Classification*

- 328.36 Internal organization and discipline
  - .362 Officers and leaders
    - Selection, appointment
  - .365 Committees
    - Organization and operations
    - Class committee hearings and reports on a specific subject with the subject
  - .366 Discipline of members
  - .368 Congressional lobbying
  - .37 Enactment of bills and resolutions
    - Forms and procedures
    - Class parliamentary rules and procedures [*formerly 328.37*] in 328.1
  - 373 Bill drafting
  - 375 Passage of bills
  - 377 Resolutions
  - 378 Private bills
  - 39 Forms and types
    - Unicameral, bicameral

### **4-9 Legislative branch of government by continent, country, locality in modern world**

Add area notations 4-9 to 328, e.g., United Kingdom Parliament 328.42; then add further as follows, e.g., journals of United Kingdom Parliament 328.420 1

- 001-008 Standard subdivisions
  - 01 Journals
  - 02 Debates
  - 03 Abstracts
  - 04 Other documents
  - 05 Rules and procedures
    - Including legislative manuals [*formerly 08*]
  - 07 The legislative body
    - Divide like 328.3, e.g., compensation of members
    - 073 3
  - 08] Legislative manuals
    - Class in 05
  - 09 History

**329      Practical politics**

*For elections, see 324.2*

- .001-.005      Philosophy, miscellany, dictionaries, serial publications
- .006            Political organizations and institutions [*formerly 363*]
- .007-.009      Other standard subdivisions
- .01             Political propaganda
  - Class presidential campaign literature of specific political parties of United States [*formerly 329.01*] in 329.1-329.8
- .02             Political parties
  - Class specific parties in 329.1-329.9
- .021            Party organization
- .021 1          Political machines
- .021 2          Party leadership
- .021 3          Platforms and slogans
- .021 4          Party caucus
  - For nominations of party candidates by caucus, see 329.022 2*
- .022            Nominations of party candidates
- .022 1          By convention
- .022 2          By caucus
- .022 3          By direct primary
- .022 4          Boss dictation
- .023            Election campaigns
  - Class campaign literature in 329.01
- .024            Political patronage
- .025            Political contributions [*formerly 324.273*] and fund raising
- .03             Pressure and other interest groups
  - For congressional lobbying, see 328.368*
- .04             Political process
- .05             Study of public opinion
  - Content, origin, political influence

## *Decimal Classification*

### ► **329.1–329.9 Political parties of specific countries**

Divide as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to parties of a specific country, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., political parties of Peru **329.P** (preceding **329.1**); arrange specific parties and divide each as instructed under **329.9**

### ► **329.1–329.8 Specific political parties of United States**

Scope: presidential campaign literature [*formerly 329.01*]

If preferred, class in **329.9**

Add **0** to each subdivision identified by **\*** and divide like **329.01–329.02**, e.g., election campaigns of Democratic Party **329.302 3**

**329.1      \*Federalist Party**

**.2        \*Anti-Federalist Party**

**.3        \*Democratic Party**

**.4        \*Whig Party**

**.5        \*American (Know-Nothing) Party**

**.6        \*Republican Party**

**.8        Others**

**.81       \*Socialist Party**

**82       \*Communist Party**

**.9        Political parties of other countries**

(Optional: specific political parties of United States; prefer **329.1–329.8**)

Add area notations **3–9** to **329.9**

If desired, arrange specific parties of a specific country alphabetically, e.g., Labour Party of Great Britain **329.942 L2**, then add **0** and divide like **329.01–329.02**, e.g., Labour Party leadership **329.942 L20 212**

**\* Divide as instructed under 329.1–329.8**

## 330 Economics

The science that deals with production, distribution, consumption of wealth

*For commerce, see 380*

- .01 Philosophy and theory
    - Class general theories in 330.1
  - .02-.09 Other standard subdivisions
  - .1 General systems, principles, theories
  - .12 Systems of control
  - .122 Decentralized (Free-enterprise economy)
  - .124 Centralized (Planned economy)
  - .15 Integrated systems and schools
- 
- 330.151-330.156 Capitalist and free-enterprise
  - .151 Mercantilism
  - .152 Physiocracy
  - .153 Classicism and neoclassicism (Individualism)
  - .154 Historical school
  - .155 Universalism
    - Romantic, institutional, ethical, social justice schools
  - .156 Keynesianism (The New Economics)
  - .159 Collectivist
    - (Optional; prefer 335)
    - Divide like 335, e.g., Marxian systems 330.159 4
  - .16 Miscellaneous general theories
    - For theories of property, see 330.17*
  - .161 Of wealth
  - .162 Of value
    - .162 2 Marginal utility theory
  - .163 Of income
  - .17 Theories of property

## *Decimal Classification*

### **330.9 Economic situation and conditions**

#### **.901-.904 Historical periods**

Divide like standard subdivisions 090 1 - 090 4, e.g.,  
economic situation in 1960-1970 330.904 6

#### **.91-.99 Geographical treatment (Economic geography)**

If preferred, class in 910.1

Add area notations 1-9 to 330.9

### **331-333 Specific factors of production**

*For entrepreneurship, see 338.7*

### **331 Labor**

Utilization of manpower resources for production

#### **.01 Philosophy and theory**

#### **.011 Right to work**

#### **.012 Satisfaction of labor**

Class classification of labor in 331.7

#### **.013 Freedom, dignity, value of labor**

### **SUMMARY**

#### **331.1 Industrial relations**

#### **.2 Wages**

#### **.3-.6 Special classes of workers**

#### **.3 Specific age groups**

#### **.4 Women**

#### **.5 Substandard wage earners**

#### **.6 Other groups**

#### **.7 Labor by occupation**

#### **.8 Other topics**

#### **.1 Industrial relations**

Relations between labor and management

*For industrial relations of special classes of workers, see  
331.3-331.6; disputes between labor and management, 331.89*

#### **.109] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 331.19

## SUMMARY

- 331.11 Labor force
- .12 Labor stability and instability
- .13 Unemployment and reemployment
- .15 Conciliation practices
- .18 Industrial relations in specific industries
- .19 Historical and geographical treatment of industrial relations

### 331.11--331.15 Specific elements

- 331.11 Labor force
- .112 Labor market
  - For labor stability and instability, see 331.12*
- .113 Discrimination in employment
  - Consideration of workers on basis other than job qualifications
- .114 Job qualifications of workers
  - Physical and mental capacity, education, experience
- .115 Obtaining employment [*formerly also 371.425*]
- .116 Employment bargaining
  - Collective negotiation and settlement of terms of employment between employers and workers
  - For conciliation practices, see 331.15*
- .116 8 In specific industries
- .116 81 Service and professional
  - Divide like 001-999, e.g., telephone industry
  - 331.116 813 846
- .116 82-.116 89 Other
  - Extractive, manufacturing, construction
  - Divide like 620-690, e.g., clothing industry
  - 331.116 887
- .12 Labor stability and instability
  - For unemployment and reemployment, see 331.13*
- .122 Employment security and job tenure



## *Decimal Classification*

- 331.126      Turnover  
                 Causes, costs, incidence
- .127          Mobility  
                 Transfer from one region to another
- .13          Unemployment and reemployment
- .134          Cancellation of labor contracts
- .137          Unemployment  
                 Cyclical, seasonal, partial, technological
- [.137 09]      Historical and geographical treatment  
                 Do not use; class in 331.137 9
- 
- 331.137 2 – 331.137 7 Specific elements
- .137 2          Causes  
                 *For cancellation of labor contracts, see 331.134*
- .137 3          Effects
- .137 4          Distribution and incidence
- .137 7          Prevention and relief  
                 *For guaranteed-wage plans, see 331.23*
- .137 8          In specific occupations  
                 *For specific elements, see 331.137 2 – 331.137 7*
- .137 81          Service and professional  
                 Divide like 001–999, e.g., commercial artists  
                 331.137 817 416
- .137 82–.137 89      Other  
                 Extractive, manufacturing, construction  
                 Divide like 620–690, e.g., automobile workers  
                 331.137 829 2
- .137 9          Historical and geographical treatment  
                 Add area notations 1–9 to 331.137 9
- .138          Reemployment

## *Economics*

- 331.15      Conciliation practices  
              Settlement of labor-management differences thru discussions,  
              deliberations, recommendations of third party
- .152      Use of labor-management committees  
              Industrial democracy
- .154      Mediation  
              Non-compulsory recommendations by third party
- .155      Arbitration  
              Compulsory decisions by third party
- [.16]      Labor courts  
              Class in 347.9
- .18      Industrial relations in specific industries  
              *For specific elements, see 331.11–331.15*
- .181      Service and professional  
              Divide like 001–999, e.g., railroad transportation industry  
              331.181 385
- .182–.189      Other  
              Extractive, manufacturing, construction  
              Divide like 620–690, e.g., chemical industries 331.186
- .19      Historical and geographical treatment of industrial  
              relations  
              Add area notations 1–9 to 331.19
- .2      Wages  
              Compensation in money, goods, services, computed on hourly,  
              weekly, monthly, annual, piece basis  
              Including compensation of Christian clergymen [*formerly also*  
              254.8], of teachers [*formerly 371.16*], of physicians [*formerly also*  
              614.25], fees and commissions in building contracting [*formerly*  
              also 692.8]  
              *For wages of special classes of workers, see 331.3–331.6*

## *Decimal Classification*

- 331.201      Philosophy and theory  
                Class theories in 331.21
- [.209]      Historical and geographical treatment  
                Do not use; class in 331.29
- 331.21–331.25 Specific elements
- .21          Principles
- .215        Fixing rates  
                Mininums, maximums, incentives, differentials; relation of  
                rates to supply and demand, to bargaining power, to  
                production, to consumption and cost of living (adequacy)
- .218        Plurality of wages  
                Thru plurality of employment of one person, of members of  
                one family unit
- 331.22–331.23 Wage contracts
- .22          Wage scales
- .23          Guaranteed-wage plans
- .25          Fringe benefits
- .252        Pension systems  
                Including teachers' pensions [*formerly* 371.17]
- .255        Other  
                Health and welfare programs, paid vacations and sick leave,  
                life insurance
- [.26]      Laws  
                Class in 340
- .28          Wages in specific occupations  
                *For specific elements, see 331.21–331.25*
- .281        Service and professional  
                Divide like 001–999, e.g., wages of domestic workers  
                [*formerly* 331.284 7] 331.281 647

## *Economics*

### 331.282-.289      Other

Extractive, manufacturing, construction

Divide like 620-690, e.g., wages in building trades 331.289

Class wages of domestic workers [*formerly* 331.284 7] in  
331.281 647

### .29      Historical and geographical treatment of wages

Add area notations 1-9 to 331.29



---

### 331.3-331.6 Special classes of workers

Industrial relations, wages, work periods, training and rehabilitation programs, organizations, disputes, specific occupations

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., aged Negro women 331.398

Specific age groups

Women

Substandard wage earners

Other groups

### .3      Specific age groups



---

### 331.31-331.34 Young people

*For young people in specific occupations, see 331.38*

### .31      Children

Thru age thirteen

### .34      Youth

Ages fourteen to twenty

### .38      Young people in specific occupations

Children and youth

### .381      Service and professional

Divide like 001-999, e.g., theatrical people 331.381 792

### .382-.389      Other

Extractive, manufacturing, construction

Divide like 620-690, e.g., textile workers 331.387 7

## Decimal Classification

---

- 331.39      Other age groups
- .394      Middle aged
- .398      Aged
- .398 8      In specific occupations
- .398 81      Service and professional
- Divide like 001-999, e.g., librarians 331.398 810 2
- .398 82-.398 89      Other
- Extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Divide like 620-690, e.g., agricultural workers 331.398 83
- .4      Women**
- 
- 331.42-331.43 Specific elements
- .42      Wages
- .43      Married women
- .48      In specific occupations
- For specific elements, see 331.42-331.43
- .481      Service and professional
- Divide like 001-999, e.g., research workers 331.481 001 4
- .482-.489      Other
- Extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Divide like 620-690, e.g., pulp and paper workers 331.487 6
- .5      Substandard wage earners**
- Scope: competition between substandard wage labor and other labor
- .51      Convicts
- .54      Contract workers
- .55      Apprentices [*formerly* 331.86]
- .57      Drafted workers
- Emergency labor in war and peace

- 331.58      Slaves, political and war prisoners  
           .582      Slaves  
           .584      Political and war prisoners  
           .59      Workers suffering physical and mental handicaps  
           .6      **Other groups**  
           .62      Immigrants
- Add area notations 1-9 for place of origin to 331.62, e.g., immigrant workers from China 331.625 1; then add 0 and add area notations 1-9 for place where located, e.g., immigrant workers from China in California 331.625 107 94
- For seasonal workers, see 331.66-331.67*

- .63      Native-born nonindigenous ethnic groups
- Including Jews [*formerly* 331.68]
- Divide like 420-490, e.g., Negroes 331.639 6; then add 0 and add area notations 1-9 for place where located, e.g., Negro workers in United States 331.639 607 3
- For seasonal workers, see 331.66-331.67*

---

▶                      331.66-331.67 Seasonal workers

- .66      Sharecroppers
- .67      Casual-migratory workers
- [.68]      Jews
- Class in 331.63
- .69      Indigenous ethnic groups
- Divide like 420-490, e.g., North American Indians 331.699 7
- For seasonal workers, see 331.66-331.67*
- .7      **Labor by occupation**
- Use 331.700 1 - 331.700 9 for standard subdivisions
- For a specific element of labor, see the subject, e.g., wages 331.2*
- .702      Choice of vocation [*formerly* 371.425]
- .71      The professions
- For specific professional occupations, see 331.761*

## *Decimal Classification*

- 331.76      Specific occupations  
              (Optional: specific subjects as professions or occupations;  
              prefer standard subdivision 023)
- .761        Service and professional  
              Divide like 001-999, e.g., photography 331.761 77
- .762-.769    Other  
              Extractive, manufacturing, construction  
              Divide like 620-690, e.g., food processing 331.766 4
- .79        Specific groups of occupations  
              For the professions, see 331.71
- .794        Skilled crafts
- .795        Public service  
              Elected and appointed civil servants
- .798        Unskilled work
- .8        Other topics  
              Class these topics in relation to special classes of workers in  
              331.3-331.6

## SUMMARY

- 331.81      Occurrence and duration of work periods  
              .86      Training and rehabilitation programs  
              .88      Labor organizations (Labor unions)  
              .89      Disputes between labor and management
- .81        Occurrence and duration of work periods  
              Length of day and week, rest periods, shift systems, night work,  
              overtime, leaves of absence
- [.810 9]      Historical and geographical treatment  
              Do not use; class in 331.819
- .818        In specific occupations
- .818 1      Service and professional  
              Divide like 001-999, e.g., nursing 331.818 161 073

## *Economics*

- 331.818 2-.818 9      Other  
                            Extractive, manufacturing, construction  
                            Divide like 620-690, e.g., coal mining 331.818 223 3
- .819                      Historical and geographical treatment  
                            Add area notations 1-9 to 331.819
- [.82]                    Industrial hygiene  
                            Class in 613.62
- [.823]                  Accidents in industry  
                            Class in 614.85
- [.83]                    Welfare services to laboring classes  
                            Class in 362.85
- [.833]                  Housing  
                            Class in 301.54
- [.85]                    Workers' supplementary education  
                            Class in 374
- .86                      Training and rehabilitation programs  
                            Class apprentices [*formerly* 331.86] in 331.55
- .861                    Apprenticeship
- .863                    Other on-the-job and in-service training
- .868                    Rehabilitation
- .88                      Labor organizations (Labor unions)  
                            Use 331.880 01 - 331.880 08 for standard subdivisions
- [.880 8]                Union racketeering and gangsterism  
                            Class in 364.143
- .880 9                  Historical and geographical treatment
- .880 91                 International unions
- .880 93-.880 99      Treatment by continent, country, locality



## Decimal Classification

---

- 331.881 In specific occupations
- .881 1 Service and professional
- Divide like 001-999, e.g., teachers' unions  
331.881 137 11
- .881 2-.881 9 Other
- Extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Divide like 620-690, e.g., garmentworkers' unions  
331.881 87

---

► 331.883-331.886 Specific kinds

*For unions in specific occupations, see 331.881*

- .883 Company unions
- .886 Revolutionary unions
- .889 Open, union, closed shop
- .89 Disputes between labor and management

---

► 331.892-331.893 Retaliatory measures by labor

.892 Strikes (Walkouts)

[.892 09] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 331.892 9

---

► 331.892 2 - 331.892 4 Kinds

*For strikes in specific occupations, see 331.892 8*

- .892 2 Organized
- .892 3 Sympathetic
- .892 4 Outlaw
- .892 7 Picketing
- .892 8 In specific occupations
- .892 81 Service and professional
- Divide like 001-999, e.g., musicians' strikes  
331.892 817 8

## *Economics*

- 331.892 82-.892 89      Other  
                                    Extractive, manufacturing, construction  
                                    Divide like 620-690, e.g., strikes of rubber workers  
                                    331.892 878
- .892 9                      Historical and geographical treatment  
                                    Add area notations 1-9 to 331.892 9
- .893                      Other  
                                    Sabotage, boycotts, sit-down strikes, injunctions, political  
                                    action
- .894                      Retaliatory measures by management  
                                    Lockouts, strikebreaking, blacklisting, whitelisting,  
                                    injunctions, political action
- .898                      Government intervention

## **332      Lucrative capital**

Former heading: Financial economics

Theory, formation, manipulation, utilization, exchange of money,  
deposits, credits, evidences of ownership

*For public finance, see 336, cooperative systems, 334*

- .024                      Personal finance  
                                    Including thrift
- .06                      Organizations  
                                    Class financial institutions in 332.1-332.3

## **SUMMARY**

- 332.1      Banks and banking  
      .2      Savings banks and banking  
      .3      Credit and loan institutions and their functions  
      .4      Money  
      .5      Noncommodity money and other mediums of  
                    exchange  
      .6      Investment finance  
      .7      Credit  
      .8      Interest and discount  
      .9      Counterfeiting, forgery, alteration

## *Decimal Classification*

### **332.1–332.3 Financial institutions and their functions**

*For clearing houses, see 332.78*

#### **332.1 Banks and banking**

332.11–332.15 Specific kinds of banks and their functions

##### **.11 Central**

Including banks of issue, implementation of national monetary policies

##### **.12 Commercial (Deposit)**

*For savings banks and banking, see 332.2*

##### **.13 Private (Unincorporated)**

##### **[.14] Trust services**

Class in 332.178

##### **.15 International**

##### **.152 For monetary stabilization and balance of payments**

Including International Monetary Fund [*formerly 332.43*]

##### **.153 For development of resources and production**

Including International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (World Bank), International Finance Corporation, International Development Association

##### **.154 For promotion of trade**

##### **.155 For international settlements**

Including Bank for International Settlements

##### **.16 Multiple banking**

Branch and chain banking, syndicates, mergers

##### **.17 Bank units**

##### **.172 Departmentalization**

## *Economics*



### 332.175–332.178 Functions and services

Class functions and services characteristic of specific kinds of banks in 332.11–332.15, 332.2

332.175

#### General

Deposits, reserves, loans, investments

.178

#### Special

Including trust services [*formerly* 332.14], safe-deposit services [*formerly* 332.27]

.2

#### Savings banks and banking

Mutual and stock

.22

Postal savings banks

.24

Savings departments of commercial banks

[.27]

Safe-deposit services

Class in 332.178

.3

#### Credit and loan institutions and their functions

.31

Agricultural institutions

Including land banks

.32

Building and loan associations

.34

Pawnshops

.35

Personal loan and sales finance institutions

### 332.4–332.8 Forms of lucrative capital

Instruments and functions

.4

#### Money

*For noncommodity money, see 332.5*

.401

#### Theories

Including quantity theory, circulation and velocity theory, equation of exchange theory

### *Decimal Classification*

- [332.409] Historical and geographical treatment  
Do not use; class in 332.49
- .41 As a medium of exchange (Legal tender)
- .413 Value fluctuations  
Relationship of monetary values and prices
- .414 Volume fluctuations  
Including deflation, inflation
- .42 As a standard of value  
Scope: international standards [*formerly* 332.43], nonmetallic standards [*formerly* 332.56]
- 332.422–332.425 Commodity standards
- .422 Monometallism (Single standard)  
Gold coin and bullion
- .423 Bimetallism (Double standard)  
Gold and silver coins and bullion  
Class symmetallism [*formerly* 332.423] in 332.424
- .424 Symmetallism [*formerly* 332.423]  
Combination of metals
- .425 Composite commodity money  
Staple commodities in predetermined proportions
- 332.427–332.428 Noncommodity standards
- .427 Free (Inconvertible)  
Foreign exchange relatively unrestricted
- .428 Controlled  
Foreign exchange strictly regulated
- [.43] International agreements  
Class International Monetary Fund in 332.152, international standards in 332.42

## *Economics*

- 332.45 Foreign exchange  
International monetary systems
- .46 Minting policies and practices  
Including token money [*formerly* 332.54]
- .49 Historical and geographical treatment  
Add area notations 1-9 to 332.49
- .5 Noncommodity money and other mediums of exchange  
Scope: credit (fiduciary) currency
- .52 Fiat money
- .53 Paper money
- .55 Barter instruments  
Nonregulated commodities
- .56 Managed currency and social credit money  
Class nonmetallic standards [*formerly* 332.56] in 332.42
- .6 Investment finance

## SUMMARY

- 332.61 Securities exchanges
- .62 Brokerage firms
- .63 Securities (Evidences of ownership)
- .64 Exchange of securities (Trading procedures)
- .65 International exchange of securities
- .66 Investment banking
- .67 Investment and investments
- .68 Lotteries
- .61 Securities exchanges  
Stock and commodity
- .62 Brokerage firms
- .63 Securities (Evidences of ownership)  
Description, evaluation (price yield, prospects for growth)
- .632 Specific forms
- .632 2 Stocks
- .632 23 Common
- .632 25 Preferred

## *Decimal Classification*

- 332.632 3 Bonds
- .632 4 Mortgages
- .632 7 Mutual funds
- .632 8 Commodities
- .633 Specific classes
- .633 2 Public
- .633 3 Private
- .64 Exchange of securities (Trading procedures)
- Class regulation [*formerly 332.64*] in 350.825
- For international exchange of securities, see 332.65*
- .642 On organized exchanges
- .643 Over the counter
- .644 Commodity exchange transactions
- .645 Speculation
- .65 International exchange of securities
- .66 Investment banking
- Long-term financing by banks and syndicates thru public issue, underwriting, purchase and resale
- .67 Investment and investments
- .670 28 Apparatus and equipment
- Class techniques in 332.678
- .672 Domestic
- .673 Foreign
- .673 09 Historical and geographical treatment
- Class foreign investments by specific countries in 332.673 3 – 332.673 9
- .673 3–.673 9 By specific countries
- Add area notations 3–9 to 332.673, e.g., British foreign investments 332.673 42; then add 0 and add area notations 1–9 for place of investment, e.g., British foreign investments in Brazil 332.673 420 81
- .678 Investment practices and techniques
- Including forecasting, formula plans

## *Economics*

332.68      Lotteries

            Including lists of drawings

.7      **Credit**

►                      332.71–332.74 Specific kinds

.71      Agricultural

            Loans for promoting agricultural operations

.72      Real-estate

            Including mortgage loans

.74      Other

.742      Commercial, mercantile, industrial

.743      Personal loans

            Including chattel mortgages, consumer credit

.75      Credit collapse and restrictions

.754      Insolvency and bankruptcy

                    332.76–332.77 Credit instruments

.76      Deposit transfer instruments

            Checks and money orders

.77      Other

            Commercial paper, promissory notes, drafts, letters of credit

.78      Clearinghouses

.8      **Interest and discount**

            Class interest and discount tables in 511.802 12

.82      Legal interest

.83      Usury

.84      Discount and rediscount

.9      **Counterfeiting, forgery, alteration**

            Of currency, securities, credit instruments



## Decimal Classification

### 333 Land (Natural resources)

.001 Philosophy and theory

Class theories in 333.01

.002-.009 Other standard subdivisions

.01 Theories

.012 Economic rent [*formerly* 333.5]

Ricardo's theory of payment for use of land in terms of its relative productivity

#### SUMMARY

333.1 Public land (Public domain)

.2 Common land

.3 Private land

.4 Absentee ownership

.5 Rental

.6 Urban rent

.7 Surface resources and general conservation policies

.8 Subsurface (Mineral) resources

.9 Other natural resources

---

#### 333.1-333.6 Specific forms of control

*For control of specific types of natural resources, see 333.7-333.9*

.1 Public land (Public domain)

Land over which government exercises sole right of control

.13 Expropriation

.14 Nationalization

.16 Free disposal (Land grants)

.2 Common land

Land over which each member of an association exercises equal rights of control

.3 Private land

Land over which single owner exercises right of control

.32 Types (Land tenure)

*For absentee ownership, see 333.4*

.322 Feudal tenure

## *Economics*

- 333.323 Individual ownership (Alodium)
- .324 Corporation ownership
- .33 Real estate
  - Class management of real-estate business [*formerly* 333.33] in 658
  - For subdivision and development, see* 333.38
- 333.332–333.334 Specific kinds of transactions
  - For specific types of real estate, see* 333.335–333.339
- .332 Valuation
  - Appraisal, effect of specific factors, price determination
- .333 Sale and transfer
- .334 Rental
- 333.335–333.339 Specific types of real estate
  - Appraisal, sale, transfer, rental
- 335 Agricultural
- 336 Industrial
- 337 Urban
- 339 Other
- 34] Titles and deeds
  - Class law in 340, public administration in 350.825
- 35] Inheritance
  - Class in 340
- 38 Subdivision and development
- 4 Absentee ownership
- 5 Rent
  - Class economic rent [*formerly* 333.5] in 333.012
  - For urban rent, see* 333.6
- .53 Tenancy
  - For relations between landlord and tenant, see* 333.54

## *Decimal Classification*

- 333.54      **Landlordism**  
              Including relations between landlord and tenant
- .55      **Agricultural rent**
- .6      **Urban rent**
- .62      **Ground rent**  
                    Rent of land for building and industrial development
- .63      **Building rent**
- 333.7–333.9 **Specific types of natural resources**  
                    Ownership, control, economic importance, settlement, utilization, conservation policies
- .7      **Surface resources and general conservation policies**
- .72      **General conservation policies**  
                    Class conservation policies of specific types of terrestrial resources in 333.73–333.92
- 333.73–333.78 **Surface land resources**
- .73      **Wastelands**  
                    Including arid and semiarid lands
- .74      **Pasture lands**
- .75      **Forest lands**  
                    Including forest policy [*formerly* 634.925], forest resources [*formerly* 634.927]
- .76      **Agricultural lands**  
                    For pasture lands, see 333.74; forest lands, 333.75
- .77      **Urban lands**
- .78      **Recreational lands**  
                    Parks, playgrounds, wildlife refuges
- .8      **Subsurface (Mineral) resources**

## *Economics*

### **333.9 Other natural resources**

#### **.91 Water and land adjoining it**

Use 333.910 01 – 333.910 09 for standard subdivisions

#### **.910 2 Surface water**

#### **.910 4 Ground (Subsurface) water**

#### **333.912–333.915 Water for specific uses**

#### **.912 For industrial and domestic use**

Including potable water

#### **.913 For irrigation**

#### **.914 For power**

#### **.915 For navigation**

#### **333.916–333.918 Specific kinds of water and land adjoining it**

*For water for specific uses, see 333.912–333.915*

#### **.916 Sea water**

#### **.917 Shorelands**

Including littoral and riparian rights

#### **.918 Submerged lands and tidelands**

#### **.92 Air**

#### **.94 Space**

---

## **► 334–335 Special methods of organization for production, distribution, consumption**

### **334 Cooperative systems**

Joint ownership and operation of economic enterprises and activities by voluntary groups for their own benefit

#### **.1 Building and housing**

#### **.2 Banking and credit**

Including credit unions

## *Decimal Classification*

### **334.5      Distribution ( Consumers' cooperatives )**

*For housing, see 334.1*

#### **.6            Production**

##### **.68           In specific industries**

##### **.681          Service and professional**

Divide like 001-999, e.g., cooperative medical services  
**334.681 61**

*For banking and credit, see 334.2; building and housing,  
334.1*

##### **.682-.689      Other**

Extractive, manufacturing, construction

Divide like 620-690, e.g., cooperative cattle production  
**334.683 62**

#### **.7            Benefit societies**

Friendly, mutual-aid, benevolent, provident

### **335          Collectivist systems and schools**

Integrated assertions, theories, aims of economic and  
politicoeconomic ideologies

If preferred, class in 330.159

Use 335.001-335.009 for standard subdivisions

*For political theories and ideologies of collectivism, see 320.53*

#### **.02          Utopian systems and schools**

Voluntary association

Class specific utopian systems in 335.1-335.3

#### **335.1-335.3 Utopian and humanitarian systems**

*For utopian and humanitarian socialist and anarchist com-  
munities, see 335.9*

#### **1            Of English origin**

##### **12          Utopian socialism**

Including Owenism

##### **14          Fabian socialism**

##### **15          Guild socialism**

## *Economics*

- 335.2 Of French origin**  
Including Fourierism (Phalansterianism) [*formerly 335.3*],  
Babouvism, Icarianism, Saint-Simonism
- .3 Of American origin**  
Class Fourierism (Phalansterianism) [*formerly 335.3*] in **335.2**
- .4 Marxian systems**
- .401 Philosophy and theory**  
Class basic concepts in **335.41**
- .41 Basic concepts**
- .411 Philosophic foundations**  
Dialectical materialism, historical materialism, Marx's materialism and theory of knowledge, theory of class struggle, labor theory of value
- .413 Aims**  
Dictatorship of the proletariat, world revolution, internationalism, classless society
- .42 Scientific socialism**  
Including First International, Second International, Vienna International
- .43 Revolutionary socialism (Communism)**  
*For communist international organizations, see 335.44*
- .432 Methods of propagation**
- .437 Comparative studies**  
Comparison with capitalism, cooperation, other forms of collectivism
- .438 Attitude toward and influence on other subjects**  
Divide like 001-999, e.g., attitude toward and influence on religion **335.438 2**
- .44 Communist international organizations**  
Including Third International (Comintern), Cominform

## *Decimal Classification*

- 335.5 State socialism and social democracy**  
Nationalization of key industries  
*For Fabian socialism, see 335.14*
- .6 Nationalist socialism**  
Including fascism, nazism, Falangism
- .7 Christian socialism**  
Including Catholic socialism  
*For Christian socialist and anarchist communities, see 335.9*
- .8 Other systems**
- .82 Syndicalism**
- .83 Anarchism**  
*For anarchist communities, see 335.9*
- .9 Utopian, humanitarian, Christian socialist and anarchist communities**  
Add area notations 3-9 to 335.9
- 336 Public finance**  
Financial transactions of governments and their units  
Scope: local government finance [*formerly 352.1*]  
Use 336.001-336.008 for standard subdivisions  
Class financial administration of governments in 350.71-350.72
- .02 Revenue**  
Add area notations 1-9 to 336.02  
Class specific forms of revenue in 336.1-336.2
- .09 Historical and geographical treatment**
- .091 Regions, areas, places, groups in general**
- .091 6 Associations of sovereign states [*formerly 341.11-341.18*]**
- .091 62 League of Nations**
- .091 63 United Nations**
- .091 68 Regional associations**

## *Economics*

- 336.093      **The ancient world**  
[.094-.099]      **Continents, countries, localities in modern world**  
Do not use; class in 336.4-336.9

### **336.1-336.3 Specific elements**

#### **336.1-336.2 Revenues**

Class comprehensive works in 336.02

- .1      Nontax (Commercial and voluntary)**  
*For fees, see 336.273; licenses, 336.274*
- .11      From rents and franchises
- .12      From sale of government property
- .15      From deposits, investments, loans
- .16      From gifts and fines
- .17      From lotteries
- .18      Inter- and intragovernmental revenues
- .182      From reparations and interest on war loans
- .185      From one government unit to another  
Grants from higher units, technical assistance funds
- .188      From international grants
- .19      From government services, industries, monopolies
- .2      Taxation (Compulsory revenues)**  
Scope: taxation of motor land vehicles [*formerly 629.213*]  
Use 336.200 1 - 336.200 9 for standard subdivisions  
Class tax administration [*formerly 336.2*] in 350.724

---

#### **336.202-336.204 Types of taxes by base**

- 202      **On wealth**
- 202 2      Property taxes
- 202 4      Death taxes
- 203      **On income**



## Decimal Classification

---

336.204	On activities
.204 2	Production
.204 3	Distribution
.204 4	Consumption
.204 8	Civic activities

### SUMMARY

336.21	Direct taxes
.22	Real property taxes
.23	Personal property taxes
.24	Income taxes
.25	Poll taxes
.26	Customs taxes (Customs duties)
.27	Other taxes
.29	General principles

---

### 336.21–336.27 Specific taxes and kinds of taxes

.21	Direct taxes
	Class a specific direct tax with the subject
.22	Real property taxes
	On real estate, land, buildings, permanent improvements
.23	Personal property taxes
	Tangible and intangible
	Including capital levies [ <i>formerly 336.25</i> ]
.24	Income taxes
	From wages, salaries, rents, investments
	<i>For estate, inheritance, gift taxes, see 336.276</i>
.242	Personal
.243	Corporation
	Including surplus and excess profits taxes
.25	Poll taxes
	Class capital levies [ <i>formerly 336.25</i> ] in 336.23
.26	Customs taxes (Customs duties)
.263	Export and transit taxes

## *Economics*

- 336.264      **Import taxes**  
              *For import tax schedules, see 336.265*
- .265          **Import tax schedules**  
              *For import taxes on specific commodities, see 336.266*
- .266          **Import taxes on specific commodities**  
              Divide like 001–999, e.g., taxes on paintings 336.266 75
- .27          **Other taxes**
- .271          **Indirect**  
              *For customs duties, see 336.26; taxes on specific commodities and services, 336.278*
- .271 1        **Excise, sumptuary, luxury**
- .271 3        **Transaction (Turnover)**
- .271 32       **Sales**
- .271 35       **Use**
- .272          **Stamp taxes and revenue stamps**
- .273          **Fees**  
              *For government services conferring special benefits*
- .274          **Licenses**  
              *To engage in specific acts, businesses, professions*
- .276          **Estate, inheritance, gift taxes**
- .278          **Taxes on specific commodities and services**  
              Divide like 001–999, e.g., taxes on theater tickets  
              336.278 792  
              Class a specific kind of taxes on a specific commodity with  
              the subject, e.g., import taxes 336.266
- .29          **General principles**  
              Class types of taxes by base in 336.202–336.204, specific taxes  
              and kinds of taxes in 336.21–336.27
- .293          **Rates**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 336.294            Incidence
    - Scope: distribution, exemptions, double taxation
  - .294 2            On persons
  - .294 3            On corporations and business firms
  - .294 4            On other organizations
  - .295            Economic effects
  - .3            Credit, borrowing, expenditure
- 336.31–336.36 Credit and borrowing
- 336.31–336.32 Public securities
- Class public securities as investments in 332.633 2
- .31            Funded debts
    - Interest-bearing long-term government securities and bonds
    - Including credit bonds
  - .32            Unfunded debts (Floating debts)
    - Short-term securities usually held in treasury bills
  - .34            Public borrowing and public debt
    - Theory, character, bases, burden, economic effect
  - .343            By sources and borrowing units
    - .343 1            Local
    - .343 2            State and provincial
    - .343 3            National
      - Borrowing from own citizens
    - .343 5            International
  - .344            Flotation of loans
    - Compulsory and voluntary loans, subscriptions, allotments, marketability
  - .346            Limitation of public indebtedness
  - .36            Liquidation of public debts
  - .363            Repayment and redemption

## *Economics*

- 336.368      **Repudiation and abrogation**  
                 Including public insolvency
- .39      **Expenditure**  
                 Character, principles, classification, justification
- .4-.9      **Public finance by continent, country, locality in modern world**  
                 Add area notations 4-9 to 336
- [337]      **Tariff**  
                 Class comprehensive works in 382, government regulation and control of international trade in 350.827
- 338      **Production**  
                 Creation of wealth as form utility thru extraction and manufacture, as place utility thru transportation, as time utility thru storage, as ownership (possession) utility thru exchange, as personal service utility  
                 Scope: specific firms and enterprises  
                 Class marketing in 380.1, public administration aspects of government control and regulation of production in 350.82 [*both formerly 338*]
- .001      **Philosophy and theory**  
                 Class general principles and theories in 338.01
- .002      **Miscellany**
- .002 5      **Directories of producers**
- .003-.008      **Other standard subdivisions**
- .01      **General principles and theories**
- [.010 9]      **Historical and geographical treatment**  
                 Do not use; class in 338.019
- .012      **Factors of production**  
                 Relative importance, interrelations of land, labor, capital, entrepreneurship  
                 *For specific factors, see 331-333*
- .013      **Costs of production**  
                 Class a specific cost with the subject

## *Decimal Classification*

- 338.016      **Laws of production**  
                Including supply and demand, diminishing returns, marginal utility, comparative advantage
- .018          **Methods**
- .018 2        **Diversification and specialization**
- .018 3        **Change**  
                Conversion from one kind of economy to another, e.g., agricultural to manufacturing, from production of one commodity or group of commodities to another
- .018 5        **Cooperation and competition**
- .018 6        **Control**
- .019          **Historical and geographical treatment of general principles and theories**  
                Add area notations 1-9 to 338.019
- .02          **Lists of commodities and services**
- .06          **Machines in production** [*formerly* 338.45]
- .064         **Automation**
- .09          **Historical and geographical treatment**  
                Industrial situation, existing and potential resources for production  
                Scope: industrial surveys, location of industries, productivity  
                Class a specific resource with the subject, e.g., water for power  
**333.914**

## **SUMMARY**

### **338.1-.3 Primary (Extractive) industries**

- .1          **Agricultural**
- .2          **Mineral**
- .3          **Other**
- .4          **Secondary industries**
- .5          **Prices and business cycles in relation to production**
- .6          **Systems**
- .7          **Organization and structure**
- .8          **Combinations**
- .9          **Production programs and policies**

## *Economics*

### **338.1–338.4 Specific kinds of industries**

Production of specific kinds of goods and services

*For systems and organization of production, see 338.6–338.8*

### **338.1–338.3 Primary (Extractive) industries**

Scope: machines in production [*formerly 338.45*]

#### **338.1 Agricultural**

#### ► **338.12–338.16 Specific elements**

##### **.12 Control**

Class collectivist farms [*formerly 338.12*] in **338.762–338.769**

##### **.13 Financial considerations**

Costs, valuation, prices

Including prices of specific products [*formerly 338.17*]

##### **.15 Maladjustments in production**

Surpluses and shortages

*For food supply, see 338.19*

##### **.16 Machines in production**

Scope: automation

Divide like **633–638**, e.g., machines in production of wheat  
**338.163 11**

##### **.17 Specific products**

Divide like **633–638**, e.g., rice **338.173 18**

Class prices of specific products [*formerly 338.17*] in **338.13**

*For specific elements, see 338.12–338.16*

##### **.19 Food supply [*formerly also 641.3*]**

Add area notations 1–9 to **338.19**

#### **.2 Mineral**

#### ► **338.22–338.26 Specific elements**

##### **.22–.25 Control, finance, maladjustments**

Including cost of irrigation water [*formerly also 631.75*]

Divide like **338.12–338.15**, e.g., shortages **338.25**

## Decimal Classification

---

- 338.26      **Machines in production**  
              Scope: automation  
              Divide like 553, e.g., machines in extraction of bituminous coal  
              338.262 4
- .27      **Specific products**  
              Divide like 553, e.g., water 338.277  
              *For specific elements, see 338.22–338.26*
- .3      **Other**  
  
              338.32–338.36 Specific elements
- .32–.35      **Control, finance, maladjustments**  
              Divide like 338.12–338.15, e.g., shortages 338.35
- .36      **Machines in production**  
              Including automation
- .37      **Specific products**  
              *For specific elements, see 338.32–338.36*
- .372      **Hunting and fishing products**  
              Divide like 592–599, e.g., sponges 338.372 34
- .4      **Secondary industries**  
  
              338.42–338.45 Specific elements  
              *For maladjustments in production, see 338.49*
- .42–.43      **Control and finance**  
              Divide like 338.12–338.13, e.g., control 338.42
- .45      **Machines in production**  
              Class comprehensive works in 338.06, machines in production  
              in primary industries in 338.1–338.3 [*both formerly 338.45*]
- .454      **Automation**  
              *For automation in specific industries, see 338.456*

## *Economics*

### 338.456 In specific industries

Scope: automation

#### .456 1 Service and professional

Divide like 001–999, e.g., machines in hairdressing  
338.456 164 672 4

#### .456 2–.456 9 Other

Manufacturing and construction

Divide like 620–690, e.g., machines in textile manufacture 338.456 77

### ► 338.46–338.47 Goods and services

*For specific elements, see 338.42–338.45*

#### .46 Professional services

*For specific services, see 338.47*

#### .47 Specific goods and services

Including medical economics [*formerly* 614.25], economics of pharmacy [*formerly* 615.406 5]

Divide like 001–999, e.g., textile manufacture 338.476 77

#### .49 Maladjustments in production [*formerly* 338.542]

Surpluses and shortages

### .5 Prices and business cycles in relation to production

*For specific kinds of goods and services, see 338.1–338.4*

#### .52 Prices

Wholesale and retail

### ► 338.522–338.526 Determination

#### 522 In competitive free markets

Prices based on costs, on supply and demand

#### .523 In monopolistic markets

Prices based on intra-industry agreements

Including price leadership



## *Decimal Classification*

- 338.526      **By outside control**  
                Class price control legislation [*formerly 338.526*] in 340
- .528          **Levels**  
                Statistics, index numbers, Fisher's ideal index, price movements
- .54          **Business cycles**
- .542          **Causes**  
                Including maladjustments in production  
                Class maladjustments in production of secondary industries [*formerly 338.542*] in 338.49
- .544          **Business forecasting**
- **338.6–338.8 Systems and organization of production**
- .6            **Systems**
- .63          **Cottage industries**  
                Household, family, domestic system: assigning major steps of manufacture for performance at home by family unit  
                Including specific cottage industries
- .64          **Small industries**  
                Handicrafts, skilled trades, modern guilds  
                Including specific small industries [*formerly 338.76*]
- .65          **Large industries**  
                Factory systems utilizing assembly-line and continuous methods  
                Including specific large industries [*formerly 338.76*]
- .7            **Organization and structure**  
                Scope: entrepreneurship  
                For organization and structure of combinations, see 338.8
- **338.72–338.74 Specific kinds of organization and structure**  
                For specific industries, see 338.76
- .72          **Individual proprietorships**

## *Economics*

- 338.73 Partnerships and unincorporated companies
- .74 Corporations
- .76 In specific industries  
Scope: individual proprietorships, partnerships, companies, corporations  
Class specific small industries in 338.64, specific large industries in 338.65 [*both formerly 338.76*]
- .761 Service and professional  
Divide like 001–999, e.g., law 338.761 34
- .762–.769 Other  
Extractive, manufacturing, construction  
Including collectivist farms [*formerly also 338.12*]  
Divide like 620–690, e.g., agriculture 338.763
- .8 Combinations  
Organization and structure for massive production and control of production
- 
- 338.82–338.86 Within one country
- .82 Monopoly and monopolies
- .826 In specific industries
- .826 1 Service and professional  
Divide like 001–999, e.g., in telephone communication 338.826 138 46
- .826 2–.826 9 Other  
Extractive, manufacturing, construction  
Divide like 620–690, e.g., in gem diamond mining 338.826 223 82
- .85 Trusts
- .86 Holding companies
- .88 International  
Divide like 338.82–338.86, e.g., international trusts 338.885

## *Decimal Classification*

### **338.9      Production programs and policies**

Scope: control, subsidies, grants by government; nationalization

Use 338.900 1 – 338.900 9 for standard subdivisions

*For specific kinds of industries, see 338.1–338.4*

#### **.902          Autarky (Self-sufficiency)**

#### **.903          Interdependence**

#### **.91          International**

Foreign economic policies, relations, assistance

Add area notations 3–9 to 338.91, e.g., British foreign economic policy 338.914 2; then, for foreign economic relations between two countries, add 0 and again add area notations 3–9, e.g., economic relations between Great Britain and France 338.914 204 4

Give priority in notation to the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class foreign economic relations between Great Britain and United States in 338.917 304 2. If the two countries require equal emphasis, give priority to the country coming first in the sequence of area notations

#### **.93–.99      National, state, provincial, local**

Add area notations 3–9 to 338.9

### **339      Distribution of capital goods and consumption of consumer goods**

Former heading: Income and wealth

*For special methods of organization for distribution and consumption, see 334–335*

#### **.2          Distribution and accounting of income and wealth**

Social and national accounting, economic budget

*For personal income, see 339.41; national income accounts, 339.3*

#### **.21          Functional distribution of income**

Rent, wages, interest, profits

#### **.23          Input-output accounts (Interindustry accounts)**

Accounts and analysis of goods and services provided by each industry for all other industries and consuming units

#### **.26          Flow-of-funds accounts**

## *Economics*

### **339.3 National income accounts**

Gross and net national product by expenditure or cost; valuation of income, wealth, capital

Add area notations 3–9 to 339.3

### **.4 Consumption and conservation of income and wealth**

#### **.41 Personal income**

#### **.42 Cost and standard of living**

#### **[.420 7] Consumer education**

Class in 640.73

#### **.43 Deferred consumption (Savings)**

#### **.46 Underconsumption**

Economic aspects of poverty, hoarding

*For deferred consumption, see 339.43*

#### **.47 Control of consumption**

Personal, social, government restrictions

Including rationing

#### **.48 Consumption of specific commodities**

Divide like 001–999, e.g., consumption of agricultural products  
339.486 3

#### **.49 Conservation of national resources**

Add area notations 1–9 to 339.49

*For conservation policies for natural resources, see  
333.7–333.9*

## 340 Law

Principles and regulations emanating from government and applicable to the people, in the form of legislation, custom, policies recognized and kept in force by judicial decision

The editors anticipate the preparation at a future date of a completely revised schedule 340, which will provide for all law, including law of specific subjects. Such a schedule will virtually eliminate the use of standard subdivision 026 except as an option. For the present, class in 340 without subdivision all branches of law not specifically provided for in subordinate numbers

Class here the following topics formerly provided for as indicated:

Library laws	[021.89]
Press law	[070.13]
Prohibition	[178.5]
Laws on Sunday observance	[263.8]
Laws on citizenship	[323.61]
Laws on wages	[331.26]
Law of real estate titles and deeds	[333.34]
Inheritance of real estate	[333.35]
Price control legislation	[338.526]
Administrative law	[351.94-351.95]
Correctional courts	[364.5]
Insurance law	[368]
School laws and regulations	[379.14]
Legal status of women	[396.2]
Laws, regulations, legal aspects of public health	[614]
Laws and regulations on engineering	[620.07]
Laws on electrical installations	[621.300 7]
Laws and regulations on mining engineering	[622.007]
Rules of the road in seamanship	[623.88]
Law on motor land vehicles	[629.213]
Copyright	[655.6]
Building laws	[692.9]
Plumbing laws	[696.9]
Laws and regulations on area planning	[711.17]
Zoning laws and regulations	[711.51]

If preferred, class law of a specific subject in standard subdivision 026

.01-.09      Standard subdivisions

Class theories in 340.1

.1      Theories

Including law of nature (natural law)

## *Law*

### **340.3 Antiquities**

Torture, trial by ordeal, trial by duel, benefit of clergy, right of asylum

#### **.4 Trial by jury**

#### **.5 Comparative legislation**

#### **.6 Medical jurisprudence (Forensic medicine)**

#### **[.9] Anecdotes**

Class in 800

### **341 International law (Law of nations)**

Laws, procedures, institutions that govern public relations between sovereign states, private relations between their citizens, in peace and war; international cooperation and international responsibility of states

Including jurisdiction on land and sea, in air and space

#### **SUMMARY**

##### **341.1 Cooperation to promote peace and order**

###### **.2 Treaties**

###### **.3 Law of war**

###### **.4 Criminal law**

###### **.5 Special topics**

###### **.6 Pacific settlement of disputes**

###### **.7 Diplomacy**

###### **.8 Consular systems**

#### **.1 Cooperation to promote peace and order**

*For pacific settlement of disputes, see 341.6*

#### **[.106] Organizations**

Do not use; class in 341.11–341.18

#### **341.11–341.18 Associations of sovereign states**

Class comprehensive works in 341.11

Class public finance of associations of sovereign states [*formerly 341.11–341.18*] in 336.091 6

#### **.11 Comprehensive works**

Class general international organizations [*formerly 341.11*] in 060

*For specific associations, see 341.12–341.18*

## *Decimal Classification*



### **341.12–341.18 Specific associations**

Class divisions dealing with a specific subject with the subject

#### **341.12 League of Nations**

Divide like **341.13**, e.g., League of Nations charter **341.122**

#### **.13 United Nations**

##### **.132 Charter**

##### **.133 General Assembly and general committees**

##### **.135 Security Council and its committees**

##### **.137 Secretariat**

Executive office, departments, personnel

##### **.139 Relationship to specific countries and regions**

Add area notations 1–9 to **341.139**

#### **.18 Regional associations**

Associations of states of specific regions, associations to promote peace and order in specific regions

Add area notations 1–9 for specific regions to **341.18**, e.g., Organization of American States **341.181 812**

#### **.2 Treaties**

Scope: process of treaty making, texts of treaties

Add area notations 3–9 to **341.2**, e.g., treaties of Great Britain **341.242**; then, for treaties between two nations, add 0 and again add area notations 3–9, e.g., treaties between Great Britain and France **341.242 044**

Give priority in notation to the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class treaties between Great Britain and United States in **341.273 042**. If the two countries require equal emphasis, give priority to the country coming first in the sequence of area notations

**341.3 Law of war**

**341.31–341.37 War between nations**

**341.31–341.35 General principles**

Scope: law of land warfare

*For law of sea warfare, see 341.36; of air warfare, 341.37;  
of use of space for belligerent purposes, 341.52*

**.31 Belligerency and belligerents**

Commencement, conduct, termination of war; reprisals, spies, atrocities, amnesty, blockade, invasion; rights of civilians, noncombatants, combatants

*For prisoners of war, see 341.33*

**.32 Occupation by military forces**

**.33 Prisoners**

Capture, internment, treatment, repatriation, exchange of prisoners of war; internment of belligerents by neutral nations

**.35 Neutrality and neutrals**

Including commerce of neutral nations, contraband of war, right of visit and search, armed neutrality, nonintervention

**.36 Law of sea warfare**

Including privateering, prizes of war, prize courts, letters of marque

**.37 Law of air warfare**

Including aerial attack on cultural objects, open cities

**.39 Civil war**

Relation of other nations to nation undergoing civil war

**.4 Criminal law**

Including law of extraterritorial crime

**.41 Trials of war criminals**

**.49 Jurisdiction, procedure, extradition, immunity**

*For extraterritoriality, see 341.7*



## *Decimal Classification*

- 341.5 Special topics**
- .52 Law of outer space**  
Including sovereignty, economic rights, liability, use for commerce, for belligerent purposes
- .57 Commercial law [*formerly also 380*]**  
Commerce by land, sea (maritime law), air  
Including freedom of the seas, open seas, collisions at sea, shipwreck  
*For law of war, see 341.3; law of use of outer space for commerce, 341.52*
- .59 Private international law**  
Conflicts of laws of different countries affecting private interests applicable to persons  
Including regulation of jurisdictions
- .6 Pacific settlement of disputes**  
Negotiation, good offices, conciliation and commissions of inquiry, outlawry of war
- .63 Arbitration and mediation**  
Including judicial settlement, courts of international arbitration
- .65 Compulsive measures short of war**  
Sanctions, pacific blockade, embargo, economic boycott, intervention, international police
- .67 Reduction, limitation, control of armaments**  
Scope: disarmament, demilitarization
- .672 Nuclear weapons**
- .674 Gas weapons**
- .675 Biological weapons**
- .7 Diplomacy**  
Laws, rules, customs governing conduct of official relations between governments  
Including capitulations, extraterritoriality, diplomatic privileges and immunities, protocol
- .8 Consular systems**

► **342–349 Municipal (Internal) law**

**342 Constitutional law**

Fundamental law of states

Use **342.001–342.007** for standard subdivisions

► **342.01–342.09 Comparative**

.01 Texts

.02 Conventions

.03 Systems, commentaries, cases, digests

.08 Collections and anthologies

.09 Historical treatment (Constitutional history)

Class geographical treatment in **342.1–342.9**

**.1–.9 Geographical treatment**

Add area notations 1–9 to **342**, e.g., constitutional law of France **342.44**; then add 0 and divide like **342.01–342.09**, e.g., constitutional history of France **342.440 9**

**343 Criminal law**

.09 Historical and geographical treatment

Add area notations 1–9 to **343.09**, e.g., criminal law of France **343.094 4**; then add further as follows, e.g., penal codes in France **343.094 401**

01 Penal codes

02 Reports

03 Procedure, trials, evidence

04 Handbooks and outlines

**343.1–343.2 General principles**

*For specific kinds of offenses, see **343.3–343.7***

**.1 Procedure, trials, evidence**

Including cross-examination, trial practice, instructions to juries, bail

[.109] **Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in **343.09**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **343.2 Punishments**

#### **.3-.7 Specific kinds of offenses**

Procedure, trials, evidence, punishments

Divide like 364.13-364.17, e.g., homicide 343.52

### **344 Martial law**

Military authority to carry on government functions in times of war or emergency

### **▶ 345-346 United States and British statutes and cases**

If preferred, class in 349.4-349.9

### **345 United States**

#### **.1 Session laws and statutes at large**

#### **.11 Federal government**

#### **.12 States**

Arrange alphabetically by name of state

#### **.2 Codes and revised statutes**

Divide like 345.1, e.g., Federal codes and revised statutes 345.21

#### **.3 Law digests**

Divide like 345.1, e.g., law digests of states 345.32

#### **.4 Reports**

Including Supreme Court reports, Attorney General's opinions

#### **.41 Federal circuit and district courts**

#### **.415 Regions and groups of states**

#### **.42 Specific states**

Arrange alphabetically by name of state

#### **.5 Digests of cases**

Divide like 345.1, e.g., digests of cases of states 345.52

**346 British**

United Kingdom and all parts of Commonwealth

Divide like 345, e.g., revised statutes 346.2

**347 Private law and judicial system**

Including common law

Use 347.001–347.009 for standard subdivisions

\*

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of private law



---

**347.1–347.8 Private law**

.1 Persons

.2 Real property

.3 Personal property

.4 Contract and quasi contract

.42 Sale

.5 Tort, negligence, damage

.6 Domestic relations and succession

.65 Succession (Probate law)

.7 Commercial law [*formerly also 380*]

Including agency law

.75 Maritime law

.8 Equity (Chancery)

Including courts of equity and chancery

.9 Judicial system

Scope: courts of limited jurisdiction, e.g., labor courts [*formerly 331.16*]

Class criminal system in 343, administrative system in 340

**347.91–347.96 Procedure, trials, rules**

*For procedure, trials, rules of specific courts and court systems, see 347.99*

.91 Trials

Including cross-examination, trial practice, instructions to juries, bail

### Decimal Classification

- 347.92 Pleading**  
Including briefs, arguments, declarations
- .93 **Forms**
- .94 **Evidence**  
Physical (circumstantial) evidence; evidence of witnesses through testimony, affidavits, depositions
- .95 **Remedies**  
Civil and judicial remedies, appellate procedure
- .96 **Local and auxiliary legal officers**  
Including justices of the peace, sheriffs, notaries public
- 
- 347.97-347.99 Courts**
- For courts of equity and chancery, see 347.8*
- .97 **Organization**  
Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 347.99
- .972 **Courts and court systems of national governments**
- .973 **Courts and court systems of state and provincial governments**
- .974 **Courts and court systems of local governments**
- .98 **Jurisdiction**  
Including domestic conflicts of laws  
Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 347.99
- .99 **Historical and geographical treatment**  
Organization, jurisdiction, history, procedure, trials, rules  
Scope: specific courts and court systems  
Add area notations 1-9 to 347.99

**[348] Religious law**

**Class Christian church law in 262.9, ecclesiastic laws in other religions and in comparative religion in 290**

**349 Statutes and cases other than United States and British**

**.1 By regions, areas, places, groups in general**

Add area notation 1 to **349**, e.g., Islamic statutes and cases  
**349.176 7**

**349.3–349.9 By continent, country, locality**

**.3 Ancient**

**.31–.36 China, Egypt, Palestine, India, Mesopotamia, Europe**

Add area notations 31–36 to **349**

**.37 Rome (Roman law)**

**.371 Pre-Justinian**

Including the Twelve Tables

**.372 Justinian Code (Corpus juris civilis)**

*For Institutes and Code, see 349.374; Digest, 349.375; Novels, 349.376*

**.374 Institutes and Code**

**.374 2 Code (Codex)**

**.374 4 Institutes (Institutiones)**

**.375 Digest (Digesta, Pandectae)**

**.376 Novels (Novellae constitutiones)**

**.38–.39 Greece and other parts of ancient world**

Add area notations 38–39 to **349**

**.4–.9 Modern**

(Optional: United States and British statutes and cases; prefer **345–346**)

Add area notations **4–9** to **349**, e.g., statutes and cases of France **349.44**; then add **0** and divide like **345**, e.g., code of France **349.440 2**

## Decimal Classification

### 350 Public administration

Structure and operation of agencies charged with conduct of governmental affairs

Use 350.000 1 – 350.000 9 for standard subdivisions

*For legislative branch of government, see 328; judicial system, 347.9*

#### 350.001–350.009 The executive

.001 Bureaucracy

.002 Separation of powers

.003 Executive branch

Class component agencies in 350.004–350.005, 350.009

#### 350.003 2 – 350.003 6 The chief executive

.003 2 Powers, functions, privileges

.003 4 Term of office

.003 5 Executive messages, speeches, writings

.003 6 Impeachment, abdication, resignation

#### 350.003 7 – 350.003 9 Other aspects of executive branch

.003 7 Relationship to other branches of government

.003 72 To legislature

.003 73 To judiciary

.003 9 Relationship to fundamental instrument

Constitution, charter, basic law

.004 Departments and ministries

Class specific executive departments and ministries in 350.01–350.08

*For cabinet, see 350.005*

.005 Cabinet, cabinet systems, councils of state

.007 Conflict of interest

.009 Special commissions, corporations, agencies, quasi-administrative bodies

.009 1 Regulatory agencies

.009 12 Independent commissions and boards

## *Public administration*

- 350.009 13 Agencies headed by plural board
- .009 14 Agencies headed by single administrator
- .009 2 Government corporations

### 350.01–350.08 Specific executive departments and ministries

- .01 Foreign affairs
- .02 Finance
- .03 Home affairs (Interior)
- .05 Justice
- .06 Defense
- .08 Other

Divide like 350.82–350.87, e.g., administration of departments of labor 350.083

### .09 Intergovernmental administration

- .091 Between central governments of same level
- .092 Between central governments of different levels
- .093 Between central governments and local governments

Class central government control of local units in 352.002 2

## SUMMARY

- 350.1 Personnel management
- .2 Registers of personnel
- .3 Civil service examinations
- .4 Government career service
- .5 Pensions
- .6 Civil service system
- .7 Finance and public welfare
- .8 Other regulations and controls
- .9 Governmental accountability

---

### 350.1–350.4 Civil service

*For civil service system, see 350.6*

### .1 Personnel management

Procedures by which employees are hired, managed, replaced  
Use 350.100 1 – 350.100 9 for standard subdivisions

### .102 Supervision



**SUMMARY**

<b>350.12</b>	<b>Position and wage classification and payroll administration</b>
<b>.13</b>	<b>Recruitment and selection of personnel</b>
<b>.14</b>	<b>Evaluation and placement of personnel</b>
<b>.15</b>	<b>Training of personnel</b>
<b>.16</b>	<b>Conditions of employment</b>
<b>.17</b>	<b>Employer-employee relationships</b>
<b>.18</b>	<b>Separation from service</b>
<b>350.12</b>	<b>Position and wage classification and payroll administration</b>
<b>.122</b>	<b>Position classification</b>
<b>.123</b>	<b>Classified pay plans</b>
<b>.123 2</b>	<b>Salaries</b>
<b>.123 22</b>	<b>Adjustments</b>
<b>.123 23</b>	<b>Deductions</b>
<b>.123 3</b>	<b>Wage incentives</b>
<b>.125</b>	<b>Payroll administration</b>
<b>.13</b>	<b>Recruitment and selection of personnel</b>
<b>.131</b>	<b>Recruitment</b>
<b>.132</b>	<b>Qualification requirements</b>
<b>.132 2</b>	<b>Personal</b>
<b>.132 3</b>	<b>Professional and occupational</b>
<b>.132 4</b>	<b>Special</b>
<b>.132 42</b>	<b>Loyalty oaths</b>
<b>.132 43</b>	<b>Veterans' preference</b>
<b>.14</b>	<b>Placement and evaluation of personnel</b>
<b>.142</b>	<b>Performance rating</b>
<b>.143</b>	<b>Promotion</b>
<b>.144</b>	<b>Demotion</b>
<b>.145</b>	<b>Transfer</b>
<b>.15</b>	<b>Training of personnel</b>
<b>.152</b>	<b>Orientation</b>
<b>.153</b>	<b>In-service training</b>

- 350.16      **Conditions of employment**
  - .162      **Promotion of personnel welfare, satisfaction, efficiency**
  - .162 2      **Health and safety programs**
  - .162 3      **Welfare services**
    - Housing, transportation, food services, discounts
  - \* .162 5      **Counseling services**
  - .162 6      **Educational programs**
    - Including occupational rehabilitation, adjustment to automation
  - .163      **Days and hours of work**
  - .164      **Leaves of absence**
  - .167      **Discipline**
  - .17      **Employer-employee relationships**
  - .172      **Employee representation in management**
  - .173      **Employee organizations**
  - .174      **Collective bargaining**
  - .175      **Employee morale**
  - .176      **Grievances and appeals**
  - .18      **Separation from service**
  - .182      **Retirement**
  - .183      **Dismissal**
  - .184      **Retrenchment**
- .2      **Registers of personnel**
- .3      **Civil service examinations**
  - Class examinations on a specific subject with the subject
- .4      **Government career service**
- .5      **Pensions**
- .6      **Civil service system**
  - Origin and development

## *Decimal Classification*

► **350.7–350.9 Specific administrative activities and responsibilities**

**350.7 Finance and public welfare**

### **SUMMARY**

<b>350.71</b>	<b>Supply administration</b>
<b>.72</b>	<b>Fiscal responsibility</b>
<b>.74</b>	<b>Police organization and management</b>
<b>.75</b>	<b>Maintenance of public order and security</b>
<b>.76</b>	<b>Regulation and control of public morals</b>
<b>.77</b>	<b>Regulation and control of public health</b>
<b>.78</b>	<b>Fire and accident protection</b>

► **350.71–350.72 Financial administration**

<b>.71</b>	<b>Supply administration</b>
<b>.711</b>	<b>Execution of contracts</b>
<b>.712</b>	<b>Procurement</b>  Acquisition of property, equipment, supplies needed in administration
<b>.713</b>	<b>Utilization and disposal</b>
<b>.714</b>	<b>Records management</b>
<b>.72</b>	<b>Fiscal responsibility</b>
<b>.721</b>	<b>Fiscal policy</b>
<b>.722</b>	<b>The budget</b>  Official estimates submitted by chief executive
<b>.722 2</b>	<b>Formulation and preparation</b>
<b>.722 3</b>	<b>Adoption</b>
<b>.722 4</b>	<b>Revision</b>  Supplementary and deficiency budget
<b>.723</b>	<b>Accounting and auditing</b>
<b>.723 1</b>	<b>Accounting</b>
<b>.723 2</b>	<b>Auditing</b>

## *Public administration*

---

### 350.724 Tax administration [*formerly 336.2*]

Use 350.724 001 – 350.724 009 for standard subdivisions

---

► 350.724 01 – 350.724 03 General principles

.724 01 Assessment

.724 011 Equalization

\* .724 013 Valuation and appraisal

.724 02 Collection

.724 022 Liens

.724 023 Avoidance

.724 03 Appeals

---

► 350.724 2 – 350.724 7 Specific kinds of taxes

Divide each subdivision identified by \* like 350.724 01 – 350.724 03, e g., income tax avoidance 350.724 423

.724 2 \*Real property

.724 3 \*Personal property

.724 4 \*Income

.724 5 \*Poll

.724 6 \*Customs

.724 7 Other

.724 71 Indirect

.724 711 \*Excise, sumptuary, luxury

.724 713 Transaction (Turnover)

.724 713 2 \*Sales

.724 713 5 \*Use

.724 76 \*Estate, inheritance, gift

.725 Fiscal relations between jurisdictional levels

---

► 350.74–350.78 Public welfare administration

.74 Police organization and management

\* Divide as instructed under 350.724 2 – 350.724 7

## Decimal Classification

---

- 350.75 Maintenance of public order and security
  - For regulation and control of public morals, see 350.76*
- .751 Protection of freedom of information
- .752 Protection of freedom of association
- .753 Control of explosives and firearms
- .754 Disaster and emergency planning
- .755 Civil defense [*formerly 355.232*]
- .756 Prevention of public violence
- .76 Regulation and control of public morals
  - .761 Of liquor traffic
  - .762 Of gambling
  - .764 Of prostitution [*formerly 301.424 3*]
  - .765 Of drug traffic
- .77 Regulation and control of public health [*formerly also 614*]
  - For regulation and control of water supply, see 350.871*
- .78 Fire and accident protection
  - .782 Fire protection and prevention
  - .783 Accident prevention (Safety measures)
- .8 Other regulations and controls

### SUMMARY

- 350.82 Of production, commerce, consumption
  - .83 Of labor
  - .84 Of social welfare
  - .85 Of education, culture, religion
  - .86 Of public works
  - .87 Of public utilities
  - .88 Of justice
  - .89 Of foreign affairs and defense
- .82 Of production [*formerly 338*], commerce, consumption
- .821 Weights and measures
- .822 Money

## *Public administration*

---

- 350.823      **Primary industries**  
                 Agriculture, mining, hunting, fishing
- .824      **Secondary industries**
- .825      **Financial institutions and transactions**  
                 Insurance companies [*formerly* 368], banks, savings and  
                 loan associations, loan companies  
                 Including land titles and deeds [*formerly* 333.34], exchange  
                 of securities [*formerly* 332.64]
- .826      **Domestic trade**
- .827      **International trade** [*formerly* 337]
- .829      **Consumption (Rationing)**
- .83      **Of labor**
- .84      **Of social welfare**  
                 Including reformatories [*formerly* 364.76], prisons [*formerly*  
                 365.6]
- .85      **Of education** [*formerly* 379.15], culture, religion
- .86      **Of public works**
- .862      **Public buildings**
- .863      **Park and recreational structures**
- .864      **Roads, bridges, tunnels**
- .865      **Housing**
- .87      **Of public utilities** [*formerly* 380]  
                 Use 350.870 01 – 350.870 09 for standard subdivisions
- 
- 350.870 2 – 350.870 6 General principles
- .870 2      **Control**
- .870 3      **Finances**
- .870 4      **Public ownership**
- .870 5      **Privileges**
- .870 6      **Obligations**

## Decimal Classification

- 350.871-350.878 Specific public utilities  
Divide each subdivision identified by \* like 350.870 2 -  
350.870 6, e.g., public ownership of water supply 350.871 04

350.871 Water supply

.871 02-.871 06 \*General principles

*For concentration of service, see 350.871 07 -  
350.871 08*

- 350.871 07 - 350.871 08 Concentration of service

.871 07 Urban

.871 08 Rural

.871 5 Pollution

.871 6 Purification

.872 Power and gas

.872 2 Electric power

.872 202-.872 206 \*General principles

*For concentration of service, see 350.872 207 -  
350.872 208*

- 350.872 207 - 350.872 208 Concentration of service

.872 207 Urban

.872 208 Rural

.872 3 Gas

.872 302-.872 306 \*General principles

- 350.873-350.874 Communication

.873 Mail

.874 Telecommunication

Divide like 384.1-384.7, e.g., radiobroadcasting 350.874 54;  
then add 0 and divide further like 350.870 2 - 350.870 6, e.g.,  
public ownership of radiobroadcasting 350.874 540 4

.875-.878 Transportation

Including registration, licensing, inspection of motor land  
vehicles [*all formerly 629.213*]

Divide like 385-388, e.g., rapid transit 350.878 4; then add  
0 and divide further like 350.870 2 - 350.870 6, e.g., public  
ownership of rapid transit 350.878 404

\* Divide as instructed under 350.871-350.878

## *Public administration*

- 350.88      Of justice
- .89      Of foreign affairs and defense
- .892      Foreign affairs
- .895      Defense
  - Including civil-military relations
- .9      **Governmental accountability**
- .91      Liability
  - Of state for mal-, mis-, nonfeasance of officials
- .92      Control of internal administration
- .99      Administrative responsibility
  - Personal liability of government officials to the state and to individuals for torts committed in office
- .991      Abuse of administrative responsibility
- .992      Investigation of public officials
- .993      Impeachment

## **351      Central governments**

National, state, provincial

Use 351.000 1 – 351.000 9 for standard subdivisions

*For administration of specific national, state, provincial governments, see 353–354; military administration, 355–359*

- .001–.009      The executive
  - Divide like 350.001–350.009, e.g., bureaucracy [*formerly* 351.1] 351.001
- .01–.08      Specific executive departments and ministries
  - Divide like 350.01–350.08, e.g., administration of defense department 351.06

### **351.1–351.4 Civil service**

*For civil service system, see 351.6*

## **.1      Personnel management**

- Procedures by which employees are hired, managed, replaced
- Divide like 350.1, e.g., discipline [*formerly* 351.4] 351.167
- Class bureaucracy [*formerly* 351.1] in 351.001



## *Decimal Classification*

- 351.2      **Registers of personnel**
- .3      **Civil service examinations**
  - Class examinations of local governments in 352.005, on a specific subject in standard subdivision 076 [*both formerly 351.3*]
- .4      **Government career service**
  - Class employee discipline [*formerly 351.4*] in 351.167
- .5      **Pensions**
- .6      **Civil service system**
  - Origin and development
- 351.7–351.9 **Specific administrative activities and responsibilities**
- .7      **Finance and public welfare**
- .71–.72      **Financial administration**
  - Divide like 350.71–350.72, e.g., tax administration 351.724
- .74      **Police organization and management [*formerly also 351.79*]**
  - Class management of private police services [*formerly 351.744*] in 658
- .75–.78      **Other aspects of public welfare administration**
  - Divide like 350.75–350.78, e.g., fire and accident protection 351.78
- [.79]      **Police organization and management**
  - Class in 351.74
- [.792]      **United States Coast Guard**
  - Class in 359.97
- .8      **Other regulations and controls**
  - Divide like 350.8, e.g., of labor 351.83
- .9      **Governmental accountability**
- .91      **Liability**
  - Of state for mal-, mis-, nonfeasance of officials

## *Public administration*

351.92 Control of internal administration

[.94-.95] Administrative law

Class in 340

[.98] Investigation of public officials

Class in 351.992

.99 Administrative responsibility

Personal liability of government officials to the state and to individuals for torts committed in office

.991 Abuse of administrative responsibility

.992 Investigation of public officials [*formerly* 351.98]

.993 Impeachment

## 352 Local units of government

Counties, urban and rural municipalities, special districts

Use 352.000 1 – 352.000 8 for standard subdivisions

.000 9 Historical and geographical treatment [*formerly* 352.03- 352.09]

Class specific local units in 352.03–352.09

352.002–352.006 General principles

*For forms of administration, see* 352.007–352.009

.002 Control and accountability

.002 2 Central government control of local units

.002 9 Governmental accountability

Divide like 350.9, e.g., abuse of administrative responsibility 352.002 991

.003 Municipal incorporation

.004 Elections

.005 Civil service

Including civil service examinations [*formerly* 351.3]

Class examinations on a specific subject with the subject

.006 Annexation

## Decimal Classification

►	352.007–352.009	Forms of administration
		Class specific local units in 352.03–352.09
352.007		Rural units [ <i>formerly</i> 352.008]
.007 2		Rural municipalities (Townships)
.007 3		Counties
.008		Urban municipalities
		Cities, boroughs, villages, incorporated towns
		Class administration of rural units in 352.007, of special districts in 352.009 [ <i>both formerly</i> 352.008]
.008 2		Mayor-council with weak mayor
.008 3		Mayor-council with strong mayor
.008 4		Council-manager
.008 5		Commission
.009		Special districts [ <i>formerly</i> 352.008]
		Special-purpose authorities
.009 2		Economic
.009 3		Urban-service
.009 4		Metropolitan
.03–.09		General administration of specific local units
		Add area notations 3–9 to 352.0, e.g., administration of New York City 352.074 71
		Class historical and geographical treatment [ <i>formerly</i> 352.03–352.09] in 352.000 9

## *Public administration*



### **352.1–352.9 Specific administrative activities**

#### **SUMMARY**

- 352.1 Financial administration**
- .2 Police organization and management**
- .3 Fire and accident protection**
- .4 Regulation and control of public health**
- .5 Of public buildings**
- .6 Of sanitary engineering**
- .7 Of other public works**
- .8 Licensing**
- .9 Other activities**

#### **352.1 Financial administration**

Class local government finance [*formerly 352.1*] in 336

##### **.12 The budget**

Official estimates submitted by chief executive

##### **.13 Tax administration**

##### **.131 Assessment**

*For special assessments, see 352.134*

##### **.131 2 Equalization**

##### **.131 3 Valuation and appraisal**

##### **.133 Collection**

##### **.134 Special assessments**

##### **.16 Procurement**

Acquisition of property, equipment, supplies needed in administration

##### **.17 Accounting and auditing**

##### **.2 Police organization and management**

##### **.3 Fire and accident protection**

##### **.4 Regulation and control of public health**

Including coroners [*formerly 352.9*]

*For sanitary engineering, see 352.6*

### **352.5–352.7 Regulation and control of public works**

#### **Of public buildings**

Including community centers [*formerly 352.7*]

## *Decimal Classification*

- 352.6 Of sanitary engineering**
  - Water-supply, sewage- and refuse-disposal structures
- .7 Of other public works**
  - Class community centers [*formerly 352.7*] in **352.5**
- .72 Cemeteries**
- .73 Park and recreational structures**
- .74 Roads, bridges, tunnels**
- .75 Housing**
- .8 Licensing**
- .9 Other activities**
  - Class coroners [*formerly 352.9*] in **352.4**
- .91 Regulation and control of public utilities**
  - Divide like **350.87**, e.g., electric power **352.912 2**
- .92 Regulation of construction**
  - Scope: permits, codes, inspections, standards
- .922 Building construction [*formerly 692.9*]**
- .923 Electrical installations [*formerly 621.300 7*]**
- .926 Plumbing [*formerly 696.9*]**
- .93 Maintenance and regulation of public order, security, morals**
  - Divide like **350.75–350.76**, e.g., civil defense **352.935 5**
- .94 Regulation and control of economic, welfare, cultural activities**
  - Divide like **350.82–350.85**, e.g., labor **352.943**
- .95 Waste and refuse collection**
- .96 Planning**
- .961 Zoning**
- .962 Land subdivision**
- .98 Regulation and control of justice**

► **353–354 Administration of specific national,  
state, provincial governments**

**353 United States federal and state governments**

If preferred, class in 354

Use 353.000 01 – 353.000 08 for standard subdivisions

.000 1–.000 9      Standard subdivisions of federal government

.001–.009      Civil service, specific administrative activities,  
governmental accountability in federal government

Divide like 350.1–350.9, e.g., fiscal policy 353.007 21

.01–.09      The executive in federal government

Divide like 350.001–350.009, e.g., executive branch 353.03

**353.1–353.8 Specific executive departments in federal  
government**

.1      Department of State

.2      Department of the Treasury

.3      Department of the Interior

.4      Post Office Department

.5      Department of Justice

.6      Department of Defense

Class Department of the Navy in 353.7

.62      Department of the Army

.63      Department of the Air Force [*formerly* 358.4]

.7      Department of the Navy

.8      Other departments

.81      Department of Agriculture

.82      Department of Commerce

.83      Department of Labor

.84      Department of Health, Education, and Welfare

.85      Department of Urban Affairs and Housing (Proposed)

## *Decimal Classification*

### **353.9 State governments**

#### **353.91–353.93 General principles**

*For specific states, see 353.94–353.99*

#### **.91 The executive**

Divide like 350.001–350.009, e.g., powers of governors  
353.913 2

#### **.92 Specific kinds of executive departments and intergovernmental administration**

#### **.921–.928 Specific kinds of executive departments**

Divide like 350.01–350.08, e.g., labor departments 353.928 3

#### **.929 Intergovernmental administration**

#### **.929 1 Between states**

Interstate agreements, cooperation, disputes

#### **.929 2 Between states and federal government**

#### **.929 3 Between states and local governments**

#### **.93 Civil service, specific administrative activities, governmental accountability**

Divide like 350.1–350.9, e.g., state civil service systems 353.936

#### **.94–.99 Specific states**

Add area notations 4–9 to 353.9, e.g., administration of government of Hawaii 353.996 9; then add further as follows:

000 1–000 9 Standard subdivisions

001–009 Civil service, specific administrative activities,  
governmental accountability

Divide like 350.1–350.9, e.g., civil service  
system 006

01–09 The executive

Divide like 350.001–350.009, e.g., executive  
branch 03

1–8 Specific executive departments

Divide like 350.01–350.08, e.g., labor department  
83

9 Intergovernmental administration

Divide like 350.09, e.g., relation between state and  
local government 93

**354 Other central governments**

Scope: administration of air force departments [*formerly 358.4*]

(Optional: United States federal and state governments; prefer 353)

**.1 International**

**.3–.9 National, state, provincial**

Add area notations 3–9 to 354, e.g., government of Canada 354.71;  
except for Germany add further as follows:

000 1–000 9 Standard subdivisions

001–009 Civil service, specific administrative activities,  
governmental accountability

Divide like 350.1–350.9, e.g., civil service  
system 006

01–09 The executive and its specific departments

01–05 Specific aspects of the executive

Divide like 350.001–350.005, e.g., cabinet 05

06 Specific executive departments and ministries

Divide like 350.01–350.08, e.g., ministry of foreign  
affairs 061

07–09 Other specific aspects of the executive

Divide like 350.007–350.009, e.g., government  
corporations 092

**.43 Germany**

Use 354.430 001 – 354.430 009 for standard subdivisions

.430 01–.430 09 Civil service, specific administrative activities,  
governmental accountability

Divide like 350.1–350.9, e.g., civil service system  
354.430 06

.430 1 Bureaucracy

.430 2 Separation of powers

.430 3 Executive branch

.430 5 Cabinet and cabinet system

.430 6 Specific ministries

Divide like 350.01–350.08, e.g., ministry of foreign affairs  
354.430 61





## **355–359 Military administration**

Military art and science and their application to conduct of defense and warfare

Class general principles in **355**, administration of defense departments in **350.06**, civil-military relations in **350.895**

### **355 General principles**

Scope: application to land warfare, to combined warfare

Use **355.000 1 – 355.000 9** for standard subdivisions

Class application of general principles to air warfare in **358.4**, to space warfare in **358.8**, to sea warfare in **359**, to specific kinds of land forces in **356–357**

.001–.009      Standard subdivisions of general principles of land warfare

355.02–355.07 Basic considerations underlying military administration

.02              War and warfare

.021            Overall concepts

.021 3           Militarism and antimilitarism

.021 5           Limited and total war

.021 7           Nuclear and conventional warfare

.021 8           Scope

.021 82          Warfare between and among states

.021 84          Insurgent, revolutionary, resistance warfare

.022            Sociology

*For sociological causes of war, see 355.027 4*

.023            Economics

Costs and benefits

*For economic causes of war, see 355.027 3*

.027            Causes

.027 2           Political and diplomatic

.027 3           Economic

.027 4           Sociological

.027 5           Psychological

## *Public administration*

- 355.028      **Results**  
                  Occupation, dislocation, reconstruction
- .03      **Defense**
- .031      **Mutual security pacts**  
                  Central Treaty Organization, North Atlantic Treaty  
                  Organization, Southeast Asia Treaty Organization, Warsaw  
                  Pact
- .032      **Military missions and assistance**  
                  Add area notations **3-9** for country visited or assisted to  
                  **355.032**, e.g., military assistance to Vietnam **355.032 597**
- .033      **Military situation and policy**
- .033 2      **Situation**  
                  Add area notations **1-9** to **355.033 2**
- .033 5      **Policy**  
                  Add area notations **1-9** to **355.033 5**  
                  Class combat strategy in **355.43**
- .07      **Military research and development**

## **SUMMARY**

- 355.1      Military life and postmilitary benefits**  
    **.2      Military resources**  
    **.3      Organization and personnel of military forces**  
    **.4      Attack and defense plans and operations**  
    **.5      Training maneuvers, exercises, drills**  
    **.6      Central administration**  
    **.7      Military installations and land reservations**  
    **.8      Military equipment and supplies (Materiel)**
- .1      Military life and postmilitary benefits**  
            Use **355.100 1 - 355.100 9** for standard subdivisions
- .101-.109      Standard subdivisions of military life**

## Decimal Classification

### SUMMARY

- 355.11 Service periods and their termination
  - .12 Living conditions and customs in peace and war
  - .13 Discipline, honor, remuneration
  - .14 Uniforms as costume
  - .15 Colors and standards
  - .16 Celebrations
  - .17 Ceremonials
- 355.11 Service periods and their termination
  - .111 Length of service
  - .112 Promotion
  - .113 Inactive periods
    - Leaves, furloughs, reserve status, status during captivity or internment
  - .114 Termination of service
    - Retirement, resignation, discharge, reinstatement
  - .115 Veterans' rights and benefits
    - .115 1 Pensions
    - .115 2 Education and training
    - .115 4 Employment and reemployment
      - For veterans' preference in civil service personnel selection, see 350.132 43*
    - .115 6 Rehabilitation
- .12 Living conditions and customs in peace and war
  - .123 Servicemen's morale
    - .129 In specific situations
      - For servicemen's morale, see 355.123*
      - .129 2 In garrison
      - .129 3 In the field and on the march
        - For living conditions in battle, see 355.129 4*
      - .129 4 In battle
      - .129 5 In prison and prison camp

## *Public administration*

- 355.13 Discipline, honor, remuneration
  - Including etiquette
  - Class military ethics [*formerly 355.13*] in 174.9
  - For etiquette of uniforms, see 355.14*
- .133 Discipline and law
  - Including judge advocate general's corps, military police
- .133 2 Courts-martial and courts of inquiry
  - Organization, jurisdiction, procedure of general, special, summary courts-martial and of military tribunals
- .133 4 Offenses
- .134 Rewards and privileges
  - Salutes, honorary insignia, decorations, medals, badges, orders, gifts, special privileges and bonuses
- .135 Remuneration and allowances
- .14 Uniforms as costume
  - Including identifying insignia, etiquette
  - Class issue and use of uniforms in 355.81
- .15 Colors and standards
- .16 Celebrations
  - Commemorations, anniversaries, jubilees
- .17 Ceremonials
- .2 Military resources
  - .21 Value and availability
    - Readiness for mobilization
  - .219 Sabotage and its prevention
  - 355.22–355.27 Mobilization of specific resources
  - .22 Military manpower and womanpower
    - 355.223–355.225 Specific elements
  - .223 Enlistment, conscription, commissioning

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 355.224      Conscientious objectors
- .225      Compulsory service
  - For conscription, see 355.223*
- .225 5      Universal training and service
- .229      Womanpower
  - For specific elements, see 355.223–355.225*
- .23      Civilian manpower and womanpower
  - Including allocation, duties, morale, internment
- [.232]      Civil defense
  - Class administration in 350.755; services in 363.35
- .24      Raw materials
- .26      Industrial resources
- .27      Transportation and communication facilities
- .28      Requisitions
  - Effective mobilization of resources thru application of emergency powers, calls to arms, commandeering of property, establishment of military zones
  - For mobilization of specific resources, see 355.22–355.27*
- .29      Demobilization
- .3      **Organization and personnel of military forces**
- .31      Units organized for administrative purposes
  - Army groups, armies, corps, divisions, regiments, smaller units
  - Including foreign legions, parade and inspection units, other special units and formations
- .33      Hierarchy
  - Including line-and-staff functions
- .331      Leadership and command
- .332      Officers
- .338      Enlisted personnel

## *Public administration*

---

- 355.34      **Special services**
  - Units and services responsible for noncombatant functions and activities
- .341      **Administrative and supply services**
- .342      **Public information services**
- .343      **Unconventional warfare services**
- .343 2      **Intelligence**
  - Including mapping, cryptanalysis services
- .343 3      **Counterintelligence**
  - Including security classification services
- .343 4      **Psychological warfare (Propaganda)**
- .343 7      **Subversion and sabotage**
- .345      **Health services**
  - Medical, dental, nursing, veterinary
- .346      **Recreational services**
  - Athletic games and sports, arts and crafts, music, dances, library services
- .347      **Religious and counseling services**
- .348      **Women's services**
  - Class a specific service with the subject
- .35      **Combat units according to field of service**
- .351      **Home guards and frontier troops**
- .352      **Colonial and expeditionary forces**
- .356      **Allied and coalition forces**
- .357      **International forces**
  - Troops under unified command acting by supernational authorization
- .37      **Reserves**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **355.4      Attack and defense plans and operations**

Scope: deception and camouflage

.409          Historical treatment

Class geographical treatment in **355.47**

.41          Logistics and field service

.411          Tactics of troop movements

.412          Encampment tactics

.413          Reconnaissance tactics

.415          Troop-support tactics

Tactics of communication, supply, medical service, prisoner handling

.42          Battle tactics

.422          General

Debarkation and landing, skirmishing, attacks, counter attacks, retreats

Including commando (hit-and-run) tactics

355.423–355.426 Under specific conditions

*For siege warfare, see 355.44; defense of home territory, 355.45*

.423          In specific kinds of terrain, climate, weather

.424          Using animals

.425          In guerrilla warfare

.426          In cities

Tactics in street fighting, house-to-house fighting, quelling riots

.43          Strategy

General plan of combat, evaluation and deployment of resources

Use **355.430 01 – 355.430 09** for standard subdivisions

*For siege warfare, see 355.44; defense of home territory, 355.45*

.430 5          Limited and total war

.430 7          Nuclear and conventional warfare

## *Public administration*

- 355.44      **Siege warfare**
  - Tactics and strategy
- .45      **Defense of home territory**
  - Tactics and strategy of defense of frontiers, coasts, industrial areas, strategically valuable positions
- .47      **Tactical and strategic geography**
  - Add area notations 1–9 to 355.47
- .48      **Technical analyses of military events**
  - Real and imaginary wars, campaigns, battles
- .5      **Training maneuvers, exercises, drills**
- .52      **Grand maneuvers**
- .54      **Basic training of units**
  - Including tactical exercises
- .544      **Camp and fortification operations**
  - Setting up, repairing, dismantling camps, temporary fortifications, batteries, obstacles, field kitchens
- .547      **Small arms and bayonet practice**
- .548      **Self-defense**
  - Unarmed combat and combat with knife
- .55      **Officers' maneuvers and exercises**
- .58      **Maneuvers involving civil population**
  - Warning and intelligence service, rescue maneuvers, safety activities, demonstrations
- .6      **Central administration**
  - Military administration at top level
    - For organization of military forces, see 355.3*
  - 355.61–355.63 Overall control
    - For specific elements, see 355.64–355.69*
- .61      **General**
- .611      **Adjutant general's department**



## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 355.613      Personnel management
  - .613 3      Military
  - .613 6      Civilian
  - .614      Issuance of orders
  - .62      Financial
  - .621      Supply administration
    - .621 1      Execution of contracts
    - .621 2      Procurement
      - Acquisition of property, equipment, supplies needed in administration
    - .621 3      Utilization and disposal
    - .622      Fiscal responsibility
      - .622 3      Accounting and auditing
  - .63      Inspectional
- 355.64–355.69 Specific elements
- .64      Paymaster's department
  - Administration of pay, allowances, pensions
- .65      Subsistence department
- .66      Clothing and equipment department
- .67      Lodging administration
- .69      Other central administrative services
  - Including graves registration service
- .7      Military installations and land reservations
  - Description, operation, use
  - 355.71–355.75 Permanent and quasi-permanent installations
  - .71      Quarters for personnel
    - Barracks, camps, post exchanges, canteens, prisons
  - .72      Medical installations

## *Public administration*

- 355.73      Artillery installations
  - Arsenals, ordnance factories and depots, target ranges, artillery schools
- .74      Engineering installations
  - Depots and testing grounds
- .75      Supply depots and installations
- .79      Land (Natural resources)
- .8      **Military equipment and supplies (Materiel)**
  - Description, issue, operation, use, packing, shipping
- .81      Food, clothing, camp equipment
- .82      Ordnance
  - For combat vehicles, see 355.83*
- .83      Transportation equipment
  - Trucks, trains, ships, planes, combat vehicles, fuel

---

### ►      **356–359 Specific kinds of technical and combat forces**

Units and services

---

### ►      **356–357 Land forces**

Class conduct of air warfare in 358.4, of sea warfare in 359, comprehensive works on land warfare in 355

*For armored and technical land forces, see 358.1–358.3*

## **356      Foot forces**

### **.1      Infantry**

---

### ►      **356.11–356.16 Units**

#### **.11      Regular**

Including motorized infantry

#### **.15      Irregular**

Self-organized infantry, guerrillas, brigand troops

## *Decimal Classification*

- 356.16      **Special formations**
  - Including light infantry, sharpshooters, machine gunners, grenadiers
- .164      **Ski and mountain troops**
- .166      **Paratroops**
- .18      **Training, plans, operations, equipment, supplies, installations**
  - For units, see 356.11–356.16*
- [.182]      **Training drills**
  - Class in **356.184**
- .183      **Attack and defense plans and operations**
- .184      **Training drills [*formerly 356.182*], maneuvers, exercises**
- .186      **Equipment and supplies (Materiel)**
- .187      **Installations**
- .2      **Specialized foot forces**
- 357      **Mounted forces**
  - .1      **Horse cavalry**
    - For remount and training services, see 357.2*
  - .18      **Plans, operations, training, installations, equipment, supplies**
  - .184      **Attack and defense plans and operations**
  - .185      **Training maneuvers, exercises, drills**
  - .187      **Installations**
  - .188      **Equipment and supplies (Materiel)**
  - .2      **Remount and training services**
    - Training cavalry mounts, remount depots, breeding and care of cavalry mounts, horsemanship

*Public administration*

**357.5      Mechanized cavalry**

►                                      **357.52–357.54 Specific kinds**

- .52      Bicycle
- .53      Motorcycle
- .54      Automobile
- .58      Plans, operations, training, installations, equipment,  
          supplies

Divide like 357.18, e.g., equipment and supplies 357.588

*For specific kinds of mechanized cavalry, see 357.52–357.54*

**358      Armored and technical land forces, air and space  
          forces**

Use 358.001–358.009 for standard subdivisions

- .01–.09      Standard subdivisions of armored and technical land  
          forces

**SUMMARY**

- 358.1      Artillery and armored forces
- .2      Engineer forces
- .3      Other technical forces
- .4      Air forces
- .8      Space forces

►                                      **358.1–358.3 Armored and technical land forces**

- .1      Artillery and armored forces

►                                      **358.12–358.17 Artillery**

- .12      Field  
          Including antitank artillery [*formerly* 358.18]
- .13      Antiaircraft
- .16      Coast
- .17      Guided (Strategic) missile

Divide like 623.451 94 – 623.451 96, e.g., long-range  
surface-to-surface missile-launching forces 358.175 4

## *Decimal Classification*

- 358.18      **Armored forces**  
             Tanks and tank warfare  
             Class antitank artillery [*formerly* 358.18] in 358.12
- .2          **Engineer forces**  
             Scope: pioneers
- .22        **Construction**  
             Roads, railroads, bridges, tunnels, docks, airports
- .23        **Demolition**  
             Including sappers, torpedo troops
- .24        **Communications (Signals and signaling)**  
             Including military cryptography
- .25        **Transportation**
- .3          **Other technical forces**  
             Including services connected with construction of military buildings, camouflage, manufacture of war materiel, munitions, powder
- .34        **Gas warfare**
- .38        **Biological warfare**
- .39        **Nuclear warfare**
- .4          **Air forces**  
             Scope: conduct of air warfare  
             Use 358.400 1 – 358.400 9 for standard subdivisions  
             Class administration of United States Department of the Air Force in 353.63, of other air force departments in 354 [*all formerly* 358.4]  
             Class conduct of land warfare in 355, of sea warfare in 359
- .403       **Situation and policy**
- .407       **Research and development**
- .41        **Functions and organization**  
             *For specific forces, see 358.42–358.46*
- .411–.413   **Military life, resources, forces**  
             Divide like 355.1–355.3, e.g., air force uniforms as costume 358.411 4

## *Public administration*

- 358.414      Attack and defense plans and operations  
                 Scope: deception and camouflage  
                 *For bombing, see 358.42; fighting, 358.43*
- .414 1        Logistics  
                 *For transportation, see 358.44; reconnaissance, 358.45*
- .414 12       Encampment tactics
- .414 15       Troop support tactics  
                 Tactics of supply, medical service, prisoner handling  
                 *For communications, see 358.46*
- .414 2        Battle tactics  
                 *For defense of home territory, see 358.414 5*
- .414 3        Strategy  
                 General plan of combat, evaluation and deployment of resources  
                 *For defense of home territory, see 358.414 5*
- .414 5        Defense of home territory  
                 Tactics and strategy of defense of frontiers, coasts, industrial areas, strategically valuable positions
- .414 7        Tactical and strategic geography  
                 Add area notations 1–9 to 358.414 7
- .414 8        Technical analyses of military events  
                 Real and imaginary wars, campaigns, battles
- .415        Training maneuvers, exercises, drills
- .415 4        Basic training of units
- .415 5        Officers' maneuvers and exercises
- .415 8        Maneuvers involving civil population
- .416–.418    Central administration, installations, materiel  
                 Divide like 355.6–355.8, e.g., air proving grounds 358.417 4

## *Decimal Classification*

- 358.42–358.46 Specific forces  
Administration, military art and science, services, units
- 358.42 Bombing  
Including air-to-surface, air-to-underwater guided (strategic) missile-launching forces
- .43 Pursuit and fighting  
Including air-to-air guided (strategic) missile-launching forces
- .44 Transportation
- .45 Reconnaissance  
Including weather reconnaissance
- .46 Communications
- .8 Space forces  
Conduct of space warfare
- 359 Sea (Naval) forces  
Scope: conduct of sea warfare  
Use 359.001–359.009 for standard subdivisions  
Class conduct of land warfare in 355, of air warfare in 358.4
- .03 Situation and policy
- .07 Research and development
- .1–.2 Naval life and resources  
Divide like 355.1–355.2, e.g., judge advocate general's corps 359.133
- .3 Organization and personnel of naval forces
- .31 Units organized for administrative purposes  
Fleets, squadrons, flotillas, crews, divisions, smaller units
- .32 Types of ships  
Divide like 623.825–623.826, e.g., cruisers 359.325 3
- .33–.37 Other  
Divide like 355.33–355.37, e.g., supply services 359.341

## ***Public administration***

- 359.4      Attack and defense plans and operations**  
              Scope: deception and camouflage
- .41      Logistics  
              Divide like 355.41, e.g., reconnaissance tactics 359.413
- .42      Battle tactics  
              *For defense of home territory, see 359.45*
- .43      Strategy  
              General plan of combat, evaluation and deployment of  
              resources  
              *For defense of home territory, see 359.45*
- .45      Defense of home territory  
              Tactics and strategy
- .47      Tactical and strategic geography  
              Add area notations 1-9 to 359.47
- .48      Technical analyses of naval events  
              Real and imaginary wars, campaigns, battles
- .5-.8    **Training, central administration, installations, materiel**  
              Divide like 355.5-355.8, e.g., naval procurement 359.621 2
- .9      **Specialist forces**
- .96      Marine
- .97      Coast guard  
              Including United States Coast Guard [*formerly also 351.792*]
- .98      Technical  
              Including underwater demolition teams, communication  
              services
- .981     Artillery  
              Including surface, underwater guided (strategic)  
              missile-launching forces
- .982     Engineering



## **360 Welfare and association**

Use 360.01–360.09 for standard subdivisions

### **.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of welfare**

#### **361–365 General welfare**

Public and private services, activities, methods intended to promote social well-being

Class a specific activity of general welfare not provided for here with the subject, e.g., education 370



#### **361–362 Social welfare**

Assistance to the disadvantaged

### **361 Organization and practice of social welfare work**

Use 361.001–361.008 for standard subdivisions

#### **[.009] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 361.9

#### **.02 Free assistance**

Charities, philanthropy

#### **.04 Paid assistance**

Assistance for which the recipient pays all or part of the cost

#### **.2 Planning**

#### **.3 Casework**

#### **.4 Group work**

Social adjustment of individuals promoted by participation in voluntary groups and with assistance of group leader

#### **.5 Disaster relief**

#### **.51 From earthquakes and volcanic eruptions**

#### **.52 From floods**

## *Welfare and association*

- 361.53      **From effects of war**  
                Relief of displaced persons, refugees, prisoners of war
- .54          **From epidemics and pandemics**
- .55          **From famines**
- .56          **From fires, explosions, mine and nuclear accidents**
- .57          **From storms**  
                Snow, rain, wind
- .58          **From transportation accidents**  
                Land, sea, air, space
- .6          **Public welfare work**  
                Class a specific subject or kind of public welfare work with the subject
- .7          **Private welfare work**  
                Class a specific subject or kind of private welfare work with the subject  
                *For parochial welfare work, see 258*
- .73         **Fund raising**  
                Charitable bazaars, drives, donations, subscriptions
- .8          **Community organization**  
                Coordination thru social service exchanges, community chests, united charities
- .9          **Historical and geographical treatment of social welfare work**  
                Add area notations 1–9 to 361.9
- 362        **Welfare services to special groups**  
                Scope: rehabilitation  
                Class welfare services to criminals and delinquents in 364.6–364.8
- [.09]       **Historical and geographical treatment**  
                Do not use; class in 362.9

SUMMARY

- 362.1 To the physically ill
  - .2 To the mentally ill
  - .3 To the mentally retarded
  - .4 To those suffering physical handicaps and  
disabilities
  - .5 To the poor
  - .6 To the aged and infirm, to survivors and  
dependents
  - .7 To the young (Child welfare)
  - .8 To other groups
  - .9 Historical and geographical treatment of welfare  
services to special groups
- 

► 362.1–362.4 To those suffering illnesses and handicaps

*For services to the aged and infirm, see 362.61; to the young, 362.7*

362.1 To the physically ill

Scope: medical social work, preparation and maintenance of  
medical records

---

362.11–362.14 Nonspecialized services

*For services of general convalescent, nursing, rest homes, see  
362.16; ambulance service, 362.18*

- 11 Services of general hospitals, infirmaries, contagious  
wards
- .12 Services of dispensaries, clinics, medical centers
- .13 Services of general sanitariums for incurables
- .14 Services provided at home
- .15 Services of maternity hospitals
  - Class homes for unmarried mothers [*formerly 362.15*] in 362.83
- .16 Services of general convalescent, nursing, rest homes
- .18 Ambulance service

### Welfare and association

## 362.19 Services to specific kinds of illness

**Scope: services of hospitals, clinics, sanitariums, nursing homes for specific diseases**

Divide like 616-618, e.g., services to cancer patients  
362.196 994

**Class services of hospitals and allied institutions for specific physical diseases of the young [formerly 362.19] in 362.781 9**

*For services of maternity hospitals, see 362.15*

## **.2 To the mentally ill**

**Scope:** psychiatric social work

### 362.21–362.24 Nonspecialized services

.21      **Services of psychiatric hospitals**

## .22 Services of psychiatric clinics

**.23 Services of sanitariums and nursing homes**

.24 Services provided at home

.29      Services to the addicted

### Services of hospitals, clinics, sanitariums, nursing homes

## .292      Alcoholics

**Including services of Alcoholics Anonymous**

## .293      Narcotics addicts

### .3 To the mentally retarded

**Including services of hospitals, custodial homes, allied institutions**

**.4 To those suffering physical handicaps and disablements**

.41 Blind and partially sighted persons

.42 Deaf, deaf-mute, hard-of-hearing persons

.43      Crippled persons

### Paralytics, spastics, paraplegics, amputees

**.5 To the poor**

**Class a specialized service with the subject**

.58      Legal aid

## Decimal Classification

- 362.6 To the aged and infirm, to survivors and dependents**
- .61 To the aged and infirm**  
Class services of homes and asylums to survivors and dependents [*both formerly 362.61*] in **362.62**
- .611-.614 To those suffering illnesses and handicaps**  
Divide like **362.1-362.4**, e.g., services provided at home to the physically ill **362.611 4**
- .615 Services of homes and asylums**  
*For services to those suffering illnesses and handicaps, see 362.611-362.614*
- .62 To survivors and dependents**  
Including services of homes and asylums [*both formerly 362.61*], pensions for widows and orphans  
*For services to those suffering illnesses and handicaps, see 362.1-362.4*
- .7 To the young (Child welfare)**  
Infants, children, adolescents
- .71 Thru aid to mothers**  
Including day nurseries, foster day care  
Class services to unmarried mothers in **362.83**
- [.72] To illegitimate children**  
Class in **362.73**
- .73 To illegitimate [*formerly 362.72*] and abandoned children and orphans**  
*For pensions for orphans, see 362.62*
- .731 Placement**
- .732 Institutional care**  
Services of homes and asylums  
Including houseparents
- .733 Foster home care**
- .734 Adoption**

## *Welfare and association*

- 362.74 To maladjusted children
  - .742 Services of child guidance clinics
  - .743 Services of schools
  - .745 Services of junior republics
  - .78 To those suffering illnesses and handicaps
    - Divide like 362.1–362.4, e.g., services of hospitals and allied institutions for specific physical diseases [*formerly* 362.19] 362.781 9
- .8 To other groups
  - .82 To families
    - Including marriage and family counseling [*formerly* 301.426], visiting housekeepers
  - .83 To unmarried mothers
    - Including homes [*formerly* 362.15]
  - .84 To minority groups
  - .85 To laboring classes [*formerly also* 331.83]
    - Including migratory workers
  - .88 To victims of crimes of violence
- .9 Historical and geographical treatment of welfare services to special groups
  - Add area notations 1–9 to 362.9

## 363 Other services

Class political organizations and institutions [*formerly* 363] in 329.006

### SUMMARY

- 363.2 Police services
  - .3 Services in support of order and security
  - .4 Services for control of public morals
  - .5 Public works services
  - .6 Public utility services
- .2 Police services
  - For services in support of order and security, see 363.3*
- .22 Personnel
  - Responsibilities, qualifications, grades

## *Decimal Classification*

- 363.23      Operational services
  - For prevention of crime and delinquency, see 364.4*
- .232      Patrol
- .233      Traffic control
- .234      Pursuit and apprehension
- .236      Self-defense
  - Unarmed and armed combat
- .24      Auxiliary services
- .242      Records and communications
- .243      Jails
- .244      Laboratories
- .245      Buildings and equipment
  - For jails, see 363.243; laboratories, 363.244*
- .245 4      Weapons
  - For armed combat, see 363.236*
- .248      Dogs
- .3      Services in support of order and security
  - For services for control of public morals, see 363.4*
- .31      Protection of freedom of information
- .32      Protection of freedom of association
- .33      Control of explosives and firearms
- .34      Disaster and emergency planning
- .35      Civil defense [*formerly 355.232*]
- .351      Training
- .352      Protection of population
- .353      Protection of property
- .356      Detection and warning systems
- .36      Prevention of violence
- .4      Services for control of public morals
  - Divide like 350.76, e.g., services for control of gambling 363.42*

## *Welfare and association*

### **363.5 Public works services**

Class a specific service with the subject

### **.6 Public utility services [*formerly 380*]**

Class communication and transportation services in 380

#### **.61 Water supply**

#### **.612 Activities**

#### **.613 Facilities**

#### **.62 Electric power**

Divide like 363.61, e.g., facilities 363.623

#### **.63 Gas**

Divide like 363.61, e.g., facilities 363.633

### **364 Criminology**

Scope: comprehensive works on criminology and criminal law

*For criminal law, see 343; penology, 365*

#### **[.09] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 364.9

## **SUMMARY**

### **364.1 Offenses**

#### **.2 Causes of crime and delinquency**

#### **.3 Offenders**

#### **.4 Prevention of crime and delinquency**

#### **.6-.8 Correction of crime and delinquency**

#### **.6 Punishment and other methods**

#### **.7 Institutions**

#### **.8 Discharged offenders**

#### **.9 Historical and geographical treatment of criminology**

### **.1 Offenses**

## **SUMMARY**

### **364.12 Detection**

#### **.13-.17 Specific kinds of offenses**

#### **.13 Against constituted authority**

#### **.14 Against public health, safety, order**

#### **.15 Against the person**

#### **.16 Against property**

#### **.17 Against public morals**



## Decimal Classification

- 364.12      Detection  
Investigation of crime, collection and interpretation of evidence, identification of criminals
- .121      Physical (Circumstantial) evidence  
*For documents, see 364.122; physical human characteristics, 364.125*
- .122      Documents  
Including analysis of handwriting and typing
- [.123]      Lie detection  
Class in 364.127 9
- .125      Physical human characteristics  
Criminal anthropometry  
Including fingerprints
- .127      Evidence of witnesses
- .127 4      Secret agents
- .127 6      Informers
- .127 9      Interrogation  
Including lie detection [*formerly 364.123*]
- .128      Interception of communication  
Including wiretapping
- 
- 364.13–364.17 Specific kinds of offenses  
Scope: case studies  
Class offenders by kind of offense [*formerly 364.13–364.17*] in 364.3  
*For military offenses, see 355.133 4*
- .13      Against constituted authority  
Class offenses against public health and safety [*both formerly 364.13*] in 364.14  
*For offenses against public order, see 364.14*
- .131      Against the state  
Treason, espionage, conspiracy, seditious libel, subversion, incitement, rebellion, sabotage

## *Welfare and association*

- 364.132      Against public administration  
                Craft, bribery, illegal voting, offenses against postal laws  
                *For offenses against administration of justice, see 364.134*
- .133          Against public revenue  
                Counterfeiting, smuggling, bootlegging, tax evasion
- .134          Against administration of justice  
                Perjury, collusion, contempt of court, lynching
- .135          Piracy
- .138          War crimes  
                *For genocide, see 364.151*
- .14          Against public health, safety [*both formerly 364.13*],  
                order  
                Use 364.140 01 – 364.140 09 for standard subdivisions  
                *For lynching, see 364.134; offenses against public morals,*  
                364.17
- .140 6        Illegal organizations  
                Including Mafia
- .142          Against public health
- .143          Against public order  
                Rioting, unlawful assembly, disorderly conduct, carrying  
                weapons  
                Including union racketeering and gangsterism [*formerly*  
                331.880 8]
- 147          Against traffic and communications safety
- 148          Vagrancy
- 15          Against the person
- 151          Genocide
- 152          Homicide and suicide  
                *For genocide, see 364.151*
- 152 2        Suicide
- 152 3        Murder

## *Decimal Classification*

- 364.152 4      Assassination
- .152 5      Manslaughter
- .153      Sex offenses
  - Rape, adultery, prostitution, seduction
- .154      Abduction
- .155      Other offenses tending to harm physically
  - Robbery, assault and battery, criminal abortion
  - For traffic in drugs, see 364.157*
- .156      Offenses tending to harm psychologically
  - Criminal libel, invasion of home and privacy
  - For burglary, see 364.162*
- .157      Traffic in drugs
- .16      Against property
- .162      Larceny
  - Including burglary
  - For robbery, see 364.155*
- .163      Frauds
  - Forgery, embezzlement, extortion, blackmail, swindles
  - Including fraudulent degrees
- .164      Wilful damage and destruction ( Vandalism )
  - Arson, explosion, depredation
- .17      Against public morals
- .172      Gambling
- .173      Public drunkenness
- .174      Obscenity and pornography
- .178      Cruelty to animals
- .2      Causes of crime and delinquency
  - Environmental and hereditary
- .24      Characteristics of the individual
  - Factors of age, sex, health, mental superiority and inferiority, emotional instability, physical abnormalities

## *Welfare and association*

- 364.25 Social factors
  - .254 Cultural factors
    - Influence of theater, motion pictures, art, literature, comic books, radio, television
  - .255 Leisure and recreation
    - Influence of amusement and public parks, public dance halls, poolrooms, bars, cabarets, automobiles
  - .256 Social conflicts
    - Individual social maladjustments, immigration, class hatreds, racial conflicts, feuds, vendettas
- .26 Economic factors
  - Industry, labor, capital, employment, unemployment, strikes, standards and cost of living, poverty
- .3 Offenders
  - Scope: offenders by kind of offense [*formerly* 364.13–364.17]
  - Class causes of crime and delinquency in 364.2, prevention in 364.4, correction in 364.6–364.8
- .32 Criminal types
  - Recidivists, habitual and professional offenders, occasional offenders, single offenders
- .35 Predelinquents
  - Potential, near, quasi-delinquents
- .36 Juvenile delinquents
  - Including incorrigibility
- .363 Boys
- .364 Girls
- .37 Adults
- .4 Prevention of crime and delinquency
- .42 Control of population
  - Thru eugenic practices, immigration, emigration, segregation
- .43 Control of economic conditions

## *Decimal Classification*

- 364.44      **Law enforcement**
  - Use of government, legislation, community, home, church, school
- .46      **Preventive police work**
- [.5]      **Correctional courts**
  - Class in 340
- ▶      **364.6–364.8 Correction of crime and delinquency**
- .6      **Punishment and other methods**
  - Scope: welfare services to offenders
  - For correctional courts, see 340*
- .61      **Deprivation of liberty**
  - Imprisonment, detention, deportation
- ▶      **364.62–364.65 Conditional release**
- .62      **Parole and indeterminate sentence**
- .63      **Probation, suspended sentence, reprieve**
- .64      **Pardon and amnesty**
- .65      **Commutation of sentence**
- .66      **Capital punishment**
- .67      **Corporal punishment**
- .68      **Deprivation of economic, civil, political rights**
- .682      **Fines**
- .683      **Loss of citizenship**
- .684      **Loss of franchise**
- .7      **Institutions**
  - Reformatories, houses of correction
  - Including institutions for adults
- .72      **For juveniles**
  - Industrial and training schools, colonies, truant schools
- .75      **Plant**
  - Grounds, buildings, equipment

## *Welfare and association*

- 364.76      **Treatment of inmates**  
             Including labor and welfare services  
             Class administration of reformatories [*formerly* 364.76] in 350.84
- .8            **Discharged offenders**  
             Rehabilitation, other welfare services
- .9            **Historical and geographical treatment of criminology**  
             Add area notations 1–9 to 364.9
- 365        **Penology**
- [.09]      **Historical and geographical treatment**  
             Do not use; class in 365.9
- .2            **Prison systems**  
             Congregate, solitary confinement, silent, progressive
- .3            **Kinds of penal institutions**  
             Prisons, penitentiaries, jails, detention homes, workhouses, penal farms and colonies, road camps, concentration camps  
             Class specific institutions in 365.9  
             *For reformatories, houses of correction, see 364.7*
- .4            **Prisons for special classes of offenders**  
             Including juveniles, women, mentally ill (criminally insane), political prisoners, debtors  
             Class specific institutions in 365.9
- .45          **Prisoners of war**  
             Combatants, noncombatants, civilians
- .5            **Prison plant**  
             Grounds, buildings, equipment
- .6            **Inmates**  
             Class administration of prisons [*formerly* 365.6] in 350.84

## Decimal Classification

---

- 365.64      **Treatment**  
              Including escapes
- .642      **Reception and classification**
- .643      **Discipline**  
              Rules and regulations, routine, rights of inmates, restrictions,  
              privileges
- .644      **Punishments of refractory inmates**
- .647      **Release and discharge**
- .65      **Convict labor**  
              Employment of inmates, lease system, chain gangs, contract  
              system
- .66      **Welfare services**  
              Educational work, religious and character training, health,  
              recreation
- .7      **Reform of penal system**
- .9      **Historical and geographical treatment of penology**  
              Scope: specific institutions  
              Add area notations 1-9 to 365.9

---

### 366-369 Association

Organization for common purposes of a fraternal nature or for mutual assistance

Class comprehensive works in 366

*For cooperative systems for production and distribution, see 334*

### 366      **Comprehensive works**

.001-.008      **Standard subdivisions**

[.009]      **Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 366.9

.01-.09      **Standard subdivisions of esoteric associations and societies**

## *Welfare and association*

### ▶ 366.1–366.5 Esoteric (Secret and semisecret) associations and societies

Class standard subdivisions in 366.01–366.09

*For orders of knighthood, see 929.71*

#### 366.1 Freemasonry

.17 Order of DeMolay

.18 Women in Freemasonry

Including Order of the Eastern Star

.2 Knights of Pythias

.3 Independent Order of Odd Fellows

.38 Daughters of the Rebekah

.4 Rosicrucians

.5 Benevolent and Protective Order of Elks

.9 Historical and geographical treatment of association

Add area notations 1–9 to 366.9

#### 367 Social clubs

[.09] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 367.9

.9 Historical and geographical treatment

Add area notations 1–9 to 367.9

#### 368 Insurance

Association to spread risk

Including insurance of libraries [*formerly also 022.2*]

Class marketing of insurance in 658.8, government regulation and control of insurance companies in 350.825, insurance law in 340 [*all formerly 368*]

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world in 368.9



## *Decimal Classification*

- 368.01      **General principles**
  - Scope: actuarial science
- .011      **Rates and rate making**
- .012      **Underwriting**
  - Including reinsurance
- .014      **Claims**
  - Adjustment of claims, settlement of losses
- .014 5      **Fraudulent claims**
- .015      **Finance**
- .016      **Lapsation, persistence, termination**
  - For adjustment of claims, see 368.014*
- 
- 368.06–368.08      **Specific forms of risk**
- .06      **Property risks**
  - Risk of loss from impairment or destruction of property
- .062      **Tangible**
- .063      **Intangible**
- .07      **Personal risks**
  - Risk of loss of income or augmented expenditure due to hazards to the person
- .08      **Other**
  - Including risk of consequential loss
- .09      **Conventional comprehensive sales groupings**
- .092      **Automobile insurance** [*formerly 368.572*]
- .093      **Aviation insurance** [*formerly 368.576*]
- .096      **Real property insurance**

## SUMMARY

- 368.1    **Against damage to and loss of property**
- .2    **Against damage to and loss of property in transit  
            (Transportation insurance)**
- .3    **Against death, old age, illness, injury**
- .4    **Against poverty**
- .5-.8 **Against casualties (Casualty insurance)**
- .5    **Liability**
- .6    **Glass breakage**
- .7    **Industrial casualty**
- .8    **Other**
- .9    **Insurance by continent, country, locality in modern  
            world**

---

### 368.1-368.8 Specific kinds of insurance

Use 001-009 for standard subdivisions under each subdivision identified by \*

Add 01 to each subdivision identified by \* and divide like 368.01, e.g., underwriting life insurance 368.320 12

- 368.1    **\*Against damage to and loss of property**
  - For transportation insurance, see 368.2; casualty insurance, 368.5-368.8*
- .11    **\*Fire insurance**
- .12    **\*Allied fire insurance lines**
- .122    **\*Disaster insurance**
  - Against damage and loss from storms, earthquakes, floods
- .125    **\*Riot and civil commotion insurance**
- .129    **\*Extended coverage insurance**
- .14    **\*War risk insurance**
- .2    **\*Against damage to and loss of property in transit  
            (Transportation insurance)**
  - Scope: insurance against damage to and loss of instrumentalities of transportation
  - Including postal insurance
- .22    **\*Ocean marine insurance**

\* Make standard subdivisions and divide as instructed under 368.1-368.8

## *Decimal Classification*

- 368.23      **\*Inland marine insurance**
  - Class airport insurance [*formerly 368.23*] in 368.24
  - For air transportation insurance, see 368.24*
- .232        **\*Automobile insurance**
  - Including truck and bus insurance
- .233        **\*Railroad insurance**
- .24         **\*Air transportation insurance**
  - Including aircraft insurance [*formerly 368.576*], airport insurance [*formerly 368.23*]
- .3          **\*Against death, old age, illness, injury**
  - For social insurance, see 368.4*
- .32         **\*Life insurance**
  - For special fields of life insurance, see 368.36*
- .36         Special fields of life insurance
- .362        **\*Industrial life insurance**
- .363        **\*Fraternal insurance**
- .364        **\*War risk life insurance**
  - Including National Service Life Insurance
  - Class war risk accident insurance [*formerly 368.364*] in 368.384
- .37         **\*Annuities**
- .375        **\*Variable annuities**
- .38         **\*Accident and health insurance**
- .382        **\*Prepaid health care**
- .382 2      **\*Medical and surgical**
- .382 3      **\*Dental**
- .382 7      **\*Hospital**

**\* Make standard subdivisions and divide as instructed under 368.1–368.8**

## *Welfare and association*

- 368.384      **\*Accident insurance**  
Including war risk accident insurance [*formerly* 368.364],  
air travel accident insurance [*formerly* 368.576], other  
travel accident insurance
- .386      **\*Disability income insurance**
- .4      **\*Against poverty**  
Government-sponsored social insurance: social security
- .41      **\*Workmen's compensation insurance**  
Protection against losses incurred thru disablements caused by  
the job
- .42      **\*Accident and health insurance**  
*For workmen's compensation insurance, see 368.41*
- .424      **\*Maternity insurance**
- .426      **\*Accident and health insurance for the aged**
- .43      **\*Old-age and survivors' insurance**  
*For accident and health insurance for the aged, see 368.426*
- .44      **\*Unemployment insurance**
- **368.5-368.8 Against casualties (Casualty insurance)**
- .5      **\*Liability**
- .56      **Miscellaneous lines**  
Livestock, owners', landlords', tenants', contractual, elevator,  
personal
- .57      **\*Instrumentalities of transportation**
- .572      **\*Automobile**  
Class comprehensive automobile insurance [*formerly*  
368.572] in 368.092
- .576      **\*Aviation**  
Class comprehensive aviation insurance in 368.093, aircraft  
insurance in 368.24, air travel accident insurance in 368.384  
[*all formerly* 368.576]

**\* Make standard subdivisions and divide as instructed under 368.1-368.8**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 368.6      \*Glass breakage**  
Plate glass, windows, neon and fluorescent signs and lamps
- .7          \*Industrial casualty**  
Boiler, machinery, power-plant, nuclear-accident, power-interruption insurance
- .8          Other**
- .81          \*Business insurance**
- .815          \*Business interruption insurance**  
Including strike insurance
- .82          \*Burglary, robbery, theft insurance**
- .83          \*Fidelity bonds**  
Guarantee against loss to employers because of dishonesty of employees
- .84          \*Surety bonds**  
Guarantee against loss due to failure to perform an obligation or fulfil a contract
- .85          Other guarantees**  
*For credit insurance, see 368.87; title insurance, 368.88*
- .852          \*Mortgage insurance**
- .853          \*Investment guarantees**
- .854          \*Bank deposit insurance**
- .87          \*Credit insurance**  
Insurance of creditor against loss due to debtor's insolvency
- .88          \*Title insurance**
- .9          Insurance by continent, country, locality in modern world**  
Add area notations 4–9 to 368.9

**\* Make standard subdivisions and divide as instructed under 368.1–368.8**

**369 Other kinds of associations and societies**

**.1 Hereditary, military, patriotic societies of United States**

If preferred, class in 369.23–369.29

**.11 General**

Military and naval orders, Medal of Honor Legion, Military Order of Foreign Wars of the United States, Veterans of Foreign Wars

**.12 Colonial**

Society of Colonial Wars, Colonial Dames, Mayflower Descendants

**.13 Revolutionary**

Including Society of the Cincinnati, Sons of the American Revolution

**.135 Daughters of the American Revolution**

**.14 Commemorating events of 1789–1861**

**.15 Union Civil War**

Grand Army of the Republic, Society of the Army of the Cumberland

**.16 Auxiliary Union societies of Civil War**

**.17 Confederate Civil War**

United Confederate Veterans, United Daughters of the Confederacy

**.18 Wars of 1898 and later**

**.181 Spanish-American War**

**.186 World Wars I and II and Korean War**

**.186 1 American Legion**

**.186 2 Amvets**

**.186 3 Disabled American Veterans**

### *Decimal Classification*

- 369.2 Hereditary, military, patriotic societies other than United States**
  - .21 International**
  - .23-.29 Specific countries**
    - (Optional: United States; prefer 369.1)
    - Add area notations 3-9 to 369.2
  - .4 Young people's societies**
    - .42 Boys'**
      - For Boy Scouts, see 369.43*
    - .43 Boy Scouts**
    - .46 Girls'**
      - For Camp Fire Girls, see 369.47*
    - .463 Girl Scouts and Girl Guides**
    - .47 Camp Fire Girls**
  - .5 Service clubs**
    - Including Rotary, Kiwanis, Lions

## 370 Education

Class study and teaching of a specific subject at elementary level in 372.3–372.8, at higher levels with the subject

- .1      **Philosophy, theories, principles**
- .11      Aims, objectives, value
- .112      Humanistic education
- .114      Moral, ethical, character education [*all formerly*  
377.2]
- 12      Classification and other philosophical foundations  
         Including idealism, realism, pragmatism
- .13      Scientific aspects  
         Divide like 510–590, e.g., somatological aspects 370.137 3  
         Class psychological aspects in 370.15, value in 370.11
- .15      Educational psychology  
         Investigation of psychological problems involved in education,  
         together with practical application of psychological principles  
         to education
- .18      Research methodology
- .183      Surveys and appraisals of educational systems  
         Class surveys and evaluation by central government in  
         379.152 2
- .19      Sociological aspects  
         Class psychological aspects in 370.15
- .193      Educational sociology  
         Educational objectives and organization within the frame-  
         work of group life as a whole
- .193 1      Community and school relations  
         Including parent-teacher associations [*formerly* 371.103]  
         Class relation of teachers to community in 371.104
- .193 3      Role of school in fostering society
- .193 32      Education for individual fulfilment
- .193 34      Education for social responsibility



## *Decimal Classification*

- 370.193 4            Social problems affecting school organization  
                         Racial, cultural, environmental factors
- .193 42            Integration of specific groups  
                         Including racial groups [*formerly 371.97*]
- .193 44            Segregation of specific groups  
                         Including racial groups [*formerly 371.97*]
- .193 46            Rural education
- .193 48            Urban education
- .194               Fundamental education  
                         Preparation of educationally underprivileged children and  
                         adults for effective participation in community life
- .195               Comparative education
- .196               Intercultural education  
                         Programs to promote mutual understanding among nations  
                         and cultures thru exchange of instructional materials,  
                         techniques, students, teachers, technicians
- .7                 Study and teaching of education
- .71                 Professional education of teachers  
                         Including training classes [*formerly 370.75*], teachers' meetings  
                         Class schools and courses in 370.73
- .712               For specific grades or levels
- .712 2             Kindergarten and elementary
- .712 3             Secondary
- .712 4             College and university
- .72                 Teachers' conferences, institutes, workshops  
                         Class research in 370.78
- .73                 Institutions of higher education
- .730 1-.730 9      Standard subdivisions
- .732               Courses and programs
- .732 6             For specific grades or levels
- .732 62            Kindergarten and elementary

## *Education*

---

- 370.732 63            Secondary
- .732 64            College and university
- .733            Practice teaching
  - Facilities and programs
- [.75]            Training classes
  - Class in 370.71
  - Class collecting and collections of objects in 370.775
- .76            Professional education of administrators
  - Class review and exercise in 370.776
- .77            Miscellany
- .775            Collecting and collections of objects
- .776            Review and exercise
- .777            Programed teaching and learning
- .778            Use of apparatus and equipment
- .78            Educational research
  - Divide like standard subdivision 072, e.g., historical research 370.782
  - Class use of apparatus and equipment in 370.778
- 371            **The school**
  - Organization and administration
  - Use 371.001–371.009 for standard subdivisions
  - For organization and administration of the school at a specific level, see the level, e.g., the elementary school 372.11–372.18*
  - .01            The public school
    - The tax-supported school providing free education
    - Class public education in 379.2
  - .02            The private school
    - Known also as the public school (in Great Britain)
    - Class nonpublic education in 379.3

## Decimal Classification

### SUMMARY

- 371.1 Teaching and teaching personnel
- .2 Educational administration
- .3 Methods of instruction and study
- .4 Guidance and counseling
- .5 School discipline
- .6 Physical plant
- .7 School hygiene
- .8 The student
- .9 Special education

#### 371.1 Teaching and teaching personnel

Use 371.100 1 – 371.100 9 for standard subdivisions

Class personnel management in 658.3

Class nonteaching personnel [*formerly* 371.1] in 371.201–371.202

*For methods of instruction, see* 371.3

#### .102 Teacher-student relation

Effectiveness and influence of teacher

Including classroom control [*formerly* 371.5]

#### .103 Teacher-parent relation

Class parent-teacher associations [*formerly* 371.103] in 370.193 1

#### .104 Relation of teaching and teachers to community

##### .104 2 Rights and obligations of teachers

*For academic freedom, see* 371.104 4

##### .104 4 Academic freedom

##### .104 6 Public status of teaching and teachers

#### .11 Personal qualifications

#### .12 Professional qualifications

#### .13 Examination and certification

##### .132 Examination

##### .133 Certification and registration

#### .14 Organization of teaching force

##### .141 Duties and responsibilities

##### .141 2 Teaching load

##### .141 4 Nonteaching activities

#### .142 Exchange of teachers

## *Education*

[371.16] Compensation of teachers

Class in 331.2

[.17] Teachers' pensions

Class in 331.252

### **.2 Educational administration**

Use 371.200 1 – 371.200 9 for standard subdivisions

► 371.201–371.202 Nonteaching personnel [*formerly also*  
371.1]

Duties and responsibilities

.201 Administrative

.201 1 Superintendents

.201 2 Principals

.201 3 Supervisors

.202 Nonadministrative

.204 Standards and accreditation

*For central government supervision of school standards and  
accreditation, see 379.152 1*

## **SUMMARY**

371.21 Matriculation

.22 Tuition

.23 School year

.24 School day

.25 Grouping of pupils for instruction

.26 Educational tests and measurements

.27 Evaluation of pupils' progress

.28 Promotion and retardation

.29 Other topics

.21 Matriculation

[.211–.212] Elementary schools

Class in 372.11–372.18

[.213] Secondary schools

Class in 373.12–373.18

[.214] Colleges and universities

Class in 378.105

*Decimal Classification*

---

371.216	Admission
	Methods and standards
.217	Entrance requirements
.218	Articulation
.219	School enrollment
	Add area notations 1-9 to 371.219
.22	Tuition
.23	School year
.232	Summer school
.235	School calendar
.236	All-year school
.24	School day
.242	Schedules and scheduling
	Individual, class, all-school
.242 1	Class schedules and periods
.242 2	Homeroom periods
.242 4	Activity periods
.244	Length of school day
.25	Grouping of pupils for instruction
.251	Class size
.252	Heterogeneous grouping
	Without consideration for interests, abilities, achievements
.254	Homogeneous grouping
	On basis of similar interests, abilities, achievements
.255	Grouping plans using a combination of factors

## *Education*

- 371.26      Educational tests and measurements
- Measurement of students' growth in subject areas by use of  
            standardized achievement tests
- Administration, interpretation, use
- Class credit systems [*formerly 371.26*] in 371.281
- .260 13      Validity and reliability of tests
- .262      Tests to determine general education and scholarship
- .264      Tests for special purposes
- .264 2      Educational quotient
- Assessment of achievement
- .264 4      Academic prognosis
- .264 41      Placement testing
- .264 42      Educational guidance
- .264 6      Vocational interests
- .27      Evaluation of pupils' progress
- Measurement of growth in subject areas by examination based  
            on specific courses of study or curriculums
- .271      Tests and examinations
- Types, value, methods of construction
- .272      Marking systems
- Methods used for recording and reporting the achievement  
            of pupils in school studies
- .272 1      Grades and grading
- .272 2      Reporting progress to parents
- Thru school marks and conferences
- .28      Promotion and retardation
- .281      Credit
- Including credit systems [*formerly 371.26*]
- .282      Student failures [*formerly also 371.291 3*]

## *Decimal Classification*

- 371.29      Other topics
    - .291      Student mobility
    - .291 2      Graduation and commencement
    - .291 3      Dropouts
      - Retention versus withdrawal
      - Class student failures [*formerly* 371.291 3] in 371.282
    - .291 4      Transfers
  - .3      **Methods of instruction and study**
    - .302 8      Techniques
    - .302 81      Study techniques [*formerly also* 029.1]
    - .302 82      Classroom techniques
    - .307 8      Teaching aids and devices
      - Class textbooks in 371.32, audio-visual materials in 371.33
    - .307 81      Curriculum laboratories
    - .307 82      Courses of study
- SUMMARY**
- 371.32      Textbooks
  - .33      Audio-visual materials for teaching
  - .36      Project or unit method
  - .37      Discussion methods
  - .38      Laboratory method
  - .39      Other methods
  - .32      Textbooks
    - Value and use
    - Class textbooks on a specific subject at elementary level in 372.3–372.8, at higher levels with the subject
  - .33      Audio-visual materials for teaching
    - Methods and use
    - Class lecture method [*formerly* 371.33] in 371.396
  - .331      Coordination of use
  - .332      Dramatic method of teaching
  - .333      Auditory materials and devices
  - .333 1      Radio

- 371.333 2      Phonograph and phonograph records
  - .333 3      Tape recorder and recordings
  - .335      Visual materials and devices
  - .335 2      Pictures
  - .335 22      Slides and filmstrips
  - .335 23      Motion pictures
  - .335 6      Bulletin boards
  - .335 8      Television
- 
- 371.36–371.39 Methods of organizing learning experiences
- .36      Project or unit method
  - [.365]      Special day programs in schools  
                     Class in 371.895
  - .37      Discussion methods
  - .371      Seminars
  - .372      Buzz groups
  - .373      Conferences
  - .38      Laboratory method
  - .381      Field trips  
                     Including educational trips, excursions, visits [*all formerly*  
                     371.393]
  - .382      Work-study programs
  - .383      Field work
  - .39      Other methods
  - .391      Student exchange programs
  - [.393]      Educational trips, excursions, visits  
                     Class in 371.381
  - .394      Individualized instruction
  - .394 2      Honors work
  - .394 3      Independent study plans
  - .394 4      Programed learning  
                     Auto-instructional methods



## Decimal Classification

---

- 371.396      Lecture method [*formerly* 371.33]
- .4      Guidance and counseling**  
        Formal and informal
- .42      Educational and vocational guidance
- .422      Intellectual and educational
- .425      Vocational  
            Class comprehensive works on choice of vocation in 331.702,  
            on obtaining employment in 331.115 [*both formerly* |  
            371.425]
- .425 1      Job selection
- .425 2      Placement
- .425 3      Follow-up
- [.426]      Trade and vocational education  
            Class trade and vocational education in secondary schools in  
            373.246, adult vocational education in 374.013
- .46      Social guidance
- .48      Group guidance
- .5      School discipline**  
        Class classroom control [*formerly* 371.5] in 371.102
- .53      Rewards  
            Class competitions, prizes, literary contests [*all formerly*  
            371.53] in 371.891
- .54      Punishments  
            Including specific punishments [*formerly* 371.55–371.56]
- [.55–.56]      Specific punishments  
            Class in 371.54
- .59      Student government
- .6      Physical plant**
- .61      Locations, sites, grounds

## *Education*

371.62

### **Buildings**

Requirements based on specific functions

Scope: apparatus, equipment, supplies

*For architecture of buildings for educational purposes, see 727*

### **371.621–371.625 Rooms and buildings for specific purposes**

Scope: furnishings

.621

Study rooms, assembly rooms, classrooms

[.622]

Libraries and museums

Class libraries in **022**, museums in **069.2**

.623

Laboratories, observatories, machine shops

Including laboratory equipment and supplies [*both formerly 371.66*]

.624

Gymnasiums and swimming pools

Including apparatus, equipment, supplies [*all formerly 371.67*]

.625

Other

Student society houses, premises, rooms [*all formerly 371.86*], dormitories, infirmaries, cafeterias

### **371.626–371.628 General principles**

*For rooms and buildings for specific purposes, see 371.621–371.625*

.626

Plumbing facilities

.627

Lighting and use of color

.628

Heating and ventilation

.63

**Furnishings**

*For furnishings in rooms and buildings for specific purposes, see 371.621–371.625*

## *Decimal Classification*

- [371.66]      Laboratory equipment and supplies  
                 Class in 371.623
- .67            Apparatus, equipment, supplies  
                 Class apparatus, equipment, supplies for gymnasiums and  
                 swimming pools [*all formerly 371.67*] in 371.624  
                 *For apparatus, equipment, supplies based on specific  
                 functions, see 371.62*
- .7             School hygiene
- .71            Student health  
                 Promotion and maintenance
- .712           Health programs  
                 Services, control, conditions  
                 Including care of students' eyes [*formerly 371.72*]
- .716           Nutrition  
                 Lunch and milk programs
- [.72]           Care of students' eyes  
                 Class in 371.712
- [.73]           Physical education  
                 Class in 613.7
- [.732 2]       At elementary level  
                 Class in 372.86
- [.74]           Intramural athletics, games, programs  
                 Class intramural athletics and games in 796, intramural  
                 programs in 371.892
- [.75]           Interscholastic athletics, games, programs  
                 Class interscholastic athletics and games in 796, interscholastic  
                 sports programs in 371.893
- [.76]           Health education  
                 Class at elementary level in 372.37, comprehensive works in  
                 613.07

## *Education*

- 371.77      Safety programs
- .774      Fire prevention
- .775      Safety precautions
- .8      **The student**
  - Nonacademic life and welfare
- .805      Student periodicals
  - Class school journalism [*formerly* 371.805] in 371.897
- [.806]      Organizations
  - Do not use; class in 371.83–371.85
- .81      Attitudes and behavior
  - For school discipline, see* 371.5; *guidance and counseling, 371.4*
- 371.83–371.85 Organizations
- .83      General
- .84      In specific fields
  - Divide like 001–999, e.g., literary societies 371.848
  - For Greek-letter societies in specific fields, see* 371.854
- .85      Greek-letter societies and fraternities
- .852      Honorary
  - Not in a specific subject field
- .854      In specific fields
  - Divide like 001–999, e.g., social sciences 371.854 3
- .855      Men's social societies and fraternities
- .856      Women's social societies and sororities
- [.857]      High school Greek-letter societies
  - Class in 373.12–373.18
- [.86]      Student society houses, premises, rooms
  - Class in 371.625

### *Decimal Classification*

- 371.87 Housing and transportation of students
  - .871 Housing
  - .872 Transportation [*formerly* 379.175]
  - .89 Activities
    - Programs and events sponsored or formed by schools or student organizations, carrying partial or no academic credit
  - .891 Nonathletic contests
    - Including competitions, prizes, literary contests [*all formerly* 371.53]
  - .892 Social and recreational activities
    - Including intramural athletics and games programs [*formerly* 371.74]
  - .893 Activities for public entertainment
    - Interscholastic sports programs [*formerly* 371.75], marching bands, dramatic groups
  - .894 School service activities
    - For student government, see* 371.59; *school journalism, 371.897*
  - .895 Special school festivals and celebrations
    - Including special day programs in schools [*formerly* 371.365]
    - Class school plays in 800, school pageants in 791.62, school dramatics in 792.022-792.028 [*all formerly* 371.895]
  - .897 School journalism [*formerly* 371.805]
- .9 Special education
  - Education employing nonstandard curriculums for exceptional students
  - .91 Students with physical handicaps
    - .911 Blind and partially sighted
    - .912 Deaf and hard-of-hearing
    - .914 Speech defectives [*formerly* 371.927]
    - .916 Crippled

## *Education*

- 371.92      Students with mental deficiencies
- [.927]      Speech defectives  
              Class in 371.914
- .93          Delinquent and problem students  
              Students whose conduct is troublesome
- .94          Emotionally disturbed students
- .95          Gifted students
- .96          Students exceptional because of class distinction  
              Socially deprived, nobility, royalty
- .97          Students exceptional because of race  
              Class integration of racial groups in 370.193 42, segregation of  
              racial groups in 370.193 44 [*both formerly 371.97*]
- .98          Students exceptional because of national origin

## 372      Elementary education

Scope: elementary education of girls [*formerly 376*]  
*For special education, see 371.9*

- [.09]      Historical and geographical treatment  
              Do not use; class in 372.9

## SUMMARY

- 372.1      The elementary school
- .2          Levels of elementary education
- .3          Science and health
- .4          Reading
- .5          Creative and manual arts
- .6          Language arts (Communication skills)
- .7          Mathematics
- .8          Other studies
- .9          Historical and geographical treatment of elementary  
              education and schools

## *Decimal Classification*

### **372.1 The elementary school**

[.109] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 372.9

.11-.18 Organization [*formerly* 372.2] and administration

Including matriculation [*formerly also* 371.211-371.212]

Divide like 371.1-371.8, e.g., elementary school day 372.124

.19 Curriculums

Class courses of study in specific elementary school subjects in  
372.3-372.8

.2 Levels of elementary education

Class elementary school organization [*formerly* 372.2] in  
372.11-372.18

.21 Preschool education

[.214] Storytelling

Class in 372.64

[.215] Songs

Class in 372.87

.216 Nursery schools

.218 Kindergartens

When not considered part of elementary grades

.24 Elementary grades

Preschool thru upper elementary

*For preschool education, see 372.21*

.241 Primary

Thru grade 3

.242 Upper elementary

Grades 4 thru 6, grades 7 and 8 when not part of junior high  
school

► 372.3–372.8 Elementary school subjects

Methods of instruction, courses of study, textbooks

372.3 Science and health

.35 Science

.357 Nature study

.37 Health [*formerly* 371.76] and hygiene

.4 Reading

.41 Methods and techniques

.412 Textbooks

.413 Remedial reading

[.415] Phonetics and speech

Class in 372.62

[.42] Spelling

Class in 372.63

.5 Creative and manual arts

Class drama [*formerly* 372.5] in 372.66

[.51] Handwriting and lettering

Class in 372.6

.52 Drawing, painting, design

.53 Modeling and sculpturing

.54 Sewing

.55 Handicrafts

*For sewing, see 372.54*

.6 Language arts (Communication skills)

Oral and written

Including handwriting and lettering [*both formerly also* 372.51]

*For reading, see 372.4*

.61 Grammar

.62 Phonetics and speech [*formerly also* 372.415]



## *Decimal Classification*

- 372.63      Spelling [*formerly also* 372.42]
- .64      Storytelling [*formerly* 372.214]
- .65      Foreign languages
- .66      Drama [*formerly also* 372.5]
  
- .7      **Mathematics**
- .72      Arithmetic
- .73      Other
  
- .8      **Other studies**
- .83      Social studies
  - Study of people and their environment
  - For history and geography, see* 372.89
- .832      Civics
- .86      Physical education [*formerly* 371.732 2]
- .87      Music
  - Including songs [*formerly* 372.215]
- .89      History and geography
- .891      Geography
  
- .9      **Historical and geographical treatment of elementary education and schools**
  - Add area notations 1–9 to 372.9
  
- 373      **Secondary education**
  - For special education, see* 371.9
  
  - .09      Historical and geographical treatment
    - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 373.3–373.9
  
  - .1      **The secondary school**
  - .109      Historical and geographical treatment
    - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 373.3–373.9

## *Education*

- 373.11–373.18 Organization and administration
- 373.11 Teaching and teaching personnel
- Divide like 371.1, e.g., professional qualifications of teachers 373.112
- .12–.18 Other elements
- Including high school Greek-letter societies [*formerly also* 371.857], matriculation [*formerly also* 371.213]
- Divide like 371.2–371.8, e.g., secondary school day 373.124
- .19 Curriculums
- For courses of study in specific subjects, see 375.01–375.99; educational programs of secondary schools of specific curricular types, 373.24*
- .2 Types of secondary schools
- .22 Types as to control
- .222 Nonpublic
- Known also as public (in Great Britain)
- Including boarding schools, day schools
- For church-supported schools, see 377.8–377.9*
- .224 Public
- .23 Types as to organization
- .231 Organizational plans
- According to grades covered by elementary, junior high, senior high levels
- .236 Junior high schools
- .238 Senior high schools
- Including community colleges when considered part of high school system

## Decimal Classification

---

- 373.24      Types as to curriculum  
              Based on and including educational programs
- .241      College preparatory (Academic)
- .242      Classical (Traditional)  
              Including Latin grammar schools
- 
- 373.243-373.246 Specialized high schools
- .243      Military academies
- .246      Trade and vocational [*both formerly also 371.426*]  
              Designed for terminal education
- .246 3      Agriculture
- .246 4      Home economics
- .246 5      Business and commerce (Distributive education)
- .246 7      Industrial arts
- .25        Comprehensive high schools
- .3-.9      Secondary education and schools by continent, country,  
              locality  
              Add area notations 3-9 to 373

## 374      Adult education

Voluntary, purposeful efforts toward self-development of adults,  
conducted apart from formal education by public and private  
agencies

Scope: workers' supplementary education [*formerly 331.85*]

Use 374.001-374.008 for standard subdivisions

*For special education, see 371.9*

- .01        Aims and objectives
- .012      Remedial  
              To fill gaps in prior education, reduce illiteracy
- .013      Vocational [*formerly also 371.426*] and occupational
- .014      Liberal and recreational  
              To enrich interests, resources, leisure

## *Education*

- [374.09]      **Historical and geographical treatment**  
                 Do not use; class in 374.9
- .1            **Self-education**
- .2            **Group education**  
                 Methods and programs
- .21          Special interest groups
- .22          Reading and discussion [*formerly also* 374.24] groups
- [.24]        Discussion groups  
                 Class in 374.22
- .26          Use of radio
- .27          Use of motion pictures and television
- .28          Community centers for adult education
- .29          Institutions and agencies  
                 Including institutes and workshops [*both formerly* 374.8]  
                 Class schools in 374.4–374.8
- .291        Private
- .292        Governmental
- .292 2      Federal and national
- .292 3      State and provincial
- .292 4      County and local
- .4           **Correspondence schools and instruction**
- .409        Historical and geographical treatment  
                 Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern  
                 world in 374.44–374.49
- .44–.49    Treatment by continent, country, locality in modern  
                 world  
                 Add area notations 4–9 to 374.4

## *Decimal Classification*

### **374.8 Continuation schools**

Schools above elementary level enabling young people in trade or industry to continue schooling in spare time

Add area notations 1–9 to 374.8

Class institutes and workshops [*both formerly 374.8*] in 374.29

### **.9 Historical and geographical treatment of adult education**

Add area notations 1–9 to 374.9

## **375 Curriculum**

Programs of study offered to students by schools

Use 375.000 1 – 375.000 8 for standard subdivisions

Class comprehensive works on curriculums at a specific level with the level

### **.001 Construction and design**

Theory and development

### **.002 Required courses**

### **.004 Elective courses**

### **.006 Evaluation and revision**

### **.009 Historical and geographical treatment**

### **.01–.99 Courses of study in specific subjects**

Guides prepared for specific schools or school systems as aids to teaching

Divide like 010–990, e.g., history 375.9

Class courses of study on specific subjects at elementary level in 372.3–372.8

## **376 Education of women**

Class elementary education of girls [*formerly 376*] in 372

### **[.09] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 376.9

### **.5 Convent education**

*Education*

**376.6 Education of women by level**

**.63 Secondary**

**.65 Higher**

*For colleges for women, see 376.8*

**.7 Coeducation versus separate education for women**

**.8 Colleges for women**

Class specific topics in 378.01–378.36

Class specific colleges for women [*formerly 376.8*] in 378.4–378.9

**.9 Historical and geographical treatment**

Add area notations 1–9 to 376.9

**377 Schools and religion**

**.1 Religious instruction in nonsectarian schools**

**[.2] Moral, ethical, character education**

Class in 370.114

**.3 Monastic schools**

**[.4] Diocesan schools**

Class in 377.8

**[.5] Parochial schools**

Class in 377.8

**.6 Mission schools**

Schools operated by religious bodies as part of their missionary work

## Decimal Classification



### 377.8–377.9 Church-supported schools

Schools conducted by religious groups, usually without tax support

Scope: programs, problems, evaluation

Class a specific school with its level

*For monastic schools, see 377.3; mission schools, 377.6*

#### 377.8

#### Schools supported by Christian groups

Including diocesan schools [*formerly 377.4*], parochial schools [*formerly 377.5*]

Divide like 281–289, e.g., Roman Catholic schools 377.82

#### .9

#### Schools supported by other groups

Divide like 292–299, e.g., schools of Islamic faith 377.97

### 378

### Higher education

*For special education, see 371.9*

#### .001

Philosophy and theory

#### .002

Miscellany

#### .002 5

Directories

Class directories of institutions by continent, country, locality in modern world in 378.4–378.9

#### .003–.008

Dictionaries, serial publications, organizations, study and teaching, collections

#### .009

Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world in 378.4–378.9

#### .01

Aims and objectives

#### .012

General education

#### .013

Professional education [*formerly 378.99*]

Class professional and graduate education in a specific subject with the subject

#### .02

Finance

## *Education*

► 378.04–378.05 Ownership and control of colleges and universities

378.04 Privately operated institutions

Class specific institutions in 378.4–378.9

*For church-supported schools, see 377.8–377.9*

.05 Publicly operated institutions [*formerly* 379.16]

Class specific institutions in 378.4–378.9

.052 Community colleges

When not considered part of high school system

.053 State colleges and universities

.054 Land-grant colleges and universities

### SUMMARY

378.1 Colleges and universities

.2 Academic degrees

.3 Student costs and finances

.4–.9 Higher education and institutions by continent, country, locality in modern world

.1 Colleges and universities

Organization and administration

Use 378.100 1 – 378.100 9 for standard subdivisions

.101 Government

.101 1 Personnel

Boards, trustees, faculty senates and councils

.101 2 Policies and regulations

.102 Financial management

.103 College-community relations

.104 Cooperation among colleges and universities

.105 Matriculation [*formerly also* 371.214]

Divide like 371.216–371.219, e.g., entrance requirements  
378.105 7



*Decimal Classification*

---

- 378.11      Administrative personnel  
                 Functions and duties
- .111      Academic
- .112      Nonacademic
- .12      Faculty
- .121      Academic freedom
- .122      Organization
- .123      Exchange
- .124      Personal and professional qualifications
- [.13]      University extension  
                 Class in 378.155 4
- .14      College year  
                 Divide like 371.23, e.g., summer school 378.142
- .15      Types and levels of institutions  
                 Class specific institutions in 378.4–378.9
- .154      Colleges
- .154 2      Senior
- .154 3      Junior
- .154 4      Evening colleges
- .155      Universities
- .155 2      Undergraduate departments
- .155 3      Graduate departments and schools
- .155 4      Extension [*formerly also* 378.13]  
                 *For evening colleges, see* 378.154 4
- .16      Academic control and organization of student body  
                 Divide like 371.26–371.29, e.g., credit and credit systems  
                 378.168 1
- .17      Methods of instruction and study  
                 Divide like 371.3, e.g., seminars 378.177 1  
                 *For educational exchanges, see* 378.35

## *Education*

- 378.18      School discipline  
                Divide like 371.5, e.g., student government 378.189
- .19          Other aspects
- .194          Guidance and counseling  
                Divide like 371.4, e.g., educational guidance 378.194 22
- .196–.198      Physical plant, hygiene, the student  
                Divide like 371.6–371.8, e.g., student activities 378.198 9
- .199          Curriculums  
                *For courses of study in specific subjects, see 375.01–375.99*
- .2          Academic degrees
- .24          Earned degrees
- .241          Course, residence, subject requirements
- .242          Thesis requirements  
                Class preparation of theses [*formerly 378.242*] in 808.02
- .25          Honorary degrees
- .28          Costumes and symbols
- .3          Student costs and finances
- [.32]          Endowment of research  
                Class in 001.44
- 
- 378.33–378.36 Financial aid to students  
                *For veterans' education benefits, see 355.115 2*
- .33          Fellowships
- .34          Scholarships
- .35          Educational exchanges  
                Including Fulbright exchanges
- .36          Student loans and employment
- .362          Loans and loan funds
- .365          Employment

## Decimal Classification

### 378.4-.9 Higher education and institutions by continent, country, locality in modern world

Scope: specific colleges for women [formerly 376.8]

Add area notations 4-9 to 378

If preferred, arrange specific colleges and universities alphabetically under each continent, and under specific countries requiring local emphasis

If it is desired to give local emphasis to a specific college or university, place it first by use of a letter, e.g., University of South Africa 378.8 (preceding 378.4)

(Optional: publications of specific colleges and universities; prefer specific subjects)

Subarrange publications of specific colleges and universities according to the following table:

- A Charter and statutes
- B Trustees and regents
- C Administrative officers
- D Finances
- E History
- F Biographies and necrologies
- G General catalogs
- H Annual catalogs, attendance lists, registers
- I Handbooks and circulars of information
- J Bulletins and official periodicals
- K Commencements, inaugurals, baccalaureate and other addresses
- L Programs, tickets, memorabilia
- M Faculty
- N Lectures, class manuals, examination questions
- O Student theses, orations, essays
- P Student catalogs and society annuals
- Q Student periodicals
- R Student societies and their periodicals
- S Student miscellany
  - Including songs, class days
- T Alumni
- U Classes
- V Pictures and class albums
- W Buildings and grounds
- Z Professional, graduate, other schools

### [.99] Professional education

Class in 378.013

**379      Governmental supervision and financial support of  
             education**

**.1          General principles**

Class applications in 379.2-379.9

379.12-379.13 Financial support

**.12        Federal, national, state, provincial, local support of  
             education**

**.121       Federal and national aid**

.121 2            To elementary and secondary education

.121 22           Public

.121 24           Nonpublic

.121 4            To higher education

.121 42           Public

.121 44           Nonpublic

.122            Expenditures and support at state and provincial level

.123            Expenditures and support at local level

**.13        Revenue sources for public schools**

.132            Bonds

.134            Taxation

**[.14]      School laws and regulations**

Class in 340

**.15        Government supervision**

Class public administration aspects [*formerly 379.15*] in 350.85

**.152       Central government supervision**

Thru central agencies

*For certification and registration of teachers, see 371.133*

.152 1           School standards and accreditation

.152 2           Surveys and evaluation

## *Decimal Classification*

- 379.153      **School districts**  
                Local supervision and responsibility
- .153 1      **School boards**
- .153 5      **Centralization and consolidation** [*both formerly also*  
                379.175]
- .156      **Textbook selection**  
                Central and local
- [.16]      **Publicly operated institutions of higher education**  
                Class in 378.05
- [.175]      **Centralization, consolidation, transportation**  
                Class centralization and consolidation in 379.153 5,  
                transportation of students in 371.872
- .2      Public education**  
                Class public education at a specific level with the level
- .209      **Historical and geographical treatment**  
                Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern  
                world in 379.4–379.9
- 379.23–379.24 **Governmental concern with and control**  
                over literate populace
- .23      **Compulsory education**
- .24      **Illiteracy**
- .3      Nonpublic education**  
                Class nonpublic education at a specific level with the level, pro-  
                grams of church-supported schools in 377.8–377.9
- .4–.9      Public education by continent, country, locality in modern**  
                **world**  
                Add area notations 4–9 to 379

# 380 Commerce

Publicly and privately owned and administered activities and facilities for human intercourse thru exchange of goods and services, communication, transportation

Class comprehensive works on public utility services in 363.6, public regulation and control in 350.87, management in 658, international commercial law in 341.57, domestic commercial law in 347.7 [*all formerly 380*]

.01 Philosophy and theory

.013 Value

Including commerce and civilization

.02-.05 Miscellany, dictionaries, serial publications

.06 Organizations

Scope: chambers of commerce, boards of trade

.07-.08 Study, teaching, collections, anthologies

.09 Historical and geographical treatment

.1 Exchange of goods and services (Trade) [*formerly 382*]

Scope: marketing [*formerly 338*]

Class specific kinds in 381-382

.101 Philosophy and theory

.102 Miscellany

.102 5 Directories of dealers and traders

.103-.109 Other standard subdivisions

.13 Commercial policy

*For specific commodities and services, see 380.14*

.14 Specific commodities and services

► 380.141-380.144 Primary products

.141 Agricultural

Divide like 633-638, e.g., rice 380.141 318

.142 Mineral

Divide like 553, e.g., petroleum 380.142 282

## *Decimal Classification*

- 380.143      Hunting and fishing  
                Divide like 592–599, e.g., bearskins 380.143 974 446
- .144      Human beings (Slave trade) [*formerly* 326.1]
- .145      Secondary products and services  
                Use 380.145 000 1 – 380.145 000 9 for standard subdivisions  
                Divide like 001–999, e.g., clothing 380.145 687
- .3      **Communication services**  
                Class specific kinds in 383–384
- .301–.309      Standard subdivisions
- .34      Activities
- .35      Facilities
- .5      **Transportation services [*formerly* 385]**  
                Class specific kinds in 385–388
- .501–.509      Standard subdivisions
- .51      Comparative studies of kinds of transportation
- .52      Activities
- .53      Facilities
- .58      Mergers and consolidations of systems
- **381–382 Exchange of goods and services  
(Trade)**  
                Scope: marketing  
                Class comprehensive works in 380.1
- 381      **Internal commerce (Domestic trade)**
- .3      **Commercial policy**  
                Promotion of, competition in, barriers to commerce  
                *For specific commodities and services, see 381.4*

## Commerce

### 381.4 Specific commodities and services

#### ► 381.41–381.44 Primary products

#### .41 Agricultural

Divide like 633–638, e.g., rice 381.413 18

#### .42 Mineral

Divide like 553, e.g., petroleum 381.422 82

#### .43 Hunting and fishing

Divide like 592–599, e.g., bearskins 381.439 744 46

#### .44 Human beings (Slave trade)

#### .45 Secondary products and services

Use 381.450 001 – 381.450 009 for standard subdivisions

Divide like 001–999, e.g., clothing trade 381.456 87

### 382 International commerce (Foreign trade)

Scope: tariff [*formerly* 337], trade between nations, between nations and their colonies, protectorates, trusts

Class comprehensive works on exchange of goods and services [*formerly* 382] in 380.1

#### .09 Historical and geographical treatment

Add area notations 1–9 to 382.09, e.g., international trade of Great Britain 382.094 2; then, for trade between two countries, regions, areas, places, groups, add 0 and again add area notations 1–9, e.g., trade between Great Britain and communist bloc 382.094 201 717

Give priority in notation to the country, region, area, place, group requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class trade between Great Britain and United States in 382.097 304 2. If the two require equal emphasis, give priority to the one coming first in the sequence of area notations

## SUMMARY

- 382.3 Commercial policy
- .4 Specific commodities and services
- .5 Import trade
- .6 Export trade
- .7 Tariff policy
- .9 Trade agreements



## *Decimal Classification*

### **382.3 Commercial policy**

Balance of trade, control, dumping, correction of maladjustments, free ports

*For tariff policy, see 382.7; specific commodities and services, 382.4*

### **.4 Specific commodities and services**

382.41–382.44 Primary products

#### **.41 Agricultural**

Divide like 633–638, e.g., rice 382.413 18

#### **.42 Mineral**

Divide like 553, e.g., petroleum 382.422 82

#### **.43 Hunting and fishing**

Divide like 592–599, e.g., bearskins 382.439 744 46

#### **.44 Human beings (Slave trade)**

#### **.45 Secondary products and services**

Use 382.450 001 – 382.450 009 for standard subdivisions

Divide like 001–999, e.g., clothing 382.456 87

### **382.5–382.6 Direction of flow**

*For specific commodities and services, see 382.4*

#### **.5 Import trade**

#### **.6 Export trade**

#### **.7 Tariff policy**

*For specific commodities and services, see 382.4; trade agreements, 382.9*

#### **.71 Free trade (No tariff)**

#### **.72 Tariff for revenue (Fiscal tariff)**

#### **.73 Protective and prohibitive tariff**

#### **.74 Subsidies and drawbacks**

## *Commerce*

- 382.78      Exemptions
- .782      Personal and institutional
- Including commodities used for educational purposes,  
                 privileges for foreign-service personnel and tourists
- .788      On relief supplies
- .9      Trade agreements
- Class agreements on a specific subject in **382.3–382.6**
- .91      Multilateral agreements and customs unions
- Class bilateral agreements in **382.93–382.99**
- .911      Regional
- Add area notation **1** to **382.91**
- .913      The ancient world
- Add area notation **3** to **382.91**
- 382.914–382.919 The modern world
- .914      European
- .914 2      European Economic Community (European Common  
                 Market)
- .914 3      European Free Trade Association
- .915–.919      Other
- Add area notations **5–9** to **382.91**
- .93–.99      By specific countries
- Add area notations **3–9** to **382.9**, e.g., trade agreements of  
                 United Kingdom **382.942**; then, for bilateral agreements, add **0**  
                 and again add area notations **3–9**, e.g., agreements between  
                 United Kingdom and France **382.942 044**
- Give priority in notation to the country requiring local  
                 emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class agreements  
                 between United Kingdom and United States in **382.973 042**. If  
                 the two countries require equal emphasis, give priority to the  
                 country coming first in the sequence of area notations

## *Decimal Classification*



### **383–384 Communication services**

Class comprehensive works in **380.3**

#### **383 Postal communication**

.09 Historical and geographical treatment

Class national systems in **383.49**

.1 Activities and facilities

*For use of postage stamps, see 383.2*

.12 Types of mailable and nonmailable matter

Use **383.120 01 – 383.120 09** for standard subdivisions

.120 2 Free mail

Franking privileges

.120 5 Nonmailable matter

.122 Letters, postal cards, other written matter

.123 Periodicals

.124 Miscellaneous matter

Nonperiodical printed matter and merchandise of limited weight

.125 Other parcels

.14 Collection, transportation, delivery systems

*For types of mailable matter, see 383.12*

#### **383.141–383.144 Long-distance transport services**

.141 Instantaneous facsimile transmission

.142 By sea

.143 By land

.143 5 Railroad

.143 6 Inland waterway

.143 8 Highway

Including star routes [*formerly 383.148*]

## Commerce

- 383.144 By air and space vehicles
  - .144 7 Air
  - .144 8 Space
  - .145 Local collection, transport, delivery
    - Including rural collection and delivery
    - For star routes, see 383.143 8*
  - [.148] Star routes
    - Class in 383.143 8
  - .18 Other
  - .182 Insurance and registry of mail
  - .183 Special delivery
  - .184 Collection of charges on delivery (COD)
  - .185 Bulk mail
  - .2 Use of postage stamps
    - Separate, precanceled, printed on cards and envelopes
  - [.22] Philately
    - Class in 769.56
  - .4 Systems
    - .41 International systems and conventions
    - .49 National systems
      - Add area notations 3-9 to 383.49

## 384 Other systems of communication

Class comprehensive works on communication in 001.5, on mass communication in 301.16 [*both formerly 384*]

### 384.1-384.7 Telecommunication

- .1 Wire telegraphy
  - For submarine cable telegraphy, see 384.4*
- .14 Activities
  - Including transmission of facsimiles and specific kinds of messages, communication by teletypewriter and ticker
  - For postal facsimile transmission, see 383.141*

## *Decimal Classification*

- 384.15      Facilities**  
                 Apparatus and stations
- .4          Submarine cable telegraphy**  
                 Divide like 384.1, e.g., activities **384.44**
- .5          Wireless**
- .52        Radiotelegraphy**  
                 Divide like 384.1, e.g., activities **384.524**
- .53        Radiotelephony**  
                 Divide like 384.1, e.g., activities **384.534**
- .54        Radiobroadcasting [*formerly also* 791.44]**  
                 Divide like 384.1, e.g., activities **384.544**
- .55        Television**
- .554      Broadcasting [*formerly also* 791.45]**  
                 Divide like 384.1, e.g., facilities **384.554 5**
- .555      Closed circuit communication**  
                 Divide like 384.1, e.g., facilities **384.555 5**
- .6          Wire telephony**  
                 Divide like 384.1, e.g., activities **384.64**
- .7          Alarm and warning systems**  
                 Against fires, air raids, storms, floods
- .8          Motion pictures [*formerly* 791.43]**  
                 Divide like 384.1, e.g., activities **384.84**
- .9          Visual signaling**



## **385–388 Transportation services**

Class comprehensive works in 380.5

*For postal transportation systems, see 383.14*

### **385 Railroad transportation**

Class comprehensive works on transportation services [*formerly 385 in 380.5*]

*For local rail transit systems, see 388.4*



#### **385.2–385.3 Heavy-duty standard-gage systems**

##### **.2 Activities**

Scope: schedules, routes, classification

##### **.22 Passenger services**

Including baggage, sleeper, meal services

##### **.23 Express services**

##### **.24 Freight services**

##### **.26 Warehousing and storage services**

##### **.29 Free services**

##### **.3 Facilities**

##### **.31 Stationary**

Stations, terminals, yards

##### **.32–.34 Cars**

Divide like 625.22–625.24, e.g., passenger cars 385.33

##### **.36 Locomotives**

##### **.361 Steam**

##### **.362–.366 Other**

Divide like 625.262–625.266, e.g., diesel 385.366

##### **.5 Light railway systems**

Monorailway, narrow-gage, industrial, light standard-gage

## *Decimal Classification*

### **385.6 Inclined and mountain railway systems**

Funicular, rack, cable

### **.7 Railroad combined with other transportation systems**

### **.72 Unitized cargo**

Including piggyback (trucks, trailers, buses, private automobiles on flatcars)

*For container-ship operations, see 387.544*

### **.77 Ship railway systems**

Railways transporting vessels overland between bodies of water

### **[.9] Pipeline transportation**

Class in 388.5

## **386 Inland waterway transportation**

### **.2 Activities and facilities**

Except for ships and ports, class activities and facilities of specific types of inland waterway systems in 386.3–386.6

*For ports, see 386.8*

### **.22 Ships**

Description, history, rating, tonnage, classification

Divide like 623.82, e.g., tugboats 386.223 2

### **.24 Activities**

Schedules, routes, classification

---

### **► 386.3–386.6 Specific types of inland waterway systems**

Activities and facilities

*For ships, see 386.22; ports, 386.8*

---

### **► 386.3–386.5 Specific kinds of waterways**

*For ferry transportation, see 386.6*

### **.3 Rivers**

Including canalized rivers

## Commerce

### 386.4 Canals

Existing and proposed

#### .42 Interoceanic canals

*For canals connecting specific oceans, see 386.43–386.45*

386.43–386.45 Canals connecting specific oceans

#### .43 Indian and Atlantic Oceans (Suez Canal)

#### .44 Atlantic and Pacific Oceans

##### .444 Panama Canal

##### .445 Nicaragua Canal

##### .447 Tehuantepec Canal

#### .45 Pacific and Indian Oceans

Class canals connecting parts of one ocean [*formerly 386.45*] in  
**386.46**

#### .46 Noninteroceanic canals

Including canals connecting parts of one ocean [*formerly 386.45*]

*For types of noninteroceanic canals, see 386.47–386.48*

386.47–386.48 Types of noninteroceanic canals

Scope: specific canals

#### .47 Ship canals

#### .48 Small craft and barge canals

### .5 Lakes

### .6 Ferry transportation

For passengers, freight, vehicles, trains

### .8 Ports

Activities and facilities



## *Decimal Classification*

### **387      Water, air, space transportation**

Use 387.000 1 – 387.000 9 for standard subdivisions

*For inland waterway transportation, see 386*

.001–.009      Standard subdivisions of water transportation

.01–.09      Standard subdivisions of ocean (marine) transportation

#### **SUMMARY**

**387.1–.5 Ocean (Marine) transportation**

- .1      Ports**
- .2      Ships**
- .5      Activities of merchant marine (Maritime transport)**
- .7      Air transportation**
- .8      Space transportation**

**387.1–387.5 Ocean (Marine) transportation**

Class standard subdivisions in 387.01–387.09

#### **.1      Ports**

Activities and facilities

.109      Historical and geographical treatment

Including specific ports [*formerly 387.129*]

.12      Physiographic types

Class specific ports in 387.109

.122      In natural bays

.123      In river mouths, tidal rivers, estuaries

.125      In roadsteads

[.129]      Specific ports

Class in 387.109

.13      Free ports

Class specific ports in 387.109

#### **.2      Ships**

Description, history, rating, tonnage, classification

Divide like 623.82, e.g., cargo ships 387.245

- 
- 387.5      Activities of merchant marine (Maritime transport)**
    - .52      Seaways (Trade lanes)
      - .522      Intercoastal routes
      - .523      Auxiliary, irregular, tramp routes
      - .524      Coastwise routes
    - .54      Other activities
      - Scope: shipping, schedules, classification
      - For salvage, see 387.55*
    - .542      Passenger services
      - Including baggage services
    - .544      Freight services
      - Loading, handling, unloading
      - Including container-ship operations
    - .549      Free services
    - .55      Salvage
  - .7      Air transportation**
    - .72      Airways
    - .73      Facilities
    - .732-.733      Aircraft
      - Divide like 629.133 2 – 629.133 3, e.g., helicopters 387.733 5
    - .736      Airports and landing fields
      - Runways, terminal buildings, hangars, control towers, warehouses
    - .74      Activities
      - Schedules, classification
      - For airways, see 387.72*
    - .742      Passenger services
      - Including baggage services
    - .744      Freight services
    - .749      Free services
  - .8      Space transportation**

**388 Ground transportation**

Other than nonlocal rail transportation

**.1 Roads and highways**

Activities and services

Including vehicular bridges and tunnels

**.3 Vehicular transportation**

**.31 Traffic flow and maintenance**

**.32 Other activities**

Scope: schedules, routes, classification

**.322 Passenger services**

**.324 Freight services (Trucking)**

**.329 Free services**

---

► **388.33–388.35 Facilities**

**.33 Stationary**

Terminal, parking, garage, repair facilities

Class vehicles [*formerly* 388.33] in 388.34–388.35

---

► **388.34–388.35 Vehicles [*formerly* 388.33]**

**.34 Conventional**

**.341 Carts, wagons, carriages**

Including rickshaws

**.342–.348 Gasoline-, oil-, man-powered**

Divide like 629.222–629.228, e.g., taxicabs 388.342 32

*For rickshaws, see 388.341*

**.349 Other**

**.35 Air-cushion**

## Commerce

### **388.4 Local rail and trolley transit systems**

.42 Underground (Subways)

.44 Elevated

.46 Surface

Trolleycars and -buses

.5 Pipeline transportation [*formerly* 385.9]

### **389 Metrology and standardization**

*For horology, see 529.7*

.1 Mass and dimension

Weights and measures used in commerce and daily life

.15 Systems

Scope: conversion tables

.152 Metric system

.153 Imperial (British) system

.159 Other systems

Including proposed systems

.16 Standards and standardization

.6 Standardization

*For standardization of weights and measures, see 389.16*

.62 Of quantity

For interchangeability

.63 Of quality

For performance

## 390 Customs and folklore

Scope: cultural anthropology [*formerly also* 572]

Including food customs [*formerly also* 641.3]

Use 390.001–390.009 for standard subdivisions

.01–.08 Standard subdivisions of customs

.09 Historical and geographical treatment of customs

Scope: customs of specific continents, countries, localities in modern world [*formerly* 914–919]

### ▶ 390.1–390.5 Customs of specific classes of people

.1 Specific economic statuses

.2 Specific ranks

.22 Royalty

.23 Nobility

.24 Free commoners

.25 Slaves, serfs, peons

.4 Specific occupations

Divide like 920.1–928.9, e.g., customs of lawyers 390.434

.5 Specific levels of education

### ▶ 391–395 Specific customs

Origin, description, comparison of customs, practices [*both formerly also* 398.3], taboos, manners, habits, conventions, rituals

*For customs of war, see* 399

## 391 Costume

Scope: fashion [*formerly also* 646.01]

Use 391.001–391.009 for standard subdivisions

Class art aspects of costume [*formerly* 391] in 746.9

.01–.05 Costumes of specific classes of people

Divide like 390.1–390.5, e.g., costumes of lawyers 391.043 4

## *Customs and folklore*

### **391.1–.3 Outer garments**

Divide like 687.11–687.13, e.g., outer garments for women 391.2

#### **.4 Other garments and auxiliaries**

##### **.41 Hand-, foot-, neckwear**

Gloves, mittens, muffs, hosiery, shoes, boots, neckties

##### **.42 Underwear**

##### **.43 Headgear**

##### **.44 Fans, parasols, canes, eyeglasses**

##### **.45 Buttons**

#### **.5 Hair styles**

Including beards, wigs

#### **.6 The person**

##### **.62 Body contours**

##### **.63 Use of cosmetics and perfume**

##### **.64 Bathing**

#### **.7 Jewelry and tattooing**

### **392 Customs of life cycle**

*For death customs, see 393*

#### **.1 Birth, puberty, majority**

Including christening, circumcision, debuts, other rituals and practices

#### **.3 Family and home**

##### **.32 Kinship**

##### **.33 Totems and totemism**

##### **.36 Dwelling places**

Including heating, lighting, furnishings, sanitation

Use 392.360 01 – 392.360 09 for standard subdivisions

##### **.360 1–.360 5 Of specific classes of people**

Divide like 390.1–390.5, e.g., dwelling places of royalty  
392.360 22

- 392.37 Food and meals
- .38 Other domestic arts and sciences
- .4 Courtship
- .5 Marriage
- .6 Sex outside marriage
- .9 Treatment of aged

**393 Death customs**

- .1 Burial
- .2 Cremation
- .3 Embalmmment and mummification
- .4 Exposure
- .9 Mourning

**394 Public and social customs**

Including swearing, use of signs and signboards

- .1 Eating, drinking, using tobacco and narcotics
- .2 Festivals and anniversaries
- .25 Carnivals

Including Mardi gras celebrations

- .26 Holidays

[.260 9] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 394.269

- .268 Specific holidays
  - .269 Historical and geographical treatment
- Add area notations 1-9 to 394.269

- .3 Games and dances
- .4 Official ceremonies and observances

Coronations, inaugurations, jubilees, state visits, triumphs

- .5 Pageants, processions, parades

*For carnivals, see 394.25*

## *Customs and folklore*

---

394.6      **Fairs**

.7          **Knightly customs**

.8          **Dueling and suicide**

### **395      Etiquette**

Codes of social and formal conduct

*For military etiquette, see 355.13; protocol of diplomacy, 341.7*

.1          **Specific groups**

Divide like 170.202, e.g., etiquette for children 395.122

*For specific occasions, see 395.2; specific activities, 395.3–395.4*

.2          **Specific occasions**

.22        **Engagements and weddings**

.23        **Mourning**



---

#### **395.3–395.4 Specific activities**

*For specific occasions, see 395.2*

.3          **Hospitality and table manners**

.4          **Social letter writing**

### **[396]      Woman**

Class in 301.412

[.2]        **Legal status of women**

Class in 340

### **[397]      Gipsies**

Class in area notation 174



## 398 Folklore

Class belles-lettres in 800

### SUMMARY

- |       |  |                   |
|-------|--|-------------------|
| 398.2 |  | Tales and legends |
| .3    |  | The real          |
| .4    |  | The unreal        |
| .5    |  | Chapbooks         |
| .6    |  | Riddles           |
| .8    |  | Rimes and games   |
| .9    |  | Proverbs          |
- 
- |     |  |   |
|-----|--|---|
| .2  |  | Tales and legends   |
| .21 |  | Fairy tales   |
| .22 |  | Tales and legends of heroes   |
| .23 |  | Tales and legends of places   |
|     |  | Including tales of haunted places [ <i>formerly</i> 398.32], original home of man [ <i>formerly also</i> 572.4] |
| .24 |  | Tales and legends of animals and plants   |

---

### 398.3–398.4 Subjects of folklore

History and criticism

- |      |  |   |
|------|--|---|
| .3   |  | The real  |
|      |  | Class customs, practices [ <i>both formerly</i> 398.3] in 391–395 |
| .32  |  | Places  |
|      |  | Class tales of haunted places [ <i>formerly</i> 398.32] in 398.23 |
| .322 |  | Physiographic features  |
| .323 |  | Haunted places  |
| .324 |  | Treasure trove  |
| .329 |  | Specific places   |
|      |  | Add area notations 3–9 to 398.329                                 |
| .33  |  | Special seasons and days  |
| .35  |  | Persons   |
| .352 |  | Kinds   |
|      |  | Women, children, kings, heroes, witches, sorcerers                |

## *Customs and folklore*

- 398.353      Human body and its parts  
                 Including medical folklore
- .354          Life cycle  
                 Birth, love, marriage, death
- .355          Everyday life  
                 Food, dwellings, occupations, recreation
- .36          Nature and natural phenomena
- .362          Cosmic phenomena  
                 Heavenly bodies, weather
- .364          Fire
- .365          Minerals
- .368          Plants
- .369          Animals
- .37          Superstitions  
                 Charms, curses, dreams, predictions, signs, numbers
- .4          The unreal
- .42          Imaginary places
- .45          Beings of human and semihuman form  
                 Demons, ogres, fairies, elves, gnomes, vampires
- .46          Imaginary minerals, plants, animals
- .465          Minerals  
                 Including philosopher's stone
- .468          Plants
- .469          Animals  
                 Basilisks, dragons, phoenixes, unicorns, werewolves
- .47          Ghosts  
                 *For haunted places, see 398.323*

*Decimal Classification*

- **398.5–398.9 Specific forms of folklore**  
*For tales and legends, see 398.2*
- 398.5 Chapbooks**
- .6 Riddles**
- .8 Rimes and games**  
Nursery rimes, counting-out rimes, street cries and songs ;
- .9 Proverbs**  
Divide like 420–490, e.g., Indo-Iranian proverbs 398.991 1 |
- 399 Customs of war**  
Weapons, dances, treatment of captives, e.g., scalping, cannibalism

## 400 Language

Expression and comprehension of ideas thru systematic symbolism

Class language of a specific subject with the subject

### 401 Philosophy and theory

Including value

.3 Universal languages [*formerly* 408.9]

.9 Psycholinguistics

### 402 Miscellany

### 403 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

404

### 405 Serial publications

### 406 Organizations

### 407 Study and teaching

### 408 Collections and anthologies

[.7] Dialectology

Class in 417.2

[.9] Universal and artificial languages

Class universal languages in 401.3, artificial languages in 499.99

### 409 Historical and geographical treatment

## **410 Linguistics and nonverbal language**

Use 410.01–410.09 for standard subdivisions

Class translation [*formerly* 410] in 418.02

.1–.9      **Standard subdivisions of linguistics**



### **411–418 Linguistics**

Science and structure of spoken and written language

Scope: comprehensive works on Indo-European languages  
[*formerly* 491]

Class linguistics of specific languages in 420–490

## **411 Notations ( Alphabets and ideographs )**

Including hieroglyphics [*formerly* 419.25]

Class phonetic transcription [*formerly* 411] in 414

## **412 Etymology**

Phonetic, graphic, semantic development of words and morphemes

*For notations, see* 411; *phonology*, 414

## **413 Polyglot dictionaries**

.028      **Lexicography**

Technique of recording lexical knowledge

## **414 Phonology**

Including phonetic transcription [*formerly* 411], intonation

## **415 Structural systems**

Former heading: Grammar

Morphology and syntax

## **416 Prosody**

## **417 Dialectology and paleography**

.2      **Dialectology [*formerly* 408.7]**

.7      **Historical linguistics ( Paleography )**

Study of early writings

Class specific elements in 411–416

*Linguistics and nonverbal language*

**418      Usage ( Applied linguistics )**

Use **418.001–418.009** for standard subdivisions

*For polyglot dictionaries, see 413*

.02              Translation [*formerly* 410] and interpretation

.022             By person

.028             By machine

**419      Nonverbal language**

[.25]            Hieroglyphics

Class in **411**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **420–490 Specific languages**

Scope: comprehensive works on specific languages and their literatures

Divide as below, but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific language, place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., Arabic language **4A0** (preceding **420**); then divide as instructed under **430–490**

*For literatures of specific languages, see 810–890*

### **► 420–480 Indo-European languages**

Class comprehensive works in **411–418**

*For East Indo-European and Celtic languages, see 491*

### **420 English and Anglo-Saxon**

Use **420.01–420.09** for standard subdivisions

#### **.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of English**

Class dictionaries of the language in **423**

### **► 421–426 Description and analysis of standard English**

Class standard English usage in **428**

### **421 Written and spoken codes**

Including abbreviations, acronyms, punctuation, capitalization

*For lexicology, see 422–423; structural system, 425*

#### **.1 Notation**

#### **[.4] Spelling**

Class in **421.52**

#### **.5 Phonology**

*For intonation, see 421.6*

#### **.52 Spelling [formerly 421.4] and pronunciation**

Including spelling reform, phonetic spelling

*For standard American pronunciation, see 421.54; standard British pronunciation, 421.55*

## *English and Anglo-Saxon languages*

421.54      Standard American pronunciation

.55      Standard British pronunciation

.6      **Intonation**

Pitch, stress, juncture (pauses)

.7      **Paleography**

Study of early writings

[.8]      **Dictionaries of abbreviations**

Class in 423.1

## **422–423 Lexicology**

Scope: synonyms, antonyms, homonyms [*all formerly 424*]

**422 Etymology**

Phonetic, graphic, semantic development of words and morphemes

*For notation, see 421.1; phonology, 421.5*

.4      **Foreign elements**

Divide like 430–490, e.g., French words in English 422.44

When dividing other languages as instructed under 430–490, divide numbers corresponding to 422.4 like 420–490, e.g., English words in French 442.42

**423 Dictionaries**

.1      **Specialized**

Abbreviations [*formerly 421.8*], acronyms, synonyms, antonyms, homonyms

.3–.9      **Bilingual**

Divide like 430–490, e.g., dictionaries of German and English 423.3

When dividing other languages as instructed under 430–490, interpret this entry as 423.2–423.9 and divide like 420–490

Class bilingual dictionaries with the language requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in English-speaking regions class dictionaries of German and English in 433.2. If the two languages require equal emphasis, class with the language coming later in the sequence 420–490



## *Decimal Classification*

### **[424]    Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms**

Class lexicology in 422–423, standard usage in 428

### **425    Structural system**

Former heading: Grammar

Morphology and syntax

### **426    Prosody**

### **427    Nonstandard English**

Description, analysis, usage

*For Old English, see 429*

.02    Middle English, 1100–1500

.09    Modern nonregional variations

Slang, ephemera, picturesque and exaggerated expressions

#### **►                    427.1–427.9 Regional variations**

.1–.8    In England

Divide like area notations 421–428, e.g., dialects of London 427.1

.9    In other places

Add area notations 4–9 to 427.9

### **428    Standard English usage ( Applied linguistics )**

General English, formal English, informal English, Basic English; synonyms, antonyms, homonyms [*all formerly 424*]

Use 428.001–428.009 for standard subdivisions

*For dictionaries, see 423; composition, 808.042*

.02    Translating and interpreting from other languages

Divide like 418.02, e.g., machine translation 428.028

.1    Spelling and pronunciation

## *English and Anglo-Saxon languages*

### **428.2–428.3 Expression**

**428.2**

#### **Structural approach**

Formal presentation of grammar, vocabulary, reading selections

*For spelling and pronunciation, see 428.1; reading, 428.4*

**.24**

#### **For those whose native language is not English**

Divide like 430–490, e.g., English for Spanish-speaking people  
428.246

When dividing other languages as instructed under 430–490,  
divide numbers corresponding to 428.24 like 420–490, e.g.,  
Spanish for English-speaking people 468.242

**.3**

#### **Audio-lingual approach**

Informal presentation thru practice in correct usage

*For pronunciation, see 428.1*

**.34**

#### **For those whose native language is not English**

Divide like 430–490, e.g., English speech for Spanish-speaking  
people 428.346

When dividing other languages as instructed under 430–490,  
divide numbers corresponding to 428.34 like 420–490, e.g.,  
Spanish for English-speaking people 468.342

**.4**

#### **Reading**

*For readers, see 428.6*

**.42**

#### **Remedial reading**

Correcting faulty habits and increasing proficiency

**.43**

#### **Developmental reading**

Increasing reading power and efficiency

**.6**

#### **Readers**

Graded selections with emphasis on structure and vocabulary as  
needed

**.62**

#### **Remedial**

- 428.64      For those whose native language is not English
- Divide like 430–490, e.g., English readers for Spanish-speaking people 428.646
- When dividing other languages as instructed under 430–490, divide numbers corresponding to 428.64 like 420–490, e.g., Spanish readers for English-speaking people 468.642

- 429      Anglo-Saxon (Old English)
- Divide like 421–428, e.g., dictionaries 429.3

- 430–490 Other specific languages
- Divide each language identified by \* like 421–428, e.g., Hebrew language dictionaries 492.43. Under languages having more than one entry in this table, divide each entry identified by \* like the corresponding number or numbers under 421–428, e.g., German language phonology 431.5. Note, however, in subdivision 7 that period divisions and geographical range of nonstandard variations are different for each specific language, and are shown below where their use is recommended; they may be supplied elsewhere as needed, for languages requiring local emphasis, by use of letter notation

## 430      Germanic languages [*formerly* 439]

Use 430.01–430.09 for standard subdivisions

- .1–.9      Standard subdivisions of German
- Class dictionaries of the language in 433

- 431–436 Description and analysis of standard German

Class standard German usage in 438

## 431      \*Written and spoken codes

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490

## *Germanic languages*

### **432–433 Lexicology**

Scope: synonyms, antonyms, homonyms [*all formerly 434*]

**432    \*Etymology**

**433    \*Dictionaries**

**[434]    Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms**

Class lexicology in 432–433, standard usage in 438

**435    Structural system**

Former heading: Grammar

Morphology and syntax

**436    Prosody**

**437    Nonstandard German**

Description, analysis, usage

.01        Old High German to 1100

.02        Middle High German, 1100–1500

.09        Modern nonregional variations

Slang, ephemera, picturesque and exaggerated expressions

### **437.1–437.9 Regional variations**

.1–.6      **In Germany and Austria**

Divide like area notations 431–436, e.g., dialects of Bavaria 437.3

.9        **In other places**

Add area notations 4–9 to 437.9

**438    \*Standard German usage (Applied linguistics)**

General German, formal German, informal German; synonyms, antonyms, homonyms [*all formerly 434*]

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490

## *Decimal Classification*

### **439 Other Germanic languages**

Class comprehensive works on Germanic languages [*formerly 439*] in 430

---

#### ► **439.1–439.4 West Germanic languages**

##### **.1 Old Low Germanic languages**

Old Saxon [*formerly 439.4*], Old Frisian [*formerly 439.2*], Old Low Franconian, Old Low German

---

#### ► **439.2–439.4 Modern Low Germanic languages**

##### **.2 \*Frisian**

Class Old Frisian [*formerly 439.2*] in 439.1

##### **.3 Dutch, Flemish, Afrikaans**

###### **.31 \*Dutch**

###### **.32 \*Flemish**

###### **.36 \*Afrikaans**

##### **.4 \*Low German (Plattdeutsch)**

Middle and Modern Low German

Class Old Saxon [*formerly 439.4*] in 439.1

*For Yiddish, see 492.49*

##### **.5 Scandinavian (North Germanic) languages**

Including Common Scandinavian to 900, Runic Danish, 900–1150

Class other specific Scandinavian languages in 439.6–439.8

##### **.6 West Scandinavian languages**

Use 439.600 1 – 439.600 9 for standard subdivisions

###### **.601–.609 Standard subdivisions of Old Norse (Old Icelandic)**

Class dictionaries of the language in 439.63

###### **.61–.68 \*Principles of Old Norse (Old Icelandic)**

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490

## *Germanic languages*

---

### **439.69 Modern Icelandic and Faeroese**

Use **439.690 01 – 439.690 09** for standard subdivisions

#### **.690 1–.690 9 Standard subdivisions of Modern Icelandic**

Class dictionaries of the language in **439.693**

#### **.691–.698 \*Principles of Modern Icelandic**

#### **.699 \*Faeroese**

---

### **► 439.7–439.8 East Scandinavian languages**

#### **.7 \*Swedish**

#### **.8 Danish and Norwegian languages**

#### **.81 \*Danish**

Scope: Early Common Danish (common language of Denmark and Norway), 1450–1800

#### **.82 \*Norwegian (Bokmaal)**

#### **.83 \*New Norse (Landsmaal)**

#### **.9 \*Gothic (East Germanic)**

---

### **► 440–460 Romance languages**

Class comprehensive works in **479.1**

## **440 French, Provençal, Catalan**

Use **440.01–440.09** for standard subdivisions

#### **.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of French**

Class dictionaries of the language in **443**

---

### **► 441–446 Description and analysis of standard French**

Class standard French usage in **448**

## **441 \*Written and spoken codes**

\* Divide as instructed under **430–490**

## *Decimal Classification*



### **442–443 Lexicology**

Scope: synonyms, antonyms, homonyms [*all formerly 444*]

**442    \*Etymology**

**443    \*Dictionaries**

**[444]    Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms**

Class lexicology in 442–443, standard usage in 448

**445    Structural system**

Former heading: Grammar

Morphology and syntax

**446    Prosody**

**447    Nonstandard French**

Description, analysis, usage

.01        Old French to 1400

.02        Middle French, 1400–1600

.09        Modern nonregional variations

Slang, ephemera, picturesque and exaggerated expressions



### **447.1–447.9 Regional variations**

**.1–.8    In France**

Divide like area notations 441–448, e.g., dialects of southern France (Languedoc) 447.8

Class dialects of southeastern France (Provençal) in 449

**.9        In other places**

Add area notations 4–9 to 447.9

**448    \*Standard French usage ( Applied linguistics )**

General French, formal French, informal French; synonyms, antonyms, homonyms [*all formerly 444*]

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490

**449 Provençal and Catalan**

Use 449.001–449.009 for standard subdivisions

- .01–.09      **Standard subdivisions of Provençal**  
Class dictionaries of the language in 449.3
- .1–.8      **\*Principles of Provençal**
- .9          **\*Catalan**

**450 Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic**

Use 450.01–450.09 for standard subdivisions

- .1–.9      **Standard subdivisions of Italian**  
Class dictionaries of the language in 453

►            **451–456 Description and analysis of standard Italian**

Class standard Italian usage in 458

**451      \*Written and spoken codes**

►            **452–453 Lexicology**

Scope: synonyms, antonyms, homonyms [*all formerly 454*]

**452      \*Etymology**

**453      \*Dictionaries**

**[454]    Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms**

Class lexicology in 452–453, standard usage in 458

**455      Structural system**

Former heading: Grammar

Morphology and syntax

**456      Prosody**

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490



**457 Nonstandard Italian**

Description, analysis, usage

.01 Old Italian to 1300

.02 Middle Italian, 1300–1600

.09 Modern nonregional variations

Slang, ephemera, picturesque and exaggerated expressions

---

► **457.1–457.9 Regional variations**

.1–.7 **In continental Italy**

Divide like area notations 451–457, e.g., dialects of Lombardy  
457.2

.8 **In Sicily**

Divide like area notations 458 1–458 2, e.g., dialects of Palermo  
457.823

.9 **Other**

.91–.93 **In Sardinia**

Divide like area notations 459 1–459 3, e.g., dialects of Cagliari  
457.91

.95 **In Corsica**

.99 **In other places**

Add area notations 4–9 to 457.99

**458 \*Standard Italian usage (Applied linguistics)**

General Italian, formal Italian, informal Italian; synonyms, antonyms,  
homonyms [*all formerly 454*]

**459 Romanian and Rhaeto-Romanic**

Use 459.001–459.009 for standard subdivisions

.01–.09 **Standard subdivisions of Romanian**

Class dictionaries of the language in 459.3

.1–.8 **\*Principles of Romanian**

.9 **Rhaeto-Romanic languages**

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490

## **460 Spanish and Portuguese**

Use 460.01–460.09 for standard subdivisions

### **.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of Spanish**

Class dictionaries of the language in 463

## **► 461–466 Description and analysis of standard Spanish**

Class standard Spanish usage in 468

### **461 \*Written and spoken codes**

#### **462–463 Lexicology**

Scope: synonyms, antonyms, homonyms [*all formerly 464*]

### **462 \*Etymology**

### **463 \*Dictionaries**

### **[464] Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms**

Class lexicology in 462–463, standard usage in 468

### **465 Structural system**

Former heading: Grammar

Morphology and syntax

### **466 Prosody**

### **467 Nonstandard Spanish**

Description, analysis, usage

.01 Old Spanish to 1100

.02 Middle Spanish, 1100–1600

.09 Modern nonregional variations

Slang, ephemera, picturesque and exaggerated expressions

## **► 467.1–467.9 Regional variations**

### **.1–.8 In Spain**

Divide like area notations 461–468, e.g., dialects of Andalusia  
467.8

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490

**In other places**

Add area notations 4-9 to 467.9

**468 \*Standard Spanish usage (Applied linguistics)**

General Spanish, formal Spanish, informal Spanish; synonyms, antonyms, homonyms [*all formerly 464*]

**469 \*Portuguese**

**.7 Nonstandard Portuguese**

Description, analysis, usage

.701 Old Portuguese to 1100

.702 Middle Portuguese, 1100-1600

.709 Modern nonregional variations

Slang, ephemera, picturesque and exaggerated expressions

---

469.71-469.79 Regional variations

.71-.76 In continental Portugal

Divide like area notations 469 1 - 469 6, e.g., dialects of Lisbon  
469.74

.78 In Madeira

.79 Other

.791 In Azores

.794 In Spain

Galician (Gallegan) [*formerly 469.9*]

.798 In Brazil

Divide like area notations 811-817, e.g., dialects of São Paulo 469.798 6

.799 In other places

Add area notations 4-9 to 469.799

**[.9] Galician (Gallegan)**

Class in 469.794

\* Divide as instructed under 430-490

## **470 Italic languages**

Use 470.01–470.09 for standard subdivisions

### **.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of Latin**

Class dictionaries of the language in 473

### **► 471–476 Description and analysis of standard Latin**

Classical Latin; classical revival (medieval and modern)  
Latin [*formerly* 479.3]

Class standard Latin usage in 478

### **471 \*Written and spoken codes**

### **► 472–473 Lexicology**

Scope: synonyms, antonyms, homonyms [*all formerly* 474]

### **472 \*Etymology**

### **473 \*Dictionaries**

### **[474] Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms**

Class lexicology in 472–473, standard usage in 478

### **475 Structural system**

Former heading: Grammar

Morphology and syntax

### **476 Prosody**

### **477 Old, Postclassical, Vulgar Latin**

### **478 \*Standard Latin usage (Applied linguistics)**

Classical Latin; classical revival (medieval and modern) Latin  
[*formerly* 479.3]; synonyms, antonyms, homonyms [*all formerly* 474]

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490

## *Decimal Classification*

### **479 Romance and other Italic languages**

*For Etruscan, see 499.94*

#### **.1 Romance languages**

Class specific Romance languages in **440–460**

#### **[.3] Classical revival (Medieval and modern) Latin**

Class description and analysis in **471–476**, standard usage in **478**

#### **.9 Osco-Umbrian languages**

### **480 Classical languages [*formerly 489.1*] and modern Greek**

Class Latin in **471–478**

#### **.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of classical languages**

#### **.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of classical Greek**

Class dictionaries of the language in **483**

#### **► 481–486 Description and analysis of standard classical Greek**

Class standard classical Greek usage in **488**

### **481 Written and spoken codes**

Including abbreviations, acronyms, punctuation, capitalization

*For lexicology, see 482–483; structural system, 485*

#### **.1–.6 \*Notation, phonology, intonation**

#### **.7 Paleography**

Study of early writings

Including Minoan Linear B

\* Divide as instructed under **430–490**



---

**482–483 Lexicology**

Scope: synonyms, antonyms, homonyms [*all formerly 484*]

**482      \*Etymology**

**483      \*Dictionaries**

**[484]    Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms**

Class lexicology in 482–483, standard usage in 488

**485      Structural system**

Former heading: Grammar

Morphology and syntax

**486      Prosody**

**487      Postclassical Greek**

Hellenistic and Byzantine Greek

Including Biblical Greek

**488      \*Standard classical Greek usage ( Applied linguistics )**

Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms [*all formerly 484*]

**489      Other Greek languages**

**[.1]      Classical languages**

Class in 480

**.3      \*Modern Greek**

Katharevusa and Demotic

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490

## 490 Other languages

### 491 East Indo-European and Celtic languages

Use 491.001–491.009 for standard subdivisions

Class comprehensive works on Indo-European languages [*formerly* 491] in 411–418

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of East Indo-European languages

#### SUMMARY

- 491.1 Indo-Iranian (Aryan) languages
  - .2 Sanskrit
  - .3 Middle Indic languages (Secondary Prakrits)
  - .4 Modern Indic languages (Tertiary Prakrits)
  - .5 Iranian languages
  - .6 Celtic languages
  - .7 East Slavic languages
  - .8 Balto-Slavic languages
  - .9 Baltic and other East Indo-European languages

#### .1 Indo-Iranian (Aryan) languages

*For Indo-Aryan (Indic) languages, see 491.2–491.4; Iranian languages, 491.5*

▶

#### ▶ 491.2–491.4 Indo-Aryan (Indic) languages

##### .2 \*Sanskrit

Vedic (Old Indic) and classical

▶

#### 491.3–491.4 Prakrits

Class nonstandard Sanskrit (Primary Prakrits) in 491.27

##### .3 Middle Indic languages (Secondary Prakrits)

##### .37 Pali

##### .4 Modern Indic languages (Tertiary Prakrits)

##### .41 \*Sindhi

##### .42 \*Punjabi

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490

## *Other languages*

- 491.43      Western Hindi languages  
                  Use 491.430 01 – 491.430 09 for standard subdivisions
- .430 1–.430 9      Standard subdivisions of Hindi (High Hindustani)  
                  Class dictionaries of the language in 491.433
- .431–.436      \*Description and analysis of standard Hindi (High Hindustani)  
                  Class standard Hindi usage in 491.438
- .437      Variations of Hindustani  
                  Description, analysis, usage
- .438      \*Standard Hindi usage (Applied linguistics)
- .439      \*Urdu
- .44      \*Bengali
- .45      Assamese [*formerly* 491.49], Bihari, Oriya
- .46      \*Marathi
- .47      \*Gujarati-Rajasthani
- .48      \*Sinhalese
- .49      Other  
                  Dard, Eastern Hindi, Pahari, Romany  
                  Class Assamese [*formerly* 491.49] in 491.45
- .5      Iranian languages
- .51      \*Old Persian (West Iranian)
- .52      \*Avestan (East Iranian)
- .53      Pahlavi (Middle Persian)
- [.54]      Armenian  
                  Class in 491.992
- .55      \*Modern Persian
- .59      Other modern Iranian languages  
                  Baluchi, Kurdish, Tajiki, Pashto, Ossetic, Pamir dialects

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490



- 491.6 Celtic languages**  
Including Cornish, Breton, Manx
- .62 \*Irish Gaelic
- .63 \*Scottish Gaelic (Erse)
- .66 \*Welsh
- .7 East Slavic languages**  
Use 491.700 1 – 491.700 9 for standard subdivisions
- .701–.709 Standard subdivisions of Russian  
Class dictionaries of the language in 491.73
- .71–.76 \*Description and analysis of standard Russian  
Class standard Russian usage in 491.78
- .77 Nonstandard Russian  
Description, analysis, usage
- .770 1 Old Russian to 1550
- .770 2 Middle Russian, 1550–1750
- .770 9 Modern nonregional variations  
Slang, ephemera, picturesque and exaggerated expressions
- .774–.779 Regional variations  
Add area notations 4–9 to 491.77
- .78 \*Standard Russian usage (Applied linguistics)
- .79 Ukrainian and Belorussian  
Use 491.790 01 – 491.790 09 for standard subdivisions
- .790 1–.790 9 Standard subdivisions of Ukrainian  
Class dictionaries of the language in 491.793
- .791–.798 \*Principles of Ukrainian
- .799 \*Belorussian

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490

## *Other languages*

### **491.8 Balto-Slavic languages**

Including Common Slavic

Use **491.800 1 – 491.800 9** for standard subdivisions

*For East Slavic languages, see 491.7; Baltic languages, 491.91–491.93*

.801–.809 Standard subdivisions of Slavic languages

491.81–491.84 South Slavic languages

.81 Bulgarian and Macedonian

Use **491.810 01 – 491.810 09** for standard subdivisions

.810 1–.810 9 Standard subdivisions of Bulgarian

Class dictionaries of the language in **491.813**

.811–.816 \*Description and analysis of standard Bulgarian

Class standard Bulgarian usage in **491.818**

.817 Nonstandard Bulgarian

Description, analysis, usage

.817 01 Old Bulgarian (Church Slavonic)

.818 \*Standard Bulgarian usage (Applied linguistics)

.819 \*Macedonian

.82 \*Serbo-Croatian

Including Croatian [*formerly 491.83*]

[.83] Croatian

Class in **491.82**

.84 \*Slovenian

► 491.85–491.88 West Slavic languages

.85 \*Polish

Including Kashubian dialect

' Divide as instructed under **430–490**

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 491.86      **\*Czech**  
                    *For Moravian dialects, see 491.87*
- .87      **Slovak**  
                    *Including Moravian dialects*
- .88      **\*Wendish**
- .9      **Baltic and other East Indo-European languages**
- 491.91–491.93 **Baltic languages**
- .91      **Old Prussian**
- .92      **\*Lithuanian**
- .93      **\*Latvian (Lettish)**
- .99      **Other**  
                    *Including Anatolian, Tocharian, Thraco-Phrygian, Illyrian, Indo-Hittite*
- .991      **\*Albanian**
- .992      **\*Armenian** [*formerly 491.54*]
- 492–493 **Afro-Asian languages**
- 492      **Semitic languages**
- .1      **Akkadian (East Semitic) languages**  
                    *Including Chaldean (Neo-Babylonian) and Assyro-Babylonian dialects*
- 492.2–492.3 **Aramaic (North Semitic) languages**
- .2      **West Aramaic**
- .29      **Biblical Aramaic**  
                    *Including Samaritan [*formerly 492.5*], Chaldee*
- .3      **\*East Aramaic (Syriac)**

<sup>1</sup> Divide as instructed under 430–490

► **492.4–492.6 Canaanitic ( West Semitic ) languages**

**492.4 Hebraic languages**

. Use 492.400 1 – 492.400 9 for standard subdivisions

.401–.409 Standard subdivisions of Hebrew

Class dictionaries of the language in 492.43

.41–.48 \*Principles of Hebrew

.49 \*Yiddish

**[.5] Samaritan**

Class in 492.29

**.6 Canaanite-Phoenician languages**

Including Minoan Linear A

► **492.7–492.9 Arabic-Ethiopic ( South Semitic ) languages**

.7 \*Arabic ( North Arabic )

.8 Ethiopic languages

.9 South Arabic languages

**493 Hamitic and other languages**

► **493.1–493.5 Hamitic languages**

.1 \*Old Egyptian

.2 \*Coptic

.3 Berber languages

.5 Cushitic ( Hamitic Ethiopian ) languages

.7 Chad family

Including Kanuri [*formerly* 496.4]

*For Hausa, see* 496.91

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490

► **494–495 Asian and related languages**

*For East Indo-European languages, see 491; Afro-Asian languages, 492–493*

**494 Ural-Altaic, Paleosiberian, Dravidian languages**

---

► **494.1–494.3 Altaic languages**

- .1 Tungusic family
- .2 Mongolic family
- .3 Turkic family
- .35 \*Turkish

► **494.4–494.5 Uralic languages**

- .4 Samoyedic family
  - For Ket language, see 494.6*
- .5 Finno-Ugric languages
  - .51 Ugric languages
  - .511 \*Magyar (Hungarian)

► **494.53–494.55 Finnic languages**

- .53 Permian languages
- .54 Western Finnic languages
  - .541 \*Finnish (Suomi)
  - .545 \*Estonian
  - .55 \*Lapp
- .6 Paleosiberian languages
  - Luorawetlin family, Ainu, Gilyak, Ket
- .8 Dravidian languages
  - .81 Dravida group
    - Including Kota [*formerly 494.821*], Toda [*formerly 494.822*], Kurukh (Oràon) [*formerly 494.826*]
  - .811 \*Tamil

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490

*Other languages*

---

- 494.812      **\*Malayalam**  
           [.813]      **Telugu**  
                     Class in 494.827
- .814      **\*Kanarese (Kannada)**  
           .82      **Andhra group**  
           [.821]      **Kota**  
                     Class in 494.81
- [.822]      **Toda**  
                     Class in 494.81
- .823      **\*Gondi**  
           .824      **\*Khond (Kandh)**  
           [.826]      **Kurukh (Orâon)**  
                     Class in 494.81
- .827      **\*Telugu [formerly 494.813]**  
           .83      **Brahui**
- 495      Languages of East and Southeast Asia**
- .1      Chinese**  
                     Use 495.001–495.009 for standard subdivisions  
                     *For Thai-Chinese group, see 495.919*
- .101–.109      **Standard subdivisions of standard written Chinese (Mandarin)**  
                                 Class dictionaries of the language in 495.13
- .11–.16      **\*Description and analysis of standard written Chinese (Mandarin)**  
                                 Class standard usage of standard written Chinese in 495.18
- .17      **Nonstandard Chinese**  
                     Description, analysis, usage  
                     Including commercial Chinese
- .18      **\*Standard usage of standard written Chinese (Applied linguistics)**

<sup>1</sup> Divide as instructed under 430–490

*Decimal Classification*

---

- 495.4      Tibeto-Burman languages**  
                    Use 495.400 1 – 495.400 9 for standard subdivisions
- .401–.409      Standard subdivisions of Tibetan  
                    Class dictionaries of the language in 495.43
- .41–.48      \*Principles of Tibetan
- .49          Other  
                    Including Himalayan dialects [*formerly* 495.5]  
                    For Burmese, see 495.8
- [.5]      Himalayan and Assamese dialects**  
                    Class Himalayan dialects in 495.49, Assamese dialects of Burmese  
                    in 495.87
- .6          \*Japanese
- .7          \*Korean
- .8          \*Burmese
- .87          Nonstandard Burmese  
                    Description, analysis, usage  
                    Including Assamese dialects of Burmese [*formerly* 495.5]
- .9          Other languages of Southeast Asia
- .91          Thai languages  
                    Use 495.910 01 – 495.910 09 for standard subdivisions
- .910 1–.910 9      Standard subdivisions of Thai (Siamese)  
                    Class dictionaries of the language in 495.913
- .911–.918      \*Principles of Thai (Siamese)
- .919          Other Thai languages  
                    Including Thai-Chinese group
- 
- 495.92–495.95 Austroasian languages
- .92          Annam-Muong group
- .922          \*Vietnamese
- .93          Mon-Khmer group
- .932          \*Cambodian
- .95          Munda family

<sup>1</sup> Divide as instructed under 430–490

## *Other languages*

### **496 African languages**

*For Afro-Asian languages, see 492–493*

#### **.1 Macro-Khoisan family**

Including Bushman languages [*formerly 496.2*], Hottentot languages

#### **[.2] Bushman languages**

Class in 496.1

#### **.3 Niger-Congo family**

Including Ewe and Mende [*both formerly 496.4*], Bantu languages

Class Swahili [*formerly 496.3*] in 496.92

#### **[.4] Negro dialects**

Class Ewe and Mende in 496.3; Kanuri in 493.7

#### **.5 Chari-Nile (Macrosudanic) family**

#### **.9 Commercial languages**

.91 \*Hausa

.92 \*Swahili [*formerly 496.3*]

### **497 North American Indian languages**

.1 Eskimo-Aleut group

.2 Na-Dene group

.3 Algonkian-Mosan group

.4 Macro-Penutian group

.5 Hoka-Siouan group

.6 Macro-Otomanguean group

.7 Tarascan family

.8 Miskito-Matagalpan group

.9 Other languages

### **498 South American Indian languages**

\* Divide as instructed under 430–490



*Decimal Classification*

- 499    **Austronesian and other languages**
- .1    **Nonaustronesian languages of Oceania**
- .11    Negrito languages
- .12    Papuan languages
- .15    Australian languages [*formerly* 499.6]
- 499.2-499.5 Austronesian (Malayo-Polynesian)  
            languages
- For Austroasian languages, see 495.92-495.95*
- .2    **Malayan languages**
- .21    Tagalog family
- \*Tagalog (Filipino)
- .211    Malay-Javanese languages
- .22    \*Indonesian (Bahasa Indonesia)
- .221    \*Javanese
- Including Balinese, Madurese, Sundanese dialects
- .4    **Polynesian languages**
- .5    **Melanesian and Micronesian languages**
- [.6] **Australian languages**
- Class in 499.15
- .9    **Other languages**
- .92    Basque
- .93    Elamitic
- .94    Etruscan
- .95    Sumerian
- .96    Caucasian languages
- .99    Artificial languages [*formerly* 408.9]
- \*.992    Esperanto
- \*.993    Interlingua

\* Divide as instructed under 430-490

## 500 Pure sciences

.1 Natural sciences

.2 Physical sciences

.9 Natural history

501 Philosophy and theory

502 Miscellany

503 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

504

505 Serial publications

506 Organizations

507 Study and teaching

508 Collections, anthologies, travels, surveys

.1 Collections and anthologies

.3 Travels and surveys

*For geographical treatment of travels and surveys, see 508.4–508.9*

.4–.9 Geographical treatment of travels and surveys

Add area notations 4–9 to 508

509 Historical and geographical treatment

## **510 Mathematics**

The editors anticipate the preparation at a future date of a completely revised schedule **510**, which will develop mathematics according to modern concepts. The schedule that follows, while conforming to the style of the present edition, makes no substantive modifications from the provisions of Edition 16. For the present, class in **510** without subdivision all branches of mathematics not clearly belonging in subordinate numbers

Use **510.01–510.09** for standard subdivisions

- .78**            **Computation instruments and machines**
  - Mathematical principles of mechanical, electromechanical, electronic calculating devices
- .782**           **Analog instruments**
- .782 3**           Slide rules and planimeters
- .782 4**           Differential analyzers
- .783**           **Digital machines**
- .783 2**           Adding and calculating machines
- .783 4**           Computers

## **511 Arithmetic**

- .021 2**           Formulas and specifications
  - Class tables in **511.9**
- .024**           **Works for specific types of users**
  - Class business arithmetic in **511.8**
- .076**           **Review and exercise**
  - Class problems in **511.9**

---

### **► 511.1–511.7 Specific elements**

- .1**            **Numeration systems**
  - Including decimal, duodecimal, binary
- .2**            **Fundamental operations**
  - Use **511.200 1 – 511.200 9** for standard subdivisions
- .201 8**           Short cuts and rapid calculations

- 511.207 6            **Algorisms**
- .207 8            **Abacus**
- .22            **Addition and subtraction**
- .23            **Multiplication and division**
- .3            **Prime numbers and factoring**
- .4            **Fractions and decimal fractions**
- .6            **Ratio and proportion**
- .7            **Involution and evolution**
- .8            **Business arithmetic**  
                     Including mensuration, mercantile rules, calculation of interest
- .9            **Problems and tables**

## 512    **Algebra**

- .021 2            **Formulas and specifications**  
                     Class tables in 512.9
- .076            **Review and exercise**  
                     Class problems in 512.9

---

### 512.1–512.7 **Specific elements**

- .1            **Postulates**
- .2            **Equations and imaginary quantities**
- .21            **Equations**  
                     Linear, quadratic, simultaneous, binomial, polynomial  
                     *For indeterminate equations, see 512.23; reciprocal equations, 512.26*
- .22            **Approximate computations**
- .23            **Indeterminate (Diophantine) equations**
- .24            **Imaginary quantities**
- .26            **Reciprocal equations**
- .5            **Combinations, permutations, distribution**
- .6            **Simple arithmetic and geometric progressions**
- .7            **Exponents and logarithms**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 512.8      Abstract algebra**  
             Including theory of games
- .81          Theory of numbers
- .812        Divisibility  
             Including theory of measure, factorization, linear  
             congruences
- .813        Higher congruences, forms, residues, partitions  
             Including Fermat's theorem
- .814        Theory of primes
- .815        Algebraic fields
- .816        Complex multiplication
- .817        Transfinite numbers
- .82        Theory of equations
- .83        Determinants  
             Ordinary, symmetrical, numerical, infinite, polydimensional
- .84        Symmetrical functions of roots
- .85        Elimination discriminants
- .86        Theory of groups  
             Abstract, substitution, linear, continuous, Abelian  
             Including transformations, substitutions
- .865        Lattice theory
- .87        Theory of forms ( Quantics )  
             Including modular theory
- .88        Invariant theory  
             Binary, ternary,  $n$ -ary, orthogonal invariants
- .89        Universal algebra
- .893        Quaternion algebra
- .894        Space analysis ( Ausdehnungslehre )
- .895        Vector algebra

## *Mathematics*

512.896      Matrices and tensor algebra

.897      Linear algebras

.9      Problems and tables

### ►      513–516 Geometries

#### 513      Synthetic geometry

*For trigonometry, see 514; descriptive geometry, 515*

.076      Review and exercise

Class problems in 513.9

#### ►      513.1–513.3 Elementary (Euclidean)

.1      Plane

.3      Solid

.5      Modern (Post-Euclidean)

Plane and solid

.6      Denumerative

Determination of the number of specific configurations fulfilling a sufficient number of conditions

.8      Non-Euclidean

.81      Absolute geometry of one, two, three dimensions

.82      Geometries of  $n$  dimensions

.83      Geometric topology (Analysis situs)

.84      Geometries of Lobachevski, Bolyai, Gauss

.85      Geometry of Riemann

.9      Problems

.92      Famous problems

Including circle squaring, trisection of angles, duplication of cubes

.94      Porisms

- 512.8      Abstract algebra**  
             Including theory of games
- .81          Theory of numbers
- .812        Divisibility  
             Including theory of measure, factorization, linear  
             congruences
- .813        Higher congruences, forms, residues, partitions  
             Including Fermat's theorem
- .814        Theory of primes
- .815        Algebraic fields
- .816        Complex multiplication
- .817        Transfinite numbers
- .82        Theory of equations
- .83        Determinants  
             Ordinary, symmetrical, numerical, infinite, polydimensional
- .84        Symmetrical functions of roots
- .85        Elimination discriminants
- .86        Theory of groups  
             Abstract, substitution, linear, continuous, Abelian  
             Including transformations, substitutions
- .865        Lattice theory
- .87        Theory of forms ( Quantics )  
             Including modular theory
- .88        Invariant theory  
             Binary, ternary, n-ary, orthogonal invariants
- .89        Universal algebra
- .893        Quaternion algebra
- .894        Space analysis ( Ausdehnungslehre )
- .895        Vector algebra

512.896      Matrices and tensor algebra

.897      Linear algebras

.9      Problems and tables



## 513–516 Geometries

### 513      Synthetic geometry

*For trigonometry, see 514; descriptive geometry, 515*

.076      Review and exercise

Class problems in 513.9



### 513.1–513.3 Elementary (Euclidean)

.1      Plane

.3      Solid

.5      Modern (Post-Euclidean)

Plane and solid

.6      Denumerative

Determination of the number of specific configurations fulfilling a sufficient number of conditions

.8      Non-Euclidean

.81      Absolute geometry of one, two, three dimensions

.82      Geometries of  $n$  dimensions

.83      Geometric topology (Analysis situs)

.84      Geometries of Lobachevski, Bolyai, Gauss

.85      Geometry of Riemann

.9      Problems

.92      Famous problems

Including circle squaring, trisection of angles, duplication of cubes

.94      Porisms



**514 Trigonometry**

- .076 Review and exercise  
Class problems in 514.9

- .5 Plane  
.6 Spherical  
.9 Problems

**515 Descriptive geometry**

- .1 Orthogonal projection on two planes  
.2 Isometric and other one-plane projections  
.3 Oblique projections  
.4 Conical projections  
.5 Spherical projections  
.6 Perspective  
.7 Shades and shadows

**516 Analytic (Coordinate) geometry**

- .076 Review and exercise  
Class problems in 516.9
- 

► **516.1–516.4 Elementary (Cartesian) geometry**

- .1 Straight lines and coordinate axes  
.2 Curves in Cartesian form  
Conics and higher plane curves  
.3 Planes and lines in space with Cartesian forms  
.4 Surfaces in Cartesian form  
Spheres, quadrics, ellipsoids, hyperboloids, paraboloids, higher surfaces  
.5 Modern algebraic geometry  
Including systems of coordinates, abridged and symbolic notations, conics, quadrics, higher planes and surfaces, space curves  
.55 Geometric transformations  
Scope: reciprocation, inversions, correlation methods  
Including quadratic, Cremona, birational, isogonal transformations

## *Mathematics*

- 516.56 Harmonic and anharmonic properties  
.57 Projective geometry  
Spatial relations, ideas, properties unaltered by projective transformations  
.  
.6 Line geometry  
Including systems of curves, surfaces, rays  
.66 Modular geometry  
.7 Differential (Infinitesimal) geometry  
.74 Projective  
.8 Kinematic geometry  
Calculus of direction and position  
.82 Quaternions  
.83 Vector and tensor analysis  
.9 Problems
- 517 Calculus  
.076 Review and exercise  
Class problems in 517.9
- 
- 517.2–517.3 Kinds
- .2 Differential  
.207 6 Review and exercise  
Class problems in 517.29  
.21 Series  
Indicated sum of the terms of a sequence  
.22 Indeterminate forms  
.27 Variation of function values  
.28 Differential forms and invariants  
.29 Problems

## *Decimal Classification*

---

517.3	<b>Integral</b>
.302 12	Formulas and specifications Class tables in 517.39
.307 6	Review and exercise Class problems in 517.39
.31	Methods of integration
.32	Definite integrals Including gamma functions, Euler functions
.33	Rectifications
.34	Multiple integrals
.35	Orthogonal expansions
.352	Spherical harmonics Including Legendre's functions, Laplace's functions
.353	Cylindrical harmonics Including Bessel's functions
.354	Ellipsoidal harmonics Including Lamé's functions
.355	Fourier series
.36	Elliptic and hyperelliptic functions
.37	Integral equations Including integral differential equations
.38	Differential equations <i>For integral differential equations, see 517.37</i>
.382	Ordinary Linear and nonlinear
.383	Partial First and higher orders
.39	Problems and tables



**517.4–517.8 Branches**

*For calculus of direction and position, see 516.8*

**517.4 Calculus of variations**

**.5 Calculus of functions (Functional analysis)**

*For a specific function, see the subject, e.g., gamma functions  
517.32*

**.52 Functions of real variables**

**.521 Theory of point sets**

**.6 Numerical analysis and finite differences**

**.7 Calculus of operations**

**.8 Functions of complex variables**

*For elliptic and hyperelliptic functions, see 517.36*

**.81 Riemann surfaces**

**.83 Algebraic functions**

**.85 Automorphic and polyhedral functions**

**.88 Hypergeometric functions**

**.9 Problems**

**518**

**519 Probabilities and statistical calculations**

**.1 Probabilities**

*Including mathematical expectation, prediction*



**519.6–519.9 Statistical calculations**

**.6 Theory of errors**

**.7 Information theory**

**.8 Treatment of data**

*Including application of methods of least squares, theory of closest  
approximation*

**.9 Other**

**.92 Linear and dynamic programming**

**.93 Theory of sampling and quality control**

## 520 Astronomy and allied sciences

Use 520.01–520.09 for standard subdivisions

---

- 520.1–520.9 Standard subdivisions of astronomy
- .1 Philosophy and theory
  - Class natural astrology, ancient and medieval astronomy [*all formerly 520.1*] in 520.9
- .2–8 Miscellany, dictionaries, serial publications, organizations, study and teaching, collections
  - Class techniques, apparatus, equipment in 522.1–522.6
- .9 Historical and geographical treatment
  - Including natural astrology, ancient and medieval astronomy [*all formerly 520.1*]

## 521 Theoretical astronomy and celestial mechanics

---

- 521.1–521.4 General principles
  - Class application to specific celestial bodies in 521.5–521.7
- .1 Celestial dynamics
- .11 Laws of planetary equilibrium and motion
- .12 Law of universal gravitation and motion
- .13 Problems of three and  $n$  bodies
- .16 Equilibrium of rotating fluid masses
- .3 Kepler's laws and their application
  - Determination, calculation, correction of orbits
- .4 Perturbations
- .5 Theory of planets
- .6 Theory of satellites
  - Class satellites [*formerly 521.6*] in 523.98
- .62 Theory of moon (Lunar theory)
- .63–.68 Theories of other specific satellites
  - Divide like 523.43–523.48, e.g., of satellites of Mars 521.63

## *Astronomy and allied sciences*

- 521.7      **Theory of comets**
- .8      **Theory of eclipses, transits, occultations**
- .9      **Precession and nutation**

*For corrections of precession, see 522.95; of nutation, 522.96*

## **522      Practical and spherical astronomy**

### **SUMMARY**

- 522.1      **Observatories**
- .2      **Telescopes and accessories**
- .3      **Meridional instruments**
- .4      **Extrameridional instruments**
- .5      **Auxiliary instruments**
- .6      **Special techniques**
- .7      **Spherical astronomy**
- .9      **Corrections**



### **522.1–522.6 Practical astronomy**

Methods and techniques of observing and measuring celestial bodies

Scope: apparatus and equipment [*formerly 520.78*], practical computations

Class applications to specific celestial bodies in 523

*For corrections, see 522.9*

- .1      **Observatories**
- .109      **Historical and geographical treatment**
  - Class specific observatories in 522.19
- .19      **Specific observatories**
  - Add area notations 3–9 to 522.19



### **522.2–522.5 Instruments**

- .2      **Telescopes and accessories**
  - For zenith telescopes, see 522.43; equatorial telescopes, 522.4*
- .21      **Reflecting telescopes**
- .22      **Refracting telescopes**
- .23      **Eyepiece and accessories**
- .24      **Object glass and accessories**

- 522.25      Altazimuth mountings
- .26      Equatorial mountings
- .27      Transit mountings
- .29      Famous telescopes
- Add area notations 1-9 to 522.29
- 
- .3          **Meridional instruments**
- For transit mountings, see 522.27; zenith telescopes, 522.43*
- 
- .4          **Extrameridional instruments**
- .41      Sextants, quadrants, reflecting circles, astrolabes
- .43      Zenith telescopes
- .46      Equatorial telescopes
- .5          **Auxiliary instruments**
- .51      Sidereal clocks and chronometers
- .52      Chronographs
- .53      Micrometers
- .54      Personal equation machines
- .56      Instruments for solar observation
- For heliostats, see 522.58*
- 
- .562      Spectroheliographs and photoheliographs
- .563      Coronagraphs
- .58      Heliostats
- .6          **Special techniques**
- .62      Photometry
- .622      Photographic photometry
- .623      Photoelectric photometry
- .63      Photography
- For photographic photometry, see 522.622*
- 
- .65      Polarimetry
- .67      Spectroscopy

## *Astronomy and allied sciences*

### **522.7 Spherical astronomy**

Class application to geodesy in **526.6**

- .71 Celestial sphere and coordinates
- .75 Interpolation
- .76 Meridian lines and variations of compass
- .78 Use of globes, planispheres, astronomical models
- .9 **Corrections**
  - .91 Of parallax
  - .92 Of astronomical refraction
  - .94 Of aberration
  - .95 Of precession
  - .96 Of nutation
  - .97 Of personal equation
  - .98 Of instrumental errors

### **523 Descriptive astronomy**

Use **523.001–523.009** for standard subdivisions

- .01 Physical and chemical aspects
  - For spectroscopy, see 522.67*
- .013 Astrophysics
- .016 Radio astronomy
- .017 Radar astronomy

#### **SUMMARY**

- 523.1 **Physical universe (Cosmology)**
  - .2 Solar system
  - .3 Moon
  - .4 Planets
  - .5 Meteors and zodiacal light
  - .6 Comets
  - .7 Sun
  - .8 Stars
  - .9 Transits, satellites, occultations
- .1 **Physical universe (Cosmology)**
  - .11 Structure
  - .111 Space



### *Decimal Classification*

- 523.112      Extragalactic systems
- .113      Galactic system (Milky Way)
- .113 5      Interstellar material and galactic nebulas
- .12      Origin and development (Cosmogony)
  - Glacial cosmogony [*formerly 523.14*], nebular and meteoritic hypotheses
- .13      Astrobiology
  - Former heading: Plurality of worlds
- [.14]      Glacial cosmogony
  - Class in 523.12
- .18      Expanding universe
  - Theories of Einstein, de Sitter, Eddington, Lemaître
- .19      Destruction of universe
- .2      Solar system
- [.207 4]      Planetariums
  - Do not use; class in 523.28
- .24      Motion in space
- .28      Planetariums (Orreries)
- .29      Zodiac
- .3      Moon
- [.302 1]      Tabulated and related materials
  - Do not use; class in 523.39
- [.302 2]      Illustrations
  - Do not use; class in 523.39
- .31      Constants and dimensions
  - Size, mass, distance, parallax
- .32      Phases, brightness, radiation
- .33      Orbit and motions
  - Sidereal month, perigee and apogee, librations

- 523.34        **Selenography**  
              Use 523.340 01 – 523.340 09 for standard subdivisions
- .340 2        Earth side of moon  
      .340 3        Far side of moon  
      .35        Theories of atmosphere  
      .37        Spectroscopy  
      .38        Eclipses  
      .39        Charts, photographs, tables  
      .4        **Planets**  
              Distance, motions, orbits, physical condition, spectroscopy  
              *For earth, see 525*
- [.402 1]        Tabulated and related materials  
              Do not use; class in 523.49
- [.402 2]        Illustrations  
              Do not use; class in 523.49
- .41        Mercury and intramercorial planets  
      .42        Venus  
      .43        Mars  
      .44        Minor planets ( Asteroids, planetoids)  
      .45        Jupiter  
      .46        Saturn  
      .47        Uranus  
      .48        Transuranian planets  
      .481        Neptune  
      .482        Pluto  
      .49        Charts, photographs, tables  
      .5        **Meteors and zodiacal light**  
      .51        Meteorites  
      .53        Meteoric showers and radiant points  
      .57        Spectroscopy  
      .59        Zodiacal light and counter glow

**523.6       Comets**

[.602 1]            Tabulated and related materials  
                         Do not use; class in **523.69**

[.602 2]            Illustrations  
                         Do not use; class in **523.69**

.63                **Orbits**

.64                **Famous comets**  
                         Class a specific aspect with the subject

.66                **Physical constitution**

.67                **Spectroscopy**

.69                **Charts, photographs, tables**

.7                 **Sun**

[.702 1]            Tabulated and related materials  
                         Do not use; class in **525.38**

[.702 2]            Illustrations  
                         Do not use; class in **523.79**

.71                **Constants and dimensions**  
                         Size, mass, distance, parallax

.72                **Heat, light, radiation**

.73                **Apparent motion and rotation**

.74                **Sunspots and faculae**

.75                **Prominences, chromosphere, corona**

.76                **Internal constitution**

.77                **Spectroscopy**

.78                **Eclipses**

.79                **Charts and photographs**

*Astronomy and allied sciences*

**523.8 Stars**

*For Milky Way, see 523.113; sun, 523.7*

[.802 1] Tabulated and related materials

Do not use; class in 523.89

[.802 2] Illustrations

Do not use; class in 523.89

.81 Constants and dimensions

Size, mass, distance, parallax

.82 Heat, light, radiation

.822 Magnitudes

.83 Proper motion and radial velocity

---

► 523.84–523.85 Systems and aggregations

Class a specific aspect with the subject

.84 Double, multiple, variable stars

.841 Visual binaries

.842 Spectroscopic binaries

.843 Astrometric binaries

.844 Variable stars

.844 2 Intrinsic variables

.844 25 Cepheids and cluster-type variables

.844 26 Long-period variables

.844 4 Eclipsing variables

.844 6 Novae and supernovae

.85 Clusters

.852 Open and moving clusters

.855 Globular clusters

.86 Physical constitution

.87 Spectroscopy

.89 Charts, photographs, tables

.890 3 Observers' atlases of constellations

.890 8 Star catalogs

### Decimal Classification

#### **523.9 Transits, satellites, occultations**

.91 Transits of Mercury

► 523.92-523.97 Transits of Venus

.92 Methods of observation and recording

Delisle's, Halley's, photographic methods

.96 Transits of 1761, 1769, 1874

.97 Transit of 1882

.98 Satellites [*formerly* 521.6]

*For moon, see 523.3*

.983-.988 Of specific planets

*Divide like 523.43-523.48, e.g., satellites of Mars 523.983*

.99 Occultations

#### **524**

#### **525 Earth (Astronomical geography)**

.1 Constants and dimensions

Size, shape, mass, position, parallax

· *For determination of size and shape, see 526.1*

.2 Heat, light, radiation

*For internal heat of earth, see 551.12*

.3 Orbit and motions

.35 Rotation

.36 Foucault's pendulum

.38 Tables of the sun

.5 Seasons

*Astronomy and allied sciences*

**525.6      Tides**

[.602 1]      Tabulated and related materials

Do not use; class in 525.69

.69      Tide tables

.7      Astronomical twilight and twilight tables

**526      Mathematical geography**

►      **526.1–526.7 Geodesy**

.1      Determination of size and shape

.3      Geodetic surveying

Surveys in which curvature of the earth is considered in measurement and computation

.31      Reconnaissance ( Preliminary surveys )

.32      Bench marks

Add area notations 1–9 to 526.32

.33      Triangulation, traversing, trilateration

►      **526.36–526.38 Leveling**

*For bench marks, see 526.32*

.36      Spirit leveling

Differential and precise spirit leveling

.37      Barometric leveling

.38      Trigonometric leveling ( Geodetic refraction )

## *Decimal Classification*

### **526.6 Geodetic and positional astronomy**

Application of spherical astronomy to geodesy

#### **526.61–526.63 Coordinates**

Theory, computation, determination of geodetic (geographic, topographic) coordinates

.61 Latitude

.62 Longitude

.63 Azimuth

.64 Geographic position

Including effect of irregularities of earth's surface on determination of position

.7 Gravity determinations (Physical geodesy)

.8 Map projections

Networks of parallel lines and meridians for map drawing

.82 Conformal (Orthomorphic) projections

.85 Equal-area (Equivalent) projections

[.88] Map scales and symbols

Class in 912.014 8

[.89] Printing maps

Class in 655.383

.9 Surveying

Class engineering surveys in 622–628

*For geodetic surveying, see 526.3*

#### **526.92–526.99 Plane surveying**

Surveys in which curvature of the earth is disregarded in measurement and computation

.92 Boundary surveying (Land surveys)

.98 Topographic surveying

.981 Contour surveying

*Astronomy and allied sciences*

- 526.982      **Photogrammetry**
- .982 3      **Aerial surveying**
- .982 5      **Ground (Terrestrial) surveying**

- .99      **Hydrographic surveying**

*For snow surveys, see 551.579*

**527      Celestial navigation**

Determination of geographic position and direction from observation of celestial bodies

Class practical navigation with the subject

*For finding time, see 529.7*

- .1      **Latitude**

- .2      **Longitude**

- .3      **Fixes**

Summer's and line-of-position methods

- .5      **Direction and course**

- .53      **Rhumb line course**

- .55      **Great circle course**

**528      Ephemerides ( Nautical almanacs )**

Class tables of specific celestial bodies in 523

- .1-.8      **In specific countries**

Divide like 061-068, e.g., English ephemerides 528.2

- .9      **Ephemeris making**



- i29      **Chronology**
- .1      **Sidereal and solar day**
  - Apparent and mean time, equation of time, causes of inequality
- .2      **Intervals of time**
  - Kinds of years, months, weeks, days
- .3      **Calendars**
  - For Christian calendars, see 529.4; calendar reforms, 529.5*
- .32      **Ancient and non-Christian calendars**
  - Divide like 292–299, e.g., Jewish calendar 529.326
- .4      **Christian calendars**
- .42      **Julian**
- .43      **Gregorian**
- .44      **Church**
  - Determination of movable feast and fast days
- .5      **Calendar reforms**
- .7      **Horology**
  - Finding and measuring time
  - For extrameridional instruments, see 522.4*
- .75      **Time systems and standards**
  - Universal, standard, daylight-saving time, conversion tables
- .78      **Instruments for measuring time**
  - Dials, hourglasses, clocks, watches
  - For sidereal clocks and chronometers, see 522.51*

## 530 Physics

- .01 Philosophy and logic [*formerly* 530.101]
  - Class theories in 530.1
- .02-.09 Other standard subdivisions
- .1 Theories
  - [.101] Philosophy and logic
    - Class in 530.01
  - .11 Relativity theory
  - .12 Quantum theory
    - Class classical mechanics in 531-533
  - .122 Matrix mechanics
  - .123 Quantum mechanics
  - .124 Wave mechanics
  - .13 Statistical and kinetic theories
    - Class classical mechanics in 531-533
  - .132 Statistical mechanics
  - .133 Quantum statistics
  - .14 Field theories
    - .142 Unified field theory
    - .143 Quantum field theory
    - .144 Problem of many bodies
  - .15 Mathematical physics
    - Including dimensional analysis [*formerly* 530.8]
    - Divide like 510, e.g., analysis 530.157
  - .16 Measurement theory [*formerly* 530.8]
- .4 States of matter
  - Class plasma in 537.16
  - .41 Solids (Solid-state physics)
  - .42 Liquids
  - .43 Gases

## Decimal Classification

### 530.7      **Instrumentation**

For measurement, control, recording

### .8      **Physical units, dimensions, constants**

Class measurement theory in 530.16, dimensional analysis in 530.15 [*both formerly 530.8*]



## 531–538 Classical physics

### 531      **Mechanics**

*For mechanics of fluids, see 532*

#### .01      **Philosophy and theory**

#### .015 17      **Analytical mechanics [*formerly 531.017*]**

#### [.017]      **Analytical mechanics**

Class in 531.015 17

#### .02–.09      **Other standard subdivisions**

Class tables, review, exercise in 531.9

### SUMMARY

#### 531.1      **Kinematics and particle mechanics**

##### .2–.5 Solids

##### .2      **Statics**

##### .3      **Dynamics**

##### .4      **Friction**

##### .5      **Mass, gravity, ballistics**

##### .6      **Energetics**

##### .7      **Transport phenomena in solids**

##### .8      **Simple machines**

##### .9      **Tables, review, exercise**

#### .1      **Kinematics and particle mechanics**

#### .11      **Kinematics (Geometry of motion)**

Linear and relative motion, centripetal acceleration, vector quantities, radial and transverse acceleration in a plane

#### .16      **Particle mechanics**

#### .162      **Statics [*formerly 531.26*]**

#### .163      **Dynamics [*formerly 531.36*]**

► **531.2–531.5 Solids (Rigid bodies)**

*For transport phenomena in solids, see 531.7*

**531.2**

**Statics**

Static, translational, rotational equilibrium

.23

Moments of inertia

.25

Graphic statics

Representation of magnitude, direction, position of forces by straight lines and determination of unknown quantities by mechanical measurement

[.26]

Statics of a particle

Class in 531.162

.3

**Dynamics**

Forces and their effect on the motion of rigid bodies

Including Newton's laws of motion

*For friction, see 531.4; mass, gravity, ballistics, 531.5*

.31

Trajectories

.32

Oscillations

.33

Wave motions

.34

Gyrodynamics

.35

Centrifugal and centripetal forces

[.36]

Dynamics of a particle

Class in 531.163

.38

Elasticity and deformation

.381

Elastic constants and their measurement

Young's modulus, Poisson's ratio, bulk modulus, shear modulus (modulus of rigidity)

.382

Stresses and types of deformation

.382 2

Stresses

Tensile, compressive, shearing stresses

- Temporary deformation (Elasticity)
    - Including elastic limit, coefficient of restitution
- .382 5 Permanent deformation (Plasticity)
  - Including yield point
- .383 Vibrations
- .4 Friction
- .5 Mass, gravity, ballistics
  - .52 Laws of falling bodies
  - .54 Density and specific gravity
  - .55 Projectiles
    - .552 In air
    - .555 In space
    - .555 2 Escape velocity (Parabolic velocity)
    - .555 4 Orbital velocity
    - .555 8 Re-entry problems
- .6 Energetics
  - For simple machines, see 531.8*
  - .62 Law of conservation of energy
  - .64 Forms of mechanical energy
    - .642 Potential
    - .643 Kinetic
  - .68 Transformation
    - Change of mechanical energy to other forms of energy
    - Class transformation to a specific form of energy with the subject
- .7 Transport phenomena in solids
- .8 Simple machines
  - Lever, wheel and axle, cord and pulley, geared wheel, inclined plane, wedge, screw
- .9 Tables, review, exercise

**532      Mechanics of fluids**

*For mechanics of gases, see 533*

.001-.009      Standard subdivisions

Class tables, review, exercise in 532.9

.02              Statics

Static, translational, rotational equilibrium

Including moments of inertia, transmission of pressure

.05              Dynamics

Forces and their effects on the motion of fluids

.1                Mechanics of liquids (Hydromechanics)

*For specific aspects of hydromechanics, see 532.2-532.7*

►                **532.2-532.7 Specific aspects of hydromechanics**

.2                Hydrostatics

Static, translational, rotational equilibrium

Including buoyancy [*formerly 532.3*], moments of inertia,  
transmission of pressure

*For surface phenomena, see 532.6*

[.3]              Buoyancy

Class in 532.2

.4                Mass, density, specific gravity

.5                Hydrodynamics

Forces and their effect on the motion of liquids

*For transport phenomena, see 532.7*

.51               General principles of flow

Class general principles applied to flow variations in  
532.52-532.56

.511              Kinetic theory

.515              Laminar flow

.516              Transition flow

.517              Turbulent flow [*formerly 532.56*]

## *Decimal Classification*

- 532.52–532.56 Flow variations
- 532.52 Thru orifices and nozzles
  - .53 Over weirs and spillways
  - .54 Thru pipes and open channels
  - .55 Thru bends and irregular enclosures
  - .56 When pressure is variable
    - Including flow over and around submerged bodies
    - Class turbulent flow [*formerly 532.56*] in 532.517
  - .57 Velocity and its measurements
  - .58 Viscosity
    - Measurements, effects on flow
  - .59 Other types of motion
  - .593 Wave motions
  - .595 Vortex motions and cavitation
  - .6 **Surface phenomena**
    - Surface tension, capillarity, thin films, bubbles
  - .7 **Transport phenomena**
    - Diffusivity, permeability, osmosis
  - .8 **Special developments**
  - .9 **Tables, review, exercise**
- 533 **Mechanics of gases**
- .01–.09 Standard subdivisions
    - Class tables, review, exercise in 533.9

**533.1–533.5 Gases in general**

*For aeromechanics, see 533.6; other aspects of gases in general, 533.7–533.9*

**533.1 Statics and other phenomena**

*For dynamics, see 533.2; vacuum and vacuum production, 533.5*

**.12 Statics**

Static, translational, rotational equilibrium

Including moments of inertia, transmission of pressure

**.13 Transport phenomena**

Diffusivity, permeability, osmosis

Class viscosity [*formerly 533.13*] in 533.28

**.14 Absorption and adsorption**

**.15 Mass, density, specific gravity**

**.2 Dynamics**

Forces and their effect on the motion of gases

*For transport phenomena, see 533.13*

**.21 Types of flow**

Divide like 532.515–532.517, e.g., turbulent flow 533.217

**.27 Velocity**

**.273 Subsonic**

**.274 Transonic**

**.275 Supersonic**

**.276 Hypersonic**

**.28 Elasticity and compressibility**

Including viscosity [*formerly 533.13*]

**.29 Other types of motion**

Divide like 532.59, e.g., cavitation 533.295

**.5 Vacuum and vacuum production**

**.52 Rarefaction of gases**

**.54 High-vacuum production**



## *Decimal Classification*

### **533 6 Aeromechanics**

*For vacuum and vacuum production, see 533.5*

#### **61 Aerostatics**

Static, translational, rotational equilibrium

#### **.62 Aerodynamics**

Forces and their effect on the motion of air

Divide like 533.2, e.g., cavitation 533.629 5

*For transport phenomena, see 533.63*

#### **.63 Transport phenomena**

Diffusivity, permeability, osmosis

---

### **► 533.7–533.9 Other aspects of gases in general**

#### **.7 Kinetic theory of gases**

#### **.8 Special developments**

#### **.9 Tables, review, exercise**

### **534 Sound and related vibrations**

#### **.01–.09 Standard subdivisions**

Class tables, review, exercise in 534.9

## **SUMMARY**

### **534.1–.4 Sound waves**

#### **.1 Generation thru vibration**

#### **.2 Propagation (Transmission)**

#### **.3 Characteristics**

#### **.4 Measurements, analysis, synthesis**

#### **.5 Related vibrations**

#### **.8 Special developments**

#### **.9 Tables, review, exercise**

---

### **► 534.1–534.4 Sound waves**

#### **.1 Generation thru vibration**

#### **.12 Of strings and wires**

#### **.13 Of rods, plates, bells**

#### **.14 Of air columns in pipes**

Including resonance

534.15      Of membranes

[.16]      Subsonic vibrations

Class in 534.52

**.2      Propagation (Transmission)**

Use 534.200 1 – 534.200 9 for standard subdivisions

Class interference [*formerly* 534.2] in 534.47

.202      Velocity

.203      Directionality

.204      Reflection (Echoes)

.205      Refraction

.206      Diffraction

.207      Polarization

.208      Absorption (Damping)

---

►      534.22–534.24 Transmission in specific mediums

.22      In solids

.23      In liquids

.24      In gases

**.3      Characteristics**

.32      Frequency and pitch

Including Doppler effect

.33      Intensity and loudness

.34      Amplitude and timbre

.35      Irregular and discordant frequencies

.352      Dissonance

.355      Noise

**.4      Measurements, analysis, synthesis**

.42      Measurement techniques



534.44–534.45 Analysis

*For graphic and optical representations, see 534.46*

- 534.44 Qualitative
- .45 Quantitative
- .46 Graphic and optical representations [*formerly 534.6*]
- .47 Synthesis

Compounding sound waves

Including superposition principles [*formerly 534.59*],  
interference [*formerly 534.2*], beats

*For graphic and optical representations, see 534.46*

**.5 Related vibrations**

Generation, transmission, characteristics, measurements, analysis,  
synthesis

.52 Subsonic vibrations [*formerly 534.16*]

.55 Ultrasonic vibrations

[.59] Superposition principles

Class in 534.47

**[.6] Graphic and optical representations**

Class in 534.46

**.8 Special developments**

**.9 Tables, review, exercise**

**535 Visible light and parafotic phenomena**

Former heading: Optics

.01 Spectral regions

Class theories in 535.1, spectroscopy in 535.84

.012 Infrared

*For heat radiation, see 536.33*

## *Physics*

---

535.013            Visible  
                    Class specific elements in 535.2–535.6

.014            Ultraviolet

.02–.09        Standard subdivisions

                    Class tables, review, exercise in 535.9

### SUMMARY

535.1        Theories  
    .2        Physical optics  
    .3        Transmission, absorption, emission  
    .4        Dispersion, interference, diffraction  
    .5        Beams and their modification  
    .6        Color  
    .8        Special developments  
    .9        Tables, review, exercise

.1            Theories

.12            Corpuscular (Emission) theory

.13            Mechanical wave theory

.14            Electromagnetic theory

.15            Quantum theory

---

►                535.2–535.6 Specific elements of visible light

*For visual spectroscopy, see 535.843*

.2            Physical optics

*For special aspects of physical optics, see 535.4–535.5*

.22            Intensity

.24            Velocity

.3            Transmission, absorption, emission

.32            Geometrical optics

*For optical instruments, see 535.33; color, 535.6*

.322            Rectilinear propagation

.323            Reflection

.324            Refraction

.326            Absorption

## *Decimal Classification*

- 535.33      Optical instruments
  - Principles and design
- .35      Luminescence, fluorescence, phosphorescence
- **535.4–535.5 Special aspects of physical optics**
- .4      **Dispersion, interference, diffraction**
  - For color, see 535.6*
- .5      **Beams and their modification**
- .52      Polarization
- .523      Plane
- .524      Rotary
- .58      Amplification
  - Including amplification by stimulated emission of radiation (lasers)
- .6      **Color**
- .8      **Special developments**
- .84      Spectroscopy (Emission and absorption spectroscopy)
  - Techniques for studying light emitted by physical objects by means of the spectroscope and methods of measuring intensity and frequency of spectrum lines
- .842      Infrared
- .843      Visible (Chromatic)
- .844      Ultraviolet
- .845      Vacuum ultraviolet
- .846      Raman
- .9      **Tables, review, exercise**
- 536      **Heat**
- .01      Philosophy and theory
  - Class theories in 536.1
- .02–.09      Other standard subdivisions
  - Class tables, review, exercise in 536.9

SUMMARY

- 536.1 Theories
  - .2 Transmission (Heat transfer)
  - .3 Radiation and effects of matter on heat
  - .4 Effects of heat on matter
  - .5 Temperature
  - .6 Calorimetry
  - .7 Thermodynamics
  - .8 Special developments
  - .9 Tables, review, exercise
- 536.1 Theories
  - .2 Transmission (Heat transfer)
    - Use 536.200 1 – 536.200 9 for standard subdivisions
    - For radiation, see 536.33*
  - .201 Material properties
    - For specific heats, see 536.63–536.65*
  - .201 2 Conductivity
  - .201 4 Diffusivity
  - .23 In solids (Conduction)
  - .25 In fluids (Convection)
  - .3 Radiation and effects of matter on heat
    - .31 Reflection
    - .32 Refraction
    - .33 Radiation
    - .34 Absorption
  - .4 Effects of heat on matter
    - Use 536.400 1 – 536.400 9 for standard subdivisions
  - .401 Change of state (Phase changes)
    - Including triple points
    - Class specific transformations in 536.42–536.44
  - .41 Expansion and contraction
    - Pressure-volume-temperature relationships, coefficients of expansion
  - .412 Of gases
    - For liquefaction of gases, see 536.56*

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 536.413      Of liquids
- .414      Of solids
- 536.42–536.44      Specific transformations
- .42      Fusion and solidification
  - Solid-to-liquid and liquid-to-solid transformations
  - Including freezing and melting points, latent heats of fusion
- .44      Vaporization and condensation
- .443      Liquid-to-gas and gas-to-liquid transformations
  - Critical points, heats of vaporization, dew points, boiling points
- .445      Solid-to-gas and gas-to-solid transformations
  - Sublimation
- .45      Incandescence
- .5      Temperature
  - 536.51–536.53      Measurement
  - .51      Liquid-in-glass thermometry
  - .52      Pyrometry
    - Pyrometers and thermocouples for temperatures over 500° C
  - .53      Electrical resistance thermometry
  - .56      Cryogenics
    - Production of temperatures below 91° K
    - Including liquefaction of gases, absolute temperature, properties of matter at extremely low temperatures
    - Class a specific property with the subject
  - .57      High temperatures
    - Production of temperatures over 3000° K
    - Including plasma temperatures

**536.6      Calorimetry**

Measurement of heat quantities and thermal capacity

Class heats of transformation in 536.42–536.44

**.62      Calorimeters**

536.63–536.65 Specific heats

**.63      Of solids and liquids**

**.65      Of gases and vapors**

**.7      Thermodynamics**

Mathematical and physical relations between mechanical work and heat energy

Including transformation of heat into mechanical energy, of mechanical energy into heat

*For calorimetry, see 536.6*

**.701      Philosophy and theory**

Class theories in 537.71

**.71      Theories**

Three laws of thermodynamics, Joule's law, Maxwell's four thermodynamic formulas, Carnot cycle

**.73      Entropy**

Measurement of unavailable energy in thermodynamic systems

**.8      Special developments**

**.9      Tables, review, exercise**

**537      Electricity and electronics**

*For magnetism, see 538*

**.01      Philosophy and theory**

Class theories in 537.1

**.02–.09      Other standard subdivisions**

Class tables, review, exercise in 537.9



SUMMARY

537.1	Theories
.2	Electrostatics
.5	Electronics
.6	Electric currents
.8	Special developments
.9	Tables, review, exercise

537.1 Theories

►	537.11-537.12 Electromagnetic theory
.11	Maxwell's equations
.12	Electromagnetic fields and waves
.122	Field intensity and equations
.123	Microwave circuit theory
.125	Wave guides
.14	Corpuscular theory
.16	Plasma and plasma dynamics
.2	Electrostatics
.21	Charge and potentials
	Including triboelectricity
.23	Generators
.24	Dielectrics
.242	Capacitors (Condensers)
.243	Dipole moments
.244	Pyroelectricity and piezoelectricity
.245	Electrocapillarity
.246	Electrostriction
.5	Electronics
	<i>For semiconductors, see 537.622</i>
.52	Disruptive discharge
	Luminous discharge produced by the disruptive passage of high-voltage electricity thru gases or vapors at atmospheric pressure
	Including electric arc
	<i>For ionization of gases, see 537.532</i>

## *Physics*

- 537.53 Discharge thru rarefied-gas and high-vacuum tubes
  - .532 Ionization of gases
    - Including electron ballistics
  - .533 Thermionic emission
  - .534 Radio- and microwaves
    - Spectroscopy, circuitry, specific tubes, wave guides
    - Class wave guide theories in 537.125
  - .534 2 Long waves
    - Frequency ranges between  $10^0$  and  $10^6$  cycles per second
  - .534 3 Short waves
    - Frequency ranges between  $10^7$  and  $10^8$  cycles per second
  - .534 4 Microwaves (Ultra-high-frequency waves)
    - Frequency ranges between  $10^9$  and  $10^{12}$  cycles per second
    - Including amplification by stimulated emission of radiation (masers)
  - .535 X and gamma rays
    - Frequencies over  $10^{17}$  cycles per second
  - .535 2 Spectroscopy
    - Class a specific application with the subject
  - .535 3 Circuitry
  - .535 5 Specific tubes
- .54 Photoelectric effects
  - Photoemissivity, photovoltaism, photoconductivity
- .56 Electron and ion optics
  - Focusing and deflecting streams of charged particles by means of electrostatic and magnetic lenses and fields
- .6 Electric currents
- .61 Direct currents and circuitry

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 537.62      Conductivity and resistance
  - For dielectrics, see 537.24*
- .622      Semiconductivity
  - Including semiconductors
- .623      Superconductivity
- .624      Thermal effects of currents
- .63      Alternating currents and circuitry
- .64      Electrodynamics
  - Mutual- and self-induction
- .65      Thermoelectricity
  - Electricity produced by direct action of heat
- .8      Special developments
- .9      Tables, review, exercise

## **538      Magnetism**

- .01      Philosophy and theory
  - Class theories in 537.1
- .02-.09      Other standard subdivisions
  - Class tables, review, exercise in 538.9

### **SUMMARY**

- 538.2      Magnets and magnetic induction
- .3      Magnetic phenomena
- .4      Magnetic materials and permeability
- .6      Magnetohydrodynamics
- .7      Geomagnetism and allied phenomena
- .8      Special developments
- .9      Tables, review, exercise
- .2      Magnets and magnetic induction
- .22      Permanent magnets
- .23      Temporary magnets (Induced magnetism)
- .24      Induction in coils

- 538.3      Magnetic phenomena**  
                  Hysteresis, magnetostriction, reluctance, piezomagnetism,  
                  pyromagnetism  
                  *For permeability, see 538.4*
- .4            Magnetic materials and permeability**
- .42            Diamagnetic
- .43            Paramagnetic
- .44            Ferromagnetic
- .45            Ferrimagnetic
- .6            Magnetohydrodynamics**  
                  Motion of plasmas in magnetic fields
- .7            Geomagnetism and allied phenomena**  
                  *For atmospheric electricity, see 551.56*
- .72            Permanent magnetic field  
                  Theory, analysis, secular variations of magnetism of earth's  
                  crust and interior
- .74            Transient magnetism
- .742            Diurnal variations
- .743            Other periodic variations
- .744            Magnetic storms and pulsations
- .746            Sunspot effects
- .748            Earth currents
- .76            Allied phenomena of overhead activation
- .767            Ionosphere
- .767 2            D region
- .767 3            E region  
                  E and sporadic E layers (Kennelly-Heaviside layers)
- .767 4            F region  
                  F<sub>1</sub> and F<sub>2</sub> layers (Appleton layers)
- .767 5            Van Allen radiation belts
- .768            Auroras

## *Decimal Classification*

- 538.78**      **Magnetic surveys**  
                Add area notations 1–9 to **538.78**
- .79**      **Magnetic observations at permanent stations**  
                Add area notations 1–9 to **538.79**
- .8**      **Special developments**
- .9**      **Tables, review, exercise**

- 539**      **Modern physics**  
                Molecular, atomic, nuclear physics  
                *For electronics, see 537.5*
- .01–.09**      **Standard subdivisions**  
                        Class tables, review, exercise in **539.9**
- .1**      **Structure of matter**  
                Scope: interpretation thru spectroscopy  
                *For nuclear structure, see 539.74*
- .12**      **Molecular structure**
- .14**      **Atomic structure**
- .7**      **Nuclear physics**

### **SUMMARY**

- 539.72**      **Fundamental radiations**
- .73**      **Particle acceleration**
- .74**      **Nuclear structure**
- .75**      **Transmutations**
- .76**      **High-energy reactions**
- .77**      **Particle detection and measurement**
- .72**      **Fundamental radiations**  
                Mass, charge, size, velocity, scattering, energy levels  
                *For treatment, structure, reactions, see 539.73–539.77*
- .721**      **Fundamental (Subatomic) particles**
- .721 1**      **Electrons (Beta particles)**
- .721 2**      **Protons and antiprotons**
- .721 3**      **Neutrons and antineutrons**

- 539.721 4            Positrons
- .721 5            Neutrinos and antineutrinos
- .721 6            Mesons
  - Mu-, pi-, K-mesons
- .721 7            Photons
- .721 9            Other particles
- .722            Penetrating radiation
- .722 2            X and gamma rays
  - Class production in 537.535
- .722 3            Cosmic rays
  - For mesons, see 539.721 6*

---

►                    539.73–539.77 Treatment, structure, reactions

- .73            Particle acceleration
- .732            In high-voltage accelerators
  - Use of voltage multipliers and Van de Graaff electrostatic generators
- .733            In resonance accelerators
  - Use of linear accelerators and cyclotrons
- .734            In induction accelerators
  - Use of betatrons
- .735            In synchronous accelerators
  - Use of synchrocyclotrons and synchrotrons  
(betatron-synchrotrons)
- .74            Nuclear structure
  - Scope: isotope structure
- .742            Liquid-drop model
- .743            Shell model
- .744            Interpretation thru spectroscopy

## *Decimal Classification*



### 539.75–539.76 Nuclear reactions

539.75

#### Transmutations

Decay schemes, half-life periods, electron and radiative capture, element disintegration

.752

#### Radioactive decay (Natural transmutations)

.752 2

Alpha decay

.752 3

Beta decay

.752 4

Gamma decay

.753

#### Artificial transmutations

Bombardment of elements with high-speed particles from natural radioactive sources and accelerators

.76

#### High-energy reactions

.762

Fission

.764

Fusion

.77

#### Particle detection and measurement

.772

In ionization chambers

.773

In proportional counters

.774

In Geiger-Müller counters

.775

In scintillation counters

.776

In crystal conduction counters

.777

In Wilson cloud chambers

.778

Thru photographic means

.9

#### Tables, review, exercise

## **540 Chemistry and allied sciences**

Use 540.01–540.09 for standard subdivisions

### **540.1–540.9 Standard subdivisions of chemistry**

#### **.1 Early theories**

Alchemy, phlogiston theory, philosopher's stone, other ancient and medieval philosophies

Class theoretical chemistry in 541.2

#### **.2–.9 Other**

Class apparatus and equipment in 542



## **541–547 Chemistry**

### **541 Physical and theoretical chemistry**

Class physical and theoretical organic chemistry in 547.1

#### **.2 Theoretical chemistry**

*For periodicity and periodic law, see 541.901*

#### **.22 Molecular structure**

*For quantum chemistry, see 541.28*

#### **.221 Structural formulas**

#### **.222 Molecular weights [*formerly* 541.25]**

#### **.223 Stereochemistry [*formerly* 541.6]**

Spatial molecular arrangement and bond distances

#### **.224 Molecular bonds and valences [*both formerly* 541.396]**

Including linkages (conjugations), radicals

*For bond distances, see 541.223*

#### **.225 Structural variations [*formerly* 541.7]**

#### **.225 2 Isomers and tautomerism**

Structural and geometrical isomers and their equilibrium states



## *Decimal Classification*

- 541.225 3            Chelates  
    .225 4            Polymers  
    .226            Intermolecular forces  
  
    .24            Atomic structure  
                    *For radiochemistry, see 541.38*  
  
    .242            Atomic constants  
                    Atomic weights and numbers [*both formerly 541.25*],  
                    atomic mass  
  
    .243            Spatial atomic arrangements  
    .244            Homopolar and heteropolar bonds [*both formerly*  
                    541.396]  
    .246            Interatomic forces [*formerly 541.396*]  
[.25]            Molecular and atomic weights, atomic numbers  
                    Class molecular weights in 541.222, atomic weights and  
                    numbers in 541.242  
  
    .26            Stoichiometry [*formerly 541.901 5*]  
                    Numerical relationship between elements and compounds,  
                    determination of proportions in which elements combine,  
                    weight relations in reactions  
  
    .28            Quantum chemistry [*formerly 541.383*]  
                    Use of quantum, wave, statistical mechanics for interpretation  
                    of molecular structure and chemical reactivity in terms of  
                    motion of electrons  
  
    .3            Physical chemistry  
                    *For optical activity, see 541.7*

## SUMMARY

- 541.34            Solutions  
    .35            Photochemistry  
    .36            Thermochemistry and thermodynamics  
    .37            Electro- and magnetochemistry  
    .38            Radiochemistry  
    .39            Reaction kinetics and mechanisms

- 541.34      Solutions
- General and nonelectrolytic
- For electrolytic solutions, see 541.372–541.374*
- .341      Properties
- .341 3      Mechanical
- .341 4      Optical
- .341 5      Colligative
- Freezing-point depression, boiling-point elevation,  
            vapor-pressure lowering, osmotic pressure
- .341 6      Thermal
- .342      Solubility
- .342 2      In water
- .342 3      In non-aqueous solvents
- 
- 541.343–541.345 Specific types of solutions
- .343      By concentration of solute
- .343 2      Dilute
- .343 3      Normal and molar
- .343 4      Saturated
- .343 5      Supersaturated
- .345      Colloidal
- .345 1      Colloidal systems
- For specific properties, see 541.345 3 – 541.345 4*
- .345 13      Matter in solid disperoids
- Solids, liquids, gases disperst in solids, e.g., alloys,  
            gels, solid foams
- .345 14      Hydrosols
- Solids, liquids, gases disperst in liquids, e.g.,  
            suspensions, emulsions, foams (lathers, froths)
- .345 15      Aerosols
- Solids and liquids disperst in gases, e.g., smokes, fogs,  
            mists

## *Decimal Classification*

- 541.345 3 – 541.345 4 Specific properties
- 541.345 3 Surface properties  
Surface tension, capillarity, interfacial tensions, films,  
electric double layers
- .345 4 Other  
Including formation of Liesegang rings
- .348 Solution components
- .348 2 Solvents
- .348 3 Solutes
- .348 5 Precipitates
- .35 Photochemistry  
Reactions due to visible light and paraphotic radiations
- .351 Energy transformations
- .353 Specific radiations  
Divide like 535.01, e.g., chemical reactions due to ultraviolet  
radiation 541.353 4
- .36 Thermochemistry and thermodynamics  
Use 541.360 01 – 541.360 09 for standard subdivisions
- .360 1–.360 9 Standard subdivisions of thermochemistry
- 541.361–541.368 Thermochemistry
- .361 Combustion
- .362 Exothermic and endothermic reactions  
Heat liberated or absorbed during neutralization, formation,  
dilution, combustion, solution
- .363 Change of state (Phase changes)  
Including triple points
- .364 Thermal dissociations
- .368 Reactions under temperature extremes
- .368 6 Low temperatures  
Reactions below  $-100^{\circ}\text{C}$

*Chemistry and allied sciences*

- 541.368 7      High temperatures  
                    Reactions above critical temperatures
- .369      Thermodynamics
- .37      Electro- and magnetochemistry  
            Use 541.370 01 – 541.370 09 for standard subdivisions
- .370 1–.370 9      Standard subdivisions of electrochemistry
- 
- 541.372–541.377 Electrochemistry
- 
- 541.372–541.374 Electrolytic solutions
- .372      Electrical properties (Electrolyte conductivity)
- .372 2      Ionization (Electrolytic dissociation)
- .372 3      Ion exchange and equilibriums
- .372 4      Ionic migration to electrodes
- .372 8      Hydrogen-ion concentration
- .374      Other properties  
            Divide like 541.341, e.g., optical properties of electrolytic  
            solutions 541.374 4
- .377      Semiconductors  
            Former heading: Dielectric phenomena
- .378      Magnetochemistry
- .38      Radiochemistry
- .382      Radiolysis
- [.383]      Quantum chemistry  
            Class in 541.28
- .388      Isotopes  
            Class isotopes of specific elements in 541.389
- .388 2      Stable
- .388 4      Radioactive
- .389      Radiochemistry of specific elements  
            Divide like 546.38–546.75, e.g., radiocarbon 541.389 681

### *Decimal Classification*

- 541.39      **Reaction kinetics and mechanisms**
- .392      **Chemical equilibriums**
  - Including law of mass action and Le Chatelier's principle
- .393      **Types of reactions**
  - Chain, reversible, irreversible, homogeneous, heterogeneous
- .394      **Reaction rates**
- .395      **Catalysis**
  - Acceleration and retardation of chemical reactions by means of catalysts
- [.396]      **Chemical bonds, valences, interatomic forces**
  - Class molecular bonds and valences in 541.224, homopolar and heteropolar bonds in 541.244, interatomic forces in 541.246
- [.6]        **Stereochemistry**
  - Class in 541.223
- .7        **Optical activity**
  - Optical rotation, racemization, mutarotation
  - Including polarimetry
  - Class structural variations [*formerly* 541.7] in 541.225
- .9        **Other topics**
- .901      **Periodicity and periodic law**
- [.901 5]    **Stoichiometry**
  - Class in 541.26
- 542        **Laboratories, apparatus, equipment**
  - Scope: general procedures and manipulation of equipment
  - Class a specific application with the subject
- .1        **Laboratories**
  - Layouts, installations, basic equipment
  - For specific types of apparatus, see 542.2–542.9*

## *Chemistry and allied sciences*

### ► 542.2–542.9 Specific types of apparatus

#### 542.2 Receptacles and accessory equipment

Beakers, flasks, retorts, test tubes, funnels, crucibles, supports, stoppers, tubing

*For measuring apparatus, see 542.3; distilling apparatus, 542.4; gas apparatus, 542.7*

#### .3 Measuring apparatus

Gravimetric and volumetric

*For gas apparatus, see 542.7*

#### .4 Heating and distilling apparatus

#### .5 Blowpipes

#### .6 Filters and dializers

#### .7 Gas apparatus

For producing, collecting, washing, dissolving, storing, measuring, rarefying, compressing, liquefying, solidifying gases

#### .8 Electrical and electronic apparatus

#### .9 Other apparatus

### ► 543–545 Analytical chemistry

Class organic analytical chemistry in 547.3

#### 543 General analysis

Use 543.001–543.009 for standard subdivisions

*For qualitative analysis, see 544; quantitative analysis, 545*

#### .01 Reagents

#### .02 Sample preparation

#### .07 Instrumentation

#### .08 Instrumental methods

#### .083 Mechanical analysis

#### .085 Optical analysis

#### .086 Thermal analysis

#### .087 Electrical analysis

#### .088 Radiochemical analysis

## *Decimal Classification*

### ► 543.1–543.6 Specific product groups

#### 543.1 Food products other than dairy products

##### .2 Dairy products

##### .3 Sanitary analysis

##### .31 Water constituents

##### .312 Domestic

##### .313 Industrial

##### .314 Agricultural

##### .32 Sewage

##### .4 Cosmetics and perfumes

##### .5 Pesticides and other poisons

##### .6 Rocks and ores

#### 544 Qualitative analysis

Systematic macro and semiquantitative methods and procedures for detecting and identifying constituents of a substance

Scope: identification of specific elements [*formerly 546*]

Use 544.001–544.009 for standard subdivisions

##### .01–.08 General principles

Divide like 543.01–543.08, e.g., mechanical analysis 544.083

### SUMMARY

#### 544.1 Systematic separations

##### .2 Pyrolysis and combustion

##### .3 Blowpipe analysis

##### .4 Gas analysis

##### .5 Diffusion analysis

##### .6 Spectrochemical analysis (Spectroscopic analysis)

##### .8 Micro and semimicro methods

##### .9 Other methods

##### .1 Systematic separations

Former heading: Wet analysis

##### .12 Cation separation and identification

##### .13 Anion separation and identification

##### .16 Separation of groups of elements and their components

Divide like 546.3–546.7, e.g., separation of halogens 544.167 3

## *Chemistry and allied sciences*

### **544.2 Pyrolysis and combustion**

Former heading: Dry methods

#### **.3 Blowpipe analysis**

Flame tests, bead tests, reactions on charcoal and plaster of paris in conjunction with blowpipe

#### **.4 Gas analysis**

#### **.5 Diffusion analysis**

Including ultrafiltration methods (dialysis)

#### **.6 Spectrochemical analysis (Spectroscopic analysis)**

Class quantitative methods in spectrochemical analysis [*formerly* 544.6] in 545.83

#### **.62 Microwave**

#### **.63 Infrared**

#### **.64 Visible light**

Including Raman spectroscopy

#### **.65 Ultraviolet**

#### **.66 X-ray and gamma-ray**

#### **.8 Micro and semimicro methods**

Class quantitative micro and semimicro methods [*formerly* 544.8] in 545.84

#### **.82 Microscopical analysis**

Use of compound, electron and ultramicroscopes for identification

#### **.83 Microchemical analysis**

Reactions performed with small quantities, e.g., micrograms and microliters, and using small apparatus

Class semimicro analysis [*formerly* 544.83] in 544.85

#### **.832 Systematic analysis**

#### **.834 Spot tests [*formerly* 544.84]**

#### **[.84] Spot tests and paper chromatography**

Class spot tests in 544.834, paper chromatography in 544.925



## *Decimal Classification*

544.85      Semimicro analysis [*formerly* 544.83]  
                 Small-scale adaptations of existing macro methods

.9      **Other methods**

.92      Chromatographic analysis

.922      Adsorption

.923      Ion-exchange separations

.924      Liquid-liquid chromatology

.925      Paper chromatography [*formerly* 544.84]

.926      Gas-liquid partition chromatography (Gas chromatography)

.94      Biochemical methods

                 Identification by means of microorganisms

545      **Quantitative analysis**

                 Determination of the amount of a constituent in a substance

                 Use 545.001–545.009 for standard subdivisions

.01–.08      **General principles**

                 Divide like 543.01–543.08, e.g., mechanical analysis 545.083

### **SUMMARY**

545.1      Gravimetric analysis of precipitates

.2      Volumetric analysis

.3      Electroanalysis

.4      Thermogravimetric methods

.7      Gasometric methods

.8      Other methods

.1      **Gravimetric analysis of precipitates**

.2      **Volumetric analysis**

                 Determination of elements and compounds in a substance by titration with standard solutions and indicators

.22      Neutralization methods (Alkalimetry and acidimetry)

.23      Oxidation-reduction methods (Oxidimetry and iodometry)

.24      Precipitation methods

*Chemistry and allied sciences*

**545.3 Electroanalysis**

.31 Conductometric and potentiometric titrations

.311 Conductometric methods

.312 Potentiometric methods

.32 Polarographic methods

Analysis based on current-voltage curves obtained in electrolysis with a slowly dropping mercury cathode (polarimetric titration)

.33 Mass spectrographic methods

.34 Electrodeposition

**.4 Thermogravimetric methods**

.42 Pyrolysis and combustion

.43 Blowpipe analysis

.46 Volatilization

**.7 Gasometric methods**

**.8 Other methods**

.81 Optical methods

*For spectroscopic analysis, see 545.83*

.812 Photometric analysis

Colorimetric, nephelometric, turbidimetric, fluorophotometric methods

.813 Refractometric and interferometric analysis

.816 Polarimetric analysis (Polariscopic analysis)

.82 Radiochemical methods

.822 Activation analysis (Radioactivation analysis)

.824 Tracer techniques

.83 Spectroscopic analysis [*formerly also 544.6*]

Former heading: Diffraction methods

Divide like 544.6, e.g., X-ray diffraction methods 545.836

.84 Micro and semimicro methods [*formerly 544.8*]

Divide like 544.83–544.85, e.g., semimicro quantitative analysis 545.845

## Decimal Classification

### 546 Inorganic chemistry

An optional schedule, based on earlier concepts of the subject, appeared in Edition 16, p. 2429-2439

Divide each subdivision identified by \* as follows, e.g., arsenic compounds 546.715 2

- 1 The element
- 2 Compounds
- 22 Acids and bases
- 24 Salts
- 25 Complex compounds
- 3 Molecular and colloidal mixtures

Class identification of specific elements [*formerly 546*] in 544

*For analytical chemistry, see 543-545; physical and theoretical chemistry, 541*

### SUMMARY

- 546.1 General principles
- .2 Hydrogen and its compounds
- .3 Metals, their compounds and mixtures
- .4 Rare-earth elements (Group 3A)
- .5 Groups 4A, 5A, 6A, 7A
- .6 Groups 8, 1B, 2B, 3B, 4B
- .7 Nonmetals
- .8 Periods of periodic table

#### .1 General principles

Class general principles applied to specific elements and their compounds in 546.38-546.75

#### .11 Elements

#### .12 Specific reactions

#### .121 Catalysis

#### .122 Hydrolysis

#### .123 Oxidation and reduction

#### .129 Other

#### .15 Synthesis

Preparation of new compounds, and new methods for preparing old compounds

#### .2 Hydrogen and its compounds

#### .21 The element

## *Chemistry and allied sciences*

- 546.22–546.24 Compounds
- 546.22 Water  
Including deuterium oxide (heavy water)
- .24 Acids  
Class a specific acid with its nonmetallic element
- .3 Metals, their compounds and mixtures  
Class metals, their compounds and mixtures of groups other than 1A and 2A in 546.4–546.6
- .31 Metallic elements  
Class alkali metals and alkaline earth metals (groups 1A and 2A) in 546.38–546.39

- 
- 546.32–546.34 Compounds  
Class a specific metallic compound with its metallic element
- .32 Bases
- .34 Salts
- .342 Simple  
Neutral, acidulous, alkaline, amphoteric, binary salts
- .343 Double (Molecular compounds)  
Salts formed by union of two simple salts, e.g., alums
- .345 Complex  
Double salts which do not form their component simple salts on solution, e.g., potassium ferrocyanide
- .37 Alloys  
Molecular and colloidal mixtures

- 
- 546.38–546.39 Alkali and alkaline earth metals
- .38 Alkali metals (Group 1A)
- .381 \*Lithium
- .382 \*Sodium (Natrium)
- .383 \*Potassium (Kalium)

\* Divide as instructed under 546

## *Decimal Classification*

---

546.384	*Rubidium
.385	*Cesium (Caesium)
.386	*Francium
.39	Alkaline earth metals (Group 2A)
.391	*Beryllium (Glucinium)
.392	*Magnesium
.393	*Calcium
.394	*Strontium
.395	*Barium
.396	*Radium
.4	Rare-earth elements (Group 3A)
	Use 546.400 1 – 546.400 9 for standard subdivisions
.401	*Scandium
.403	*Yttrium
.41	Lanthanide series
.411	*Lanthanum
.412	*Cerium
.413	Praseodymium and neodymium
.414	*Promethium (Illinium)
.415	Samarium and europium
.416	Gadolinium and terbium
.417	Dysprosium and holmium
.418	Erbium and thulium (aldebaranium)
.419	Ytterbium and lutetium (cassiopeium, lutecium)
<hr/>	
►	546.42–546.44 Actinide series
.42	Terrestrially-occurring actinides
	<i>For uranium, see 546.431</i>
.421	*Actinium
.422	*Thorium
.424	*Protactinium (Protoactinium)

\* Divide as instructed under 546

*Chemistry and allied sciences*

- 546.43 Uranium, neptunium, plutonium  
    .431 \*Uranium  
    .432 \*Neptunium  
    .434 \*Plutonium  
    .44 Transuranium elements  
        Use 546.440 01 – 546.440 09 for standard subdivisions  
        For neptunium, see 546.432; plutonium, 546.434  
    .440 1–.440 2 \*Special subdivisions  
    .441 Americium  
    .442 Curium  
    .444 Berkelium  
    .448 Californium  
    .449 Other  
        Einsteinium, fermium, mendelevium, nobelium, lawrencium
- .5 Groups 4A, 5A, 6A, 7A  
    .51 Titanium group (Group 4A)  
    .512 \*Titanium  
    .513 \*Zirconium  
    .514 \*Hafnium (Celtium)  
    .52 Vanadium group (Group 5A)  
    .522 \*Vanadium  
    .524 \*Columbium (Niobium)  
    .526 \*Tantalum  
    .53 Chromium group (Group 6A)  
    .532 \*Chromium  
    .534 \*Molybdenum  
    .536 \*Tungsten (Wolfram)  
    .54 Manganese group (Group 7A)  
    .541 \*Manganese  
    .543 Technetium  
    .545 \*Rhenium (Bohemium)

\* Divide as instructed under 546

**546.6      Groups 8, 1B, 2B, 3B, 4B**

**SUMMARY**

<b>546.62</b>	<b>Iron series</b>
<b>.63</b>	<b>Ruthenium series</b>
<b>.64</b>	<b>Osmium series</b>
<b>.65</b>	<b>Copper group (Group 1B)</b>
<b>.66</b>	<b>Zinc group (Group 2B)</b>
<b>.67</b>	<b>Boron group (Group 3B)</b>
<b>.68</b>	<b>Carbon group (Group 4B)</b>

---

►                    **546.62–546.64 Transition metals (Group 8)**

<b>.62</b>	<b>Iron series</b>
<b>.621</b>	<b>*Iron (Ferrum)</b>
<b>.623</b>	<b>*Cobalt</b>
<b>.625</b>	<b>*Nickel</b>
<b>.63</b>	<b>Ruthenium series</b>
<b>.632</b>	<b>*Ruthenium</b>
<b>.634</b>	<b>*Rhodium</b>
<b>.636</b>	<b>*Palladium</b>
<b>.64</b>	<b>Osmium series</b>
<b>.641</b>	<b>*Osmium</b>
<b>.643</b>	<b>*Iridium</b>
<b>.645</b>	<b>*Platinum</b>
<b>.65</b>	<b>Copper group (Group 1B)</b>
<b>.652</b>	<b>*Copper (Cuprum)</b>
<b>.654</b>	<b>*Silver (Argentum)</b>
<b>.656</b>	<b>*Gold (Aurum)</b>
<b>.66</b>	<b>Zinc group (Group 2B)</b>
<b>.661</b>	<b>*Zinc</b>
<b>.662</b>	<b>*Cadmium</b>
<b>.663</b>	<b>*Mercury (Hydrargyrum)</b>

\* Divide as instructed under **546**

546.67	Boron group ( Group 3B )
.671	*Boron
.673	*Aluminum
.675	*Gallium
.677	*Indium
.678	*Thallium
.68	Carbon group ( Group 4B )
.681	*Carbon
.683	*Silicon
.684	*Germanium
.686	*Tin ( Stannum )
.688	*Lead ( Plumbum )
.7	<b>Nonmetals</b>
	Class a specific nonmetal with the subject
.71	Nitrogen group ( Group 5B )
.711	*Nitrogen
.712	*Phosphorus
.715	*Arsenic
.716	*Antimony ( Stibium )
.718	*Bismuth
.72	Oxygen group ( Group 6B )
.721	*Oxygen
.723	*Sulfur
.724	*Selenium
.726	Tellurium
.728	*Polonium
.73	Halogen group ( Group 7B )
.731	*Fluorine
.732	*Chlorine
.733	*Bromine

\* Divide as instructed under 546



### *Decimal Classification*

546.734	*Iodine
.735	*Astatine
.75	Rare gases (Group 0)
.751	Helium
.752	Neon
.753	Argon
.754	Krypton
.755	Xenon
.756	Radon (Niton)
.8	<b>Periods of periodic table</b> Bohr's arrangement of elements according to atomic number Class hydrogen and its compounds in 546.2, other specific elements and their compounds in 546.38-546.75
.81	<b>Period 1</b> Hydrogen and helium
.82	<b>Period 2</b> Lithium, beryllium, boron, carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, fluorine, neon
.83	<b>Period 3</b> Sodium, magnesium, aluminum, silicon, phosphorus, sulfur, chlorine, argon
.84	<b>Period 4</b> Potassium, calcium, scandium, titanium, vanadium, chromium, manganese, iron, cobalt, nickel, copper, zinc, gallium, germanium, arsenic, selenium, bromine, krypton
.85	<b>Period 5</b> Rubidium, strontium, yttrium, zirconium, columbium, molyb- denum, technetium, ruthenium, rhodium, palladium, silver, cadmium, indium, tin, antimony, tellurium, iodine, xenon

<sup>1</sup> Divide as instructed under 546

## *Chemistry and allied sciences*

### 546.86 Period 6

Cesium, barium, lanthanide series, hafnium, tantalum, tungsten, rhenium, osmium, iridium, platinum, gold, mercury, thallium, lead, bismuth, polonium, astatine, radon

### .87 Period 7

Francium, radium, actinide series

## 547 Organic chemistry

Chemistry of nonpolar compounds

An optional schedule, based on earlier concepts of the subject, appeared in Edition 16, p. 2429–2439

Use 547.001–547.009 for standard subdivisions

Class theoretical chemistry in 547.12

*For biochemistry, see 574.192*

---

### ► 547.01–547.09 General groupings of compounds

#### .01 Hydrocarbons

---

### ► 547.02–547.04 Hydrocarbon derivatives

#### .02 Halogen derivatives

#### .03 Oxy and hydroxy derivatives

##### .031 Alcohols

##### .035 Ethers

##### .036 Aldehydes and ketones

##### .037 Acids

##### .038 Esters

#### .04 Nitrogen derivatives

##### .041 Nitro and nitroso compounds

##### .042 Amines

##### .043 Azo compounds

##### .044 Nitriles and isonitriles

#### .05 Metallic compounds

Salts, chelates, arsenicals, Grignards

## *Decimal Classification*

- 547.06 Sulfur compounds
  - .061 Sulfites ( Thioethers )
  - .063 Hydrosulfites ( Thioalcohols, mercaptans )
  - .064 Thioacids
  - .065 Oxy derivatives of thioethers
    - Sulfones, sulfoxides, thioaldehydes, thioketones
  - .066 Sulfinic acids
  - .067 Sulfonic acids
- .07 Phosphorus compounds
  - Divide like 547.06, e.g., phosphinic acids 547.076
- .08 Silicon compounds
  - Divide like 547.06, e.g., silicones 547.085
- .09 Other

## **SUMMARY**

- 547.1 Physical and theoretical chemistry
  - .2 Synthesis and named reactions
  - .3 Analytical chemistry
  - .4 Aliphatic compounds
  - .5 Alicyclic and heterocyclic compounds
  - .6 Aromatic compounds
  - .7 Natural products
  - .8 Other
- .1 Physical and theoretical chemistry
  - Divide like 541, e.g., electrochemistry 547.137
- .2 Synthesis and named reactions
  - .21 Alkylation, acylation, aromatization
    - Including Friedel-Craft, Würtz-Fittig, Wittig reactions
  - .22 Halogen and hydroxy addition and substitution
  - .223 Halogenation
  - .225 Hydrolysis and saponification
  - .23 Oxidation and reduction
    - Hydrogenation, dehydrogenation, peroxidation, quinonization

- 547.24 Esterification
- .25 Amination and diazotization
- .26 Nitration and nitrosation
- .27 Sulfonation
- .28 Polymerization
  - Formation of addition and condensation polymers
- .29 Other
  - Including fermentation processes
- .3 Analytical chemistry
  - Use 547.300 1 – 547.300 9 for standard subdivisions
  - .301–.308 General principles
    - Divide like 543.01–543.08, e.g., reagents 547.301
  - .33 General analysis of specific product groups
    - Divide like 543.1–543.6, e.g., organic analysis of dairy products 543.332
    - For qualitative analysis, see 547.34; quantitative analysis, 547.35*
  - .34 Qualitative analysis
    - Divide like 544, e.g., microscopical analysis 547.348 2
  - .35 Quantitative analysis
    - Divide like 545, e.g., electroanalysis 547.353

---

► 547.4–547.6 Compounds of defined structure

Class compounds of complex structure not subject to precise structural classification in 547.7–547.8

- .4 Aliphatic compounds
  - .41 Hydrocarbons
    - .411 Paraffins
    - .412 Olefins (Alkenes)
    - .413 Acetylenics (Alkynes)

### *Decimal Classification*

547.42–.44      Hydrocarbon derivatives  
Divide like 547.02–547.04, e.g., aliphatic alcohols 547.431

.45      Metallic compounds  
Salts, chelates, arsenicals, Grignards

.46      Sulfur compounds  
Divide like 547.06, e.g., aliphatic sulfinic acids 547.466

.47      Phosphorus compounds  
Divide like 547.06, e.g., aliphatic phosphinic acids 547.476

.48      Silicon compounds  
Divide like 547.06, e.g., aliphatic silicones 547.485

.49      Other

---

►      547.5–547.6 Cyclic compounds

.5      Alicyclic and heterocyclic compounds

---

►      547.51–547.58 Alicyclic compounds  
Nonaromatic compounds with ring structure

.51      Hydrocarbons  
Divide like 547.41, e.g., cycloparaffins 547.511

.52–.58      Other  
Divide like 547.02–547.08, e.g., alicyclic acids 547.537

.59      Heterocyclic compounds  
Cyclic compounds containing other than carbon atoms in the ring

.592      With hetero oxygen atoms  
Furans, pyrans, oxazoles

.593      With hetero nitrogen atoms  
Pyrroles, porphyrins, chlorophylls, pyridines, pyrazoles, imidazoles, diazines

## *Chemistry and allied sciences*

- 547.594 With hetero sulfur atoms  
Thiophenes, thiazoles
- .595 With several different hetero atoms  
Oxazines, oxdiazines, oxdiazoles
- .596 With fused hetero rings  
Quinolines, purines, nucleic acids
- .6 Aromatic compounds
- .61 Hydrocarbons
- .611 Benzenes
- .613 Polyphenyl hydrocarbons
- 
- 547.615–547.616 Fused hydrocarbons
- .615 Napthalenes
- .616 Anthracenes
- .62 Halogen derivatives
- .63 Oxy and hydroxy derivatives
- .631 Alcohols
- .632 Phenols
- .633 Polyhydroxy aromatics  
Dihydroxy and trihydroxy aromatics, catechols, resorcinols,  
hydroquinones
- .635–.638 Other  
Divide like 547.035–547.038, e.g., aromatic esters 547.638
- .64–.69 Other aromatics  
Divide like 547.04–547.09, e.g., aromatic amines 547.642
- 547.7–547.8 Macromolecular compounds
- .7 Natural products  
Substances directly derived from living organisms  
*For high polymers, see 547.84*
- .71 Terpenes and essential oils

## *Decimal Classification*

- 547.72      Alkaloids  
Basic, nitrogenous plant products having strong physiological activity, e.g., nicotine, quinine, strychnine, cocaine, caffeine, atropine
- .73          Steroids
- .731          Sterols  
Cholesterol, ergosterol, phytosterol, other solid alcohols derived from plant and animal sources
- .734          Hormones
- .734 2          Gibberellins and other auxins
- .734 3          Sex hormones  
Progesterone, estrone, testosterone, androsterone
- .734 5          Other hormones  
Adrenalin, thyroxin, insulin, oxytocin, cortin, vasopressin
- .737          Bile acids (Cholic acids)
- .74          Vitamins
- .75          Proteins
- 
- 547.752-547.756 By structure  
*For enzymes, see 547.758*
- .752          Simple  
Albumins, globulins, histones
- .754          Conjugated  
Nucleoproteins, phosphoproteins, hemoglobins, chromoproteins
- .756          Derived  
Peptones and peptides
- .758          Enzymes  
Proteins having strong catalytic properties, e.g., trypsin, pepsin, coenzyme A, dehydrogenases, hexokinase, phosphorylases, amylases

547.76	Antibiotics
.78	Carbohydrates
.781	Sugar
.781 3	Monosaccharides
	Glucose, fructose, levulose, dextrose, gallactose
.781 5	Oligosaccharides
	Disaccharides (sucrose, maltose, lactose, cellobiose) and trisaccharides (raffinose)
.782	Polysaccharides
	Starches, inulin, glycogen, cellulose, cotton derivatives, pentosans, dextrans, pectin
.783	Tannins
.8	Other

---

547.82-547.83 Fossil substances

Class a specific compound derived from fossil substances with  
the subject

.82	Coal-tar
.83	Petroleum
.84	High polymers
.842	Elastic polymers (Elastomers)
.842 5	Latexes
	Natural and synthetic
.842 6	Natural rubber
.842 7	Synthetic polymers
	<i>For synthetic latexes, see 547.842 5</i>
.842 72	Synthetic rubber
.842 73	High-styrene resins (Elastoplastics)



## *Decimal Classification*

- 547.843      **Flexible polymers**  
Polymers with high tensile strength without elasticity of rubber
- .843 2      **Plastics**  
Divide like 668.42–668.45, e.g., polyethylene plastics  
547.843 223 4
- .843 4      **Gums and resins**
- .85      **Man-made fibers**  
Divide like 677.46–677.47, e.g., nylon 547.857 3
- .86      **Dyes and pigments**  
Use 547.860 01 – 547.860 09 for standard subdivisions
- .860 1–.860 9      **Standard subdivisions of dyes**
- 547.862–547.868 **Dyes**
- .862      **Nitro and nitroso**
- .863      **Azo-oxy and azo-tetrazo**
- .864      **Di- and triphenylmethane**
- .866      **Hydroxyketone**  
Quinoidals and alizarines
- .867      **Indigoid**
- .868      **Other**
- .869      **Pigments**
- 548      **Crystallography**
- .1      **Geometrical crystallography**
- .12      **External shape of crystals**
- .14      **Fundamental systems**  
Isometric, tetragonal, orthorhombic, monoclinic, triclinic,  
hexagonal, and trigonal systems
- .3      **Chemical crystallography**  
Relationship between structure and bondings  
Including isomorphism, polymorphism, pseudomorphism

## *Chemistry and allied sciences*

### **548.5 Growth and aggregation of crystals**

#### **.7 Mathematical crystallography**

Goniometric measurements and calculations

#### **.8 Physical and structural crystallography**

548.81–548.83 Crystal structure

Study of internal structure of crystals

##### **.81 Diagrammatic representations**

##### **.812 Of molecular structure**

##### **.814 Of atomic structure**

##### **.83 Photographic representations (Crystallograms)**

Study of internal structure by X-ray diffraction

548.84–548.86 Physical properties of crystals

*For optical properties, see 548.9*

##### **.84 Mechanical properties**

Class fusibility [*formerly 548.84*] in 548.86

##### **.842 Stresses and deformation**

Elasticity, plasticity, fracture, stresses of tension, compression, shear

##### **.843 Cleavage and cohesion**

##### **.845 Density and specific gravity**

##### **.85 Electrical, electronic, magnetic properties**

Conductivity, semiconductivity, dielectrics

Class thermal properties [*formerly 548.85*] in 548.86

##### **.86 Thermal properties [*formerly 548.85*]**

Including fusibility [*formerly 548.84*]

#### **.9 Optical crystallography**

Optical properties and methods

Including liquid crystals

## *Decimal Classification*

### **549 Mineralogy**

Occurrence, description, classification, identification of naturally-occurring elements and compounds formed by inorganic processes

*For economic geology, see 553*

#### **.09 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class geographical distribution of minerals in **549.9**

### **SUMMARY**

- 549.1** Determinative mineralogy
- .2** Native elements
- .3** Sulfides, sulfosalts, related minerals
- .4** Halides
- .5** Oxides
- .6** Silicates
- .7** Other minerals
- .9** Geographical distribution of minerals

#### **.1 Determinative mineralogy**

Class determinative mineralogy of specific minerals in **549.2–549.7**

#### **.11 Modes of occurrence and associations of minerals**

##### **.113 In placers**

##### **.114 In rocks**

Divide like **552.1–552.5**, e.g., minerals in igneous rocks  
**549.114 1**

##### **.116 In pegmatite dikes**

##### **.118 In association with other minerals**

##### **.119 In veins**

#### **.12 Physical mineralogy**

##### **.121 Mechanical properties**

Cleavage, parting, fracture, hardness, tenacity, specific gravity

##### **.125 Optical properties**

Luster, color, streak, iridescence, luminescence, fluorescence, refractivity

##### **.127 Electrical and magnetic properties**

Pyroelectric and piezoelectric phenomena

## *Chemistry and allied sciences*

- 549.13      **Chemical mineralogy**  
    .131      **Composition, properties, reactivity**  
    .133      **Analysis and identification**  
            Blowpipe analysis, microchemical reactions, etch tests  
    .18      **Crystallographic mineralogy**  
            Geometrical, structural, mathematical, X-ray crystallography of minerals

---

### **549.2–549.7 Specific minerals**

- .2      **Native elements**  
    .23      **Metals**  
            Gold, silver, copper, lead, platinum, palladium, iridium, osmium, iron, mercury, tantalum, tin, zinc  
    .25      **Semimetals**  
            Arsenic, antimony, bismuth, selenium, tellurium  
    .27      **Nonmetals**  
            Carbon (diamonds, graphite), sulfur  
    .3      **Sulfides, sulfosalts, related minerals**  
    .32      **Sulfides, selenides, tellurides, antimonides**  
            Galena, stannite, cinnabar, stibnite, bismuthinite, pyrite, calaverite, smaltite (skutterudite), argentite, chalcocite, molybdenite, sphalerite, niccolite  
    .35      **Sulfosalts (Double sulfides)**  
            Enargite, polybasite, stephanite, proustite, pyrrargyrite, tetrahedrite, jamesonite, bournonite  
    .4      **Halides**  
            Halite, cryolite, fluorite, sylvite, cerargyrite, atacamite, carnallite  
    .5      **Oxides**  
    .52      **Simple and multiple oxides**  
    .522      **Cuprite, ice, zincite**  
    .523      **Hematite group**  
            Corundum, hematite, ilmenite

## *Decimal Classification*

- 549.524      Rutile group  
                Rutile, pyrolusite, cassiterite
- .525          Goethite group [*formerly* 549.53]  
                Diaspore and goethite
- .526          Spinel group  
                Spinel, gahnite, magnetite, franklinite, chromite
- .528          Other groupings  
                Uraninite [*formerly* 549.74], chrysoberyl, columbite
- .53          Hydroxides  
                Manganite, limonite, bauxite, brucite, psilomelane  
                Class goethite group [*formerly* 549.53] in 549.525
- .6          Silicates
- .62          Nesosilicates  
                Phenacite, willemite, olivine, garnet, zircon, andalusite,  
                sillimanite, kyanite, topaz, staurolite, chondrodite,  
                sphene, dumortierite
- .63          Sorosilicates  
                Hemimorphite, lawsonite, epidote, idocrase, prehnite
- .64          Cyclosilicates  
                Axinite, beryl, cordierite, tourmaline, chrysocolla
- .66          Inosilicates  
                Pyroxenes, spodumene, rhodonite, wollastonite, pectolite,  
                amphiboles
- .67          Phyllosilicates  
                Apophyllite, kaolinite, serpentine, garnierite, pyrophyllite, talc,  
                micas, chlorite, sepiolite
- .68          Tectosilicates  
                Quartz, opal, feldspars, leucite, lazurite, scapolites, zeolites

## *Chemistry and allied sciences*

- 549.7 Other minerals**
- .72      **Phosphates, vanadates, arsenates**  
Monazite, triphylite, apatites, vanadinite, lazulite, scorodite,  
turquoise, vivianite, erythrite
- .73      **Nitrates and borates**
- .732      **Nitrates**  
Soda niter (Chile saltpeter) and niter (saltpeter)
- .735      **Borates**  
Boracite, borax, kernite, ulexite, colemanite
- .74      **Tungstates and molybdates**  
Wolframite, scheelite, wulfenite  
Class uraninite [*formerly* 549.74] in 549.528
- .75      **Chromates and sulfates**
- .752      **Chromates and anhydrous sulfates**  
Crocoite, glauberite, barite, celestite, anglesite, anhydrite
- .755      **Hydrous and basic sulfates**  
Antlerite, polyhalite, gypsum, epsomite, chalcantinite, alunite
- .78      **Carbonates**
- .782      **Calcite group**  
Calcite, dolomite  
smithsonite
- .785      **Aragonite group**  
Aragonite, witherite, strontianite, cerussite, malachite,  
azurite
- .9      **Geographical distribution of minerals**  
Add area notations 1–9 to 549.9

## **550 Earth sciences**

### **.1 Philosophy and theory**

Class geologic time [*formerly 550.1*] in **551.701**

## **551 Physical and dynamic geology**

Scope: geophysics and geochemistry of lithosphere, hydrosphere, atmosphere

*For astronomical geography, see 525*

### **SUMMARY**

#### **551.1 Gross structure and properties of the earth**

##### **.2 Plutonic phenomena**

##### **.3 Exogenous processes and their agents**

##### **.4 Geomorphology**

##### **.5 Descriptive and dynamic meteorology**

##### **.6 Climatology and weather**

##### **.7 Historical geology (Stratigraphy)**

##### **.8 Structural geology (Tectonophysics)**

##### **.9 Geochemistry**

### **.1 Gross structure and properties of the earth**

*For geomagnetism, see 538.7*



---

#### **551.11–551.12 Earth's interior**

##### **.11 Structure**

Core, mantle, mohorovicic discontinuity

##### **.12 Properties**

Heat, temperature ranges, isostasy



---

#### **551.13–551.14 Earth's crust**

##### **.13 Structure**

##### **.14 Properties**

Heat, temperature ranges, thermal conductivity, elasticity, deformation

### **.2 Plutonic phenomena**

#### **.21 Volcanoes**

#### **.22 Earthquakes**

#### **.23 Fumaroles, hot springs, geysers**

*Earth sciences*

**551.3 Exogenous processes and their agents**

Use 551.300 1 – 551.300 9 for standard subdivisions

- .302 Erosion and weathering
- .303 Deposition, sedimentation, transport
- .304 Transported materials
- .305 New formations

551.31–551.34 Geologic work of ice

*For frost action in soils and rocks, see 551.38*

.31 **Glaciology**

.312 **Glaciers**

Nourishment, advances, recessions, oscillations

*For icebergs, shelf ice, growlers, see 551.342*

.313 **Glacial action**

Class cirques, drumlins, kettles, kames, roches moutonnées  
[all formerly 551.313] in 551.315

*For Pleistocene epoch, see 551.792*

.314 **Glacial debris**

Including moraines [formerly 551.32], other glacier-  
transported materials [formerly 551.33]

.315 **New formations**

Cirques, drumlins, kettles, kames, roches moutonnées [all  
formerly 551.313]

[.32] **Moraines**

Class in 551.314

[.33] **Other glacier-transported materials**

Class in 551.314

.34 **Other ice forms**

551.342–551.343 Ice in the sea

.342 **Icebergs, shelf ice, growlers**

.343 **Sea ice (Frozen seawater)**



## Decimal Classification

- 551.344      Anchor and frazil ice  
.345      Ice cover  
            Lake and river ice
- 
- 551.35–551.36 Geologic work of water
- .35      Of surface waters  
            Divide like 551.302–551.305, e.g., mudflows 551.353
- .36      Of marine waters  
            Wave action, beach erosion, coastal changes
- .37      Geologic work of wind  
            Divide like 551.302–551.305, e.g., dune formations 551.375
- .38      Frost action in soils and rocks
- .382      Fragmentation of rocks
- .383      Nivation
- .384      Permafrost phenomena
- .4      **Geomorphology**  
            Origin, development, transformations of topographic features  
            Class physical geography [*formerly* 551.4] in 910

## SUMMARY

- 551.41–.45      Specific land forms  
            .46      Oceans and sea waters  
            .47      Dynamics of the sea  
            .48      Surface waters  
            .49      Ground water (Subsurface waters)
- .41–.45      Specific land forms  
            Divide like area notations 141–145, e.g., caves 551.44
- 551.46–551.47 Oceanography
- .46      Oceans and sea waters  
            Use 551.460 01 – 551.406 09 for standard subdivisions  
            Class tides [*formerly* 551.46] in 551.470 8  
            *For dynamics of the sea, see* 551.47
- .460 1      Composition and properties of sea water  
            Salinity, density, temperature distribution, color,  
            transparency

## *Earth sciences*

- 551.460 7 Deep-sea surveys and explorations
- .460 8 Submarine geology
- .460 83 Deposits and sedimentation
- .460 84 Topography
  - Ridges, canyons, mountains of ocean floor
- .460 9 Special oceanographic forms
  - Salt-water lagoons, inland seas, coastal pools
- 551.461–551.469 Specific oceanic bodies
- .461 North Atlantic Ocean
- .462 Mediterranean and Black Seas
- .463 Caribbean Sea and Gulf of Mexico
- .464 South Atlantic Ocean
- .465 West Pacific Ocean
- .466 East Pacific Ocean
- .467 Indian Ocean
- .468 Arctic Ocean
- .469 Antarctic waters
- .47 Dynamics of the sea
  - Use 551.470 01 – 551.470 09 for standard subdivisions
- .470 1 Ocean currents
  - Theories, circulation, observational methods
  - Class specific ocean currents in 551.471–551.479
- .470 2 Waves
- .470 22 Ocean waves
- .470 23 Seiches
- .470 24 Tidal waves
- .470 8 Tides [*formerly* 551.46] and tidal currents
- .471–.479 Specific ocean currents
  - Divide like 551.461–551.469, e.g., Gulf Stream 551.471
- .48 Surface waters
- .482 Lakes, ponds, fresh-water lagoons

## Decimal Classification

---

- 551.483 Rivers and streams
  - .484 Waterfalls
  - .49 Ground waters (Subsurface waters)
  - .492 Water table
  - .498 Specific manifestations
    - Wells, springs, runoff
- 

► 551.5–551.6 Meteorology, climatology, weather

.5 Descriptive and dynamic meteorology

### SUMMARY

- 551.51 Composition, structure, mechanics of atmosphere
  - .52 Thermodynamics, temperatures, radiation
  - .54 Atmospheric pressure
  - .55 Atmospheric formations and disturbances
  - .56 Atmospheric electricity and optics
  - .57 Hydrometeorology
- 

► 551.51–551.52 Dynamic meteorology

- .51 Composition, structure, mechanics of atmosphere
  - .511 Composition
    - .511 2 Gases
    - .511 3 Dust and other particulates
- 

► 551.513–551.514 Structure

- .513 Troposphere
- .514 Upper atmosphere
  - .514 2 Stratosphere
  - .514 5 Ionosphere
- .515 Mechanics
  - .515 1 Kinematics
  - .515 2 Statics
  - .515 3 Dynamics

*For circulation, see 551.517*

.517 Circulation [*formerly* 551.518]

*For wind systems, see 551.518; atmospheric formations and disturbances, 551.55*

## *Earth sciences*

- 551.518 Wind systems  
Class circulation [*formerly 551.518*] in 551.517
- 551.518 3 – 551.518 5 Systems in troposphere
- .518 3 Planetary and terrestrial systems  
Trade winds, prevailing westerlies, polar easterlies, doldrums
- .518 4 Continental systems (Monsoons)
- .518 5 Local systems  
Drainage winds, mountain and valley breezes, land and sea winds
- .518 7 Systems in upper atmosphere
- .52 Thermodynamics, temperatures, radiation
- .522 Thermodynamics
- 
- 551.523–551.525 Temperatures  
Distribution, variations, frequencies, gradients
- .523 Earth temperatures
- .523 2 Surface temperatures
- .523 4 Vertical distribution
- .523 8 Permafrost
- .524 Water temperatures
- .524 6 Oceans and seas
- .524 8 Lakes and rivers
- .525 Air temperatures
- .525 2 Distribution at earth's surface
- .525 3 Variations at earth's surface  
Diurnal and annual variations, maximums and minimums, frosts
- .525 4 Vertical distribution in troposphere
- .525 7 Upper-atmosphere temperatures

## *Decimal Classification*

- 551.527      **Radiation**  
                Absorption, emission, reflection, scattering, transmission
- .527 1      Solar radiation
- .527 2      Terrestrial radiation
- .527 3      Atmospheric radiation
- .527 6      Cosmic and corpuscular radiations
- .54      **Atmospheric pressure**  
                Distribution, variations, frequencies, gradients
- .542      Distribution at earth's surface
- .543      Variations at earth's surface
- .547      Upper-atmosphere pressures
- .55      **Atmospheric formations and disturbances**
- .551      **Formations**
- .551 2      Air masses and fronts
- .551 3      Cyclones and cyclogenesis
- .551 4      Anticyclones and anticyclogenesis
- 551.552–551.559 Disturbances
- .552      **Hurricanes**  
                Known also as typhoons, cyclones (in India), baguios,  
                willy-willies
- 551.553–551.554 Thermal convective storms
- .553      **Tornadoes (Twisters)**  
                Including waterspouts [*formerly* 551.559]
- .554      **Other**  
                Thunderstorms, thermal convective showers, hailstorms
- .555      **Snowstorms**
- .557      **Upper-atmosphere storms**
- .559      **Other storms**  
                Class waterspouts [*formerly* 551.559] in 551.553

## *Earth sciences*

### 551.56 Atmospheric electricity and optics

#### 551.561–551.564 Electrical phenomena

##### .561 In stable atmosphere

Ionization, conductivity, charge potential gradient

##### .563 In unstable atmosphere

##### .563 2 Disruptive discharges

Chain, heat, sheet lightning

##### .563 3 Silent discharges (Saint Elmo's fire)

##### .563 4 Ball lightning

##### .564 Electricity of aerosols

Electricity of snow, ice crystals, water droplets, dust, other particulates

#### 551.565–551.567 Optical phenomena

##### .565 Produced by refraction

Mirages, scintillation, distortion of celestial bodies

Class twilight and night skies in 551.566, halos and rainbows in 551.567 [*all formerly 551.565*]

##### .566 Produced by absorption and scattering

Twilight, night skies [*both formerly 551.565*], sky color

##### .567 Produced by condensation products

Halos, rainbows [*both formerly 551.565*], cloud coloration

##### .568 Visibility

##### .57 Hydrometeorology

## **SUMMARY**

551.571	Humidity
.572	Evaporation and evapotranspiration
.574	Condensation and deposits
.575	Fogs and mists
.576	Clouds
.577	Precipitation
.578	Specific forms of precipitation
.579	Snow surveys

## *Decimal Classification*

551.571

### Humidity

---



551.571 2 – 551.571 4 In troposphere

.571 2

Horizontal distribution

.571 3

Variations

.571 4

Vertical distribution

.571 7

In upper atmosphere

.572

### Evaporation and evapotranspiration

Class condensation and deposits [*formerly* 551.572] in  
551.574

[.572 4]

Clouds, fogs, mists

Class clouds in 551.576, fogs and mists in 551.575

[.572 8]

Droughts

Class in 551.577 3

[.573]

### Precipitation

Class in 551.577

[.573 3]

Rain and rainfall

Class in 551.578 1

[.573 5]

Snow and hail

Class snow and snowfall in 551.578 4, snow surveys in  
551.579, hail and grapple in 551.578 7

[.573 8]

Artificial precipitation and cloud seeding

Class in 551.68

.574

### Condensation and deposits [*formerly* 551.572]

.574 1

Condensation processes

Nucleation, formation of cloud particles, change of state

.574 4

Deposits on earth's surface

Dew, rime, hoarfrost, glaze

.574 7

Deposits on objects in upper atmosphere

## *Earth sciences*

- 551.575      Fogs and mists [*formerly* 551.572 4]  
                 Structure, formation, dissolution, composition, distribution,  
                 variations, gradients
- .576          Clouds [*formerly* 551.572 4]  
                 Structure, formation, dissolution, composition, distribution,  
                 variations, gradients
- .577          Precipitation [*formerly* 551.573]  
                 *For specific forms of precipitation, see 551.578*
- .577 1        Structure, composition, temperature
- .577 2        Distribution  
                 Add area notations 1-9 to 551.577 2
- .577 3        Variations  
                 Including droughts [*formerly* 551.572 8]
- .577 5        Factors affecting precipitation  
                 Influences of topography, vegetation, population  
                 concentrations, bodies of water
- .578          Specific forms of precipitation
- .578 1        Liquid precipitation  
                 Rain and rainfall [*both formerly* 551.573 3]  
                 Divide like 551.577 1 - 551.577 3, e.g., variations in rain  
                 and rainfall 551.578 13
- .578 4        Crystalline precipitation  
                 Snow and snowfall [*both formerly* 551.573 5]
- .578 41-.578 43      Properties, distribution, variations  
                 Divide like 551.577 1 - 551.577 3, e.g., variations in  
                 snow and snowfall 551.578 43
- .578 46        Snow cover  
                 *For snow surveys, see 551.579*
- .578 461       Duration
- .578 464       Ablation



## Decimal Classification

---

551.578 465

Firnification

.578 466

Stratification

---



551.578 47 – 551.578 48 Snow formations

.578 47

Drifts and cornices

.578 48

Avalanches

.578 7

Solid amorphous precipitation

Hail and graupel [*both formerly 551.573 5*], hailstones

.579

Snow surveys [*formerly 551.573 5*]

Add area notations 1–9 to 551.579

[.59]

Climatology and weather

Class in 551.6

.6

Climatology and weather [*formerly 551.59*]

.62

Weather belts and types of climate

.63

Weather prediction

---



551.631–551.635 Specific methods

.631

Historic methods

Weather lore

.632

Synoptic reports

.633

Statistical forecasting

.634

Numerical forecasting

.635

Thru special instrumentation

.635 2

Radiosondes

.635 3

Radar

.635 4

Weather satellites

.636

Types of forecasts

Class specific methods of forecasting in 551.631–551.635

.636 2

Short-range forecasts

Predictions for a maximum of three days

.636 5

Long-range forecasts

Predictions more than three days in advance

## *Earth sciences*

- 551.64      Forecasting specific elements and phenomena  
              Divide like 551.5, e.g., hurricane warnings 551.645 2
- .65      Weather reports  
:      Add area notations 1–9 to 551.65
- .66      Microclimatology
- .68      Artificial modification and control of weather  
              Including artificial precipitation and cloud seeding [*both formerly 551.573 8*]
- .7      **Historical geology (Stratigraphy)**  
              Use 551.700 1 – 551.700 9 for standard subdivisions  
              For *paleontology*, see 560
- .701      Geologic time [*formerly 550.1*] and age measurements
- .71      Pre-Cambrian eras
- .712      Archeozoic (Lower Pre-Cambrian) era  
              Keewatin and Timiskaming periods
- .715      Proterozoic (Upper Pre-Cambrian) era  
              Huronian and Keeweenawan periods
- 
- 551.72–551.75 Paleozoic era
- .72      Cambrian period
- [.726]      Ordovician period  
              Class in 551.731
- .73      Silurian period
- .731      Lower Silurian epoch  
              Known also as Ordovician period [*formerly also 551.726*]
- .732      Upper Silurian epoch  
              Known also as Silurian period
- .74      Devonian period

### *Decimal Classification*

---

551.75      Carboniferous and Permian periods

---

►                      551.751–551.752 Carboniferous periods

.751              Mississippian (Lower Carboniferous) period

.752              Pennsylvanian (Upper Carboniferous) period

.756              Permian period

---

►                      551.76–551.77 Mesozoic era

.76              Triassic and Jurassic periods

.77              Cretaceous period

---

►                      551.78–551.79 Cenozoic era

.78              Tertiary period

                    Paleocene, Eocene, Oligocene, Miocene, Pliocene epochs

.79              Quaternary period

.792              Pleistocene epoch (Ice age)

.793              Recent (Postglacial) epoch

.8              **Structural geology (Tectonophysics)**

                    Forms, position, deformation of rocks

.81              Stratifications

.84              Joints and cleavages

.85              Dips, outcrops, strikes

.86              Synclines and antisyndlines

.87              Faults, folds, dislocations

.88              Other deformations

                    Veins, dikes, necks, bosses, laccoliths, sills

.9              **Geochemistry**

*For chemical analysis of rocks and ores, see 543.6*

**552      Petrology**

Origin, occurrence, constitution, classification of rocks

Use 552.001–552.009 for standard subdivisions

*For mineralogy, see 549; economic geology, 553*

- .01      Theoretic and interpretive petrology
- .02      Descriptive and systematic petrology
- .06      Properties, composition, structure of rocks
- .09      Geographical distribution of rocks

Add area notations 1–9 to 552.09

**552.1–552.5    Macroscopic petrology**

**.1      Igneous rocks**

*For specific igneous rocks, see 552.2–552.3*

**552.2–552.3    Specific igneous rocks**

**.2      Volcanic rocks**

Lavas, pumice, felsites, basalt, obsidian, rhyolite, andesite, tuff, volcanic ashes and tufa

**.3      Plutonic rocks**

Granites, syenites, porphyries, gabbros, dolerites, diorites, norites, peridotites

**.4      Metamorphic rocks**

Gneisses, schists, slates, quartzites, serpentines, chrysolitic rocks, crystalline limestones (marble)

**.5      Sedimentary rocks**

Sandstones, shales, gypsum, limestones, dolomites, oölites, green-sands and their components, e.g., sand, clay, silt, glauconite, diatomaceous earth, salt

**.8      Microscopic petrography**

Study of rocks in thin sections and fragments

**553      Economic geology**

Quantitative occurrence and distribution of rocks, minerals, other geological materials of economic importance

Scope: comprehensive works on specific nonmetallic materials

*For a specific aspect of specific geological materials, see the subject, e.g., prospecting 622.18*

**SUMMARY**

- 553.1      Ore deposits**
- .2          Carbonaceous deposits**
- .3          Ferrous ores**
- .4          Nonferrous ores**
- .5          Building stone deposits**
- .6          Earthy material deposits**
- .7          Aqueous deposits**
- .8          Gem deposits**

**.1          Ore deposits**

Formation, structure, classification of ores

Including comprehensive works on metallic ore deposits [*formerly 553.3*] and nonmetallic deposits

Class specific ores and deposits in **553.2–553.8**

- .13          Placers**
- .14          Stratified layers and beds**
- .16          Pegmatite dikes**
- .19          Mineral veins**

**553.2–553.8      Specific ores and deposits**

**.2          Carbonaceous deposits**

*For industrial diamonds, see 553.65; gem diamonds, 553.82*

**553.21–553.25      Coal deposits**

- .21          Peat and peat coal**
- .22          Lignite, brown coal, jet**
- .23          Cannel coal and bituminous shale**
- .24          Bituminous and semibituminous coal**
- .25          Anthracite and graphitic anthracite coal**
- .26          Graphite (Plumbago, Black lead)**

- 553.27 Pitch  
Asphalt, bitumen, ozocerite, ceresin, paraffin
- .28 Oil and gas
- .282 Petroleum
- .285 Natural gas
- .29 Fossil gums and resins

► 553.3–553.4 Specific metallic ore deposits

.3 Ferrous ores

Class comprehensive works on metallic ore deposits [*formerly* 553.3] in 553.1

.4 Nonferrous ores

► 553.41–553.42 Precious metals

- .41 Gold
- .42 Other precious metals
- .421 Silver
- .422 Platinum
- .43 Copper
- .44 Lead
- .45 Zinc, tin, mercury
- .452 Zinc
- .453 Tin
- .454 Mercury
- .46 Ferro-alloying metals  
Class niobium [*formerly* 553.46] in 553.499  
*For nickel and cobalt, see* 553.48
- .462 Titanium, vanadium, manganese
- .464 Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten
- .465 Zirconium [*formerly* 553.499] and tantalum

## *Decimal Classification*

- 553.47      Antimony, arsenic, bismuth
- .48          Nickel and cobalt
- .49          Other
- .492          Light metals  
                Beryllium [*formerly 553.499*], aluminum, magnesium
- .493          Fissionable metals  
                Uranium, radium, thorium
- .499          Minor metals  
                Niobium [*formerly 553.46*], hafnium, germanium, gallium,  
                indium, selenium, tellurium, thallium  
                Class zirconium in 553.465, beryllium in 553.492 [*both  
                formerly 553.499*]
- .5          **Building stone deposits**
- .51          Marbles and limestones  
                *For onyx and verd antique marbles, see 553.55*
- .52          Granites and syenites
- .53          Sandstones, bluestones, flagstones
- .54          Slates
- .55          Serpentine, soapstones, and their variants  
                Including onyx and verd antique marbles
- .6          **Earthy material deposits**
- .61          Clays  
                Kaolin, bentonite, fuller's earth, diaspore clay
- .62          Sands and gravels
- .63          Salts  
                *For mineral waters, see 553.72–553.73; soda niter and niter,  
                553.64*
- .632          Rock salt
- .633          Borax and other borates
- .635          Gypsum
- .636          Potash salts [*formerly 553.64*]

## *Earth sciences*

- 553.64 Nitrate and phosphate fertilizers  
Soda niter (Chile saltpeter), niter (saltpeter), apatites  
Class potash salts [*formerly* 553.64] in 553.636
- .65 Abrasive materials  
Emery, corundum, pumice, garnet, flint, carbonado, industrial diamonds, tripoli  
*For sands, see* 553.62
- .66 Sulfur and earth pigments
- .662 Pigment materials  
Barite (heavy spar), ochers, umber, sienna, rutile
- .668 Sulfur
- .67 Refractory materials  
Asbestos, mica, vermiculite, talc  
*For soapstones, see* 553.55
- .68 Cementing materials  
Cements, limes, chalks, calcites, marl  
*For gypsum, see* 553.635
- .69 Other
- .7 Aqueous deposits
- 
- 553.72–553.73 Mineral waters
- .72 Saline waters
- .73 Other mineral waters
- .78 Surface waters
- .79 Ground water (Subsurface waters)
- .8 Gem deposits
- 
- 553.82–553.86 Precious stones
- .82 Diamonds
- .84 Rubies and sapphires
- .86 Emeralds
- .87 Semiprecious stones



## *Decimal Classification*



### **554–559 Regional geology**

Geology of specific continents, countries, localities

Class a specific geological aspect of a region with the subject

#### **554 Europe**

Add area notation 4 to 55, e.g., geology of England **554.2**

#### **555 Asia**

Add area notation 5 to 55, e.g., geology of Japan **555.2**

#### **556 Africa**

Add area notation 6 to 55, e.g., geology of South Africa **556.8**

#### **557 North America**

Add area notation 7 to 55, e.g., geology of Ohio **557.71**

#### **558 South America**

Add area notation 8 to 55, e.g., geology of Brazil **558.1**

#### **559 Other parts of world**

Add area notation 9 to 55, e.g., geology of Australia **559.4**

## **560 Paleontology**

- .1 Philosophy and theory**
- .17 Stratigraphic paleobotany and paleozoology**
  - Class specific fossils or groups of fossils in **561-569**
- .171 Archeozoic and Proterozoic paleontology**
- .172 Paleozoic paleontology**
  - Fossils of Cambrian, Ordovician, Silurian, Devonian, Carboniferous, Permian periods
- .176 Mesozoic paleontology**
  - Fossils of Triassic, Jurassic, Cretaceous periods
- .178 Cenozoic paleontology**
  - Fossils of Tertiary and Quaternary periods
- .9 Regional and geographical treatment**
  - Divide like **574.9**, e.g., hydrographic paleontology **560.92**

## **561 Paleobotany**

Class stratigraphic paleobotany in **560.17**

- .09 Historical treatment**
  - Class regional and geographical treatment in **561.19**

### **SUMMARY**

- 561.1 General principles**
  - .2 Fossil Spermatophyta (Fossil seed plants)**
  - .3 Dicotyledones**
  - .4 Monocotyledones**
  - .5 Gymnospermae (Naked-seed plants)**
  - .6 Fossil Cryptogamia (Fossil seedless plants)**
  - .7 Pteridophyta**
  - .8 Bryophyta (Moss plants)**
  - .9 Thallophyta**
- .1 General principles**
  - Class specific classes, orders, families in **561.2-561.9**
- .13 Fossil pollen and spores**
- .14 Fossil fruit and seeds**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 561.19      Regional and geographical treatment  
                  Divide like 574.9, e.g., fresh-water fossil plants 561.192 9
- 
- 561.2–561.9 Taxonomic paleobotany
- .2            Fossil Spermatophyta (Fossil seed plants)  
                  *For Angiospermae, see 561.3–561.4; Gymnospermae, 561.5*
- .21          Trees and petrified wood  
                  *For trees of a specific group, see the group, e.g., ginkgo trees 561.57*
- 
- 561.3–561.4 Angiospermae (Flowering plants)  
                  Class comprehensive works in 561.2
- .3            Dicotyledones
- .4            Monocotyledones
- .45          Palmaceae (Palms)
- .49          Gramineae (Grasses)
- .5            Gymnospermae (Naked-seed plants)
- .51          Gnetales
- .52          Coniferales (Conifers)  
                  Taxaceae, Podocarpaceae, Araucariaceae, Cephalotaxaceae,  
                  Pinaceae, Taxodiaceae, Cupressaceae
- .55          Cordaitales  
                  Pityeae (Callixylon), Cordaiteae, Poroxyleae
- .57          Ginkgoales (Ginkgo trees)
- .59          Cycadophyta and related orders
- .591          Cycadales (True cycads)
- .592          Cycadeoidales  
                  Williamsoniaceae, Cycadeoidaceae
- .595          Pteridospermae (Seed ferns)  
                  Medullosaceae, Lyginodendraceae, Calamopityaceae

## *Paleontology*

- 561.597      **Fernlike fossils of uncertain taxonomic position**  
Archaeopteris, Megalopteris, Glossopteris, Mariopteris,  
Alliopteris, Taeniopteris, Neuropteris, Odontopteris,  
Cyclopteris, Linopteris, Callipteris, Alethopteris, Pecopteris,  
Sphenopteris, Rhacopteris
- .6      **Fossil Cryptogamia (Fossil seedless plants)**  
*For Pteridophyta, see 561.7; Bryophyta, 561.8; Thallophyta, 561.9*
- .7      **Pteridophyta**
- .71      Isoetales
- .72      **Sphenopsida (Scouring rushes)**  
Equisetales, Calamitales, Sphenophyllales, Pseudoborniales,  
Hyeniales
- .73      **Filicineae (Ferns)**  
Filicales, Marattiales, Ophioglossales, Coenopteridales
- .74      **Psilopsida**  
Psilotales, Psilophytales
- .79      **Lycopsida (Lycopods)**  
Pleuromeiales, Lepidodendrales, Selaginellales, Lycopodiales  
*For Isoetales, see 561.71*
- .8      **Bryophyta (Moss plants)**
- .9      **Thallophyta**
- .92      Mycophyta (Fungi)
- .93      Characeae (Algae)



## **562–569 Taxonomic paleozoology**

- 562      **Invertebrate paleozoology**  
*For Protozoa, Parazoa, Metazoa, see 563; Mollusca and molluscoldea, 564; other invertebrates, 565*

**563 Protozoa, Parazoa, Metazoa**

**.1 Plasmodroma and Mastigophora**

**.4 Porifera and other sponges**

Including Calcispongiae, Hyalospongiae, Desmospongiae

**.47 Archaeocyatha**

Cambrian fossils with characteristics of sponges and corals

**.5 Coelenterata**

*For Anthozoa, see 563.6; Hydrozoa and related orders, 563.7*

**.6 Anthozoa (Corals)**

*For Archaeocyatha, see 563.47*

**.7 Hydrozoa and related orders**

Including Graphtolitoidea, Hydroida, Trachylina, Milleporina, Stylasterina, Siphonophora

**.73 Scyphozoa**

Lucernariidea, Charybdeidea, Corona, Semaestomea

**.78 Stromatoporoidea**

**.8 Ctenophorae**

Tentaculata, Nuda

**.9 Echinodermata, Enteropneusta, Linguatula**

Including Cystoidea, Blastoidea

**.91 Crinoidea**

Camerata, Adunata, Flexibilia, Inadunata, Articulata, Comatulida

**.93 Asteroidea (Starfish)**

Phanerozonea, Spinulosa, Forcipulata

**.94 Ophiuroidea**

Lysophiurida, Ophiocystiida, Aganasterida, Phrynophiurida, Laemophiurida, Gnathophiurida, Chilophiurida

## *Paleontology*

- 563.95      **Echinoidea**  
              Bothriocidaroida, Cidaroida, Centrechinoida, Exocycloida,  
              Perischoechinoida, Echinocystoida, Perichoechinoida
- .96          **Holothurioidea**  
              Dendrochirota, Elasipoda, Aspidochirota, Molpadonia, Apoda
- .99          **Enteropneusta and Linguatula**
- .992        **Linguatula**
- .993        **Balanoglossida**
- 564      Mollusca and molluscoidea**
- .1          **Pelecypoda ( Bivalve mollusks )**  
              Prionodesmacea, Anomalodesmacea, Teleodesmacea, Pantodonta
- .19        **Crepipoda ( Polyplacophora, Amphineura )**  
              Eoplacophora, Aplacophora, Mesoplacophora, Isoplacophora,  
              Teleoplacophora
- .2          **Scaphopoda ( Toothshells )**
- .3          **Gastropoda**  
              Snails, slugs, whelks  
              Divide like 594.3, e.g., fossil Pteropoda 564.35
- .5          **Cephalopoda**
- .52        **Nautiloidea ( Nautilus )**
- .53        **Ammonitoidea**
- .55        **Vampyromorpha**
- .56        **Octopoda**
- .58        **Decapoda**
- .6          **Molluscoidea**  
              *For Phoronidea, see 565.1*
- .7          **Bryozoa and Pterobranchia**
- .8          **Brachiopoda**

565 Other invertebrates

SUMMARY

- 565.1 Wormlike fossil animals
- .2 Arthropoda
- .3 Crustacea and related classes
- .4 Arachnida
- .5 Onychophora
- .6 Progoneata
- .7 Insecta (Insects)

.1 Wormlike fossil animals

Platyhelminthes, Nemertea, Nematoidea, Nemtomorpha, Acanthocephala, Eucoelomata, Annelida, Phoronidea, Myzostoma, Aschelminthes

.2 Arthropoda

*For Crustacea and related classes, see 565.3; Progoneata, 565.6*

.3 Crustacea and related classes

.32 Branchiopoda

Anostraca, Notostraca, Conchostrata, Cladocera

.33 Ostracoda

Myodocopa, Cladocopa, Podocopa, Platycopa

.34 Copepoda

Eucopepoda and Branchiura

.35 Cirripedia (Barnacles)

Thoracia, Ascothoracica, Apoda, Rhizocephala

.36 Leptostraca

Nebaliacea, Rhinocarina, Ceratiocarina, Hymenocarina, Nahecarida

565.37-565.38 Eumalacostraca

.37 Amphipoda, Isopoda, Thermosbaenacea, Tanaidacea

.38 Cumacea, Stomatopoda, Mysidacea, Decapoda, Euphausiacea

- 565.39      **Chelicerata and Trilobita**  
                  *For Arachnida, see 565.4*
- .391          **Eurypterida and Synxiphosura**
- .392          **Xiphosura (Horseshoe crabs)**
- .393          **Trilobita**
- .394          **Pycnogonida**
- .4          **Arachnida**
- .49          **Architarbi**
- .5          **Onychophora**
- .6          **Progoneata**  
                  Divide like 595.6, e.g., fossil centipedes 565.62  
                  *For Insecta, see 565.7*
- .7          **Insecta (Insects)**
- .71          **Synaptera**  
                  Collembola, Protura, Entotrophi, Thysanura
- .72          **Orthoptera and related orders**  
                  Dermaptera, Blattariae, Phasmatodea, Mantodea
- .73          **Thysanoptera and related orders**  
                  Corrodentia, Odonata, Ephemeroptera, Plecoptera, Isoptera,  
                  Embioptera, Zoraptera
- .74          **Neuroptera and related orders**  
                  Megaloptera, Mecoptera, Trichoptera, Strepsiptera
- .75          **Hemiptera and related orders**  
                  Anoplura, Mallophaga, Homoptera, Heteroptera
- .76          **Coleoptera**  
                  Adephaga, Polyphaga, Elateroidea, Mordelloidea,  
                  Curculionioidea, Colydiioidea
- .77          **Diptera and related orders**  
                  Orthorrhapha, Cyclorrhapha, Siphonaptera



## *Decimal Classification*

- 565.78      **Lepidoptera**  
                    Jugatae, Frenatae, Rhopalocera
- .79          **Hymenoptera**
- 566      **Vertebrate paleozoology ( Chordata )**  
                    *For Anamnia, see 567; Sauropsida, 568; Mammalia, 569*
- 567      **Anamnia ( Cyclostomes, fishes, amphibians )**
- .2          **Agnatha and Placodermi**  
                    Cephalaspidomorphi and Pteraspidomorphi
- .3          **Chondrichthyes ( Sharks, rays, skates )**  
                    Cladoselachii, Selachii, Batoidea, Pleuracanthodii, Bradyodonti,  
                    Chimaerae
- **567.4–567.5 Osteichthyes**
- .4          **Actinopterygii and Holostei**  
                    Palaeoniscoidea, Subholostei, Semionotoidea, Pycnodontoidea,  
                    Aspidorhynchoidea, Pholidophoroidea
- .5          **Teleostei**  
                    Isospondyli, Ostariophysii, Apodes, Heteromi, Mesichthyes,  
                    Acanthopterygii
- .6          **Labyrinthodontia and Lepospondyli**
- .7          **Apoda**
- 567.8–567.9 Salientia**
- .8          **Eoanura, Proanura, Anura**
- .9          **Urodela**  
                    Cryptobranchioidea, Amblystomoidea, Salamandriodea, Proteidea

- 568      Sauropsida (Reptiles and birds)**
- .1      **Reptilia**
- .11      **Lepidosauria**  
          Eosuchia, Rhynchocephalia, Squamata  
          *For Serpentes, see 568.12*
- .12      **Serpentes (Snakes)**
- .13      **Anapsida**  
          Cotylosauria and Chelonia
- .14      **Crocodylia**  
          Protosuchia, Sebecosuchia, Mesosuchia, Eusuchia
- .15      **Ichthyopterygia**
- .16      **Synaptosauria**  
          Protorosauria and Sauropterygia
- .17      **Synapsida**  
          Pelycosauria, Therapsida, Ictidosauria
- .18      **Pterosauri**  
          Rhamphorhynchoidea and Pterodactyloidea
- .19      **Archosauria**  
          Thecodontia, Saurischia, Ornithischia  
          *For Crocodylia, see 568.14; Pterosauri, 568.18*
- .2      **Aves (Birds)**
- .22      **Archaeornithes**
- .23      **Neornithes**  
          Hesperornithiformes and Ichthyornithiformes  
          *For other orders of Neornithes, see 568.3–568.9*

## Decimal Classification

- **568.3–568.9 Other orders of Neornithes**
- 568.3 Gruiformes and related orders**  
Charadriiformes, Phororhaci, Diatrymiformes, Ciconiiformes
- .4 Anseriformes and related orders**  
Procellariiformes, Pelecaniformes, Sphenisciformes, Gaviiformes, Colymbiformes
- .5 Palaeognathae**  
Caenagnathiformes, Struthioniformes, Theiiformes, Casuariiformes, Dinornithiformes, Aepyornithiformes, Apterygiformes, Tinamiformes
- .6 Galliformes and Columbiformes**
- .7 Psittaciformes, Piciformes, Trogoniformes, Cuculiformes**
- .8 Passeriformes, Coraciiformes, Apodiformes**
- .9 Falconiformes, Strigiformes, Caprimulgiformes**
- 569 Mammalia (Mammals)**
- .1 Prototheria, Allotheria, Theria**  
*For Marsupilia, see 569.2*
- .12 Monotremata**
- .17 Multituberculata and Triconodonta**
- .18 Panthotheria and Symmetrodonta**
- .2 Marsupialia**
- .3 Unguiculata and Glires**  
*For Chiroptera, see 569.4; Primates, 569.8*
- .31 Edentata**  
Palaeanodonta, Xenarthra, Pholidota
- .32 Lagomorpha and Rodentia**
- .33 Insectivora**
- .34 Dermoptera**
- .35 Tillodontia**
- .36 Taeniodontia**

- 569.4 Chiroptera**  
Megachiroptera and Microchiroptera
- .5 Cetacea and Sirenia**  
Archaeoceti, Odontoceti, Mysticeti, Trichechiformes,  
Desmostyliformes
- .6 Paenungulata**  
Pantodonta, Dinocerata, Pyrotheria, Proboscidea, Embrithopoda,  
Hyracoidea  
*For Sirenia, see 569.5*
- .7 Mesaxonia, Paraxonia, Ferungulata**
- .72 Perissodactyla**  
Hippomorpha and Ceratomorpha
- .73 Artiodactyla**  
Suiformes, Tylopoda, Ruminantia
- .74 Carnivora**  
Creodonta, Fissipeda, Pinnipedia
- .75 Protungulata**  
Condylarthra, Litopterna, Notoungulata, Astrapotheria,  
Tubulidentata
- .8 Primates**  
Prosimii and Anthropeidea  
*For Hominidae, see 569.9*
- .9 Hominidae (Man)**

**570 Anthropological and biological sciences**

**[571] Prehistoric archeology**

Class in 913

**572 Human races ( Ethnology )**

Origin, distribution, physical characteristics of races

Class cultural anthropology [*formerly* 572] in 390

*For ethnopsychology, see 155.82–155.84*

**.2 Racial origins and differences**

*For specific races, see 572.8; causes of racial differences, 572.3*

**.3 Causes of racial differences**

Effects of migrations, environmental influences, genetic sports

**[.4] Original home of man**

Class in 398.23

**.7 Primitive races**

*For specific races, see 572.8*

**.8 Specific races**

Divide like 420–490, e.g., Semitic races 572.892

**.9 Races in specific countries**

Add area notations 3–9 to 572.9

**573 Somatology ( Physical anthropology )**

*For ethnology, see 572*

**.021 2 Tables, formulas, specifications**

Class statistical tables in 312.6

**.2 Organic evolution of man [*formerly also* 573.3]**

**.21 Human genetics [*formerly* 575.1]**

Heredity and environment as factors in evolution

Divide like 575.1, e.g., factors affecting heredity 573.213

*For variation in man, see 573.22*

## *Anthropological and biological sciences*

### 573.22 Variation in man [*formerly 575.2*]

Divide like 575.2, e.g., mutations 573.229 2

#### .3 Prehistoric man

Time, place, antiquity

Class organic evolution of man [*formerly 573.3*] in 573.2

#### .4 Environmental effects on physique

#### .5 Pigmentation

### ► 573.6–573.8 Anthropometry

#### .6 Structures and features

Divide like 611, e.g., comparative studies of hair 573.678

*For craniology, see 573.7*

#### .7 Craniology

#### .8 Abnormal dimensions

Dwarfs, midgets, giants

### 574 Biology

*For botanical sciences, see 580; zoological sciences, 590; special biological fields and techniques, 575–579*

#### .09 Historical treatment

Class regional and geographical treatment in 574.9

### SUMMARY

- 574.1 Physiology
- .2 Pathology
- .3 Maturation
- .4 Morphology and descriptive anatomy
- .5 Ecology
- .6 Economic biology
- .8 Histology and cytology
- .9 Regional and geographical treatment

#### .1 Physiology

#### .11 Circulation

#### .12 Respiration

#### .13 Nutrition and metabolism

#### .14 Secretion and excretion

- 574.16      Reproduction
- 
- 574.162–574.165 Asexual reproduction
- .162              Parthenogenesis
- .163              Alternation of generations (Metagenesis)
- .165              Vegetative generation
- .166              Sexual reproduction
- For alternation of generations, see 574.163*
- .166 2            Conjugation
- .166 7            Hermaphroditism [*formerly 574.167*]
- [.167]            Hermaphroditism
- Class in 574.166 7
- .17              Histogenesis
- Microscopic study of germ cells
- .18              Movements
- Response to stimuli, locomotion
- .19              Physics and chemistry of vital processes
- .191              Biophysics
- Effect of physical agents on living systems
- Class physics of functions in 574.11–574.18
- 
- 574.191 3 – 574.191 7 Terrestrial factors
- .191 3            Mechanical factors
- .191 32           Gravitational forces
- .191 33           Velocity and speed
- .191.34           Acceleration and deceleration
- .191 35           Pressures
- .191 36           Impact
- .191 4            Sound vibrations
- .191 5            Radiations and microwaves
- .191 51           Hertzian waves
- .191 52           Infrared waves

- 574.191 53 Visible light waves
- .191 54 Ultraviolet waves
- .191 55 X rays
- .191 56 Gamma rays
- .191 57 Cosmic rays
- .191 6 Temperatures
- .191 7 Electricity
- .191 9 Space biology (Bio-astronautics)
- Divide like 574.191 3 – 574.191 7, e.g., gravitational effects 574.191 932
- .192 Biochemistry
- For metabolism, see 574.13*
- .192 1 Chemical composition
- .192 12 Fluids
- .192 14 Mineral components
- .192 5 Enzymes [*formerly* 574.193] and enzyme-catalyzed reactions
- .192 53 Lipolytic enzymes
- Lipases, esterases, phosphatases
- .192 54 Saccharolytic enzymes
- Carbohydrases, amylases, cellulases, maltases, emulsins
- .192 56 Proteolytic enzymes
- Proteases, cathepsins
- .192 58 Oxidizing and reducing enzymes
- Oxidases, dehydrogenases, zymases, catalases
- .192 6 Vitamins [*formerly* 574.194]
- .192 7 Hormones [*formerly* 574.194]
- .192 9 Biosynthesis [*formerly* 574.196]
- .192 93 Lipids
- .192 94 Carbohydrates
- .192 96 Proteins



- 574.192 97            **Pigments**
- .192 99            **Other substances**
- [.193]            **Enzymes**
  - Class in 574.192 5
- [.194]            **Hormones and vitamins**
  - Class hormones in 574.192 7; vitamins in 574.192 6
- [.196]            **Biosynthesis**
  - Class in 574.192 9
- 
- .2                **Pathology**
  - Anomalies, malformations, deformations, diseases
- 
- .3                **Maturation**
  - Embryology and gametogenesis
  - For histogenesis, see 574.17*
- 
- .4                **Morphology and descriptive anatomy**
- .5                **Ecology**
  - Interrelation of organisms to environment and to each other
- 
- .52               **Adaptation to environment**
  - Autecology, synecology, biogeochemistry
- 
- .53               **Nutritive adaptations**
- .54               **Adaptations to meteorological factors**
- .55               **Communities**
  - Consocieties, associations, clans, colonies, mutualistic and antagonistic symbioses
- 
- .56               **Reproductive adaptations**
- .57               **Protective adaptations**
- 
- .6                **Economic biology**
- .8                **Histology and cytology**
- .82               **Histology**
  - Study of minute structure of tissues

*Anthropological and biological sciences*

- 574.87      Cytology (Study of cells)  
                    *For germ cells, see 574.17*
- .872          Morphology  
                    *For protoplasmic structure, see 574.873; non-protoplasmic structure, 574.874; membranes, 574.875*
- .873          Protoplasmic structure
- .873 2        Nucleus  
                    Chromosomes, nucleolus, chromatin, linin network, nuclear membrane
- .873 3        Plastids  
                    Chromoplasts, leucoplasts
- .873 4        Cytoplasm  
                    Centrosomes, blepharoplasts, metaplasmic bodies
- .874          Non-protoplasmic structure  
                    Pigmentation, vacuoles, aleurone grains
- .875          Membranes
- .876          Physiology
- .876 1        Nutrition and metabolism
- .876 2        Division
- .876 22       Direct division (Amitosis)
- .876 23       Indirect division (Mitosis)  
                    Prophase, metaphase, anaphase, telophase stages of cell division
- .876 4        Other functions  
                    Respiration, excretion
- .876 5        Degeneration
- .876 6        Colonies
- .878          Comparative cytology  
                    Comparison of plant cells with animal cells

## *Decimal Classification*

### **574.9 Regional and geographical treatment**

#### **.909 Zonal and physiographic treatment**

Divide like area notations 11–15, e.g., desert regions  
**574.909 54**

Class insular biology in **574.91**, hydrographic biology in  
**574.92**

#### **.91 Insular biology**

Add area notations 3–9 to **574.91**

#### **.92 Hydrographic biology**

#### **.921–.928 Marine biology**

Divide like **551.461–551.468**, e.g., Caribbean Sea life  
**574.923**

#### **.929 Fresh-water biology (Limnetic biology)**

Add area notations 3–9 to **574.929**

#### **.93–.99 Geographical treatment**

Add area notations 3–9 to **574.9**

### **► 575–579 Special biological fields and techniques**

### **575 Organic evolution**

Origin of species thru historic descent with modification

*For organic evolution of man, see 573.2; of plants, 581.38; of animals, 591.38*

#### **.001–.009 Standard subdivisions**

Class theories in **575.01**

#### **.01 Theories**

#### **.016 Modern theories**

#### **.016 2 Darwinian and neo-Darwinian theories**

Theories on natural selection and survival of the fittest

#### **.016 3 Orthogenesis**

Evolution along seemingly predetermined lines

## *Anthropological and biological sciences*

- 575.016 5      Mutation theories  
                    Theories on abrupt hereditary changes
- .016 6      Lamarckian and neo-Lamarckian theories  
                    Theories on inheritance of acquired characteristics, and  
                    on hereditary effects of use and disuse of organs
- .1      **Genetics**  
            Heredity and variation as factors in evolution  
            Class human genetics [*formerly 575.1*] in **573.21**  
            *For variation, see 575.2*
- .11      Laws of heredity  
            Laws of Weismann (chromosome theory), Mendel, Galton
- .12      Hereditary characteristics  
            Inheritance of similar and divergent characteristics  
            Including characteristics of genes, genotypes, phenotypes
- .13      Factors affecting heredity
- .131      Artificial mutations  
            Inheritable effects of radiation on chromosomes and genes
- .132      Outbreeding
- .133      Inbreeding
- .134      Species interfertility
- .137      Atavism
- .2      **Variation**  
            Class variation in man [*formerly 575.2*] in **573.22**
- .21      Physiological aspects  
            Cytological and embryological aspects
- .22      Environmental aspects
- .28      Hybrids

## *Decimal Classification*

- 575.29      **Abrupt deviations**
- .292      **Mutations**
  - Inheritable abrupt deviations
  - For artificial mutations, see 575.131*
- .293      **Sports**
  - Noninheritable abrupt deviations
- .5        **Evolution thru sexual selection [formerly 577.8]**
- .7        **Evolutionary cycles**
  - Degeneration, extinction, regeneration of species
- .9        **Origin and evolution of sexes**
- 576        **Microbiology**
  - For Schizomycetes, see 589.9; Eumycophyta, 589.2; protozoa, 593.1*
  - .1        **General principles**
  - .11       **Physiology**
    - Divide like 581.1, e.g., anaerobic respiration 576.112 8
  - .14       **Morphology and descriptive anatomy**
  - .15       **Ecology**
  - .16       **Economic microbiology**
    - Class a specific application of microbiology with the subject, e.g., fermentation in winemaking 663.2
  - .162      **Beneficial microorganisms**
  - .163      **Food microbiology**
  - .164      **Industrial microbiology**
  - .165      **Deleterious microorganisms**
    - Toxic, pathogenic, obnoxious microorganisms
  - .19       **Regional and geographical treatment**
    - Divide like 574.9, e.g., fresh-water microorganisms 576.192 9

*Anthropological and biological sciences*

- 576.2 Microorganisms and immunity**
- .22 Mechanisms of immunity
    - Antigens and production of antibodies
  - .23 Immune reactions (Serology)
    - Antigen-antibody reactions, e.g., agglutination, precipitation
  - .4 Microorganisms and pathogenicity
    - Mechanisms of pathogenicity, defense measures of host organisms
  - .6 Ultramicrobes
    - .62 Rickettsiae
    - .64 Viruses
      - .648 Types of viruses
        - .648 2 Bacterial viruses (Bacteriophages)
        - .648 3 Other plant viruses
        - .648 4 Animal viruses
- 577 General properties of living matter**
- For physics and chemistry of vital processes, see 574.19*
- .01 Philosophy and theories
  - .011 Origin and beginnings of life
  - .013 Abiogenesis (Spontaneous generation)
  - .2 Comparison of living and nonliving substances
  - .3 Comparison of vital and physical processes
  - .4 Conditions necessary for life
  - .6 Vitalism versus mechanism
  - .7 Degeneration and death
  - .8 Sex in nature
    - Sex differentiation, selection, ratios
    - Class evolution thru sexual selection [*formerly 577.8*] in 575.5

## *Decimal Classification*

### **578      Microscopes and microscopy**

Class a specific application with the subject

#### **.1      Types of microscopes**

.12      Simple microscope

.13      Compound microscope

.14      Ultramicroscope

.15      Electron microscope

#### **.4      Microscopy**

.46      Photomicrography

#### **.6      Slide preparation**

*For slide preparation of plant tissues, see 578.8; of animal tissues, 578.9*

#### **.62      Fixation techniques**

Chemical and freezing-drying techniques

#### **.63      Microtomes and microtomy**

Frozen-section and section-cutting techniques

#### **.64      Stain techniques**

#### **.65      Mounting techniques**

#### **.8      Slide preparation of plant tissues**

Divide like 578.6, e.g., staining plant tissues 578.84

#### **.9      Slide preparation of animal tissues**

Divide like 578.6, e.g., fixation of animal tissues 578.92

### **579      Collection and preservation of biological specimens**

#### **.1      Preparing skeletons**

#### **.2      Preserving total specimens**

Embalming, mummification, pickling

#### **.4      Taxidermy**

#### **.6      Techniques of collecting and transporting**

#### **.7      Arrangement in museums**

#### **.8      Maintenance in museums**

**580 Botanical sciences**

*For paleobotany, see 561*

.74 Exhibits

*For arrangement in museums, see 579.7*

.742 Herbariums

.744 Botanical gardens

**581 Botany**

Class specific classes, orders, families in **582-589**

.09 Historical treatment

Class regional and geographical treatment in **581.9**

**SUMMARY**

- 581.1 Physiology
- .2 Pathology
- .3 Maturation
- .4 Morphology and descriptive anatomy
- .5 Ecology
- .6 Economic botany
- .8 Histology and cytology
- .9 Regional and geographical treatment

.1 Physiology

**SUMMARY**

- 581.11 Circulation
- .12 Respiration and transpiration
- .13 Nutrition and metabolism
- .14 Secretion and excretion
- .15 Genetics
- .16 Propagation
- .17 Regeneration
- .18 Movements
- .19 Physics and chemistry of vital processes

.11 Circulation

Absorption and translocation of water in the xylem and solutes in the phloem, cytoplasmic and protoplasmic movements, capillarity, osmosis



### *Decimal Classification*

- 581.12      **Respiration and transpiration**  
              Exchange and translocation of gases, catabolic processes of metabolism
- .121      **Aerobic respiration**
- .124      **Intercellular respiration**
- .128      **Anaerobic respiration**
- .129      **Transpiration**
- .13      **Nutrition and metabolism**  
              *For catabolic processes of metabolism, see 581.12*
- .132      **Digestion**
- .133      **Assimilation, storage, anabolism of food**
- .133 4      **Food synthesis**
- .133 42      **Photosynthesis**  
                  Sugar and starch synthesis by autotrophic plants
- .133 43      **Chemosynthesis**  
                  Food synthesis by heterotrophic plants
- .133 45      **Protein synthesis**
- .133 46      **Lipid synthesis**
- .133 5      **Mineral metabolism**
- .133 54      **Macronutrient elements**  
                  Utilization of sulfur, phosphorus, iron, calcium,  
                  potassium, magnesium, sodium salts
- .133 56      **Micronutrient elements (Trace elements)**  
                  Utilization of manganese, copper, zinc, boron,  
                  molybdenum, aluminum, silicon, selenium compounds
- .133 8      **Food storage**

- 581.134–581.139 Results of nutrition
- 581.134 Growth processes  
*For growth movements, see 581.183*
- .134 1 Growth factors
- .134 15 Environmental factors
- .134 152 Meteorological factors
- .134 153 Light
- .134 2 Primary growth  
Growth initiated at apical meristems
- .134 3 Secondary growth  
Growth initiated at lateral meristems
- .135 Development  
General and postembryonic development  
*For embryology, see 581.33*
- .139 Longevity
- .14 Secretion and excretion  
*For transpiration, see 581.129*
- .15 Genetics  
Heredity and variation
- .151 Physiological, embryological, cytological aspects
- .152 Environmental aspects
- .158 Hybrids
- .159 Abrupt deviations
- .159 2 Mutations  
Inheritable abrupt deviations
- .159 3 Sports  
Noninheritable abrupt deviations

## *Decimal Classification*

- 581.16      Propagation  
            Divide like 574.16, e.g., vegetative generation 581.165
- .17          Regeneration
- .172          Histogenesis  
            Microscopic study of germ cells
- .179          Regeneration of parts
- .18          Movements
- .182          Hydration movements  
            Movements in nonliving plant tissues or organs resulting from hydration or dehydration of cell walls, e.g., splitting of pods, opening of capsules
- .183          Growth movements
- .183 2          Tropisms  
            Geotropism, thigmotropism, hydrotropism, chemotropism, aerotropism, heliotropism, thermotropism, stereotropism, traumatropism
- .183 3          Nastic movements  
            Epinastic, hyponastic, nyctinastic, photonastic, thermonastic movements
- .184          Turgor movements  
            Movements caused by reversible changes in cell volume, e.g., wilting, opening and closing of stomates
- .185          Nutation and circumnutation  
            Movements caused by unequal rates of growth, e.g., twining
- .19          Physics and chemistry of vital processes
- .191          Biophysics  
            Divide like 574.191, e.g., effects of gamma rays 581.191 56
- .192          Biochemistry  
            Including its subdivisions [*formerly* 581.193–581.196]  
            Divide like 574.192, e.g., enzymes 581.192 5  
            Class food manufacture in 581.133  
            *For metabolism, see* 574.13

[581.193–.196]      Subdivisions of biochemistry

Class in 581.192

- . 2      **Pathology**
  - .21      Deficiency diseases
  - .22      Teratology
    - Anomalies, deformations, atrophies, hypertrophies
  - .23      Parasitic diseases
    - For galls, see 581.27*
  - .232      Diseases due to parasitic plants
  - .232 2      Bacterial diseases of plants
  - .232 6      Fungus diseases of plants
  - .233      Diseases due to parasitic animals
  - .234      Viral and rickettsial diseases
  - .24      Injuries
  - .27      Galls
  - .28      Control methods
- .3      **Maturation**
  - .32      Gametogenesis
    - Formation and maturation of sex cells
    - For histogenests, see 581.172*
  - .33      Embryology
    - .332      Anatomy of embryonic parts
      - Anatomy of embryonic tissues and stems, cotyledons, plumules, radicles, endosperms, suspensors
    - .333      Germination processes
    - .334      Seedling stages
      - Development of primary roots, stems, leaves
  - .36      Production and differentiation of sexes
  - .38      Evolution

### *Decimal Classification*

#### **581.4      Morphology and descriptive anatomy**

*For anatomy of embryonic parts, see 581.332*

##### **.41          Circulatory organs**

Structure of fibrovascular bundles, xylem, phloem, cambium layer, veins

##### **.42          Respiratory organs**

Structure of stomates, lenticels, guard cells, intercellular spaces

##### **.43          Digestive organs**

*For leaves, see 581.497*

##### **.44          Secretory and excretory organs**

*For stomates and lenticels, see 581.42*

##### **.46          Reproductive organs**

##### **[.462]      Reproductive organs of seedless plants**

Class in **586.046**

##### **[.463-.467]      Reproductive organs of flowering plants**

Class in **582.046**

##### **.47          Motor and integumentary organs**

Structure of epidermis and surface protuberances, e.g., thorns, tentacles

##### **.49          Topographic anatomy**

##### **.495        Stems**

##### **.497        Leaves and fronds**

##### **.498        Roots**

## *Botanical sciences*

### **581.5 Ecology**

Scope: forest ecology [*formerly* 634.922, 634.94]

#### **.52 Adaptation to environment**

*For a specific adaptive feature, see the subject, e.g., nutritive adaptations 581.53*

#### **.522 Autecology (Individual ecology)**

##### **.522 2 Effects of environment on plant**

Effects of soil, light, gases, liquids on plant

##### **.522 3 Effects of plant on environment**

Modification of soil and air, prevention of erosion

##### **.522 5 Structural adaptation**

##### **.522 6 Dissemination and migration**

#### **.524 Synecology (Associational ecology)**

##### **.524 2 Invasion**

##### **.524 3 Succession**

##### **.524 4 Zonation**

##### **.524 5 Alternation**

#### **.526 Formational ecology (Physiographic ecology)**

Influence of physical factors of environment on plant distribution and species

##### **.526 3 Hydric formations**

Adaptation of hydrophytes in fresh and salt water, swamps, heaths, bogs, moors

*For xeric formations, see 581.526 5*

##### **.526 4 Mesic formations**

Adaptation of mesophytes in prairie and forest regions

##### **.526 5 Xeric formations**

Adaptation of halophytes and xerophytes in salt marshes, alkaline soils, arid and semiarid regions, dunes, rocks

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 581.53      Nutritive adaptations
- .533      Nutritive specialization
- .533 3      Carnivorous and insectivorous plants
- .533 4      Saprophytic plants
- .54      Adaptations to climatic and seasonal conditions
- .55      Communities
  - Societies, consocieties, clans, colonies, mutualistic and antagonistic symbioses
- .56      Reproductive adaptations
- .57      Protective adaptations
- .6      **Economic botany**
  - Plants beneficial and deleterious to man's needs
- ▶

---

581.63–581.64 Beneficial plants

  - .63      Edible and medicinal plants
  - .632      Edible plants
  - .634      Medicinal plants
  - .64      Plants used in industry
- 581.65–581.69 Deleterious plants

  - .65      Weeds [*formerly* 632.58]
  - .67      Allergenic plants
  - .69      Deadly plants
- .8      **Histology and cytology**
  - Divide like 574.8, e.g., plant cytology 581.87
  - For germ cells, see 581.172*
- .9      **Regional and geographical treatment**
  - Divide like 574.9, e.g., desert plants 581.909 54

► **582-589 Taxonomic botany**

In this schedule coordination and subordination are shown by indention, not by length of number

If preferred, class according to a scheme oriented to the Universal Decimal Classification the details of which appear in Dewey Decimal Classification, Edition 14, p. 1893-1906

**582 Spermatophyta (Seed-bearing plants)**

Use **582.001-582.008** for standard subdivisions

*For Angiospermae, see 583-584; Gymnospermae, 585*

► **582.01-582.09 General principles**

**.01-.03 Physiology, pathology, maturation**

Divide like **581.1-581.3**, e.g., embryology **582.033**

**.04 Morphology and descriptive anatomy**

**.041 Circulatory organs**

**.042 Respiratory organs**

**.043 Digestive organs**

**.044 Secretory and excretory organs**

**.046 Reproductive organs [*formerly* 581.463-581.467]**

**.046 3 Flowers and their parts**

**.046 4 Fruit**

**.046 7 Seeds**

**.047 Motor and integumentary organs**

**.049 Topographic anatomy**

Divide like **581.49**, e.g., stems **582.049 5**

**.05-.09 Other general principles**

Divide like **581.5-581.9**, e.g., mesic formations **582.052 64**



## *Decimal Classification*

### **582.1 Special groupings**

Class specific classes, orders, families in **583–585**

---

- 582.12–582.14 Herbaceous plants  
Seed plants without persistent woody tissue

#### **.12 General works**

Class specific types in **582.13–582.14**

#### **.13 Flowering plants**

Class here comprehensive works on herbaceous and woody flowering plants

*For woody flowering plants, see 582.15*

#### **.14 Shrubs and vines**

Succulent, carpet, mat, cushion, bush herbals

---

- 582.15–582.18 Woody plants

#### **.15 General works**

Flowering and nonflowering woody plants

Class specific types in **582.16–582.18**

#### **.16 Trees (Dendrology)**

Use **582.160 01 – 582.160 09** for standard subdivisions

#### **.160 1–.160 9 General principles**

Divide like **581.1–581.9**, e.g., ecology of trees [*formerly 634.94*] **582.160 5**

#### **.17 Shrubs**

#### **.18 Vines**

► **583–584 Angiospermae (Flowering plants)**

Families listed under orders are based on Hutchinson, John, *The Families of Flowering Plants*, 1926–34

Class comprehensive works in 582.13

**583 Dicotyledones (Dicotyledons)**

Divide by orders as below

If preferred, arrange alphabetically by families

**.1 Archichlamydeae**

*For Apetalae, see 583.9*

**.11 Ranales**

Ranunculaceae (crowfoot family), Cabombaceae, Ceratophyllaceae (hornwort family), Nymphaeaceae (water-lily family)

**.112 Dilleniales**

Crossosomataceae, Dilleniaceae

**.114 Magnoliales**

Trochodendraceae, Cercidiphyllaceae, Magnoliaceae (magnolia family), Winteraceae, Schizandraceae, Himantandraceae, Lactoridaceae

**.115 Anonales**

Anonaceae (custard-apple family), Eupomatiaceae

**.117 Berberidales**

Menispermaceae, Berberidaceae (barberry family), Circaeasteraceae, Lardizabalaceae, Sargentodoxaceae

**.12 Rhoeadales**

Papaveraceae (poppy family), Fumariaceae

**.121 Sarraceniales**

Droseraceae, Sarraceniaceae (pitcher-plant family)

## *Decimal Classification*

- 583.123      **Cruciales**  
                     Cruciferae (mustard family)
- .13            **Capparidales**  
                     Capparidaceae, Moringaceae, Tovariaceae
- .135          **Violales**  
                     Resedaceae (mignonette family), Violaceae (violet family)
- .138          **Bixales**  
                     Cochlospermaceae, Caecellaceae (wild cinnamon family),  
                     Samydaceae, Cistaceae, Flacourtiaceae, Bixaceae (annatto  
                     family)
- .14            **Polygalales**  
                     Trigoniaceae, Polygalaceae, Vochysiaceae (San Juan family)
- .141          **Pittosporales**  
                     Byblidaceae, Tremandraceae, Pittosporaceae (hedge laurel  
                     family)
- .15            **Caryophyllales**  
                     Elatinaceae (waterwort family), Molluginaceae, Ficoidaceae,  
                     Portulacaceae (purslane family), Caryophyllaceae (pink  
                     family)
- .158          **Tamaricales**  
                     Frankeniaceae, Fouquieriaceae, Tamaricaceae (tamarisk  
                     family)
- .16            **Theales**  
                     Ochnaceae (red ironwood family), Ancistrocladaceae, Diptero-  
                     carpaceae, Chlaenaceae, Theaceae (tea, camellia family),  
                     Medusagynaceae, Marcgraviaceae, Caryocaraceae, Actini-  
                     diaceae, Saurauiaceae
- .163          **Guttiferales**  
                     Hypericaceae (Saint-John's-wort family), Eucryphiaceae,  
                     Quiinaceae, Guttiferae (balsam fig family)
- .17            **Malvales**  
                     Malvaceae (mallow, cotton family)

- 583.19      **Tiliales**  
Sterculiaceae (coco family), Bombacaceae (silk-cotton tree family), Scytopetalaceae, Tiliaceae (linden family), Gonystylaceae
- .21      **Geraniales**  
Limnanthaceae (false-mermaid family), Linaceae (flax family), Zygophyllaceae (lignum vitae family), Geraniaceae (geranium family), Oxalidaceae (wood-sorrel family), Tropaeolaceae (nasturtium family), Balsaminaceae (jewelweed family)
- .214      **Malpighiales**  
Humiriaceae, Erythroxylaceae, Malpighiaceae
- .24      **Rutales**  
Rutaceae (rue family), Simarubaceae (ailanthus family), Burseraceae (torchwood family)
- .25      **Meliales**  
Meliaceae (mahogany family)
- .26      **Olacales**  
Opiliaceae, Olacaceae
- .27      **Celastrales**  
Empetraceae (crowberry family), Cnecoraceae, Pandaceae, Icacinnaceae, Salvadoraceae, Stackhousiaceae, Celastraceae (staff-tree family), Corynocarpaceae, Cyrillaceae, Aquifoliaceae (holly family), Hippocrateaceae
- .279      **Rhamnales**  
Elaeagnaceae, Heteropyxidaceae, Ampelidaceae (grape family), Rhamnaceae (buckhorn family)
- .28      **Sapindales**  
Akaniaceae, Sabiaceae, Staphyleaceae, Anacardiaceae (cashew, sumac family), Connaraceae, Didiereaceae, Melianthaceae (honey plant family), Aceraceae (maple family), Sapindaceae (soapberry family)

## *Decimal Classification*

- 583.29      **Coriariales**  
              **Coriariaceae**
- .3            **Rosales**  
              Chaillotiaceae, Calycanthaceae, Rosaceae (rose family)
- .32          **Leguminosae**  
              Caesalpiniaceae (senna family), Mimosaceae (mimosa family),  
              Papilionaceae (pea family)
- .38          **Saxifragales**  
              Adoxaceae [*formerly* 583.53], Crassulaceae, Cephalotaceae  
              (Australian pitcher-plant family), Saxifragaceae (saxifrage  
              family)
- .394        **Hamamelidales**  
              Bruniaceae, Stachyuraceae, Buxaceae, Platanaceae, Hamameli-  
              daceae (witch-hazel family), Eucommiaceae, Myrothamnaceae
- .397        **Cunoniales**  
              Escalloniaceae, Grossulariaceae, Hydrangeaceae, Brunelliaceae,  
              Greyiaceae, Cunoniaceae
- .4           **Myrtales**  
              Myrtaceae (myrtle family), Lecythidaceae (Brazil-nut family),  
              Melastomaceae (meadow-beauty family), Combretaceae  
              (myrobalan family), Rhizophoraceae (mangrove family)
- .44         **Lythrales**  
              Punicaceae (pomegranate family), Oliniaceae, Hydrocaryaceae,  
              Halorrhagaceae, Callitrichiaceae, Onagraceae, Lythraceae  
              (loosestrife family), Crypteroniaceae, Sonneratiaceae
- .45         **Passiflorales**  
              Malesherbiaceae, Passifloraceae (passionflower family),  
              Achariaceae
- .453        **Loasales**  
              Turneraceae, Loasaceae
- .46         **Cucurbitales**  
              Cucurbitaceae (gourd family), Begoniaceae (begonia family),  
              Datisceae (false hemp family), Caricaceae (papaya family)

## *Botanical sciences*

- 583.47      **Cactales**  
                  Cactaceae (cactus family)
- .48      **Umbelliflorae**  
                  Cornaceae (dogwood family), Alangiaceae, Nyssaceae (tupelo family), Araliaceae (ginseng family), Umbelliferae (carrot family)
- .5      **Metachlamydeae (Sympetaleae)**
- .52      **Rubiales**  
                  Caprifoliaceae (honeysuckle family), Rubiaceae (madder family)
- .53      **Valerianales**  
                  Dipsacaceae (teasel family), Calyceraceae, Valerianaceae (valerian family)  
                  Class Adoxaceae [*formerly* 583.53] in 583.38
- .55      **Asterales**  
                  Former heading: Compositae (Composites)  
                  Common names: chicory, lettuce, thistles, calendulas, ground-sels, camomiles, everlasting flowers, asters, sneezeweed, ironweed, ragweed, sunflowers
- .57      **Campanales**  
                  Campanulaceae (bluebell, bellflower family), Lobeliaceae (lobelia family), Goodeniaceae, Stylidiaceae
- .6      **Ericales**  
                  Clethraceae (white-alder family), Ericaceae (heath family), Vacciniaceae (huckleberry, wintergreen family), Epacridaceae, Monotropaceae (Indian-pipe family), Diapensiaceae (flowering-moss family), Lennoaceae
- .67      **Primulales**  
                  Primulaceae (primrose family), Plumbaginaceae (plumbago family)
- .677      **Myrsinales**  
                  Theophrastaceae, Myrsinaceae (marlberry family)

## *Decimal Classification*

- 583.68      **Ebenales**  
              Ebenaceae (ebony family), Sapotaceae (sapodilla family)
- .686        **Styracales**  
              Styracaceae (storax family), Symplocaceae (sweetleaf family),  
              Diclidanthaceae, Lissocarpaceae
- .7          **Gentianales**  
              Gentianaceae (gentian, buck-bean family)
- .72        **Apocynales**  
              Asclepiadaceae (milkweed family), Apocynaceae (dogbane  
              family)
- .74        **Loganiales**  
              Oleaceae (olive family), Loganiaceae (Desfontianeaceae)
- .76        **Polemoniales**  
              Polemoniaceae (phlox family), Hydrophyllaceae (waterleaf  
              family)
- .77        **Boraginales**  
              Boraginaceae (borage, forget-me-not family)
- .79        **Solanales**  
              Convolvulaceae (morning-glory family), Solanaceae  
              (nightshade family)
- .8         **Personales**  
              Scrophulariaceae (snapdragon family), Orobanchaceae, Lenti-  
              bulariaceae (bladderwort family), Columelliaceae, Gesneriaceae  
              (gloxinia, African violet, flame violet), Bignoniaceae (catalpa  
              family), Pedaliaceae (Pedalium, unicorn-plant family), Acan-  
              thaceae (acanthus family)
- .87        **Lamiales**  
              Including Globulariaceae (globe daisy family), Myoporaceae,  
              Selaginaceae, Phrymaceae (lopseed family)
- .88        **Verbenaceae** (Vervain family)

*Botanical sciences*

- 583.89      **Labiatae (Mint family)**
- .899      **Plantaginales**  
             Plantaginaceae (plantain family)
- .9      **Monochlamydeae (Apetalae)**
- .91      **Chenopodiales**  
             Basellaceae, Phytolaccaceae (pokeweed family), Cynocramba-  
             ceae (dog cabbage family), Chenopodiaceae (goosefoot fam-  
             ily), Batidaceae, Amarantaceae (amaranth family)
- .917      **Polygonales**  
             Illecebraceae, Polygonaceae (buckwheat family)
- .92      **Podostemonales**  
             Podostemonaceae (riverweed family), Hydrostachyaceae
- .922      **Aristolochiales**  
             Aristolochiaceae, Cytinaceae, Hydnoraceae, Nepenthaceae  
             (Indian pitcher-plant family)
- .925      **Piperales**  
             Lacistemaceae, Piperaceae (pepper family), Saururaceae  
             (lizard's-tail family), Chloranthaceae
- .93      **Laurales**  
             Monimiaceae, Lauraceae (laurel family), Gomortegaceae,  
             Myristicaceae, Hernandiaceae
- .932      **Proteales**  
             Proteaceae (honeyflower family)
- .933      **Thymelaeales**  
             Geissolomataceae, Penaeaceae, Nyctaginaceae (four-o'clock  
             family), Thymelaeaceae
- .94      **Santales**  
             Balanophoraceae (Cynomorium), Octoknemataceae, Lorantha-  
             ceae (mistletoe family), Santalaceae (sandalwood family),  
             Grubbiaceae, Myzodendraceae



*Decimal Classification*

- 583.95      **Euphorbiales**  
                 Euphorbiaceae (spurge family)
- .96          **Balanopsidales**  
                 Balanopsidaceae
- .962        **Urticales**  
                 Ulmaceae (elm family), Barbeyaceae, Moraceae (mulberry family), Scyphostegiaceae, Urticaceae (nettle family), Cannabinaceae
- .97          **Fagales**  
                 Betulaceae (birch family), Corylaceae, Fagaceae (beech, oak family)
- .972        **Leitneriales**  
                 Leitneriaceae (corkwood family)
- .973        **Juglandales**  
                 Juglandaceae (walnut family), Julianiaceae
- .974        **Myricales**  
                 Myricaceae (bayberry family)
- .975        **Casuarinales**  
                 Casuarinaceae (beefwood family)
- .98          **Salicales**  
                 Salicaceae (willow family)
- .982        **Garryales**  
                 Garryaceae (feverbush)

**584      Monocotyledones (Monocotyledons)**

Divide by orders as below

If preferred, arrange alphabetically by families

- .13        **Burmanniales**  
                 Burmanniaceae, Thismiaceae, Corsiaceae

- 584.15 Orchidales**  
Orchidaceae (orchid family)
- .2 Haemodorales**  
Philydraceae, Haemodoraceae (bloodwort family), Hypoxidaceae, Velloziaceae (tree lily family), Apostasiaceae, Taccaceae
- .21 Zingiberales**  
Musaceae (banana family), Strelitziaceae, Lowiaceae, Zingiberaceae (ginger family), Cannaceae (canna family), Marantaceae (arrowroot family)
- .22 Bromeliales**  
Bromeliaceae (pineapple family)
- .24 Iridales**  
Iridaceae (iris family)
- .25 Amaryllidales**  
Amaryllidaceae (amaryllis family)
- .27 Dioscoreales**  
Roxburghiaceae, Dioscoreaceae (yam family), Stenomeridaceae, Trichopodaceae
- .3 Xyridales**  
Xyridaceae (yellow-eyed grass family), Rapateaceae
- .32 Liliales**  
Pontederiaceae, Cyanastraceae, Smilacaceae (cat briers), Rusceae, Liliaceae (lily family), Tecophilaeaceae, Trilliaceae (trillium family)
- .37 Mayacaceae (Mayaca family)**
- .38 Commelinales**  
Flagellariaceae, Commelinaceae (spiderwort family)  
*For Mayacaceae, see 584.37*
- .42 Alstroemeriales**  
Alstroemeriaceae, Petermanniaceae, Philesiaceae

### *Decimal Classification*

- 584.43      Agavales**  
                Xanthorrhoeaceae, Agavaceae
- .45          Juncales**  
                Juncaceae (rush family), Thurniaceae, Centrolepidaceae,  
                Restionaceae
- .5          Palmales**  
                Palmae (palm family)
- .61          Pandanales**  
                Pandanaceae (hala family)
- .612        Sparganiaceae (Bur-reed family)**
- .613        Typhaceae (Cattail family)**
- .62          Cyclanthales**  
                Cyclanthaceae
- .64          Arales**  
                Araceae (arum family), Lemnaceae (duckweed family)
- .71          Triuridales**  
                Triuridaceae
- .72          Najadales**  
                Najadaceae (najas family), Zannichelliaceae
- .721        Alismatales**  
                Scheuchzeriaceae, Alismataceae (water-plantain family),  
                Petrosaviaceae
- .73          Butomales**  
                Hydrocharitaceae (frogbit family), Butomaceae (water-poppy  
                family)

**584.74 Potamogetonales**

Potamogetonaceae (pondweed family), Ruppiaceae

**.743 Aponogetonales**

Aponogetonaceae (lattice-plant family), Zosteraceae

**.744 Juncaginales**

Juncaginaceae (arrow-grass family), Lilaeaceae, Posidoniaceae

**.81 Eriocaulales**

Eriocaulaceae (pipewort family)

**.84 Cyperales**

Cyperaceae (sedge family)

**.9 Graminales**

Gramineae and its tribes

**.92 Panicoideae**

Paniceae (millet grasses), Andropogoneae (sugar cane, kafir corn grasses), Maydeae (Indian corn grasses)

**.93 Pooideae**

Zoysiaeae, Oryzeae (rice grasses), Bambuseae (bamboo family), Festuceae (fescue grasses), Phalarideae (canary grasses), Agrostaeae (fodder grasses), Aveneae (oat grasses), Hordeaeae (wheat, barley, rye grasses), Chlorideae (gama grasses)

**585 Gymnospermae (Naked-seed plants)**

Divide by orders as below

If preferred, arrange alphabetically by families

**.1 Gnetales**

Gnetaceae (gnetum family), Welwitschiaceae (welwitschia family), Ephedraceae (ephedra, Mormon tea family)

**.2 Coniferales (Conifers)**

Podocarpaceae (podocarp family), Phyllocladaceae (phyllocladus family), Taxaceae (yew family), Araucariaceae (araucaria family), Pinaceae (pine family), Taxodiaceae (bald cypress family), Cupressaceae (cypress family)

## *Decimal Classification*

### **585.7      Ginkgoales**

Ginkgoaceae (maidenhair trees, ginkgo trees)

### **.9          Cycadales (Cycads)**

Cycadaceae, Zamiaceae (sage palm family)

## **586      Cryptogamia (Seedless plants)**

Use **586.001–586.008** for standard subdivisions

*For Pteridophyta, see 587; Bryophyta, 588; Thallophyta, 589*

### **.01–.09      General principles**

Divide like **581.1–581.9**, e.g., anatomy of reproductive organs  
[formerly **581.462**] **586.046**

## **587      Pteridophyta (Vascular cryptogams)**

### **.1          Isoetales (Quillworts)**

Isoetes

### **.2          Sphenopsida**

Equisetaceae (horsetail family)

### **.3          Filicineae**

### **.31        Filicales (Ferns)**

Osmundaceae (flowering fern family), Schizaeaceae (curly grass family), Gleicheniaceae (gleichenia family), Hymenophyllaceae (filmy fern family), Dicksoniaceae (Dicksonia family), Cyatheaceae (cyathea family), Polypodiaceae (polypody family), Marsiliaceae (water clover family), Salviniaceae (salvinia family)

### **.33        Eusporangiated ferns**

Ophioglossales (adder's tongue, grape, rattlesnake ferns),  
Marattiaceae

### **.4          Psilopsida**

Psilotales

### **Lycopsidea (Club mosses)**

Lycopodiales, Selaginellales

*For Isoetales, see 587.1*

**588 Bryophyta**

**.1 Sphagnales**

Sphagnaceae (peat and bog mosses)

**.2 Musci (True mosses)**

Bryales (common mosses), Andreaeales (black mosses)

*For Sphagnales, see 588.1*

**.3 Hepaticae (Liverworts)**

Ricciaceae, Marchantiaceae (great liverworts), Jungermanniaceae (scale mosses)

**.32 Anthocerotales (Hornworts)**

**589 Thallophyta**

**.1 Lichenes (Lichens)**

Symbiotic associations of fungi and algae

**.2 Eumycophyta (True fungi)**

Scope: mycology

*For Lichenes, see 589.1*

**.22 Basidiomycetes (Basidium fungi)**

**.221 Lycoperdales (Puffballs and related fungi)**

Hymenogastrales (false tubers), Nidulariales (bird's-nest fungi), Phallales (stinkhorn fungi)

**.222 Agaricales (Mushrooms and related fungi)**

Agaricaceae (gill fungi), Polyporaceae (pore fungi)

**.225 Uredinales (Rust fungi)**

**.227 Ustilaginales (Smut fungi)**

**.23 Ascomycetes (Sac fungi)**

Plectomycetes, Discomycetes, Pyrenomycetes

Common names: yeasts, Penicillium, mildews, cup fungi, black rot, ergot

*For downy mildews, see 589.252*

**.24 Deuteromycetes (Imperfect fungi)**

Moniliales (Hypomycetales), Sphaeropsidales, Melanconiales

## *Decimal Classification*

- 589.25      **Phycomycetes (Molds)**
- .252      **Peronosporales (Downy mildews)**
- .26      **Saprolegniales (Water molds)**
- .28      **Mucorales and other Phycomycetes**  
                     Mucorineae (black mold), Entomorphthorales (fly fungi),  
                     Chytridiales (chytrids)
- .29      **Myxomycophyta (Slime molds)**  
                     Stemonitaceae and Arcyriaceae
- .3      **Algae (Phycology)**  
                     *For Cyanophyta, see 589.8*
- .41      **Rhodophyta (Red algae)**  
                     Bangioideae and Florideae (red seaweeds, sea mosses)
- .43      **Pyrrophyta (Dinoflagellates)**  
                     Desmomonadales, Procentrales, Gymnodiniales, Amphilo-  
                     thales, Kolkwitzellales, Dinophysiales, Peridinales,  
                     Rhizodinales, Dinococcales, Dinotrichales
- .44      **Euglenophyta (Euglenoids)**  
                     Euglenaceae, Colaciaceae, Astasiaceae, Peranemaceae
- .45      **Phaeophyta (Brown algae)**  
                     Ectocarpales (kelps), Sphacelariales, Cutleriales, Tilopteridales,  
                     Chordariales, Sporochnales, Desmarestiales, Dictyosiphonales,  
                     Laminariales, Fucales (seaweeds, rockweeds)
- .47      **Chlorophyta (Green algae)**  
                     Conjugales, Charales, Volvocales, Chlorococcales, Ulotrichales,  
                     Siphonales, Cladophorales, Chaetophorales, Oedogoniales
- .48      **Chrysophyta (Golden algae)**  
                     Xanthophyceae (yellow-green algae) and Chrysophyceae  
                     *For Bacillariophyceae, see 589.62*
- .62      **Bacillariophyceae (Diatoms)**  
                     Centrales, Pennales, phytoplankton  
                     *For a specific phytoplankton, see the subject, e.g.,*  
                     *Dinoflagellates 589.43*

*Botanical sciences*

**589.7 Schizophyta (Fission plants)**

*For Schizomycetes, see 589.9; Eumycophyta, 589.2; Cyanophyta, 589.8*

**.8 Cyanophyta (Blue-green algae)**

Chroococcaceae, Chamaesiphonaceae, Clastidiaceae, Stigonemataceae, Nostocaceae, Rivulariaceae, Scytonemataceae, Oscillatoriaceae

Common names: Myxophyceae, Schizophyceae, Cyanophyceae

**.9 Schizomycetes (Bacteriology)**

Use 589.900 1 – 589.900 8 for standard subdivisions

**.901–.909 General principles**

Divide like 581.1–581.9, e.g., anaerobic respiration  
589.901 21

**.92 Actinomycetales**

Mycobacteriaceae, Actinomycetaceae

**.93 Chlamydobacteriales**

Chlamydobacteriaceae

**.94 Caulobacteriales**

Nevskiaceae, Gallionellaceae, Caulobacteriaceae, Pasteuriaceae

**.95 Eubacteriales**

Nitrobacteriaceae, Rhizobiaceae, Pseudonomadaceae, Acetobacteriaceae, Azotobacteriaceae, Micrococcaceae, Neisseriaceae, Parvobacteriaceae, Lactobacteriaceae, Enterobacteriaceae, Bacteriaceae, Bacillaceae

**.96 Thiobacteriales**

Rhodobacteriaceae, Beggiatoaceae, Achromatiaceae

**.98 Myxobacteriales**

Archangiaceae, Sorangiaceae, Polyangiaceae, Myxococcaceae

**.99 Spirochaetales**

Spirochaetaceae



## 590 Zoological sciences

*For taxonomic paleozoology, see 562-569*

### .74 Exhibits

*For arrangement in museums, see 579.7*

### .742 Museums

### .744 Zoological gardens

## 591 Zoology

Class specific classes, orders, families in 592-599

### .09 Historical treatment

Class regional and geographical treatment in 591.9

### SUMMARY

- 591.1 Physiology
- .2 Pathology
- .3 Maturation
- .4 Morphology and descriptive anatomy
- .5 Ecology
- .6 Economic zoology
- .8 Histology and cytology
- .9 Regional and geographical treatment

### .1 Physiology

*For human physiology, see 612*

### .11 Circulation

### .12 Respiration

### .13 Nutrition and metabolism

### .14 Secretion and excretion

### .15 Genetics

Heredity and variation

Divide like 581.15, e.g., mutations 591.159 2

### .16 Reproduction

Divide like 574.16, e.g., parthenogenesis 591.162

### .17 Histogenesis

Microscopic study of germ cells

## ***Zoological sciences***

- 591.18      **Movements**  
              Response to external stimuli, locomotion
- .19      **Physics and chemistry of vital processes**
- .191      **Biophysics**  
              Divide like 574.191, e.g., effects of gamma rays 591.191 56
- .192      **Biochemistry**  
              Including its subdivisions [*formerly* 591.193–591.196]  
              Divide like 574.192, e.g., enzymes 591.192 5  
              *For metabolism, see* 591.13
- [.193–.196]      **Subdivisions of biochemistry**  
                    Class in 591.192
- .2      **Pathology**
- .3      **Maturation**
- .32      **Gametogenesis**  
              Formation and maturation of sex cells  
              *For histogenesis, see* 591.17
- .33      **Embryology**
- .34      **Metamorphoses**
- .36      **Production and differentiation of sexes**
- .38      **Evolution**
- .4      **Morphology and descriptive anatomy**  
              *For human anatomy, see* 611
- .41      **Circulatory organs**
- .42      **Respiratory organs**
- .43      **Digestive organs**
- .44      **Secretory and excretory organs**
- .46      **Reproductive organs**
- .47      **Muscular, skeletal, integumentary organs**
- .48      **Organs of nervous system**
- .49      **Topographic anatomy**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 591.5 Ecology**
  - .51 Behavior patterns in nature**  
*For specific patterns, see the subject, e.g., hibernation 591.543*
  - .52 Migrations**
  - .53 Nutritive adaptations**  
Including food chains and cycles
  - .54 Adaptations to meteorological factors**
  - .542 Adaptations to climatic conditions**  
Adaptations to storms, rain, drought
  - .543 Adaptations to seasonal changes**  
Hibernation and estivation
  - .55 Communities**  
Aggregations, mutualistic and antagonistic symbioses
  - .56 Reproductive adaptations**
  - .57 Protective adaptations**
  - .59 Communication and production of sound**
- .6 Economic zoology**  
Animals beneficial and deleterious to man's needs
- .69 Poisonous animals**
- .8 Histology and cytology**  
*For germ cells, see 591.17*
- .9 Regional and geographical treatment**  
Divide like 574.9, e.g., animals of desert regions 591.909 54

► **592–599 Taxonomic zoology**

In this schedule coordination and subordination are shown by indentation, not by length of number

**592 Invertebrates**

Use 592.001–592.008 for standard subdivisions

*For Protozoa, Parazoa, Metazoa, see 593; Mollusca and molluscoidea, 594; other invertebrates, 595*

.01–.09      **General principles**

Divide like 591.1–591.9, e.g., poisonous invertebrates 592.069

**593 Protozoa, Parazoa, Metazoa**

.1      **Plasmodroma and Mastigophora**

Chysomonadina, Cryptomonadina, Phytomonadina, Euglenoidina, Chloromonadina, Dinoflagellata, Rhizomastigina, Protomonadina, Polymastigina, Hypermastigina

.11      **Sarcodina and Rhizopoda**

.113      **Protcomyxa**

.115      **Mycetozoa**

Eumycetozoa, Sorophora

.117      **Amoebina**

.118      **Testacea**

.12      **Foraminifera**

.13      **Actinopoda**

.132      **Heliozoa**

.14      **Radiolaria**

.17      **Ciliophora**

.172      **Ciliata, Protociliata, Euciliata**

Holotricha, Spirotricha, Chonotricha, Peritricha

.175      **Suctoria**

.19      **Sporozoa**

Telosporidia, Acnidosporidia, Cnidosporidia

*Decimal Classification*

---

- 593.4      Porifera (Sponges)**
- .42      **Calcispongiae**  
            Asconosa, Syconosa
- .44      **Hyalospongiae**  
            Hexasterophora, Amphidiscophora
- .46      **Desmospongiae**  
            Carnosa, Choristida, Epipolasida, Hadromerina, Poecilosclerina,  
            Haplosclerina, Keratosa
- .5        **Coelenterata**  
            *For Anthozoa, see 593.6; Hydrozoa and related orders, 593.7*
- .6        **Anthozoa**  
            Alcyonaria, Ceriantharia, Antipitharia, Dodecacorallia  
            Common names: sea anemones, corals, sea fans, sea pens
- .7        **Hydrozoa and related orders**  
            Hydroida, Trachylina, Milleporina, Stylasterina, Siphonophora  
            Common names: jellyfish, hydras, medusas, hydroid polyps
- .73      **Scyphozoa**  
            Lucernariidea, Charybdeidea, Corona, Semaestomeae,  
            Rhizostomeae
- .8        **Ctenophorae**  
            Tentaculata, Nuda  
            Common names: sea walnuts, comb jellies
- .9        **Echinodermata, Enteropneusta, Linguatula**
- .91      **Crinoidea (Sea lilies)**  
            Flexibilia, Articulata, Comatulida
- .93      **Asteroidea (Starfish)**  
            Phanerozoonea, Spinulosa, Forcipulata

## ***Zoological sciences***

- 593.94      **Ophiuroidea**  
              Phrynophiurida, Laemophiurida, Gnathophiurida,  
              Chilophiurida  
              Common names: brittle stars, basket stars
- .95          **Echinoidea**  
              Cidaroida, Centrechinoida, Exocycloida, Perischoechinoida,  
              Echinocystoida, Perichoechinoida  
              Common names: sea urchins, sand dollars
- .96          **Holothurioidea (Sea cucumbers)**  
              Dendrochirota, Elasipoda, Aspidochirota, Molpadonia, Apoda
- .99          **Enteropneusta and Linguatula**
- .992          **Linguatula**
- .993          **Balanoglossida**

## **594      Mollusca and molluscoidea**

Use 594.000 1 – 594.000 9 for standard subdivisions

- .001–.008      **Standard subdivisions of Mollusca**
- .01–.09      **General principles of Mollusca**  
              Divide like 591.1–591.9, e.g., ecology of mollusks 594.05
- 594.1–594.5 Specific classes, orders, families of Mollusca**
- .1          **Pelecypoda (Bivalve mollusks)**  
              Prionodesmacea, Anomalodesmacea, Teleodesmacea  
              Common names: clams, mussels, oysters, shipworms
- .19          **Crepipoda (Polyplacophora, Amphineura)**  
              Eoplacophora, Aplacophora, Mesoplacophora, Isoplacophora,  
              Teleoplacophora
- .2          **Scaphopoda (Toothshells)**
- .3          **Gastropoda**  
              Snails, slugs, whelks
- .32          **Prosobranchia**  
              Archaeogastropoda, Mesogastropoda, Neogastropoda

## *Decimal Classification*

- 594.35      **Pteropoda and Sacoglossa**  
              Common names: sea slugs, sea lemons, sea hares
- .36      **Acoela**  
              Notaspidea and Nudibranchia
- .37      **Tectibranchia**
- .38      **Pulmonata**  
              Basommatophora and Stylommatophora
- .5       **Cephalopoda**
- .52      **Nautiloidea (Nautilus)**
- .55      **Vampyromorpha**
- .56      **Octopoda**  
              Common names: octopuses, cuttlefish, squids, devilfish
- .58      **Decapoda**
- .6       **Molluscoidea**  
              *For Phoronidea, see 595.176*
- .7       **Bryozoa**  
              Common names: sea mats, moss animals
- .71      **Gymnolacmata**  
              Cyclostomata, Trepostomata, Cryptostomata, Ctenostoma
- .72      **Phylactolaemata**
- .73      **Pterobranchia**
- .8       **Brachiopoda (Lamp shells)**

## **595      Other invertebrates**

### **SUMMARY**

- 595.1      **Wormlike animals**
- .2      **Arthropoda**
- .3      **Crustacea and related classes**
- .4      **Arachnida**
- .5      **Onychophora**
- .6      **Progoneata**
- .7      **Insecta (Insects)**

*Zoological sciences*

- 595.1 Wormlike animals**
- .12 Platyhelminthes (Flatworms)
  - .121 Cestoidea
    - Cestodaria, Cestoda (tapeworms)
  - .122 Trematoda (Flukes)
    - Monogenea, Aspidogastrea, Digenea
  - .123 Turbellaria (Planarians)
    - Acoela, Rhabdocoela, Alloiocoela, Tricladida, Polycladida
  - .124 Nemertea
    - Anopla, Enopla
  - .13 Nematoidea (Roundworms)
    - Phasmodia, Aphasmodia
  - .131 Nematomorpha (Horsehair worms)
    - Gordididea, Nectonematoidea
  - .133 Acanthocephala
    - Eoacanthocephala, Metacanthocephala
  - .135 Chaetognatha and Entoprocta
  - .14 Annelida (Segmented worms)
    - For Myzostoma, see 595.178*
  - .142 Archiannelida
  - .15 Hirudinea (Leeches)
    - Rhynchobdellida, Gnathobdellida, Pharyngobdellida
  - .16 Oligochaeta (Earthworms)
    - Plesipora, Ophisthopora, Prosopora
  - .17 Polychaeta
    - Errantia, Sedentaria, Aplacophora
  - .174 Gephyrea
    - Echiuroidea, Sipunculoidea, Priapulioidea



### *Decimal Classification*

---

- 595.176      **Phoronidea**
- .178      **Myzostoma**
- .18      **Aschelminthes**  
            Tardigrada (water bears), Rotatoria (wheel animalcules),  
            Gastrotricha, Echinodera  
            *For Nematomorpha, see 595.131; Nematodea, 595.13*
- .2      **Arthropoda**  
            *For Crustacea and related classes, see 595.3; Progoneata, 595.6*
- .3      **Crustacea and related classes**
- .32      **Branchiopoda**  
            Anostraca, Notostraca, Conchostraca, Cladocera
- .33      **Ostracoda**  
            Myodocopa, Cladocopa, Podocopa, Platycopa
- .34      **Copepoda**  
            Eucopepoda and Branchiura  
            Common names: cyclops, fish lice
- .35      **Cirripedia (Barnacles)**  
            Thoracica, Ascothoracica, Apoda, Rhizocephala
- .36      **Lipstraca**
- .37      **Eumalacostraca**
- .371      **Amphipoda (Sand fleas)**  
            Gammaridea, Hyperidea, Caprellidea, Ingolfiellidea
- .372      **Isopoda**  
            Flabellifera, Valvifera, Asellota, Phreatoicidea, Epicaridea,  
            Oniscoidea (sow bugs, wood lice)
- .373      **Thermosbaenacea**
- .374      **Tanaidacea**
- .381      **Cumacea**

- 595.382            **Stomatopoda**  
                     Common names: sea mantles, glass crabs, mantis shrimps,  
                     squillas, sea onions
- .383            **Mysidacea (Opossum shrimps)**
- .384            **Decapoda**
- .384 1           **Macrura (Lobsters, crayfish)**
- .384 2           **Brachyura (Crabs)**
- .384 3           **Natantia (Shrimps)**
- .384 4           **Anomura (Hermit crabs, king crabs)**
- .385            **Euphausiacea**
- .39            **Chelicerata**  
                     *For Arachnida, see 595.4*
- .392            **Xiphosura (Horseshoe crabs)**
- .394            **Pycnogonida (Sea spiders)**  
                     Colossendeomorpha, Nymphonomorpha, Ascorhyncho-  
                     morpha, Pycnogonomorpha
- .4            **Arachnida**
- .42            **Acari (Mites, ticks)**  
                     Notostigmata, Holothyroidea, Parasitiformes, Trombidiformes,  
                     Sarcoptiformes, Tetrapodili
- .43            **Phalangida (Harvestmen, daddy longlegs)**
- .44            **Araneida (True spiders)**
- .45            **Palpigradi (Whip scorpions)**
- .46            **Scorpiones (Scorpions)**
- .47            **Pseudoscorpiones (Fake scorpions)**
- .48            **Solifugae (Weasel spiders)**
- .5            **Onychophora**
- .6            **Progoneata**  
                     *For Insecta, see 595.7*
- .61            **Diplopoda (Millipedes)**  
                     Pselaphognatha, Chilognatha

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 595.62      **Opisthogoneata**  
                Chilopoda (centipedes)
- .63          **Symphyla**
- .64          **Pauropoda**
- .7          **Insecta (Insects)**  
                Use 595.700 1 – 595.700 8 for standard subdivisions
- .701–.709      **General principles**  
                Divide like 591.1–591.9, e.g., insect morphology 595.704
- .71          **Synaptera**  
                Collembola (springtails), Protura, Entotrophi, Thysanura  
                (bristletails)
- .72          **Orthoptera and related orders**
- .721          **Dermaptera (Earwigs)**
- .722          **Blattariae (Cockroaches)**
- .724          **Phasmatodea (Walking sticks)**
- .725          **Mantodea (Mantises)**
- .726          **Orthoptera**  
                Common names: grasshoppers, crickets, locusts, katydids
- .73          **Thysanoptera and related orders**
- .731          **Thysanoptera (Thrips)**
- .732          **Corrodentia (Book lice, bark lice)**
- .733          **Odonata (Dragonflies, damselflies)**
- .734          **Ephemeroptera (Mayflies)**
- .735          **Plecoptera (Stoneflies)**
- .736          **Isoptera (Termites)**
- .737          **Embioptera**
- .738          **Zoraptera**
- .74          **Neuroptera and related orders**
- .742          **Megaloptera (Ant lions)**
- .744          **Mecoptera (Scorpion flies)**

595.745	Trichoptera ( Caddis flies )
.746	Strepsiptera
.747	Neuroptera
.	Common names: lacewings, snake flies, dobson flies
.75	Hemiptera and related orders
.751	Apterous insects ( Lice )
.751 2	Anoplura ( True lice )
.751 4	Mallophaga ( Bird lice )
.752	Homoptera
	Common names: aphids, cicadas, leaf hoppers, scale insects
.754	Heteroptera ( True bugs )
.76	Coleoptera ( Beetles )
.762	Adenhaga
	Caraboidea, Gyrinoidea, Cupoidea, Rhysodoidea
.764	Polyphaga
	Hydrophiloidea, Staphylinoidea, Cucujoidea, Cantharoidea, Dryopoidea, Dascylloidea, Histeroidea, Tenebrionoidea, Ceramhycoidea, Scarabacoidea
	Common names: burying beetles, larder beetles, leaf beetles, dung beetles, June beetles, rose chafers
.765	Elateroidea ( Wireworms, click beetles )
.767	Mordelloidea ( Ship-timber and blister beetles )
.768	Curculionoidea ( Weevils )
.769	Colydioidea ( Powder-post and ladybird beetles )
.77	Diptera and related orders
.771	Orthorrhapha
	Common names: midges, gnats, mosquitoes; crane, moth, horse, bee, robber flies
.774	Cyclorrhapha
	Common names: fruit, vinegar, house, blow, Tachina, louse flies
.775	Siphonaptera ( Fleas )

## *Decimal Classification*

---

595.78      **Lepidoptera**  
             Including Jugatae, Frenatae (moths)

.789          Rhopalocera ( Butterflies )

.79          Hymenoptera

.796          Formicidae (Ants)

.798          Vespidae (True wasps)

.799          Apidae (Bees)

### **596      Chordata (Vertebrates)**

Use 596.001–596.008 for standard subdivisions

*For Anamnia, see 597; reptiles and birds, 598; Mammalia, 599*

.01–.09      General principles

Divide like 591.1–591.9, e.g., comparative anatomy of  
vertebrates 596.04

.2          Tunicata (Sea squirts and sea grapes)

Ascidacea, Larvacea, Thaliacea

### **597      Anamnia (Cyclostomes, fishes, amphibians)**

Use 597.001–597.009 for standard subdivisions

.01–.09      General principles of fish

Divide like 591.1–591.9, e.g., protective adaptations of fish  
597.057

.2          Cyclostomata (Lampreys)

.3          Chondrichthyes

597.31–597.35 Elasmobranchii

.31          Selachii (Sharks)

Heterodontoidea, Notidanoidea, Galeoidea, Squaloidea

.35          Batoidea

Common names: skates, rays, torpedoes, guitarfishes, sawfishes

.38          Chimaerae (Chimeras)

## *Zoological sciences*

### **597.4–597.5 Osteichthyes**

**597.4**

#### **Actinopterygii and related orders**

.41 Amioidea (Bowfins, river dogfishes)

.42 Polypterini (Ganoids)

.44 Acipenseroidei

Common names: sturgeons, paddlefishes, spoonbills

.46 Crossopterygii (Lobe-finned fishes)

*For Lepisosteidae, see 597.47*

.47 Lepisosteidae (Gars)

.48 Dipnoi (Lung fishes)

**.5 Teleostei**

Divide by orders as below

If preferred, arrange alphabetically by orders

.51 Apodes (Morays and true eels)

.52 Ostariophysi

Cyprinoidea, Siluroidea

Common names: carps, suckers, barbels, loaches, catfishes

.53 Mesichthyes

Haplomi, Iniomi, Cyprinodontes, Synentognathi, Thoracostei, Salmopercae

Common names: pikes, killifishes, top minnows, garfishes, flying fishes, halfbeaks, sticklebacks, pipefishes, sea horses, pirate perch

.55 Isospondyli

Clupeoidea, Salmonoidea, Opisthoproctoidea, Osteoglossoidea, Stomiatoidea, Gonorhynchoidea

Common names: herrings, salmon, arapaimas, dragonfishes, trout, tarpons, lantern fishes

### Decimal Classification

## 597.58

### Acanthopterygii

Berycoidea, Zeoidea, Percoidea, Carangoidea, Scombroidea, Trachinoidea, Blennioidea, Anacanthini, Chaetodontoidea, Plectognathi, Heterosomata, Scorpaenoidea, Batrachoidea, Pediculati, Gobioida, Anabantoidea, Mugiloidea, Polyne-moidea, Ammodytoidea, Echeneoidea, Xenopterygii, Allotriognathi, Opisthomi, Synbranchii

Common names: snappers, John Dorys, perches, basses, gobies, mackerels, blennies, pompanos, tunas, albacores, bonitos, swordfishes

.6

## Amphibia

*For Apoda, see 597.7; Salientia, 597.8–597.9*

.7

### Apoda (Caecilians)



### 597.8–597.9 Salientia

8.

**Anura ( Frogs and toads )**

Amphicoela, Opisthocoela, Anomocoela, Procela, Diplasiocoela

**.9**

**Urodela (Salamanders, newts, mud puppies)**

**Cryptobranchoidea, Amblystomoidea, Salamandroidea, Proteidea**

## 598

## Reptiles and birds

.1

## Reptilia ( Reptiles )

Scope: herpetology

*For Amphibia, see 597.6*

.11

## Lepidosauria

*For Serpentes, see 598.12*

## .112

### Lacertilia ( Lizards )

## .119

Rhynchocephalia (Tuataras) [*formerly* 598.139]

.12

### Serpentes (Snakes)

.13

**Chelonia (Turtles, tortoises)**

### Pleurodira and Cryptodira

[.139]

### Rhynchocephalia (Tuataras)

**Class in 598.119**

.14

**Crocodylia ( Crocodiles, alligators)**

## *Zoological sciences*

### **598.2 Aves ( Birds )**

*For specific orders of birds, see 598.3–598.9*

- .201 Philosophy and theory
- .201 3 Protective measures
- .207 Study and teaching
- .207 2 Research
- .207 23 Birdbanding and census taking
- .207 3 Bird watching
- .209 History of ornithology
  - Class regional and geographical treatment in **598.29**
- .21–.28 General principles
  - Divide like **591.1–591.8**, e.g., bird migrations **598.252**
- .29 Regional and geographical treatment
- .291 Zonal and physiographic treatment
  - Divide like **574.909**, e.g., birds in desert regions **598.291 54**
- .292 Special groupings
- .292 2 Land birds
- .292 3 Shore birds
- .292 4 Water birds
- .293–.299 Geographical treatment
  - Add area notations **3–9** to **598.29**

### **598.3–598.9 Specific orders of birds**

#### **.3 Gruiformes and related orders**

Including *Mesoenatides*, *Turnices*, *Grues*, *Heliornithes*,  
*Rhynocheti*, *Eurypygae*, *Cariamae*, *Otides*

Common names: cranes, limpkins, rails, gallinules, coots

#### **.33 Charadriiformes**

*Charadrii*, *Lari*, *Alcae*

Common names: gulls, skimmers, terns, puffins, auks, murres,  
jacanas, oyster catchers, plovers, turnstones, woodcock, snipe,  
sandpipers, curlews, avocets, stilts, phalaropes



## *Decimal Classification*

- 598.34      **Ciconiiformes**  
              Ardeae, Balaenicipites, Ciconiae, Phoenicopteri  
              Common names: herons, bitterns, egrets, storks, ibises,  
              spoonbills, flamingos
- .4            **Anseriformes and related orders**  
              Including Anhimae and Anseres  
              Common names: swans, geese, ducks, mergansers, screamers
- .42          **Procellariiformes**  
              Common names: albatrosses, shearwaters, fulmars, petrels
- .43          **Pelecaniformes**  
              Phaëthontes, Pelecani, Fregatae, Odontopteryges  
              Common names: tropic birds, pelicans, gannets, boobies,  
              cormorants, darters, snakebirds, man-o'-war birds
- .44          **Sphenisciformes (Penguins)**
- .442        **Gaviiformes (Loons)**
- .443        **Colymbiformes (Grebes)**
- .5          **Palaeognathae**
- .51        **Struthioniformes (Ostriches)**
- .52        **Rheiformes (Rheas)**
- .53        **Casuariiformes (Cassowaries, emus)**
- .54        **Apterygiformes (Kiwis)**
- .55        **Tinamiformes (Tinamous)**
- .6          **Galliformes and Columbiformes**
- .61        **Galli**  
              Common names: curassows, guans, grouse, quails, pheasants,  
              turkeys, domestic chickens
- .64        **Opisthocomo (Hoatzins)**
- .65        **Columbiformes**  
              Pterocletes and Columbæ  
              Common names: sand grouse, pigeons, doves

- 598.7 Psittaciformes**  
Common names: parrots, parakeets, macaws, lories
- .72 Piciformes**  
Galbulae and Pici  
Common names: jacamars, puffbirds, barbets, honey guides, toucans, woodpeckers, flickers, piculets
- .73 Trogoniformes (Trogon)**
- .74 Cuculiformes**  
Musophagi and Cuculi  
Common names: plantain eaters, cuckoos, roadrunners, anis
- .8 Passeriformes (Passerine, perching birds)**  
Divide by families as below  
If preferred, arrange alphabetically by families
- .81 Tyrannidae (Flycatchers)**
- .812 Alaudidae (Larks)**
- .813 Hirundinidae (Swallows)**
- .82 Paridae (Titmice)**
- .822 Sittidae (Nuthatches)**
- .823 Certhiidae (Creepers)**
- .83 Chamaeidae (Wren-tits)**
- .832 Cinclidae (Dippers)**
- .833 Troglodytidae (Wrens)**
- .84 Mimidae (Thrashers and mockingbirds)**
- .842 Turdidae (Thrushes)**
- .843 Sylviidae (Gnatcatchers and kinglets)**
- .85 Motacillidae (Wagtails and pipits)**
- .852 Bombycillidae (Waxwings)**
- .853 Ptilonotidae (Silky flycatchers)**
- .86 Corvidae (Crows, magpies, jays)**
- .862 Laniidae (Shrikes)**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 598.863      **Sturnidae (Starlings)**  
    .87      **Vireonidae (Vireos)**  
    .872      **Parulidae (Wood warblers)**  
    .873      **Ploceidae (Weaver finches)**  
    .88      **Icteridae (Blackbirds)**  
    .882      **Thraupidae (Tanagers)**  
    .883      **Fringillidae**  
            Common names: grosbeaks, finches, sparrows, buntings
- .89      **Coraciiformes**  
            Alcedines, Meropes, Coracii, Bucerotes  
            Common names: kingfishers, rollers, todies, motmots, bee eaters,  
            hoopoes, hornbills
- .899      **Apodiformes**  
            Apodi and Trochili  
            Common names: swifts, hummingbirds
- .9      **Falconiformes (Birds of prey)**  
            Including Cathartae and Falcones  
            Common names: hawks, falcons, buzzards, vultures, ospreys,  
            eagles
- .97      **Strigiformes (Owls)**  
    .99      **Caprimulgiformes**  
            Steatornithes and Caprimulgi  
            Common names: oilbirds, frogmouths, potoos, goatsuckers
- 599      **Mammalia (Mammals)**  
            Use 599.001–599.008 for standard subdivisions
- .01–.09      **General principles**  
            Divide like 591.1–591.9, e.g., physiology of nervous system  
            599.018

**SUMMARY**

- 599.1    **Monotremata**
- .2    **Marsupialia**
- .3    **Unguiculata and Glires**
- .4    **Chiroptera (Bats)**
- .5    **Cetacea and Sirenia**
- .6    **Paenungulata**
- .7    **Mesaxonia, Paraxonia, Ferungulata**
- .8    **Primates**
- .9    **Hominidae (Man)**

**599.1    Monotremata**

Common names: spiny anteaters, platypuses

**.2    Marsupialia**

Common names: opossums, opossum rats, kangaroos, marsupial mice, wallabies, bandicoots, phalangers, koalas, wombats

**.3    Unguiculata and Glires**

*For Chiroptera, see 599.4; Primates, 599.8*

**.31    Edentata**

Xenarthra and Pholidota

Common names: armadillos, anteaters, sloths, pangolins

**.32    Glires**

**.322    Lagomorpha**

Common names: pikas, hares, rabbits

**.323    Rodentia (Rodents)**

**.323 2    Sciuromorpha**

Common names: sewellels, squirrels, beavers

**.323 3    Myomorpha**

Common names: rats, mice, lemmings

**.323 4    Hystricomorpha**

Common names: porcupines, guinea pigs, caviars, agoutis, chinchillas, hamsters

**.33    Insectivora**

Common names: solenodons, moles, shrews, desmans, tenreos

**.34    Dermoptera (Flying lemurs)**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 599.4 Chiroptera (Bats)**  
Megachiroptera and Microchiroptera
- .5 Cetacea and Sirenia**
- .51 Mysticeti**  
Common names: baleen whales, whalebone whales, finbacks, humpback whales
- .53 Odontoceti**  
Common names: sperm whales, beakt whales, cowfish, narwhals, white whales, dolphins, porpoises
- .55 Sirenia (Sea cows)**  
Common names: manatecs, dugongs
- .6 Paenungulata**  
*For Sirenia, see 599.55*
- .61 Proboscidea (Elephants)**
- .62 Hyracoidea**  
Common names: conies, dassies, rock hyraxes, tree hyraxes
- .7 Mesaxonia, Paraxonia, Ferungulata**
- .72 Perissodactyla**
- .725 Equidae (Horses, asses, zebras)**
- .727 Tapiridae (Tapirs)**
- .728 Rhinocerotidae (Rhinoceroses)**
- .73 Artiodactyla**
- .734 Suiformes**  
Common names: pigs, boars, wart hogs, babirussas, peccaries, hippopotamuses
- .735 Ruminantia (Ruminants)**
- .735 5 Tragulida (Chevrotains)**
- .735 7 Cervoidea**  
Common names: giraffes, okapis, deer, elk, moose, reindeer, caribou

## *Zoological sciences*

- 599.735 8           Bovoidea  
                           Common names: antelopes, cattle, oxen, buffaloes, bison,  
                           eland, bongos, kudus, gazelles, sheep, goats, musk oxen
- .736               Tylopoda  
                           Common names: camels, llamas, alpacas, vicuñas, guanacos
- .74                Carnivora
- .744               Fissipeda (Land carnivores)
- .744 2             Feloidea
- .744 22            Viverridae  
                           Common names: civets, genets, mongooses, fossa
- .744 26            Proteles (Aardwolves)
- .744 27            Hyaenidae (Hyenas)
- .744 28            Felidae (Cats)
- .744 4             Canoidea
- .744 42            Canidae  
                           Common names: wolves, jackals, foxes, dogs, coyotes
- .744 43            Procyonidae  
                           Common names: raccoons, coatis, kinkajous,  
                           bassarisks, pandas
- .744 46            Ursidae (Bears)
- .744 47            Mustelidae  
                           Common names: badgers, weasels, minks, martens,  
                           wolverines, skunks, otters
- .745               Pinnipedia (Marine carnivores)
- .746                Otariidae (Eared seals)  
                           Common names: fur seals, sea lions, sea bears
- .747                Odobenidae (Walruses)
- .748                Phocidae (True seals)  
                           Common names: earless seals, elephant seals

## *Decimal Classification*

### **599.8 Primates**

*For Hominidae, see 599.9*

#### **.81 Prosimii**

*Lemuriformes, Lorisiformes, Tarsiiformes*

#### **.82 Cebidae, Callithricidae, Cercopithecidae**

*Common names: monkeys, marmosets, tamarins*

### **► 599.88–599.9 Hominoidea**

#### **.88 Pongidae (Apes)**

#### **.882 Hylobatinae**

*Common names: gibbons, siamangs*

#### **.884 Ponginae**

*Common names: gorillas, chimpanzees, orangutans, baboons*

#### **.9 Hominidae (Man)**

## 600 Technology (Applied sciences)

[.74] Museums and exhibits

Class in 607.34

[.78] Apparatus and instrumentation

Class in 602.8

601 Philosophy and theory

602 Miscellany

.7 Identification marks

Class patents and inventions in 608.7

.8 Apparatus, instrumentation [*both formerly* 600.78],  
techniques

603 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

604

605 Serial publications

606 Organizations

[.4] Fairs, expositions, temporary exhibits, competitions

Class fairs, expositions, temporary exhibits in 607.34, competitions  
in 607.39

607 Study and teaching

.2 Industrial research (Products research)

Add area notations 1–9 to 607.2

.3 Other educational aspects

.34 Museums and exhibits [*both formerly* 600.74]

Including fairs, expositions, temporary exhibits [*all formerly*  
606.4]



## *Decimal Classification*

- 607.35-.38 Collecting, review, programed teaching, use of equipment  
Divide like standard subdivisions 075-078, e.g., questions and answers 607.36
- .39 Competitions [*formerly* 606.4] and awards
- .4-.9 In specific continents, countries, localities  
Add area notations 4-9 to 607
- 608 Collections, anthologies, patents, inventions
- .7 Patents and inventions  
Add area notations 1-9 to 608.7
- 609 Historical and geographical treatment
- 610 Medical sciences
- .6 Organizations and professions
- .69 Medical professions  
*For nursing profession, see 610.73*
- .695 Specific medical professions  
Class medical records librarians in 362.1, medical missionaries in 266.025, medical secretaries in 651.374 1
- .695 2 Physicians and surgeons
- .695 3 Medical technicians
- .696 Physician-patient relationships
- .7 Study, teaching, nursing practice
- .72 Historical and descriptive research  
Class experimental medicine in 619
- .73 Nursing profession  
*For home nursing, see 649.8*
- .730 69 Personnel
- .730 692 Professional nurses

## *Medical sciences*

- 610.730 693            Practical nurses  
    .730 698            Other  
                        Attendants, aides, orderlies
- .732            Private duty and special nursing  
    .733            Institutional nursing and ward management  
    .734            Red Cross and other public health nursing  
                        If preferred, class in 614.073
- .734 3            Community and district nursing  
                        Services of visiting nurses
- .734 6            Occupational health nursing (Industrial  
                        nursing)
- .734 9            Disaster nursing
- .736            Specialized nursing  
                        If preferred, class with the specialty, e.g., surgical nursing  
                        617.073
- .736 2            Pediatric nursing  
    .736 5            Geriatric nursing  
    .736 7            Surgical and gynecological nursing  
    .736 77            Surgical nursing  
    .736 78            Obstetrical nursing  
    .736 8            Psychiatric nursing  
    .736 9            Communicable disease nursing

## **611      Human anatomy**

Use 611.001-611.009 for standard subdivisions

- .01            Abnormal, prenatal, microscopic anatomy  
                        For pathology, see 616.07
- .012            Teratology  
                        Congenital anomalies, deformities, monstrosities
- .013            Anatomic embryology

### *Decimal Classification*

- 611.018      Cytology and histology  
    .018 1      Cytology (Study of cells)  
  
                    611.018 2 – 611.018 8 Histology  
    .018 2      Connective tissues  
                    Areolar, collagenous, elastic, reticular, adipose, pigmented  
                    cells, fibers, ground substances  
  
    .018 3      Cartilaginous tissues  
                    Hyaline, elastic, fibrous cartilage  
  
    .018 4      Osseous tissues  
                    Spongy and compact bone cells and tissues, red and  
                    yellow bone marrow (medulla), periosteum, endosteum  
  
    .018 5      Blood and lymph elements  
                    Blood plasma, red corpuscles (erythrocytes), white cor-  
                    puscles (leucocytes), platelets (thrombocytes), lymph  
                    plasma, lymphocytes  
  
    .018 6      Muscular tissues  
                    Smooth (nonstriated, involuntary), skeletal (striated,  
                    voluntary), cardiac (striated, involuntary) muscle tissues  
  
    .018 7      Epithelial tissues  
                    Serous and mucous membranes; simple squamous, col-  
                    umnar, stratified squamous epithelia  
  
    .018 8      Nerve tissues  
                    Neurons, interstitial nerve tissues (neuroglia, neurilemma,  
                    satellite cells), meninges, sheaths

### 611.1–611.9 Gross anatomy

#### SUMMARY

- 611.1      Cardiovascular organs  
    .2      Respiratory organs  
    .3      Digestive organs  
    .4      Lymphatic and glandular organs  
    .6      Urogenital organs  
    .7      Motor and integumentary organs  
    .8      Neuroanatomy  
    .9      Regional, surgical, topographical anatomy



**611.1 Cardiovascular organs**

.11 Pericardium

.12 Heart

Ventricles, auricles, endocardium, myocardium

*For pericardium, see 611.11*

---

► **611.13–611.15 Blood vessels**

.13 Arteries

.14 Veins

.15 Capillaries

**.2 Respiratory organs**

.21 Nose and nasal accessory sinuses

.22 Larynx

Epiglottis, glottis, laryngeal muscles

.23 Trachea and bronchi

.24 Lungs

.25 Thoracic pleura

.26 Diaphragm

.27 Mediastinum

**.3 Digestive organs**

.31 Mouth

.313 Tongue

.314 Teeth

.315 Palate

.316 Salivary glands

.317 Lips

.318 Cheeks

.32 Pharynx, tonsils, esophagus

.33 Stomach and pylorus

## *Decimal Classification*

- 611.34      **Intestines**
  - For rectum, see 611.35*
  - .341      **Small intestines**
    - Duodenum, jejunum, ileum
  - .345      **Cecum and vermiform appendix**
  - .347      **Large intestines**
    - Colon and sigmoid flexure
    - For cecum, see 611.345*
  - .35      **Rectum, anus, perineum**
  - .36      **Biliary tract**
    - Liver, gall bladder, bile ducts
  - .37      **Pancreas and islands of Langerhans**
  - .38      **Peritoneum**
    - Mesentery, omentum, coelum
- .4      **Lymphatic and glandular organs**
  - .41      **Spleen**
  - .42      **Lymphatic system**
    - For lymphatic glands, see 611.46*
  - .43      **Thymus gland**
  - .44      **Thyroid and parathyroid glands**
  - .45      **Adrenal glands**
  - .46      **Lymphatic glands**
  - .49      **Breasts and mammary glands**
- .6      **Urogenital organs**
  - .61      **Kidneys and ureters**
  - .62      **Bladder and urethra** [*formerly also 611.67*]
  - .63      **Testicles, prostate, scrotum**
  - .64      **Penis**
  - .65      **Ovaries and Fallopian tubes**
  - .66      **Uterus and cervix**

### Medical sciences

- |        |   |
|--------|---|
| 611.67 | Vagina, hymen, vulva  |
|        | Class urethra [ <i>formerly</i> 611.67] in 611.62   |
| .7     | Motor and integumentary organs  |
| .71    | Bones   |
| .711   | Of spinal column  |
|        | 611.712-611.713 Of chest  |
| .712   | Ribs  |
| .713   | Sternum   |
| .715   | Of brainpan   |
| .716   | Of face   |
| .717   | Of upper extremity  |
|        | Scapula, clavicle, humerus, radius, ulna, phalanges of the hands, carpal and metacarpal bones |
| .718   | Of lower extremity  |
|        | Hipbone, femur, patella, tibia, fibula, phalanges of the feet, tarsal and metatarsal bones    |
| .72    | Articulations (Ligaments and joints)  |
| .73    | Muscles   |
| .731   | Of back   |
| .732   | Of head   |
| .733   | Of neck   |
| .734   | Of tongue   |
| .735   | Of chest  |
| .736   | Of abdomen and pelvis   |
| .737   | Of upper extremity  |
|        | Muscles of shoulders, arms, forearms, hands   |
| .738   | Of lower extremity  |
|        | Muscles of hips, buttocks, thighs, legs, feet   |

## Decimal Classification

---

- 611.74      **Connective tissue**
  - Tendons and fasciae
  - For ligaments, see 611.72*
- .75      Bursae and sheaths of tendons
- .77      Integument
  - For hair and nails, see 611.78*
- .78      Hair and nails
- .8      **Neuroanatomy**
  - .81      Brain
  - .82      Spinal cord
  - .83      Nerves and ganglions
- ▶      

---

611.84–611.88 Sense organs

  - .84      Eye
  - .85      Ear
  - .86      Olfactory organs
  - .87      Gustatory organs
  - .88      Tactile organs
- .9      **Regional, surgical, topographical anatomy**
  - .91      Head
    - For face, see 611.92*
  - .92      Face
  - .93      Neck
  - .94      Thorax
  - .95      Abdomen
    - Epigastric thru lumbar regions
  - .96      Pelvic and perineal region
  - .97      Upper extremities
  - .98      Lower extremities

*Medical sciences*

**612 Human physiology**

Use 612.001–612.009 for standard subdivisions

*For pathology, see 616.07*

- .01 Physics and chemistry of vital functions
- .014 Biophysics
  - Effects of physical agents on human system
    - For physiological effects of heat and cold, see 612.59*
  - .014 4 Terrestrial factors
  - .014 41 Mechanical factors
    - Divide like 574.191 3, e.g., pressures 612.014 415
  - .014 42 Electricity
  - .014 44 Visible light waves
  - .014 45 Sound vibrations
  - .014 48 Radiations and microwaves
    - Divide like 574.191 5, e.g., gamma rays 612.014 486
    - For visible light waves, see 612.014 44*
  - .014 5 Space physiology (Bio-astronautics)
    - Divide like 574.191 3 – 574.191 7, e.g., gravitational effects 612.014 532
- .015 Biochemistry
  - Class metabolism in 612.39, hormones in 612.405
- .015 1 Enzymes and enzyme-catalyzed reactions
  - Divide like 574.192 5, e.g., saccharolytic enzymes 612.015 14
- .015 2 Chemical composition
  - Divide like 574.192 1, e.g., mineral components 612.015 24
- .015 4 Biosynthesis
  - Divide like 574.192 9, e.g., pigments 612.015 47
- .018 Tissue and organ culture



## Decimal Classification

### 612.1-612.8 Specific systems and organs

Functions, biophysics, biochemistry, innervation

#### SUMMARY

- 612.1      Circulatory and hemic systems
- .2      Respiratory system
- .3      Nutrition
- .4      Lymphatic, endocrine, exocrine systems
- .5      Body temperature
- .6      Reproductive system and developmental periods
- .7      Motor and integumentary systems
- .8      Nervous system

#### 612.1      Circulatory and hemic systems

Class circulation in a specific system or organ with the system or organ

*For lymphatic system, see 612.42*

#### SUMMARY

- 612.11    Blood
- .12    Chemical components of blood
- .13    Blood vessels and circulation
- .14    Blood pressure and sphygmomanometry
- .17    Heart
- .18    Vasomotors

#### .11      Blood

*For spleen, see 612.41; bone marrow, 612.491; chemical components of blood, 612.12*

#### .111      Red corpuscles (Erythrocytes)

##### .111 1      Biochemistry

##### .111 2      Counting techniques

#### .112      White corpuscles (Leucocytes)

##### .112 1      Biochemistry

##### .112 2      Biophysics

##### .112 7      Counting techniques

#### .115      Coagulation products

Composition and properties of blood plasma, fibrin, fibrinoplastin, thrombin

Class platelets [*formerly 612.115*] in 612.117

## *Medical sciences*

- 612.117      Other components  
                 Platelets [*formerly* 612.115] and hemoconia
- .118          Physical and biological properties
- .118 1        Physical properties  
                 Osmotic pressure, viscosity, density, specific gravity,  
                 cryoscopic methods of study
- .118 2        Biological properties
- .118 22       Immunity  
                 Production of antibodies, and immune reactions
- .118 25       Blood types and typing
- .12          Chemical components of blood  
                 Carbohydrates, lipoids, cholesterolin, mineral salts, enzymes
- .13          Blood vessels and circulation  
                 *For vasomotors, see* 612.18
- .133         Arteries and arterial circulation
- .134         Veins and venous circulation
- .135         Capillaries and capillary circulation
- .14          Blood pressure and sphygmomanometry
- .17          Heart
- .171         Biophysics  
                 Contraction and dilation of heart cavities, valvular activity,  
                 recording methods  
                 *For blood pressure, see* 612.14
- .173         Biochemistry  
                 Chemical composition and metabolism
- .178         Innervation  
                 Nerve distribution and stimulation of heart
- .18          Vasomotors  
                 Nerves causing dilation (vasodilators) and constriction (vaso-  
                 constrictors) of blood vessels

## Decimal Classification

### 612.2      **Respiratory system**

#### .21          **Biophysics**

Respiratory movements, rhythm, sounds and similar phenomena

#### .215        **Of specific organs**

Nose and pharynx, bronchi, trachea, pleura, lungs, pulmonary muscles

#### .22          **Biochemistry**

Gas exchange and metabolism

*For catabolism, see 612.26*

#### .26          **Tissue respiration and catabolism**

#### .28          **Innervation**

Nerve distribution and stimulation of respiratory apparatus

### .3          **Nutrition**

Sum total of processes of ingestion, digestion, assimilation of food to build and maintain tissue, and to release energy

---

►            612.31–612.38 Physiology of digestive system

#### .31          **Mouth and esophagus**

##### .311        **Teeth**

##### .312        **Tongue and tonsils**

##### .313        **Salivary glands and saliva**

##### .315        **Esophagus**

#### .32          **Stomach and gastric juice**

---

►            612.33–612.36 Intestinal digestion

#### .33          **Small intestines and intestinal secretions**

#### .34          **Pancreas and pancreatic secretions**

#### .35          **Biliary tract**

Liver, gall bladder, bile and bile ducts

#### .36          **Large intestines and defecation**

## *Medical sciences*

- 612.38      **Absorption**  
Transfer of digested food from alimentary canal into blood stream  
Class absorption in a specific part of the alimentary canal with the part
- .39      **Metabolism**  
Assimilation of digested food into tissue (anabolism) and conversion into energy (catabolism)  
*For energy metabolism, see 612.57; catabolism, 612.26; hormones in the body, 612.405*
- .391      **Hunger and thirst mechanisms**
- .392      **Mineral metabolism**
- .392 3      Water
- .392 4      Sulfur, phosphorus, iron, trace elements
- .392 6      Sodium, potassium, calcium salts
- .396      Carbohydrate metabolism
- .397      Fat and lipoid metabolism
- .398      Protein metabolism
- .399      Vitamins in the body
- .4      **Lymphatic, endocrine, exocrine systems**  
Use 612.400 1 – 612.400 9 for standard subdivisions  
Class glands of a specific system with the system
- .405      **Hormones in the body**
- .41      **Spleen**  
*For red corpuscles, see 612.111*
- .42      **Lymphatic system**  
Lymph, lymph glands and ducts
- .43      **Thymus gland**
- .44      **Thyroid and parathyroid glands**
- .45      **Adrenal glands**

### Decimal Classification

- 612.46      Urinary system
  - .461          Chemical properties of urine
    - Chemical composition, reactivity, analysis
  - .463          Kidneys
  - .467          Ureters, bladder, urethra
  - .49          Other endocrine glands
  - .491          Bone marrow
    - For red corpuscles, see 612.111*
  - .492          Pituitary and pineal glands
- .5          Body temperature
  - Heat production, radiation, regulation, measurement
  - .55          Disturbances in heat regulation
  - .57          Energy metabolism ( Basal metabolism )
  - .59          Physiological effects of heat and cold
  - .591          High temperatures
  - .592          Low temperatures
- .6          Reproductive system and developmental periods
  - Use 612.600 1 – 612.600 9 for standard subdivisions
  - .61          Male reproductive system
  - .62          Female reproductive system
  - .63          Pregnancy
    - For embryology, see 612.64*
  - .64          Embryology
    - Use 612.640 01 – 612.640 09 for standard subdivisions
  - .640 1          Development of specific systems and organs
    - Divide like 611, e.g., development of eye 612.640 184
  - .646          Development of embryo
    - Intra-uterine development from conception thru three months

## *Medical sciences*

- 612.647      Development of fetus  
                Intra-uterine development from end of embryonic period to birth
- [.648]      Development of newborn  
                Class in 612.652
- .65          Child development
- .652          Development of newborn [*formerly* 612.648]  
                First month of postnatal development
- .654          Development from infancy to puberty
- .66          Adult development  
                *For aging, see* 612.67
- .661          Adolescent development
- .662          Menstruation
- .663          Period of mature development
- .664          Mammary glands and lactation
- .665          Climacteric development  
                Male and female climacteric changes
- .67          Aging (Physical gerontology)
- .68          Longevity factors
- .7          Motor and integumentary systems
- .74          Muscles  
                Class muscles of a specific system or organ with the system or organ
- .741          Biophysics  
                Contractions, elasticity, tonus, irritability
- .743          Innervation
- .744          Biochemistry  
                Muscular metabolism, chemical composition, fatigue products
- .75          Bones, joints, connective tissues

## Decimal Classification

- 612.76 Locomotion, exercise, rest
- .78 Voice and speech
  - Larynx and mouth, nose, lips, palate as organs of speech
- .79 Integument, hair, nails
- ▶ 612.791–612.798 Skin
- .791 Biophysics
  - Contractions, tonus, irritability, absorbency, resistivity
- .792 Biochemistry
- .792 1 Glands and glandular secretions
- .792 7 Pigmentation
- .798 Innervation
- .799 Nails and hair
- .8 Nervous system
- .801 Innervation principles

---

### ▶ 612.81–612.89 Parts of the nervous system

#### SUMMARY

- 612.81 Nerves and nerve fibers
- .82 Brain
- .83 Spinal cord
- .84 Eye
- .85 Ear
- .86 Olfactory organs
- .87 Gustatory organs
- .88 Tactile and proprioceptive organs
- .89 Autonomic nervous system
- .81 Nerves and nerve fibers
  - Class specific nerves with the part innervated
  - For autonomic nervous system, see 612.89*
- .811 Types of nerves by function
- .811 5 Motor nerves
- .811 6 Sensory nerves
- .813 Electrophysiology
- .816 Irritability
- .819 Cranial and spinal nerves

## *Medical sciences*

- 612.82      **Brain**
- .821      **Sleep**  
            Metabolism, circulation, chemical changes in brain during  
            sleep phenomena
- .822      **Biochemistry and biophysics**
- .824      **Circulation**
- .825      **Cerebrum**  
            Cerebral hemispheres, convolutions, cortex  
            *For cerebral commissures and peduncles, see 612.826*
- .825 2      **Localization of motor functions**
- .825 5      **Localization of sensory functions**
- .826      **Brain stem**  
            Thalamus, cerebral commissures and peduncles, geniculate  
            bodies, corpora quadrigemina, pons Variolii  
            *For medulla oblongata, see 612.828*
- .827      **Cerebellum**
- .828      **Medulla oblongata**
- .83      **Spinal cord**
- 612.84–612.88 **Sense organs**
- .84      **Eye**
- .841      **Fibrous tunics**  
            Cornea, conjunctiva, anterior chamber, sclera
- .842      **Uvea**  
            Iris, choroid, ciliary body
- .843      **Optic nerve and retina**
- .844      **Eyeball**  
            Crystalline lens, aqueous humor, vitreous humor
- .846      **Movements (Ocular muscular mechanism)**
- .847      **Eyelids and tear ducts**  
            Palpebral and lacrimal mechanism



## Decimal Classification

- 612.85      **Ear**
  - .851      External ear
  - .854      Middle ear
    - Tympanic membrane, eustachian tube, ossicles, mastoid processes
  - .858      Internal ear
    - Cochlea, labyrinth, semicircular canals, vestibule
- .86      Olfactory organs
- .87      Gustatory organs
- .88      Tactile and proprioceptive organs
- .89      Autonomic nervous system
  - Sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems

## 613      General and personal hygiene

Health and its preservation

*For public health, see 614*

- .07      Study and teaching
  - Including health education [*formerly also 371.76*]

### SUMMARY

- 613.1      Environment and health
- .2      Food and health
- .3      Beverages and health
- .4      Care of person
- .5      Housing and health
- .6      Health and well-being under unusual conditions
- .7      Rest, exercise, physical fitness
- .8      Addictions and health
- .9      Factors relating to heredity, sex, age
- .1      Environment and health
  - For housing and health, see 613.5*
- .11      Climate
  - For seasonal changes, see 613.13*
- [.110 911]      Arctic hygiene
  - Do not use; class in 613.111

*Medical sciences*

---

[613.110 913]

Tropical hygiene

Do not use; class in 613.113

.111 Arctic hygiene

.113 Tropical hygiene

.119 Acclimation

.12 Health resort areas

Regions exempt from specific diseases

.13 Seasonal changes

.14 Humidity

.18 Indoor temperatures and air conditioning

.19 Air and light

.192 Fresh air and breathing exercises

.193 Sun bathing

.194 Nudism

**.2 Food and health**

Food programs for general well-being and improved appearance

*For beverages and health, see 613.3*

.24 Programs for gaining weight

.25 Programs for losing weight

.26 Vegetarian diets

.28 High-protein diets

**.3 Beverages and health**

*For alcohol, see 613.81*

.31 Water

.36 Iced beverages

.37 Hot beverages

.38 Carbonated and mineralized waters

**.4 Care of person**

Cleanliness and comfort

.41 Baths and bathing

.48 Clothing

- 613.5      **Housing and health**
  - .6      **Health and well-being under unusual conditions**
  - .62      Industrial hygiene [*formerly* 331.82]
  - .66      Self-defense
  - .67      Military and camp hygiene
  - .68      Shipboard hygiene
  - .69      Survival instructions
    - Survival after accidents, disasters, other unfavorable circumstances
  - .7      **Rest, exercise, physical fitness**
    - Including physical education [*formerly* 371.73]
  - .71      Exercise
  - .78      Correct posture
  - .79      Relaxation, rest, sleep
  - .8      **Addictions and health**
    - Habit-forming stimulants and narcotics as factors deleterious to health
  - .81      Alcohol
  - .83      Narcotics
  - .84      Stimulants
  - .85      Tobacco
  - .9      **Factors relating to heredity, sex, age**
  - .92      Inherited mental disorders
  - .93      Inherited physical disorders
  - .94      Eugenic practices
  - .942      Sterilization
  - .943      Birth control
    - Natural (rhythm), chemical, mechanical methods of contraception
  - .95      Sex hygiene
  - .952      For men

## *Medical sciences*

- 613.953 For boys
- .954 For women
- .955 For girls
- .97 Hygiene for specific age groups
  - For a specific aspect, see the subject, e.g., baths and bathing 613.41*
- .972 Infants and children
- .973 Adolescents
- .977 Middle-aged and aged

## **614 Public health**

Class laws, regulations, legal aspects in **340**, public administration aspects in **350.77** [*both formerly 614*]

*For forensic medicine, see 340.6; medical social work, 362.1; toxicology, 615.9*

- .07 Study, teaching, nursing practice
- .073 Red Cross and other public health nursing
  - (Optional; prefer **610.734**)
- .09 Historical and geographical treatment
  - Add area notations **1-9** to **614.09**

### **614.1-614.8 Specific public health measures**

#### **SUMMARY**

- 614.1** Registration and certification
  - .2 Licensure and registration
  - .3 Adulteration and contamination controls
  - .4 Control of disease
  - .5 Control of specific diseases
  - .6 Disposal of the dead
  - .7 Sanitation and environmental comfort
  - .8 Accidents and their prevention
- .1 **Registration and certification**
  - For vital statistics, see 312.1-312.4*
- .11 Birth certification
- .12 Death certification

## *Decimal Classification*

- 614.14 Reports on causes of death
- .15 Morbidity reports
- .17 Premarital examinations and certification
- .2 Licensure and registration**
  - Of physicians, dentists, pharmacists, nurses, other medical specialists
- [.25] Medical economics
  - Class comprehensive works in 338.47, collecting of medical accounts in 658.883, compensation of physicians in 331.2
- .3 Adulteration and contamination controls**
  - Safeguarding public health by inspecting, standardizing, certifying, labeling common commodities
  - Use 614.300 1 – 614.300 9 for standard subdivisions
- .301–.309 Standard subdivisions of food and drug control
  - 614.31–614.34 Protection from food adulteration
- .31 Food
  - Fruits, vegetables, meats, poultry, fish, shellfish in all forms
  - For dairy products, see 614.32; beverages, 614.34*
- .32 Dairy products
- .33 Food additives
  - Permissible and prohibited additives
- .34 Beverages and their bases
- .35 Drugs and cosmetics
  - .351 Officinal drugs
  - .352 Magistral drugs
  - .353 Patent medicines
  - .354 Cosmetics
- .36 Tobacco and tobacco products
- .37 Other commodities

## *Medical sciences*

### **614.4 Control of disease**

*For control of specific diseases, see 614.5*

#### **.42 Geographical distribution of disease (Medical geography)**

##### **.422 Regional treatment**

Divide like area notation 1, e.g., diseases in the tropics  
**614.422 3**

##### **.423-.429 Geographical treatment**

Add area notations 3-9 to **614.42**

#### **.43 Disease carriers (Vectors)**

Transmission of disease by animal carriers and their control

Class control of diseases transmitted by animals in **614.56**

##### **.432 Insects**

###### **.432 2 Flies**

###### **.432 3 Mosquitoes**

###### **.432 4 Lice and fleas**

###### **.432 9 Other insects**

##### **.433 Ticks and other arachnids**

##### **.434 Birds**

##### **.438 Rodents**

##### **.439 Other disease carriers**

#### **.44 Preventive medicine**

Public measures for preventing disease

*For specific control measures, see 614.45-614.48*

---

### **614.45-614.48 Specific control measures**

#### **.45 Isolation**

Prevention of spread of disease in homes, hospitals, schools,  
public places thru isolation

#### **.46 Quarantine**

Maritime, land, air quarantine regulations

## *Decimal Classification*

- 614.47      Immunization
  - Public measures for preventing disease thru protective inoculation
- .48          Disinfection, fumigation, sterilization
- .49          Epidemiology
  - History and control of epidemics
  - Add area notations 1-9 to 614.49

### **.5          Control of specific diseases**

#### **SUMMARY**

- 614.51      Bacillary intoxications, enteric and influenzal diseases
  - .52          Eruptive fevers (Exanthemata)
  - .53          Protozoan infections
  - .54          Other communicable diseases
  - .55          Parasitic diseases
  - .56          Zoogenous diseases
  - .58          Mental hygiene
  - .59          Other noncommunicable diseases
- 614.51-614.56 Control of specific infectious diseases
- .51          Bacillary intoxications, enteric and influenzal diseases
  - .511          Typhoid fever (Enteric fever)
  - .512          Diphtheria
  - .514          Cholera
    - Asian, Indian, epidemic, malignant, pestilential cholera
  - .516          Amoebic and bacillary dysentery
  - .517          Epidemic diarrhea
  - .518          Influenzas
    - Spanish and Asian influenza, other acute influenzalike diseases in epidemic form
  - .52          Eruptive fevers (Exanthemata)
  - .521          Smallpox (Variola major) and attenuated forms
  - .522          Scarlet fever (Scarlatina)
  - .523          Measles (Rubeola)

*Medical sciences*

- 614.524 German measles (Rubella, roetheln)  
.525 Chicken pox (Varicella)  
.526 Rickettsial infections  
Divide like 616.922, e.g., typhus 614.526 2  
  
.53 Protozoan infections  
Divide like 616.936, e.g., malarial fevers 614.532  
  
.54 Other communicable diseases  
*For parasitic diseases, see 614.55; zoonogenous diseases, 614.56*  
  
.541 Yellow fever  
.542 Pulmonary tuberculosis  
.543 Whooping cough (Pertussis)  
.544 Mumps (Epidemic parotitis)  
.545 Puerperal septicemia and pyemia  
.546 Leprosy (Hansen's disease)  
.547 Venereal diseases  
.547 2 Syphilis  
.547 8 Gonorrhea [*formerly* 614.548]  
[.548] Gonorrhea  
Class in 614.547 8  
  
.549 Poliomyelitis  
.55 Parasitic diseases  
Divide like 616.96, e.g., control of schistosomiasis 614.553  
*For protozoan infections, see 614.53; amoebic dysentery, 614.516; zoonogenous diseases, 614.56*  
  
.56 Zoonogenous diseases  
*For protozoan infections, see 614.53; yellow fever, 614.541*  
  
.561 Anthrax (Charbon)  
Woolsorters' disease, splenic fever  
  
.562 Trichinosis  
.563 Rabies (Hydrophobia)



### *Decimal Classification*

- 614.564      Glanders (Equinia)
  - Including farcy
- .565      Undulant fever (Brucellosis)
- .566      Parrot fever (Psittacosis)
- 614.58-614.59 Noncommunicable diseases
- .58      Mental hygiene [*formerly* 131.3]
  - Measures to preserve mental health and prevent mental illness
- .582      Factors affecting mental health
- .582 2      Mental factors
  - Anxiety, fear, insecurity
- .582 3      Physical factors
  - Fatigue, illness, disablement
- .582 4      Social and environmental factors
  - Housing, neighborhoods, war, personal relationships
- 
- 614.583-614.585 Programs for specific groups
- .583      Programs for specific age groups
  - .583 2      Infants
  - .583 3      Children
  - .583 4      Adolescents
  - .583 5      Mature adults
  - .583 6      Middle-aged and aged
- .584      Programs for specific occupational groups
  - Divide like 920.1-928.9, e.g., mental health p  
        teachers 614.584 37
- .585      Programs on basis of marital status
  - .585 2      Married people
  - .585 3      Parents
    - .585 32      Fathers
    - .585 33      Mothers

# *Medical sciences*

- 614.585 4 Bachelors
  - .585 5 Spinsters \*
  - .589 Geographical treatment
    - Add area notations 1-9 to 614.589
  - .59 Other noncommunicable diseases
  - .591-.598 Diseases of regions, systems, organs
    - Divide like 616.1-616.8, e.g., prevention and control of heart disease 614.591 2
    - For mental hygiene, see 614.58; cancer, 614.599 9
  - .599 Other programs
  - .599 2 Maternal and infant welfare
  - .599 6 Dentistry
    - Including fluoridation of water supply [formerly 614.772]
  - .599 7 Ophthalmology
  - .599 8 Otology
  - .599 9 Cancer
  - .6 Disposal of the dead
  - .61 Interment and cemeteries
  - .62 Cremation and crematories
  - .63 Transportation of the dead
  - .64 Embalming, undertaking, post-mortem plastic surgery
  - .68 Morgues
  - .7 Sanitation and environmental comfort
- 
- 614.71-614.77 Sanitary control of air and ground
- Prevention and correction of pollution thru regulation
  - .71 Air pollution
  - .712 By smoke, fumes, gases
    - Contamination by particulates in suspension and their atmospheric combination, e.g., smog
  - .715 By radioactive substances
  - .716 By microbes

## *Decimal Classification*

- 614.76      **Wastes and offensive materials**
  - Regulation of sewage and garbage disposal, dumps and dumping, storage and transportation of malodorous materials
- .77      **Soil and water pollution**
- .772      **Water and water supply**
  - Class fluoridation [*formerly* 614.772] in 614.599 6
- .776      **Soil**
- .78      **Noise control**
- .79      **Public buildings and assembly places**
  - Sanitary regulation of operations, operating personnel, maintenance of premises and equipment
- .791      **Eating places**
  - Restaurants, lunchrooms, milk bars, cafeterias, roadside stands
- .792      **Dwelling places**
  - Hotels, inns, motels, tourist houses, boarding houses
- .794      **Public comfort stations**
- .796      **Swimming pools and bathing beaches**
- .797      **Barbershops and beauty shops**
- .799      **Public carriers**
- .8      **Accidents and their prevention**
  - Safety thru regulation, inspection, other protective measures
- .81      **By drowning**
- .82      **By gas suffocation**
- .83      **By machinery and hazardous materials**
- .831      **Flammable materials**
  - Gasolines, natural and synthetic gases, matches, other similar materials
- .832      **Explosives and fireworks**
- .836      **Electrical equipment and appliances**

*Medical sciences*

---

- 614.838 Machinery
- .839 Radioactive materials
- .84 By fire
- .841 Fire prevention
- .843 Fire extinction
  - For specific mediums of fire extinction, see 614.844-614.846*
- ▶ 614.844-614.846 Specific mediums of fire extinction
  - .844 Thru automatic sprinkling devices
  - .845 With chemical extinguishers
  - .846 With water
  - .847 Safety measures
    - Regulation of fire escapes, exits from public buildings, fire-resistant construction
    - For fire prevention, see 614.841*
  - .85 In industry [*formerly 331.823*]
  - .86 In traveling
    - .862 On highways
    - .863 On railroads and streetcars
    - .864 On water
    - .869 In the air and in space
  - .87 Under other conditions
  - .875 Catastrophic events of natural origin
    - Safety measures and rescue operations connected with hurricanes, tornadoes, earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, floods, snowstorms
  - .877 Sports activities
  - .88 First aid
    - Nonprofessional emergency treatment to accident victims before regular medical or surgical care can be given

**615 Therapeutics and pharmacology**

Class therapies applied to specific diseases in 616

**SUMMARY**

- 615.1 General pharmacology and materia medica
- .2 Mineral drugs
- .3 Organic drugs
- .4 Practical pharmacy
- .5 Therapeutics
- .6 Methods of medication
- .7 Pharmacodynamics
- .8 Physical and other therapies
- .9 Toxicology

---

**615.1–615.3 Pharmacology and pharmacy**

*For practical pharmacy, see 615.4; toxicology, 615.9*

- .1 **General pharmacology and materia medica**  
*For specific groups and kinds of pharmaceuticals, see 615.2–615.3*
- .11 Pharmacopeias  
*Add area notations 4–9 to 615.11*
- .12 Dispensatories  
*Add area notations 4–9 to 615.12*
- .13 Formularies (Collected prescriptions)  
*Add area notations 3–9 to 615.13*
- .14 Posology  
*Prescription writing, dosage determination, incompatibilities*
- .19 **Pharmaceutical chemistry**  
*Manufacture, preparation, analysis of drugs, medicinals, biological products*  
*Including comprehensive works on synthetic drugs [formerly 615.2]*  
*Use 615.190 01 – 615.190 09 for standard subdivisions*  
*Class specific groups and kinds of synthetic drugs in 615.2–615.3*

## *Medical sciences*

- 615.190 1            Analysis
- .190 15            Chemical analysis
- .190 18            Assay methods
- .191                Manufacture and preparation

### **615.2–615.3 Specific groups and kinds of pharmaceuticals**

Pharmaceutical chemistry and general therapeutics of naturally-occurring and synthetic products

Class physiological and therapeutic action of drugs in 615.7

#### **.2        Mineral drugs**

Divide like 546.2–546.7, e.g., calomel 615.266 3

If preferred, arrange specific mineral drugs alphabetically

Class comprehensive works on synthetic drugs [*formerly* 615.2] in 615.19

#### **Organic drugs**

Divide by kind and source as below

If preferred, arrange specific organic drugs alphabetically

#### **.31        Synthetic drugs**

Divide like 547.01–547.09, e.g., sulfonamides 615.316 7

Class synthetic vitamins in 615.328

#### **.32        Drugs of vegetable origin**

*For enzymes, see* 615.35

#### **.321       Pharmacognosy**

Crude drugs and simples, alkaloids, herbals

*For drugs derived from specific plants, see* 615.323–615.327

#### **.323–.327    Drugs derived from specific plants**

Divide like 583–587, e.g., digitalis 615.323 8

*For drugs derived from thallophytes, see* 615.329

#### **.328        Vitamins**

*For fish-liver oils, see* 615.34

*Decimal Classification*

- 615.329      Drugs derived from thallophytes  
                 Divide like 589, e.g., ergot 615.329 23
- .34      Fish-liver oils
- .35      Enzymes  
                 Pepsin, diastase, trypsin, chymotrypsin, papain
- .36      Drugs derived from organs of lower mammals  
                 Hormonal and endocrine drugs  
                 *For enzymes, see 615.35*
- .362      Thyroid and parathyroid extracts
- .363      Anterior pituitary hormones
- .364      Adrenal hormones  
                 ACTH, cortisone, adrenalin
- .365      Insulin
- .366      Sex hormones
- .367      Liver extracts
- .369      Extracts and secretions of other organs
- .37      Blood serums  
                 Drugs used to produce immunity
- .372      Vaccines, bacterins, sero-bacterins
- .373      Toxins and toxoids
- .375      Antitoxins, toxin-antitoxins, convalescent  
                 serums
- .39      Human blood products  
                 *For convalescent serums, see 615.375*
- .4      **Practical pharmacy**  
                 Preparing prescriptions and dispensing drugs
- .406 5      Business organizations  
                 Class economics of pharmacy [*formerly 615.406 5*] in  
                 338.47

## *Medical sciences*

- 615.42      **Solutions and extracts**
  - Decoctions, infusions, tinctures, elixirs, sirups, glycerites, collodions
- .43      Pills, capsules, tablets, troches, powders
- .45      Ointments and emulsions
- .49      Other preparations
- .5      **Therapeutics**
  - .53      Systems of medicine
    - .531      Allopathy
    - .532      Homeopathy
    - .533      Osteopathy
    - .534      Chiropractic
    - .535      Naturopathy
    - .537      Eclectic and botanic medicine
  - .54      Age and therapeutics
    - .542      Pediatric therapeutics
    - .547      Geriatric therapeutics
- .6      **Methods of medication**
  - .61      Oral medication
  - .62      Rectal medication
  - .63      Parenteral medication
    - Subcutaneous, intradermal, intramuscular, intravenous, intra-arterial injections
    - For blood and blood plasma transfusions, see 615.65*
  - .64      Inhalatory medication
  - .65      Blood and blood plasma transfusions
    - Use 615.650 01 – 615.650 09 for standard subdivisions
  - .650 7      Blood and blood plasma banks
  - .66      Medication thru serous and mucous membranes
  - .67      External medication
    - For hydrotherapy and balneotherapy, see 615.853*



## *Decimal Classification*

- 615.7      **Pharmacodynamics**
  - Physiological and therapeutic action of drugs
  - For toxicology, see 615.9*
- .71        **Drugs affecting cardiovascular system**
- .711       Heart stimulants
- .716       Heart depressants
- .718       Drugs affecting blood and blood-forming organs
- .72        **Drugs affecting respiratory system**
  - Expectorants, errhines, cough remedies
- .73        **Drugs affecting digestive system and metabolism**
- .731       Emetics
- .732       Cathartics, laxatives, purgatives
- .733       Anthelmintics
- .734       Digestants
- .735       Demulcents
- .739       Drugs affecting metabolism
- .74        **Drugs affecting secretion**
  - For diuretics and antidiuretics, see 615.761*
- .75        **Antipyretics (Febrifuges)**
- .76        **Drugs affecting urogenital system**
- .761       **Drugs affecting urinary system**
  - Diuretics and antidiuretics
- .766       **Drugs affecting reproductive system**
- .77        **Drugs affecting motor and integumentary systems**
- .778       **Skin**
  - Astringents, counterirritants, emollients, deodorants, antiseptics, disinfectants
- .779       **Nails and hair**



- 615.78      **Drugs affecting nervous system**
  - For antipyretics, see 615.75*
- .781      **Anesthetics**
- .782      **Hypnotics**
  - Nerve depressants, narcotics, sedatives
- .783      **Analgesics**
- .784      **Antispasmodics**
- .785      **Stimulants**
- .788      **Psychotropic drugs**
- .788 2      **Tranquilizers**
- .788 3      **Hallucinogenic drugs**
- .8      **Physical and other therapies**
- .82      **Therapeutic manipulations and exercises**
- .822      **Mechanotherapy**
- .824      **Medical gymnastics**
- .83      **Other physical therapies**
  - For hydrotherapy and balneotherapy, see 615.853;*  
*electrotherapy and radiotherapy, 615.84*
- .831      **Phototherapy**
- .831 4      **Heliotherapy**
- .831 5      **Ultraviolet-ray therapy**
- .831 9      **Other phototherapies**
- .832      **Thermotherapy**
- .832 2      **Infrared-ray therapy**
- .832 3      **Diathermy (Thermopenetration) [*formerly 615.845 3*]**
- .832 5      **Fever therapy**
- .832 9      **Cryotherapy (Hypothermia)**
- .834      **Climatotherapy**
- .836      **Aerotherapeutics**
  - Oxygen and carbon dioxide therapies, pneumatotherapy
- .837      **Music therapy**

### *Decimal Classification*

---

- 615.84      Electrotherapy and radiotherapy
- .842      Actinotherapy  
            *For phototherapy, see 615.831*
- .842 2      X-ray therapy
- .842 3      Radium therapy
- .842 4      Radioactive isotope therapy
- .845      Electrotherapy
- [.845 3]      Diathermy (Thermopenetration)  
                    Class in 615.832 3
- .85      Other therapies
- .851      Mental therapies  
            *For faith healing, see 615.852*
- .851 2      Suggestion therapy (Hypnotherapy)
- .851 5      Occupational and recreational therapies
- .851 6      Biblio- and educational therapies
- .852      Faith healing (Hierotherapy)
- .853      Hydrotherapy and balneotherapy
- .854      Dietotherapy and vitamin therapy
- .856      Spurious therapies  
            Quackery, e.g., Perkinism
- 
- 615.88–615.89 Empirical and historical remedies  
            *For pharmaceutical chemistry, see 615.19*
- .88      Home remedies
- .882      Folk medicine [*formerly* 615.89]
- .886      Patent medicines
- .89      Primitive, ancient, medieval remedies  
            Class folk medicine [*formerly* 615.89] in 615.882

*Medical sciences*

**615.9 Toxicology**

Source, composition, physiological effects, tests, antidotes of poisons

Use **615.900 1 – 615.900 9** for standard subdivisions

.902 Industrial toxicology

.907 Detection of poisons and poisoning

.91 Gaseous poisons

Asphyxiating and lethal gases

.92 Mineral (Inorganic) poisons

*For gaseous poisons, see 615.91*

.921 Acids

Class specific acids in **615.925**

.922 Alkalis

Class specific alkalis in **615.925**

[.923–.924] Nonmetallic poisons

Class in **615.925**

.925 Saline and specific mineral poisons

Metallic [*formerly 615.926–615.929*] and nonmetallic  
[*formerly 615.829–615.924*] poisons

Divide like **546.2–546.7**, e.g., mercurial poisons **615.925 663**

[.926–.929] Metallic poisons

Class in **615.925**

[.93] Vegetable poisons

Class in **615.952**

.94 Animal poisons

Class vegetable poisons [*formerly 615.94*] in **615.952**

.942 Venoms

Snake, scorpion, spider, bee, other venoms

.945 Poisonous food animals

Poisonous mussels, fish, mammalian organs

## *Decimal Classification*

- 615.95      **Organic poisons**  
Divide by kind as below  
If preferred, arrange alphabetically  
*For gaseous poisons, see 615.91; animal poisons, 615.94*
- .951          **Synthetic and manufactured poisons**  
Divide like 547.01–547.09, e.g., ethers 547.951 35
- .952          **Vegetable [*formerly* 615.93, 615.94] and  
vegetable-derived poisons**  
Divide like 583–589, e.g., opium 615.952 312
- 616          **Medicine**
- Use 610.1–610.9 for standard subdivisions  
*For specialized medicine, see 617–618*
- .01          **Medical microbiology**  
Pathogenic microorganisms and their relation to disease
- .014          **Bacteria**  
Divide like 589.9, e.g., Enterobacteriaceae 616.014 5
- .015          **Fungi**
- .016          **Protozoa**
- .019          **Ultramicrobes**
- .019 2          **Rickettsiae**
- .019 4          **Viruses**
- .02          **Special texts**  
*For psychosomatic medicine, see 616.08*
- .024          **Domestic medicine**  
Treatment of minor ailments without direction of physician
- .026          **Clinical and internal medicine**

## *Medical sciences*

- 616.07      Pathology  
                Pathological physiology and anatomy
- .072          Symptomatology (Semiology)  
                Manifestation of diseases  
                Aches and pains, fevers, infections, necrosis (gangrene),  
                atrophies, hypertrophies, edemas  
                *For interpretation of symptoms, see 616.075*
- .075          Diagnoses  
                Interpretation of symptoms  
                Including differential diagnosis
- .075 4        Physical diagnosis
- .075 5        Clinical diagnosis
- 
- 616.075 6 – 616.075 9    Laboratory diagnosis
- .075 6        Chemical diagnosis
- .075 61       Blood analysis
- .075 63       Analysis of gastroenteric contents
- .075 66       Urinalysis
- .075 7        Radioscopic diagnosis
- .075 72       X-ray and fluoroscopic examinations
- .075 75       Radioisotope scanning
- .075 8        Microscopy in diagnosis
- .075 81       Bacteriological examinations
- .075 82       Cytological examinations
- .075 83       Histological examinations
- For autopsies, see 616.075 9*
- .075 9        Autopsies (Post-mortem examinations)
- .08          Psychosomatic medicine
- [.09]        Historical and geographical treatment  
                Do not use; class in 610.9
- .092        Case histories

## *Decimal Classification*

### **616.1–616.9 Specific diseases**

Add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 001–009** Standard subdivisions
- 01–02** Microbiology and special texts  
Divide like **616.01–616.02**, e.g., domestic medicine  
**024**
- 06** Specific therapies
- 061** Chemotherapy
- 062–069** Other therapies  
Divide like **615.82–615.89**, e.g., X-ray therapy  
**064 22**
- 07–09** Other general aspects  
Divide like **616.07–616.09**, e.g., case histories **092**

### **SUMMARY**

- 616.1** Diseases of cardiovascular system
- .2** Diseases of respiratory system
- .3** Diseases of digestive tract
- .4** Diseases of blood-forming, lymphatic, endocrine systems
- .5** Diseases of integument, hair, nails (Dermatology)
- .6** Diseases of urogenital system
- .7** Diseases of musculoskeletal system
- .8** Diseases of nervous system (Neurology and psychiatry)
- .9** Other diseases

- **616.1–616.8 Diseases of specific systems and organs**  
*For malignant neoplasms, see 616.994; tuberculosis, 616.995*

### **616.1 \*Diseases of cardiovascular system**

### **SUMMARY**

- 616.11** Of cardiac membranes
- .12** Of heart
- .13** Of blood vessels
- .14** Of veins and capillaries
- .15** Of blood
- .11** \*Of cardiac membranes
- .12** \*Of heart  
Acquired and congenital heart diseases
- .122** \*Angina pectoris

\* Add as instructed under **616.1–616.9**

## *Medical sciences*

- 616.123      \*Coronary occlusion and failure
- .124      \*Myocarditis
- .125      \*Valvular diseases
  - Diseases of the mitral, tricuspid, pulmonary valves
- .126      \*Necrosis and other degenerative diseases
- .127      \*Rheumatic heart diseases
- .128      \*Arrhythmia
- .13       \*Of blood vessels
  - For diseases of veins and capillaries, see 616.14*
- .131      \*Peripheral vascular diseases
  - For cerebral vascular diseases, see 616.81*
- .132      \*Hypertension
  - Arterial and essential hypertension
  - Class arteriosclerosis [*formerly 616.132*] in 616.136
- .133      \*Arterial aneurysms
- .135      \*Arterial embolisms and thromboses
- .136      \*Arteriosclerosis [*formerly 616.132*]
- .14       \*Of veins and capillaries
- .142      \*Phlebitis and thrombophlebitis
- .143      \*Varicose veins (Varix)
- .145      \*Venous embolisms and thromboses
- .148      \*Telangiectasis, telangitis, other capillary diseases
- .15       \*Of blood
  - Divide by kind as below
  - If preferred, arrange alphabetically by disease
  - For bacterial blood diseases, see 616.94*
- .152      \*Anemias
- .153      \*Polycythemias

\* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9



## Decimal Classification

---

- 616.154      \*Agranulocytoses
- .155      \*Leukemias
- If preferred, class in 616.994
- .156      \*Reticuloses
- .157      \*Hemorrhagic diseases
- .159      Other
- .2        Diseases of respiratory system
- Use 616.200 1 – 616.200 9 for standard subdivisions
- .201      \*Croup
- .202      \*Hay fever
- .203      \*Influenzas
- .204      \*Whooping cough (Pertussis)
- .205      \*Common cold (Coryza, rhinitis)
- .21        \*Otorhinolaryngology
- Comprehensive works on diseases of ear, eye, nose, larynx
- For otology, see 617.81–617.88; ophthalmology, 617.7;
- laryngology, 616.22
- .212      \*Rhinology
- Diseases of nose, nasopharynx, accessory sinuses
- For common cold, see 616.205
- .22        \*Laryngology
- Diseases of larynx, glottis, vocal cords, epiglottis
- .23        \*Diseases of trachea and bronchi
- Trachitis, bronchitis, bronchiectasis
- For bronchopneumonia, see 616.241
- .24        \*Diseases of lungs
- .241      \*Pneumonias
- Lobar, broncho-, pleural, lipoid, virus pneumonias
- For necropneumonia, see 616.245

\* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- 616.244      **\*Pneumoconiosis**  
                    Silicosis, cholicosis, pulmonary abscesses
- .245          **\*Necropneumonia**
- .246          **\*Pulmonary tuberculosis**  
                    If preferred, class in 616.995
- .248          **\*Emphysema**
- .25          **\*Diseases of pleura**  
                    For pleural pneumonia, see 616.241
- .27          **\*Diseases of mediastinum**
- .3          **\*Diseases of digestive tract**

### SUMMARY

- 616.31      Of mouth and throat
- .32          Of pharynx and esophagus
- .33          Of stomach
- .34          Of intestines
- .35          Of rectum and anus (Proctology)
- .36          Of biliary tract
- .37          Of pancreas
- .38          Of peritoneum
- .39          Nutritional and metabolic diseases
- .31          **\*Of mouth and throat**  
                    For laryngology, see 616.22; dentistry, 617.6; diseases of  
                    pharynx, 616.32
- .312          **\*Trench mouth (Vincent's angina)**
- .313          **\*Mumps (Epidemic parotitis)**
- .314          **\*Diseases of tonsils**
- .32          **\*Of pharynx and esophagus**
- .33          **\*Of stomach**
- .332          **\*Functional disorders**  
                    Dyspepsia, disorders of secretion, gastric indigestion
- .333          **\*Gastritis**
- .334          **\*Gastric ulcers**

\* Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9

## *Decimal Classification*

- 616.339      \*Other diseases
  - Merycism, gastroenteritis, gastrotosis, other disorders
- .34      \*Of intestines
- .342      \*Functional disorders
  - Diarrhea, constipation, obstructions
- .343      \*Peptic ulcers
  - For gastric ulcers, see 616.334*
- .343 3      \*Duodenal ulcers
- .343 4      \*Gastrojejunal ulcers
- .344      \*Enteritis
  - Ileitis, colitis, Crohn's disease, duodenitis, jejunitis
- .35      \*Of rectum and anus (Proctology)
- .36      \*Of biliary tract
- .362      \*Liver disorders
- .362 3      \*Hepatitis
- .362 4      \*Cirrhosis
- .362 5      \*Hepatic jaundice
- .365      \*Gall bladder and bile duct disorders
- .37      \*Of pancreas
  - For diabetes mellitus, see 616.462*
- .38      \*Of peritoneum
- .39      \*Nutritional and metabolic diseases
  - For endocrinology, see 616.43–616.48*
- 616.392–616.396      Deficiency diseases
- .392      \*Beriberi
- .393      \*Pellagra
- .394      \*Scurvy
- .395      \*Rickets

\* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

## *Medical sciences*

- 616.396      Other deficiency diseases and states
  - Emaciation, fatty degeneration
  - For multiple deficiency states, see 616.399*
- .398      \*Obesity
  - Nutritional and endocrinal obesity
- .399      Other nutritional and metabolic diseases
  - Gout, multiple deficiency states
- .4      \*Diseases of blood-forming, lymphatic, endocrine systems
- .41      \*Of blood-forming system
  - Spleen and bone marrow disorders
  - For anemias, see 616.152*
- .42      \*Of lymphatic system
  - Hodgkin's disease, lymphatitis, lymphomatosis
  - If preferred, class Hodgkin's disease in 616.994
- ▶      616.43–616.48 Of endocrine system (Endocrinology)
  - For gynecology, see 618.1, diseases of urogenital system, 616.6; obesity, 616.398*
- .43      \*Of thymus gland
- .44      \*Of thyroid and parathyroid glands
- .442      \*Goiter
- .443      \*Hyperthyroidism
- .444      \*Hypothyroidism
- .445      \*Hyperparathyroidism and hypoparathyroidism
- .45      \*Of adrenal glands
  - Hyperadrenalism, hypoadrenalism, Addison's disease
- .46      \*Of pancreatic internal secretion (Of islands of Langerhans)
- .462      \*Diabetes mellitus
- .466      \*Hypoglycemia

† Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

### *Decimal Classification*

- 616.47      **\*Of pituitary glands**
  - Acromegaly, gigantism, dwarfism, Simmonds' disease
- .48          **Of other glands**
  - Hyperpinealism, polyglandular disorders
- .49          **\*Of breast**
  - Class diseases of female breast in 618.19
- .5          **\*Diseases of integument, hair, nails (Dermatology)**
- .51          **\*Papular eruptions (Urticaria)**
  - For allergies, see 616.97*
- .52          **\*Vesicular and pustular eruptions**
- .521          **\*Eczema (Herpes)**
- .522          **\*Shingles (Herpes zoster)**
- .523          **\*Boils and carbuncles (Furuncles)**
- .524          **\*Impetigo**
- .526          **\*Psoriasis**
- .53          **\*Diseases of sebaceous glands**
  - Acne, blackheads, wens, seborrhea
- .54          **\*Skin hypertrophies, scalp diseases, related disorders**
  - For pigmentary changes, see 616.55*
- .544          **\*Skin hypertrophies**
  - Corns, callosities, warts (verrucae), kerotosis, ichthyosis, scleroderma, xeroderma
- .545          **\*Skin ulcerations**
  - Trophic, decubitus, indolent, phagedenic ulcers
- .546          **\*Diseases of scalp, hair and hair follicles**
  - Baldness (alopecia), hair whiteness (leucotrichia), excessive hairiness (hypertrichosis)
- .547          **\*Diseases of the nails**

<sup>1</sup> Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

*Medical sciences*

- 616.55      **\*Pigmentary changes**  
                 Albinism, nevi, moles
- .56          **\*Diseases of sweat glands**  
                 Heat rash, prickly heat, anhidrosis
- .57          **\*Parasitic skin diseases**
- .58          **Other skin disorders**  
                 Chilblains, frostbite, chapping
- .6          **\*Diseases of urogenital system**  
                 *For gynecology, see 618.1*
- 616.61–616.63 Urology
- .61          **\*Of kidneys and ureters**
- .612          **\*Bright's disease (Nephritis)**
- .613          **\*Pyelitis, pyelocystitis, pyelonephritis**
- .62          **\*Of bladder and urethra**  
                 *For diseases of male urethra, see 616.64*
- .622          **\*Kidney stones (Urinary calculi)**  
                 Renal and vesical calculi
- .623          **\*Cystitis**
- .624          **\*Urethritis**
- .63          **\*Urinary manifestations**
- .633          **\*Pyuria**
- .635          **\*Uremia**

---

616.64–616.69 Diseases of male genital organs

- .64          **\*Of male urethra**
- .65          **\*Of prostate**
- .66          **\*Of penis**
- .67          **\*Of scrotum**
- .68          **\*Of testicles and accessory organs**

\* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

### *Decimal Classification*

- 616.69      **\*Functional disorders of male genital organs**
- .692      **\*Impotence and sterility**
- .693      **\*Climacteric disorders**
- .699      **Other functional disorders**
- 
- .7          **\*Diseases of musculoskeletal system**
- .71          **\*Of bones**
  - For diseases of spine, see 616.73; rickets, 616.395*
- .712          **\*Osteitis**
  - Osteitis deformans, osteochondritis, periostitis*
- .715          **\*Osteomyelitis**
- .72          **\*Of joints**
  - Hypertropic and rheumatoid arthritis*
  - For gout, see 616.399*
- .73          **\*Of spine**
- .74          **\*Of muscles**
- .742          **\*Muscular rheumatism**
  - For rheumatic fever, see 616.991*
- .743          **\*Myositis**
- .744          **\*Myasthenia gravis**
- .748          **\*Progressive muscular dystrophy**
- .749          **Other muscular atrophies**
- .75          **\*Of tendons and fasciae**
- .76          **\*Of bursae and sheaths of tendons**
- .77          **\*Of connective tissue (Collagen diseases)**
- 
- .8          **Diseases of nervous system (Neurology and psychiatry)**
  - Use 616.800 1 – 616.800 9 for standard subdivisions*
- .801–.809      **Standard subdivisions of neurology**

\* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

SUMMARY

616.81-.84	Neurology
.85-.86	Psychoneuroses
.87	Diseases of cranial and spinal nerves
.88	Diseases of autonomic system
.89	Psychiatry

---

616.81-616.84 Neurology

*For diseases of cranial and spinal nerves, see 616.87; of autonomic nervous system, 616.88*

- 616.81      \*Cerebrovascular diseases  
                 Cerebral hemorrhages, aneurysms, embolisms, thromboses
- .82          \*Meningeal diseases
- .83          Other organic diseases of central nervous system  
                 *For chorea, see 616.851; epilepsy, 616.853; senile dementias, 616.898 3*
- .832        \*Encephalitis
- .833        \*Parkinson's disease (Paralysis agitans)
- .834        \*Multiple sclerosis
- .835        \*Poliomyelitis
- .836        \*Cerebral palsy
- .837        \*Paraplegia
- .838        \*Locomotor ataxia (Tabes dorsalis)
- .84          Symptoms of neurological diseases
- .841        Dizziness (Vertigo)
- .842        Paralysis
- [.843]      Asthenic reactions  
                 Class in 616.852 8
- .844        Spinal irritation
- .845        Convulsions
- .849        Other symptoms  
                 Enuresis, pain, coma, reflex and sleep disturbances

\* Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9



## *Decimal Classification*



### 616.85–616.86 Psychoneuroses

Class comprehensive works in **616.85**

#### 616.85      \*General works

.851          Chorea

.852          \*Hysteria and related disorders

*For speech and language disorders, see 616.855*

.852 1        \*War neuroses (Combat fatigue)

.852 2        \*Obsessive-compulsive neuroses

Phobias and anxiety neuroses

.852 3        \*Dissociative reactions

Amnesias, fugues, multiple personalities

.852 8        \*Asthenic reactions [*formerly* 616.843]

Chronic fatigue and depression, formerly known as  
neurasthenia

.853          \*Epilepsy

.855          \*Speech and language disorders

.855 2        \*Neurological language disorders (Aphasias)

Diminution or loss of faculty of language in any of its  
forms due to cerebral lesions, e.g., agraphia, agnosia,  
apraxia

.855 4        \*Psychoneurotic speech disorders

Stammering and stuttering

.856          \*Cutaneous sensory disorders

Anesthesia, paresthesia, hypesthesia, hyperesthesia

.857          \*Migraine

.858          Disorders of personality, character, intellect

.858 2        \*Psychopathic and immature personalities

• Add as instructed under **616.1–616.9**

►	616.858 3 – 616.858 4	Character neuroses
616.858 3		Sexual aberrations, manias, perversions
.858 32		Frigidity and impotence
.858 33		Nymphomania and satyromania
.858 34		Homosexuality
.858 35		Sadism and masochism
.858 39		Other disorders
.858 4		Other character neuroses
.858 42		Kleptomania
.858 43		Pyromania
.858 44		Homicidal and suicidal compulsions
.858 45		Compulsive lying and defrauding
.858 8		Mental deficiency
		Feeble-mindedness and mental retardation
.858 82		In terms of measurable intellect
.858 822		Idiots
.858 823		Imbeciles
.858 824		Morons
.858 825		Borderline feeble-minded
.858 84		In terms of deformity, injury, disease
.858 842		Mongolism
.858 843		Hydrocephalism
.858 844		Microcephalism
.858 845		Amaurotic idiocy
.858 848		Cretinism and myxedemism
.86	*Psychoneurotic	addictions and intoxications
.861	*Alcoholism	
.862	*Metallic	intoxication
.863–.865	Other	addictions

Divide like 613.83–613.85, e.g., narcotics addiction 616.863

' Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

## *Decimal Classification*

- 616.87      **\*Diseases of cranial and spinal nerves**
  - Neuritis and neuralgias, e.g., polyneuritis, sciatica, neuritis of peripheral nerves, trigeminal and glossopharyngeal neuralgias
  - For herpes zoster, see 616.522*
- .88      **\*Diseases of autonomic (sympathetic and parasympathetic) system**
- .89      **\*Psychiatry**
  - Functional diseases (psychoses) of nervous system
  - For psychoneuroses, see 616.85; puerperal psychoses, 618.76*
- .890 073      Psychiatric nursing
  - (Optional; prefer 610.736 8)
- [.890 6]      Specific therapies
  - Do not use; class in 616.891
- .891      Specific therapies
  - For psychosurgery, see 617.481*
- .891 2      Shock therapy
- .891 3      Physical therapies
- .891 5      Group therapy and psychodrama
- .891 6      Mental therapies
  - Divide like 615.851, e.g., bibliotherapy 616.891 66
- .891 7      Psychoanalysis [*formerly* 131.34]
- .891 8      Chemotherapy
- 616.892–616.898 Specific psychoses
- .892      **\*General paresis (Neurosyphilis)**
- .895      **\*Manic-depressive psychoses**
  - Neurotic-depressive reactions, manic and circular types, involutional psychoses
- .897      **\*Paranoia and paranoid conditions**
- .898      Schizophrenia and senile dementias
  - .898 2      **\*Schizophrenia (Dementia praecox)**
  - .898 3      **\*Senile dementias**

**\* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9**

*Medical sciences*

**616.9 Other diseases**

Use **616.900 1 – 616.900 9** for standard subdivisions

- 616.901–616.909 Standard subdivisions of communicable diseases
- .901–.906 Philosophy, miscellany, dictionaries, serial publications, organizations
- .907 Study and teaching
- .907 3 Communicable disease nursing  
(Optional; prefer **610.736 9**)
- .908–.909 Other standard subdivisions

**SUMMARY**

- 616.91 Eruptive fevers (Exanthemata)**
- .92 Bacterial, viral and rickettsial diseases
- .93 Bacillary intoxications, enteric and protozoan infections
- .94 Bacterial blood diseases
- .95 Venereal and zoonotic diseases
- .96 Parasitic diseases (Medical parasitology)
- .97 Allergies and anaphylaxis
- .98 Diseases due to physical and climatic conditions
- .99 Other diseases

**616.91–616.96 Communicable diseases**

Class communicable diseases predominantly affecting a specific part of the body with the part affected, e.g., mumps **616.313**

*For leprosy, see 616.998*

- .91 \*Eruptive fevers (Exanthemata)
- .912 \*Smallpox (Variola major)
- .913 \*Attenuated forms of smallpox  
Human vaccinia ("cowpox"), parasmallpox (alastrim, amaas), Cuban itch, Kaffir milkpox
- .914 \*Chickenpox (Varicella)
- .915 \*Measles (Rubeola)
- .916 \*German measles (Rubella)
- .917 \*Scarlet fever (Scarlatina)

<sup>1</sup> Add as instructed under **616.1–616.9**

### *Decimal Classification*

- 616.92      **\*Bacterial, viral and rickettsial diseases**  
              *For bacterial blood diseases, see 616.94*
- .921        **\*Dengue fever**
- .922        **\*Rickettsial infections**
- .922 2      **\*Typhus group**  
              Classic epidemic (louse-borne) typhus, murine (flea-borne) typhus, Brill's disease
- .922 3      **\*Spotted-fever group**  
              Rickettsialpox, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, boutonneuse fever, other tick-bite spotted fevers
- .922 4      **\*Scrub typhus (Tsutsugamushi disease)**  
              Japanese river fever
- .922 5      **\*Q fever**
- .922 6      **Other rickettsial infections**  
              Trench fever, Bullis fever, North Queensland tick typhus
- .923        **\*Pasteurella infections**
- .923 2      **\*Bubonic plague**
- .923 9      **\*Tularemia**
- .924        **\*Tick-borne viral infections**  
              *For lymphocytic choriomeningitis, see 616.925*
- .924 2      **\*Tick fever (Colorado tick fever)**  
              American mountain fever, nonexanthematous tick fever
- .924 4      **\*Relapsing fevers**  
              Including bacterial and spirochetal relapsing fevers
- .925        **\*Lymphocytic choriomeningitis**
- .926        **\*Fevers**  
              *For a specific fever, see the subject, e.g., scarlet fever 616.917*

\* Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9

- 616.927      **\*Eberthella and salmonella infections**
- .927 2      **\*Typhoid fever (Enteric fever)**
- .927 4      **\*Paratyphoid fever**
- .927 9      Other salmonella infections
- .928      **\*Yellow fever**
  
- .93      Bacillary intoxications, enteric and protozoan infections
- .931      **\*Bacillary intoxications**
- .931 3      **\*Diphtheria**
- .931 5      **\*Botulism**
- .931 8      **\*Lockjaw (Tetanus)**
  
- 
- ▶              616.932–616.935 Enteric infections
- For typhoid fever, see 616.927 2*
- .932      **\*Asian cholera**
- Pestilential cholera
  
- .933      **\*European cholera**
- Sporadic cholera and cholera morbus
  
- .935      **\*Dysenteries**
- .935 3      **\*Amoebic dysentery (Amoebiasis)**
- .935 5      **\*Bacillary dysentery (Shigella infections)**
  
- .936      **\*Protozoan infections**
- For amoebic dysentery, see 616.935 3*
  
- .936 2      **\*Malarial fevers**
- .936 3      **\*Trypanosomiasis**
- Gambian and Rhodesian trypanosomiasis, Chagas' disease, African sleeping sickness
  
- .936 4      **\*Leishmaniasis**
- Visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar), cutaneous leishmaniasis (oriental sores), mucocutaneous leishmaniasis (forest yaws)

\* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

## *Decimal Classification*

- 616.94        **\*Bacterial blood diseases**
- .942        **\*Erysipelas**
- .944        **\*Septicemia and pyemia**
- .95        **Venereal and zoogenous diseases**  
                 *For lockjaw, see 616.931 8; tularemia, 616.923 9*
- .951        **\*Venereal diseases**
- .951 3       **\*Syphilis**  
                 *For neurosyphilis, see 616.892*
- .951 5       **\*Gonorrhea [formerly 616.952]**
- .951 8       **Other venereal diseases [formerly 616.952 3]**  
                 Chancroid, lymphadenoma inguinale, lymphogranuloma  
                 venereum
- [.952]        **Gonorrhea**  
                 Class in **616.951 5**
- [.952 3]       **Other venereal diseases**  
                 Class in **616.951 8**
- .953        **\*Rabies (Hydrophobia)**
- .954        **\*Glanders (Equinia)**
- .956        **\*Anthrax (Charbon)**  
                 Woolsorters' disease, splenic fever
- .957        **\*Undulant fever (Brucellosis)**
- .958        **\*Parrot fever (Psittacosis)**
- .96        **\*Parasitic diseases (Medical parasitology)**  
                 *For parasitic skin diseases, see 616.57; protozoan infections,*  
                 **616.936**
- .962        **\*Diseases due to endoparasites**  
                 *For diseases due to worms, see 616.963–616.965*

**\* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9**

## *Medical sciences*

616.963–616.965 Diseases due to worms  
(Helminthology)

- 616.963      \*Diseases due to flukes (Trematoda)  
                 Schistosomiasis, bilharziasis, distomatosis
- .964      \*Diseases due to tapeworms (Cestoda)  
                 Tapeworm infestations, hyatid diseases (echinococcosis)
- .965      \*Diseases due to roundworms (Nematoda)
- .965 2      \*To filariae  
                 Filariasis, elephantiasis, wuchereriasis, onchocerciasis
- .965 4      To other nematodes  
                 Trichinosis, enterobiasis, ascariasis, hookworm  
                 infestations
- .968      \*Diseases due to ectoparasites (Medical entomology)  
                 *For a specific entomological disease, see the disease, e.g.,  
                 Colorado tick fever 616.924 2*
- .969      \*Diseases due to fungi (Medical mycology)
- 616.97–616.99 Other general diseases
- .97      \*Allergies and anaphylaxis  
                 *For hay fever, see 616.202*
- .973      \*Contact allergies
- .975      \*Food and drug allergies
- .977      \*Physical allergies  
                 Supersensitivity to physical agents, e.g., heat, sunlight, cold,  
                 humidity
- .98      Diseases due to physical and climatic conditions  
                 Use 616.980 01 – 616.980 09 for standard subdivisions  
                 Class treatment of a specific disease with the subject
- .980 2      Medical aspects of specialized services
- .980 21      Aerospace medicine
- .980 213      Aviation medicine
- .980 214      Space medicine

\* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9



### *Decimal Classification*

- 616.980 22 Submarine medicine  
.980 23 Military medicine  
.980 24 Naval medicine  
.988 Medical climatology and meteorology  
Divide like area notation 1, e.g., tropical diseases **616.988 3**
- .989 Diseases due to physical conditions  
.989 2 \*To motion  
.989 3 \*To altitude  
.989 4 \*To compression and decompression  
.989 7 \*To radioactivity  
.99 Other diseases  
.991 \*Rheumatic fever  
*For muscular rheumatism, see 616.742*
- .992 \*Neoplasms and neoplastic diseases (Oncology)  
*For specific kinds of neoplasms, see 616.993–616.994*
- 616.993–616.994 Specific kinds of neoplasms  
.993 \*Benign neoplasms  
.994 \*Malignant neoplasms  
Medical, radiological, surgical treatment of cancers, carcinomas, sarcomas  
(Optional: leukemias and Hodgkin's disease; prefer **616.155** and **616.42** respectively)  
Divide like **611.1–611.9**, e.g., cancer of the stomach **616.994 33**
- .995 \*Tuberculosis  
(Optional: pulmonary tuberculosis; prefer **616.246**)  
Divide like **611.1–611.9**, e.g., tuberculosis of the bones **616.995 71**
- .998 \*Leprosy (Hansen's disease)  
' Add as instructed under **616.1–616.9**



## **617–618 Specialized medicine**

*For malignant neoplasms, see 616.994*

### **617 . Surgery**

Treatment of disease by manual and instrumental operations

Use **617.001–617.008** for standard subdivisions

- .01       Complications and sequelae
- .02       Special texts
- .024       Minor surgery
- .025       Major surgery
- .026       Emergency surgery
- .07       Surgical pathology
- .072       Symptomatology (Semiology)  
*For interpretation of symptoms, see 617.075*
- .073       Surgical nursing  
(Optional; prefer **610.736 77**)
- .075       Diagnoses  
          Interpretation of symptoms  
          Divide like **616.075**, e.g., X-ray diagnosis **617.075 7**
- .09       Historical and geographical treatment



---

### **617.1–617.9 Systematic surgery**

Add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

**001–008**       Standard subdivisions

**01–09**       General aspects

Divide like **617.01–617.09**, e.g., emergency surgery **026**

SUMMARY

- 617.1      Wounds and injuries
  - .2      Results of injuries
  - .3      Orthopedic surgery
  - .4      Surgical operations by systems
  - .5      Regional surgery
  - .6      Dentistry
  - .7      Ophthalmology
  - .8      Otology and audiology
  - .9      Techniques and other surgical specialties
- 617.1      Wounds and injuries
  - Use 617.100 1 – 617.100 9 for standard subdivisions
  - .102      Special texts
  - .102 7      Athletic wounds and injuries
  - .102 8      Crash wounds and injuries
    - Injuries resulting from traffic accidents
  - .11      \*Burns and scalds
    - For high-energy injuries, see 617.12*
  - .12      \*High-energy injuries
  - .122      \*From electricity
  - .124      \*From ionizing radiation
  - .13      \*Abrasions and contusions
  - .14      \*Wounds
    - For abrasions and contusions, see 617.13*
  - .143      \*Lacerated, incised, punctured wounds
  - .145      \*Gunshot wounds
  - .146      \*Removal of foreign bodies from wounds
  - .15      Fractures
    - Divide like 611.71, e.g., fracture of the femur 617.158
  - .16      \*Dislocations
  - .17      \*Sprains and strains
  - .18      \*Asphyxiation
    - Choking, hanging, strangulation, suffocation, drowning

\* Add as instructed under 617.1–617.9

## *Medical sciences*

- 617.19      **\*Blast injuries**
- .2      **Results of injuries**
- .21      Traumatic and surgical shock
- .22      Inflammation, infection, fever
- .3      **\*Orthopedic surgery**
  - Correction of acquired and congenital deformities, and treatment of chronic diseases of skeletal system
  - Use 617.300 1 – 617.300 9 for standard subdivisions
  - Class chronic diseases of skeletal system in 617.47
  - For fractures, see 617.15*
- .307      Orthopedic appliances
- .37      **\*Deformities**
  - For deformities of the extremities, see 617.39*
- .371      **\*Head and neck**
- .374      **\*Chest**
- .375      **\*Spine**
- .376      **\*Hip and pelvis**
- .39      **\*Deformities of the extremities**
  - For amputations, see 617.57–617.58*
- .397      **\*Upper extremities**
- .398      **\*Lower extremities**
  - For podiatry, see 617.585*
- .4      **Surgical operations by systems**
  - For respiratory system, see 617.54*
- .41      **\*Cardiovascular system**
- .412      **\*Heart**
- .413      **\*Arteries**
- .414      **\*Veins**
- .43      **\*Digestive system**
  - For treatment of a specific organ, see the organ, e.g., of stomach 617.553*

<sup>1</sup> Add as instructed under 617.1–617.9

### Decimal Classification

---

- 617.44      \*Endocrine glands
  - For treatment of a specific gland, see the gland, e.g., thyroid gland 617.539 5*
- .46          \*Urogenital system
  - For gynecology and obstetrics, see 618.1–618.8*
- .461        \*Kidneys, suprarenal glands, ureters
- .462        \*Bladder and urethra
- .463        \*Male genital organs
- .47          \*Motor and integumentary systems
  - For amputations, see 617.57–617.58*
- .471        \*Bones
- .472        \*Joints
  - For treatment of jaws, see 617.522*
- .473        \*Muscles
- .474        \*Tendons
- .475        \*Bursae
- .477        \*Skin
  - For plastic surgery, see 617.95*
- .48          \*Nervous system
- .481        \*Brain
  - Neurosurgery, psychosurgery, topectomy
- .482        \*Spinal cord
- .483        \*Nerves

\* Add as instructed under 617.1–617.9

617.5 Regional surgery

SUMMARY

- 617.51 Head and neck
- .52 Face
- .53 Throat and neck
- .54 Thorax and respiratory system
- .55 Abdominal and pelvic cavities
- .57 Upper extremities
- .58 Lower extremities

.51 \*Head and neck

*For surgery of neck, see 617.539; of face, 617.52*

.514 \*Skull

Class skull fractures in 617.155

.52 \*Face

*For ophthalmology, see 617.7; otology, 617.81-617.88; plastic surgery, 617.95*

.522 \*Oral surgery

Treatment of lips, tongue, palate, jaws

*For dental surgery, see 617.64*

.523 \*Nose

Scope: comprehensive works on nose and throat [*formerly 617.53*]

*For throat, see 617.53*

.53 \*Throat and neck

Class comprehensive works on nose and throat [*formerly 617.53*] in 617.523

.532 \*Pharynx and tonsils

Including adenoidectomies

.533 \*Larynx, vocal cords, epiglottis, trachea

.539 \*Neck

.539 5 \*Thyroid and parathyroid glands

\* Add as instructed under 617.1-617.9

*Decimal Classification*

---

- 617.54      \*Thorax and respiratory system  
*For surgery of heart, see 617.412; of nose and throat, 617.523*
- .542      \*Lungs
- .543      \*Thoracic pleura
- .544      \*Bronchi
- .545      \*Mediastinum
- .546      \*Thymus gland
- .547      \*Diaphragm
- .548      \*Esophagus
- .549      \*Breast  
*Class surgery of the female breast in 618.19*
- .55      \*Abdominal and pelvic cavities  
*For urogenital system, see 617.46*
- .551      \*Spleen
- .553      \*Stomach and pylorus
- .554      \*Intestines
- .544 1      \*Small intestines  
*Duodenum, jejunum, ileum*
- .554 5      \*Cecum and vermiform appendix
- .554 7      \*Large intestines  
*Colon [formerly 617.554 8] and sigmoid flexure*  
*For cecum, see 617.554 5*
- [.554 8]      Colon  
*Class in 617.554 7*
- .555      \*Rectum, anus, perineum
- .556      \*Biliary tract  
*Liver, gall bladder, bile ducts*
- .557      \*Pancreas and islands of Langerhans
- \* Add as instructed under 617.1–617.9



617.558      \*Peritoneum  
                 Mesentery, omentum, coelum

.559      \*Abdominal hernias



---

617.57–617.58 Extremities

Amputations, excisions, restorative surgery, artificial limbs

*For fractures, see 617.15*

.57      \*Upper extremities

.58      \*Lower extremities

.582      \*Thigh and knee

.584      \*Leg and ankle

.585      \*Foot (Podiatry)

**.6      Dentistry**

Use 617.600 1 – 617.600 9 for standard subdivisions

.601      Oral hygiene and preventive dentistry

.601 8      Asepsis and antisepsis

.63      \*Dental diseases

.632      \*Of gums and tooth sockets (Periodontics)

Alveolar abscesses, pyorrhea, gingivitis, periodontitis

.634      \*Of tooth tissues

Diseases of dental pulp, dentine, cementum, enamel

*For cavities, see 617.67*



---

617.64–617.67 Dental surgery

.64      \*Dental surgery for young people

.643      \*Orthodontics

Treatment of disorders of occlusion and dentition

.645      \*Pedodontics

*For orthodontics, see 617.643*

.66      \*Extractions (Exodontics)

\* Add as instructed under 617.1–617.9



## *Decimal Classification*

- 617.67      **\*Cavities**
  - .672          Preparation and treatment
  - .675          Fillings and inlays
    - Amalgam, metallic, cement, porcelain, plastic fillings and inlays
  - .69          Prosthetic dentistry
  - .692          Dentures, crowns, bridges
  - .695          Materials
- .7      **\*Ophthalmology**
  - Treatment of ocular diseases and correction of refractive errors
- [.707]      Pathology
  - Do not use; class in 617.71
- .71      Pathology and surgery
  - Class pathology and surgery of a specific part of the eye with the part
- .712      **\*Loss of function**
  - Blindness and partial blindness
- .713      **\*Wounds and injuries**
- .719      **\*Diseases of cornea and sclera**
  - Use 617.719 001 – 617.719 009 for standard subdivisions
- .719 07      Eye banks
- .72      **\*Diseases of uvea**
  - Diseases of iris, choroid, ciliary body
- .73      **\*Diseases of retina and optic nerve**
- .74      **\*Diseases of eyeball**
  - For diseases of cornea and sclera, see 617.719*
- .741      **\*Glaucoma**
- .742      **\*Diseases of crystalline lens**
- .746      **\*Diseases of vitreous body**

**\* Add as instructed under 617.1–617.9**

- 617.75      Optometry
- .752      Optical work
  - Setting and adjusting lenses, mechanical work of opticians
- .752 2      Spectacles
- .752 3      Contact lenses

- 
- 617.755–617.759 Functional disorders of vision
  - .755      Disorders of refraction and accommodation
    - Myopia, hypermetropia, astigmatism, presbyopia
  - .756      Aniseikonia
  - .759      Color blindness
  - .76      Diseases of ocular muscular and lacrimal mechanisms
  - .762      \*Of ocular neuromuscular mechanism
    - Strabismus, binocular imbalance, diplopia
  - .762 2      Orthoptics
  - .764      \*Of lacrimal glands and ducts
  - .77      Diseases of conjunctiva and eyelids
  - .771      \*Of eyelids
  - .772      \*Trachoma
  - .773      Conjunctivitis other than trachoma
  - .78      \*Diseases of orbit
  - .79      Prosthetic ophthalmology
  - .8      \*Otology and audiology

- 
- 617.81–617.88 Otology
  - .81      \*Diseases of external ear
    - For diseases of specific parts of external ear, see 617.82–617.83*

- 
- 617.82–617.83 Diseases of specific parts of external ear
  - .82      \*Auricle
    - Class plastic surgery of external ear in 617.958 5
  - .83      \*Auditory canal

\* Add as instructed under 617.1–617.9

## Decimal Classification

- 617.84      \*Diseases of middle ear  
*For diseases of specific parts of middle ear, see 617.85-617.87*

- 
- ▶            617.85-617.87 Diseases of specific parts of middle ear
- .85          \*Tympanic membrane
- .86          \*Eustachian tubes
- .87          \*Mastoid processes
- .88          \*Diseases of internal ear  
             Diseases of cochlea, labyrinth, semicircular canals, vestibule
- .89          Audiology  
             Correction of impaired hearing thru fitting and adjusting  
             hearing devices
- .9          Techniques and other surgical specialties

- 
- ▶            617.91-617.96 Techniques
- .91          Operative surgery  
             Use 617.910 01 - 617.910 09 for standard subdivisions  
             *For anesthesiology, see 617.96*
- .910 1       Asepsis and antisepsis
- .917         Operating room
- .917 2       Preparation of operating room
- .917 8       Surgical instruments and apparatus  
             *For surgical dressings, see 617.93*
- .919         Preoperative and postoperative care
- .93          Surgical dressings
- .95          \*Plastic surgery (Cosmetic and restorative surgery)  
             Use 617.950 01 - 617.950 09 for standard subdivisions  
             Divide like 611.1-611.9, e.g., otoplasty 617.958 5
- .950 7       Tissue banks  
             *For eye banks, see 617.719 07*

\* Add as instructed under 617.1-617.9

## *Medical sciences*

### 617.96      **Anesthesiology**

Methods and techniques of inducing anesthesia, and management of accidents and complications resulting from it

Including anesthesiology in obstetrics [*formerly* 618.45, 618.895]

#### .962      **General anesthesia**

Inhalation, rectal, intravenous anesthetics

#### .964      **Regional anesthesia**

Spinal, saddle-block, caudal anesthetics

#### .966      **Local anesthesia**

### 617.97–617.99 **Surgical specialties**

*For surgery of a specific area, see the area, e.g., brain* 617.481

#### .97      **\*Geriatric surgery**

#### .98      **\*Pediatric surgery**

#### .99      **\*Military surgery**

## 618      **Other branches of specialized medicine**

Add to each subdivision identified by \* as instructed under 616.1–616.9

### 618.1–618.8 **Gynecology and obstetrics**

Medical and surgical treatment

#### **SUMMARY**

- 618.1      **Gynecology**
- .2      **Obstetrics**
- .3      **Diseases of pregnancy**
- .4      **Normal labor (Parturition)**
- .5      **Complicated labor (Dystocia)**
- .6      **Normal puerperium**
- .7      **Puerperal diseases**
- .8      **Obstetrical surgery**

\* Add as instructed under 617.1–617.9

## *Decimal Classification*

### **618.1      \*Gynecology**

Class malignant neoplasms of genital tract in **616.994 65**

.107 3              Gynecological nursing  
                         (Optional; prefer 610.736 7)

.11                \*Diseases of ovaries

.12                \*Diseases of Fallopian tubes

.13                \*Periuterine diseases

.14                \*Diseases of uterus and cervix

.142              \*Infections

Cervicitis, endometritis, pyometra

*For leucorrhea, see 618.173*

.143              \*Erosions

.144              \*Malformations

Atrophies, hypertrophies, prolapse of uterus

.145              Surgical therapeutics

.145 3             Hysterectomies

.145 8             Dilation and curettage

.15                \*Diseases of vagina

.16                \*Diseases of vulva

.17                \*Functional and systemic disorders

.172              \*Menstruation disorders

Amenorrhea, menorrhagia, dysmenorrhea, oligomenorrhea

.173              \*Leucorrhea

.175              \*Menopause disorders

.178              \*Sterility

Scope: comprehensive works on male and female sterility

*For male sterility, see 616.692*

.19                \*Diseases of breast

\* Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9

*Medical sciences*

**618.2      \*Obstetrics**

*For diseases, disorders, management of pregnancy, parturition, puerperium, see 618.3–618.8*

[.207 2]            Symptomatology  
                         Do not use; class in **618.22**

.207 3            Obstetrical nursing  
                         (Optional; prefer **610.736 78**)

[.207 5]            Diagnosis  
                         Do not use; class in **618.22**

.22            Symptomatology and diagnosis

.24            Prenatal care

.25            \*Multiple pregnancy

---

►            **618.3–618.8 Diseases, disorders, management of pregnancy, parturition, puerperium**

.3            \*Diseases of pregnancy

.31            Extrauterine pregnancy (Ectopic pregnancy)  
                         Tubal, ovarian, cervical, abdominal pregnancies

.32            Fetal abnormalities  
                         Fetal degeneration and calcification

.33            Abortion  
                         Delivery prior to the fourth month of pregnancy

.39            Prematurity

.392            Miscarriage  
                         Delivery during the fourth to sixth month of pregnancy

.397            Premature delivery  
                         Delivery after the sixth month and before full term

\* Add as instructed under **616.1–616.9**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 618.4      Normal labor ( Parturition )**
  - Mechanism and management of normal labor and childbirth
  - .42      Presentations
    - Position of fetal body during labor
  - .45      Painless childbirth
    - Induced amnesia, hypnotic and other psychological techniques, controlled relaxation
    - Class anesthesiology in obstetrics [*formerly 618.45*] in **617.96**
- .5      Complicated labor ( Dystocia )**
  - .51      Maternal dystocia
    - Difficult labor due to anomalies of expellant forces and mechanical obstructions
  - .53      Fetal dystocia
    - Difficult labor due to size of fetus
  - .54      Uterine hemorrhage
  - .56      Placental dystocia
  - .58      Complications from umbilical cord
- .6      Normal puerperium**
  - Postpartum management and care
- .7      \*Puerperal diseases**
  - .71      \*Diseases of lactation
  - .73      \*Puerperal metritis and peritonitis
  - .74      \*Puerperal septicemia and pyemia
  - .75      \*Puerperal eclampsia
  - .76      \*Puerperal psychoses
  - .77      \*Hemic disorders
  - .78      Other puerperal disorders
  - .79      Maternal death

\* Add as instructed under **616.1–616.9**

- 618.8      Obstetrical surgery**
- .82      Version and extraction
- .83      Embryotomy and craniotomy
- Mutilation of fetus to facilitate delivery when impossible by  
            natural means
- .85      Minor surgery
- Symphysiotomy, vaginoperineotomy, repair of lacerations of  
            genital tract
- .86      Caesarean section
- .87      Surgical removal of placenta
- .88      Therapeutic abortion
- For embryotomy and craniotomy, see 618.83*
- .89      Asepsis and antisepsis
- [.895]      Anesthesiology in obstetrics
- Class in 617.96
- .9          Patients by age groups**
- Class surgical treatment in 617.97–617.98
- .92      Pediatrics
- Use 618.920 001 – 618.920 009 for standard subdivisions
- .920 007 3      Pediatric nursing
- (Optional; prefer 610.736 2)
- .920 01–.920 09      General aspects
- Divide like 01–09 under 616.1–616.9, e.g., diagnoses  
                    618.920 075
- .920 1          Newborn infants (Neonates)
- .920 11          Premature infants
- Infants weighing less than 5½ pounds
- .920 12          Full-term infants



## *Decimal Classification*

---

618.921-.929      **Specific diseases**  
Divide like 616.1-616.9, e.g., cardiac diseases in children  
618.921 2

.97      **\*Geriatrics**  
General and specific diseases of the aged and their treatment

.970 73      Geriatric nursing  
(Optional; prefer 610.736 5)

### **619      Comparative and experimental medicine**

Study of diseases and their treatment in laboratory animals  
*For veterinary sciences, see 636.089*

.5      **Domestic fowl**

.7      **Dogs**

.8      **Cats**

.9      **Other mammals**

.93      **Rodents**  
Laboratory rats, mice, rabbits, hamsters

.98      **Primates**  
Monkeys and apes

**\* Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9**

## **620 Engineering, and allied operations and manufactures**

- 620.001–620.009 Standard subdivisions
- .001 Philosophy and theory
  - .002 Miscellany
    - .002 1 Tabulated and related materials
    - .002 12 Specifications [*formerly* 620.03], tables, formulas
    - .002 2 Illustrations
    - .002 22 Designs and drawings [*both formerly* 620.04], pictures, charts
    - .002 7 Inventions and identification marks
    - .002 72 Patents [*formerly* 620.08]
  - .003–.007 Dictionaries, serial publications, organizations, study and teaching
  - .008 Collections and anthologies
    - Including collections of reports [*formerly* 620.09]
  - .009 Historical and geographical treatment
  - [.03] Specifications
    - Class in 620.002 1
  - [.04] Designs and drawings
    - Class in 620.002 22
  - [.07] Laws and regulations
    - Class in 340
  - [.08] Patents
    - Class in 620.002 72
  - [.09] Collections of reports
    - Class in 620.008

## Decimal Classification

► **620.1–620.4 Applied mechanics (Engineering mechanics)**

*For principles of flight, see 629.132; automatic control engineering, 629.8; air-conditioning engineering, 697.93*

**620.1 Engineering materials, properties, tests**

[.101] Mechanical vibration

Class in 620.3

[.102] Sound and related vibrations

Class in 620.2

### SUMMARY

- 620.11 Engineering materials
- .12 Wood and laminated wood
- .13 Masonry materials
- .14 Ceramic and allied materials
- .15 Masonry adhesives
- .16 Metals and their alloys
- .17 Ferrous metals
- .18 Nonferrous metals
- .19 Other engineering materials

.11 Engineering materials

*For specific engineering materials, see 620.12–620.19*

.112 Engineering properties

Tests evaluating materials for engineering purposes

► **620.112 1 – 620.112 7 Specific tests of strength**

*For tests of strength on specific shapes and forms, see 620.112 8*

.112 1 Temperature and strength

.112 16 Cryogenic effects

.112 17 High-temperature effects

.112 2 Deterioration, corrosion, weathering

Rates, resistivity, protective measures

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- 620.112 3      Elasticity and plasticity  
                    Deformation, fatigue, yield point  
                    Class photoelasticity [*formerly* 620.112 3] in 620.112 9
- .112 32          Elasticity and elastic limit
- .112 33          Plasticity, plastic flow, creep
- .112 4          Tensile, compression, shearing stresses
- .112 5          Rigidity  
                    Impact and repeated shock
- .112 6          Hardness
- .112 7          Nondestructive tests  
                    Use of radiographic, tracer, ultrasonic methods
- .112 8          Tests of strength on specific shapes and forms
- .112 81          Sandwich constructions
- 620.112 82 – 620.112 83 Structural forms
- .112 82          Plates, beams, bars, rods, angles
- .112 83          Columns, tubes, cylinders, pipes
- .112 84          Rollers and bearings
- .112 85          Springs
- .112 86          Hooks, chains, rings
- .112 87          Fasteners  
                    Rivets, bolts, screws, nails, spikes
- .112 88          Wires, cables, hawsers
- .112 9          Other properties  
                    Mechanical, thermal, optical, acoustical, electric, electro-  
   magnetic, magnetic properties  
                    Including photoelasticity [*formerly* 620.112 3]
- 620.12–620.19 Specific engineering materials  
                    Engineering properties and tests
- .12              Wood and laminated wood

## *Decimal Classification*

- 620.13      Masonry materials  
              *For masonry adhesives, see 620.15; brick, tile, terra cotta, 620.142*
- .132      Stone
- .135      Cement
- 620.136–620.137 Concretes
- .136      Concrete and precast concrete
- .137      Ferroconcrete and prestressed concrete
- .14      Ceramic and allied materials
- .142      Brick, tile, terra cotta
- .144      Glass
- .15      Masonry adhesives
- .16      Metals and their alloys  
              *Divide like 620.112, e.g., deformation of metals 620.163*  
              *For specific metals and their alloys, see 620.17–620.18*
- 620.17–620.18 Specific metals and their alloys
- .17      Ferrous metals  
              *Divide like 620.112, e.g., deformation of ferrous metals 620.173*
- .18      Nonferrous metals
- .182      Copper  
              Brass, bronze, Muntz metal, phosphor bronze, gun metal,  
              copper-aluminum alloys, copper-beryllium alloys, aluminum  
              bronze
- .183      Lead
- .184      Zinc and cadmium
- .185      Tin
- .186      Aluminum
- .187      Magnesium
- .188      Nickel

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- 620.189      **Other nonferrous metals**
- .189 1      **Mercury**
- .189 2      **Precious and rare-earth metals**  
                Divide like 669.2, e.g., gold 620.189 22
- .189 3      **Ferro-alloying metals**  
                Divide like 669.73, e.g., chromium 620.189 34  
                *For nickel, see 620.188*
- .189 4      **Beryllium**
- .189 5      **Antimony, arsenic, bismuth**
- .189 6      **Alkali and alkaline earth metals**  
                Sodium, potassium, lithium, strontium, calcium, barium
- .189 9      **Minor metals**  
                Niobium, hafnium, germanium, gallium, indium,  
                tellurium, thallium
- .19      **Other engineering materials**
- .191      **Soils**  
                Class foundation soils in 624.151
- .192      **Plastics and their laminates and compounds**
- .194      **Rubber**
- .195      **Insulating materials**  
                Rock wool, corkboard, asbestos, kapok, diatomaceous earth
- .196      **Bituminous materials**  
                Asphalt, synthetic and rock asphalts, tar
- .197      **Textiles, fibers, ropes**
- .199      **Adhesives and sealants**  
                *For plastics and their laminates and compounds, see*  
                620.192; *masonry adhesives, 620.15*

## *Decimal Classification*

### **620.2 Sound and related vibrations [formerly 620.102]**

620.21–620.23 Applied acoustics (Acoustical engineering)

Class electroacoustical devices in 621.382–621.389

#### **.21 General principles**

Sound sources, radiating and vibratory systems, elements

#### **.22 Architectural acoustics**

#### **.23 Noise and countermeasures**

#### **.28 Applied ultrasonics**

### **.3 Mechanical vibration [formerly 620.101]**

*For sound and related vibrations, see 620.2*

#### **.31 Generation and transmission**

#### **.32 Measurements**

#### **.37 Effects and countermeasures**

#### **.39 Special developments**

### **.4 Fine particle technology**

### **.7 Systems engineering**

Integrated, complex groupings of equipment designed to produce effectively single sets of optimum outputs from given sets of inputs

### **.8 Human engineering (Biotechnology)**

Designing for optimum man-machine and man-equipment relationships

## **621 Applied physics**

Mechanical, electrical, electronic, electromagnetic, heat, light, nuclear engineering

Use 621.001–621.009 for standard subdivisions

#### **.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of mechanical engineering**

Class thermodynamics [formerly 621.01] in 621.402 1

## SUMMARY

- 621.1 Steam
  - .2 Power derived from liquids
  - .3 Electrical, electronic, electromagnetic engineering
  - .4 Heat and prime movers
  - .5 Pneumatic and low-temperature technology
  - .6 Mechanical fans, blowers, pumps
  - .7 Factory operations
  - .8 Mechanical power transmission and related equipment
  - .9 Tools

### 621.1–621.2 Fluid-power engineering

*For aerodynamics, see 629.132 3; air compression, 621.51–621.54*

## 621.1 Steam

### SUMMARY

- 621.11 Engines
  - .13 Locomotives
  - .14 Tractors, rollers, and their boilers
  - .15 Portable engines and their boilers
  - .16 Stationary engines and their boilers
  - .18 Generation and transmission
  - .19 Central stations
- .11 Engines
  - Class a specific kind with the subject
- .13 Locomotives
- .132 Specific types
  - Including Whyte nomenclature for wheel arrangement
- .133 Boilers
  - Including auxiliary parts, fuel and fuel consumption, feed-water treatment
- .134 Engines
  - Steam-mechanical and steam-electric engines
- .134 3 Reciprocating engines
- .134 6 Turbines
- .135 Running gear



### *Decimal Classification*

---

- 621.136      Tenders
- .139      Other parts
- .14      Tractors, rollers, and their boilers
- .15      Portable engines and their boilers
- .16      Stationary engines and their boilers
- .164      Reciprocating engines
  - Simple, compound, triple-expansion, quadruple-expansion engines
- .165      Turbines
- .165 1      Thermodynamics
- .165 2      Specific types
  - Impulse, single-stage impulse, velocity-compounded, pressure-compounded, reaction turbines
- .165 3      Design, construction, maintenance, repair
- .166      Other engines
  - Rotary, eolipile, aerosteam, cycloidal engines
- .18      Generation and transmission
  - Class a specific application with the subject



---

#### 621.182–621.184 Generation

- 182      Fuels and fuel consumption
- .183      Boiler furnaces
- .183 6      Mechanical stokers
- .183 8      Draft appliances
  - Including stacks, chimneys, flues, dampers
- .184      Boilers
- .184 1      Thermodynamics
- .184 2      Specific types
  - Fire-tube and water-tube boilers
- .184 5      Design, construction, maintenance, repairs
- .184 7      Accessories
  - Gages, valves, collectors

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- 621.185      **Circulation (Transmission)**  
                Including steam pipes, safety valves, pressure regulators,  
                insulation
- .19          **Central stations**
- .194          **Boiler operations (Boiler-house practices)**
- .194 1          **Firing and feeding**
- .194 3          **Feed-water treatment**  
                Scale prevention, purification and softening of feed water
- .197          **Accessories**
- .197 2          **Feed-water appliances**  
                Heaters, economizers, accumulators
- .197 3          **Traps**  
                Pumping, lift, boiler-feed return traps
- .197 4          **Separators**
- .197 5          **Superheaters**
- .197 6          **Condensers and cooling towers**
- .197 7          **Instrumentation**  
                Including calorimeters, indicators and gages for pressure  
                and temperature
- .2          **Power derived from liquids**  
                Use 621.200 1 – 621.200 9 for standard subdivisions
- .201–.209      **Standard subdivisions of hydraulic power**  
                621.21–621.27 Hydraulic power
- .21          **Waterwheels (Water mills)**  
                Including overshot and undershot wheels [*formerly* 621.22–  
                621.23]  
                *For turbines, see 621.24*
- [.22–.23]      **Overshot and undershot wheels**  
                Class in 621.21
- .24          **Turbines**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 621.25 Engines
- .252 Pumps
- .254 Accumulators
- .26 Machinery and appliances
  - Class a specific machine or appliance with the subject
- .27 Rams
  - Lifting, pumping, compressing rams
- .28 Other liquid-pressure mechanisms
  - Liquid-pressure measuring and control instruments, e.g., gages, manometers, controllers, barometers
- .3 **Electrical, electronic, electromagnetic engineering**
  - Use 621.300 01 – 621.300 09 for standard subdivisions
  - [.300 4] Wiring diagrams
    - Class in 621.319 2
  - [.300 7] Laws and codes on electrical installations
    - Class laws in 340, local government regulation in 352.923
  - [.300 8] Patents
    - Class in 621.302 72
  - [.300 9] Collections of reports
    - Class in 621.308
- 621.301–621.309 Standard subdivisions of electrical engineering
  - .301 Philosophy and theory
  - .302 Miscellany
    - .302 7 Inventions and identification marks
    - .302 72 Patents [*formerly* 621.300 8]
  - .303–.307 Dictionaries, serial publications, organizations, study and teaching

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- 621.308 Collections and anthologies  
Including collections of reports [*formerly 621.300 9*]

- .309 Historical and geographical treatment

### SUMMARY

- 621.31 Generation, transmission, modification of electrical energy  
.32 Light and illumination engineering  
.33 Traction  
.35 Applied electrochemistry  
.36 Paraphotic engineering  
.37 Electrical measurements  
.38 Electronic and communication engineering  
.39 Other branches of electrical engineering

- .31 Generation, transmission, modification of electrical energy

Class electricity derived from nuclear power in 621.481, by chemical methods in 621.35, electric motors as prime movers in 621.4

### SUMMARY

- 621.312 Central stations  
.313 Dynamoelectric (Generating) machinery  
.314 Transformers  
.315 Condensers  
.316 Details and parts of generators  
.317 Control devices at central stations  
.319 Transmission

- .312 Central stations

*For machinery and instrumentation, see 621.313–621.317*

- .312 1 By purpose

*For special-purpose stations, see 621.312 2 – 621.312 6*

- .312 13 All-purpose stations

- .312 132 Steam-driven

- .312 133 Internal-combustion-engine-driven

- .312 134 Hydroelectric and tidal

- .312 136 Wind-driven

## *Decimal Classification*

- 621.312 137 Fuel-cell powered
- .312 139 Other types
  - Including stations powered by thermoelectric, thermionic, magnetohydrodynamic generators

### 621.312 2 – 621.312 6 Special-purpose stations

- .312 2 For lighting
  - Divide like 621.312 13, e.g., hydroelectric stations
  - 621.312 24

- .312 3 For traction

- .312 6 Transformer, converter, accumulator substations

### ► 621.313–621.317 Machinery and instrumentation

- .313 Dynamoelectric (Generating) machinery

*For details and parts of generators, see 621.316*

- .313 1 Construction, installation, maintenance, testing

- .313 2 Direct-current machinery

Dynamos, dynamotors, direct-current motors, converters to alternating current, compensators, boosters

- .313 3 Alternating-current machinery

*For synchronous machinery, see 621.313 4 – 621.313 5; asynchronous machinery, 621.313 6*

### ► 621.313 4 – 621.313 5 Synchronous machinery

- .313 4 Generators and motors

- .313 5 Converters to direct current

Phase, frequency, motor converters

*For rectifiers, see 621.313 7*

- .313 6 Asynchronous machinery

Generators, phase and frequency converters

Class commutators [*formerly 621.313 6*] in 621.316

*For rectifiers, see 621.313 7*

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- 621.313 7      Rectifiers  
                    Mechanical, electronic, electrolytic converters supplied  
                    with commutators
- .314            Transformers  
                    Power, distribution, instrument transformers for converting  
                    alternating-current power from one voltage to another
- .315            Condensers
- .316            Details and parts of generators  
                    Commutators [*formerly* 621.313 6], armatures and armature  
                    winding, contactors, electromagnets (field cores), brushes
- .317            Control devices at central stations
- .317 2           Switchboards, panels, meters
- .317 3           Switches and circuit breakers
- .317 4           Rheostats
- .317 5           Signal devices
- .317 8           Protective devices  
                    Fuses, lightning arresters, relays, grounding devices
- .319            Transmission
- .319 1           Systems
- .319 12           Direct-current
- .319 13           Alternating-current  
                    Single-phase, two-phase, polyphase current systems
- .319 15           Composite current  
                    Direct and alternating currents combined
- .319 16           Polycyclic current
- .319 2           Lines and circuitry  
                    Including wiring diagrams [*formerly* 621.300 4]
- .319 21           Circuit characteristics  
                    Heat losses in lines, transient currents, induction  
                    capacity of parallel lines

## *Decimal Classification*

- 621.319 22 Overhead lines
- .319 223 Poles
- .319 224 Cross arms
- .319 225 Towers
- .319 23 Underground lines
- .319 3 Wires and cables
- .319 32 Uninsulated wires
- .319 33 Insulated wires
- .319 34 Cables and cable laying
- .319 37 Insulators and insulation
- .319 8 Protective devices
  - Fuses, lightning arresters, relays, grounding devices
- .32 Light and illumination engineering
  - Use 621.320 001 – 621.320 009 for standard subdivisions
  - .320 01–.320 09 Standard subdivisions of illumination engineering
  - .320 1–.320 9 Standard subdivisions of electric lighting
- 621.321–621.322 Illumination
  - For specific kinds of lighting, see 621.323–621.327
  - .321 General principles
    - Class application to interior and exterior lighting in 621.322
  - .321 1 Determinative procedures
    - Layouts, calculations, photometry
  - 621.321 2 – 621.321 5 Systems and methods
  - .321 2 Direct lighting
  - .321 3 Indirect and semi-indirect lighting
  - .321 4 Flood (Directed) lighting
  - .321 5 Transillumination
  - .322 Interior and exterior lighting
    - For municipal lighting, see 628.93–628.95
  - .322 5–.322 8 Interior lighting
    - Divide like 725–728, e.g., lighting for libraries
    - 621.322 78

## *Engineering and allied operations*

621.322 9      Garden and patio lighting

►      621.323–621.327 Specific kinds of lighting

.323      Historic forms

        Torches, candles, oil-burning devices

.324      Gas lighting

►      621.325–621.327 Electric lighting

Systems, bulbs, tubes, filaments, electrodes, manufacturing details

*For apparatus at service end of line, see 621.328*

.325      Arc

*For enclosed-arc, see 621.327*

.326      Incandescent

.327      Luminous-tube (Enclosed-arc)

.327 3      Fluorescent

.327 4      Mercury-vapor

.327 5      Neon

.327 6      Sodium-vapor

.328      Apparatus at service end of line

        Including panels, insulators, switches

.328 2      Interior wiring

.328 8      Protective devices

        Fuses, lightning arresters, relays, grounding devices

.329      Other branches of light engineering

        Including light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation (lasers)

.33      Traction

        Electric-power transmission for railways

        Including electrification of railway systems



## *Decimal Classification*

- 621.35      Applied electrochemistry  
                 Generation and storage of electrical energy by chemical methods
- .353          Primary batteries  
                 Voltaic and dry cells
- .354          Secondary batteries (Storage batteries)  
                 *For specific types of storage batteries, see 621.355–621.356*
- 621.355–621.356 Specific types of storage batteries
- .355          Lead-acid batteries
- .356          Alkaline batteries
- .359          Fuel cells  
                 Direct, continuous conversion of chemical energy to electrical energy
- .36          Paraphotic engineering  
                 Generation, transmission, detection, systems, applications of radiant energy adjacent to luminous spectrum
- .362          Infrared  
                 Including infrared amplification by stimulated emission of radiation (irasers)  
                 *For heat radiation, see 621.402 2*
- .364          Ultraviolet
- .37          Electrical measurements
- 
- 621.372–621.374 Values and quantities  
                 Determination of instantaneous effective electrical values (instruments), and measurement of total quantities of electricity over a period of time (meters)
- .372          Units and standards  
                 Primary (absolute) and secondary standards of resistance, voltage, inductance, capacitance, frequency  
                 Including calibration of electrical instruments
- .373          Recording meters

## ***Engineering and allied operations***

- 621.374      Meters and instruments**  
    **Measurement of electric quantities**  
        *For recording meters, see 621.373*
- .374 2      Resistance measurements**  
        Wheatstone bridges, ohmmeters, resistance boxes, shunts
- .374 3      Potential measurements**  
        Electrometers, voltmeters, potentiometers, voltage detectors
- .374 4      Current measurements**  
        Voltmeters, ammeters, milliammeters, coulometers, ampere-hour meters, galvanometers
- .374 5      Energy measurements**  
        Watt-hour meters, demand meters, electric supply meters
- .374 6      Power measurements**  
        Wattmeters, electrodynamicometers, wattammeters
- .374 7      Frequency meters**  
        Magnetic oscillographs, cathode-ray oscillographs  
        *For electric phasemeters, see 621.374 9*
- .374 9      Phasemeters**  
        Synchroscopes, power-factor meters
- .379      Measurements of nonelectrical quantities**  
        Including telemeters
- .38      Electronic and communication engineering**

### **SUMMARY**

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| <b>621.381</b>   | <b>Electronic engineering</b>             |
| <b>.382-.383</b> | <b>Wire telegraphy</b>                    |
| <b>.384</b>      | <b>Radio- and microwave communication</b> |
| <b>.385-.387</b> | <b>Wire telephony</b>                     |
| <b>.388</b>      | <b>Television</b>                         |
| <b>.389</b>      | <b>Other communication devices</b>        |

## *Decimal Classification*

---

621.381

Electronic engineering

*For communication engineering, see 621.382–621.389*

### SUMMARY

- 621.381 1      Systems
- .381 3      Microwave electronics
- .381 5      Circuit electronics
- .381 6      X-ray and gamma-ray electronics
- .381 7      Miniaturization and microminiaturization
- .381 9      Special developments
  
- .381 1          Systems
  - Communication, control, combined
  
- .381 3          Microwave electronics
- .381 31          Wave propagation and transmission
- .381 32          Circuit functions
  - Specific valves, hookups, design and analysis of circuits
  
- .381 33          Specific instruments and apparatus
  - Class instruments and apparatus for a specific function in 621.381 32
  
- .381 331          Waveguides
- .381 332          Resonators
- .381 333          Klystrons
- .381 334          Magnetrons
- .381 335          Traveling-wave tubes
- .381 336          Masers
  - Microwave amplification by stimulated emission of radiation
  
- .381 336 1          Solid-state masers
- .381 336 2          Fluid-state masers

## *Engineering and allied operations*

621.381 5

Circuit electronics

Short- and long-wave electronics

621.381 51 – 621.381 52 Valves

Class valves for a specific function in **621.381 53**

.381 51

Tubes

Thermionic and cold-cathode

.381 512

Vacuum tubes

.381 512 2

Diodes

.381 512 3

Triodes

.381 512 4

Tetrodes

.381 512 5

Pentodes

.381 512 8

Other multielement tubes

.381 513

Low-pressure gas tubes

Divide like **621.381 512**, e.g., tetrodes  
**621.381 513 4**

.381 52

Semiconductor (crystal) valves

.381 522

Diodes

.381 528

Transistors

.381 53

Circuit functions

Specific valves, hookups, design and analysis of  
circuits

.381 532

Rectification and filtering

.381 533

Oscillation

.381 534

Pulse processes

.381 535

Amplification and feedback

Including radio amplification by stimulated  
emission of radiation (lasers)

.381 536

Modulation, demodulation, detection

.381 536 2

Amplitude

.381 536 3

Frequency

.381 536 4

Phase

.381 536 5

Pulse

.381 537

Switching and control

## Decimal Classification

---

- 621.381 54                      Supplementary devices and instrumentation  
                                    Cathode-ray and electron-ray tubes, indicators, gages,  
                                    thermistors
- .381 6                      X-ray and gamma-ray electronics
- .381 7                      Miniaturization and microminiaturization
- 
- 621.381 71 – 621.381 74 Printed circuits
- .381 71                      Microelements  
                                    Modules, transistors, resistors, diodes, wafers
- .381 73                      Microcircuit functions  
                                    Specific valves, hookups, design and analysis of  
                                    circuits
- .381 74                      Printed wiring and potted circuits
- .381 76                      Other miniaturized devices
- .381 79                      Special developments
- [.381 8]                      Electroacoustical devices  
                                    Class in 621.389
- .381 9                      Special developments
- .381 95                      Computers [*formerly* 681.14]
- 
- 621.381 952 – 621.381 954 General principles  
                                    Class general principles applied to specific computers in  
                                    621.381 957 – 621.381 958
- .381 952                      Design and construction
- .381 953                      Component elements
- .381 953 2                      Input-output equipment
- .381 953 3                      Storage and memory systems
- .381 953 4                      Print-out equipment
- .381 954                      Maintenance and repair
- 
- 621.381 957 – 621.381 958 Specific computers
- .381 957                      Analog computers
- .381 958                      Digital computers

## *Engineering and allied operations*

---

- 621.382–621.389 Communication engineering  
Electrical, electroacoustical, electronic devices
- 621.382–621.383 Wire telegraphy
- 621.382 Codes, systems, types
- 621.382 3 – 621.382 4 Systems
- .382 3 Acoustic  
Hand-operated systems, e.g., simplex, duplex,  
quadruplex, multiplex
- .382 4 Automatic  
Systems of Bain, Morse, Wheatstone, Delany
- 621.382 5 – 621.382 8 Special types
- .382 5 Printing  
Stockticker, teleprinter, teletype
- .382 6 Writing (Telaugraphy)
- .382 7 Facsimile
- .382 8 Submarine cable
- .383 Specific instruments and apparatus  
Keys, transmitters, receivers, calling apparatus, relays,  
repeaters, switches, recorders
- .384 Radio- and microwave communication

### SUMMARY

621.384 1	General principles
.384 2–.384 3	Radiotelegraphy
.384 5–.384 6	Radiotelephony
.384 8	Radar



621.384 1 – 621.384 6 Radio

621.384 1

General principles

### SUMMARY

- |            |   |
|------------|---|
| 621.384 11 | Wave propagation and transmission   |
| .384 12    | Circuitry   |
| .384 13    | Specific instruments and apparatus  |
| .384 15    | Communication systems   |
| .384 16    | Stations  |
| .384 17    | Measurements and standardization  |
| .384 18    | Manufacture and servicing of receiving sets   |
| .384 19    | Special developments  |
| .384 11    | Wave propagation and transmission   |
| .384 12    | Circuitry   |
| .384 121   | Simple circuits   |
| .384 122   | Coupled circuits  |
| .384 128   | Circuit functions   |
|            | Detection, amplification, control, modulation,<br>frequency generation                      |
| .384 13    | Specific instruments and apparatus  |
| .384 131   | Transmitters  |
| .384 132   | Vacuum tubes  |
|            | Diodes, triodes, multielement tubes   |
|            | Class tubes for a specific function with the<br>function                                    |
| .384 133   | Supplementary instrumentation   |
|            | Condensers, microphones, inductors, resistors,<br>filters, oscillographs, grounding devices |
|            | Including devices for elimination of interference<br>[formerly 621.384 154]                 |
| .384 134   | Transistors   |
|            | Class transistors for a specific function with the<br>function                              |
| .384 135   | Antennas  |
| .384 135 1 | Transmitting  |
| .384 135 2 | Receiving   |
| .384 135 5 | Directional   |

- 621.384 136                      Receivers
- .384 136 1                   Instruments
- Radio-frequency amplifiers, modulators,  
                                    rectifiers, detectors, loud speakers
- .384 136 6                   Sets
- Crystal, radio-tube, regenerative, tuned  
                                    radio-frequency, superheterodyne sets
- For manufacture and servicing, see*  
                                    **621.384 18**
- .384 15                      Communication systems
- 
- 621.384 151 -- 621.384 152 Short-wave systems
- .384 151                      Without frequency modulation
- .384 152                      With frequency modulation (FM)
- .384 153                      Long-wave systems
- Amplitude modulation (AM) systems
- [.384 154]                   Devices for elimination of interference
- Class in **621.384 133**
- .384 156                      Relay and satellite systems
- .384 16                      Stations
- 
- 621.384 162 -- 621.384 164 Broadcasting stations
- .384 162                      Clear-channel
- .384 163                      Regional
- .384 164                      Local
- 
- 621.384 165 -- 621.384 168 Two-way stations
- .384 165                      Vehicle-to-station
- .384 166                      Amateur (Ham)
- .384 168                      Portable
- .384 17                      Measurements and standardization
- Of impedance, frequency, wavelength, modulation,  
                                    signal intensity



## *Decimal Classification*

---

621.384 18	Manufacture and servicing of receiving sets
.384 185	Assembling
.384 186	Installation
.384 187	Repairs
.384 19	Special developments
.384 191	Direction and position finding Radio beacons, radio compasses, loran
.384 196	Telecontrol
.384 197	Space communication
<hr/>	
►	621.384 2 – 621.384 3 Radiotelegraphy
.384 2	Systems, stations, types Including radiofacsimile
.384 3	Specific instruments and apparatus
<hr/>	
►	621.384 5 – 621.384 6 Radiotelephony
.384 5	Systems, stations, types
.384 6	Specific instruments and apparatus
.384 8	Radar
.384 81	General principles Wave propagation and transmission, circuitry, reception
.384 83	Specific instruments and apparatus
.384 85	Systems Continuous and pulse-modulated
.384 86	Stations
.384 88	Scanning patterns
.384 89	Special developments
.384 892	Racon
.384 893	Shoran

- 621.385–621.387 Wire telephony
- 621.385 Analysis, systems, stations
- .385 1 Network analysis
- .385 3 Intercommunication systems (Interphone systems)  
Systems without central stations
- .385 4 Stations  
*For private exchanges, see 621.385 8*
- .385 41 Substations
- .385 43 Central stations
- 
- 621.385 5 – 621.385 6 Manual switchboard systems
- .385 5 Multiple switchboard systems
- .385 6 Trunking systems (Transfer systems)
- .385 7 Automatic and semiautomatic switchboard systems  
Including direct-distant-dialing systems
- .385 8 Private exchanges  
Private automatic exchanges (PAX) and private board exchanges (PBX)
- 
- 621.386–621.387 Instruments, apparatus, transmission
- .386 Terminal instruments and apparatus
- .386 2 Transmitters  
Including handsets containing transmitters and receivers in one housing
- .386 3 Receivers  
*For handsets containing transmitters and receivers in one housing, see 621.386 2*
- 
- 621.386 7 – 621.386 9 Specific types  
Manual, automatic, dial
- .386 7 Recording telephones (Mechanical telephones)  
Telephonographs, telegraphones
- .386 9 Other
- .386 92 Pay stations
- .386 93 Private stations

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 621.387            Central station equipment and transmission
- 
- 621.387 3 – 621.387 6 Manual switchboards
- .387 3            Multiple switchboards
- .387 4            Trunk (Transfer) switchboards
- Switchboards for transferring lines from one central station to another
- .387 5            Switchboard components
- Including parts and accessories of manual and automatic telephone switchboards
- .387 6            Power equipment
- Including auxiliary generators, batteries
- .387 7            Semiautomatic and automatic switchboards
- For switchboard components, see 621.387 5*
- .387 8            Transmission
- .387 82            Long-distance
- .387 83            Local
- .387 9            Other central station equipment
- .387 94            Protective devices
- Fuses, lightning arresters, relays, grounding devices
- .387 96            Meters and counters
- .388            Television
- Use 621.388 001 – 621.388 009 for standard subdivisions
- .388 02            Black-and-white television
- .388 04            Color television
- .388 1            General principles
- Wave propagation and transmission, circuitry, optics
- .388 3            Instruments and apparatus
- .388 31–.388 33    Transmitters, valves, supplementary instrumentation
- Divide like 621.384 131 – 621.384 133, e.g., filters  
                                 621.388 33

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- 621.388 34           Cameras and components
- .388 35-.388 36       Antennas and receivers
- Divide like 621.384 135 – 621.384 136, e.g., television  
                    sets 621.388 366
- .388 5               Communication systems
- Including relay and satellite systems
- .388 6               Stations
- .388 7               Measurements and standardization
- Of impedance, frequency, wavelength, modulation,  
                    signal intensity
- .388 8               Manufacture and servicing of receiving sets
- Divide like 621.384 18, e.g., repairs 621.388 87
- .388 9               Special developments
- Including space communication
- .389                 Other communication devices
- Including electroacoustical devices [*formerly also*  
                    621.381 8]
- .389 2               Public-address and related systems
- Including sound reinforcing, electric megaphone, inter-  
                    communicating, announce, paging, call systems
- .389 3               Sound recording and reproducing systems [*formerly*  
                    also 681.84]
- .389 32              Records and recorders
- Cylinder, disc, wire, tape, film records and recorders
- .389 33              Reproducers
- Phonographs, radiophonographs, high-fidelity and  
                    stereophonic systems
- .389 4               Language translators
- .389 5               Underwater devices
- .389 52              Projectors and hydrophones
- .389 53              Sonar

## *Decimal Classification*

- 621.39      **Other branches of electrical engineering**  
General principles, circuitry, apparatus and appliances, applications  
Class generation and transmission of electricity regardless of method or purpose in 621.31
- .392      **Thermoelectricity**  
Electricity produced by direct action of heat
- .393      **Rural electrification**
- .394      **Household electrification**
- .396      **Conduction and induction heating**  
Including arc, resistance, electromagnetic, dielectric furnaces
- .4      **Heat and prime movers**  
Including electric motors  
Use 621.400 1 – 621.400 9 for standard subdivisions  
*For steam, see 621.1*
- .402      **Heat (Thermal) engineering**  
*For low-temperature technology, see 621.56–621.59*
- .402 1      **Thermodynamics** [*formerly 621.01*]
- .402 2      **Transmission (Heat transfer)**  
Conduction, convection, radiation
- .402 3      **Fuels and combustion**
- .402 4      **Insulation**
- .402 5      **Power plants**  
Heat engines and accessories
- .402 8      **Thermal systems**

## *Engineering and allied operations*

### **SUMMARY**

- 621.41**    **External-combustion engines (Hot-air engines)**
- .42**    **Air engines (Air motors)**
- .43**    **Internal-combustion engines**
- .45**    **Wind engines**
- .47**    **Solar-energy engineering**
- .48**    **Nuclear engineering**
- .49**    **Central power stations**

#### 621.41–621.45 Specific prime movers

- 621.41**    **External-combustion engines (Hot-air engines)**
- .42**    **Air engines (Air motors)**
  - Reciprocating air motors, rotary vane positive expansion motors,  
air-turbine engines
  - For wind engines, see 621.45*
- .43**    **Internal-combustion engines**
- ▶ **621.433–621.436 Specific internal-combustion engines**
  - For parts and accessories, see 621.437*
  - .433**    **Gas-turbine engines**
    - Scope: gas-turbine and jet engines
    - For jet engines, see 621.435*
  - .433 2**    **Simple gas-turbine engines**
    - Continuous-combustion, intermittent-combustion,  
exhaust-driven, closed-cycle turbines
  - .433 5**    **Free-piston-turbine engines**
  - .434**    **Spark-ignition engines**
  - .435**    **Jet and rocket engines**
  - .436**    **High-compression-ignition engines**
    - Diesel and semidiesel engines
  - .436 1**    **General principles**
  - .436 2**    **Design and construction**
  - .436 8**    **Operation, maintenance, repair**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 621.437      **Parts and accessories**
  - Cylinders, carburetors, pistons, ignition devices, connecting rods, governors
- .438      **Special developments**
- .45      **Wind engines**
  - Windmills, wind wheels, Flettner rotors
- .47      **Solar-energy engineering**
- .471      **General principles**
  - Thermodynamics, radiation, heat storage
- .473      **Solar engines**
- .475      **Solar batteries**
- .477      **Solar furnaces**
  - Utilization of solar energy for attainment of high temperatures
- .48      **Nuclear engineering**
  - Fission and fusion technology
- .481      **Central stations**
  - Stations for generation of thermal and electric power
- .483      **Fission reactors and power plants**
- .483 2      **Design, construction, shielding**
- .483 3      **Materials**
  - .483 32      **Structural materials**
  - .483 35      **Fuels (Fissionable materials)**
  - .483 36      **Coolants**
  - .483 37      **Moderators**
- .483 4      **Specific types**
  - Heterogeneous, homogeneous, thermal, intermediate, fast, breeder reactors and power plants
- .483 5      **Operation, control, safety measures**
- .483 7      **By-products (Radioactive isotopes)**
- .483 8      **Treatment and disposal of radioactive waste**

*Engineering and allied operations*

621.484      Fusion reactors and power plants  
                    Controlled thermonuclear devices

.489      Special developments

.49      Central power stations  
                    Class a specific type with the subject

**.5      Pneumatic and low-temperature technology**

*For fans, blowers, pumps, see 621.6*

►                      621.51–621.54 Air compression

.51      Compressors  
                    Reciprocating, rotary, jet compressors

.53      Transmission  
                    Systems and equipment

.54      Special developments  
                    Cleaners, carriers, sandblasts, other devices

.55      Vacuum technology

►                      621.56–621.59 Low-temperature technology

.56      Refrigeration  
                    *For refrigerators and freezers, see 621.57*

.563      Heat pumps

.564      Refrigerants and coolants

.567      Systems

.57      Refrigerators and freezers

.58      Ice manufacture

.59      Cryogenic techniques

                    Liquefaction and solidification of gases and gas mixtures having  
                    extremely low boiling points



\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

71

1. *Journal of Management Studies*, 1991, 28, 1, 1-14.

**TABLE 1**

\_\_\_\_\_

## *Engineering and allied operations*

### **621.8 Mechanical power transmission and related equipment**

*For pneumatic technology, see 621.5; power derived from liquids, 621.2*

#### **SUMMARY**

- 621.81 Mechanisms**
- .82 Systems and parts**
- .83 Gears, ratchets, cams**
- .84 Valves, pistons, cocks**
- .85 Transmission by flexible connections**
- .86 Materials-handling equipment**
- .87 Cranes, derricks, elevators, and their components**
- .88 Fastenings**
- .89 Elimination of friction**

#### **.81 Mechanisms**

##### **.811 General principles**

Kinematics and dynamics in machines

##### **.812 Power control devices**

Speed controllers (governors), power measuring devices, e.g., dynamometers, timers

##### **.815 Machine design**

---

#### **621.82-621.84 Transmission elements**

##### **.82 Systems and parts**

*For gears, ratchets, cams, see 621.83; valves, pistons, cocks, 621.84*

##### **.821 Journals**

##### **.822 Bearings**

Plain, ball, roller, gas-lubricated, sliding, adjustable bearings

##### **.823 Shafts and shafting**

##### **.824 Springs**

##### **.825 Couplings, clutches, universal joints**

##### **.827 Connecting rods, cranks, eccentrics**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 621.83      Gears, ratchets, cams
  - .833      Gears and gearing
    - .833 1      Spur gears
    - .833 2      Bevel and skew bevel gears
    - .833 3      Worm and spiral gears
  - .837      Ratchet gears and gearing
  - .838      Cams
- .84      Valves, pistons, cocks
- .85      Transmission by flexible connections
  - For materials-handling equipment, see 621.86*
- .852      By belt
- .853      By rope
- .854      By wire
- .859      By chain
- .86      Materials-handling equipment
  - For cranes, derricks, elevators and their components, see 621.87*
- .862      Hoisting machinery
  - For specific kinds of hoisting machinery, see 621.863–621.865*
- 621.863–621.865 Specific kinds of hoisting machinery
  - .863      Chain hoists, mechanical and hydraulic tackles
  - .864      Windlasses, winches, capstans
  - .865      Power shovels
  - .867      Conveying machinery
    - For telpherage, see 621.868*
  - .867 2      Pipes and pipelines
  - .867 5      Belt conveyers
  - .867 6      Escalators
  - .868      Telpherage
    - Including ski tows, chair lifts

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- 621.87      Cranes, derricks, elevators, and their components
  - .872          Derricks
  - .873          Cranes
    - Mobilo and stationary
  - .877          Elevators
    - Hand-powered, belt-driven, steam, hydraulic, electric
  - .88          Fastenings
  - .882          Screws, nuts, bolts
  - .883          Cotters and cotter pins
  - .884          Rivets and nails
  - .89          Elimination of friction
    - Lubrication and lubricants
    - For bearings, see 621.822*
- .9          Tools
  - Design, maintenance, repair, operation
  - Use 621.900 1 – 621.900 9 for standard subdivisions
  - For special-purpose machinery, see 681.6–681.7*
- .902          Machine tools
  - Power-driven metalworking machinery
- .904          Pneumatic tools
- .908          Hand tools

## **SUMMARY**

- 621.91      Planing and milling machinery
- .92          Abrading and grinding machinery
- .93          Cutting and sawing machinery
- .94          Turning machinery
- .95          Perforating and tapping machinery
- .96          Punching machinery
- .97          Fastening machinery
- .98          Pressing machinery
- .99          Jigs, fixtures, gages
- .91          Planing and milling machinery
- .912          Planers, shapers, slotters
- .914          Crushing machinery [*formerly 621.922*]

*Decimal Classification*

---

- 621.92      Abrading and grinding machinery
- .922      Lapping machinery
  - Cylinder and surface polishing and grinding
  - Class crushing machinery [*formerly 621.922*] in **621.914**
- .923      Emery wheels and grindstones
- .924      Filing machinery
- .93      Cutting and sawing machinery
  - Power shears, saws, slicers, trimmers
- .94      Turning machinery
- .942      Lathes
- .943      Chucks
- .944      Screw-cutting, gear-cutting, pipe-threading machinery
  - For tapping machines, see 621.955*
- .945      Boring machinery
- .95      Perforating and tapping machinery
  - For boring machines, see 621.945; punching machines, 621.96*
- .952      Drilling machinery
- .954      Reaming and broaching machinery
- .955      Tapping machinery
- .96      Punching machinery
  - For die-pressing machinery, see 621.984*
- .97      Fastening machinery
- .973      Hand hammers
- .974      Power hammers
- .978      Riveting machinery
- .98      Pressing machinery
- .982      Bending machinery
- .983      Straightening jigs
- .984      Die-pressing machinery
- .99      Jigs, fixtures, gages
  - For straightening jigs, see 621.983*

**622 Mining engineering and operations**

[.001] Statistics

Class in 622.021

[.007] Laws and regulations

Class in 340

[.009] Collections of reports

Class in 622.08

.02 Miscellany

.021 Tabulated and related materials

Including statistics [*formerly* 622.001]

.08 Collections and anthologies

Including collections of reports [*formerly* 620.009]

**SUMMARY**

622.1 Prospecting and exploratory operations

.2 Underground mining

.3 Types of mining

.4 Equipment for environmental comfort in mines

.5 Drainage and drainage systems

.6 Haulage and hoisting systems

.7 Ore dressing

.8 Hazards and accidents

.1 Prospecting and exploratory operations

622.12-622.15 General principles

Class general principles applied to specific ores and deposits in  
622.18

.12 Surface exploration

Geological, biogeochemical, geobotanical prospecting

.13 Mineral surveys

Qualitative and quantitative measurements of mineral content

.14 Mine surveys

Determination of size, depth, shape of mines

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 622.15      Geophysical exploration
  - .152      Gravitational methods
  - .153      Magnetic methods
  - .154      Electrical methods
    - Self-potential, galvanic, inductive
  - .159      Other methods
    - Acoustic, vibration, radioactivity, geothermal, gas-detection methods
- .18      For specific ores and deposits
  - Divide like 553.2–553.8, e.g., for petroleum 622.182 82

---

### 622.2–622.3 Extractive operations

- .2      **Underground mining**
    - Excavating, quarrying, stoping
    - Class underground mining of specific ores and deposits in 622.33–622.38
  - .23      Blasting and drilling
  - .24      Boring
  - .25      Shafts and shaft sinking
  - .26      Tunnels and tunneling
  - .28      Supporting structures and their erection
  - .3      **Types of mining**
    - For underground mining, see 622.2*
- 622.31–622.32 Surface mining
- Class surface mining of specific ores and deposits in 622.33–622.38
- .31      Open pit and strip mining
  - .32      Alluvial mining
    - Placer, hydraulic, drift mining

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- ▶ 622.33–622.38 Mining specific ores and deposits
  - 622.33 Carbonaceous deposits
    - . Divide like **553.2**, e.g., anthracite coal **622.335**
  - .34 Metallic ore deposits
    - .341 Ferrous ores

---
- ▶ 622.342–622.349 Nonferrous ores
  - .342 Gold, silver, platinum
  - .343–.349 Other
    - . Divide like **553.43–553.49**, e.g., uranium ores **622.349 3**
  - .35–.38 Other deposits
    - . Divide like **553.5–553.8**, e.g., gem diamonds **622.382**

---
- ▶ 622.4–622.7 Ancillary equipment and operations
  - .4 Equipment for environmental comfort in mines
    - . For *drainage and drainage systems*, see **622.5**
  - [.41] Mine gases and their detection
    - . Class in **622.81**
  - .42 Ventilation and air conditioning
    - . For *temperature control*, see **622.43**
  - .43 Temperature control
  - .47 Illumination
    - .473 Portable lamps
    - .474 Electric lighting systems
  - .48 Electricity
    - . Class electricity applied to a specific operation with the operation, e.g., temperature control **622.43**
  - .49 Sanitation
  - .5 Drainage and drainage systems



## *Decimal Classification*

### **622.6 Haulage and hoisting systems**

#### **622.65–622.66 Haulage systems**

*For surface transportation, see 622.69*

**.65 Hand and animal haulage**

**.66 Mechanical haulage**

Gravity planes, shuttle cars, conveyers, locomotives, scrapers

#### **622.67–622.68 Hoisting systems**

**.67 Direct- and gear-driven hoists**

**.68 Elevators**

Cages, skips, buckets

**.69 Surface transportation**

Loading, unloading, transshipment

**.7 Ore dressing**

**.73 Crushing and grinding**

**.74 Sizing**

---

#### **622.75–622.77 Ore concentration**

Removal of waste and mineral separation of milled ore

**.75 Mechanical separation**

**.751 Gravity concentration**

Utilization of differences in specific gravity between minerals

Including sink-float concentration, jigging

**.752 Flotation**

Utilization of differences in chemical composition of minerals to bring about attachment of mineral grains to air bubbles in water

**.77 Electrical and magnetic separation**

Utilization of differences in magnetic permeability or surface electrical conductivity between different mineral varieties

## *Engineering and allied operations*

622.79

### **Milling plants**

Class specific milling-plant operations in 622.73–622.77

.8

### **Hazards and accidents**



622.81–622.84 Causes and prevention

.81

### **Explosions and gas suffocation**

Including mine gases and their detection [*formerly* 622.41]

.82

### **Fires**

.83

### **Earth movements**

.84

### **Floods**

.86

### **Rescue and relief operations**

623

## **Military and naval engineering**

Planning, structural analysis and design, construction methods, operations, maintenance, repairs

### **SUMMARY**

- 623.1 Fortifications (Forts and fortresses)
- .2 Demolition operations
- .3 Defensive operations
- .4 Ordnance
- .5 Ballistics and gunnery
- .6 Transportation facilities
- .7 Other operations
- .8 Naval engineering



623.1–623.7 Military engineering

.1

### **Fortifications (Forts and fortresses)**

.12

### **Permanent**

*For specific permanent fortifications, see 623.19*

.15

### **Temporary**

.19

### **Specific permanent fortifications**

Add area notations 3–9 to 623.19

- 523.2      **Demolition operations**
  - .26      Mine laying
  - .262      On land
  - .263      In water
  - 27      Demolition of specific structures and systems
  - .271      Of communication facilities [*formerly* 623.32]
  - .275      Of roads, railroads, bridges
  - .277      Of buildings
- .3      **Defensive operations**
  - .31      Against invasion
    - Including flooding, mechanical barriers, sniping
  - [.32]      Demolition of communication facilities
    - Class in 623.271
  - .34      In trenches
  - .36      Against mines (Countermining)
  - .37      Against chemical, biological, radiological warfare
    - For protective construction, see* 623.38
  - .371      Conventional bombardment [*formerly* 623.38]
  - .372      Gas warfare
  - .374      Biological warfare
  - .375      Nuclear warfare [*formerly* 623.38]
  - .38      Protective construction
    - Including underground shelters
    - Class defenses against nuclear warfare in 623.375, against conventional bombardment in 623.371, air-raid warning systems in 623.737, blackouts in 623.77 [*all formerly* 623.38]
- .4      **Ordnance**
  - Class armored vehicles in 623.74

**SUMMARY**

- 623.41      **Artillery**
  - .42      **Specific pieces of artillery**
  - .43      **Gun mounts**
  - .44      **Small arms and other weapons**
  - .45      **Ammunition**
  - .46      **Accessories**
  - .48      **Maintenance and repairs**
- 623.41      **Artillery**
  - Large-caliber, crew-served mounted firearms
    - For specific pieces of artillery, see 623.42*
  - .412      **Field**
  - .417      **Coast**
  - .418      **Naval**
  - .419      **Other**
  - .419 3      **Airborne**
  - .419 4      **Space**
  - .42      **Specific pieces of artillery**
    - Guns, howitzers, mortars, guided missile launchers
      - For gun mounts, see 623.43; ammunition, 623.45*
  - .43      **Gun mounts**
    - Class armored cars and tanks in 623.747 5, armored trains in 623.633 [*all formerly 623.43*]
  - .44      **Small arms and other weapons**
    - For small-arms ammunition, see 623.455*
  - .441      **Primitive firearms**
  - .442      **Automatic and shoulder weapons**
  - .442 4      **Automatic small arms**
    - Automatic and machine rifles, machine and submachine guns
  - .442 5      **Shoulder weapons**
    - Rifles, muskets, carbines
      - For one-man rocket launchers, see 623.442 6*
  - .442 6      **One-man rocket launchers (Bazookas)**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 623.443      Pistols and revolvers
- .444      Side arms
  - Swords, bayonets, daggers, lances, trench knives
- .445      Chemical devices
  - Flame throwers, mortars for smoke and gas projectiles
- .45      Ammunition
- .451      Projectiles
  - For tactical rockets, see 623.454 3*
  - .451 1      Low-velocity projectiles
    - Fragmentation, demolition, depth bombs placed, thrown, propelled at low velocity
    - For special-purpose projectiles, see 623.451 4 – 623.451 9*
  - .451 14      Rifle and hand grenades
  - .451 15      Mines
  - .451 19      Nuclear bombs
    - Class guided missiles with nuclear warheads in 623.451 9
  - .451 3      High-velocity projectiles
    - For special-purpose projectiles, see 623.451 4 – 623.451 9*
  - 623.451 4 – 623.451 9 Special-purpose projectiles
  - .451 4      Shrapnel
  - .451 6      Chemical
    - Incendiary, gas, smoke bombs
  - .451 7      High-explosives (HE)
    - Including torpedoes, blockbusters, high-explosive-antitank (HEAT) projectiles
    - For bangalore torpedoes, see 623.454 5*
  - .451 8      Armor-piercing (AP, APC, HVAP)

## *Engineering and allied operations*

---

623.451 9	Guided missiles (Strategic missiles)
.451 91	Air-to-air
.451 92	Air-to-surface
.451 93	Air-to-underwater
.451 94	Surface-to-air Interceptor, antimissile missiles
.451 95	Surface-to-surface
.451 952	Short range
.451 953	Intermediate range
.451 954	Long range
.451 96	Surface-to-underwater
.451 97	Underwater Underwater-to-air, underwater-to-surface, underwater-to-underwater
.452	Explosives Chemicals for propelling, bursting, demolition charges
.452 6	Propellants (Burning and deflagratory explosives) Black powder (gunpowder), smokeless powder, nitrocel- lulose (guncotton), cordite, flashless and coated powders
.452 7	High explosives Nitroglycerin, dynamite, nitroguanidine, TNT (trinitro- toluene), ammonium picrate and chlorate, PETN (pentaerythrite tetranitrate), RDX (cyclonite, hexagen), tetryl, HMTD (hexamethylene- triperoxidediamine) Including primary explosives, e.g., mercury fulminate, lead azide and picrate, diazonitrophenol
.454	Detonators, rockets, demolition charges
.454 2	Detonators Fuses, primers, firing mechanisms, boosters, percussion caps
.454 3	Rockets (Tactical rockets) Jet-propelled bombs not controlled by guidance systems

## *Decimal Classification*

- [623.454 4]      Pyrotechnical signal devices  
                    Class in 623.731 3
- .454 5      Demolition charges  
                    Bangalore torpedoes, shaped charges, destructors,  
                    demolition blocks  
                    *For mines, see 623.451 15*
- .455      Small-arms ammunition  
                    Bullets and cartridges
- .459      Other destructive agents
- .459 2      Poisons  
                    Including poisonous gases
- .459 4      Disease-causing microbes
- .459 5      Radiation
- .46      Accessories  
                    Tools, sighting and range apparatus
- .48      Maintenance and repairs
- .5      **Ballistics and gunnery**
- .51      Ballistics  
                    Motion of projectiles and conditions affecting it
- .513      Interior [*formerly* 623.53]  
                    Motion of projectiles within the bore and conditions  
                    governing it
- .514      Exterior [*formerly* 623.54]  
                    Motion of projectiles after leaving gun tube and resistance  
                    encountered due to motion thru air
- .516      Terminal [*formerly* 623.56]  
                    Effect of projectiles on targets
- [.53]      Interior ballistics  
                    Class in 623.513
- [.54]      Exterior ballistics  
                    Class in 623.514

## *Engineering and allied operations*



### 623.55–623.59 Gunnery

Application of ballistics to laying, aiming, firing guns

#### 623.55 Firing and fire control

.551 On land

.553 At sea

.555 From aircraft

.556 From spacecraft

#### [.56] Terminal ballistics

Class in 623.516

.57 Recoil

Of mounts and guns

.59 Other aspects

#### .6 Transportation facilities

*For vehicles, see 623.74*

.62 Roads

.63 Railroads and their rolling stock

.631 Permanent way

Earthwork and superstructure

.633 Rolling stock

Including armored trains [*formerly 623.43*]

.64 Docks, breakwaters, artificial harbors

.66 Airports

Divide like 629.136, e.g., airstrips 623.661 2

Use 623.661 3 for air bases

.67 Temporary bridges

.68 Tunnels



623.7      Other operations

SUMMARY

623.71	Sketching and map making
.72	Photography and photogrammetry
.73	Communication facilities
.74	Vehicles
.75	Sanitation
.76	Power and light systems
.77	Camouflage

---

►                                  623.71–623.72 Topography

.71	Sketching and map making
.72	Photography and photogrammetry
.73	Communication facilities
.731	Visual signals
.731 2	Semaphore, heliograph, flag signals
.731 3	Pyrotechnical devices [ <i>formerly</i> 623.454 4]

---

►                                  623.732–623.733 Wire systems

Class wireless systems [*formerly* 623.732–623.733] in 623.734–623.735

*For air-raid warning systems, see 623.737*

.732	Telegraphy
.733	Telephony

---

►                                  623.734–623.735 Wireless systems [*formerly* 623.732–623.733]

*For air-raid warning systems, see 623.737*

.734	Radio- and microwave communication
.734 1	Short-wave
.734 2	Radiotelegraphy
.734 5	Radiotelephony
.734 8	Radar
.735	Television
.737	Air-raid warning systems [ <i>formerly</i> 623.38]

- 623.74      Vehicles
- Self-propelled conveyances with directional independence
- For government vessels, see 623.825–623.826*
- 
- ▶                                      623.741–623.746 Aircraft
- .741            Lighter-than-air
- For specific types of lighter-than-air aircraft, see*  
            *623.742–623.744*
- 
- ▶                      623.742–623.744 Specific types of lighter-than-air  
                         aircraft
- .742            Free balloons
- .743            Airships (Dirigible balloons)
- Divide like 629.133 25 – 629.133 27, e.g., rigid dirigibles  
            623.743 5
- .744            Barrage balloons
- .746            Heavier-than-air
- 
- ▶                                      623.746 2 – 623.746 7 Manned aircraft
- .746 2           Trainers
- .746 3           Bombers
- .746 4           Fighters
- .746 5           Carriers
- Including transport and cargo aircraft
- .746 6           Rescue aircraft
- Including amphibian planes and helicopters
- .746 7           Reconnaissance aircraft
- .746 9           Pilotless aircraft (Guided aircraft)
- .747            Motor land vehicles
- .747 2           For transporting personnel
- .747 22          Jeeps and similar vehicles
- .747 23          Buses
- .747 24          Ambulances

### *Decimal Classification*

- 623.747 4 For transporting supplies
- .747 5 For combat
  - Armored cars and tanks [*both formerly 623.43*]
- .748 Air-cushion vehicles
  - Divide like 629.32, e.g., over-water vehicles 623.748 4
- .749 Spacecraft
- .75 Sanitation
- .751 Water supply
- .753 Sewage treatment and disposal
- .754 Garbage and refuse treatment and disposal
- .76 Power and light systems
- .77 Camouflage
  - Including blackouts [*formerly 623.38*], decoy and dummy construction
- .8 Naval engineering

### SUMMARY

- 623.81 Naval architecture
  - .82 Ships and boats
  - .83 Shipyards
  - .84 Hull construction
  - .85 Special systems
  - .86 Equipment and outfit
  - .87 Power plants (Marine engineering)
  - .88 Seamanship
  - .89 Navigation
- .81 Naval architecture
- .817 Structural theory
  - Divide like 624.17, e.g., deflections 623.817 14
  - For structural design in specific materials, see 623.818*
- .818 Structural design in specific materials
  - Divide like 624.18, e.g., design in metal 623.818 2
- .819 Design tests
  - Including experimental model tanks for testing [*formerly 623.831*]

## *Engineering and allied operations*

623.82

### **Ships and boats**

Construction, maintenance, repairs

Use 623.820 01 – 623.820 09 for standard subdivisions

*For parts and details of ships and boats, see 623.84–623.87*

623.820 2 – 623.820 4 General types

Class specific types in 623.821–623.829

.820 2

Small craft

.820 3

Sailing craft

.820 4

Power-driven craft [*formerly* 623.823]

623.821–623.829 Specific types

### **SUMMARY**

623.821

Ancient and medieval

.822

Wind-driven

.823

Small and medium craft

.824

Merchant ships

.825–.826

Government vessels

.828

Other power-driven vessels

.829

Hand-propelled and towed craft

.821

Ancient and medieval

Caravels, galleys, sailing men-of-war, biremes, triremes

623.822–623.829 Modern

.822

Wind-driven

Clipper ships, racing yachts, rotor ships, sailboats

623.823–623.828 Power-driven

.823

Small and medium craft

Class comprehensive works on power-driven craft [*formerly* 623.823] in 623.820 4

.823 1

Motorboats

.823 13

Outboard

.823 14

Inboard

.823 15

Inboard-outboard

### *Decimal Classification*

---

623.823 2	Tugboats and towboats
.823 4	Ferryboats
.824	Merchant ships
.824 3	Passenger Lake, river, ocean liners
.824 5	Cargo Freighters, bulk carriers, tankers
.824 8	Factory Whaleboats and ship canneries
<hr/>	
►	623.825–623.826 Government vessels
.825	Warships
.825 2	Battleships
.825 3	Cruisers
.825 4	Destroyers and destroyer escorts
.825 5	Aircraft carriers
.825 6	Landing craft Including amphibious landing craft
.825 7	Submarines
.825 72	Diesel-engine and electric-motor powered
.825 74	Nuclear-powered
.826	Other
.826 2	Minecraft
.826 3	Police boats and revenue cutters
.826 4	Transports and hospital ships
.826 5	Supply ships
.828	Other power-driven vessels Icebreakers, trawlers, dredgers, drilling ships
.829	Hand-propelled and towed craft Canoes, lifeboats, barges, scows, rowboats, towed canalboats, coracles

### Engineering and allied operations

## 623.83 Shipyards

**Appliances and facilities used in construction, maintenance and repair of ships**

[.831] Experimental model tanks for testing

**Class in 623.819**

**623.84–623.87 Parts and details of ships and boats**

## .84 Hull construction

.842      Lofting

.843      **Metalwork**

.843 2      Welding and riveting

**.843 3 Shipfitting**

.844      Carpentry (Shipwrights' work)

## .848 Resistant construction

**Fire-, heat-, pest-, shock-resistant construction**

**.85 Special systems**

**Use 623.850 01 – 623.850 09 for standard subdivisions**

*For power plants, see 623.87*

.850 1                      Mechanical

.850 3                      Electrical [formerly 623.852]

.850 4                      Electronic

.852      Electric lighting

**Class electrical systems [formerly 623.852] in 623.850 3**

.853 Air conditioning and temperature controls

**.853 5                      Refrigeration**

## .853 7 Heating and air conditioning

**.854 Water supply and sanitation**

623.854 2 – 623.854 3 Water supply

.854 2 Potable water

.854 3	Sea water
--------	-----------

### For sanitation and fire fighting

*Decimal Classification*

---

- 623.854 6            Plumbing
- .856            Communication systems [*formerly* 623.864]  
                    Wire and wireless
- .86            Equipment and outfit
- .862            Gear and rigging  
                    Rope, masts, spars, rudder, sails, cordage, anchors
- .863            Nautical instruments
- .864            Flares and other portable lights  
                    Class communication systems [*formerly* 623.864] in 623.856
- .865            Lifesaving equipment
- .866            Furniture
- .87            Power plants (Marine engineering)
- .872            Engines
- .872 2           Steam
- .872 3           Other  
                    Divide like 621.433–621.437, e.g., diesel engines  
                    623.872 36
- .872 8           Nuclear
- .873            Engine auxiliaries  
                    Boilers, piping, condensers, blowers, pumps, propellers,  
                    shafting
- .874            Fuels
- .88            Seamanship  
                    Art and science of handling ships  
                    Class rules of the road [*formerly* 623.88] in 340
- .882            Handling specific types of ships and boats  
                    Divide like 623.82, e.g., handling warships 623.882 5  
                    For special aspects, see 623.888

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- 623.888      **Special aspects**
- .888 2      **Knotting and splicing ropes and cables**
- .888 4      **Collision and grounding prevention**
- .888 5      **Wreckage studies**  
                Determination of causes of accidents thru examination of remains
- .888 7      **Rescue techniques**
- .89      **Navigation**  
                Selection and determination of course  
                *For celestial navigation, see 527*
- .892      **Geonavigation**  
                *For aids to geonavigation, see 623.893–623.894*
- .892 2      **Piloting**  
                Positioning ships by visual observation of objects of known position  
                *For approach and harbor piloting, see 623.892 9*
- .892 3      **Dead reckoning**
- .892 9      **Pilot guides (Approach and harbor piloting)**  
                Add area notations 4–9 to 623.892 9
- 623.893–623.894 Aids to geonavigation
- .893      **Electronic aids**
- 623.893 2 – 623.893 3 Direction- and position-finding devices
- .893 2      **Radio aids**  
                Radio beacons, radio compasses, loran
- .893 3      **Microwave aids**  
                Radar, racon, shoran
- .893 8      **Sounding devices**  
                Sonar, other echo and sound ranging devices



- 623.894      Other aids
- .894 2-.894 4      Markers
  - Divide like 627.922-627.924, e.g., lighthouses 623.894 2
- .894 5      Light lists
- .894 9      Tide and current tables

## 624      Civil engineering

*For specific branches of civil engineering, see 625-628*

### SUMMARY

- 624.1      Structural engineering
- .2      Bridges
- .3      Trussed and girder bridges
- .4      Tubular and box-girder bridges
- .5      Suspension bridges
- .6      Arch bridges
- .7      Compound bridges
- .8      Movable bridges
- .9      Roofs
- .1      Structural engineering

*For superstructures, see 624.2-624.9*

- .101      Philosophy and theory
  - Class structural theory in 624.17

### SUMMARY

- 624.15      Foundation engineering
- .16      Other supporting structures
- .17      Structural theory
- .18      Structural design in specific materials
- .19      Tunnels
- .15      Foundation engineering
- .151      Foundation soils
  - Mechanics of soils supporting structures
  - Including permafrost
- .151 3      Tests of strength
- .151 4      Content analysis
- .151 7      Surveys

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- 624.152      **Excavation**  
                Earthwork, shoring, rock excavation
- .153          **Foundation materials**  
                Divide like 620.12–620.19, e.g., iron 624.153 7
- 624.154–624.158 Specific types of foundations  
                Planning, structural analysis and design, construction methods
- .154          **Pile**
- .156          **Floating**  
                Platform and cantilever foundations
- .157          **Underwater (Subaqueous)**  
  
                624.157 1 – 624.157 6 Construction methods
- .157 1        **Cofferdam**
- .157 2        **Crib and open-caisson**
- .157 3        **Pneumatic-caisson**
- .157 4        **Freezing**
- .157 5        **Pneumatic forcing**
- .157 6        **Dredging**
- .158          **Pier**
- .16          **Other supporting structures**  
                Planning, structural analysis and design, construction methods  
                of piers, abutments, embankments, retaining walls
- .17          **Structural theory**  
                Class a specific application with the subject
- .171         **Structural analysis**  
                Reactions and displacements (deflections) occurring in  
                loaded structures  
                *For loads, stresses, strains, see 624.172–624.176*
- .171 3        **Statical determinacy**
- .171 4        **Deflections**
- .171 5        **Moment distribution**

- 624.172-624.176 Loads, stresses, strains
- 624.172 Loads
- Determination of dead and live loads, calculation of critical loadings
- For wind loads, see 624.175*
- .175 Wind loads
- .176 Stresses and strains
- Produced by loads, winds, earthquakes, vibrations, impacts, blasts, temperature changes
- .177 Structural design
- Determination of materials for structure and proportions of the structural elements
- For structural design in specific materials, see 624.18*
- 624.177 2 - 624.177 9 Structural elements
- .177 2 Beams, girders, slabs
- .177 3 Trusses and frames
- .177 4 Cables
- .177 5 Arches
- .177 6 Shells
- .177 9 Other elements
- .18 Structural design in specific materials
- .182 In metal
- .183 In masonry, ceramic and allied materials
- Brick, cement, concretes, tile, glass
- .184 In wood
- .189 In other materials
- .19 Tunnels
- Planning, structural analysis and design, construction methods
- .192 Mountain
- .193 Underground
- .194 Underwater
- .199 Other

► **624.2–624.9 Superstructures**

*For buildings, see 690*

**624.2 Bridges**

*For specific types of bridges, see 624.3–624.8*

.25 Structural analysis and design

.252 Loads, stresses, strains

.253 Floor systems

.257 Structural elements

[.27] Girder bridges

Class in 624.37

.28 Construction methods

► **624.3–624.8 Specific types of bridges**

Planning, structural analysis and design, construction methods

**.3 Trussed and girder bridges**

► **624.32–624.35 Trussed bridges**

*For trussed arch bridges, see 624.7*

.32 Trestle

.33 Continuous

Bridges consisting of beams, girders, or trusses extending uninterrupted over more than two supports

.35 Cantilever

.37 Girder bridges [*formerly 624.27*]

.372 Simple girder

.375 Covered girder

.378 Plate- and lattice-girder

*For plate-girder suspension bridges, see 624.7; box-girder bridges, 624.4*

## *Decimal Classification*

- 624.4      Tubular and box-girder bridges**
- .5          Suspension bridges**
  - For plate-girder suspension bridges, see 624.7*
- .52        Primitive**
  - Rope bridges of hammock and basket types
- .55        Modern**
  - Wire-cable, self-anchored, eyebar-chain, rope-strand cable suspension bridges
- .6          Arch bridges**
  - Hinged and hingeless
  - For trussed arch bridges, see 624.7*
- .63        Of masonry**
- .67        Of metal**
- .7          Compound bridges**
  - Plate-girder suspension bridges and trussed arch bridges
- .8          Movable bridges**
- .82        Bascule**
- .83        Swing**
- .84        Vertical-lift**
- .86        Transporter**
- .87        Pontoon**
- .9          Roofs**
  - Planning, structural design and analysis, construction methods
  - For covering, maintaining, repairing roofs, see 695.1–695.7*
- .92        Pitch and gable**
  - Hipt, gambrel, curb, saddle, lean-to, mansard roofs
- .93        Flat**
- .95        Domed, vaulted, shell**

## **625–628 Specific branches of civil engineering**

*For vehicles, see 629.1–629.4*

### **625 Railroads and their rolling stock, roads and highways**

Planning, structural analysis and design, construction methods, maintenance, repairs

#### **SUMMARY**

- 625.1 Railroads**
- .2 Railroad rolling stock**
- .3 Inclined, mountain, ship railways**
- .4 Rapid transit systems**
- .5 Cable and aerial railways**
- .6 Electric railways**
- .7 Roads and highways**
- .8 Artificial road surfaces**

#### **.1 Railroads**

Use 625.100 1 – 625.100 9 for standard subdivisions

*For special-purpose railways, see 625.3–625.6*

#### **.101 Standard-gage railroads**

#### **.102 Narrow-gage railroads**

#### **.103 Monorailroads**

#### **.11 Surveying**

Reconnaissance, preliminary surveys, final location surveys

Including roadway design, determination of grades, curves, switchbacks, right of way

#### **625.12–625.16 Permanent way**

*For maintenance and repairs, see 625.17*

#### **.12 Earthwork**

#### **.122 Soil surveys**

Soil profiles, tests and analysis of subgrade soils

#### **.123 Roadbed preparation**

Clearing and grubbing, compaction, excavation, rock cutting, earth and rock haulage, grading, formation of embankments, cuts, fills

## *Decimal Classification*

- 625.13 Protective structures
  - Including snow fences, permanent snowsheds, retaining walls
- .14 Superstructure
  - For rails and rail fastenings, see 625.15; track accessories, 625.16*
- .141 Ballast
- .143 Ties (Sleepers) and tie plates
- .144 Track laying
  - For tracks over ice cover, see 625.147*
- .146 Monorail tracks
- .147 Tracks over ice cover [*formerly 625.892*]
- .15 Rails and rail fastenings
  - Rail joints, tie pads, spikes, rail anchors
- .16 Track accessories
  - Design, construction, installation
- .163 Turnouts and crossings
  - Switches, frogs, sidings
- .165 Signals
- .17 Maintenance and repairs
  - Including snow removal operations
- .18 Railroad yards (Terminal layouts)
- .19 Model railroads and trains
- .2 Railroad rolling stock
  - Planning, structural analysis and design, construction methods, maintenance, repairs
  - Class rolling stock for special-purpose railways in 625.3–625.6
  - For model trains, see 625.19*
- 625.21–625.26 For standard- and narrow-gage railroads
- .21 Running gear
  - Wheels, axles, bearings, springs

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- **625.22–625.24 Specific types of cars**
- 625.22**      **Work cars (Nonrevenue rolling stock)**  
Locomotive cranes and shovels, handcars, railroad snowplows,  
ditchers, flangers, derrick cars, cabooses, wrecking cars
- .23**          **Passenger cars**  
Coaches, chair cars, diners, club cars, lounge cars, sleeping cars,  
baggage cars, mail cars
- .24**          **Freight cars**  
Refrigerator cars, automobile cars, boxcars, cattle cars, tank  
cars, hoppers, gondola cars, flatcars
- .25**          **Accessory equipment**  
Brakes, couplings, buffers
- .26**          **Locomotives**  
*For steam locomotives, see 621.13*
- .262**          **Gas-turbine**
- .263**          **Electric**
- .265**          **Air-compression powered**
- .266**          **Diesel and semidiesel**
- .27**          **Mechanical operation**
- .28**          **Monorail rolling stock**

---

### **625.3–625.6 Special-purpose railways**

Roadbeds, tracks and accessories, conveying apparatus, rolling  
stock

- .3**          **Inclined, mountain, ship railways**
- .32**          **Funicular**
- .33**          **Rack**
- .39**          **Ship**
- .4**          **Rapid transit systems**
- .42**          **Underground (Subways)**
- .44**          **Elevated**



## *Decimal Classification*

- 625.5 Cable and aerial railways**  
*For funicular railways, see 625.32*
- .6 Electric rail and trolley systems**  
Local and light interurban surface systems
- .65 Roadbeds, tracks and accessories**
- .66 Streetcars and trolleybuses**
- .7 Roads and highways**  
*For artificial road surfaces, see 625.8*
- .71 Rural and urban road systems**
- .72 Surveying**  
Reconnaissance, preliminary surveys, final location surveys  
Including highway design, determination of grades, curves, bankings
- .73 Earthwork**
- .732 Soil surveys**  
Including soil profiles, tests and analysis of subgrade soils
- .733 Foundation preparation**  
Clearing and grubbing, compaction, excavation, rock cutting, earth and rock haulage, grading, formation of embankments, cuts, fills
- .734 Protective structures**  
Drainage dikes, gutters, ditches, culverts, pipes, conduits
- .735 Highway materials and their tests**  
Road aggregates, bituminous and nonbituminous materials
- 625.74–625.75 Soil roads**
- .74 Stabilized soil roads**  
Granular stabilized, bituminous stabilized, gravel, soil-cement roads  
Including soil stabilization processes  
*For surfacing, see 625.75*
- .75 Surfacing**

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- 625.76      Maintenance and repairs
- .761      Damages and their repairs
- Patching, blading, dragging, scarifying, resurfacing,  
        resealing, shoulder maintenance
- Including frost damages
- .763      Snow and ice control measures
- Use of snowplows, power graders, bank-slicers, sanders,  
        stock-piled abrasives, snow guides, snow fences
- For municipal snow and ice removal, see 628.466*
- .77      Roadside improvement
- Design, construction, maintenance of highway rest areas,  
        parking turnouts, picnic areas
- .78      Subsurface structures
- Class drainage structures in 625.734
- .79      Other topics
- .792      Ice crossings [*formerly* 625.892]
- Ice and snow-compacted roads
- .8      Artificial road surfaces
- Design, construction, materials of vehicular thoroughfare and  
        pedestrian pavements
- For maintenance and repairs, see 625.76*
- 625.81–625.86 Vehicular pavements in specific  
        materials
- Class sidewalks in specific materials [*formerly* 625.81–625.86]  
        in 625.881–625.886
- .81      Flagstones
- .82      Brick and stone
- .83      Wood
- .84      Rigid materials
- Portland cement concrete and other concretes

## *Decimal Classification*

- 625.85–625.86 Flexible materials
- 625.85 Rock, sheet, sand asphalts and bituminous concrete
- .86 Macadam and telford surfaces
- .88 Sidewalks and auxiliary pavements
- .881–.886 Sidewalks in specific materials [*formerly*  
625.81–625.86]
- Divide like 625.81–625.86, e.g., brick sidewalks 625.882
- 
- 625.888–625.889 Auxiliary pavements
- .888 Curbs
- .889 Other
- Including driveways, parking aprons
- .89 Other surfaces
- [.892] Ice crossings and tracks over ice cover
- Class ice crossings in 625.792, tracks over ice cover in 625.147

## 626

## 627 Hydraulic engineering and construction works

Planning, structural analysis and design, construction methods, maintenance, repairs

*For sanitary engineering, see 628*

### SUMMARY

- 627.1 Inland waterways
- .2 Harbors, ports, roadsteads
- .3 Port installations
- .4 Flood control
- .5 Reclamation
- .7 Underwater operations
- .8 Dams and reservoirs
- .9 Other hydraulic structures

### Inland waterways

Improvement of navigable waterways

*For underwater operations, see 627.7*

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- 627.12 Rivers
  - Class lakes [*formerly* 627.12] in 627.14
  - .122 Silt and sedimentation
    - Measurement, analysis, preventive measures
  - .123 Water diversions for depth increase
    - Including construction of barrages
  - .124 River mouths and estuaries
  - .125 Applied hydrodynamics
    - Divide like 532.5, e.g., measurement of stream velocity 627.125 7
- .13 Canals
  - .131 Surveying
    - Reconnaissance, preliminary surveys, final location surveys
  - .132 Earthwork
    - Clearing and grubbing, excavation, rock cutting, earth and rock haulage, grading, formation of banks and embankments
  - .133 Protective devices
    - Bank protection and reinforcement
  - .134 Feeding
    - Water supply for canals
  - .135 Specific devices
    - .135 2 Locks, gates, sluices
    - .135 3 Lifts, inclines, ramps
    - .135 9 Other
  - .136 Maintenance and repairs
- 627.137–627.138 Specific types of canals
  - Class engineering and construction details in 627.131–627.136
- .137 Ship
- .138 Barge
- .14 Lakes [*formerly* 627.12]

## *Decimal Classification*

### **627.2 Harbors, ports, roadsteads**

*For port installations, see 627.3*

.22 Anchorages and mooring grounds

.23 Channels and fairways

.24 Protective devices

Jetties [*formerly 627.6*], breakwaters, seawalls

### **.3 Port installations**

*For navigation aids, see 627.92*

► 627.31–627.35 For merchant ships and ferryboats

.31 Docks

Structures for mooring vessels, and handling cargo and passengers

.312 Wharves, quays, berths

Docks parallel to shore

.313 Piers

Docks projecting into water

.32 Mooring structures (Dolphins)

.33 Port buildings

.34 Cargo-handling equipment

.35 Other terminal facilities

Including drydocks

.38 Small-boat installations (Marinas)

### **.4 Flood control**

*For dams and reservoirs, see 627.8*

.42 Water retention

By erection of dikes, seawalls, levees

.44 Water storage

In ponds, lakes, other reservoirs

## *Engineering and allied operations*

### 627.45 Water diversion

Thru enlargement of natural channels and construction of auxiliary channels

### **Reclamation**

#### ► 627.52–627.54 Land reclamation

*For shore reclamation, see 627.58*

#### .52 By irrigation

Construction and use of irrigation canals, flumes, conduits

*For dams, see 627.8*

#### .54 By drainage

#### .56 Water reclamation

Artificial recharge to ground water thru surface spreading and subsurface injection

#### .58 Shore reclamation

Prevention of beach erosion by construction of seawalls and stabilization of dunes

### [.6] **Jetties**

Class in 627.24

### .7 Underwater operations

Use 627.700 1 – 627.700 9 for standard subdivisions

#### .702 Construction operations

#### .703 Salvage operations

#### .704 Research operations

#### .705 Maintenance operations

---

#### ► 627.72–627.79 Specific operations

#### .72 Diving

#### .73 Dredging

#### .74 Blasting

#### .75 Drilling

#### .79 Other

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 627.8 Dams and reservoirs**
  - .81 General principles**
    - Planning, surveying, earthwork, materials
    - Class general principles applied to specific dams and reservoirs in **627.82–627.86**
  - **627.82–627.85 Specific kinds of dams**
    - For ancillary structures, see 627.88*
  - .82 Masonry**
    - Gravity, arch, arch-gravity, buttress dams
  - .83 Earth- and rock-fill**
    - Including rock-fill dams with concrete facing
  - .84 Movable**
    - Bear-trap, bridge, shutter and wicket, roller, frame, curtain dams
  - .85 Metal**
  - .86 Reservoirs**
    - For ancillary structures, see 627.88*
  - .88 Ancillary structures**
    - .882 Sluices, gates, penstocks**
    - .883 Spillways and weirs**
  - .9 Other hydraulic structures**
    - .92 Navigation aids**
      - .922 Lighthouses**
      - .923 Lightships**
      - .924 Beacons, buoys, daymarks**
    - .98 Artificial islands**
      - Radar and drilling platforms

**628 Sanitary and municipal engineering and construction works**

Planning, structural analysis and design, construction methods, maintenance, repairs

*For plumbing, see 696*

**SUMMARY**

- 628.1 Municipal water supply
- .2 Sewerage
- .3 Sewage treatment and disposal
- .4 Municipal sanitation
- .5 Industrial sanitation
- .7 Sanitary engineering for rural and isolated areas
- .9 Other branches

**.1 Municipal water supply**

**SUMMARY**

- 628.11 Sources
  - .13 Storage
  - .14 Collection and distribution systems
  - .15 Mains and service pipes
  - .16 Contamination and treatment
  - .17 Consumption
- .11 Sources
  - Lakes, rivers, springs, wells
- .13 Storage
  - Reservoirs, storage tanks, water towers
- .14 Collection and distribution systems
  - For mains and service pipes, see 628.15*
- .142 Intakes
  - Including intake conduits and aqueducts
- .144 Distribution systems
- .15 Mains and service pipes



## *Decimal Classification*

- 628.16 Contamination and treatment
- 
- 628.162–628.167 Treatment for potability and industrial use
- .162 Sedimentation and coagulation
- .164 Filtration
- .165 Aeration and deaeration
- .166 Chemical treatment
- .166 2 Disinfection
- Chlorination, superchlorination, dechlorination, ozone treatment, copper sulfate treatment, ultraviolet radiation
- .166 3 Fluoridation
- .166 6 Softening processes (Demineralization processes)
- .166 7 Defluoridation
- .167 Sea-water conversion
- .167 2 By distillation
- Including use of solar and nuclear energy
- .167 3 By electrolysis
- .167 6 With gas hydrates
- .168 Pollution and countermeasures
- Class treatment in 628.162–628.167
- 
- 628.168 2 – 628.168 5 Pollution from specific sources
- .168 2 From sewage [*formerly* 628.39] and domestic waste
- .168 3 From industrial waste [*formerly* 628.54]
- .168 4 From agricultural waste
- .168 5 From radioactive isotopes
- .168 6 Pollution surveys
- .168 8 Abatement programs
- .17 Consumption
- .172 Domestic
- .173 Industrial

- 628.174      Agricultural
  - .177      Measurement
  - Including meters
- 

►                      628.2–628.3 Municipal sewerage and sewage

- .2      Sewerage
  - .21     Systems
- 

►                      628.23–628.25 Sewers

- .23     Ventilation and deodorization
- .24     Design, construction, maintenance
- .25     Appurtenances
- Manholes, house connections, flushing apparatus, inlets, catch
- basins, regulators, valves, penstocks, ventilators, traps

- [.28]     Septic tanks
- Class in 628.742

- .29     Pumping stations

- .3      Sewage treatment and disposal
- 

►                      628.32–628.35 Treatment

- .32     Disinfection
  - .34     Primary treatment
  - Screening, skimming, primary sedimentation
  - .35     Secondary treatment
  - .352     Filtration (Trickling filter process)
  - .353     Secondary sedimentation
  - .354     Activated sludge process
  - Aeration, sludge and anaerobic digestion
- 

►                      628.36–628.39 Disposal

- .36     On land
- Including sewage irrigation
- .39     Into water
- Disposal into streams, sea, other bodies of water
- Class water pollution from sewage [*formerly 628.39*] in
- 628.118 2

## *Decimal Classification*

### **628.4      Municipal sanitation**

*For municipal water supply, see 628.1; municipal sewerage and sewage, 628.2–628.3*

#### **[.41–.43]      Unsewered sewage disposal**

*Class in 628.742*

#### **.44              Garbage and refuse**

##### **.442              Collection**

##### **.445              Treatment and disposal**

*By conversion into fertilizers [formerly 628.49], burial, incineration, reduction*

#### **.45              Comfort stations**

#### **.46              Street cleaning**

##### **.462              Sprinkling and sweeping**

##### **.466              Snow and ice removal**

#### **[.49]              Conversion of garbage and refuse into fertilizers**

*Class in 628.445*

### **.5              Industrial sanitation**

#### **.51              Industrial plants**

#### **[.52]              Effluvium control**

*Class in 628.53*

#### **.53              Air pollution and countermeasures**

*Including effluvium control [formerly 628.52]*

*Divide like 614.71, e.g., smog 628.532*

#### **.54              Waste treatment and disposal**

*Class water pollution from industrial wastes [formerly 628.54] in 628.168 3*

*For treatment of radioactive wastes, see 621.483 8*

### **.7              Sanitary engineering for rural and isolated areas**

#### **.72              Water supply**

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- 628.74 Sewage and other waste
  - .742 Unsewered sewage disposal [*formerly* 628.41–628.43]
    - Including septic tanks [*formerly* 628.28]
  - .744 Garbage and refuse disposal
- .9 Other branches
  - .92 Fire-fighting technology
    - 628.93–628.95 Municipal lighting
      - Lighting for streets, parks, amusement areas
      - For airport lighting systems, see* 629.136 5
  - .93 Gas
  - .95 Electric
  - .96 Extermination of insects and rodents

## 629 Other branches

Planning, structural analysis and design, construction methods, operations, maintenance, repairs

### SUMMARY

- 629.1 Flight vehicles and engineering
- .2 Motor land vehicles
- .3 Ground-effect machines
- .4 Astronautics
- .8 Automatic control engineering

### 629.1–629.4 Vehicles

Self-propelled conveyances with directional independence  
*For ships and boats, see* 623.82

- .1 Flight vehicles and engineering
  - For astronautics, see* 629.4
- .13 Aeronautics
  - Use 629.130 01 – 629.130 09 for standard subdivisions
- .130 1–.130 8 Standard subdivisions of flight

## *Decimal Classification*

- 629.130 9            Historical and geographical treatment of flight  
    .130 91           Transoceanic flights  
                    Divide like 551.461–551.469, e.g., transpacific flights  
                    629.130 915  
                    Do not use for other regional treatment
- .130 94–.130 9        Flights in specific continents, countries, localities  
                    Add area notations 4–9 to 629.130 9

### **SUMMARY**

- 629.132            Principles of flight  
    .133            Aircraft  
    .134            Aircraft details  
    .135            Aircraft instruments and equipment  
    .136            Airports  
    .138            Special developments
- .132            Principles of flight  
                    Mechanics and operational techniques
- .132 2            Aerostatics
- .132 3            Aerodynamics  
                    Use 629.132 300 1 – 629.132 300 9 for standard  
                    subdivisions
- .132 303–.132 306    At specific speed levels  
                    Divide like 533.273–533.276, e.g., supersonic  
                    aerodynamics 629.132 305
- .132 31            Gliding, soaring, diving
- .132 32            Airflow  
                    *For boundary layers, see 629.132 37*
- .132 322            Incompressible
- .132 323            Compressible
- .132 33            Lift and thrust
- .132 34            Drag (Air resistance)
- .132 35            Pressure distribution
- .132 36            Stability and control
- .132 362            Aeroelasticity, flutter, vibration

## *Engineering and allied operations*

- 629.132 364                      Moments of inertia  
                                        Roll, pitch, yaw  
                                        Including restoring torques and damping
- .132 37                          Boundary layers  
                                        Region of retarded airflow near surface of moving  
                                        aircraft due to viscosity of air
- .132 38                          Propulsion principles
- .132 4                            Weather conditions and aerodynamics
- .132 5                            Flying and related topics
- 629.132 51 – 629.132 52 Flight engineering
- .132 51                          Navigation  
                                        Selection and determination of course  
                                        *For celestial navigation, see 527*
- .132 52                          Piloting  
                                        Including operation of lighter-than-air aircraft [*for-*  
                                        *merly 629.133 2*], of heavier-than-air aircraft other  
                                        than airplanes [*formerly 629.133 3*]
- .132 54                          Flight guides  
                                        Maps, charts, logbooks, pilot guides
- .132 55                          Wreckage studies  
                                        Determination of causes of accidents thru examination  
                                        of remains
- .132 6                            Command systems  
                                        Geomagnetic, celestial, and electronic systems of  
                                        controlling guided aircraft
- .133                              Aircraft  
                                        *For aircraft details, see 629.134*
- .133 1                            Models and modelmaking  
                                        Divide like 629.133 2 – 629.133 3, e.g., models of  
                                        helicopters 629.133 135

## Decimal Classification

---

- 629.133 2      **Lighter-than-air aircraft**  
Class operation of lighter-than-air aircraft in 629.132 52,  
specific details in 629.134 [*both formerly 629.133 2*]
- .133 22      **Free and captive balloons**
- .133 24      **Airships (Dirigible balloons)**  
*For specific types of dirigibles, see*  
629.133 25 – 629.133 27
- 
- 629.133 25 – 629.133 27 **Specific types of dirigibles**
- .133 25      **Rigid**
- .133 26      **Semirigid**
- .133 27      **Nonrigid**
- .133 3      **Heavier-than-air aircraft**  
Class operation of heavier-than-air aircraft other than  
airplanes in 629.132 52, specific details in 629.134 [*both*  
*formerly 629.133 3*]
- .133 32      **Kites**
- .133 33      **Gliders**
- .133 34      **Airplanes**  
Powered craft with stationary wings  
*For rocket planes, see 629.133 38*
- .133 343      **Piston-driven landplanes**
- .133 347      **Seaplanes (Hydroplanes)**
- .133 348      **Amphibian planes**
- .133 349      **Jet-propelled landplanes**
- .133 35      **Rotary-wing aircraft**  
Helicopters, autogyros, other vertical-lift crafts
- .133 36      **Orthopters (Ornithopters)**
- .133 38      **Rocket planes**  
Rocket-propelled, high-speed, high-altitude test  
vehicles
- .133 39      **Other**

## *Engineering and allied operations*

629.134

### **Aircraft details**

Including specific details of lighter-than-air aircraft [*formerly* 629.133 2], of heavier-than-air aircraft other than airplanes [*formerly* 629.133 3]

*For aircraft instruments and equipment, see 629.135*

### **SUMMARY**

- 629.134 1      **Structural analysis and design**
  - .134 2      **Manufacturing and assembling techniques**
  - .134 3      **Parts and details**
  - .134 4      **Interiors and special equipment**
  - .134 5      **Tests**
  - .134 6      **Maintenance and repairs**
- 

629.134 1 – 629.134 2    **Of aircraft in general**

*For aircraft tests, maintenance, repairs, see 629.134 5 – 629.134 6*

- .134 1      **Structural analysis and design**
- .134 2      **Manufacturing and assembling techniques**
  - Including materials, tests, equipment
- .134 3      **Parts and details**
  - Structural analysis and design, construction methods, maintenance, repairs
- .134 31      **Airframes**
  - Class a specific component part with the subject
  - 629.134 32 – 629.134 33    **Airfoils**
  - Class propeller blades in 629.134 36
- .134 32      **Wings and wing accessories**
- .134 33      **Control surfaces (Movable airfoils)**
  - Fins, flaps, ailerons, elevators, rudders, stabilizers
- .134 34      **Fuselages**



## *Decimal Classification*

- 
- 629.134 35 – 629.134 36 Power plants
- 629.134 35 Engines, fuels, propellants
- .134 351 Fuels and propellants
- Chemical and nuclear
- Class fuels and propellants for a specific engine with the engine
- 
- 629.134 352 – 629.134 353 Air-breathing engines
- .134 352 Reciprocating and compound engines
- Piston and compound piston-turbine engines
- .134 353 Gas-turbine and jet engines
- .134 353 2 Turboprop
- .134 353 3 Turbojet
- .134 353 4 Turboramjet
- .134 353 5 Ramjet
- .134 353 6 Pulse-jet
- .134 353 7 Fan-jet
- .134 354 Self-sustaining engines
- Rocket engines
- .134 36 Propellers (Air screws)
- .134 37 Rigging and bracing equipment
- .134 38 Other
- .134 381 Take-off and landing gear
- .134 386 Escape equipment
- Pilot-seat ejectors, capsule cockpits, parachutes
- .134 4 Interiors and special equipment
- .134 42 Comfort devices
- Soundproofing, heating, ventilating, air conditioning, pressurization
- .134 43 Safety devices
- Safety belts, life rafts, fire-prevention and first-aid equipment

- 629.134 5 – 629.134 6 Aircraft tests, maintenance, repairs  
Class tests, maintenance, repairs of aircraft parts in 629.134 3

629.134 5	Tests
.134 52	Factory inspection
.134 53	Flight tests (Performance tests)
.134 6	Maintenance and repairs
.135	Aircraft instruments and equipment

- 629.135 1 – 629.135 3 Instruments

.135 1	For navigation
	Radio compasses (direction finders), air-mileage indicators, air-position indicators, landing and navigation lights
	Class automatic pilots, altimeters, air-speed indicators, vertical-speed indicators [ <i>all formerly 629.135 1</i> ] in 629.135 2
.135 2	For flight operations
	Automatic pilots, altimeters, air-speed indicators, vertical-speed indicators [ <i>all formerly 629.135 1</i> ], turn-and-bank indicators, accelerometers, Machmeters, gyrohorizons, directional gyros
.135 3	For power-plant monitoring

- 629.135 4 – 629.135 5 Equipment

.135 4	Electrical
.135 5	Electronic
.135 9	Other

.136 Airports

.136 1	Specific types
	Class details in 629.136 3 – 629.136 8
.136 12	Airstrips
.136 13	Commercial land airports
.136 14	Seadromes
.136 15	Floating airports
.136 16	Heliports

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 629.136 3 – 629.136 8 Details
- 629.136 3      Runways
  - .136 34      Pavements
  - .136 35      Drainage systems
  - .136 37      Snow removal and compaction
  - .136 4      Terminal buildings
  - .136 5      Lighting systems
    - Control-tower and boundary lighting systems
  - .136 6      Air traffic control systems
    - Radio and radar control devices
  - .136 8      Fire-fighting equipment
  - .138      Special developments
  - [.138 8]      Astronautics
    - Class in 629.4

### **.2      Motor land vehicles**

- [.213]      Laws and regulations
  - Class law in 340, taxation in 336.2, registration, licensing, inspection in 350.875–350.878, wreckage studies in 629.282 6

### **SUMMARY**

- 629.22      Types
- .23      Design, materials, construction
- .24      Chassis
- .25      Power plants
- .26      Bodies and bodywork
- .27      Body accessories
- .28      Tests, operation, maintenance, repairs
- .22      Types
- .221      Models and modelmaking
  - Divide like 629.222–629.229, e.g., models of racing cars 629.221 8

- 629.222-629.228 Gasoline-, oil-, man-powered vehicles  
*For specific details, see 629.23-629.27*

- 629.222 Passenger automobiles  
.222 2 For private transportation  
Including sport cars, three-wheel cars  
Arrange alphabetically by name of car  
.222 3 For public transportation  
.222 32 Taxicabs  
.222 33 Buses  
.222 34 Ambulances

- 629.223-629.224 Trucks  
*Class comprehensive works in 629.224*

- .223 For light trucking  
.224 For heavy trucking  
Moving vans, freight and dump trucks  
.225 Tractors  
Four-wheeled and endless-belt tractors  
.226 Trailers  
.227 Cycles  
.227 1 Monocycles  
.227 2 Bicycles and motor bicycles  
.227 3 Tricycles  
.227 5 Motorcycles  
.227 6 Tandems  
.228 Racing cars  
Karts (midget cars), conventional and converted racing cars  
.229 Other  
.229 2 Steam automobiles  
.229 3 Electric automobiles  
.229 4 Air-compression automobiles

## *Decimal Classification*

### 629.23–629.27 Specific details

629.23      Design, materials, construction  
                 Class design and construction of parts in 629.24–629.27

.231          Structural analysis and design

.232          Materials

*For specific tests of materials, see 629.233*

.233          Specific tests of materials

.234          Manufacturing techniques

                 Including factory inspection

### 629.24–629.27 Parts

                 Design, construction, maintenance, repairs

.24          Chassis

*For power plants, see 629.25*

.242          Supporting frames

.243          Springs and shock absorbers

.244          Transmission devices

.245          Rear axles, differentials, drive shafts

.246          Brakes

.247          Front axles and steering gear

.248          Wheels

                 Rims, hubs, bearings, tires

.25          Power plants

                 Use 629.250 01 – 629.250 09 for standard subdivisions

.250 3–.250 6      Specific types of engines

                 Divide like 621.433–621.436, e.g., diesel engines  
                 629.250 6

                 Class parts and auxiliary systems in 629.252–629.258

## *Engineering and allied operations*



### **629.252–629.258 Parts and auxiliary systems**

**629.252**

#### **Motor parts**

Cylinders, piston assemblies, crankcases, bearings, valve mechanisms, manifolds, mufflers

**.253**

#### **Fuels and fuel systems**

Carburetors and carburetion, vaporizers, fuel controls, specific fuels

**.254**

#### **Ignition and electrical systems**

Batteries, generators, spark plugs, distributors, ignition controls

*For lighting equipment, see 629.271*

**.255**

#### **Lubricants and lubricating systems**

**.256**

#### **Cooling systems**

Radiators, fans, pumps, controls, antifreeze solutions

**.257**

#### **Starting devices**

**.258**

#### **Control devices**

Valve, throttle, spark control devices

**.26**

#### **Bodies and bodywork**

Interior trim and external finish

Including windshields, windows, running boards, fenders

*For body accessories, see 629.27*

**.27**

#### **Body accessories**

**.271**

#### **Lighting equipment**

**.273**

#### **Panel instrumentation**

**.275**

#### **Hardware**

Locks, handles, hinges

**.276**

#### **Bumpers**

**.277**

#### **Heaters and air conditioners**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 629.28 Tests, operation, maintenance, repairs
  - .282 Tests and related topics
    - For factory inspection, see 629.234*
  - .282 4 Road tests (Performance tests)
  - .282 5 Periodic inspection and roadability tests
  - .282 6 Wreckage studies [*formerly 629.213*]
    - Determination of mechanical failure thru examination of

### 629.283–629.284 Operation

Methods of driving, factors in safe driving

- .283 Of passenger cars
  - Divide like 629.222, e.g., driving buses 629.283 33
- .284 Of other types of motor vehicles
  - Divide like 629.223–629.229, e.g., driving freight trucks 629.284 4
- .286 Garages and service stations
  - Tools, equipment, services
  - For maintenance and repairs, see 629.287–629.288*

### 629.287–629.288 Maintenance and repairs

Class maintenance and repairs of parts in 629.24–629.27

- .287 By mechanics and technical personnel
  - Washing, lubrication, adjustment and replacement of parts
  - Arrange alphabetically by name of car
- .288 By nontechnical personnel
  - Preventive maintenance and repair
  - Arrange alphabetically by name of car

- 629.3      **Ground-effect machines**
  - .31          General principles
  - .313        Lift systems
  - .314        Propulsion systems
  - .317        Structural analysis and design
  - .32        Air-cushion vehicles
    - .322        Overland
    - .324        Overwater
    - .325        Amphibious
- .4        **Astronautics [*formerly* 629.138 8]**

**SUMMARY**

- 629.41    General principles
- .42       Propulsion systems
- .43       Flight of unmanned vehicles
- .44       Space stations
- .45       Flight of manned vehicles
- .46       Unmanned vehicles
- .47       Manned vehicles
- .49       Special developments
- .41       General principles
- .411      Astrodynamics
  - Application of celestial mechanics to space flight
  - Divide like 521.1–521.4, e.g., orbit determination 629.411 3
- .415      Planetary atmospheres
  - Exit and entry problems
- .415 1    Aerodynamics
- .415 2    Thermodynamics
- .418      Weightlessness
- .42       Propulsion systems
  - Power plants (rockets) and ancillary instrumentation and equipment
- .422      Specific systems
- .422 2    Thermochemical
  - Liquid and solid propellant rocket systems



629.422 3	Nuclear Fission and fusion systems
.422 4	Photon
.422 5	Magnetohydrodynamic Including plasma and ion rockets
.422 9	Other

► **629.423–629.424 Materials**

**Class materials for a specific type of rocket with the rocket system**

.423	Construction materials
.424	Fuels
.43	Flight of unmanned vehicles
.432	Launching devices
.433	Guidance and homing systems
.434	Artificial satellites
	<i>For use of instrumental vehicles in space probes and soundings, see 629.435</i>
.435	Space probes and soundings
	Including use of instrumental vehicles
.435 2	Ionospheric and near-space soundings
.435 3	Lunar probes
.435 4	Other exploratory operations
	Divide like 523.4, e.g., Venusian probes 629.435 42
.437	Communication and tracking systems
.44	Space stations
.45	Flight of manned vehicles
	Use 629.450 01 – 629.450 09 for standard subdivisions
.450 1	Projected accounts
.452	Launching and take-off devices

## *Engineering and allied operations*

---

- 629.453 Guidance, homing, navigation systems
- .454 Lunar flights
- .455 Interplanetary flights
  - Divide like 523.4, e.g., flights to Mars 629.455 3
- .457 Communication and tracking systems
- .458 Piloting
- .458 2 Systems
- .458 3 Orbital rendezvous
- .458 8 Atmospheric entry

---

### 629.46–629.47 Spacecraft

Structural analysis and design, construction methods, maintenance, repairs

*For propulsion systems, see 629.42*

- .46 Unmanned vehicles
  - Including expandable space structures
- .47 Manned vehicles
- .471 Structural analysis and design
- .472 Materials
- .473 Construction methods
- .474 Auxiliary power systems

---

### 629.477–629.478 Logistics

- .477 Life-support systems
  - Control of temperature, humidity, air supply and pressure, wastes
  - Including space suits, food supply
- .478 Ground-support systems
  - Including maintenance, repairs, preflight checks
- .49 Special developments

- 629.8 Automatic control engineering**
- .82 Open-loop systems**
    - Mechanisms in which outputs have no effect on input signals
  - .83 Closed-loop systems (Feedback systems)**
    - Mechanisms which maintain prescribed relationships between the controlled outputs and the inputs
  - .831 General principles**
    - .831 2 Mathematical design, analysis, synthesis**
    - .831 3 Circuitry**
    - .831 4 Feedback characteristics**
    - .831 5 System components**
      - Error detectors, amplifiers, error correctors
    - .831 7 Construction and assembly methods**
    - .831 8 Maintenance and repairs**
- 
- **629.832–629.833 Linear systems**
- .832 Servomechanisms**
    - Single-loop position-control systems
  - .833 Multiple-loop systems**
  - .836 Nonlinear systems**
    - Including adaptive control systems
  - .89 Special developments**

## **630 Agriculture and agricultural industries**

Class accounting for agriculture in **657.863**, business management in **658**  
[both formerly 630]

### **.1 Philosophy and theory**

#### **.11 Agricultural life**

Add area notations 1–9 to 630.11

#### **[.15] Scientific aspects**

Do not use; class in **630.21–630.29**

### **.2 Miscellany**

#### **.202 Synopses, outlines, manuals**

#### **.203 Agriculture as a profession, occupation, hobby**

#### **.204 Works for specific types of users**

Divide like **920.1–928.9**, e.g., agriculture for missionaries  
**630.204 2**

#### **.207 Inventions and identification marks**

Divide like standard subdivision **027**, e.g., patents **630.207 2**

#### **.208 Techniques, apparatus, equipment**

#### **.21–.29 Scientific aspects**

Divide like **510–590**, e.g., agricultural physics **630.23**

### **.7 Study and teaching**

#### **.71 In educational institutions and by agricultural agencies**

##### **.711 Colleges and universities**

Add area notations 1–9 to 630.711

##### **.712 Secondary schools**

Add area notations 1–9 to 630.712

##### **.715 Extension work [formerly 630.717]**

*For extension work for young people, see 630.717*

##### **.715 2 Institutes and workshops**

##### **.715 3 Radio and television classes**

##### **.715 4 Correspondence courses**

##### **.717 Extension work for young people**

Class general extension work [formerly 630.717] in **630.715**



## **631-632 General principles**

Class general principles applied to specific crops in 633-635

### **631 Farming**

#### **SUMMARY**

- 631.2    **Farm structures**
- .3      **Farm tools, machinery, appliances**
- .4      **Soil and soil conservation**
- .5      **Crop production**
- .6      **Reclamation and drainage**
- .7      **Irrigation and water conservation**
- .8      **Fertilizers and soil conditioners**
  
- .2      **Farm structures**
  - Description, maintenance, use and place in farming
  
- .21     **Farmhouses**
- .22     **Barns and other general-purpose buildings**
- .23     **Granaries, silos, elevators**
- .25     **Machine and equipment sheds**
- .27     **Fences, walls, hedges**
- .28     **Roads and bridges**
  
- .3      **Farm tools, machinery, appliances**
  - Description, maintenance (farm mechanics), use and place in farming
  - Class uses in a specific operation with the operation
  
- .304    **Workshops ( Machine-shop practice )**
  
- .31     **Soil-working tools and machines**
- .312    **Plows**
- .313    **Harrows**
- .314    **Rollers and crushers**
- .315    **Hand-gardening tools**
  - Hoes, scrapers, weeders, rakes
- .316    **Cultivators**

*Agriculture and agricultural industries*

- 631.33      Planting and sowing equipment  
              Seeders, planters, transplanters, fertilizer spreaders
- .34          Equipment for care and shelter of plants  
              Grafting and pruning equipment, greenhouses, cold frames, hot  
              beds, supports, receptacles
- .35          Harvesting equipment  
              Mowers, reapers, combines, pickers, strippers, toppers
- .36          Equipment used in preparing for storage and transport  
              Threshers, cleaning tools, silo machinery, balers, packers
- .37          Power and power machinery
- .371         Sources of power  
              Human, animal, mechanical, electric power
- .372         Tractors
- .373         Transport equipment  
              Wheelbarrows, wagons, trucks
- .4          Soil and soil conservation  
              *For soil improvement, see 631.6–631.8*
- .407 2       Research [*formerly* 631.42]
- [.409]       Historical and geographical treatment  
              Do not use; class in 631.49
- 
- 631.41–631.42 Soil chemistry
- .41          Chemical constituents  
              *For testing for soil fertility, see 631.42*
- .416         Inorganic
- .417         Organic
- .42          Testing for soil fertility  
              Class research [*formerly* 631.42] in 631.407 2

## *Decimal Classification*

---

631.43	Soil physics
.432	Moisture content
.433	Gas content
.436	Temperature
.44	Soil classification schemes
.45	Control of soil erosion
.451	Mulch tillage
.452	Crop rotation and cover crops
.455	Contouring and terracing
.456	Strip cropping
.459	Other measures
.46	Soil microbiology
.47	Soil surveys
	Mapping and tabulating soil types and phases in a given area thru sampling soil horizons and profiles
	Add area notations 3-9 to 631.47
.49	Historical and geographical treatment
	Add area notations 1-9 to 631.49
.5	Crop production

### SUMMARY

631.51	Tillage (Soil preparation)
.52	Propagational crops
.53	Propagation methods
.54	Special cultivation techniques
.55	Harvesting
.56	Operations subsequent to harvesting
.57	Varieties
.58	Special cultivation methods
.51	Tillage (Soil preparation)
.52	Propagational crops
	Production and development
.521	Seeds
.523	Development of hybrids and new varieties
.526	Bulbs and tubers

*Agriculture and agricultural industries*

---

- 631.53 Propagation methods
  - .531 With seeds
  - .532 With bulbs, tubers, plant divisions
  - .533 With suckers, runners, proliferous buds
  - .534 By layering
  - .535 With cuttings
  - .536 By transplanting
  - .537 With nursery stock
- .54 Special cultivation techniques
  - .541 Grafting
  - .542 Pruning
  - .544 Forcing
  - .545 Retarding
  - .546 Training on poles, trellises, walls
- .55 Harvesting
  - Mowing, reaping, stacking
- .558 Yields
- .56 Operations subsequent to harvesting
  - Threshing, husking, shelling, cleaning, winnowing, grading, storing, packing
- .57 Varieties
- .58 Special cultivation methods
  - .581 Fallowing
  - .582 Crop rotation
  - .585 Soilless culture (Hydroponics)
  - .586 Dry farming
  - .587 Irrigation farming
    - .587 2 By furrow system
    - .587 3 By border system
    - .587 4 By ridge system
    - .587 5 By contour flood system



## *Decimal Classification*



### **631.6–631.8 Soil improvement**

- 631.6 Reclamation and drainage**  
*For irrigation and water conservation, see 631.7*
- .61 **Clearing**  
Removal of natural cover to make land suitable for agricultural use
- .62 **Drainage and ditching**
- .7 **Irrigation and water conservation**
- [.75] **Cost of water**  
Class in 338.22–338.25
- .8 **Fertilizers and soil conditioners**
- .807 **Study and teaching**  
Class research in 631.88
- .81 **General principles of fertilizers**  
Class general principles applied to specific kinds of fertilizers in 631.83–631.87
- [.810 9] **Historical and geographical treatment**  
Do not use; class in 631.819
- .811 **Nutritive principles**
- .813 **Complete fertilizers**  
Composition, proportions of nutrient elements
- .816 **Methods of application**
- .819 **Historical and geographical treatment**  
Add area notations 1–9 to 631.819
- .82 **Soil conditioners**
- .821 **For control of acidity**  
Use of lime, dolomite, gypsum, plaster of Paris, marl

## *Agriculture and agricultural industries*

- 631.825      For control of alkalinity  
                 Use of ferrous sulfate, sulfur, other alkali-combating materials
- .826          For texture  
                 Use of sphagnum, peat, polyelectrolytes and other synthetic soil conditioners
- 631.83–631.87 Specific kinds of fertilizers
- .83          Potassium fertilizers  
                 Potassium chloride and sulfate
- .84          Nitrogen fertilizers
- .841          Ammonium, urea, cyanamide fertilizers  
                 Ammonium chloride and sulfate, urea, calurea, calcium cyanamide  
                 *For ammonium nitrate, see 631.842*
- .842          Nitrate fertilizers  
                 Sodium, calcium, ammonium nitrates
- .843          Abattoir residues  
                 *For bone meal, see 631.85*
- .847          Other methods of soil nitrification  
                 Soil inoculation with nitrifying bacteria, use of nitrifying crops
- .85          Phosphorus fertilizers  
                 Superphosphates, metaphosphates, bone meal, basic slag
- 631.86–631.87 Organic fertilizers  
                 *For abattoir residues, see 631.843*
- .86          Animal manures
- .861          Farmyard manures
- .866          Guano
- .869          Sewage sludge

## *Decimal Classification*

- 631.87      Vegetable manures and other organic fertilizers
  - .874          Green manures
  - .875          Compost
  - .877          Converted household garbage
  - .88          Research and development
    - Class research and development of a specific kind of fertilizer or soil conditioner with the kind

## **632      Plant injuries, diseases, pests, and their control**

---

### **632.1–632.2 Injuries**

- .1      **From the elements**
  - .11          Low temperature
  - .12          High temperature and drought
  - .14          Hail
  - .15          Lightning
  - .16          Wind and rain
  - .17          Floods
  - .18          Fires
- .2      **From galls**

---

### **632.3–632.4 Diseases**

*For viral and rickettsial diseases, see 632.8*

- .3      **Bacterial diseases**
- .4      **Fungus diseases**
  - Rusts, smuts, bunts, mildews, molds, rots
  - Divide like 589.2, e.g., smuts 632.427

---

### **632.5–632.7 Pests**

*For pest control, see 632.9*

- .5      **Plants**
  - .52          Parasitic plants
  - .58          Weeds

Class botanical aspects of weeds [*formerly 632.58*] in 581.65

## *Agriculture and agricultural industries*

### **632.6 Animals**

Divide like 592–599, e.g., snails 632.643

*For insects, see 632.7*

### **.7 Insects**

Divide like 595.7, e.g., locusts 632.726

### **.8 Viral and rickettsial diseases**

### **.9 Pest control**

Class control of a specific pest with the pest

### **.93 Plant quarantine**

### **.94 Control methods and apparatus**

Spraying, dusting, fumigating

*For control materials, see 632.95; biological control, 632.96*

### **.95 Control materials (Pesticides)**

### **.951 Insecticides, rodenticides, vermicides**

### **.952 Fungicides and algicides**

### **.953 Bactericides**

### **.954 Herbicides (Weed killers)**

### **.96 Biological control**

Introduction of natural enemies of pests, e.g., praying mantis

## **633–635 Production of specific crops**

Divide each subdivision identified by \* like 631.5, e.g., harvesting corn 633.155; add 9 to each subdivision identified by \* and divide like 632, e.g., control of corn borers 633.159 78

### **633 Field crops**

Large-scale production of crops, other than fruit, intended for agricultural purposes and industrial processing

Use 633.001–633.009 for standard subdivisions

### **.08 \*Production, injuries, diseases, pests, and their control**

\* Divide as instructed under 633–635

## *Decimal Classification*

### **SUMMARY**

- 633.1 Cereal grains**
- .2 Forage crops**
- .3 Legumes and other forage crops**
- .4 Root and tuber crops**
- .5 Fiber crops**
- .6 Sugar and starch plants**
- .7 Alkaloidal crops**
- .8 Other plants grown for industrial processing**

#### **633.1 Cereal grains**

- .11 \*Wheat (Triticum)**
- .12 \*Buckwheat (Fagopyrum)**
- .13 \*Oats (Avena)**
- .14 \*Rye (Secale cereale)**
- .15 \*Corn (Zea mays)**
- .16 \*Barley (Hordeum)**
- .17 Millet and related crops**
- .171 \*Millets (Panicum)**
  - Panic grass, broomcorn millet, proso (Panicum miliaceum)
- .174 \*Grain sorghums (Andropogon)**
  - Broomcorn, shallu, kafir corn, durra (Jerusalem corn)
- .18 \*Rice (Oryza sativa)**
- .2 Forage crops**
  - Use 633.200 1 – 633.200 9 for standard subdivisions
  - For legumes and other forage crops, see 633.3*
- .208 \*Production, injuries, diseases, pests, and their control**



#### **633.21–633.25 Pasture grasses**

- .21 Bluegrasses (Poa)**
- .22 \*Orchard grass (Dactylis glomerata)**
- .23 \*Redtop and other bent grasses (Agrostis)**
- .24 \*Timothy (Phleum)**

**\* Divide as instructed under 633–635**

## *Agriculture and agricultural industries*

633.25

### **Cereal grasses**

Divide like 633.1, e.g., rye grasses 633.254

.3

### **Legumes and other forage crops**



633.31–633.37 Pasture legumes

.31

\*Alfalfas (*Medicago sativa*)

.32

\*True clovers (*Trifolium*)

Red, white, crimson, alsike clovers

.33

\*Cowpeas (*Vigna sinensis*)

.34

\*Soybeans (*Soja max*)

.35

\*Vetches (*Vicia sativa*)

.36

Lespedeza and related legumes

.364

\*Bush clovers (*Lespedeza*)

.366

\*Sweet clovers (*Melilotus*)

.367

\*Lupines (*Lupinus*)

.368

\*Peanuts (*Arachis hypogaea*)

.369

\*Field peas (*Pisum arvense*)

.37

Other legumes

.374

\*Trefoils (*Lotus*)

.39

Other forage crops

.4

### **Root and tuber crops**

.41

Beets (*Beta vulgaris*)

.42

Turnips (*Brassica rapa*)

.43

\*Carrots (*Daucus carota*)

.44

\*Parsnips (*Pastinaca sativa*)

.49

Tubers

.491

\*Potatoes (*Solanum tuberosum*)

.492

\*Sweet potatoes (*Ipomoea batatas*)

.494

\*Jerusalem artichokes (*Helianthus tuberosus*)

^ Divide as instructed under 633–635

## *Decimal Classification*

### **633.5 Fiber crops**

#### ▶ 633.51–633.56 Soft fibers

.51 \*Cotton (*Gossypium*)

.52 \*Flax (*Linum*)

.53 \*Hemp (*Cannabis sativa*)

.54 \*Jute (*Corchorus*)

.55 \*Ramie (*Boehmeria*)

.56 Other soft fibers

China jute (*Abutilon*), Ambari hemp (*Hibiscus cannabinus*),  
Indian hemp (*Apocynum*)

.57 Hard fibers

*For basketwork and wickerwork plants, see 633.58*

.571 \*Manila hemp (*Musa textiles*)

.576 \*Pineapple fibers (*Ananas sativus*)

.577 Agave fibers (*Agave sisalina*)

.58 Basketwork and wickerwork plants

Coconut (coir), raffia, esparto, rush, reed, bamboo, willow  
(osier) fibers

.59 Other fibers

.6 Sugar and starch plants

#### ▶ 633.61–633.64 Sugar plants

.61 \*Sugar cane (*Saccharum officinarum*)

.62 \*Sweet sorghums (*Andropogon sorghum*)

.63 \*Sugar beets (*Beta vulgaris*)

.64 \*Sugar maples (*Acer saccharum*)

.68 Starch plants

Arrowroot, sago palm, cassava

<sup>1</sup> Divide as instructed under 633–635

*Agriculture and agricultural industries*

**633.7 Alkaloidal crops**

- .71 \*Tobacco (*Nicotiana tabacum*)
- .72 \*Tea (*Thea sinensis*)
- .73 \*Coffee (*Coffea*)
- .74 \*Cacao, cocoa, chocolate (*Theobroma cacao*)
- .75 \*Poppies (*Papaver somniferum*)
- .76 \*Cola (*Cola acuminata*)
- .77 \*Maté (*Ilex paraguayensis*)
- .78 \*Chicory (*Cichorium intybus*)
- .8 Other plants grown for industrial processing
- .81 For perfumes

► 633.82–633.84 For flavorings

- .82 Aromatic flavorings
  - Vanilla, mint, wintergreen, sassafras, hops
  - Class ginger [*formerly* 633.82] in 633.83
- .83 Pungent flavorings (Sweet spices)
  - Ginger [*formerly* 633.82], allspice, clove, cinnamon, nutmeg
- .84 Hot spices (Condiments)
  - Black pepper, paprika, chili, mustard, capers, horseradish
- .85 For nonvolatile oils
- .86 For dyes
- .87 For tannin
- .88 For medicinals
  - Divide like 583–589, e.g., digitalis 633.883 8
  - For poppies, see* 633.75
- .89 For other purposes
- .895 For rubber and other resins
- .895 2 \*Rubber-tree plantations [*formerly* 634.986 5]

\* Divide as instructed under 633–635



633.895 9                      Other resin-producing plants  
           .898                      For insecticides

**634            Orchards, small fruit, forestry**

**SUMMARY**

- 634.1      Pomaceous fruits**
  - .2      **Drupaceous fruits**
  - .3      **Citrus and moraceous fruits**
  - .4      **Minor fruits**
  - .5      **Nut fruits**
  - .6      **Tropical and subtropical tree fruits**
  - .7      **Berries and herbaceous fruits**
  - .8      **Grapes**
  - .9      **Forestry**
- 

►                                      **634.1–634.6 Orchards**

- .1            Pomaceous fruits**
- .11      **\*Apples (Malus)**  
                     Including crab apples [*formerly 634.12*]
- [.12]      **Crab apples**  
                     Class in 634.11
- .13      **\*Pears (Pyrus)**
- .14      **\*Quince (Cydonia)**
- .15      **\*Medlar (Mespilus)**
- .16      **\*Loquats (Eriobotrya)**
- .2            Drupaceous fruits**
- .21      **\*Apricots (Prunus armeniaca)**
- .22      **\*Plums (Prunus domestica)**
- .23      **\*Cherries (Prunus cerasus)**  
                     Including varieties of cherries [*formerly 634.24*]
- [.24]      **Varieties of cherries**  
                     Class in 634.23
- .25      **\*Peaches (Amygdalus persica)**  
                     Including nectarines [*formerly 634.26*]

\* Divide as instructed under 633–635

*Agriculture and agricultural industries*

[634.26]

Nectarines

Class in 634.25

.3

**Citrus and moraceous fruits**



634.31–634.34 Citrus fruits

.31

**\*Oranges**

Including varieties of oranges [*formerly* 634.32]

.32

**Grapefruit**

Class varieties of oranges [*formerly* 634.32] in 634.31

[.324]

**Kumquats**

Class in 634.34

.33

**Citron group**

.331

**\*Citrons (Citrus medica)**

.334

**\*Lemons (Citrus limonia)**

.337

**\*Limes (Citrus aurantifolia)**

.34

**\*Kumquats (Fortunella) [*formerly* 634.324]**

634.37–634.39 Moraceous fruits

.37

**\*Figs (Ficus carica)**

.38

**\*Mulberries (Morus)**

.39

**\*Breadfruit (Artocarpus altilis)**

.4

**Minor fruits**

.41

**Anonaceous fruits**

Cherimoya, northern papaws, custard apples

.42

**Myrtaceous and passifloraceous fruits**

.421

**\*Guavas (Psidium)**

.425

**\*Passion fruit**

.43

**Sapotaceous fruits**

Star apples, sapodilla plums

<sup>1</sup> Divide as instructed under 633–635

## *Decimal Classification*

- 634.44      **Anacardiaceous fruits**  
                    Mangoes, Spanish plums  
                    *For cashew nuts, see 634.573*
- .45      **Ebenaceous fruits (Persimmons)**
- .46      **Leguminous fruits**  
                    Tamarinds, carob beans (Saint-John's-bread)  
                    *For peanuts, see 634.659 6*
- .5      **Nut fruits**
- .51      **Walnuts (Juglans)**
- .52      **Hickory nuts (Hicoria)**  
                    Pecans and shagbarks
- .53      **Chestnuts (Castanea)**
- .54      **\*Filberts (Corylus)**
- .55      **Almonds (Prunus amygdalus)**
- .57      **Other nuts**
- .573      **\*Cashew nuts (Anacardium occidentale)**
- .574      **\*Pistachios (Pistacia vera)**
- .575      **\*Brazil nuts (Bertholletia excelsa)**
- .6      **Tropical and subtropical tree fruits**
- 634.61–634.62 **Palmaceous fruits**
- .61      **\*Coconuts (Cocos nucifera)**
- .62      **\*Dates (Phoenix dactylifera)**
- .63      **\*Olives (Olea europaea)**
- .64      **\*Pomegranates (Punica granatum)**
- .65      **Other fruits**
- .651      **\*Papayas (Carica papaya)**
- .653      **\*Avocados (Persea gratissima)**

<sup>1</sup> Divide as instructed under 633–635

		<b>634.7–634.8 Small fruit</b>
<b>634.7</b>	<b>Berries and herbaceous fruits</b>	
.71	Cane fruits (Rubus)	
.711	Raspberries	
.713	*Blackberries	
.714	*Loganberries	
.717	Dewberries	
.718	*Boysenberries	
.72	Ribes	
.721	*Currants (Ribes rubrum)	
	Including varieties of currants [ <i>formerly 634.722–634.724</i> ]	
[.722–.724]	Varieties of currants	
	Class in 634.721	
.725	*Gooseberries (Saxifragaceae)	
.73	Huckleberries and blueberries	
.732	*Huckleberries (Gaylussacia)	
.737	*Blueberries (Vaccinium)	
.74	Other bush fruits	
	Juneberries, buffalo berries, barberries, elderberries	
.75	Strawberries (Fragaria)	
.76	*Cranberries (Oxycoccus)	
.77	Herbaceous fruits	
.772	*Bananas (Musa sapientum)	
.773	*Plantains (Musa paradisiaca)	
.774	*Pineapples (Ananas sativus)	
.775	Cactaceous fruits	

\* Divide as instructed under 633–635

## *Decimal Classification*

### **634.8      Grapes**

- .81      Tillage (Soil preparation)
  - .82      Injuries, diseases, pests, and their control
  - .83      Varieties
  - .88      Crop production
- Divide like 631.5, e.g., harvesting grapes 634.885
- For tillage, see 634.81; varieties, 634.83*

### **.9          Forestry**

Formation, maintenance, cultivation, exploitation of forests

#### **SUMMARY**

- 634.92      Forest economy
- .93      Accessibility and safety features
- .95      Silviculture
- .96      Injuries, diseases, pests, and their control
- .97      Specific kinds of trees
- .98      Forest exploitation and utilization
- .99      Other aspects

---

#### 634.92–634.96 General principles

Class general principles applied to specific kinds of trees in 634.97

*For exploitation and utilization, see 634.98*

- .92          Forest economy
- [.922]      Forest ecology
- Class in 581.5

- [.925]      Forest policy
- Class in 333.75

- [.927]      Resources
- Class in 333.75

- .928          Management
- Class personnel management [*formerly 634.928*] in 658.3

- .928 3      Regulation
- Working plans for advance determination of cutting and planting cycles, yields per cycle, maximum increment

## *Agriculture and agricultural industries*

- 634.928 5      Mensuration  
                    Determination of volume of timber stands, growth and  
                    yield
- .93      Accessibility and safety features  
                    Maintenance of roads, bridges, trails, lookout towers, power  
                    lines
- [.94]      Ecology  
                    Class forest ecology in 581.5, ecology of trees in 582.160 5
- .95      Silviculture
- .952      Harvesting methods (Cutting methods)
- .953      Maintenance cuttings  
                    Improvement cuttings, thinnings, prunings
- .954      Marking methods
- .955      Brush disposal methods
- .956      Forestation  
                    Reforestation and afforestation
- .956 2      Seeds, seed collecting, seeding
- .956 4      Nursery practice
- .956 5      Cultivation at permanent site
- .96      Injuries, diseases, pests, and their control  
                    Divide like 632, e.g., forest fires 634.961 8
- .97      Specific kinds of trees  
  
                    634.972-634.973 Dicotyledons
- .972      Dicotyledons important as lumber
- .972 1      Oak  
                    Including cork [*formerly* 634.985]
- .972 2      Maple
- .972 3      Poplar
- .972 4      Chestnut
- .972 5      Beech

## *Decimal Classification*

- 634.972 6 Birch  
.972 7 Linden and basswood  
.972 8 Elm  
.973 Other dicotyledons  
Including tung oil nuts [*formerly also* 634.987], rubber trees  
[*formerly also* 634.986 5]  
Divide like 583, e.g., locust trees 634.973 32  
  
.974 Monocotyledons  
Divide like 584, e.g., palm trees 634.974 5  
  
.975 Gymnosperms
- 
- 634.975 1 – 634.975 8 Coniferous trees  
.975 1 Pine  
.975 12–.975 16 General principles  
Divide like 634.92–634.96, e.g., diseases of pine  
forests 634.975 16  
  
.975 17 Varieties  
.975 18 Exploitation and utilization  
.975 182 Logging  
.975 183 Logs and pulpwood  
.975 185 Barks  
.975 186 Saps (Naval stores [*formerly also* 634.986 2])  
Tar, pitch, turpentine and their extracting  
operations  
  
.975 187 Fruits, seeds, nuts  
.975 189 Other products  
.975 2 Spruce  
.975 3 Hemlock  
.975 4 Fir  
.975 5 Cypress  
.975 6 Cedar  
.975 7 Larch  
.975 8 Sequoia

*Agriculture and agricultural industries*

- 634.975 9      Other gymnosperms  
                    Divide like 585, e.g., ginkgo trees 634.975 97
- .98      Forest exploitation and utilization  
            Class exploitation and utilization of specific kinds of trees in 634.97
- .982      Logging  
            Felling, transporting, sorting, grading operations  
  
            634.983–634.987 Primary products
- .983      Logs and pulpwood  
            For sawmill products, see 674.28
- .985      Barks  
            Tannin, medicinal, lightweight, bast-fiber barks  
            Class cork [*formerly* 634.985] in 634.972 1
- .986      Saps  
[.986 2]      Naval stores  
            Class in 634.975 186
- [.986 5]      Rubber latex  
            Class rubber-tree plantations in 633.895 2, forestry of rubber trees in 634.973
- .987      Fruits, seeds, nuts  
            Class tung oil nuts [*formerly* 634.987] in 634.973
- .989      Other products
- .99      Other aspects
- .999      Farm forestry



**535 Garden crops (Horticulture)**

Commercial and home gardening

**SUMMARY**

- 635.1 Edible roots**
- .2 Edible tubers and bulbs**
- .3 Asparagus, artichokes, cabbages**
- .4 Cooking greens and related vegetables**
- .5 Salad greens**
- .6 Edible fruits and seeds**
- .7 Aromatic and sweet herbs (Herb gardens)**
- .8 Mushrooms and truffles**
- .9 Flowers and ornamental plants  
(Floriculture)**

---

**635.1–635.8 Vegetables**

Crops grown primarily for human consumption without intermediate processing other than preservation

*For orchards and small fruits, see 634*

- .1 Edible roots**
- .11 \*Beets (*Beta vulgaris*)**
- .12 Turnips and related crops**
- .125 \*Turnips (*Brassica rapa*)**
- .126 \*Rutabagas (*Brassica napobrassica*)**
- .128 \*Celeriac (*Apium graveolens rapaceum*)**
- .13 Carrots (*Daucus carota*)**
- .14 \*Parsnips (*Pastinaca sativa*)**
- .15 \*Radishes (*Raphanus sativus*)**
- .16 Salsify (*Tragopogon porrifolius*)**
- .2 Edible tubers and bulbs**
- .21 \*Potatoes (*Solanum tuberosum*)**
- .22 \*Sweet potatoes (*Ipomoea batatas*)**
- .23 \*Yams (*Dioscorea*)**
- .24 \*Jerusalem artichokes (*Helianthus tuberosus*)**

<sup>1</sup> Divide as instructed under 633–635

## *Agriculture and agricultural industries*

### 635.25–635.26 Alliaceous plants

- 635.25     \*Onions (*Allium cepa*)
- .26        Other alliaceous plants
  - Leeks, shallots, chives, garlic

### 635.3–635.5 Edible leaves, flowers, stems

- .3        **Asparagus, artichokes, cabbages**
- .31        \*Asparagus (*Asparagus officinales*)
- .32        Artichokes (*Cynara scolymus*)

### 635.34–635.36 Cabbage group

- .34        Cabbages (*Brassica oleracea*)
  - Head cabbage, kale, collards, kohlrabi
- .35        Cauliflower and broccoli (*Brassica oleracea botrytis*)
- .36        \*Brussels sprouts (*Brassica oleracea gemmifera*)
- .4        **Cooking greens and related vegetables**
  - Class sorrel in 635.56, dandelions in 635.51 [*both formerly 635.4*]
  - For cabbages, see 635.34*

- .41        \*Spinach (*Spinacia oleracea*)
- .42        \*Chard (*Beta vulgaris cicla*)
- .48        \*Rhubarb (*Rheum rhaponticum*)
- .5        **Salad greens**
  - .51        \*Dandelions (*Taraxaceum officinale*) [*formerly 635.4*]
  - .52        \*Lettuce (*Lactuca sativa*)
  - .53        \*Celery (*Apium graveolens*)
  - .54        \*Chicory (*Cichorium intybus*)
  - .55        \*Endive (*Cichorium endiva*)
  - .56        Sorrel [*formerly 635.4*] and cresses

### .6        **Edible fruits and seeds**

- .61        Melons
  - .611        \*Muskmelons (*Cucumis melo*)
    - Honeydew and casaba melons, cantaloupes

<sup>1</sup> Divide as instructed under 633–635

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 635.615      **\*Watermelons (*Citrullus vulgaris*)**
- .62      **Squashes and pumpkins (*Cucurbita*)**
- .63      **\*Cucumbers (*Cucumis sativus*)**
- .64      **Other fruits**
- .642      **\*Tomatoes (*Lycopersicon esculentum*)**
- .643      **\*Green peppers (*Capsicum grossum*)**
- .646      **\*Eggplants (*Solanum melongena*)**
- .648      **\*Okra (*Abelmoschus esculentus*)**
- .65      **Legumes**
- .651      **\*Broad beans (*Vicia faba*)**
- .652      **\*Garden beans (*Phaseolus vulgaris*)**  
                  Kidney, navy, pea, wax, snap, string, butter beans
- .653      **\*Lima beans (*Phaseolus limensis*)**
- .655      **\*Soybeans (*Soja max*)**
- .656      **\*Garden peas (*Pisum sativum*)**
- .657      **\*Chick-peas (*Cicer arietinum*)**
- .658      **\*Lentils (*Lens culinaris*)**
- .659      **Other legumes**
- .659.2      **\*Black-eyed peas (*Vigna sinensis*)**
- .659 6      **\*Peanuts (*Arachis hypogaea*)**
- .67      **Corn**
- .672      **\*Sweet corn (*Zea mays saccharata*)**
- .677      **\*Popcorn (*Zea mays everta*)**
- .7      **Aromatic and sweet herbs (**Herb gardens**)**
- .8      **Mushrooms and truffles**

**\* Divide as instructed under 633-635**

**535.9      Flowers and ornamental plants Floriculture )**

**SUMMARY**

- 635.91      Production**
- .92      Injuries, diseases, pests, and their control**
- .93      General and taxonomic groupings**
  - .94-.97      Special groupings**
- .94      By means of propagation**
- .95      By environmental factors**
- .96      By purpose**
- .97      Other groupings**
- .98      Specialized gardening**

- **635.91-635.92      General principles**
- Class general principles applied to specific families, genera  
species in **635.933-635.939**
- For special groupings, see 635.94-635.97*

- .91      Production**
  - Cultivation, processes, equipment
  - Divide like **631**, e.g., fertilizers **635.918**
- .92      Injuries, diseases, pests, and their control**
  - Divide like **632**, e.g., fungus diseases **635.924**
- .93      General and taxonomic groupings**

- **635.931-635.932      By life duration**
- Class specific families, genera, species in **635.933-635.939**

- .931      Annuals and biennials**
- .932      Perennials**
- .933-.939      By families, genera, species**
  - Divide like **583-589**, e.g., cactus **635.933 47**
  - For families, genera, species of trees, see*  
**635.977 3 - 635.977 5**

## *Decimal Classification*

### 635.94–635.97 Special groupings

Class specific families, genera, species, other than trees, in  
**635.933–635.939**

- 635.94 By means of propagation
  - .942 From seeds
  - .944 From bulbs and tubers
  - .946 From runners and by layering
  - .948 From cuttings and slips
  - .95 By environmental factors
  - .952 Climatic factors
    - Tropical, temperate-zone, arctic, alpine plants
  - .953 Seasonal and diurnal factors
    - Spring-, summer-, fall-, winter-flowering plants; morning- and night-blooming plants
  - .954 Light factors
    - Plants favoring sunshine, shade, artificial light
  - .955 Soil factors
    - Plants favoring moist, dry, rich, sandy soils
- .96 By purpose
  - .962 For flower beds
  - .963 For borders and edgings
  - .964 For ground cover
  - .965 As houseplants
    - Including bonsai
  - .966 For cutting
    - [.966 3–.966 4] Flower arrangement
      - Class in **745.92**
  - .967 For special kinds of gardens
  - .967 2 Rock gardens

## *Agriculture and agricultural industries*

- 635.967 4            Water gardens  
                        Aquatic plants in pools, aquariums, natural bodies of  
                        water
- .967 6            Wild flower gardens
- .969            For nurseries
- .97            Other groupings
- .973            Everlastings
- .974            Vines
- .975            Foliage plants
- .976            Shrubs and hedges
- .977            Trees
- .977 3-.977 5       Families, genera, species  
                        Divide like 583-585, e.g., elm 635.977 396 2
- .98            Specialized gardening
- .982            Greenhouse gardening
- .985            Bell-jar gardening



---

## **636-638 Animal husbandry**

Class culture of cold-blooded animals other than insects in  
639.3-639.7

### **636        Livestock and domestic animals**

Use 636.001-636.009 for standard subdivisions

- .01            Stock ranches and farms [*formerly* 636.081 3]
- .08            Stock production, maintenance, training

#### **SUMMARY**

- 636.081       Selection and acquisition
- .082        Stockbreeding
- .083        Care and maintenance
- .084        Feeding methods
- .085        Fodder and applied nutrition
- .086        Field crops
- .087        Other foods
- .088        Production, maintenance, training for specific  
                        purposes
- .089        Veterinary sciences

## Decimal Classification

---

- 636.081      Selection and acquisition
  - .081 1      Judging livestock
  - .081 2      Ownership marks
  - [.081 3]      Stock ranches and farms
    - Class in 636.01
- .082      Stockbreeding
  - .082 1      Genetic factors
    - Species, races, breeds, strains in terms of heredity and variation
  - .082 2      Breeding records
    - Herdbooks, studbooks, flock books, pedigrees
  - .082 4      Breeding and reproduction methods
- ---

  - 636.082 41 – 636.082 43 Breeding methods
    - .082 41      Inbreeding and line breeding
    - .082 42      Outbreeding
    - .082 43      Crossbreeding
  - .082 45      Artificial insemination
- .083      Care and maintenance
  - For veterinary sciences, see 636.089*
  - .083 1      Housing
  - .083 3      Individual tending
    - Grooming, washing, dipping, shearing
  - .083 7      Harnesses and accessories
- .084      Feeding methods
  - General and special-purpose methods
- .085      Fodder and applied nutrition
  - .085 2      Food value
  - .085 5      Fodder
    - For specific foods, see 636.086–636.087*
- .085 51      Green fodder

## Agriculture and agricultural industries

---

636.085 52	Silage
.085 54	Dry fodder
.085 57	Formula feed
<hr/>	
▶	636.086–636.087 Specific foods
.086	Field crops
.087	Other foods
.087 4	Fruits
.087 5	Garden crops
.087 6	Meat, fish, eggs
.087 7	Mineral additives
.088	Production, maintenance, training for specific purposes
.088 1	For breeding
.088 2	For draft use (Beasts of burden) Class development for guarding in 636.088 6, for racing in 636.088 8 [ <i>both formerly 636.088 2</i> ]
.088 3	For consumption (Food animals) Class development for eggs [ <i>formerly 636.088 3</i> ] in 636.088 4
.088 4	For special products Eggs [ <i>formerly 636.088 3</i> ], milk, hide, wool, feathers Including fur farming [ <i>formerly 636.92</i> ]
.088 5	For experiment
.088 6	For work Guarding [ <i>formerly 636.088 2</i> ], herding, hunting <i>For draft animals, see 636.088 2</i>
.088 7	As pets
.088 8	For sports and stunts Racing [ <i>formerly 636.088 2</i> ], circus, stage, fighting
.088 9	For other purposes
.088 92	Multiple purposes
.088 99	Zoos



## *Decimal Classification*

636.089

Veterinary sciences

Divide like 611–619, e.g., veterinary surgery **636.089 7**

### **SUMMARY**

- 636.1**     **Horses and other equines**
- .2**     **Cattle and other larger ruminants**
- .3**     **Sheep and goats (Smaller ruminants)**
- .4**     **Swine**
- .5**     **Poultry**
- .6**     **Birds other than poultry**
- .7**     **Dogs**
- .8**     **Cats**
- .9**     **Other warm-blooded animals**

#### **.1     Horses and other equines**

Use **636.100 01 – 636.100 09** for standard subdivisions

**.100 1–.100 9**     Standard subdivisions of horses

**.101**     Horse ranches and farms [*formerly* **636.108 13**]

**.108**     Production, maintenance, training of horses

Divide like **636.08**, e.g., training horses for exhibition and sport riding [*formerly* **798.2**] **636.108 88**

Class horse ranches and farms [*formerly* **636.108 13**] in **636.101**

Class specific breeds of horses in **636.11–636.16**

**636.11–636.16** Specific breeds of horses

**.11**     Oriental horses

Arabian, Persian, Tartar, Turkish, Barb

**.12**     Race horses and trotters

**.13**     Saddle horses

**.14**     Carriage horses

**.15**     Draft horses

**.16**     Ponies

**.18**     Other equines

Asses, mules, zebras

*Agriculture and agricultural industries*

**636.2 Cattle and other larger ruminants**

Use 636.200 01 – 636.200 09 for standard subdivisions

- .200 1–.200 9 Standard subdivisions of cattle
- .201 Cattle ranches and farms [*formerly* 636.208 13]
- .208 Production, maintenance, training of cattle
  - Divide like 636.08, e.g., cattle breeding 636.208 2
  - Class cattle ranches and farms [*formerly* 636.208 13] in 636.201
  - Class production, maintenance, training of cattle for specific purposes in 636.21
- .21 Production, maintenance, training of cattle for specific purposes
  - Divide like 636.088, e.g., beef cattle 636.213
  - For specific breeds of cattle, see 636.22–636.28*
  - 636.22–636.28 Specific breeds of cattle
  - Beef, dairy, dual-purpose breeds by geographical origin
- .22 British
- .222 English beef breeds
  - Shorthorn, Hereford, Sussex
- .223 Scottish, Welsh, Irish beef breeds
  - Aberdeen Angus, Galloway, Kyle, Black Welsh
- .224 Channel Island dairy breeds
  - Alderney, Jersey, Guernsey
- .225 Scottish and Irish dairy breeds
  - Ayrshire, Kerry, Dexter Shorthorn
- .226 Dual-purpose breeds
  - Devon, Polled Durham, English Longhorn
- .23 German, Dutch, Danish, Swiss
- .232 Beef breeds

## *Decimal Classification*

- 636.234      Dairy breeds  
                Holstein-Friesian, East Friesian, Oldenburg  
                Including Dutch and Danish dairy breeds [*formerly*  
                636.235]
- [.235]      Dutch and Danish dairy breeds  
                Class in 636.234
- .236      Dual-purpose breeds  
                Including Swiss dual-purpose breeds [*formerly* 636.237]
- [.237]      Swiss dual-purpose breeds  
                Class in 636.236
- .24      French and Belgian  
                Divide like 636.23, e.g., beef cattle 636.242
- .27      Other European breeds
- .28      Non-European breeds
- .29      Other larger ruminants
- .291      Zebus
- .292      Bison
- .293      Other Bovoidea  
                Antelopes, water buffaloes, eland, bongos, kudus, gazelles,  
                musk-oxen
- .294      Cervoidca  
                Deer, elk, moose, reindcer, caribous, giraffes, okapis
- .295      Camels
- .296      Llamas, alpacas, vicuñas
- .3      Sheep and goats ( Smaller ruminants )  
                Use 636.300 01 – 636.300 09 for standard subdivisions
- .300 1–.300 9      Standard subdivisions of sheep
- .301      Sheep ranches and farms [*formerly* 636.308 13]

## *Agriculture and agricultural industries*

- 636.308      Production, maintenance, training of sheep  
                Divide like 636.08, e.g., sheep breeding 636.308 2  
                Class sheep ranches and farms [*formerly* 636.308 13] in 636.301  
                Class production, maintenance, training of sheep for specific purposes in 636.31
- .31          Production, maintenance, training of sheep for specific purposes  
                Divide like 636.088, e.g., sheep for wool 636.314  
                For specific breeds of sheep, see 636.32–636.38
- 
- 636.32–636.38 Specific breeds of sheep
- .32          British
- .33          German, Dutch, Swiss
- .34          French and Belgian
- .35          Italian
- .36          Spanish sheep (Merino breeds)
- .366          Spanish Merino breeds
- .367          Other European Merino breeds
- .368          Non-European Merino breeds  
                American and Australian Merino breeds
- .37          Other European
- .38          Non-European
- .381          American
- .385          Asian
- .386          African
- .39          Goats  
                Use 636.390 01 – 636.390 09 for standard subdivisions
- .390 1          Ranches and farms [*formerly* 636.390 813]
- .390 8          Production, maintenance, training  
                Divide like 636.08, e.g., goat breeding 636.390 82  
                Class ranches and farms [*formerly* 636.390 813] in 636.390 1  
                Class production, maintenance, training for specific purposes in 636.391

### *Decimal Classification*

- 636.391      Production, maintenance, training for specific purposes  
                Divide like 636.088, e.g., raising goats for hair 636.391 4  
                For specific breeds of goats, see 636.392–636.398
- .392–.398      Specific breeds of goats  
                Divide like 636.31–636.38, e.g., Italian breeds 636.395
- .4              Swine  
                Use 636.400 1 – 636.400 9 for standard subdivisions
- .401            Ranches and farms [*formerly* 636.408 13]
- .408            Production and maintenance  
                Divide like 636.08, e.g., diseases of swine 636.408 96  
                Class ranches and farms [*formerly* 636.408 13] in 636.401  
                Class production, maintenance, training for specific purposes in 636.41
- .41            Production, maintenance, training for specific purposes  
                Divide like 636.088, e.g., swine production for bristles 636.414  
                For specific breeds of swine, see 636.42–636.48
- 
- 636.42–636.48 Specific breeds of swine
- .42–.47        European  
                Divide like 636.32–636.37, e.g., British breeds 636.42
- .48            Non-European
- 
- 636.482–636.484 American
- .482            Poland-China
- .483            Duroc-Jersey
- .484            Other  
                Chester White, Hampshire, Cheshire, Victoria, mulefoot, razorback
- .485            Asian
- .486            African
- .489            Oceanic

*Agriculture and agricultural industries*

**636.5 Poultry**

Use **636.500 01 – 636.500 09** for standard subdivisions

- .500 1–.500 9      Standard subdivisions of chickens
- .501      Chicken ranches and farms [*formerly* 636.508 13]
- .508      Production, maintenance, training of chickens  
            Divide like **636.08**, e.g., chicken breeding **636.508 24**  
            Class chicken ranches and farms [*formerly* 636.508 13] in **636.501**  
            Class production, maintenance, training of chickens for specific purposes in **636.51**
- .51      Production, maintenance, training of chickens for specific purposes  
            Divide like **636.088**, e.g., raising chickens for meat **636.513**  
            *For specific breeds of chickens, see 636.52–636.58*
- 636.52–636.58 Specific breeds of chickens
- .52–.57      European  
            Divide like **636.32–636.37**, e.g., British breeds **636.52**  
            Class special varieties of chickens in **636.587**
- .58      Non-European breeds and special varieties  
            636.581–636.584 American
- .581      Dominique, Jersey Blue, Bucks County, Java, Winnebago
- .582      Plymouth Rock
- .583      Wyandotte
- .584      Rhode Island Red
- .585      Asian breeds  
            Class special varieties of chickens in **636.587**
- .587      Special varieties
- .587 1      Bantams
- .587 2      Cornish

*Decimal Classification*

---

636.59	Other domestic birds
.592	Turkeys
	Use 636.592 001 – 636.592 009 for standard subdivisions
.592 01	Ranches and farms
.592 08	Production, maintenance, training
	Divide like 636.08, e.g., raising turkeys for meat 636.592 088 3
.593	Guinea fowl
.594	Pheasants
.595	Peafowl
.596	Pigeons
.597	Ducks
.598	Geese
.6	Birds other than poultry
.61	Birds raised for feathers
.68	Song and ornamental birds
	<i>For peafowl, see 636.595</i>
.681	Swans
.686	Cage and aviary birds
.686 2	Finches
	Canaries and painted finches
.686 4	Budgerigars (Shell parakeets)
.686 5	Other parrots
	Macaws, cockatoos, lorries, cockateels
.686 9	Other cage and aviary birds
	Mynahs, toucans, hawks

*Agriculture and agricultural industries*

636.7

**Dogs**

Use 636.700 1 – 636.700 9 for standard subdivisions

[.700 222]

Illustrations

Do not use; class in 636.77

.701

Kennels [*formerly* 636.708 13]

.708

Production, maintenance, training

Divide like 636.08, e.g., training dogs as pets 636.708 87

Class kennels [*formerly* 636.708 13] in 636.701

.71

Breeds

*For specific breeds, see 636.72–636.76*

636.72–636.76 Specific breeds

Class the miniature of any breed in 636.76

.72

Nonsporting dogs

Boston terriers, English and French bulldogs, chow chows,  
Dalmatians, Keeshonden, poodles, schipperkes

*For working dogs, see 636.73*

.73

Working dogs

Alaskan malamutes, boxers, collies, Doberman pinschers, Es-  
kimo dogs, German shepherds, Great Danes, Great Pyrenees,  
mastiffs, Newfoundlands, Samoyeds, schnauzers, sheepdogs,  
Siberian huskies, Saint Bernards, Welsh corgis

Including watch and herd dogs [*formerly* 636.74]

[.74]

Watch and herd dogs

Class in 636.73

.75

Sporting dogs

.752

Gun dogs

Pointers, retrievers, setters, spaniels, Weimaraners

.753

Hounds

Basenjis, beagles, borzois, dachshunds, harriers, salukis,  
whippets, named hounds



## *Decimal Classification*

636.755

Terriers

*For Boston terriers, see 636.72*

.76

Toy and miniature dogs

Affenpinschers, Chihuahuas, English toy spaniels, Italian greyhounds, Maltese, Mexican hairless, papillons, Pekingese, Pomeranians, toy poodles, pugs, toy Manchester and Yorkshire terriers

.77

Illustrations

.8

Cats

Use 636.800 1 – 636.800 9 for standard subdivisions

[.800 222]

Illustrations

Do not use; class in 636.87

.801

Kennels [*formerly* 636.808 13]

.808

Production, maintenance, training

Divide like 636.08, e.g., breeding cats 636.808 2

Class kennels [*formerly* 636.808 13] in 636.801



636.82–636.83 Domestic cats

.82

Short-haired cats

.822

Common short-haired cats

.823

Manx cats

.825

Asian short-haired cats

Siamese, Burmese, related breeds

.826

Other short-haired cats

Abyssinian, Russian blue cats

.83

Long-haired cats

Angora, coon, chinchilla, Persian cats

.87

Illustrations

.89

Other cats

Ocelots, margays, cheetahs

- 636.9 Other warm-blooded animals**
- .91 **Monotremes and marsupials**  
Platypuses, opossums, kangaroos, wallabies, koalas, wombats
- [.92] **Fur farming**  
Class in 636.088 4
- .93-.98 **Other mammals**  
Divide like 599.3-599.8, e.g., elephants 636.961

**637 Dairy and related industries**

**.1 Milk**

- 637.12-637.14 Cow's milk
- .12 **Production and inspection**
- .124 **Milking methods**
- .125 **Milking machinery and equipment**
- .127 **Quality determinations**
- .127 6 **Butterfat tests**
- .127 7 **Bacteriological counts**
- .13 **Processing**  
Class processing specific varieties of milk in 637.14
- .131 **Processing plants**
- .132 **Processing machinery and equipment**
- .133 **Specific processes**  
Including cooling, filtration, vitamin-D treatment
- .133 3 **Pasteurization**
- .133 4 **Homogenization**
- .133 5 **Evaporation and sterilization**
- .133 6 **Spray and vacuum drum processes**
- .135 **Packaging, storage, transport**

## Decimal Classification

---

637.14 Varieties



---

637.141–637.146 Whole milk

- .141 Fresh milk ( Market milk)
  - Raw, certified, pasteurized, homogenized, vitamin-D treated
  - Class evaporated milk [*formerly* 637.141] in 637.142 2
- .142 Concentrated liquid forms
- .142 2 Evaporated milk [*formerly* 637.141]
- .142 3 Plain condens milk
- .142 4 Sweetened condens milk
- .143 Dried milk
- .146 Cultured milk
- .147 Skim milk
  - Divide like 637.141–637.146, e.g., dried skim milk 637.147 3
- .148 Cream
- .17 Milk other than cow's milk
- .2 Butter
- .22 Quality determinations
- .23 Processing
- .24 By-products
- .3 Cheese
- .32 Quality determinations
- .33 Processing
  - Class processing specific varieties of cheese in 637.35
- .34 By-products
- .35 Varieties



---

637.352–637.354 Rennet cheeses

- .352 Unripened soft cheese ( Cream cheese)
- .353 Ripened soft cheeses
  - Limburger, Brie, Camembert, Neufchâtel, Gorgonzola
- .354 Hard cheese
  - Cheddar, Stilton, Swiss, Edam, Gruyère, Parmesan

*Agriculture and agricultural industries*

---

- 637.356      Sour-milk cheeses
  - Cottage, Dutch, pot cheeses
- .358      Cheese foods
- .4      **Frozen desserts**
  - Ice cream, ice milk, frozen custards, sherbets, ices
- .5      **Eggs**
- .54      Chicken eggs
- .541      Fresh eggs
- .543      Dried whole eggs
- .547      Dried egg whites
- .548      Dried egg yolks
- .59      Other kinds of eggs
  - Divide like 636.59, e.g., duck eggs 637.597
- 638      **Insect culture**
- .1      **Honeybees (Apiculture)**
- .11      Apiary establishment
- .12      Races and varieties of bees
- .13      Pasturage for bees
  - Nectar and pollen plants
- .14      Hive management
- .142      Equipment and supplies
  - Hives, hive sections, smokers, protective equipment
- .144      Supplementary feeding of bees
- .145      Queen rearing
- .146      Swarming control
- .15      Injuries, diseases, pests, and their control
- ---

  - 638.16–638.17 Hive products
    - Quality determination, processing, varieties
- .16      **Honey**
- .17      **Wax**

**638.2      Silkworms**

**.3          Resin- and dye-producing insects**

**.5          Other insects**

**[.51]      Worms**

Class in **639.75**

**.57          Specific insects**

Divide like **595.7**, e.g., praying mantises **638.572 5**

**639      Nondomesticated animals**

Hunting, fishing, culture, conservation practices

Class hunting and fishing as sport in **799**, fur farming in **636.088 4**, insect culture in **638**

**.1          Hunting and trapping**

**.11          Fur-bearing and other mammals**

Divide like **599.1–599.8**, e.g., deer hunting and trapping  
**639.117 357**

*For whaling, see 639.28; sealing, 639.29*

**.12          Birds**

Divide like **799.24**, e.g., hunting waterfowl **639.124**

**.13          Amphibians [*formerly 639.27*]**

**.14          Reptiles [*formerly also 639.279 9*]**

Divide like **598.1**, e.g., hunting alligators **639.144**

**.2          Commercial fishing, whaling, sealing**

Use **639.200 1 – 639.200 9** for standard subdivisions

**.201–.209      Standard subdivisions of commercial fishing**

**639.21–639.22 Fishing in specific types of water**

Class fishing specific kinds of fish in **639.27**

**.21          In fresh water**

**.22          In salt and brackish waters**

*Agriculture and agricultural industries*

- 639.27      **Specific kinds of fish**  
              Divide like 597.2–597.5, e.g., salmon fishing 639.275 5  
              Class hunting and trapping amphibians [*formerly* 639.27] in 639.13
- [.279 9]      Hunting and trapping reptiles  
              Class in 639.14
- .28          Whaling
- .29          Sealing
- .3          **Culture of cold-blooded vertebrates**  
              Use 639.300 1 – 639.300 9 for standard subdivisions
- .301–.309      Standard subdivisions of fish culture
- 639.31–639.34 Fish culture in specific environments  
              Class culture of specific kinds of fish in 639.372–639.375
- .31          In fresh water  
              Class indoor culture of ornamental fish in 639.34
- .311          Natural and artificial ponds
- .312          Lakes
- .313          Rivers and streams
- .32          In salt and brackish waters  
              Class indoor culture of ornamental fish in 639.34
- .34          In aquariums  
              Indoor culture of ornamental cold-water and tropical fish
- .37          Specific kinds of fish and amphibians
- .372–.375      Fish  
              Divide like 597.2–597.5, e.g., culture of sea horses 639.375 3
- .376–.379      Amphibians  
              Divide like 597.6–597.9, e.g., culture of frogs 639.378
- [.379 9]      Reptiles  
              Class in 639.39

## *Decimal Classification*

- 639.39      Reptiles [*formerly* 639.379 9]  
              Divide like 598.1, e.g., culture of snakes 639.392

### **639.4–639.7 Fisheries and culture of invertebrates**

- .4      **Mollusks**
- .41      Oysters
- .411      Edible oysters
- .412      Pearl oysters
- .42      Mussels
- .44      Clams
- .48      Other mollusks  
              Divide like 594.2–594.5, e.g., catching squid 631.485 6
- .5      **Crustaceans**
- .54      Edible crustaceans  
              Divide like 595.384, e.g., catching lobsters 639.541
- [.6]      **Sea urchins**  
              Class in 639.73
- .7      **Other invertebrates**
- .73      Protozoa, Parazoa, Metazoa  
              Including sea urchins [*formerly* 639.6]  
              Divide like 593, e.g., sponge fishing 639.734
- .75      Worms [*formerly* 638.51]  
              Divide like 595.1, e.g., earthworm culture 539.756

*Agriculture and agricultural industries*

**639.9 Wildlife conservation practices [formerly 799]**

Programs aimed to maintain, increase, reduce populations of fish, birds, mammals in their natural habitat

639.92–639.96 General principles

Class general principles applied to specific kinds of animals in  
**639.97**

.92 Habitat improvement

.93 Species population controls

.95 Refuge programs

.96 Injuries, diseases, predators, and their control

.97 Specific kinds of animals

Divide like 597–599, e.g., programs for deer conservation  
**639.979 735 7**



**640 Domestic arts and sciences (Home economics)**

Care of household, family, person

Class personal hygiene in 613

.714 Extension

Divide like standard subdivision 071 5, e.g., institutes and workshops 640.714 2

[.715] Extension work

Do not use; class in 640.714

.73 Consumer education [*formerly* 339.420 7]

Selection of consumer goods, guides to quality

Including reports on named products

**641 Food and drink**

*For food service, see 642*

.013 Pleasures of eating

**SUMMARY**

- 641.1 Applied nutrition
- .3 Foods and foodstuffs
- .4 Preservation for later use
- .5 General cookery
- .6 Specific materials
- .7 Specific processes and techniques
- .8 Composite dishes

.1 Applied nutrition

Occurrence in food of nutrients required to meet needs of human body

Class nutritive values of specific foods and foodstuffs [*formerly* 641.1] in 641.33–641.39

.11 Organic constituents

*For specific organic constituents, see 641.12–641.14*

---

641.12–641.14 Specific organic constituents

.12 Proteins

.13 Carbohydrates

.14 Fats and oils

*Domestic arts and sciences*

641.15 Inorganic constituents

*For specific inorganic constituents, see 641.16–641.17*

641.16–641.17 Specific inorganic constituents

.16 Water

.17 Salts, trace elements, residues

.18 Vitamins

.3 Foods and foodstuffs

Scope: comprehensive works on production, manufacture, preservation, preparation, use

Use 641.300 1 – 641.300 9 for standard subdivisions

Class food customs in 390, food supply in 338.19 [*both formerly 641.3*]

Class production in 630, manufacture (commercial preparation and preservation) in 663–664, home preservation and preparation in 641.4–641.8

641.303–641.309 Classes of foodstuffs by origin

.303 Vegetable

.306 Animal

.309 Mineral

.31 Selection

Guides to quality

Class selection of specific foods and foodstuffs in 641.33–641.39

641.33–641.39 Specific foods and foodstuffs

Scope: nutritive values [*formerly also 641.1*]

.33 Derived from field crops

.331 Cereals

Divide like 633.1, e.g., rice 641.331 8

.336 Sugars and sirups

.337 Alkaloidal plants

Divide like 633.7, e.g., coffee 641.337 3

.338 Seasonings and flavorings

Divide like 633.8, e.g., sweet spices 641.338 3

## *Decimal Classification*

- 641.34      Fruits and nuts  
              Divide like 634.1–634.8, e.g., apples 641.341 1
- .35          Garden vegetables  
              Divide like 635.1–635.8, e.g., potatoes 641.352 1
- .36          Meats from domestic animals  
              Divide like 636, e.g., turkey 641.365 92
- .37          Dairy and related products  
              Divide like 637, e.g., eggs 641.375
- .38          Honey
- .39          Meats from wild animals  
              Divide like 639.1–639.2, 639.4–639.7, e.g., oysters 641.394 1
- 641.4–641.8 Preservation and preparation
- .4          Preservation for later use
- 
- 641.41–641.47 Fruits and vegetables  
              *For jams, jellies, marmalades, see 641.852*
- .41          Preliminary treatment
- .42          Canning
- .44          Drying and dehydrating
- .45          Cryogenic techniques  
              Application and maintenance of constant range of lowered temperature
- .452          Cold storage
- .453          Deep freezing
- 
- 641.46–641.47 Chemical preservation
- .46          Brining, pickling, smoking
- .47          Use of additives

## *Domestic arts and sciences*

- 641.49      Meats and allied foods
- .492      Red meats
- Divide like 641.41–641.47, e.g., canning red meat 641.492 2
- .493      Poultry
- Divide like 641.41–641.47, e.g., freezing poultry 641.493 53
- .494      Seafood
- Divide like 641.41–641.47, e.g., brining seafood 641.494 6
- .495      Other
- Frogs, turtles, snails, insects

### **641.5–641.8 Preparation for proximate use (Cookery)**

With and without use of heat

Scope: cookbooks, recipes

#### **.5      General cookery**

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., outdoor cookery for children 641.562

For special situations

Quantity, institutional, outdoor cookery

For economy

With specific appliances, utensils, fuels

For specific meals

Characteristic of specific geographic environments

### **SUMMARY**

- 641.52      Breakfast
- .53      Luncheon, brunch, elevenses, tea, supper, snacks
- .54      Dinner
- .55      For economy
- .56      For special situations
- .57      Quantity, institutional, outdoor cookery
- .58      With specific appliances, utensils, fuels
- .59      Characteristic of specific geographic environments

---

641.52–641.54 For specific meals

- .52      Breakfast
- .53      Luncheon, brunch, elevenses, tea, supper, snacks
- .54      Dinner

## *Decimal Classification*

- 641.55            For economy
  - Inexpensive cookery, speedy cookery
- .56            For special situations
- .561            For one or two persons
- 641.562–641.567 Under limitations of age, health, religion
- .562            Under limitations of age
  - For cookery under limitations of health, see 641.563*
- .562 2           For infants and children
- .562 7           For aged [*formerly 641.563*]
- .563            Under limitations of health
  - Cookery to prevent, tolerate, correct specific bodily disorders
  - Class cookery for aged in **641.562 7**, hospital cookery in **641.579** [*both formerly 641.563*]
- 641.566–641.567 Under limitations of specific religions
- .566            Christianity
  - Cookery for Lent, other days of fast and abstinence
- .567            Other religions
  - Divide like **292–299**, e.g., cookery under Hindu limitations **641.567 45**
- .568            For special occasions
  - Holidays, birthdays, parties, celebrations
  - For cookery under limitations of age, health, religion, see 641.562–641.567*
- .57            Quantity, institutional, outdoor cookery
  - Scope: short-order cookery
  - Use **641.570 01 – 641.570 09** for standard subdivisions
- .570 1–.570 9    Standard subdivisions of quantity cookery
- .571            School
- .572            Hotel and restaurant
- .573            Armed services

*Domestic arts and sciences*

- 641.575      **Travel**  
              *For railroad dining and buffet car cookery, see 641.576*
- .575 2      Motor bus
- .575 3      Shipboard
- .575 4      Airline
- .576      Railroad dining and buffet car
- .577      Canteen  
              Including emergency cooking for mass feeding
- .578      Outdoor  
              Including camp, barbecue, cookout cookery  
              *For armed services cookery, see 641.573*
- .579      Hospital [*formerly 641.563*]
- .58      With specific appliances, utensils, fuels  
              Including chafing dish cookery  
              *For casserole dishes, see 641.821*
- .583      By oil
- .584      By gas
- .585      By alcohol
- .586      By electricity  
              Including cooking with electric skillet, frying pan, roaster,  
              grill, waffle iron
- .587      By steam and pressure
- .588      Slow and fireless cookery  
              Including cooking with Aladdin ovens
- .59      Characteristic of specific geographic environments
- 
- 641.591–641.592 Specific zones  
                      *For cookery characteristic of specific continents, countries, lo-  
                      calities, see 641.593–641.599*
- .591      Arctic and cold-weather
- .592      Tropical and hot-weather

## *Decimal Classification*

641.593–.599      **Specific continents, countries, localities**

    Add area notations 3–9 to 641.59

    Class general cookery, noncharacteristic recipes from specific places in 641.5 without subdivision

### **641.6–641.8 Special cookery**

Limited by dish, material, process

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., roasting meats  
**641.66**

    Composite dishes

    Specific materials

    Specific processes and techniques

**.6      Specific materials**

    Class dessert pies [*formerly* 641.6] in 641.865 2

**.61      Preserved foods**

    Divide like 641.42–641.46, e.g., cookery using frozen foods  
    **641.615 3**

*For cookery using specific foods and foodstuffs, see*  
    **641.62–641.69**

### **641.62–641.69 Specific foods and foodstuffs**

**.62      Wines, beers, spirits**

**.63–.69      Other specific foods and foodstuffs**

    Divide like 641.33–641.39, e.g., cookery of meats from domestic animals 641.66

**.7      Specific processes and techniques**

**.71      Baking and roasting**

**.73      Boiling, simmering, stewing**

**.76      Broiling, grilling, barbecuing**

**.77      Frying, sautéing, braising**

**.8      Composite dishes**

**.81      Sauces, relishes, appetizers, savorys**

**.82      Main dishes (Entrées)**

    Including stews, meat pies

**.821      Casserole dishes**

641.83      Salads

.84      Sandwiches

►                                  641.85–641.86 Desserts and sweets

.85      Sugar products

.852      Jams, jellies, marmalades

.853      Candies

.86      Desserts

*For sugar products, see 641.85*

.862      Ice creams and ice milks

.863      Ices and sherbets

.864      Puddings and gelatins

.865      Pastries

.865 2      Pies [*formerly* 641.6]

.865 3      Cakes

.865 4      Cookies

.87      Beverages

641.872–641.874 Alcoholic

.872      Wines

.873      Beers

.874      Spirits

*Including bartenders' manuals and recipes [*formerly* 663.8]*

641.875–641.877 Nonalcoholic

.875      Soft drinks

Juices, carbonated drinks, malted drinks

.877      Brewed drinks

Cocoa, coffee, teas and their concentrates



## *Decimal Classification*

### **642 Food and meal service**

#### **► 642.1–642.5 For specific situations**

Scope: menus

*For table service, see 642.6; table decor, 652.7–642.8*

#### **.1 For home and family**

#### **.3 For camp, picnic, travel**

Including packaged meals

#### **.4 In entertaining**

#### **.41 Private**

*For catering, see 642.47*

#### **.45 Public**

Banquets, receptions, church and community suppers

*For catering, see 642.47*

#### **.47 Catering**

#### **.5 In commercial eating places**

*For food and meal service in entertaining, see 642.4*

#### **.56 Restaurants, cafés, dining rooms**

Including table d'hôte, à la carte

#### **.57 Lunch counters, cafeterias, snack bars, canteens**

*For school lunchrooms and cafeterias, see 642.58*

#### **.58 School lunchrooms and cafeterias**

#### **.6 Table service**

Setting places, carving, serving

#### **642.7–642.8 Table decor**

#### **.7 Furnishings**

Linen, china, crystal, silver, cutlery

#### **.8 Decorations**

Flowers, colors, lights

*Domestic arts and sciences*

**643 The home and its equipment**

Selection, purchase, rental, location, orientation, arrangement

**643.3–643.5 Specific rooms**

Scope: equipment, improvement, remodeling

**.3 Kitchens**

**.4 Eating areas**

Dining rooms, breakfast rooms, bars

**.5 Other**

**.6 Appliances and laborsaving installations**

Description, selection, use, care, repair

Class appliances and installations for specific rooms in **643.3–643.5**,  
for a specific purpose with the purpose

**.7 Improvement and remodeling**

Class improvement and remodeling of specific rooms in  
**643.3–643.5**

**644 Household utilities**

Description, selection, operation, care of systems, appliances, fittings,  
fixtures, accessories

**.1 Heating**

**.3 Lighting**

**.5 Ventilation and air conditioning**

**.6 Water supply**

Including hot-water supply

**645 Household furnishings**

Description, selection, installation, use, care, repair

Class design and decorative treatment of interior furnishings in **747**

**645.1–645.4 Interior furnishings of specific kinds**

**.1 Floor coverings**

Carpets, rugs, linoleums

## *Decimal Classification*

### **645.2 Wall and ceiling coverings**

Wallpaper, paint

### **.3 Window and door furnishings**

Curtains, draperies, shades, blinds, accessories

### **.4 Furniture and accessories**

Including upholstery, slip covers

### **.6 Furnishings for specific rooms**

*For interior furnishings of specific kinds, see 645.1–645.4*

### **.8 Outdoor furnishings**

For gardens, patios, courts, balconies, roofs

## **646 Clothing and care of body**

Use 646.001–646.009 for standard subdivisions

646.01–646.09 Standard subdivisions of clothing

### **.01 Philosophy and theory**

Class fashion [*formerly 641.01*] in 391

### **.02–.08 Miscellany, dictionaries, serial publications, organizations, study and teaching, collections**

### **.09 Historical and geographical treatment**

### **.091 Regional and environmental treatment**

### **.091 1 Clothing for Frigid Zones and cold weather**

### **.091 3 Clothing for Tropics and hot weather**

## **646.1–646.6 Clothing**

### **.1 Textiles, fibers, other materials used**

### **.2 Plain sewing**

Including mending, darning, reweaving, machine sewing

*For clothing construction, see 646.4*

*Domestic arts and sciences*

**646.3 Selection**

Guides to quality

.32 Men's clothing

.34 Women's clothing

.36 Children's clothing

**.4 Construction**

Patternmaking, cutting, fitting, remodeling

Use **646.400 1 – 646.400 9** for standard subdivisions

*For construction of headgear, see 646.5*

.402–.406 For specific kinds of persons

Divide like **646.32–646.36**, e.g., construction of children's clothing **646.406**

**646.42–646.48** Specific kinds of clothing

Divide each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

**001–009** Standard subdivisions

**02–06** For specific kinds of persons

Divide like **646.32–646.36**, e.g., for men **02**

.42 \*Underwear and hose

**646.43–646.45** Outer garments

*For garments for special purposes, see 646.47; accessories, 646.48*

.43 \*Outer house garments

Dresses, suits, coats, trousers, shirts, blouses, skirts

.45 \*Outdoor garments

Overcoats, topcoats, raincoats, sweaters, stoles, cloaks

.47 \*Garments for special purposes

Lounging garments, sleeping wear, sportswear

*For accessories, see 646.48*

.48 \*Accessories

Neckties, collars, cuffs, belts, aprons, handkerchiefs

\* Divide as instructed under **646.42–646.48**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **646.5 Construction of headgear**

Use 646.500 1 – 646.500 9 for standard subdivisions

.502–.506 For specific kinds of persons

Divide like 646.32–646.36, e.g., millinery 646.504

### **.6 Care of clothing**

*For mending, see 646.2*

### **.62 Cleaning**

*For laundering, see 648.1*

### **.63 Dyeing**

### **.7 Care of body (Toilet)**

Scope: description, use, care of equipment

### **.72 Personal appearance [*formerly also* 646.73]**

Promotion of attractiveness and charm thru good grooming

*For reducing and slenderizing, see 646.75*

### **.724 Hairdressing**

*For men's hairdressing, see 646.74*

### **.724 2 Professional**

### **.724 3 Home**

### **.724 8 Wigs**

Selection, styling, cleaning, dyeing

### **.726 Care of skin, lips, eyes**

### **.727 Manicuring and pedicuring**

### **[.73] Personal appearance**

Class in 646.72

### **.74 Men's hairdressing (Barbering)**

### **.75 Reducing and slenderizing**

Massage, steam baths

*Domestic arts and sciences*

**647 Housekeeping**

Class a specific operation with the subject

**.1 Finances**

Budgets, expenses

**647.2–647.6 Employees**

Class personnel management in **658.3**

**647.2–647.3 Selection and training**

**.2 Indoor**

Housekeepers, hostesses, cooks, butlers, maids, waiters and waitresses, laundresses, janitors, porters

**.3 Outdoor**

Gardeners, chauffeurs, laborers

**.6 Hours and duties**

**.9 Public ( Institutional ) housekeeping**

Domestic arts and sciences in public households

**.92 Multiple dwellings for long-term residents**

Tenements, flats, apartments, apartment hotels

**.94 Dwellings for transients [*formerly also* 647.97]**

Hotels, inns, hostels, clubs, motels, trailer camps

**.940 9 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
**647.943–647.949**

**.943–.949 Treatment by continent, country, locality**

Add area notations 3–9 to **647.94**

**.95 Eating and drinking places**

**950 9 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
**647.953–647.959**

## *Decimal Classification*

647.953-.959 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add area notations 3-9 to 647.95

.96 Other public households

Not used primarily for religious, educational, research purposes

Divide like 725, e.g., office buildings 647.962 3

[.969 8] Households having religious purposes

Class in 647.98

[.969 9] Households having educational and research purposes

Class in 647.99

[.97] Dwellings for transients

Class in 647.94

.98 Households having religious purposes [*formerly*  
647.969 8]

Divide like 726, e.g., Franciscan monasteries 647.987 73

.99 Households having educational and research purposes  
[*formerly* 647.969 9]

Divide like 727, e.g., public libraries 647.998 24

## 648 Household sanitation

Processes, equipment, supplies

.1 Laundering

Washing, starching, drying, ironing

.5 Housecleaning

Sweeping, dusting, washing, polishing

.52 Floors and walls

.53 Furnishings

.56 Dishes, cutlery, utensils

.7 Control and eradication of pests

.8 Storage and preparation for storage

*Domestic arts and sciences*

**649 Child rearing and home nursing**

Use 649.001–649.009 for standard subdivisions

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of child rearing

**649.1–649.7 Child rearing**

**.1 Care, training, supervision**

*For specific elements of care, training, supervision, see 649.3–649.7*

.102 4 Works for specific types of users

.102 42 Expectant parents

.102 48 Baby-sitters

**649.12–649.15 Specific groupings of children**

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., preschool boys  
**649.123**

Exceptional characteristics

By class, type, relationships

By age groups

By sex

.12 By age groups

.122–.124 To age eleven

Divide like 155.422–155.424, e.g., infants 649.122

.125 Adolescents

Ages twelve to twenty

.13–.15 By sex, class, type, relationships, exceptional characteristics

Divide like 155.43–155.45, e.g., the only child 649.142



## *Decimal Classification*

- ▶ 649.3–649.7 Specific elements of care, training, supervision
- 649.3 Feeding
- .4 Clothing and care of body
- .5 Supervised activities
- .51 Creative activities
  - Paper work, painting, modeling, music
- .55 Play with toys
  - Including play with games, mechanical devices
- .552 With dolls
- .57 Activities requiring equipment
  - On swings, slides, structures for climbing and crawling
- .6 Manners and habits
  - Training in toilet, cleanliness, dressing and feeding self, good behavior
- .7 Moral, religious, character training
- .8 Home nursing
  - Care of sick and infirm

*Business and related types of enterprise*

**650 Business and related types of enterprise**

Organization, activities, processes, techniques

Use 650.01–650.09 for standard subdivisions

**.1 Success in business**

**651 Office services**

Scope: office methods in museums [*formerly* 069.6], parish office methods [*formerly* 254]

*For accounting procedures, see 657*

**SUMMARY**

- 651.2** Equipment and supplies
- .3** Organization
- .4** Operations
- .5** Records management
- .7** Communication
- .8** Data processing
- .9** Office services in specific kinds of enterprises

**[.1] Space allocation**

Class in 658.2

---

**651.2–651.8 Specific elements**

**.2 Equipment and supplies**

Use 651.200 1 – 651.200 9 for standard subdivision

**.202 Preventive and corrective maintenance of equipment**

Including service contracts

**651.23–651.26 Specific kinds of equipment**

Selection, basis of acquisition (purchase or lease), description, use, maintenance, records of cost and depreciation

**.23 Furniture**

**.26 Mechanized and automatic equipment**

Class description, use, maintenance of mechanized and automatic equipment in a specific operation with the operation, e.g., typewriting **652.3**

Class electronic data processing [*formerly* 651.26] in **651.8**

**.263 Recording and dictating**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 651.264      **Mechanized**
  - Typewriters, copying and duplicating machines, stenographic machines, adding and calculating machines
- .269      **Automatic**
  - Accounting machines, computers
- .29      **Supplies**
  - Including stationery supplies [*formerly 651.71*]
- .3      **Organization**
- .32      **Administrative control**
- [.34]      **Personnel management**
  - Class in **658.3**
- .37      **Office personnel**
  - Grades, titles, functions
- .371      **Administrative secretaries**
- .372      **Office managers**
- .374      **Other**
  - Including receptionists, messengers
- .374 1      **Secretaries**
- .374 2      **Bookkeepers**
- .374 3      **Clerical workers**
  - Filers, typists, stenographers, clerks
- [.38]      **Salary administration**
  - Class in **658.32**
- .4      **Operations**
  - For recording and transmission of information, see 651.5–651.8*
- .41      **Planning**
  - Including work distribution and simplification, job analysis
- [.42]      **Office attendance**
  - Class in **658.312 1 – 658.312 2**

*Business and related types of enterprise*

651.44 Procedures

**651.5–651.8 Recording and transmission of information**

**Records management**

*For conventional written communication, see 651.74*

.51 Organization of records

Creation, maintenance, retention, final disposition

.53 Systems of arrangement (Filing systems [*formerly also* 029.3] )

651.54–651.59 Storage

Scope: space, equipment, control, protection, preservation

651.54–651.56 Of original documents

.54 Active files

.56 Inactive files

.58 By microreproduction

.59 By computer programs

.7 Communication

Internal and external transmission of information thru messenger, postal, telecommunication, other systems

[.71] Stationery supplies

Class in 651.29

.73 Oral communication

.74 Conventional written communication

Use 651.740 01 – 651.740 09 for standard subdivisions

Class business writing [*formerly* 651.74] in 808.066

*For types of written communication, see 651.75–651.78;  
processes of written communication, 652–655*

.740 2 Style manuals

## *Decimal Classification*

### ► 651.75–651.78 Types of written communication

#### 651.75 Correspondence

.77 Minutes

.78 Reports

#### .8 Data processing

Scope: electronic data processing [*formerly 651.26*]

.82 By use of calculating machines

.83 By use of punch-card and -tape equipment

.84 By use of other computers

.85 By use of integrated data processing machines

.89 By use of combinations of equipment

#### .9 Office services in specific kinds of enterprises

Divide like 001–999, e.g., office services in libraries 651.902

*For specific elements, see 651.2–651.8*

### ► 652–655 Processes of written communication

Scope: description, use, maintenance of equipment

#### 652 Writing

*For shorthand, see 653*

##### .1 Handwriting

*For calligraphy (elegant handwriting), see 741*

##### .3 Typewriting

Use 652.300 1 – 652.300 9 for standard subdivisions

.302 Typewriter manuals

Including specific kinds of typewriters

.307 Speed tests (Timed writing)

.32 Style manuals

.322 Letters

.323 Manuscripts

.324 Tabulations

*Business and related types of enterprise*

**[652.4] Duplicating**

Class in 655.2–655.3

**.8 Cryptography**

**653 Shorthand**

**.1 General principles**

Class principles of a specific system with the system

► **653.2–653.4 Systems**

**.2 Abbreviation systems**

Systems using conventional letters

**.3 Machine shorthand systems**

**.4 Pen and pencil shorthand systems**

*For abbreviation systems, see 653.2*

**.41 Multilingual**

**.42 English-language**

**.421 Early forms**

Systems devised before 1837

**.422 Essentially nonphonetic systems**

► **653.423–653.428 Essentially phonetic systems**

**.423 Geometric disjoined vowel systems**

*For Pitman systems, see 653.424*

**.424 Pitman systems**

**.424 2 Isaac Pitman**

**.424 3 Benn Pitman**

**.424 4 Graham**

**.424 5 Munson**

**.425 Geometric joined vowel systems**

Including Pernin, Sloan, Lindsley, Dewey (1922)

## *Decimal Classification*

653.426      Semigeometric, script-geometric, semiscript systems  
                 Including Malone  
                 *For Gregg systems, see 653.427*

427            Gregg systems

427 2          Conventional

427 3          Simplified

428            Script systems  
                 Including Dewey (1936)

.43-.49       Systems used in other languages  
                 Divide like 430-490, e.g., French systems 653.44

## 654

## 655      **Printing and related activities**

Scope: bookmaking and book arts [*both formerly 002*], printing and publishing music [*both formerly 781.98*]

Use 655.001-655.009 for standard subdivisions

.01-.08       Standard subdivisions of printing  
                 Class historical and geographical treatment in 655.1

### **SUMMARY**

#### **655.1-.3 Printing**

.1            **Historical and geographical treatment**

.2-.3       **Processes**

.2            **Typography and composition**

.3            **Other**

#### **.4-.5 Publishing**

.4            **Standard subdivisions**

.5            **Specific elements**

.7            **Bookbinding**

#### **655.1-655.3 Printing**

.1            **Historical and geographical treatment**

.101-.104   **Historical periods**

Divide like standard subdivisions 090 1 - 090 4, e.g.,  
printing in 15th century 655.102 4

- 655.108      **Specific alphabets and characters**  
                  Not limited geographically
- .108 7      **Latin**
- .108 72      **Roman**
- .108 73      **Italic**
- .108 74      **Black-letter**  
                  Including fraktur
- 108 8      **Greek**
- .108 9      **Other**  
                  Divide like 491–499, e.g., Chinese 655.108 951
- .109      **Regional treatment**  
                  Divide like area notation 1, e.g., printing in Islamic regions  
                  655.109 767
- .11      **Invention of printing from movable type**
- .12      **Celebration of printing anniversaries**
- .13–.19      **Treatment by continent, country, locality**  
                  Scope: history, description, products, processes of specific  
                  establishments  
                  Add area notations 3–9 to 655.1  
                  *For invention of printing from movable type, see 655.11;*  
                  *celebration of printing anniversaries, 655.12*
- 655.2–655.3 Processes**  
                  Scope: duplicating [*formerly also 652.4*]  
                  Class processes of specific establishments in 655.13–655.19
- .2      **Typography and composition**  
                  *For special printing, see 655.38*
- .21      **Typefounding and typesetting**
- .24      **Typefaces**  
                  Design, styles, specimens of letters, other characters and  
                  devices



## *Decimal Classification*

- 655.25      Composition (Typesetting)  
*For machine composition, see 655.28; imposition and lockup, 655.27*
- .255          Proofreading
- .258          Page design (Style manuals)
- .27          Imposition and lockup
- .28          Machine composition
- .282          Hot
- .283          Cold  
*Including typewriter and teletypesetter composition*
- .3          Other
- 655.31–655.32 Impression  
*For special printing, see 655.38*
- .31          Mechanical techniques
- 655.312–655.314 Relief processes
- .312          Letterpress  
*Printing from metallic type*
- .314          Plate  
*Printing from stereotypes, electrotypes, autotypes*  
*For machine engraving and printing, see 655.318*
- .315          Planographic processes  
*Printing from flat surfaces of metal or stone (lithography), paper, gelatin*  
*Including offset lithography [formerly 655.325]*
- .316          Stencil processes  
*Including silk-screen*
- .318          Machine engraving and printing  
*Including engraving and printing of bank notes, bonds, other securities, paper money, postage stamps*

### ***Business and related types of enterprise***

- 655.32      Photomechanical techniques
- .325      Photolithography (Photo-offset)
  - Class offset lithography [*formerly 655.325*] in 655.315
- .326      Photometallography
  - Photozincography, photoalgraphy, photoaluminography
- .327      Photomechanical engraving
  - Photoengraving, photoetching, photogravure, photointaglio
- .328      Xerographic processes
- .38      Special printing
- .382      Braille and other raised characters
- .383      Maps [*formerly 526.89*]
- .384      Music

### **655.4–655.5 Publishing**

Production of books, periodicals, newspapers

Class standard subdivisions in 655.4

Class bookselling (book trade) [*formerly 655.4–655.5*] in 658.8

*For printing, see 655.1–655.3; bookbinding, 655.7*

#### **.4      Standard subdivisions**

- .401–.408      Philosophy, miscellany, dictionaries, serial publications, organizations, study, collections
- .409      Historical treatment
  - Class geographical treatment in 655.41–655.49
- .41–.49      Geographical treatment
  - Scope: history, description, products, processes of specific establishments
  - Add area notations 1–9 to 655.4

#### **Specific elements**

Class specific establishments in 655.41–655.49

*For journalism, see 070.1–070.4*

## *Decimal Classification*

- 655.51–655.54 Publishing processes
- 655.51 Selection and editing of manuscripts  
Class editorial techniques in 808.02
- .52 Relations with authors
- .53 Design of format
- .54 Manufacture
- .57 Kinds of publications  
*For publishing processes, see 655.51–655.54*
- .572 Serials
- .573 Editions  
Limited, vest-pocket, cloth-bound, paperback, subscription
- .579 Special  
Divide like 655.38, e.g., map publishing 655.579 3
- .59 Kinds of publishers  
*For publishing processes, see 655.51–655.54; kinds of publications, 655.57*
- .592 Commercial
- .593 Private
- .594 Institutional  
University, academic, society
- .595 Government
- [.6] Copyright  
Class in 340
- .7 Bookbinding  
Scope: materials
- 
- 655.72–655.73 Methods  
*For specific elements, see 655.74–655.76*
- .72 Hand

655.73      Commercial

.732          Individual-copy ( Library )

.734          Edition

►                                      655.74–655.76 Specific elements

.74          Types of covers

.742          Leather

.743          Cloth

                Including imitation leather

.744          Paper

.75          Types of fastenings

                Oversewing, hand-sewing, side-sewing, wire-stitching, perfect binding

.76          Ornamentation

                Tooling, lettering, marbling, gilding

656

## 657      **Accounting principles and procedures**

Scope: description, use, maintenance of equipment

### 657.2–657.6 General principles

Class general principles applied to accounting for specific kinds of enterprises in 657.8

.2          **Constructive ( Recording, Bookkeeping )**

.3          **Financial ( Reporting )**

.4          **Administrative ( Analytical )**

.42          Cost analysis

.422          Direct-material costs

.423          Direct-labor costs

.424          Other

                Including manufacturing overhead and factory burden

.45          Internal auditing [*formerly* 657.64]

## Decimal Classification

- 657.6 Public accounting and auditing**  
[.64] Internal auditing  
Class in 657.45
- .8 Accounting for specific kinds of enterprises**  
Add 0 to each subdivision identified by \* and divide like 657.2-657.6, e.g., cost analysis for hotels and restaurants 657.837 042
- .83 Service and professional
- .832 Hospitals and other welfare services
- .833 Finance and real estate
- .834 Professions  
Including accounting for libraries [*formerly* 025.11], for museums [*formerly* 069.6]
- .835 \*Government  
Class accounting for a specific government service with the subject
- .836 \*Insurance
- .837 \*Hotels and restaurants
- .838 \*Public utilities
- .839 \*Wholesale and retail trade
- .86 Other
- .862 \*Mining
- .863 \*Agricultural [*formerly also* 630]
- .867 \*Manufacturing
- .869 \*Construction

\* Add 0 and divide as instructed under 657.8

**658 Management**

The executive function of planning, organizing, coordinating, directing, controlling, supervising a project or activity with responsibility for results

Scope: management of real-estate business [*formerly 333.33*], of private police services [*formerly 351.744*], of public utility services [*formerly 380*], business management of newspapers and periodicals [*both formerly 070.3*], of agricultural activities [*formerly 630*]

Use 658.001–658.009 for standard subdivisions

*For public administration, see 350*

.02 Management of enterprises of specific sizes

.022 Small [*formerly 658.9*]

.023 Big

658.023 2 – 658.023 5 Within one country

.023 2 Departmentalized

.023 3 Decentralized

.023 4 Horizontally organized

.023 5 Vertically organized

.023 6 International

.04 Management of enterprises of specific forms

Divide like 658.114, e.g., corporations 658.045

**SUMMARY**

- 658.1 Management by control of structure
  - .2 Management of plants (Plant engineering)
  - .3 Management of personnel (Personnel management)
  - .4 Management at executive levels (Executive management)
  - .5 Management of production (Industrial engineering)
  - .7 Management of materials (Materials control)
  - .8 Management of distribution (Marketing)
  - .9 Management of specific kinds of enterprises

## *Decimal Classification*

---

► **658.1–658.8 Specific elements**

**658.1 Management by control of structure**

.11 Thru promotion and organization

.114 Forms of organization

---

► **658.114 1 – 658.114 7 For profit**

.114 1 Individual proprietorships

.114 2 Partnerships

General and limited

.114 4 Unincorporated enterprises

Partnership associations, joint ventures, syndicates, joint stock companies

*For partnerships, see 658.114 2*

.114 5 Corporations

.114 6 Combinations

.114 7 Cooperative organizations

.114 8 Nonprofit organizations

Charitable, social, political, occupational

.12 Thru legal counsel

[.14] Capitalization

Class in **658.15**

.15 Thru financial direction and supervision

Scope: capitalization [*formerly 658.14*]

---

► **658.151–658.155 Specific elements**

.151 Controllership

Managerial control thru accounting and reporting systems

.151 2 External reporting (Custodial accounting)

## *Business and related types of enterprise*

- 658.151 3 – 658.151 4 Internal (Managerial) accounting
- 658.151 3      Performance  
                    Quantitative matching of performance with  
                    organizational responsibility
- .151 4      Decision  
                    Quantitative evaluation of alternate courses of action
- .152      Capital adjustments and investments  
                    Including liquidation for reorganization of capital structure  
                    [formerly 658.16]
- .153      Funds management  
                    Disbursements [formerly 658.17], funds flow of capital,  
                    internal control thru audit
- .154      Budgetary control  
                    Cost and inventory control
- .155      Profitability accounting  
                    Dividend policy [formerly 658.156], surplus and undivided  
                    profits (savings [formerly 658.157]), profit-and-loss control,  
                    long-range planning
- [.156]      Dividend policy  
                    Class in 658.155
- [.157]      Savings  
                    Class in 658.155
- .159      Financial direction and supervision in specific kinds of  
                    enterprises  
                    *For specific elements, see 658.151–658.155*
- .159 3      Service and professional
- .159 32      Hospitals and other welfare services
- .159 33      Finance and real estate
- .159 34      Professions
- .159 36      Insurance



### *Decimal Classification*

- 658.159 37 Hotels and restaurants
- .159 38 Public utilities
- .159 39 Wholesale and retail trade
- .159 6 Other
- .159 62 Mining
- .159 63 Agricultural
- .159 67 Manufacturing
- .159 69 Construction
- .16 Thru intercorporate relations
  - Mergers and consolidations, holding companies, subsidiaries
  - Class liquidation for reorganization of capital structure  
[formerly 658.16] in 658.152
  - For control thru international operations, see 658.18*
- [.17] Disbursements
  - Class in 658.153
- .18 Thru international operations
  - Foreign licensing, subsidiaries, independent organizations
- .2 Management of plants (Plant engineering)
  - Management of equipment and facilities
  - Scope: space allocation for office services [formerly 651.1]
  - Use 658.200 1 – 658.200 9 for standard subdivisions
- .202 Preventive and protective maintenance
  - Including maintenance of equipment [formerly 658.58],  
service contracts, plant protection
- .21 Location
  - In relation to transportation, markets, labor supply, raw  
materials
- .23 Layout
- .24 Lighting
- .25 Heating, ventilation, air conditioning
- .28 Safety equipment

*Business and related types of enterprise*

**658.3 Management of personnel ( Personnel management )**

Procedure by which employees are hired, managed, replaced

Scope: personnel management of office services [*formerly* 651.34],  
in forestry [*formerly* 634.928]

Use 658.001–658.009 for standard subdivisions

Class managerial personnel policies [*formerly* 658.3] in 658.407

.302 Supervision [*formerly* 658.312 4]

.31 Administration of employment policies

.311 Recruitment and selection of personnel

Class placement of personnel [*formerly* 658.311] in  
658.312 5 – 658.312 8

.311 1 Recruitment

.311 2 Qualification requirements

.311 22 Personal

.311 23 Professional and occupational

.312 Operations

---

658.312 1 – 658.312 2 Conditions of employment

Scope: office attendance [*formerly* 651.42], work schedules  
[*formerly* 658.381]

*For promotion of personnel welfare, satisfaction, efficiency,  
see 658.38*

.312 1 Days and hours of work

.312 2 Leaves of absence

.312 3 Position classification

.312 4 Training of personnel

Class supervision [*formerly* 658.312 4] in 658.302

.312 42 Orientation

.312 43 In-service training [*formerly* 658.386]

---

658.312 5 – 658.312 8 Placement [*formerly* 658.311] and  
evaluation of personnel

.312 5 Performance rating

.312 6 Promotion

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 658.312 7            Demotion
- .312 8            Transfer
- .312 9            Discipline
- .313            Separation from service
  - Divide like 350.18, e.g., dismissal 658.313 3
- .314            Employee morale
- .315            Employer-employee relationships
  - For employee morale, see 658.314*
- .315 1            Industrial relations counseling
- .315 2            Employee representation in management
- .315 3            Employee organizations
- .315 4            Collective bargaining
- .315 5            Grievances and appeals
- .32            Wage and salary administration
  - Scope: salary administration of office services [*formerly 651.38*]
- .321            Payroll administration
- .322            Compensation plans
- .322 2            Classified pay plans
  - Including classification and pay plans of library personnel [*formerly also 023.8*]
- 
- ▶            658.322 5 – 658.322 6 Incentives
- .322 5            Bonus systems
- .322 6            Merit awards
- .325            Pensions
  - Including pension and retirement systems for library personnel [*formerly also 023.8*]
- .37            Personnel management in specific kinds of enterprises and occupations
  - Divide like 001–999, e.g., personnel management in schools 658.373 71
  - For a specific element of personnel management, see the subject, e.g., pensions 658.325*

*Business and related types of enterprise*

- 658.38 Promotion of personnel welfare, satisfaction, efficiency  
[.381] Work schedules  
Class in 658.312 1 – 658.312 2
- .382 Health and safety programs
- .383 Welfare services  
Housing, transportation, food services, discounts
- .385 Counseling services
- .386 Educational programs  
Including industrial rehabilitation, adjustment to automation  
Class in-service training [*formerly* 658.386] in 658.312 43
- [.39] Internal organization  
Class in 658.402
- .4 Management at executive levels (Executive management)  
Use 658.400 1 – 658.400 9 for standard subdivisions  
Class a specific activity of executive management with the subject
- .402 Internal organization [*formerly* 658.39]  
Direction, control, coordination thru line, functional,  
line-and-staff, independent staff organization
- .407 Managerial personnel policies [*formerly* 658.3]  
Including executive compensation, managerial training
- 658.42–658.43 Specific levels
- .42 Top management  
Direction and control of organization and functions,  
coordination of interdivisional relationships by senior officers
- .43 Middle management  
Direction and control of operations by junior officers

## Decimal Classification

---

- 658.45–658.47 Specific elements of executive management
- 658.45 Communication
- .452 Oral
- .453 Written
- .455 Informational programs  
Including house organs, company films, bulletin boards
- .46 Use of consultants
- .47 Security
- .5 Management of production (Industrial engineering)
- Management of extraction, manufacture, transportation, storage, exchange (procurement and marketing) of goods and services
- Use 658.500 1 – 658.500 9 for standard subdivisions
- For plant engineering, see 658.2; materials control, 658.7; marketing, 658.8*
- 658.501–658.507 Analysis
- 658.501–658.503 Specific elements
- .501 Information analysis
- .502 Systems analysis  
Analysis of standards and procedures of total production systems
- .503 Specific factors in analysis
- .503 2 Financial  
Billing, appraisal of investment, cost appraisal
- .503 3 Inventory
- .503 4 Marketing mix  
Sales promotion, research and development, price
- .503 5 Current orders

## ***Business and related types of enterprise***

- 658.505–658.507 Analytical techniques
- 658.505 Use of digital computer systems
  - 658.505 1 - 658.505 3 Programming
  - .505 1 Preparation of general flow charts
  - .505 2 Preparation of detailed flow charts (Block diagraming)
  - .505 3 Coding
    - Preparation of instructions for converting written language into machine language
  - .505 4 Computer output and data transmission
  - .506 Use of software systems
    - Master programs by which computers write own programs
  - .507 Use of analog computer systems
    - Coordination of current operations into total production systems
    - Including control of technical processes
- 658.51–658.57 Specific elements
- .51 Programing of production
- .511 Based on analysis of operations and manpower
  - Methods and performance standards for job specifications
- .512 Based on inventory control
  - Materials used and commodities produced
- .513 Based on marketing schedules
- .516 Internal standardization
  - Equipment, procedures, products
- 658.53–658.57 Operational management
- .53 Systems and procedures
  - Including production charts
- .54 Operation studies (Methods analysis)
- .542 Time and motion studies
- .544 Fatigue and monotony studies

## *Decimal Classification*

- 658.56      Production control
  - .561      Production methods
    - Continuous-process, assembly-line, job-lot, single-piece
  - .562      Quality control
  - .564      Unit packaging
  - .567      Industrial waste
    - Salvage and utilization
- .57      Production research and development
- [.58]      Maintenance of equipment
  - Class in **658.202**
- .7      **Management of materials (Materials control)**
  - Control of goods used and commodities produced
  - For marketing, see 658.8*
- .72      Procurement
  - Acquisition of property, equipment, supplies needed in production
  - Including receipt [*formerly 658.77*]
- [.77]      Receipt
  - Class in **658.72**
- .78      Traffic management
  - Into, within, out of plant
- .785      Storage
- .787      Inventory control
- .788      Shipment
  - .788 2      Selection of carrier and routing
  - .788 3      Cost of inventory in transit
  - .788 4      Packing for shipment
  - .788 5      Loading and unloading
  - .788 6      Supervision
    - Including tracing, expediting

*Business and related types of enterprise*

**658.8 Management of distribution (Marketing)**

Of goods and services

Scope: bookselling (book trade) [*formerly 655.4–655.5*],  
marketing of insurance [*formerly 368*]

Use **658.800 1 – 658.800 9** for standard subdivisions

**.809 Marketing specific kinds of goods and services**

Divide like **001–999**, e.g., marketing automobiles  
**658.809 629 2**

**658.81–658.83 Merchandising**

*For salesmanship, see 658.85*

**.81 Sales management**

Use **658.810 01 – 658.810 09** for standard subdivisions

**658.810 2 – 658.810 4 Kinds of sales organizations**

**.810 2 Centralized**

With general sales managers

**.810 3 Decentralized**

With sales districts

**.810 4 Product-oriented**

**.812 Sales policies**

**.816 Pricing policies**

**.818 Sales forecasting and budgeting**

**.82 Sales promotion techniques**

**.83 Market research and analysis**

**.830 9] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in **658.839**

**.838 On specific products**

Divide like **001–999**, e.g., market research and analysis on  
cosmetics **658.838 668 55**

**.839 Historical and geographical treatment**

Add area notations **1–9** to **658.839**



## *Decimal Classification*

- 658.84      Channels of distribution  
             Including markets, fairs, auctions
- .85          Personal selling (Salesmanship)  
             Class personal selling of specific kinds of goods and services in  
             **658.89**
- .86          Wholesale marketing
- .87          Retail (Consumer) marketing  
             Use **658.870 01 – 658.870 09** for standard subdivisions
- 
- 658.870 1 – 658.870 7 By type of ownership and control
- .870 1      Independent units [*formerly* 658.874]  
             *For consumer cooperatives, see 658.870 7*
- 
- 658.870 2 – 658.870 3 Chain-store units [*formerly* 658.873]
- .870 2      Corporate chains
- .870 3      Voluntary chains
- .870 4      Sideline stores and markets
- .870 5      Manufacturers' outlets
- .870 6      Branch stores [*formerly* 658.877]
- .870 7      Consumer cooperatives
- 
- 658.871–658.879 By merchandising pattern
- .871      Department stores
- .872      Mail-order houses
- .873      Variety stores  
             Class chain-store units [*formerly* 658.873] in  
             **658.870 2 – 658.870 3**
- .874      General stores  
             Class independent units [*formerly* 658.874] in **658.870 1**
- .875      Specialty shops
- .876      Single-line outlets
- [.877]      Branch stores  
             Class in **658.870 6**

*Business and related types of enterprise*

---

- 658.878 Supermarkets
- .879 Discount stores
- .88 Credit management
- .882 Mercantile credit
- .883 Consumer (Retail) credit
  - Including collecting of medical accounts [*formerly* 614.25], deferred payment plans
- .89 Personal selling of specific kinds of goods and services
  - Divide like 001–999, e.g., selling automobiles 658.896 292
- .9 Management of specific kinds of enterprises
  - Class management of small business [*formerly* 658.9] in 658.022
  - For specific elements, see* 658.1–658.8
- .91 Service and professional
  - Divide like 001–999, e.g., management of libraries 658.910 2
- .92–.99 Other
  - Extractive, manufacturing, construction
  - Divide like 620–690, e.g., management of apparel manufacture 658.987
- 659 Other activities, processes, techniques
  - .1 Advertising
    - Promotion of organizations, products, services thru publicity
  - [.101 15] Psychological aspects
    - Class in 659.101 9
  - .101 9 Psychological aspects [*formerly* 659.101 15]

## Decimal Classification

---

► 659.11-659.17 Specific elements

659.11 Organization

.111 Policies and purposes

.112 Agencies and departments

.112 7 Research department

.113 Campaigns

► 659.13-659.17 Mediums

.13 Visual and audio-visual advertising

*For advertising by display of goods and services, see 659.15;  
broadcast advertising, 659.14*

.132 Newspaper and magazine

.132 2 Copywriting

► 659.132 3 - 659.132 5 Art and design

.132 3 Art

.132 4 Layout and typography

.132 5 Color

.133 Direct-mail

Circulars, letters, mail-order catalogs, broadsides

.134 Conventional sign

Including transportation signs

.136 Spectacular and other electric-sign

.137 Specialty

Including blotters, calendars, other novelties, programs,  
postcards, banners, toys

.138 Entertainment

Including stunts and use of recreational mediums

*Business and related types of enterprise*

---

- 659.14 Broadcast advertising
  - .142 Radio
  - .143 Television
  - .15 Advertising by display of goods and services
  - .152 Exhibits and shows
    - Including fashion modeling
  - .153 Demonstrations
  - .157 Point-of-sale advertising
    - Window, showcase, counter displays
  - .17 Contests and lotteries
  - .19 Advertising specific kinds of organizations, products, services
    - Divide like 001-999, e.g., library advertising 659.190 2
    - For specific elements, see 659.11-659.17*
- .2 Public relations
  - Promotion of rapport and good will, assessment of public reaction

## **660 Chemical technology and related industries**

Use 660.001–660.009 for standard subdivisions

*For elastomers and elastomer products, see 678*

.01–.09      Standard subdivisions of chemical technology



### **660.2–660.7 General principles**

Class general principles applied to a specific subject with the subject

.2      **Chemical engineering**

*For industrial stoichiometry, see 660.7*

.28      The chemical plant

Use 660.280 01 – 660.280 09 for standard subdivisions

.280 7      Specific types

.280 71      Bench-scale

.280 72      Pilot

.280 73      Full-scale

.281      Process design and assembly

.282      Raw and auxiliary materials

Including farm materials

.283      Process equipment

Instruments, apparatus, machinery, e.g., autoclaves,  
columns, towers, mixing machines, reactors

.284      Processes

.284 2      Unit operations

Operations basically physical

.284 22      Size reduction and separation

Crushing, grinding, screening



660.284 23 – 660.284 25 Mass transfer

.284 23      Absorption and adsorption

Including gas chromatography



## *Chemical technology and related industries*

---

- 660.284 24            Precipitation, filtration, solvent extraction
- .284 25            Fractional distillation
- .284 26            Evaporative processes
  - Heat-drying and freeze-drying
- .284 27            Heat transfer
- .284 29            Other
- .284 292           Momentum transfer
  - Fluid flow and fluid mixing
- .284 293            Humidification
- .284 298            Crystallization
- .284 4             Unit processes
  - Operations basically chemical
  - Divide like 547.2, e.g., hydrogenation 660.284 43
- .29                Applied physical chemistry
  - Divide like 541.3, e.g., electrochemistry 660.297
- .6                 Industrial microbiology
- .7                 Industrial stoichiometry

## **661      Industrial chemicals ( Heavy chemicals )**

Large-scale production of chemicals used as raw materials or reagents in the manufacture of other products

Use 661.001–661.009 for standard subdivisions

*For industrial gases, see 665.7–665.8*

### 661.03–661.08 Compounds

Class specific structural types of compounds in 661.2–661.8

#### .03            Metallic compounds

Class metallic compounds other than those of alkali and alkaline earth metals in 661.04–661.07

#### .038–.039    Alkali and alkaline earth

Divide like 546.38–546.39, e.g., sodium compounds  
661.038 2

## Decimal Classification

- 661.04-.07      Other compounds  
Divide like 546.4-546.7, e.g., sulfur compounds 661.072 3  
*For hydrogen compounds, see 661.08*

- .08      Hydrogen compounds  
Heavy water and hydrides

### SUMMARY

- 661.1      Nonmetallic elements
- .2      Acids
- .3      Bases
- .4      Halogens, phosphorus, silicon salts
- .5      Ammonium salts
- .6      Sulfur and nitrogen salts
- .8      Organic chemicals

►      661.1-661.6 Inorganic chemicals

- .1      Nonmetallic elements  
Class gaseous elements in 665.8, carbon in 662.9
- .2      Acids
- .22      Sulfuric
- .23      Hydrochloric (Muriatic)
- .24      Nitric
- .25      Phosphoric
- .29      Other
- .3      Bases

►      661.32-661.35 Alkalis

- .32      Sodas
- .322      Caustic soda (Sodium hydroxide)
- .323      Sodium bicarbonate
- .324      Sodium carbonate
- .33      Potash and other potassium alkalis
- .332      Caustic potash (Potassium hydroxide)
- .333      Potassium bicarbonate
- .334      Potassium carbonate

*Chemical technology and related industries*

- 661.34      Ammonia and ammonium hydroxide
- .35      Other alkalis
- Hydroxides and carbonates of lithium, rubidium, cesium, francium, and alkaline earth metals
- .36      Other bases

**661.4–661.6 Salts**

Simple, double, complex

- .4      **Halogen, phosphorus, silicon salts**
- For ammonium salts, see 661.5*
- .42      Halogen
- Chlorides, chlorites, chlorates, and corresponding salts of other halogens
- .43      Phosphorus and silicon
- Phosphides, phosphites, phosphates, and corresponding salts of silicon
- Including water glass [*formerly 666.159*]
- .5      Ammonium salts
- .6      Sulfur and nitrogen salts
- For ammonium salts, see 661.5*
- .63      Sulfur
- Sulfides, sulfites, sulfates
- For plaster of Paris, see 666.92*
- .65      Nitrogen
- Nitrides, nitrites, nitrates
- [.7]      **Cyanides (Nitriles)**
- Class in 661.894



## Decimal Classification

### 661.8 Organic chemicals

Cyclic [*formerly 668.7*] and aliphatic

Use 661.800 1 – 661.800 9 for standard subdivisions

Divide each subdivision identified by \* like 661.81, e.g., aliphatic esters 661.834

---

► 661.802–661.804 Derived chemicals

.802 Cellulose derivatives [*formerly 676.44*]

.803 Coal tar chemicals

.804 Petroleum chemicals

.805 Synthetic chemicals

---

► 661.806–661.808 Special-purpose chemicals

.806 Essential oils

.807 Solvents, diluents, extenders

.808 Photographic chemicals

Including photosensitive surfaces [*formerly 770.281*]

Class specific inorganic chemicals in 661.1–661.6

.81 Hydrocarbons

.814 Aliphatic

.815 Alicyclic and heterocyclic

.816 Aromatic

---

► 661.82–661.86 Hydrocarbon derivatives

Class halogen and nitrogen derivatives of hydrocarbons in 661.891–661.894

.82 \*Alcohols and phenols

*For glycerin, see 668.2*

.83 \*Esters

.84 \*Ethers

.85 \*Aldehydes and ketones

.86 \*Acids

\* Divide as instructed under 661.8

## *Chemical technology and related industries*

- 661.87      **\*Phosphorus compounds**
- .88      **\*Silicon compounds**
- .89      **Other**
- 661.891–661.894 Other hydrocarbon derivatives
- .891      **\*Halogen derivatives**
- .894      **\*Nitrogen derivatives**
  - Including cyanides (nitriles) [*formerly 661.7*]
- .895      **\*Metallic compounds**
  - Salts, chelates, arsenicals, Grignards

## **662      Explosives, fuels, and related products**

### **SUMMARY**

- 662.1      Fireworks (Pyrotechnics)**
- .2      **Explosives**
- .4      **Detonators**
- .5      **Matches**
- .6      **Fuel technology**
- .7      **Residual products of carbonization**
- .8      **Other fuels**
- .9      **Nonfuel carbons**
- .1      **Fireworks (Pyrotechnics)**
- .2      **Explosives**
  - Chemicals for propelling, bursting, demolition charges
- .26      **Propellants ( Burning and deflagratory charges )**
  - [*formerly 662.3*]
  - Black powder (gunpowder), smokeless powder, nitrocellulose (guncotton), cordite, flashless and coated powders
  - For rocket propellants, see 662.666*
- .27      **High explosives**
  - Nitroglycerin, dynamite, nitroguanidine, TNT (trinitrotoluene), ammonium picrate and chlorate, PETN (pentaerythrite tetranitrate), RDX (cyclonite, hexagen), tetryl, HMTD (hexamethylene-triperoxidediamine)
  - Including primary explosives, e.g., mercury fulminate, lead azide and picrate, diazonitrophenol

\* Divide as instructed under **661.8**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **[662.3] Propellants (Burning and deflagratory charges)**

Class in **662.26**

#### **.4 Detonators**

Fuses, primers, firing mechanisms, boosters, percussion caps

#### **.5 Matches**



#### **662.6–662.8 Fuels**

Class fluid fossil fuels in **665.5–665.7**

#### **.6 Fuel technology**



662.62–662.65 Solid carbonaceous fuels

#### **.62 Coal**

#### **.622 Analysis and tests**

Tests of physical and carbonizing properties

[.622 09]

Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in **662.622 9**

#### **.622 1–.622 5 Of specific types**

Divide like **553.21–553.25**, e.g., analysis and tests of bituminous coal **662.622 4**

#### **.622 9 Historical and geographical treatment**

Add area notations 1–9 to **662.622 9**

#### **.623 Mechanical treatment**

Washing, coloring, drying, grinding, sizing

#### **.624 Storage, transportation, distribution**

#### **.625 Uses**

Class a specific use with the subject

#### **.65 Other**

Bagasse, briquettes, wood, sawdust

*For rocket fuels, see 662.666; residual products of carbonization, 662.7*

## *Chemical technology and related industries*

- 662.66      **Synthetic fuels**
- .662      **Synthetic petroleum**
- .662 2      **Bergius process**
  - Production thru hydrogenation and liquefaction of coal
- .662 3      **Fischer-Tropsch processes**
  - Production thru hydrogenation of carbonaceous gases
- .666      **Rocket fuels ( Rocket propellants )**
  - In liquid and solid forms
- .669      **Other liquid fuels**
  - Including fuel alcohols and benzenes from waste products
- 
- .7      **Residual products of carbonization**
- .72      **Of coal ( Coke )**
- .74      **Of wood ( Charcoal )**
- 
- .8      **Other fuels**
- .82      **Colloidal and mud fuels**
- .86      **High-energy boron**
- 
- .9      **Nonfuel carbons**
- .92      **Graphite [*formerly also 666.72*] and graphite products**
- .93      **Adsorbent carbons**
  - Activated carbons, animal black, bone char, carbon black, adsorbent charcoals, decolorizing carbons, lampblack

► **663–664 Food and drink**

Manufacture (commercial preparation and preservation), packaging of edible products for human and animal consumption

Class comprehensive works in 664

*For dairy and related products, see 637*

**663 Drinks, stimulants, their substitutes**

**SUMMARY**

- 663.1 General principles
  - .2 Wines and wine making
  - .3 Brewery practices
  - .4 Specific kinds of brewed and malted beverages
  - .5 Distilled liquors
  - .6 Nonalcoholic liquids
  - .9 Other stimulants and their substitutes
- 

► **663.1–663.5 Alcoholic beverages**

**.1 General principles**

Class general principles applied to specific types of alcoholic beverages in 663.2–663.5

- .11 Raw and auxiliary materials
- .12 Preliminary preparations
- .13 Fermentation
- .14 Packing
- .15 Refrigeration and pasteurization
- .16 Distillation
- .17 Aging
- .19 Bottling

**.2 Wines and wine making**

Use 663.200 1 – 663.200 9 for standard subdivisions

**.201–.209 General principles**

Divide like 663.11–663.19, e.g., fermentation 663.203

► 663.22–663.29 Specific kinds of wine

663.22 Grape  
Natural and fortified

.222 White

.223 Red

.224 Sparkling

.29 Other

- 663.3–663.4 Brewed and malted beverages

.3 Brewery practices

Divide like 663.1, e.g., fermentation 663.33

*For specific kinds of brewed and malted beverages, see 663.4*

.4 Specific kinds of brewed and malted beverages

.42 Beers

.49 Other

Including sake, pulque

.5 Distilled liquors

Use 663.500 1 – 663.500 9 for standard subdivisions

.501–.509 General principles

Divide like 663.11–663.19, e.g., distillation 663.506

663.52–663.59 Specific kinds of liquors

.52 Whiskies

Liquors made by distilling fermented grain mash

.53 Brandies

Liquors made by distilling fermented fruit mash

.55 Compound liquors

Distilled spirits flavored with various seeds, roots, leaves, flowers, or fruits, e.g., gin, cordials (liqueurs)

.59 Other

Including mescal, potato whisky

## *Decimal Classification*

### **663.6 Nonalcoholic liquids**

#### **.61 Potable water**

Bottled and canned

#### **.62 Mineralized and carbonated beverages**

Artificial and natural

#### **.63 Natural fruit and vegetable juices**

#### **.64 Milk substitutes**

Beverages and beverage constituents from soybeans, coconuts, malted cereals

### **[.8] Bartenders' manuals and recipes**

Class in **641.874**

### **.9 Other stimulants and their substitutes**

Divide each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 1 Raw and auxiliary materials
- 2 Preliminary preparations
- 3 Fermentation and oxidation
- 4 Firing, roasting, curing
- 5 Blending
- 7 Specific varieties
- 8 Concentrates
- 9 Packaging

#### **.92 Cacao, cocoa, chocolate (*Theobroma cacao*)**

#### **.93 \*Coffee (*Coffea*)**

#### **.94 \*Tea (*Thea sinensis*)**

#### **.96 Herb teas**

Catnip, saffrafras, maté (*Ilex paraguayensis*), other aromatic and medicinal teas

#### **.97 Coffee substitutes**

Chicory (*Cichorium intybus*), acorns, cereal preparations

Divide as instructed under **663.9**

**664 Food technology**

Use 664.001–664.009 for standard subdivisions

- .01 Raw and auxiliary materials
- .02 Processes
  - .022 Extraction
  - .023 Refining
  - .024 Manufacture
  - .028 Preservation techniques [*formerly* 664.802 8]
    - .028 1 Preliminary treatment
    - .028 2 Canning
    - .028 4 Drying and dehydrating
      - .028 42 By slow, thermal processes
      - .028 43 Thru pulverization and flaking
      - .028 45 By freeze-drying
    - .028 5 Cryogenic techniques
      - Application and maintenance of constant range of lowered temperature
- .028 52 Cold storage
- .028 53 Deep freezing

---

► 664.028 6 – 664.028 7 Chemical preservation

- .028 6 By brining, pickling, smoking
- .028 7 By use of additives
- .028 8 Treatment with electromagnetic radiations

- .06 Additives
- .07 Tests, analysis, quality controls
  - For texture, taste, color, contaminants
- .08 By-products
- .09 Packaging



**SUMMARY**

- 664.1      Sugars, sirups, their derived products
  - .2      Starches and jellying agents
  - .3      Fats and oils
  - .4      Food salts
  - .5      Other flavoring aids
  - .6      Special-purpose foods and aids
  - .7      Grains, other seeds, their derived products
  - .8      Fruits and vegetables
  - .9      Meats and allied foods
- 664.1      Sugars, sirups, their derived products

---
- ▶                      664.11 -664.13 Sugars and sirups
  - .11      General principles
    - Class general principles applied to specific sugars and sirups in 664.12-664.13
  - .111      Raw and auxiliary materials
  - .112      Preliminary preparations
  - .113      Extraction and purification
  - .114      Concentration
    - Production of sirups
  - .115      Crystallization
    - Production of sugars
  - .116      Additives
  - .117      Tests, analysis, quality controls
    - For texture, taste, color, contaminants
  - .118      By-products
  - .119      Packaging
- 664.12-664.13 Specific sugars and sirups
  - .12      Cane and beet
  - .122      Cane
    - Divide like 664.11, e.g., molasses 664.122 8
  - .123      Beet

- 664.13      Other  
            *For honey, see 638.16*
- .132      Maple
- .133      Corn and sorghum
- .139      Minor sources  
            Including sirup from Jerusalem artichokes
- .15      Sugar products
- .152      Jams, jellies, marmalades [*all formerly 664.83*]
- .153      Candies
- .19      By-product utilization  
            Class a specific use with the subject
- .2      **Starches and jellying agents**  
            

---
- 664.22–664.24 Starches
- .22      Cornstarch and potato starch
- .23      Cassava and arrowroot starches
- .24      Other starches
- 
- 664.25–664.26 Jellying agents
- .25      Pectins
- .26      Gelatins  
            Of animal and vegetable origin
- .3      **Fats and oils**  
            

---
- 664.32–664.34 Shortenings
- .32      Oleomargarins
- .33      Other hydrogenated fats and oils
- .34      Lard
- .36      Salad and cooking oils [*both formerly 665.32*]  
            Oils in liquid form
- .362      Olive oil

## *Decimal Classification*

- 664.363 Cottonseed oil
- .369 Other
  - Corn, soybean, peanut, safflower, sesame oils
- .37 Salad dressings
  - Products in which oil is principal ingredient, e.g., mayonnaise, french dressing
- .4 Food salts
  - Table salt, monosodium glutamate, tenderizers, sodium-free and other dietetic salts
- .5 Other flavoring aids
- .52-.54 Essences, spices, condiments
  - Divide like 633.82-633.84, e.g., vanilla extract 664.52
- .55 Vinegar
- .58 Composites
  - Catsups, chutneys, sauces
- .6 Special-purpose foods and aids
  - 664.62-664.66 Special-purpose foods
  - Class a specific food with the subject, preservation in 664.8-664.9
- .62 Baby foods
- .63 Low-calorie foods
- .64 Meatless high-protein foods
- .65 Composites
  - Complete meals, packaged ingredients for specific recipes
  - Class secondary cereal products in 664.75
- .66 Pet foods
- .68 Leavening agents and baking aids
  - Baking powder, baking soda, cream of tartar, yeast

*Chemical technology and related industries*

**664.7 Grains, other seeds, their derived products**

**.72 Milling and milling products**

Use **664.720 01 – 664.720 09** for standard subdivisions

*For animal feeds, see 664.76*

664.720 1 – 664.720 9 General principles

.720 1 Preliminary treatment

.720 3 Grinding and deflaking

.720 4 Sifting, grading, quality controls

.720 7 Products

Refined grains, flours, meals

.720 8 By-products

Brans, siftings, millings

.720 9 Packaging

.722 Wheat

.722 7 Products

.722 72 Flour

.722 73 Meal [*formerly 664.729*]

.722 8 By-products

Bran, siftings, millings

.725 Other cereal grains

Flours and meals of corn, oats, rye, rice, buckwheat, millet

.726 Other seeds

Flours and meals of cottonseeds, soybeans, sunflowers, peanuts, nuts

[.729] Prepared cereal processing

Class wheat meal in **664.722 73**, ready-to-eat cereals in **664.756**

.75 Secondary products

Manufacture and packaging

.752 Bakery goods

Breads, pastries, crackers

## *Decimal Classification*

- 664.753      Mixes and prepared doughs
- .755      Pastas  
            Macaroni, spaghetti, vermicelli, noodles, and their variants
- .756      Ready-to-eat cereals [*formerly* 664.729]
- .76      Animal feeds  
            Milling, manufacture, packaging
- .762      Cereal grains  
            Individual and mixtures
- .763      Other seeds  
            Individual and mixtures
- .764      Cereal grain and seed mixtures
- .768      Formula feeds  
            Pellets, cakes, flakes, granules, powders basically of cereal grains and other seeds and fortified with vitamins and minerals
- .8      Fruits and vegetables**  
    Use **664.800 1 – 664.800 9** for standard subdivisions
- [.802 8]      General preservation techniques  
            Class in **664.028**
- .807–.809      Ancillary techniques  
            Divide like **664.07–664.09**, e.g., packaging preserved foods **664.09**  
  
            **664.81–664.88** Preservation techniques
- .81      Preliminary treatment
- .82      Canning
- [.83]      Jams, jellies, marmalades  
            Class in **664.152**
- .84–.88      Other processes  
            Divide like **664.028 4 – 664.028 8**, e.g., deep freezing fruits and vegetables **664.853**

## *Chemical technology and related industries*

### **664.9 Meats and allied foods**

Use 664.900 1 – 664.900 9 for standard subdivisions

.902 Preservation and operating installations

.902 8 Preservation techniques

Divide like 664.028, e.g., slaughtering 664.902 81

.902 9 Slaughterhouses

.907–.909 Ancillary techniques

Divide like 664.07–664.09, e.g., packaging meats and allied foods 664.909

664.92–664.95 Specific products

.92 Red meats

Divide like 664.028, e.g., canning red meats 664.922

.93 Poultry

Divide like 664.028, e.g., dressing poultry 664.931

.94 Seafood

Fish and shellfish

Divide like 664.028, e.g., canning seafood 664.942

.95 Other

Frogs, turtles, snails, insects

### **665 Industrial oils, fats, waxes, gases**

Nonvolatile, saponifying, lubricating oils, fats, waxes of organic and mineral origin; natural, derived, manufactured gases

.028 Techniques

.028 2 Extraction

Rendering, pressurizing, steam distilling

.028 3 Refining

Purifying, bleaching, coloring, fractionating, blending

.028 8 Tests, analyses, quality controls

SUMMARY

- 665.1      Waxes
  - .2      Animal fats and oils
  - .3      Vegetable fats and oils
  - .4      Mineral oils and waxes other than petroleum
  - .5      Petroleum
  - .7      Gaseous fuels and illuminants
  - .8      Other gases
  
- 665.1      Waxes
  - For mineral waxes, see 665.4–665.5*
  
  - .12      Vegetable
    - Carnauba, candelilla (grass wax), laurel, myrtle, candleberry, bayberry waxes
  
  - .13      Animal
    - Spermaceti, lanolin (wool wax), insect waxes
    - For beeswax, see 638.17*
  
  - .19      Blended
  
  - .2      Animal fats and oils
    - Tallows and fish, whale, neat's-foot oils
  
  - .3      Vegetable fats and oils
    - [.32]      Salad and cooking oils
      - Class in 664.36
  
    - .33      Wood oils
      - .332      Crude turpentines
        - Class turpentine oils in 661.806
  
      - .333      Tung oil (Chinese wood oil)
  
      - .35      Other
        - .352      Linseed oil (Flaxseed oil)
        - .353      Castor oil
        - .354      Cacao butter (Cocoa butter)

- **665.4–665.5 Mineral oils and waxes**
- 665.4 Mineral oils and waxes other than petroleum**  
Ozocerite, shale oils, naturally-occurring paraffins and asphalts
- .5 Petroleum**  
Scope: petroleum and natural gas  
Class natural gas in **665.7**
- .502 8 Apparatus and equipment**  
Class techniques in **665.53**
- .53 Refinery treatment and products**
- .532 Fractional distillation**
- .533 Cracking processes**  
Thermal and catalytic cracking, hydrogenation of residual petroleum distillates
- .534 Purification and blending of distillates**
- .538 Direct refinery products and by-products**  
Tests, analyses, quality controls, specifications, additives
- .538 2 Naphthas and gasolines**
- .538 24 Low-boiling naphthas**
- .538 25 Aviation gasolines**  
High-octane-rating gasolines
- .538 27 Gasolines for land vehicles**
- .538 3 Kerosenes**
- .538 4 Heavy fuel oils**  
Gas oil, absorber oil, diesel fuels, fuel oils for heating
- .538 5 Lubricating oils and greases**  
Petrolatums and paraffinic waxes
- .538 8 Residues (Bottoms)**  
Asphalts, bunker and road oils, petroleum coke, pitch



## *Decimal Classification*

665.54 Storage, transportation, distribution

.55 Uses

Class a specific use with the subject

### **665.7–665.8 Industrial gases**

Manufacture, processing, liquefaction, solidification, by-products, storage, transportation, distribution, uses

.7 **Gaseous fuels and illuminants**

Natural and manufactured gases

.73 Processing natural gas

Including extraction of helium [*formerly* 665.822]

.74 Storage, transportation, distribution

.75 Uses

Class a specific use with the subject

.77 Production of manufactured gases

*For acetylene, see* 665.85

.772 From coal and coke

Coal, producer, water, carbureted-blue, blast-furnace, city, coke-oven gases

.773 From petroleum and natural gas

Oil, refinery, reformed-refinery, reformed-natural gases and liquefied hydrocarbon gases, e.g., butane, propane, pentane, butene and their mixtures

.779 By mixing fuel gases from several sources

.8 **Other gases**

*For ammonia, see* 661.34

.81 Hydrogen

.82 From liquefaction and fractionation of air

.822 Rare gases

Helium, argon, neon, xenon, krypton

Class extraction of helium from natural gases [*formerly* 665.822] in 665.73

## *Chemical technology and related industries*

- 665.823      Oxygen
- .824      Nitrogen
- [.825]     Carbon dioxide
- Class in 665.89
- .83      Halogen gases
- .84      Sulfur dioxide
- .85      Acetylene
- .89      Other
- Including carbon dioxide [*formerly* 665.825], ozone, hydrogen sulfide

## **666      Ceramic and allied industries**

Use 666.001–666.009 for standard subdivisions

- .01–.09      Standard subdivisions of ceramic industries

### **SUMMARY**

- 661.1      Glass
- .2      Enameling and enamels
- .3–.6 Pottery
- .3      General principles
- .4      Processes
- .5      Porcelain (China)
- .6      Stoneware and earthenware
- .7      Refractories and structural clay products
- .8      Synthetic minerals and artificial stones
- .9      Masonry adhesives

- .1      Glass



666.12–666.13 General principles

Class general principles applied to specific types in 666.15

- .12      Materials and techniques
- .121     Raw and auxiliary materials

## *Decimal Classification*

- 666.122–666.129 Specific operations  
*For tests, analyses, quality controls, see 666.13*
- 666.122 Blowing
- .123 Pressing
- .124 Drawing
- .125 Molding and casting
- .126 Multiform processes  
Cold-molding glass powder under pressure and firing at high temperatures
- .129 Other  
Including annealing and tempering
- .13 Tests, analyses, quality controls
- .15 Specific types
- .152 Window
- .153 Plate
- .154 Laminated
- .155 Heat-resistant
- .156 Optical
- [.159] Water glass  
Class in 661.43
- .19 Products
- .2 Enameling and enamels  
Vitreous glazes fused over metal, glass, pottery
- 
- 666.3–666.6 Pottery
- .3 General principles  
Divide like standard subdivisions 01–09, e.g., commercial pottery in United States 666.397 3  
Class techniques in 666.4
- .4 Processes  
Divide like 738.1, e.g., kilns 663.43

## *Chemical technology and related industries*

►	<b>666.5–666.6 Specific types</b>
<b>666.5</b>	<b>Porcelain (China)</b>
.58	Specific products
.	Vases, tableware, figurines, insulators
<b>.6</b>	<b>Earthenware and stoneware</b>
.68	Specific products
	Containers, tableware, figurines, industrial products
<b>.7</b>	<b>Refractories and structural clay products</b>
.72	Refractory materials
	Asbestos, fire-clays, alumina, zirconia, chrome, talc, mica
	Class graphite [ <i>formerly 666.72</i> ] in <b>662.92</b>
.73	Structural clay products
.732	Roofing tiles
.733	Tile drains and piping
.737	Solid bricks
.738	Hollow and perforated bricks
<b>.8</b>	<b>Synthetic minerals and artificial stones</b>
	<b>666.86–666.88 Synthetic minerals</b>
.86	Earthy minerals
	Synthetic mica, feldspar, graphite, cryolite
.88	Gems and gem minerals
	Synthetic diamonds, garnets, rubies, sapphires
.89	Artificial stones
.894	Hollow concrete and cinder blocks
.895	Solid concrete blocks
	Divide like <b>693.5</b> , e.g., precast ferroconcrete blocks
	<b>666.895 44</b>

## *Decimal Classification*

### **666.9      Masonry adhesives**

#### **.92          Gypsum plasters**

Plaster of Paris, cement plaster and mortar, Keene's cement

#### **.93          Limes and lime mortars**

#### **.94          Portland cement**

### **667      Cleaning, color and related industries**

#### **.1          Cleaning and bleaching**

Of textiles, furs, feathers, leather

#### **.12         Dry cleaning**

#### **.13         Laundering and finishing operations**

#### **.14         Bleaching practices**

#### **.2          Dyes and pigments**

---

667.25–667.26 Dyes

#### **.25         Synthetic**

Divide like 547.86, e.g., manufacture of azo-oxy dyes 667.253

#### **.26         Natural**

#### **.29         Pigments**

#### **.3          Process dyeing and printing**

#### **.31–.35     Dyeing specific textiles**

Divide like 677.1–677.5, e.g., dyeing nylon 667.347 3

#### **.38         Printing processes**

Direct and resist processes

---

667.4–667.5 Inks

#### **.4          Writing**

#### **.5          Printing**

- **667.6–667.8 Protective and decorative coatings**
- 667.6 Paints**
- .62 Oil-soluble
- 
- **667.622–667.624 Basic and auxiliary ingredients of paints**
- .622 Oils, driers, plasticizers
- .623 Pigments and extenders  
*For carbon black, see 662.93*
- .624 Diluents (Thinners)
- .63 Water-soluble  
Whitewash and latex paints
- .69 Special-purpose  
Fire-resistant and luminous paints
- .7 Varnishes and allied products**  
*For japans, see 667.8*
- .72 Polishes
- .75 Lackers  
Nitrocellulose (cellulose nitrate), acetate, glyptal lackers
- .79 Spirit varnishes  
Shellacs and spar varnishes
- .8 Japans (Oil varnishes)**
- .9 Surface finishing**  
Painting, varnishing, spraying, dipping, metalizing  
Including paint shop practice  
Class a specific application with the subject

**668 Other organic products**

**SUMMARY**

- 668.1 Surface-active materials**
  - .2 Glycerin**
  - .3 Adhesives and related products**
  - .4 Plastics**
  - .5 Perfumes and cosmetics**
  - .6 Agricultural chemicals and related products**
- .1 Surface-active materials**
  - .12 Soaps**
    - .124 Soluble**

Framed and milled soaps, chips, powders, liquid concentrates
    - .125 Insoluble (Metallic)**

Oleates and stearates of aluminum, copper, cobalt, magnesium, iron, calcium
    - .127 Scouring compounds**
  - .14 Detergents and wetting agents**

Non-soap materials that manifest surface activity, e.g., sulfated oils and hydrocarbons, fatty-alcohol sulfates
- .2 Glycerin**
- .3 Adhesives and related products**
  - 668.31–668.33 Glues
    - .31 Synthetic**
    - .32 Animal**

Glues derived from meat-packing by-products, albumin, casein
    - .33 Vegetable**

Starch pastes, mucilages, nitrocellulose and soybean glues
    - .34 Crude gelatin**
    - .37 Gums and resins**
    - .372 Natural [formerly 668.47]**

668.374      Synthetic  
                    Water-soluble gums and resins

.38      Sealants

.4      **Plastics**

*For elastomers, see 678.7*

[.402 8]      Techniques, apparatus, equipment

Do not use; class in 668.41

### **SUMMARY**

668.41      Materials and techniques

.42      Polymerization plastics

.43      Protein plastics

.44      Cellulosics

.45      Plastics from natural resins

.49      Products

.41      Techniques, apparatus, equipment

Class manufacturing specific kinds of plastics in 668.42–668.45

.411      Raw and auxiliary materials

Linters, bagasse, fillers, lubricants, plasticizers

---

►      668.412–668.419 Specific operations

.412      Molding and casting

.413      Extrusion

.414      Laminating

.415      Welding

.416      Reinforcing

.419      Tests, analyses, quality control

---

►      668.42–668.45 Specific kinds

.42      Polymerization plastics

.422      Thermosetting

.422 2      Phenolics

.422 3      Ureas



## *Decimal Classification*

---

668.422 4	Melamines
.422 5	Polyesters
.422 6	Epoxies
.422 7	Silicones
.423	Thermoplastic
.423 2	Acrylics (Polyacrylics)
.423 3	Styrenes (Polystyrenes)
.423 4	Polyethylene
.423 5	Polyamides (Nylons)
.423 6	Vinyls (Polyvinyls)
.423 7	Vinylidene chlorides
.423 8	Polyfluoro hydrocarbons
.43	Protein plastics
	Derived from casein, and proteins of corn, soybeans
.44	Cellulosics
.45	Plastics from natural resins
	Shellac and lignin-derived plastics
	<i>For protein plastics, see 668.43</i>
[.47]	Natural gums and resins
	Class in 668.372
.49	Products
	Class plastic fibers and fabrics in 677.46–677.47
.5	Perfumes and cosmetics
.54	Perfumes
.542	Natural
	Floral oils and waters
.544	Synthetic
.55	Cosmetics



## Decimal Classification

---

- 669.028 3      Hydrometallurgy
  - Extraction by leaching methods
- .028 4      Electrometallurgy
  - Deposition, zone melting, vacuum metallurgy
- .03      Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances
- .04      Materials
  - Scrap metals [*formerly* 671.9] and prepared ores
  - Class furnace materials in **669.8**
- .05-.09      Other standard subdivisions

### SUMMARY

- 669.1      Ferrous metals**
- .2      Precious and radioactive metals**
- .3      Copper**
- .4      Lead**
- .5      Zinc and cadmium**
- .6      Tin**
- .7      Other metals**
- .8      Metallurgical furnaces**
- .9      Physical and chemical metallurgy**

### ► 669.1-669.7 Extractive metallurgy of specific metals and their alloys

- .1      Ferrous metals**
- .14      Reduction and refining of ferrous ores
- .141      Production of commercial iron alloys
- .141 3      Blast furnace practice
  - Production of pig iron and crude cast iron
- .141 4      Puddling furnace practice
  - Production of wrought iron
- .141 9      Other iron alloy practices
  - Including production of iron powder and sponge iron

## *Chemical technology and related industries*

- 669.142      **Production of commercial steel and alloy steels**
- .142 2      **Open-hearth furnace practice (Siemens process)**
- .142 3      **Bessemer converter practice**  
                Production of Bessemer steel, ingot iron, duplex-process steel
- .142 4      **Electric furnace practice**  
                Production in arc and induction furnaces
- .142 9      **Other practices**  
                Including production of crucible steel
- 669.2–669.7 Nonferrous metals**  
                Class comprehensive works in **669.7**

## **Precious and rare-earth metals**

669.22–669.24 Precious metals

- .22      **Gold**
- .23      **Silver**
- .24      **Platinum**
- .29      **Rare-earth metals**  
                Divide like **546.4**, e.g., radium **669.293 1**

- .3      **Copper**  
                Brass, bronze, Muntz metal, gun metal, copper-aluminum alloys, copper-beryllium alloys, aluminum bronze
- .4      **Lead**
- .5      **Zinc and cadmium**
- .6      **Tin**
- .7      **Other**
- .71      **Mercury**
- .72      **Light metals**
- .722      **Aluminum**
- .723      **Magnesium**
- .724      **Beryllium**

## *Decimal Classification*

671.521 3	Resistance Spot, seam, projection, flash welding
.521 5	Induction
.522	Gas
.529	Other methods Forge, thermit, flow welding
.53	Flame and arc cutting
.56	Soldering and brazing
.59	Other methods of joining Including riveting
.7	<b>Finishing and surface treatment</b>
.72	Buffing and polishing
.73	Coating
.732	Electroplating
.733	Hot-metal dipping
.734	Metal spraying
.735	Vapor plating ( Vacuum deposition ) Vacuum metalizing, vapor-phase deposition
.739	Other finishing processes Including chemical treatment, oxidation finishing processes
.8	<b>Primary products</b>
.82	By rolling ( Sheet products )
.821	Patternmaking
.83	By forging, pressing, stamping Including tubes, pipes
.84	By extruding and drawing Wires, cordage, cables
.87	By powder metallurgy
[.9]	<b>Scrap metals</b> Class in 669.04

## *Manufactures using processible materials*



### **672-673 Specific metals manufactures**

Fabrication of specific metals and manufacture of primary products

#### **672 Ferrous metals**

Steel, iron and steel alloys

Divide like 671, e.g., castings 672.25

#### **673 Nonferrous metals**

Divide each subdivision identified by \* like 671, e.g., welding aluminum 673.722 52

##### **.2 Precious and rare-earth metals**

673.22-673.24 Precious metals

.22 \*Gold

.23 \*Silver

.24 \*Platinum

.29 Rare-earth metals

Divide like 546.4, e.g., radium 673.293 1

##### **.3 \*Copper**

Brass, bronze, Muntz metal, gun metal, copper-aluminum alloys, copper-beryllium alloys, aluminum bronze

.4 \*Lead

.5 Zinc and cadmium

.6 \*Tin

.7 Other metals

.71 \*Mercury

.72 Light metals

.722 \*Aluminum

.723 \*Magnesium

.724 \*Beryllium

\* Divide as instructed under 673

## *Decimal Classification*

- 673.725      Alkali and alkaline earth metals  
                Sodium, potassium, lithium, strontium, calcium, barium  
                *For magnesium, see 673.723; beryllium, 673.724; radium, 673.29*
- .73            Ferro-alloying metals  
                Divide like 669.73, e.g., cobalt 673.733
- .75            Antimony, arsenic, bismuth
- .79            Minor metals  
                Niobium, hafnium, germanium, gallium, indium, tellurium, thallium

## 674      Lumber, cork, wood-using industries

Use 674.001–674.009 for standard subdivisions

- .01–.09      Standard subdivisions of lumber industry  
                Class specifications in 674.5

### SUMMARY

#### 674.1–.5 Lumber

- 674.1      Structure, properties, types  
    .2      Sawmill operations  
    .3      Storage and seasoning  
    .4      Remanufacture  
    .5      Grading  
    .8      Wood-using industries  
    .9      Cork and cork products



#### 674.1–674.5 Lumber

- .1      Structure, properties, types
- .12      Structure  
            Gross and microscopic
- .13      Properties and their tests
- .132      Physical
- .134      Chemical  
            Including properties of wood extractives

## *Manufactures using processible materials*

- 674.14      **Specific types**  
              Class structure, properties and their tests in 674.12–674.13
- .142        **Hardwood**  
              Wood of broad-leaved, deciduous trees, e.g., oak, maple,  
              cherry, chestnut, elm, basswood
- .144        **Softwood**  
              Wood of coniferous trees, e.g., pine, spruce, fir, hemlock,  
              cypress, cedar
- .2          **Sawmill operations**  
              Conversion of logs into lumber
- [.202 8]      **Techniques, apparatus, equipment**  
              Do not use; class in 674.22
- .22        **Techniques, apparatus, equipment**
- .28        **Products**  
              Rough lumber products and dimension stock (cut stock)  
              *For wood waste and residues, see 674.84*
- .282        **Round timbers**  
              Poles, piles, posts  
              *For mine timbers, see 674.283*
- .283        **Mine timbers**
- .284        **Railroad ties**
- .285        **Fireplace wood**
- .286        **Shooks (Cooperage and box lumber)**
- .287        **Shingles and shakes**
- .3          **Storage and seasoning**
- .32        **Storage in lumberyards**
- .38        **Seasoning**
- .382        **By air**
- .384        **In kiln**
- .386        **By chemical treatment**



## *Decimal Classification*

### **674.4 Remanufacture**

*For wood waste and residues, see 674.84*

#### **.42 Planing mill techniques, equipment, products**

Production of surfaced lumber from rough lumber

#### **.43 Woodworking techniques, equipment, products**

Production of pattern lumber, e.g., shiplap, sidings, tongue-and-groove products

#### **.5 Grading**

Including inspection and specifications

#### **.8 Wood-using industries**

Production of primary products from manufactured and remanufactured lumber

*For furniture, see 684.1; wood pulp, 676.12*

#### **.82 Containers (Cooperage)**

Crates, boxes, barrels, casks

#### **.83 Veneers and composite woods**

##### **.833 Veneers**

Face, commercial, container veneers

##### **.834 Plywood**

Wood panels consisting of an odd number of veneer sheets glued together with the grains of the layers at right angles to one another

##### **.835 Wood laminates (Specialty plywoods, sandwich panels)**

Wood panels consisting of an even number of veneer sheets bonded together under high pressure and heat with the grains of the layers parallel to one another

#### **.84 Wood waste and residues**

Excelsior, wood flour, sawdust, wood shavings, other mill residues

*Manufactures using processible materials*

674.88      **Minor products**

Wood-cased lead pencils, toothpicks, spools, woodenware,  
picture frames

.9      **Cork and cork products**

675      **Leather and fur industries**

Preliminary, tanning, dressing, finishing operations

.2      **Leather**

▶      675.22–675.25 Specific operations

.22      **Preliminary**

Salting, fleshing, unhairing (liming), bating, washing hides and  
skins

.23      **Tanning**

.24      **Dressing**

Fat liquoring (lubricating), stuffing, toggling, pasting

.25      **Finishing**

Dyeing, boarding, embossing, buffing (suede leather), glazing,  
moldproofing, production of patent leather

.29      **Properties and their tests**

.3      **Fur**

676      **Pulp and paper industries**

Materials, machinery, manufacturing processes, properties, tests,  
recovery of waste products

.1      **Pulp**

676.12–676.14 Specific pulps

*For purified pulp, see 676.4*

.12      **Wood**

676.122–676.127 Specific processes

.122      **Mechanical (Ground wood)**

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 676.124 Soda
  - .125 Sulfit
  - .126 Sulfate (Kraft)
  - .127 Semichemical
  - .13 Rag
  - .14 Other
    - Pulps from straw, jute, hemp, bamboo, cornstalks, bagasse, waste paper
    - Including Pomilio process, nitric acid pulping
  - .17 Properties, tests, quality controls
  - .18 Products other than paper
  - .182 Molded products
  - .183 Pulpboards
    - Wallboards, chip boards, fiberboards
- 
- 676.2–676.5 Pulp products
- .2 Paper and paperboard
- 
- 676.22–676.27 General principles
- Class general principles applied to specific types of paper and paperboard in 676.28
- .22 Production by hand
  - .23 Manufacture with machines
    - Raw materials, processes, equipment
  - .232 Basic processes
- 
- 676.234–676.235 Finishing processes
- .234 Calendering, coloring, creping
  - .235 Coating
  - .27 Properties, tests, quality controls
  - .28 Specific types
  - .280 27 Watermarks [formerly 676.29]

## *Manufactures using processible materials*

---

### **676.282–676.287 Paper**

*For roofing and building papers, see 676.289*

#### **676.282 Graphic arts**

**:** *For paper for school tablets, see 676.286*

#### **.282 3 Stationery**

*Including onionskin paper*

#### **.282 4 Book**

*For coated papers, see 676.283*

#### **.282 5 Drawing and art**

#### **.282 6 Currency**

*Papers for printing money, bonds, securities*

#### **.283 Coated**

#### **.284 Specialty**

#### **.284 2 Tissue**

*For onionskin paper, see 676.282 3*

#### **.284 4 Blotting and saturating**

#### **.284 5 Parchment and vulcanized**

#### **.284 8 Wallpaper**

#### **.286 Newsprint and other unsized papers**

*Papers for newspapers, school tablets, scratch pads, handbills*

#### **.287 Wrapping and bag paper**

*Kraft wrapping, "brown wrapper," butcher paper, Manila paper, bogus wrapping*

#### **.288 Paperboard**

*Pasteboard, Bristol board, cardboard, food board*

#### **.289 Roofing and building papers**

#### **[.29] Watermarks**

*Class in 676.280 27*

## *Decimal Classification*

### **676.3      Converted paper products**

Conversion of paper and paperboard into final products

#### **.32          Boxes and cartons**

Folding boxes, corrugated and solid paperboard boxes

*For food board containers, see 676.34*

.33

#### **.34          Food board containers**

Paper plates and cups, food cartons

### **.4          Purified pulp**

Production of alpha cellulose from wood pulp and cotton linters<sup>1</sup>

#### **[.44]       Cellulose derivatives**

Class in **661.802**

### **.5          By-products**

Recovery of lignin, tall oil, turpentine, resins, fatty acids

### **.7          Papers from man-made and noncellulosic fibers**

## **677       Textiles**

Production of fibers, and manufacture of fabrics and cordage

#### **.001–.009      Standard subdivisions**

Class techniques, apparatus, equipment in **677.028**

#### **.02          General principles**

#### **.022          Designs (Working patterns)**

#### **.028          Techniques, apparatus, equipment**

##### **.028 2          Operations**

##### **.028 21          Carding and combing**

##### **.028 22          Spinning, twisting, reeling**

##### **.028 24          Weaving**

##### **.028 25          Basic finishing**

Shearing, singeing, beetling, mercerizing, tentering,  
calendering, pressing, creping

## *Manufactures using processible materials*

---

677.028 3	Raw materials
.028 5	Power equipment
.028 52	Spinning machines
.028 54	Looms and loom equipment
.028 55	Basic finishing machines
.028 6	Products
	<i>For tests and quality controls of products, see 677.028 7</i>
.028 62	Yarns and threads
.028 64	Fabrics
.028 7	Tests and quality controls of products

### **SUMMARY**

- 677.1 Of bast fibers
- .2 Of seed-hair fibers
- .3 Of animal fibers
- .4 Of man-made fibers
- .5 Other textiles of specific fibers
- .6 Special-process fabrics regardless of composition
- .7 Cordage, trimmings and allied products

#### ► **677.1–677.4 Basic-weave textiles of specific composition**

Divide each subdivision identified by \* like 677.028, e.g., linen fabrics 677.116 4

Class fancy-weave textiles regardless of composition in 677.61, mineral textiles in 677.51–677.53

- .1 **Of bast fibers**
- .11 \*Flax
- .12 Hemp
- .13 Jute
- .15 Ramie
- .18 Coir
- .2 **Of seed-hair fibers**
- .21 \*Cotton
- .23 Kapok

\* Divide as instructed under 677.1–677.4

## *Decimal Classification*

### **677.3      Of animal fibers**

.31      \*Sheep wool

677.32–677.35 Specialty fibers

.32      Llama, alpaca, vicuña, guanaco wools

.33      Goat hair

.34      Camel hair

.35      Rabbit hair

.36      Waste and reused wool and hair

.39      Silk [*formerly* 677.4] and other animal fibers

Use 677.390 01 – 677.390 09 for standard subdivisions

.390 1–.390 9      Standard subdivisions of silk

677.391–677.394 Silk

.391      \*Cultivated

.392      Wild (Tussah)

.394      Waste and reused

.399      Other

### **.4      Of man-made fibers**

Class silk [*formerly* 677.4] in 677.39

.46      Cellulosics (Rayons and acetates)

Use 677.460 01 – 677.460 09 for standard subdivisions

*For textiles of paper fibers, see 677.57*

.460 1–.460 9      Standard subdivisions of rayons



677.461–677.463 True rayons

.461      Nitrocellulose (Chardonnet-process)

.462      Cuprammonium

.463      Viscose

.464      Cellulose acetates

\* Divide as instructed under 677.1–677.4

*Manufactures using processible materials*

677.47 Noncellulosics

*For glass textiles, see 677.52*

.472 Protein textiles ( Azlons )

Derived from casein, and proteins of corn, soybeans

.473 Polyamides (Nylons)

.474 Other polymerization textiles

.474 2 Acrylics (Polyacrylics)

.474 3 Polyesters

.474 4 Vinyls (Polyvinyls)

Nytrils, sarans, vinyons

.474 5 Olefins

Polyethylene and polypropylene

.474 8 Polyfluoro hydrocarbons

Tetrafluoroethylene textiles

.5 Other textiles of specific fibers

---

677.51–677.53 Mineral textiles

.51 Asbestos

.52 Glass

.53 Metal

.54 Of unaltered vegetable fibers

Weaving, braiding, matting of raffia, rush, cane, bamboo, rattan

.55 Of elastic fibers

.57 Of paper fibers



## Decimal Classification

### 677.6 Special-process fabrics regardless of composition

#### SUMMARY

- 677.61 Fancy-weave fabrics
- .62 Woven felts
- .63 Nonwoven felts
- .64 Tapestries, carpets, rugs
- .65 Openwork fabrics
- .66 Chain-stitch and knotted fabrics
- .68 Functional finishes of fabrics
- .69 Bonded and laminated fabrics

#### .61 Fancy-weave fabrics

*For openwork fabrics, see 677.65; tapestries, rugs, carpets, 677.64*

#### .615 In dobby weave

Bird's-eye, sharkskin, huckaback, figured madras

#### .616 In Jacquard weave

Damask, brocade, brocatelle, lamé, upholstery fabrics

#### .617 In pile weave

Velvet, velveteen, velour, plush, chenille, corduroy, frieze terry cloth

#### .62 Woven felts

#### .624 Flannel and swanskin yard goods

#### .626 Blankets, lap robes, coverlets

#### .63 Nonwoven felts

#### .632 Yard goods and carpets

#### .635 Hats

#### .64 Tapestries, carpets, rugs

Reversible and nonreversible

#### .642 Tapestry yard goods

#### .643 Carpets and rugs

*For nonwoven felt carpets, see 677.632*

- 677.65      **Openwork fabrics**  
              *For chain-stitch and knotted fabrics, see 677.66*
- .652      **In leno weave**  
              Marquisesettes and grenadines
- .653      **Laces**  
              Bobbin, needle, machine laces
- .654      **Tulles**
- .66      **Chain-stitch and knotted fabrics**
- .661      **Knitted**
- .662      **Crocheted**
- .663      **Tatted**
- .664      **Netted**
- .68      **Functional finishes of fabrics**
- .681      **Crease- and wrinkle-resistant**
- .682      **Waterproof and water-repellent**
- .688      **Shrinkage-controlled**
- .689      **Flameproof and flame-resistant**
- .69      **Bonded and laminated fabrics**
- .7      Cordage, trimmings and allied products**
- .71      **Ropes, twines, strings**  
              *For passementerie, see 677.76*
- .76      **Passementerie**  
              Decorative cords, braids, lacings, ribbons, gimps, tinsel, tapes,  
              bias bindings, upholstery trimmings
- .77      **Machine embroidery**  
              Swivel (dotted Swiss), clip spot, lappet, Schiffli embroidery  
              *For laces, see 677.653*

**678      Elastomers and elastomer products**

**SUMMARY**

**678.2-4 Rubber**

- .2      Materials and techniques**
- .3      Products**
- .4      Properties**
- .5      Latexes**
- .6      Natural elastomers**
- .7      Synthetic elastomers**

**678.2-678.4 Rubber**

Comprehensive works on natural and synthetic rubber  
Class natural rubber in **678.6**, synthetic rubber in **678.7**

**.2      Techniques, apparatus, equipment**

Class manufacturing specific products in **678.3**

**.21     Raw and auxiliary materials**

*For reclaimed rubber, see 678.29*

**678.22-678.27 Specific operations**

**.22     Mastication**

Mixing, milling, plasticizing crude rubbers

**.23     Compounding**

Including use of compounding ingredients, e.g., solvents, anti-oxidants, accelerators, pigments

**.24     Vulcanization**

**.27     Other**

Including molding, extruding, calendering

**.29     Reclaimed rubber**

Collecting, sorting, classifying, devulcanizing

## *Manufactures using processible materials*

**678.3**

### **Products**

*For textiles of elastic fibers, see 677.55*

.32

**Tires**

.33

**Overshoes**

.34

**Articles molded and vulcanized in presses**

Soles, heels, hot-water bottles, bathing caps, tiles, doorstops,  
hollow ware, other products

.35

**Extruded articles**

Rubber bands, inner tubes, tubing, windshield wipers, gaskets,  
weatherstripping, other products

.36

**Articles made by dipping, spreading, electrodeposition**

Conveyor and driving belts, hose, sheeting, other products

.4

### **Properties**

.5

### **Latexes**

Comprehensive works on natural and synthetic latexes

*For natural latexes, see 678.61; synthetic latexes, 678.71*

[.502 8]

Techniques, apparatus, equipment

Do not use; class in 678.52

.52

Techniques, apparatus, equipment

.521

Raw and auxiliary materials

678.522–678.527 Specific operations

.522

**Preliminary treatment**

Preservation, concentration, creaming, centrifuging,  
preparation of latex biscuits

.524

**Vulcanization**

.527

**Other**

Including molding, coating, casting, dipping, spreading,  
electrodepositing

## *Decimal Classification*

- 678.53      **Products**
- .532      **Foam articles**
- .533      **Articles made by dipping and casting**
  - Balloons, surgeons' gloves, feeding bottle nipples, pen sacs, cast toys and models, other products
- .538      **Other**
  - Extruded, spread, sprayed, electrodeposited articles
- .54      **Properties**
- .6      **Natural elastomers**
- .61      **Latexes**
- 678.62–678.64 **Crude rubber**
- .62      **Techniques, apparatus, equipment**
  - Production of crepe and fumed sheet rubber by latex coagulation and processing coagulum
- .63      **Products**
- .64      **Properties**
- .68      **Chemical derivatives**
  - Cyclo and halogenated rubbers, rubber hydrochloride, other derivatives
- .7      **Synthetic elastomers**
- .71      **Latexes**
- .72      **Synthetic rubber and derivatives**
  - Butadiene-styrene rubbers (GR-S), chloroprene rubbers (GR-M), acrylonitrile rubbers (GR-A), isobutylene rubbers (GR-I), polyurethane, cis-polydienes
- 678.722–678.724 **Synthetic rubber**
- .722      **Techniques, apparatus, equipment**
- .723      **Products**
- .724      **Properties**
- .728      **Chemical derivatives**
- .73      **High-styrene resins (Elastoplastics)**

<b>579</b>	<b>Other products</b>
<b>.4</b>	<b>Of keratinous and dentinal materials</b>
.43	Ivory products
.47	Feather products
<b>.6</b>	<b>Of fibers and bristles</b>
	Brooms, brushes, mops, other products
<b>.7</b>	<b>Of tobacco</b>
.72	Cigars
.73	Cigarettes
<b>.9</b>	<b>Of waste materials</b>
	Class products manufactured from a specific waste material with the subject

## **680 Handcrafted, assembled, final products**

Class final paper and paperboard products in 676.3, rubber products in 678.3, other products based on processible materials in 679

## **681 Precision mechanisms and related machines**

### **SUMMARY**

- 681.1 Wheel mechanisms and related devices**
- .2 Scientific measuring instruments**
- .4 Optical devices**
- .6 Printing and duplicating machines and equipment**
- .7 Other special-purpose machinery**
- .8 Musical instruments**

### **.1 Wheel mechanisms and related devices**

Assembly methods, testing, maintenance, repairs

### **.11 Timepieces (Horology)**

#### **.111 Ancient and primitive instruments**

Sundials, water clocks (clepsydras), hourglasses

#### **.112 Constituent parts (Clockwork)**

Gears, escapements, bearings, regulating devices

#### **.113 Clocks**

*For pneumatic clocks, see 681.115; electric clocks, 681.116; constituent parts, 681.112*

#### **.114 Watches**

*For stopwatches, see 681.118; constituent parts, 681.112*

#### **.115 Pneumatic clocks**

#### **.116 Electric clocks**

#### **.118 Chronographs and chronoscopes**

Stopwatches, metronomes, tachometers, time clocks, time-and-date recorders

### **.12 Industrial gages and flowmeters**

Class a specific instrument with the subject

*Handcrafted, assembled, final manufactures*

- 681.13 Cameras and accessories
- .14 Calculating, counting, sorting machines and instruments
  - Class electronic computers [*formerly* 681.14] in 621.381 95
- .2 Scientific measuring instruments
  - For optical devices, see* 681.4
- .4 Optical devices
  - .41 Specific instruments
    - For component parts, see* 681.42–681.43
  - .411 Spectacles
  - .412 Telescopes, opera and field glasses
  - .413 Microscopes
    - Divide like 578.1, e.g., electron microscopes 681.413 5
  - .414 Spectroscopes
    - Divide like 535.84, e.g., chromatic spectroscopes 681.414 3
  - .415 Photometers
  - .416 Polarimeters
  - 681.42–681.43 Component parts
  - .42 Lenses
  - .43 Frames and other housings
- 681.6–681.7 Special-purpose machinery
- .6 Printing and duplicating machines and equipment
  - .61 Stenographic and composing machines, typewriters
  - .62 Printing presses
- .7 Other special-purpose machinery
- .8 Musical instruments
  - .81 Conventional
    - Divide like 786.2–789.6, e.g., pipe organs 681.816 6
    - Class hand construction in 786–789



## *Decimal Classification*

- ▶ 681.82–681.83 Mechanical instruments and devices
  - 681.82 Barrel organs and music boxes
    - Including hand organs, street organs, street pianos
  - .83 Reproducing and player pianos and orchestration
  - [.84] Sound recording and reproducing systems
    - Class in 621.389 3
- 682 Small forge work (Blacksmithing)
  - .1 Horseshoeing
  - .4 Hand-forged tools and ironwork
- 683 Hardware
  - .3 Locksmithing
    - .31 Bolts and latches
    - .32 Locks and keys
    - .34 Safes and strongboxes
  - .4 Gunsmithing
    - Use 683.400 1 – 683.400 9 for standard subdivisions
- ▶ 683.401–683.403 General principles of small firearm
  - .401 Design
  - .402 Manufacture
  - .403 Maintenance and repair
  - .42 Hunting guns
  - .43 Pistols and revolvers
  - .8 Household appliances
    - .82 Kitchen utensils
      - Cutlery, pots, pans, pails, related items
    - .83 Electrical wares
      - Equipment not requiring special installation, e.g., electrical toasters, waffle irons, flatirons, mixers, vacuum cleaners

## *Handcrafted, assembled, final manufactures*

### 683.88 Heavy equipment

Equipment requiring special installation, e.g., stoves, ranges, water heaters, washing machines, dryers, dishwashers, garbage disposal units

*For refrigerators and freezers, see 621.57; heating, ventilating, air conditioning equipment, 697*

## 684 Furnishings and wheeled supports

Use 684.000 1 – 684.000 9 for standard subdivisions

### .001–.009 Standard subdivisions of furnishings

684.08–684.09 Home (Amateur) workshops [*formerly* 684.8]

#### .08 Woodworking

##### .082 With hand tools

##### .083 With power tools

##### .088 Projects

#### .09 Metalworking

### .1 Furniture

Use 684.100 1 – 684.100 9 for standard subdivisions

684.104–684.106 General principles

#### .104 Wooden furniture

##### .104 2 Basic construction

##### .104 3 Surface finishing

##### .104 4 Maintenance and repair

##### .104 42 Body restoration

##### .104 43 Surface refinishing

#### .105 Metallic furniture

In aluminum, cast and wrought iron

#### .106 Furniture in other materials

In rattan, plastics, composition materials, tiles

## *Decimal Classification*

- 684.12–684.16 Specific pieces for home and office  
*For garden, patio, porch furniture, see 684.18*
- 684.12 Upholstered furniture  
Sofas, couches, upholstered chairs
- .13 Chairs and tables  
*For upholstered chairs, see 684.12*
- .14 Desks
- .15 Beds  
Frames, springs, mattresses
- .16 Cabinets and built-in furniture [*both formerly 684.2*]  
Chests, dressers, bookcases, china and linen cabinets, file cabinets, shelving
- .18 Garden, patio, porch furniture
- [.2] Cabinets and built-in furniture  
Class in 684.16
- .3 Fabric furnishings  
Draperies, hangings, slipcovers, curtains  
*For carpets and rugs, see 677.643*
- .7 Carriages, wagons, carts, wheelbarrows  
*For motor land vehicles, see 629.2*
- [.8] Home workshops  
Class in 684.08–684.09
- 685 Leather goods and their substitutes
- .1 Saddlery and harness making
- .2 Leather and fur clothing  
Scope: accessories  
*For footwear, see 685.3, gloves and mittens, 685.4*
- .22 Leather  
Jackets, skirts, trousers, aprons, belts

*Handcrafted, assembled, final manufactures*

685.24

Fur

Coats, jackets, stoles, neckpieces, muffs, hats

.3

**Footwear**

*For overshoes, see 678.33*

.31

Boots and shoes

Use 685.310 01 – 685.310 09 for standard subdivisions

*For wooden shoes and clogs, see 685.32; special shoes for the disabled, 685.38*



685.310 2 – 685.310 4 General principles of cobbling

.310 2

Design

.310 3

Construction

.310 4

Maintenance and repair

.32

Wooden shoes and clogs

.36

For specific activities

.361

Ice skates

.362

Roller skates

.363

Snowshoes

.364

Skis

.367

Stilts [*formerly 685.37*]

[.37]

Stilts

Class in 685.367

.38

For the disabled

Special shoes, crutches, artificial legs

.4

**Gloves and mittens**

.41

Gloves and gauntlets

*For gloves for specific activities, see 685.43*

.43

For specific activities

Boxing gloves, catchers' mitts, armored gauntlets

.47

Mittens

*For mittens for specific activities, see 685.43*

## *Decimal Classification*

### **685.5 Travel and camping equipment**

#### **.51 Luggage**

Trunks, suitcases, valises, handbags, purses, brief cases

#### **.53 Camping gear**

Tents, camp beds, campstools, sleeping bags

## **686**

### **687 Clothing**

*For leather and fur clothing, see 685.2*

#### **.1 Outer garments**

Use **687.100 1 – 687.100 9** for standard subdivisions

##### **.101 Design and drafting**

##### **.102 Patternmaking and grading**

##### **.103 Cutting**

##### **.104 Tailoring**

##### **.105 Dressmaking**

---

#### **687.11–687.13 Outer house garments**

Dresses, suits, coats, trousers, shirts, blouses, skirts

Class outdoor garments in **687.14**, sportswear in **687.16** [*both formerly 687.11–687.13*]

*For uniforms and symbolic garments, see 687.15*

##### **.11 For men**

##### **.12 For women**

##### **.13 For children**

##### **.14 Outdoor garments [*formerly 687.11–687.13*]**

Overcoats, topcoats, raincoats, stoles, cloaks

Divide like **687.11–687.13**, e.g., outdoor garments for men  
**687.141**

*For sweaters, see 687.38*

##### **.15 Uniforms and symbolic garments**

Civil and military uniforms, ceremonial and academic robes,  
ecclesiastical vestments

*Handcrafted, assembled, final manufactures*

- 687.16      **Garments for special purposes**  
              Lounging garments, sleepwear [*both formerly 687.2*], sports-  
              wear [*formerly 687.11–687.13*]  
              *For uniforms and symbolic garments, see 687.15*
- .19      **Accessories**  
              Neckties, collars, cuffs, belts, aprons, handkerchiefs
- .2      **Underwear**  
              Class lounging garments, sleepwear [*both formerly 687.2*] in  
              687.16
- .21–.23      **For specific kinds of persons**  
              Divide like 687.11–687.13, e.g., underwear for women 687.22  
              *For supporting garments, see 687.25*
- .25      **Supporting garments**  
              Foundation garments, brassieres, surgical corsets and belts
- .3      **Knitwear**  
              *For underwear, see 687.2*
- .32      **Hosiery**
- .38      **Sweaters**
- .4      **Headgear**  
              Divide like 687.11–687.13, e.g., women's headgear 687.42  
              *For nonwoven felt hats, see 677.635*
- .8      **Items auxiliary to clothing construction (Notions)**  
              Buttons, hooks and eyes, snaps, slide fasteners, needles, pins,  
              thread, padding, shields
- 688      **Other final products**
- .1      **Models**  
              Class engineering models in 620
- .2      **Costume jewelry**  
              Mass-produced costume ornaments from inferior metals,  
              ornamental stones, other common materials

## Decimal Classification

- 688.4**      **Smokers' supplies**  
Pipes, hookahs, cigarette holders and cases, tobacco pouches,  
lighters, ash trays
- .5**          **Accessories for personal grooming**  
Razors, razor blades, electric shavers, combs, nail-care tools,  
tweezers  
*For brushes, see 679.6; cosmetics, 668.55*
- .7**          **Recreational equipment**  
*For leather goods and their substitutes, see 685*
- .72**          **Toys**
- .722**          Dolls, puppets, marionettes
- .723**          Doll houses and furniture
- .724**          Padded toys other than dolls
- .728**          Mechanical and electrical toys
- 688.74–688.79** Equipment for games and sports
- .74**          **For games of skill**  
Divide like 794, e.g., chessmen **688.741**
- .75**          **For games of chance**  
Divide like 795, e.g., playing cards **688.754**
- .76**          **For outdoor sports and games**  
Divide like 796, e.g., tennis rackets **688.763 42**  
*For motor land vehicles, see 629.2; equipment for fishing,  
688.79*
- .79**          **For fishing**  
Fishing rods, creels, fishhooks, flies

**689**

## **690 Buildings**

Planning, structural analysis and design, construction methods, maintenance, repairs of habitable structures and their interior accessories

Class creative design and construction in **721**

.01      **Philosophy and theory**

.02      **Miscellany**

Class specifications in **692.3**

.03-.09      **Other standard subdivisions**

.1      **Details**

Divide like **721**, e.g., foundations **690.11**

*For roofs, see 624.9*

.5-.8      **Specific types of habitable structures**

Divide like **725-728**, e.g., ranch houses **690.864**

Class forts and fortresses in **623.1**, trailers in **629.226**

## **691 Materials**

Selection, preservation, construction properties

.1      **Timber**

.12      **Prevention of decay**

Spraying, painting, impregnating with fungicides

.14      **Prevention of termite damage**

.15      **Treatment for fire resistance**

Impregnation with monomagnesium, monoammonium, diammonium phosphates

.2      **Natural stones**

Granite, limestone, marble, sandstone, slate, serpentine, soapstone

**691.3-691.4 Artificial stones**

.3      **Concretes**

.4      **Ceramic and clay materials**

Brick, tile, terra cotta, sun-dried blocks



## *Decimal Classification*

### **691.5 Masonry adhesives**

#### **.6 Glass**

#### **.7 Ferrous metals**

#### **.8 Other metals**

Divide like **669.2–669.7**, e.g., aluminum **691.872 2**

#### **.9 Other**

#### **.92 Plastics and their laminates and compounds**

#### **.95 Insulating materials**

Rock wool, corkboard, asbestos, kapok, diatomaceous earth

#### **.96 Bituminous materials**

Asphalt, synthetic and rock asphalts, tar

#### **.97 Prefabricated materials**

#### **.99 Adhesives and sealants**

*For plastics and their laminates and compounds, see 691.92;  
masonry adhesives, 691.5*

### **692 Construction practices**

#### **692.1–692.2 Architect's drawings**

Interpretation and use of sketches for construction purposes

Class creation of plans and detail drawings [*formerly 692.1–692.2*] in **720.223**

#### **.1 Plans**

Rough sketches, working drawings, blueprints

#### **.2 Detail drawings**

Large-scale drawings of trims, moldings, other details

#### **.3 Construction specifications**

#### **.5 Estimates of materials and time**

#### **.8 Contracting**

Provision of construction materials in accordance with specifications

Class fees and commissions [*formerly 692.8*] in **331.2**

## *Buildings*

### **[692.9] Building laws and codes**

Class laws in 340, local government regulation in 352.922

### **693 Systems of construction**

*For materials, see 691*

#### **► 693.1–693.3 Solid block masonry**

##### **.1 Stone**

##### **.2 Stabilized earth**

##### **.21 Brick**

##### **.22 Sun-dried block**

Adobe, pisé, cob, tapia, tabby

##### **.3 Tile and terra cotta**

##### **.4 Hollow block masonry**

Concrete block, cinder block, hollow tile, hollow brick

##### **.5 Solid concrete construction**

##### **.52 Without reinforcement**

##### **.521 Poured**

##### **.522 Precast**

Class precast ferroconcrete [*formerly 693.522*] in 693.544

##### **.54 With reinforcement ( Ferroconcrete construction )**

##### **.541 Poured**

##### **.542 Prestressed**

##### **.544 Precast [*formerly 693.522*]**

##### **.6 Plaster-, stucco-, lathwork**

Internal and external application

##### **.7 Metal construction**

Divide like 669.1–669.7, e.g., steel construction 693.71

##### **.8 Resistant construction**

##### **.82 Fireproof construction**

*Decimal Classification*

---

693.83	Insulated construction
.832	Thermal
.834	Acoustical (Soundproofing)
.84	Pest-resistant construction
.842	Termite-resistant
.844	Rodent-resistant
.85	Shock-resistant construction
.852	Earthquake-resistant
.854	Blast-resistant
.89	Other
.892	Waterproof construction
.893	Moistureproof construction
	Constructional control of condensation in buildings
.898	Lightning-resistant construction
.9	Construction in other materials
	<i>For wood construction, see 694</i>
.91	Ice and snow
.92	Sandwich panels
.96	Glass
.97	Prefabricated materials

**694 Wood construction (Structural woodworking)**

Use **694.001–694.009** for standard subdivisions

.01–.09	Standard subdivisions of carpentry
.1	<b>Planning, structural analysis and design</b>

**694.2–694.6 Carpentry**

*For roofs, see 624.9*

.2	<b>Rough carpentry (Framing)</b>
.22	Sidings, partition frames, walls

- 694.23      Posts and beams
  - Including sills and joists
- .26      Floors
- .27      Ceilings
- .28      Use of scaffolds, ladders, material hoists
- .29      Openings
- .6      **Finish carpentry (Joinery)**
  - Construction of details
- .61      Doors and doorways
- .62      Windows and their structural elements
- .63      Blinds and shutters
- .64      Balconies, porches, verandas
- .67      Built-in cases and shelves (Fine joinery) [*formerly* 694.7]
- .68      Stairs [*formerly* 694.8], ramps, balustrades, rails
- .69      Trims
  - Moldings, paneling, inlays
- [.7]      **Built-in cases and shelves (Fine joinery)**
  - Class in 694.67
- [.8]      **Stairs**
  - Class in 694.68

**695      Roofing, auxiliary structures, and their materials**

---

- **695.1–695.7 Roofing and roofing materials**
  - Covering, maintaining, repairing roofs
  - For thatch roofing, see 695.92*
- .1      **Wood**
  - Shingles and shakes
- .2      **Slate**
- .3      **Concretes and tile**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **695.4 Metals**

*For ferrous metals, see 695.5*

.43 Copper

.44 Lead

.46 Tin

.47 Aluminum

### **.5 Ferrous metals**

### **.6 Composition**

Asbestos-composition, prepared roll, mineral-surfaced asphalt roofing

### **.7 Textiles**

Felt, duck, canvas roofing

### **.9 Other aspects**

.92 Thatch roofing

.96 Auxiliary structures

Installation, maintenance, repairs of gutters, flashings, other weatherings



## **696-697 Utilities**

*For household electrification, see 621.394*

### **696 Plumbing, pipe fitting, heating, ventilating**

Use 696.000 1 – 696.000 9 for standard subdivisions

Class heating and ventilating in 697

.001-.009 Standard subdivisions of plumbing

.01-.09 Standard subdivisions of pipe fitting

## ***Buildings***

### **696.1 Sanitary plumbing**

Design, installation, maintenance, repairs of water pipes and their fixtures

*For hot-water pipes, see 696.6*

#### **696.12–696.13 Input and output**

*For plumbing in specific parts of buildings, see 696.18*

#### **.12 Water-supply plumbing**

Pipes bringing clean water into buildings

#### **.13 Water drainage plumbing ( House drainage )**

Pipes removing contaminated water, sewage, other wastes from buildings

#### **.18 In specific parts of buildings**

##### **.182 Lavatories and bathrooms**

##### **.183 Laundries**

##### **.184 Kitchens**

Including installation of garbage disposal units and dishwashers

#### **696.2–696.6 Pipe fitting**

Design, installation, maintenance, repairs of pipes and their fixtures

*For sanitary plumbing, see 696.1*

#### **.2 Gas pipes ( Gas fitting )**

#### **.3 Steam pipes ( Steam fitting )**

#### **.6 Hot-water pipes**

Including installation of water heaters and water-softening equipment

#### **.8 Other plumbing operations**

Including thawing of frozen water pipes in buildings

#### **[.9] Plumbing laws and codes**

Class laws in 340, local government regulation in 352.926

## *Decimal Classification*

### **697 Heating, ventilating, air conditioning engineering**

Principles, systems, equipment, installation, maintenance, repairs

Use 697.000 1 – 697.000 9 for standard subdivisions

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of heating

697.02–697.07 Specific aspects of heating in general

.02 Local heating

.03 Central heating [*formerly* 697.3]

.04 Fuels

.07 Equipment

Radiators [*formerly* 697.507 8], boilers, furnaces

#### **697.1–697.2 Local heating**

Class comprehensive works in 697.02

*For chimneys and flues, see 697.8*

.1 With open fires (Radiative heating)

Including fireplaces, braziers

.2 With space heaters (Convective heating)

.22 Stationary stoves

.24 Portable heaters

#### **697.3–697.7 Central heating**

*For chimneys and flues, see 697.8*

.3 Warm-air heating

Class comprehensive works on central heating [*formerly* 697.3] in 697.03

.32 Systems

.322 Gravity circulation

.323 Accelerated circulation

.324 Heat-pump heating

**697.4 Hot-water heating**

**.5 Steam heating**

Use 697.500 1 – 697.500 9 for standard subdivisions

**.507 Equipment**

**.507 3 Furnaces**

**.507 4 Boilers**

**.507 8 Radiators**

Class comprehensive works on radiators [*formerly*  
697.507 8] in 697.07

**.51 Systems**

**.52 Heating single buildings**

**.54 District heating**

Heating a group of buildings from a central station

**.7 Other methods**

**.72 Radiant panel heating**

Hot-air, hot-water, steam, and electric radiant panel heating

**.78 Solar heating**

**.79 Nuclear heating**

**.8 Chimneys and flues**

**.9 Ventilation and air conditioning**

**.92 Ventilation**

*For chimneys and flues, see 697.8*

**.93 Air conditioning**

**.931 General principles**

Class general principles applied to specific types of buildings  
in 697.935–697.938

**.931 2 Design principles**

**.931 5 Psychrometrics**

Determination and control of enclosed atmospheric  
environment for optimum comfort



## *Decimal Classification*

- 697.931 6 Industrial applications
  - Determination and control of enclosed atmospheric environment for effective manufacturing operations
- .932 Parts and details
- .932 2 Temperature controls
  - Refrigerating and heating equipment, e.g., cooling and heating coils, thermostats
- .932 3 Humidity controls
  - Humidifiers, dehumidifiers, humidistats
- .932 4 Quality controls
  - Filters and other devices for removing dust, pollen, other particulates
- .932 5 Movement and distribution controls
  - Blowers, air return and air supply equipment



### 697.933–697.934 Systems

Class systems in specific types of buildings in 697.935–697.938, parts and details in 697.932

- .933 Central-station
- .933 2 Winter systems
- .933 3 Summer systems
- .933 4 Year-round systems
- .934 Other
- .934 2 Unitary systems
- .934 4 Combination systems
- .935–.938 In specific types of buildings
  - Divide like 725–728, e.g., air conditioning in hotels 697.938 5
  - For parts and details, see 697.932*

**698      Detail finishing**

Application and installation of decorative and protective coatings and coverings

**.1      Painting**

.102 8              Techniques, apparatus, equipment

.102 82             Equipment

Brushes, rollers, paints, diluents

.102 83             Paint mixing

.102 88             Application methods

.12                Exteriors

.124               House painting

.128               Sign painting

.14                Interiors

*For painting woodwork, see 698.35*

.142               Walls

.146               Floors

.147               Ceilings

**.2      Calcimining and whitewashing**

**.3      Finishing woodwork**

.32                By staining

Including graining and marbling

.33                By polishing with wax and oil

.34                By varnishing and lackering

.35                By painting

Including use of enamel paints

**.5      Glazing and leading windows**

**.6      Paperhanging**

**.9      Floor coverings**

Measuring, cutting, laying linoleum, tiles, carpeting

# 700

## 700 The arts

Description and critical appraisal, materials and techniques of the fine, decorative, graphic, performing, recreational arts

Use 700.1–700.9 for standard subdivisions

*For literature, see 800*

### ► 701–709 Standard subdivisions of fine arts

#### 701 Philosophy and theory

.1 Nature and character

.15 Psychology

Including fine arts as products of creative imagination

.17 Esthetics

.18 Criticism and appreciation

Theory and technique, history

Class works of critical appraisal in 709

.184 Thru use of audio-visual aids

Class audio-visual treatment of art in 702.08

.8 Techniques

Composition, color, decoration, perspective, use of models

Class research methodology in 701.9

*For description, critical appraisal of artists, see 709*

.9 Research methodology

Divide like standard subdivision 018, e.g., statistical method  
701.92

Class psychological aspects in 701.15

**702      Miscellany**

- .3      Art as a profession [*formerly* 706.9], occupation, hobby**
- .7      Inventions and ownership marks**
- .78      Hallmarks**
- .8      Apparatus, equipment, materials**
  - Class techniques in 701.8

**703      Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances**

**704      Persons occupied with art, collections and anthologies, iconography**

---

► **704.01–704.89 Persons occupied with art [*formerly* 706.9]**

Class development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works, biographical treatment of artists in 709

*For art dealers, see 706.5*

**.01–.05      Bibliographers, librarians, encyclopedists, publishers, journalists**

Divide like 920.1–920.5, e.g., librarians as artists 704.02

**.07      Women and children**

**.072      Women**

**.073      Children**

**.09–.89      Other persons**

Divide like 920.9–928.9, e.g., patrons of art 704.36

**.9      Collections, anthologies, iconography**

**.94      Iconography**

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works

*For artists, see 709*

SUMMARY

- |         |                                  |
|---------|----------------------------------|
| 704.942 | Human figures and their parts    |
| .943    | Natural scenes and objects       |
| .944    | Architectural subjects           |
| .945    | Devices, patterns, ornamentation |
| .946    | Symbolism and allegory           |
| .947    | Mythology and legend             |
| .948    | Religion and religious symbolism |
| .949    | Other specific subjects          |
- 704.942 Human figures and their parts
- Not provided for in 704.946–704.948
- Scope: portraits
- 
- 704.942 1 – 704.942 2 According to attire
- For specific kinds of persons, see 704.942 3 – 704.942 5; groups of figures, 704.942 6*
- |        |        |
|--------|--------|
| .942 1 | Nude   |
| .942 2 | Draped |
- 
- 704.942 3 – 704.942 5 Specific kinds of persons
- |        |                   |
|--------|-------------------|
| .942 3 | Men               |
| .942 4 | Women             |
| .942 5 | Children          |
| .942 6 | Groups of figures |
- For specific kinds of persons, see 704.942 3 – 704.942 5*
- |        |                                     |
|--------|-------------------------------------|
| .943   | Natural scenes and still life       |
|        | Not provided for in 704.946–704.948 |
| .943 2 | Animal life                         |
| .943 4 | Plant life                          |
| .943 5 | Still life                          |
| .943 6 | Landscapes                          |
| .943 7 | Marine scenes                       |
| .944   | Architectural subjects              |
| .945   | Abstractions                        |

## *The arts*

---

- 704.946            Symbolism and allegory  
                      *For religious symbolism in art, see 704.948*
- .947                Mythology and legend
- .948                Religion and religious symbolism  
                      *For mythology, see 704.947*
- .948 2              Christianity  
                      *For specific Christian subjects, see 704.948 4 – 704.948 7*
- 
- 704.948 4 – 704.948 7 Specific Christian subjects
- .948 4              Biblical characters and events  
                      *For Trinity, Madonna, Holy Family, see 704.948 5;  
                      apostles, saints, angels, 704.948 6; devils, 704.948 7*
- .948 5              Trinity, Madonna, Holy Family
- .948 52             Trinity
- .948 55             Madonna and child
- .948 56             Holy Family
- .948 6              Apostles, saints, angels
- .948 7              Devils
- .948 9              Other religions  
                      Divide like 294–299, e.g., Buddhism in art 704.948 943  
                      Class Old Testament characters and events in 704.948 4
- .949                Other specific subjects  
                      Divide like 001–999, e.g., industrial subjects 704.949 6

## 705        **Serial publications**

## 706        **Organizations**

### .5        **Business**

Including art dealers [*formerly 706.9*]

### [.9]      **Persons**

Class persons occupied with art in 704.01–704.89, art as a profession in 702.3, art dealers in 706.5

## *Decimal Classification*

### **707 Study and teaching**

#### **.4 Temporary and traveling exhibits**

Class museums and permanent exhibits in 708

### **708 Galleries, museums, private collections**

Use 708.001–708.008 for standard subdivisions

Class collections and anthologies of writings in 704.9, temporary and traveling exhibits in 707.4

Class collections of antiques [*formerly* 708] in 745.1

#### **.009 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
708.1–708.9

#### **.01–.07 Museum economy**

Divide like 069.1–069.7, e.g., exhibit techniques in art museums  
708.053

#### **708.1–708.9 Treatment by continent, country, locality**

Scope: guidebooks, catalogs of specific galleries, museums,  
private collections

Divide geographically as below; but, if it is desired to give  
local emphasis and a shorter number to galleries, museums,  
private collections of a specific country, place them first by use  
of a letter or other symbol, e.g., galleries, museums, private  
collections in Japan 708.J (preceding 708.1)

#### **In North America**

Class galleries, museums, private collections in Middle America in  
708.972

#### **.11 Canada**

Divide like area notation 71, e.g., galleries, museums, private  
collections in British Columbia 708.111

#### **.13–.19 United States**

Divide like area notations 73–79, e.g., galleries, museums,  
private collections in Pennsylvania 708.148

## *The arts*

### **708.2-.8 In Europe**

Divide like area notations **42-48**, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Wales [*formerly* 708.9] 708.29

Class galleries, museums, private collections in countries not provided for in area notations **42-48** in 708.94

### **.9 In other countries**

Add area notations **3-9** to 708.9

Class galleries, museums, private collections in Wales [*formerly* 708.9] in 708.29

## **709 Historical and geographical treatment**

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works, biographical treatment of artists

### 709.01-709.04 Periods of development

#### **.01 Primitive peoples and ancient times**

#### **.011 Primitive peoples**

Including geographical treatment [*formerly* 709.3-709.9]

#### **.012-.015 Ancient times**

Divide like standard subdivisions **090 12 - 090 15**, e.g., art of the second millennium B.C. 709.013

#### **.02 500-1500**

#### **.021-.023 500-1400**

Divide like standard subdivisions **090 21 - 090 23**, e.g., art of 14th century 709.023

#### **.024 1400-1500 [*formerly* 709.03]**

#### **.03-.04 1500-**

Divide like standard subdivisions **090 3 - 090 4**, e.g., art of 20th century 709.04

Class art of 1400-1500 [*formerly* 709.03] in 709.024

### **.3-.9 Geographical treatment**

Class geographical treatment of art of primitive peoples [*formerly* 709.3-709.9] in 709.011



## **710 Civic and landscape art**

### **711 Area planning (Civic art)**

Design of physical environment for public welfare, convenience, pleasure

*For landscape design, see 712*

#### **.028 Apparatus and equipment**

Class techniques in 711.12

#### **.06 Organizations**

#### **.061 Government planning departments and commissions [formerly 711.17]**

### **SUMMARY**

#### **711.1 Administrative aspects**

##### **.2-.4 Plans and planning for areas of specific levels**

- .2 International and national**
- .3 Interstate, state, provincial, county**
- .4 Local community (City planning)**
- .5 Specific kind of areas**
- .6 Structural elements**
- .7 Transportation facilities**
- .8 Other utilities**

#### **.1 Administrative aspects**

Class administrative aspects of planning for areas of specific levels in 711.2-711.4, of planning of specific elements in 711.5-711.8

#### **.12 Professional practice and technical procedures**

Collection of data, preparation and presentation of plans and models

#### **.13 Social factors**

#### **.14 Economic factors**

#### **[.17] Laws, regulations, administration**

Class laws and regulations in 340, government planning departments and commissions in 711.061

## *Civic and landscape art*

### **711.2–711.4 Plans and planning for areas of specific levels**

*For specific elements, see 711.5–711.8*

#### **711.2 International and national**

#### **.3 Interstate, state, provincial, county**

*For metropolitan areas, see 711.43*

#### **.4 Local community (City planning)**

#### **.409 Historical and geographical treatment**

Scope: specific cities

#### **711.41–711.45 Specific types of plans**

Class plans and planning for specific cities in **711.409**

#### **.41 Based on street patterns**

Gridiron, radial, studied irregularity plans

#### **.42 Based on topography and climate**

#### **.43 Based on size**

Villages, small and large cities, metropolitan areas

#### **.45 Based on function**

Cities serving primarily as governmental, industrial, transportation, religious, educational, residential, resort centers

### **711.5–711.8 Plans and planning of specific elements**

#### **.5 Specific kinds of areas**

#### **[.51] Zoning laws and regulations**

Class in **340**

#### **.55 Functional**

*For religious centers, see 711.56; cultural and educational areas, 711.57; residential areas, 711.58*

#### **.551 Civic, administrative, governmental**

#### **.552 Commercial, transportation, industrial**

### Decimal Classification

- 711.554      Agricultural
- .555      Medical center
- .556      Prison and reformatory
- .557      Hotel, restaurant, trailer park
- .558      Recreational
- Parks, playgrounds, bathing beaches, athletic fields, theater districts
- .56      Religious center
- .57      Cultural and educational
- For libraries, museums, colleges and universities, other schools, see 711.57
- .58      Residential
- Urban, suburban, rural areas, apartment house districts
- For housing renewal, see 711.59*
- .59      Redevelopment of slums and blighted areas
- Including housing renewal
- .6      Structural elements
- Adaptation to site
- Class adaptation of structural elements to specific kinds of areas in 711.5, to utilities in 711.7-711.8

### 711.7–711.8 Utilities

- |     |   |
|-----|---|
| .7  | Transportation facilities   |
| .73 | Motor   |
| .74 | Pedestrian  |
| .75 | Railroad  |
| .76 | Marine  |
| .78 | Air   |
| .8  | Other utilities   |
|     | Water, gas, electricity transmission and supply; communication lines, sanitation, flood control |

*Civic and landscape art*

**712 Landscape design (Landscape architecture)**

*For specific elements in landscape design, see 714–717*

**.028 Apparatus and equipment**

Class techniques in 712.3

**712.2–712.3 General considerations**

Class general considerations of design of specific kinds of land tracts in 712.5–712.7

**.2 Principles**

Esthetics, style, effect, composition

**.3 Professional practice and technical procedures**

Collection of data, preparation and presentation of plans and models, supervision of operations

**712.5–712.7 Specific kinds of land tracts**

*For design of trafficways, see 713; of cemeteries, 718*

**.5 Public parks and grounds**

Commons, fairgrounds, amusement parks, zoological and botanical gardens, grounds of public buildings

**.6 Private parks and grounds**

Front and back yards, home gardens, penthouse gardens, estates

**.7 Semiprivate and institutional grounds**

Grounds of country clubs, golf clubs, hotels, hospitals, churches, colleges and universities, industrial plants

**713 Landscape design of trafficways**

► **714–717 Specific elements in landscape design**

**714 Water features**

Natural and artificial pools, fountains, cascades

**715 Woody plants**

Nonflowering and flowering

**.1 Topiary work**

**.2 Trees**

**.3 Shrubs**

**.4 Vines**

**716 Herbaceous plants**

Nonflowering and flowering

Class here comprehensive works on herbaceous and woody flowering plants

*For woody flowering plants, see 715*

**717 Structures**

Relationship of buildings, terraces, fences, gates, steps, ornamental accessories to other elements of landscape design

**718 Landscape design of cemeteries**

**.8 National memorial cemeteries**

**719 Natural landscapes**

**.3 Reserved lands**

**.32 Public parks and natural monuments**

**.33 Forest and water-supply reserves**

**.36 Wildlife reserves**

## 720 Architecture

.223 Plans and detail drawings [*both formerly also*  
692.1–692.2]

.9 Historical and geographical treatment

[.901–.904] Periods of development

Do not use; class in 722–724

[.93] In the ancient world

Do not use; class in 722

## 721 Architectural construction

Comprehensive works on design and construction of structural elements

*For design of structural elements, see 729.3; building construction, 690; specific types of structures, 725–728*

.1 Foundations

.2 Walls

Footings, colonnades, entablatures, partitions, bearing and retaining walls

*For columnar constructions, see 721.3; curved constructions, 721.4*

.3 Columnar constructions

Piers, abutments, colonnettes, columns, posts, pedestals, pilasters

*For colonnades and entablatures, see 721.2; doors and windows, 721.8*

.4 Curved constructions and details

*For doors and windows, see 721.8*

.41 Arches

*For groined arches, see 721.44*

.43 Vaults

*For specific types of vaults, see 721.44–721.45*

► 721.44–721.45 Specific types of vaults

721.44 Groined vaults and arches

.45 Other types of vaults

Tunnel, expanding, rib and fan vaults

.46 Domes

*For cupolated roofs, see 721.5*

.48 Niches

.5 Roofs and roof structures

Dormers, roof cornices, skylights, cupolated roofs, towers, spires,  
pinnacles, gable roofs, pediments, chimneys

.6 Floors

.7 Ceilings

.8 Other elements

Doors, doorways, windows, balconies, stairs, ramps, balustrades,  
porches, blinds, fastenings

► 722–724 Periods of development

Chronological development of architectural styles

Class development of specific types of structures in 725–728

*For architectural construction, see 721; design and  
decoration of structures, 729*

722 Ancient period to ca. 300

722.1–722.5 Oriental architecture

.1 Chinese and Japanese

.2 Egyptian

.3 Semitic

.31 Phoenician

Architecture of Tyre, Sidon, Beirut, Byblos

.32 Colonial Phoenician

Architecture of ancient Carthage, Utica, Cadiz, Cyprus

.33 Jewish

## *Architecture*

### **722.4 South and southeast Asian**

Architecture of ancient India, Tibet, Burma, Siam, Cambodia, Java

### **.5 Near Eastern**

*For ancient Semitic architecture, see 722.3; ancient Egyptian architecture, 722.2*

### **.51 Mesopotamian**

### **.52 Persian**

### **.6 Classical architecture**

*For Roman architecture, see 722.7; Greek (Hellenic) architecture, 722.8*

### **.61 Aegean, Minoan, Mycenaean**

### **.62 Etruscan**

### **.7 Roman architecture**

### **.8 Greek (Hellenic) architecture**

### **.9 Other ancient architectures**

### **.91 American**

Architecture of Pueblo, Aztec, Toltec, Maya, Inca Indians

### **723 Medieval period, ca. 300–1400**

Not limited geographically

### **.1 Early Christian architecture**

### **.2 Byzantine architecture**

### **.3 Saracenic architecture**

Moslem, Moorish, Mudejar

### **.4 Romanesque and Norman architectures**

### **.5 Gothic architecture**

### **724 Modern period, 1400–**

Not limited geographically

### **.1 Renaissance architecture, 1400–1800**

Including Elizabethan, Jacobean, Queen Anne, Georgian, colonial styles

### **.19 Baroque, rococo, Churrigueresque**



## *Decimal Classification*

- 724.2      Classical revival architecture**
  - .22      Roman
  - .23      Greek
  - .3      Gothic revival architecture
  - .5      Renaissance revival and neoclassical architecture
  - .7      Swiss timber and half-timber architecture
  - .8      Romanesque revival architecture
  - .9      20th century architecture



### **725–728 Specific types of structures**

Comprehensive works on design and construction

Scope: specific structures

*For building construction, see 690*

## **725      Public structures**

Not used primarily for religious, educational, research, residential purposes

### **SUMMARY**

- 725.1      Government buildings**
  - .2      Commercial buildings
  - .3      Transportation and storage buildings
  - .4      Industrial buildings
  - .5      Health and welfare buildings
  - .6      Prison and reformatory buildings
  - .7      Refreshment and park structures
  - .8      Recreation buildings
  - .9      Other public structures
- .1      **Government buildings**
  - .11      Legislative
  - .12      Executive department
  - .13      County and city
  - .14      Customs
  - .15      Court, record, archive
  - .16      Post office
  - .17      Official residence
    - Palaces of rulers, executive mansions; embassy, legation, consulate buildings

## *Architecture*

- 725.18      **Military and police**  
             Barracks, forts, armory and arsenal buildings
- .19      **Fire station**
- .2      **Commercial buildings**
- .21      **Retail trade (Stores and shops)**
- .23      **Office**  
             Including medical office buildings and clinics, radio and  
             television buildings and towers
- .24      **Financial institution**
- .25      **Exchange**  
             Stock and commodity exchange, board of trade, chamber of  
             commerce buildings
- .3      **Transportation and storage buildings**
- .31      **Railroad passenger station**
- .32      **Railroad freight station**
- .33      **Railroad accessory**  
             Roundhouses, shops, tool storage, guard and signal buildings
- .34      **Marine transportation**  
             Harbor, dock, pier buildings
- .35      **Warehouse**
- .36      **Storage elevator**
- .38      **Motor vehicle transportation**  
             Bus terminal, public garage, filling station buildings
- .39      **Air transportation**  
             Hangars, terminal and shop buildings
- .4      **Industrial buildings**  
             Factories, mills, shipyards

*Decimal Classification*

- 725.5 Health and welfare buildings**  
*For medical office buildings and clinics, see 725.23*
- .51 General hospital and sanitarium  
*For children's hospital buildings, see 725.57*
- .52 Psychiatric hospital
- .53 Buildings of institutions for persons with mental handicaps
- .54 Buildings of institutions for persons with physical handicaps
- .55 Buildings of institutions for the indigent
- .56 Buildings of institutions for the aged
- .57 Child welfare institution and hospital buildings
- .59 Other health and welfare institution buildings
- .592 Veterinary hospital and shelter
- .594 Homes for veterans
- .597 Morgues and crematories [*both formerly 726.8*]
- .6 Prison and reformatory buildings**
- .7 Refreshment and park structures**
- .71 Restaurant buildings
- .72 Taproom buildings
- .73 Bathhouse buildings
- .74 Swimming pools
- .76 Amusement park and casino buildings
- .8 Recreation buildings**  
*For refreshment and park structures, see 725.7*
- .81 Music and concert  
*For opera buildings, see 725.822*
- .82 Buildings for shows and spectacles
- .822 Theater and opera
- .827 Buildings for outdoor performances and sports  
Stadiums, amphitheaters, grandstands  
*For racetrack buildings, see 725.89*

## *Architecture*

- 725.83 Auditorium buildings
- .84 Buildings for indoor games  
Boys' club, bowling alley buildings; halls for pool, card games,  
chess, checkers  
*For gymnasium buildings, see 725.85*
- .85 Gymnasium and athletic club buildings
- .86 Rink and dance hall buildings
- .87 Boathouses  
Canoe club, yacht club, recreation pier buildings
- .88 Riding club buildings
- .89 Racetrack buildings
- .9 Other public structures
- .91 Exhibition buildings
- .94 Memorial buildings
- .96 Arches, gateways, walls
- .97 Towers  
Bell, clock, observatory towers
- .98 Bridges, tunnels, moats
- .99 Vehicles
- 726 Buildings for religious purposes
- .1 Temples and shrines  
Divide like 292–299, e.g., Buddhist temples and shrines 726.143  
*For mosques and minarets, see 726.2; synagogues and Judaistic  
temples, 726.3; Christian church buildings, 726.5*
- .2 Mosques and minarets
- .3 Synagogues and Judaistic temples
- .4 Accessory houses of worship  
Parish houses, chapels, Sunday school buildings, baptistries of all  
religions  
*For mortuary chapels, see 726.8*

## *Decimal Classification*

### **726.5 Christian church buildings**

*For cathedral church buildings, see 726.6*

#### **.58 Specific denominations**

Divide like 281–289, e.g., Protestant Episcopal Church buildings **726.583**

Class geographical treatment of buildings of specific denominations in **726.509 3 – 726.509 9**

#### **.59 Details**

##### **.591 Entrances and approaches**

##### **.592 Naves and transepts**

##### **.593 Chancels, sanctuaries, choir lofts, pulpit platforms**

##### **.594 Clerestories**

##### **.595 Side chapels**

##### **.596 Sacristies and baptistries**

##### **.597 Towers and steeples**

### **.6 Cathedral church buildings**

Class details of cathedral church buildings in **726.59**



---

#### **726.62–726.65 Specific denominations**

Class geographical treatment of buildings of specific denominations in **726.609 3 – 726.609 9**

#### **.62 Oriental**

*For Eastern Orthodox, see 726.63*

#### **.63 Eastern Orthodox**

#### **.64 Roman Catholic**

#### **.65 Anglican**

#### **.69 Accessory structures**

Cathedral cloisters, chapter houses

## *Architecture*

- 726.7 Monastic buildings**  
Abbeys, priories, friaries, convents, monasteries of all religions
- .77 Of specific Christian orders**  
Divide like 271.1–271.9, e.g., Franciscan monasteries 726.773  
Class geographical treatment of buildings of specific orders in 726.709 3 – 726.709 9
- .779 9 Of orders of other religions**  
Divide like 292–299, e.g., Buddhist monasteries 726.779 943
- .79 Accessory structures**  
Refectories, cloisters, cells
- .8 Mortuary chapels and tombs**  
Class morgues, crematories [*both formerly 726.8*] in 725.597
- .9 Other buildings for religious purposes**  
Parsonages, episcopal palaces, missions, buildings of religious associations
- 727 Buildings for educational and research purposes**
- .1 Elementary school**
- .2 Secondary school**
- .3 College and university**
- .38 Accessory structures**  
Dormitory, dining hall, music room buildings
- .4 Professional and technical school**  
Use 727.400 01 – 727.400 09 for standard subdivisions  
Divide like 001–999, e.g., law school buildings 727.434
- .5 Research**  
Laboratory, botanical and zoological garden, observatory buildings  
Use 727.500 01 – 727.500 09 for standard subdivisions  
Divide like 001–999, e.g., astronomical observatories 727.552

## *Decimal Classification*

### **727.6 Museum**

Use **727.600 01 – 727.600 09** for standard subdivisions

Divide like 001–999, e.g., science museum buildings **727.65**

*For art museum buildings, see 727.7*

#### **.7 Art museum and gallery**

#### **.8 Library [formerly 022.3]**



#### **727.82–727.84 Specific kinds of libraries**

Class geographical treatment in **727.809 3 – 727.809 9**

#### **.82 General libraries**

Divide like 027, e.g., public library buildings **727.824**

*For branch libraries, see 727.84*

#### **.83 Libraries devoted to specific subjects**

#### **.84 Branch libraries**

#### **.9 Other buildings for educational and research purposes**

Community center, learned society buildings

### **728 Residential buildings**

Not used primarily for public, religious, educational, research purposes

*For official residence buildings, see 725.17; parsonages and episcopal palaces, 726.9; college dormitories, 727.38*

#### **.1 Temporary buildings**

Unit and multiple dwellings

#### **.2 Multiple dwellings**

Tenements, flats, apartments, apartment hotels

*For temporary multiple dwellings, see 728.1; row houses, 728.31*

## *Architecture*

- 728.3 Houses of urban type**
  - .31 Row houses
  - .34 Duplex houses
    - Divided horizontally or vertically
  - .37 Separate houses of two or more stories
    - For large and elaborate dwellings, see 728.8*
- .4 Club houses**
  - Country, city, fraternal clubs
- .5 Hotels and motels**
  - For apartment hotels, see 728.2*
- .6 Dwellings of suburban and rural types**
  - For resort dwellings, see 728.7; large and elaborate dwellings, 728.8*
- .64 Separate houses of one story
  - Cottages, bungalows, ranch and split-level houses
  - For farmhouses, see 728.67*
- .67 Farmhouses
- .69 Solar houses
- .7 Resort dwellings**
  - Vacation cabins, hunting lodges, houseboats, house trailers
- .8 Large and elaborate dwellings**
  - .81 Castles
  - .82 Palaces and chateaux
  - .83 Mansions and manor houses
  - .84 Villas
- .9 Accessory domestic structures**
  - Gatehouses, garages, conservatories, farm buildings



## *Decimal Classification*

### **729      Design and decoration of structures and accessories**

*For specific types of structures, see 725-728; interior decoration, 747*

#### **SUMMARY**

- 729.1      Design in vertical plane**
- .2          Design in horizontal plane (Plans and planning)**
- .3          Design and decoration of structural elements**
  - .4-.8      Decoration in specific mediums**
- .4          In paint**
- .5          In relief**
- .6          In veneer and incrustation**
- .7          In mosaic**
- .8          In ornamental glass**
- .9          Built-in ecclesiastical furniture**

#### **729.1-729.3 Specific elements**

*For design and decoration of built-in ecclesiastical furniture, see 729.9; decoration in specific mediums, 729.4-729.8*

- .1          Design in vertical plane**
  - Façades, elevations, sections
  - For design of structural elements, see 729.3*
- .11        Composition**
- .13        Proportion**
- .19        Inscriptions and lettering**
- .2          Design in horizontal plane (Plans and planning)**
  - Consideration of function and size of areas
  - For design of structural elements, see 729.3*
- .23        Proportion**
  - Including modular coordination
- .24        Interior arrangement**
- .25        Lines of interior communication**
- .28        Lighting**
- .29        Acoustics**

## *Architecture*

### **729.3 Design and decoration of structural elements**

#### **.31 Walls**

Including paneling, entablatures, moldings

*For pilasters, see 729.32*

#### **.32 Columnar structures**

Columns, colonnades, pilasters

#### **.326 Architectural orders**

*For entablatures, see 729.31*

#### **.33 Arches and arcades**

#### **.34 Vaults, domes, niches, ceilings**

#### **.35 Roofs and roof structures**

Towers [*formerly 729.36*], spires, chimneys, gables, pediments

#### **[.36] Towers**

Class in 729.35

#### **.37 Floors**

#### **.38 Doors and windows**

#### **.39 Stairs, ramps, balustrades**

### **729.4–729.8 Decoration in specific mediums**

#### **.4 In paint**

Decorative painting as an adjunct to architecture

#### **.5 In relief**

Carved and sculptured decoration and ornament, Gothic tracery, gargoyles

#### **In veneer and incrustation**

Use of wood, stone, metal, enamel in architectural decoration

#### **.7 In mosaic**

#### **.8 In ornamental glass**

*Decimal Classification*

- 729.9      Built-in ecclesiastical furniture**
- .91      **Sacramental furniture**  
            Altars, baptismal fonts, confessionals
- .92      **Rostral furniture**  
            Pulpits, lecterns, prayer desks
- .93      **Seats and canopies**  
            Bishops' thrones, baldachins, choir stalls, pews
- .96      **Screens and railings**  
            Rood screens, altar screens, altar and chancel railings
- .97      **Organ cases**
- .98      **Lighting fixtures**

## **730 Sculpture and the plastic arts**

Use 730.01–730.09 for standard subdivisions

### **730.1–730.9 Standard subdivisions of sculpture**

- .1 Philosophy and theory**
- .2 Miscellany**
- [.28] Techniques, apparatus, equipment**  
Do not use; class in 731.3–731.4
- .3–.8 Dictionaries, serial publications, organizations, study and teaching, collections**
- .9 Historical and geographical treatment**  
Class geographical treatment of sculpture of primitive peoples [formerly 730.9] in 732.2
- [.901–.904] Periods of development**  
Do not use; class in 732–735
- .92 Sculptors**  
Regardless of process or representation
- [.93] In the ancient world**  
Do not use; class in 732–733



## **731–735 Sculpture**

Fine art of producing figures and designs in relief or the round by fashioning in plastic and rigid materials

## **731 Processes and representations**

Class individual sculptors in 730.92

### **SUMMARY**

- 731.1 Composition and design**
- .2 Materials**
- .3 Equipment**
- .4 Techniques**
- .5 Styles and forms**
- .7 Sculpture in the round**
- .8 Iconography**

## *Decimal Classification*

- **731.1–731.4 Processes**
- 731.1 Composition**
- .2 Materials**  
Metals, wood, stone, clay, wax, papier-mâché, finishing materials  
*For techniques, see 731.4*
- .3 Equipment**  
Tools, machines, accessories  
*For techniques, see 731.4*
- .4 Techniques**
- .42 Modeling**  
With and without armatures
- .43 Molding**  
Preparation of molds from models
- .45 Casting**
- .452 In plaster and cement**
- .453 In synthetic plastics**
- .456 In bronze**
- .457 In other metals**  
Including electrolytic casting
- .46 Carving**
- .462 In wood**
- .463 In stone**
- .47 Firing and baking**  
Clay models for molding, ceramic sculpture
- .48 Restoration**

## *Sculpture and the plastic arts*



### **731.5–731.8 Representations**

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works

**731.5**

#### **Styles and forms**

*For sculpture in the round, see 731.7*

**.52**

#### **Styles**

Idealistic, naturalistic, realistic, grotesque

**.54**

#### **Sculpture in relief**

*For iconography, see 731.8*

**.542**

#### **Portals and doors**

**.549**

#### **Monumental reliefs**

**.55**

#### **Mobiles and stabiles**

**.7**

#### **Sculpture in the round**

*For iconography, see 731.8*

**.72**

#### **Decorative sculpture**

**.722**

#### **Garden sculpture and fountains**

**.724**

#### **Sculptured vases and urns**

**.74**

#### **Busts**

**.75**

#### **Masks**

**.76**

#### **Monuments**

**.8**

#### **Iconography**

**.81**

#### **Equestrian sculpture**

**.82–.89**

#### **Other specific subjects**

Divide like 704.942–704.949, e.g., statues of Venus 731.87



## **732–735 Periods of development**

Chronological development of sculptural styles

---



## **732–733 Sculpture of primitive peoples and ancient world**

### **732 Nonclassical**

#### **.2 Primitive**

Including geographical treatment [*formerly 730.9*]

#### **.3 Ancient Palestinian**

#### **.4 Ancient Indian**

#### **.5 Ancient Mesopotamian and Persian**

#### **.6 Ancient Germanic, Celtic, Slavic**

#### **.7 Ancient Chinese**

#### **.8 Ancient Egyptian**

#### **.9 Other ancient nonclassical**

Divide like area notation 39, e.g., Phoenician sculpture 732.944

### **733 Classical**

Class sculpture of Greek Archipelago in 732.91

#### **.3 Greek (Hellenic)**

#### **.4 Etruscan**

#### **.5 Roman**

### **734 Medieval period, ca. 500–1400**

Not limited geographically

#### **.2 Styles**

#### **.22 Early Christian and Byzantine**

#### **.24 Romanesque**

#### **.25 Gothic**

*Sculpture and the plastic arts*

**735 Modern period, 1400–**

Not limited geographically

**.2 Specific periods**

.21 1400–1800

.22 19th century

Classical revival, romanticism, realism

.29 20th century



---

**736–739 Other plastic arts**

Processes and products

*For decorative and minor arts, see 745–749*

**736 Carving and carvings**

Class sculptural carving and carvings in 731–735

**.2 Precious and semiprecious stones (Glyptics)**

.202 8 Lapidary work

Cutting, polishing, engraving gems

**.22 Specific forms**

Class scarabs in 736.209 32

*For specific materials, see 736.23–736.28*

.222 Cameos

.223 Intaglios



---

**736.23–736.28 Specific materials**

.23 Diamonds

.24 Jade

.25 Sapphires

.28 Obsidian

**[.3] Engraved seals, stamps, signets**

Class in 737.6



## *Decimal Classification*

- 736.4 Wood**  
Whittling, scrollwork, chip carving, wood rasp carving, totem poles
- .5 Stone**  
Lettering, inscriptions, designs
- .6 Ivory, bone, horn, shell, amber**
- .68 Netsukes**
- .7 Ornamental fans**  
Class fans of a specific material with the material, e.g., ivory **736.6**
- .9 Other materials**
- .93 Wax**
- .94 Snow and ice**
- .95 Soap**
- .98 Paper cutting and folding [*formerly also 793.9*]**
- 737 Numismatics**
- .2 Medals, talismans, amulets**
- .3 Counters and tokens**
- .4 Coins**
- .49 Of specific countries**  
Add area notations 3–9 to **737.49**
- .6 Engraved seals, stamps, signets [*all formerly 736.3*]**
- 738 Ceramic arts**  
Class ceramic sculpture in **731–735**  
*For glass, see 748*
- .027 8 Potters' marks [*formerly 738.88*]**
- 738.1–738.3 Pottery**
- .1 Processes**
- .12 Materials**  
Kaolin, petuntse, other clays, glazes, color materials  
*For techniques, see 738.14*

## *Sculpture and the plastic arts*

- 738.13      **Equipment**  
                Potter's wheels, kilns, accessories  
                *For techniques, see 738.14*
- .14          **Techniques**
- .142          **Modeling and casting**
- .143          **Firing**  
                Before and after glazing
- .144          **Glazing**
- .15          **Other decorative treatments**  
                Underglaze and overglaze painting, slip tracing, sgraffito  
                decoration, transfer painting
- 

### **738.2–738.3 Specific types**

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works

- .2          **Porcelain (China)**
- .27          **Specific varieties**  
                Arrange alphabetically by name
- .28          **Specific products**  
                Vases, tableware  
                *For specific varieties, see 738.27*
- .3          **Earthenware and stoneware**
- .37          **Specific varieties**  
                Arrange alphabetically by name
- .38          **Specific products**  
                *For specific varieties, see 738.37*
- .382          **Vases**
- .383          **Other containers**
- .4          **Enameling and enamels**  
                Cloisonné, champlevé, basse-taille, surface-painted enamels  
                *For a specific application of enameling, see the subject, e.g.,  
                nielloing 739.15*

## Decimal Classification

- 738.5 Mosaic ornaments and jewelry  
.6 Ornamental bricks and tiles  
.8 Other products  
Lighting fixtures, candlesticks, stoves, braziers, figurines  
[.88] Potters' marks  
Class in 738.027 8

739 Art metalwork  
Decorative metallic forms other than sculpture  
*For numismatics, see 737*

- [.028] Techniques, apparatus, equipment  
Do not use; class in 739.13–739.14

### SUMMARY

- 739.1 Processes  
.2 Work in precious metals  
.3 Watch- and clockcases  
.4 Ironwork  
.5 Work in other metals  
.7 Arms and armor  
.1 \* Processes  
*For a specific kind of metalwork, see the subject, e.g., goldsmithing 739.22*  
.12 Materials  
*For techniques, see 739.14*  
.13 Equipment  
Tools, machines, accessories  
*For techniques, see 739.14*  
.14 Techniques  
Shaping metals by hammering and beating (*repoussé* work),  
stamping, forging, welding, rolling, drawing, casting  
*For decorative treatment, see 739.15*  
.15 Decorative treatment  
Painting, chasing, nielloing, damascening, patinating

*Sculpture and the plastic arts*

---

**739.2 Work in precious metals**

*For watch- and clockcases, see 739.3*

.202 78 Marks [*formerly 739.21*]

[.21] Marks

Class in 739.202 78

---

► **739.22–739.24 In specific metals**

*For jewelry, see 739.27*

.22 Goldsmithing

.220 278 Marks [*formerly 739.228 8*]

[.220 9] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 739.227

.222–.225 Processes

Divide like 739.12–739.15, e.g., equipment 739.223

.227 Historical and geographical treatment

Add area notations 1–9 to 739.227

.228 Specific products

Gold and gold plate

Class geographical treatment of specific products in 739.227

.228 2 Ecclesiastical articles

.228 3 Tableware

.228 4 Receptacles

Vases, boxes, loving cups

[.228 8] Marks

Class in 739.220 278

.23 Silversmithing

Divide like 739.22, e.g., silver tableware 739.238 3

.24 Platinumwork

## *Decimal Classification*

### **739.27 Jewelry**

*For mosaic ornaments and jewelry, see 738.5*

#### **.272-.275 Processes**

Divide like 739.12-739.15, e.g., techniques 739.274

*For glyptics, see 736.2; specific products, 739.278*

#### **.278 Specific products**

### **.3 Watch- and clockcases**

#### **[.309] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 739.37

#### **.32-.35 Processes**

Divide like 739.12-739.15, e.g., equipment 739.33

#### **.37 Historical and geographical treatment**

Add area notations 1-9 to 739.37

### **739.4-739.5 Work in nonprecious metals**

*For arms and armor, see 739.7*

### **.4 Ironwork**

Ornamental work in wrought iron, cast iron, stainless steel

#### **[.409] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 739.47

#### **.42-.45 Processes**

Divide like 739.12-739.15, e.g., equipment 739.43

#### **.47 Historical and geographical treatment**

Add area notations 1-9 to 739.47

#### **.48 Specific products**

Grills, balcony motifs, balustrades, knockers, ornamental nails

Class specific products in specific places in 739.47

**739.5      Work in other metals**

.51      Copper and its alloys

*For brass, see 739.52*

.511      Copper

.512      Bronze

.52      Brass

.53      Tin and its alloys

*For bronze, see 739.512*

.532      Tin

.533      Pewter

.54      Lead

.55      Zinc

*For brass, see 739.52*

.56      Nickel

.57      Aluminum

.58      Chromium

**.7      Arms and armor**

---

►                      739.72–739.74 Offensive arms

.72      Side arms

Sabers, swords, daggers, lances, dirks, bayonets, spears

.73      Missile-hurling weapons

Bows, arrows, catapults, air guns, spring guns

*For firearms, see 739.74*

.74      Firearms

Divide like 623.42–623.44, e.g., pistols 739.744 3

.75      Defensive arms

Armor, cuirasses, shields, helmets

## **740 Drawing and decorative arts**

Use 740.01–740.09 for standard subdivisions

### **.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of drawing and drawings**

Class techniques in 741.4



## **741–744 Drawing and drawings**

### **741 Freehand drawing and drawings**

Scope: calligraphy (elegant handwriting), artistic lettering

*For freehand drawing and drawings by subject, see 743*

#### **[.028] Technique, apparatus, equipment**

Do not use; class in 741.2–741.4

#### **.09 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class historical and geographical treatment of collections of drawings in 741.92–741.99

#### **.092 Artists**

Regardless of medium, process, purpose, subject

### **SUMMARY**

**741.2 Drawing in specific mediums**

**.4 Drawing processes**

**.5 Cartoons, caricatures, comics**

**.6 Illustration (Commercial art)**

**.7 Silhouettes**

**.9 Collections of drawings**

#### **.2 Drawing in specific mediums**

Materials, equipment, processes

*For drawing for specific purposes, see 741.5–741.7*

#### **.22 Charcoal**

Including stump drawing

#### **.23 Chalk and crayon**

#### **.235 Pastel**

#### **.24 Pencil**

#### **.25 Silverpoint**

741.26 Ink with pen or brush

.29 Other mediums

Including scratchboard, airbrush drawing

.4 Drawing processes

Composition, techniques

*For perspective, see 742; drawing in specific mediums, 741.2;  
for specific purposes, 741.5–741.7*

---

► 741.5–741.7 Drawing and drawings for specific purposes

Mediums and processes

.5 Cartoons, caricatures, comics

.58 Animated cartoons

.59 Collections

[.591] By cartoonist

Class in 741.593–741.599

.593–.599 Geographical treatment

Scope: individual cartoonists [*formerly 741.591*]

Add area notations 3–9 to 741.59

.6 Illustration (Commercial art)

.61 Principles

---

► 741.64–741.69 For specific mediums

.64 Books

Including book jackets

.642 Children's books

.65 Magazines and newspapers

.67 Advertisements and posters

.672 Fashion drawing

.68 Calendars, greeting and postal cards

.69 Other specific articles

Including match covers and labels



## *Decimal Classification*

- 741.7 Silhouettes**  
**.9 Collections of drawings**  
Regardless of medium or process  
*For collections of cartoons, caricatures, comics, see 741.59*
- 741.92–741.99 Historical and geographical treatment  
Regardless of subject
- .92 Historical periods  
Not limited geographically
- .921 Ancient to ca. 500 A.D.  
.922 Medieval, ca. 500–1400  
.923 1400–1800  
.924 1800–
- .93–.99 Geographical treatment  
Add area notations 3–9 to 741.9
- 742 Perspective**  
Theory, principles, methods  
*For techniques of drawing specific subjects, see 743.4–743.8*
- 743 Freehand drawing and drawings by subject**  
743.4–743.8 Techniques of drawing specific subjects
- .4 Human figures**  
Scope: anatomy for artists, portraits  
*For drawing draped figures, see 743.5*
- 743.43–743.45 Specific kinds of persons  
*For anatomic systems, see 743.46–743.47; parts of the body, 743.49*
- .43 Men  
.44 Women  
.45 Children

## *Drawing and decorative arts*

- 743.46–743.47 **Anatomic systems**
- 743.46 **Bones (Skeletal system)**
- .47 **Muscles (Muscular system)**
- .49 **Parts of the body (Regional anatomy)**  
Head, thorax, abdomen, extremities
- .5 **Draperies and draped figures**  
*For fashion drawing, see 741.672*
- .6 **Animal life**
- .62–.69 **Specific animals**  
Divide like 592–599, e.g., drawing birds 743.682
- .7 **Plant life**  
Including trees, flowers, fruit
- .8 **Other subjects**  
Divide like 704.943–704.949, e.g., landscapes 743.83
- .9 **Collections of drawings of specific subjects**  
Not limited chronologically or geographically  
Divide like 704.94, e.g., collections of drawings of buildings 743.94  
Class collections of drawings limited historically or geographically in 741.9
- 744 **Technical drawing**
- .2 **Generalities**  
Arrangement and organization of drafting rooms, preservation and storage of drawings, supplies, equipment
- .4 **Drafting procedures and conventions**
- .42 **Types**
- .422 **Engineering and mechanical**  
Divide like 620–690, e.g., drafting electronic subjects 744.422 213 8
- .424 **Architectural**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 744.428      **Map**
- .429      **Production illustration**  
            Nontechnical graphic representations of mechanisms and  
            assemblies to show component parts and their relationships  
            Including phantom views, exploded views
- .43      **Other conventions**  
            Lettering, titling, dimensioning, shades, shadows
- .45      **Projections**  
            Orthographic, isometric, spheric  
            *For perspective, see 742*
- .5      **Preparation and reading of copies**  
            Blueprints, photostats  
            *For blueprinting process, see 772.2; production of photostats,*  
            *778.12*



### **745–749 Decorative and minor arts**

Processes and products not provided for in 736–739  
Class comprehensive works in 745

## **745      Design and crafts**

- .001–.009      **Standard subdivisions of decorative and minor arts**
- .01–.09      **Standard subdivisions of design and crafts**

### **SUMMARY**

- 745.1      **Antiques**
- .2      **Industrial art and design**
- .4      **Pure and applied design and decoration**
- .5      **Handicrafts**
- .6      **Lettering, illumination, heraldic design**
- .7      **Decorative coloring**
- .8      **Composite representation**
- .9      **Other decorative arts and crafts**

#### **Antiques**

Including collections [*formerly 708*]

Class a specific form of antique with the subject

## *Drawing and decorative arts*

### **745.2–745.4 Design**

**745.2**

#### **Industrial art and design**

Creative design of mass-produced commodities

**.4**

#### **Pure and applied design and decoration**

*For industrial design, see 745.2; design in a specific art form, the form, e.g., design in architecture 729*

[.409]

#### **Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in **745.44**

**.44**

#### **Historical and geographical treatment**

##### **745.441–745.444 Historical treatment**

Periods of development not limited geographically

**.441**

Ancient period to ca. 500 A.D.

**.442**

Medieval period, ca. 500–1400

**.443**

Renaissance period, 1400–1800

**.444**

Modern period, 1800–

**.449**

#### **Geographical treatment**

Add area notations 1–9 to **745.449**

### **745.5–745.9 Crafts**

Scope: folk art

#### **Handicrafts**

Creative work done by hand with aid of simple tools or machines

##### **745.51–745.57 In specific materials**

*For textile handicrafts, see 746*

**.51**

#### **Woods**

Marquetry, inlay trim, ornamental woodwork

*For ornamental woodwork in furniture, see 749.5*

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 745.53      Leathers and furs
  - .531          Leathers
  - .537          Furs
  - .54          Papers
    - End papers, gift wrappings, wallpaper
  - .55          Shells
  - .56          Metals
  - .57          Rubber and plastics
  - .59          Making specific objects
    - Scope: handicrafts in composite materials
    - Including decorations for special occasions, artificial flowers, lampshades, candlesticks
  - .592          Toys
    - .592 2          Dolls and doll clothes
      - Including puppets and marionettes [*both formerly 791.53*]
    - .592 3          Doll houses and furniture
    - .592 4          Padded toys other than dolls
- .6          Lettering, illumination, heraldic design
  - .61          Decorative lettering
  - .66          Heraldic design
  - .67          Illumination of manuscripts and books
    - Class development, description, critical appraisal of manuscripts in 091, of illustrated books in 096.1
- .7          Decorative coloring
  - For printing, painting, dyeing textiles, see 746.6*
  - .72          Painting and lackering
    - Japanning, tolecraft
  - .73          Stenciling
  - .74          Decalcomania

*Drawing and decorative arts*

**745.8      Panoramas, cycloramas, dioramas**

**.9        Other decorative arts and crafts**

**.92       Floral arts**

Selection and arrangement of plant materials and appropriate accessories

Scope: flower arrangement [*formerly 635.966 3 – 635.966 4*]

**745.922–745.926   Three-dimensional arrangements**

**745.922–745.925   Arrangements with specific materials**

*For arrangements for special occasions, see 745.926*

**.922       Flower arrangements in containers**

**.922 4       Occidental compositions**

**.922 5       Oriental compositions**

**.922 51       Chinese**

**.922 52       Japanese**

**.923       Flower arrangements without containers**

Corsages, boutonnieres, set floral pieces

**.924       Fruit and vegetable arrangements**

**.925       Arrangements with other plant materials**

Driftwood, pods and cones, dried and gilded grasses and leaves

**.926       Arrangements for special occasions**

Flower and other floral arrangements for holidays, weddings, funerals, church services

**.928       Two-dimensional arrangements**

Use of seeds and other dried plant materials in pictures, hanging, trays, and for other decorative purposes

## *Decimal Classification*

### **746 Textile handicrafts**

#### **.1 Weaving**

*For tapestry making, see 746.3; rug- and carpetmaking, 746.7*

#### **.2 Making laces and related fabrics**

*For knitting, crocheting, tatting, see 746.43*

#### **.22 Bobbin, darned, needlepoint laces**

#### **.27 Passementerie**

Braids, cords, fringes

#### **.3 Tapestry making**

#### **[.309] Historical and geographical treatment**

*Do not use; class in 746.39*

#### **.39 Historical and geographical treatment**

*Add area notations 1-9 to 746.39*

#### **.4 Other textile crafts**

*For rug- and carpetmaking, see 746.7*

#### **.41 Braiding, matting, basketry**

*Including raffiawork, rushwork*

#### **.43 Knitting, crocheting, tatting**

#### **.44 Embroidery**

*Smocking, appliqué, couching, cutwork, needlepoint, crewelwork, drawn work, hardanger*

#### **.445 Pictures and hangings**

#### **.46 Patchwork and quilting**

#### **.5 Beadwork**

#### **.6 Printing, painting, dyeing**

*Block and silk-screen printing, resist-dyeing, hand decoration, stenciling*

**746.7 Rug- and carpetmaking**

[.709] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 746.79

.72 By weaving without pile

Plain, twill, Jacquard, tapestry weaves

Including Navaho rugs

.73 By crocheting, knitting, braiding

.74 By hooking and embroidering

.75 By weaving with pile

► 746.751-746.759 Oriental rugs and carpets

.751-.758 From Asian countries

Add area notations 51-58 to 746.7

.759 From Caucasus region

.79 Historical and geographical treatment

Add area notations 1-9 to 746.79

.9 Costume [*formerly* 391]

**747 Interior decoration**

Design and decorative treatment of interior furnishings

*For furniture and accessories, see 749*

[.09] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 747.2

.2 Historical and geographical treatment

747.201-747.204 Historical treatment

Periods of development not limited geographically

.201 Ancient period to ca. 500 A.D.

.202 Medieval period, ca. 500-1400

.203 Renaissance period, 1400-1800

.204 Modern period, 1800-



## *Decimal Classification*

### **747.21-.29      Geographical treatment**

Divide like 708.1-708.9, e.g., interior decoration in  
Pennsylvania 747.214 8

### **747.3-747.4      Decoration of specific elements**

*For decoration of specific types of buildings, see 747.8; specific  
decorations, 747.9*

#### **.3      Ceilings, walls, doors, windows**

Decorative hangings, painting, papering, paneling, woodwork

#### **.4      Floors**

#### **.5      Draperies and upholstery**

#### **.7      Decoration of specific rooms of residential buildings**

*For specific decorations, see 747.9*

#### **.73      Home libraries and studies**

#### **.75      Living rooms, drawing rooms, parlors**

#### **.76      Dining rooms**

#### **.77      Bedrooms and nurseries**

#### **.78      Bathrooms and powder rooms**

#### **.79      Other rooms**

#### **.791      Recreation and family rooms**

#### **.797      Kitchens**

#### **.8      Decoration of specific types of buildings**

Divide like 725-728, e.g., decoration of Christian church buildings  
747.865

*For decoration of specific rooms of residential buildings, see  
747.7; specific decorations, 747.9*

#### **.9      Specific decorations**

*For draperies and upholstery, see 747.5*

#### **.92      Decorative lighting**

#### **.93      Decorations for specific occasions**

Parties, weddings, holidays

## *Drawing and decorative arts*

### **748 Glass**

#### **.2 Glassware**

Blown, prest, molded, cast, decorated products other than stained glass

*For specific articles, see 748.8; methods of decoration, 748.6*

#### **[.209] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in **748.29**

#### **.29 Historical and geographical treatment**

##### **.290 1-.290 4 Historical treatment**

Divide like **747.201-747.204**, e.g., modern period  
**748.290 4**

##### **.291-.299 Geographical treatment**

Divide like **708.1-708.9**, e.g., glassware of Pennsylvania  
**748.291 48**

#### **.5 Stained, painted, leaded, mosaic glass**

#### **[.509] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in **748.59**

#### **.59 Historical and geographical treatment**

##### **.590 1-.590 4 Historical treatment**

Divide like **747.201-747.204**, e.g., medieval period  
**748.590 2**

##### **.591-.599 Geographical treatment**

Divide like **708.1-708.9**, e.g., glass of England **748.592**

#### **.6 Methods of decoration**

Engraving, cutting, sand blasting, etching

*For painted glass, see 748.5*

#### **.8 Specific articles**

Mirrors, paperweights, containers, ornaments

*For lighting fixtures, see 749.63*

## *Decimal Classification*

### **749 Furniture and accessories**

*For upholstery, see 747.5*

#### **[.09] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 749.2

#### **.2 Historical and geographical treatment**

Scope: antiques and reproductions

#### **.201-.204 Historical treatment**

Divide like 747.201-747.204, e.g., Renaissance period  
749.203

#### **.21-.29 Geographical treatment**

Divide like 708.1-708.9, e.g., French furniture 749.24

#### **.3 Specific kinds of furniture**

Chairs, tables, beds, chests, clockcases, screens

*For heating and lighting fixtures, see 749.6*

#### **.4 Built-in furniture**

*For built-in ecclesiastical furniture, see 729.9; heating and lighting  
fixtures, 749.6*

#### **.5 Ornamental woodwork in furniture**

#### **.6 Heating and lighting fixtures**

##### **.62 Heating**

Fireplaces, mantels, inglenooks

##### **.63 Lighting**

Chandeliers, lamps

*For built-in ecclesiastical lighting fixtures, see 729.98*

#### **.7 Other accessories**

Including picture frames, shadow boxes

## **750 Painting and paintings**

*For commercial art, see 741.6; painting in a specific decorative art, the subject, e.g., painting porcelain 738.15*

[.28]      **Techniques, apparatus, equipment**

Do not use; class in 751.3–751.4

[.9]      **Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 759

## **751 Processes and forms**

Class individual painters in 759.1–759.9

### **751.2–751.6 Processes**

.2      **Materials**

Surfaces, pigments, mediums, fixatives, coatings

*For techniques, see 751.4*

.3      **Equipment**

Models, tools, accessories

*For techniques, see 751.4*

.4      **Techniques**

*For pastel, see 741.235*

.42      **Water-soluble mediums**

*For tempera painting, see 751.43*

.422      **Water-color painting**

Including gouache, casein painting

.425      **Ink painting**

Including Suiboku painting

.43      **Tempera painting**

.44      **Fresco painting**

.45      **Oil painting**

.46      **Encaustic or wax painting**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 751.48 Mosaic painting
  - .49 Other methods
    - Including airbrush painting, finger painting, collage
  - .5 **Reproduction and copying**
    - For print making and prints, see 761–769*
  - .58 Forgeries and alterations
    - Including expertizing, determination of authenticity
  - .6 **Care, preservation, restoration**
  - .7 **Specific forms**
    - For specific subjects, see 753–758*
  - .72 Easel paintings
  - .73 Murals
  - .74 Panoramas, cycloramas, dioramas
  - .75 Scene paintings
    - Including theatrical scenery
  - .77 Miniatures
- 752 **Color theory and practice**
  - Including color symbolism



### **753–758 Specific subjects**

Class individual painters in 759.1–759.9

- 753 **Abstractions, symbolism, mythology**
  - Divide like 704.945–704.947, e.g., epic paintings 753.7
  - For religious symbolism, see 755*
- 754 **Subjects of everyday life ( Genre paintings )**
- 755 **Religion and religious symbolism**
  - Divide like 704.948, e.g., paintings of Holy Family 755.56

*Painting and paintings*

**756 Historical events**

Battles, coronations, disasters

**757 Human figures and their parts**

Not provided for in **753–756, 758**

Scope: portraits

[.022 2] Collections of portraits

Do not use; class in **757.9**

**.2 According to attire**

*For specific kinds of persons, see 757.3–757.5; groups of figures, 757.6; miniature portraits, 757.7*

**.22 Nude**

**.24 Draped**

**757.3–757.5 Specific kinds of persons**

*For miniature portraits, see 757.7*

**.3 Men**

**.4 Women**

**.5 Children**

**.6 Groups of figures**

*For specific kinds of persons, see 757.3–757.5; miniature portraits, 757.7*

**.7 Miniature portraits**

**.9 Collections of portraits**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **758 Other subjects**

- .1 Landscapes**
- .2 Marine scenes**
- .3 Animal life**
  - Including hunting scenes
- .4 Still life**
- .42 Flowers**
- .5 Plant life**
- .6 Industrial and technical subjects**
- .7 Architectural subjects**

### **759 Historical and geographical treat**

---

759.01–759.06 Periods of development

Not limited geographically

- .01 Primitive peoples and ancient times**
- .011 Primitive peoples**
  - Including geographical treatment [*formerly 759.1–759.9*]
- .02 Medieval period, ca. 500–1400**
- .03 1400–1600**
- .04 1600–1800**
- .05 1800–1900**
- .06 1900–**

## *Painting and paintings*

### **759.1–759.9 Geographical treatment**

Scope: individual painters regardless of process, form, subject

Divide geographically as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to painting and paintings of a specific country, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., Burmese painting and paintings **759.B** (preceding **759.1**)

Class geographical treatment of paintings of primitive peoples [*formerly 759.1–759.9*] in **759.011**

#### **759.1 North America**

Class painting and paintings of Middle America in **759.972**

##### **.11 Canada**

##### **.13 United States**

Class comprehensive works on painting and paintings of specific states in **759.14–759.19**

##### **.14–.19 Specific states of United States**

Divide like area notations **74–79**, e.g., painting and paintings of San Francisco **759.194 61**

Class individual painters in **759.13**, painting and paintings of Hawaii in **759.996 9**

#### **.2–.8 Europe**

Divide like area notations **42–48**, e.g., painting and paintings of Wales [*formerly 759.9*] **759.29**

Class painting and paintings of countries not provided for in area notations **42–48** in **759.94**

#### **.9 Other parts of world**

Add area notations **3–9** to **759.9**

Class painting and paintings of Wales [*formerly 759.9*] in **759.29**



## **760 Graphic arts**

Use 760.01–760.09 for standard subdivisions

*For drawing and drawings, see 741–744; painting and paintings, 750; photography and photographs, 770*

### **760.1–760.9 Standard subdivisions of print making and prints**

- .1 Philosophy and theory**
- .2 Miscellany**
  - .277–.278 Marks of collectors and print makers [*formerly* 769.41]**
- .3–.8 Dictionaries, serials, organizations, study and teaching, collections**
- [.9] Historical and geographical treatment**
  - Do not use; class in 769.9

## **761–769 Print making and prints**

### **► 761–767 Print making**

#### **761 Relief processes (Block printing)**

Printing from raised surfaces

- .2 Wood engraving**
- .3 Linoleum-block printing**
- .8 Metal engraving**

#### **762**

## *Graphic arts*

### **763 Lithographic (Planographic) processes**

Printing from flat surfaces

*For chromolithography, see 764*

#### **.2 Surfaces**

#### **.22 Stone**

#### **.23 Aluminum**

#### **.24 Zinc**

### **764 Chromolithography and serigraphy**

#### **.8 Serigraphy (Silk-screen printing)**

### **765–767 Intaglio processes**

Printing from incised surfaces

### **765 Metal engraving**

Scope: comprehensive works on metal relief and metal intaglio processes

*For metal relief engraving, see 761.8; mezzotinting and aquatinting, 766; etching and drypoint, 767*

#### **.2 Line engraving**

#### **.5 Stipple engraving**

#### **.6 Criblé engraving**

### **766 Mezzotinting, aquatinting, related processes**

#### **.2 Mezzotinting**

#### **.3 Aquatinting**

#### **.7 Composite processes**

Use of two or more processes in a single print

### **767 Etching and drypoint**

#### **.2 Etching**

#### **.3 Drypoint**

### **768**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **769 Prints**

Description, critical appraisal, collections regardless of process

[.09] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 769.9

#### **.1 Collecting, care, preservation**

Class collecting, care, preservation of specific forms in 769.5

#### **769.3–769.4 Specific kinds**

Not limited historically or geographically by print makers

Class individual print makers in 769.92

#### **.3 By artist copied**

#### **.4 By subject**

Divide like 704.94, e.g., portrait prints 769.42

*For prints by artist copied, see 769.3*

[.41] Marks of collectors and print makers

Class in 760.277–760.278

#### **.5 Specific forms**

Applications of print making not limited historically or geographically by print makers

Including lettering, inscriptions, designs on name cards, post cards, posters, diplomas, decorative prints

*For prints by subject, see 769.4; by artist copied, 769.3*

#### **.55 Paper money**

#### **.559 Of specific countries**

Add area notations 4–9 to 769.559

## Graphic arts

---

- 769.56 Postage stamps (Philately [*formerly* 383.22] )  
Separate, precanceled, printed on cards and envelopes
- .562 Counterfeit stamps
- .563 Stamps commemorating persons and events
- .564 Stamps depicting specific subjects  
*For stamps commemorating persons and events, see 769.563*
- .569 Stamps of specific countries  
Add area notations 4-9 to 769.569
- .9 Historical and geographical treatment
- .903-.904 Periods of development  
Divide like standard subdivisions 090 3 - 090 4, e.g., prints of 1950-1960 769.904 5
- .91 Regional treatment  
Add area notation 1 to 769.9
- .92 Print makers  
Regardless of artist copied, subject, form
- .93-.99 Geographical treatment  
Add area notations 3-9 to 769.9

## 770 Photography and photographs

- .1 Philosophy and theory
- .11 Photography as an art
  - Composition, design, perspective
- .15 Scientific aspects
- .153 Optics
  - Light in photography
- [.154] Chemistry
  - Do not use; class in 771.5
- .2 Miscellany
- .23 Photography as profession and hobby [*both formerly 770.69*]
- .232 As a profession
- .233 As a hobby
- .24 Works for amateurs
- .28 Techniques
  - Class equipment in 771
- [.281] Manufacture of photosensitive surfaces
  - Class in 661.808
- .282 Camera use
  - Loading, focusing, exposure, plate and film removal
  - 770.283–770.284 Darkroom practice
- .283 Preparation of negatives
  - Developing, desensitizing, reducing, intensifying, rinsing, fixing, washing, drying exposed plates, films, paper
  - For reversing negatives, see 770.285*
- .284 Preparation of positives (Contact printing)
  - Exposing, developing, rinsing, fixing, washing, drying, re-touching, toning, coloring, mounting

*Photography and photographs*

- 770.285      Preservation of negatives and transparencies  
                 Storage, aging effects, reversing negatives
- .286      Preservation of positives  
                 *For mounting, see 770.284*
- .287      Recovery of waste materials
- [.69]      Photography as profession and hobby  
                 Class in 770.23
- 771      **Equipment, supplies, chemistry**  
            Scope: comprehensive works on use and manufacture  
            Class equipment and supplies used in special processes in 772–773, in  
            specific fields of photography in 778, manufacture of a specific kind  
            of equipment or supplies with the subject, e.g., of cameras 681.13
- .1      **Studios, laboratories, darkrooms**
- .2      **Furniture and fittings**
- .3      **Cameras and accessories**
- .31      Specific makes of hand cameras  
            Arrange alphabetically by trade name
- .35      Optical parts of cameras  
            *For shutters, see 771.36; focusing and exposure apparatus,*  
            *771.37*
- .352      Lenses
- .356      Filters
- .36      Camera shutters
- .37      Focusing and exposure apparatus  
            Exposure meters, view finders, range finders
- .38      Accessories  
            Tripods, carrying cases
- .4      **Developing and printing apparatus**  
            Trays, utensils, frames

## *Decimal Classification*

- 771.5 Chemistry and chemical supplies**
  - .52 Support materials**
    - Backings of glass, metal, ceramics, cellulose compounds
  - .53 Photosensitive surfaces**
    - .532 Specific photosensitive surfaces**
      - .532 2 Plates**
      - .532 3 Papers**
      - .532 4 Films**
    - .534 Sensitometry**
      - Quantitative study of effects of exposure and development on photosensitive materials
  - .54 Developing and printing supplies**
    - Preparation of developing, reducing, toning, intensifying, fixing solutions



## **772-773 Special processes**

Equipment, supplies, methods

*For processing techniques in color photography, see 778.63-778.66; photomechanical printing techniques, 655.32*

- 772 Metallic salt processes**
  - .1 Direct positive and printing-out processes**
    - For platinum printing-out process, see 772.3*
  - .12 Daguerreotype process**
  - .14 Wet-collodion, ferrotype, tintype processes**
  - .16 Kallitype processes**
  - .2 Blueprinting (Cyanotype) process**
  - .3 Platinotype processes**
    - Including platinum printing-out process

## *Photography and photographs*

### **773 Pigment processes of printing**

#### **.1 Carbon and carbonyl processes**

Artigue, Mariotype, ozotype, ozobrome

#### **.2 Powder (Dusting-on) processes**

Including peppertype process

#### **.3 Imbibition processes**

#### **.5 Gum-bichromate processes**

#### **.6 Photoceramic and photoenamel processes**

#### **.7 Diazotype processes**

#### **.8 Oil processes**

Including bromoil process

774

775

776

777

### **778 Specific fields of photography**

Methods; comprehensive works on use and manufacture of equipment and supplies

Class manufacture of a specific kind of equipment or supplies with the subject, e.g., of cameras 681.13

#### **SUMMARY**

##### **778.1 Photoduplication (Photocopying)**

##### **.2 Photographic projection**

##### **.3 Scientific and technological applications**

##### **.4 Stereoscopic photography and projection**

##### **.5 Motion pictures**

##### **.6 Color photography and photography of colors**

##### **.7 Photography under specific conditions**

##### **.8 Trick photography**

##### **.9 Photography of specific subjects**



## *Decimal Classification*

- 778.1 Photoduplication (Photocopying)**  
Of photographs, sketches, paintings, drawings, documents, other  
printed and written matter  
*For microphotography, see 778.315*
- .12 Production of facsimiles and photostats**  
*For blueprinting process, see 772.2*
- 778.13–778.14 Projection printing**
- .13 Enlarging processes**
- .14 Reduction processes**
- .2 Photographic projection**  
Filmstrips and filmslides  
*For stereoscopic projection, see 778.4; motion-picture  
projection, 778.55*
- .3 Scientific and technological applications**  
Class a specific application with the subject
- .31 Photomicrography and microphotography**  
Black-and-white and color  
*For projection printing, see 778.13–778.14*
- .311 Photomicrography**  
Production of enlarged photographs of microscopic objects  
*For motion-picture photomicrography, see 778.56*
- .315 Microphotography**  
Production of photographic records on reduced scale
- .32 Photography in terms of focus**
- .322 Telephotography**  
*For aerial and space photography, see 778.35; panoramic  
photography, 778.36*
- .324 Close-up photography**

## *Photography and photographs*

- 778.33 Radiography (X-ray photography)  
Including fluoroscopy, cinefluorography
- .34 Infrared photography
- .35 Aerial and space photography  
*For photogrammetry, see 526.982*
- .352 Aerial
- .353 Space
- .36 Panoramic photography
- .37 Ultra high-speed photography  
Including flash-bulb photography
- .4 Stereoscopic photography and projection  
Production of effects of binocular vision  
*For stereoscopic motion-picture photography, see 778.534 1*
- .5 Motion pictures
- .53 Photography (Cinematography) and editing  
*For cinefluorography, see 778.33; motion-picture photography, 778.56*
- .534 Specific types of photography
- .534 1 Stereoscopic  
Production of effects of binocular vision
- .534 2 Color
- .534 4 Sound-picture recording
- .534 6 Time-lapse
- .534 7 Animated-cartoon
- .534 9 Amateur
- .534 91 Specific types of cameras
- .535 Editing films  
Including titling
- .538 Photography of specific subjects  
Divide like 001-999, e.g., newsreel photography 778.538 07  
*For specific types of photography, see 778.534*

## *Decimal Classification*

- 778.55      Projection
  - .554      Of specific kinds of motion pictures
  - .554 1      Stereoscopic
  - .554 2      Color
  - .554 4      Sound
  - .554 9      Amateur
  - .56      Photomicrography
  - .58      Preservation and storage of films
- .6      **Color photography and photography of colors**
  - For color motion-picture photography, see 778.534 2; color photomicrography and microphotography, 778.31*
- .62      Photography of colors in monochrome
  - Orthochromatic and panchromatic
  - 778.63–778.66 Processing techniques in color photography
- .63      Direct process reproduction
  - Including Lippmann process
  - 778.65–778.66 Indirect processes
- .65      Additive
  - Production of color films and projections by additive analysis and additive synthesis respectively
- .66      Subtractive
  - Production of color films and prints by subtractive analysis and subtractive synthesis respectively

*Photography and photographs*

**778.7 Photography under specific conditions**

*For flash-bulb photography, see 778.37*

.71 Outdoors

.712 In sunlight

.719 At night

*For infrared photography, see 778.34*

.72 Indoors and by artificial light

.73 Underwater

.75 Under extreme climatic conditions

**.8 Trick photography**

Including table-top photography; photography of specters, distortions, multiple images; silhouette photography

**.9 Photography of specific subjects**

Divide like 704.94, e.g., portrait photography 778.92

Class photography of specific subjects by specific methods in 778.1-778.8

**779 Collections of photographs**

Divide like 704.94, e.g., photographs of children 779.25

## *Decimal Classification*

### **780 Music**

Distinguish scores and parts from treatises as provided below, e.g., comprehensive treatises on violin **787.1**, scores and parts for violin **787.151–787.154**

If preferred, distinguish scores and parts by prefixing **M** to number for treatises, e.g., scores and parts for violin **M787.1**

#### **780.01–781.97 General works**

Scope: instrumental music [*formerly also 785*]

.01        Research

.07        Music and society

#### **780.071–780.073 Persons occupied with music**

.071       Musicians

Class development, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment of musicians in **780.92**

Class music as a profession in **780.23**, professional ethics of musicians in **174.9** [*both formerly 780.071*]

.071 1       Composers

.071 2       Interpreters and performers

.072       Critics and musicologists

.073       Amateurs

---

#### **780.074–780.075 Support and regulation**

.074       Private patrons, patronage, support

Persons, foundations, fellowships

.075       Official support and regulation

.08       Relation to literature and other arts

.09       Relation to subjects other than arts

- 780.1      **Philosophy and esthetics**  
            Class general principles ("theory of music") in 781
- .15          Criticism and appreciation  
            Analytical guides and program notes  
            Class scientific aspects in 781.1
- [.19]        Psychological aspects  
            Do not use; class in 781.15
- .2          **Miscellany**
- .23          Music as a profession [*formerly* 780.071], occupation,  
            hobby
- [.28]        Techniques, apparatus, equipment  
            Do not use; class in 781
- .29          Commercial miscellany  
            Including circulars [*formerly* 780.85]  
            Class trade catalogs of music scores in 781.973 4
- .6          **Organizations**
- .65          Business firms  
            Publishers, retailers, concert bureaus
- .7          **Study, teaching, performances**
- [.71]        Schools and courses  
            Do not use; class in 780.72
- .72          Schools and courses  
            Conservatories and general schools at secondary and higher  
            levels  
            Class research in 780.01
- .729        Historical and geographical treatment  
            Add area notations 1-9 to 780.729

## *Decimal Classification*

- 780.73      **Performances**  
              Concerts and recitals
- .739        **Programs**  
              Add area notations 1-9 to 780.739  
              Class program notes in 780.15
- .77         **Special methods of teaching**  
              Dictation, ear training, eye training, music reading, rhythm  
              training
- .79         **Festivals, competitions, awards**  
              Add area notations 1-9 to 780.79
- .8          **Collections, anthologies, miniature scores**  
              Including collections of writings about the subject  
  
              780.81-780.82 Collected scores and parts of  
              conventional size  
  
              Scope: works combining scores and words to be sung or recited  
              with music  
  
              Class words to be sung or recited with music in 781.96
- .81         **By single composers**
- .82         **By more than one composer**
- .84         **Miniature pocket scores**
- [.85]       **Commercial circulars**  
              Class in 780.29
- .9          **Historical and geographical treatment**  
              

---

  
              780.901-780.904 Historical periods  
              Not limited regionally or geographically
- .901        **To ca. 450 A.D.**
- .902        **450-1450**
- .903        **1450-1900**
- .903 1      **1450-1600**
- .903 2      **1600-1750**

- 780.903 3            1750-1825
- .903 4            1825-1900
- .904            1900-
- .91            Regional treatment
- .917            Socioeconomic regions
- [.917 4]            Ethnic groups
- Do not use; class in 781.7
- .92            Musicians
- .93-.99        Geographical treatment
- Class music of national orientation in 781.7

**781        General principles ( "Theory of music" ) and techniques**

Class principles and techniques of dramatic music in 782, of sacred music in 783, of music for specific mediums in 784-789

**SUMMARY**

- 781.1        Scientific aspects
- .2        Basic considerations
- .3        Harmony
- .4        Melody and counterpoint
- .5        Musical forms
- .6        Composition and performance
- .7        Music of ethnic and national orientation
- .9        Other topics
- .1        **Scientific aspects**
- Including mathematical, physical, physiological aspects
- For musical sound, see 781.22*
- .15        **Psychological aspects**
- Including music and color
- .2        **Basic considerations**
- .22        **Musical sound**
- Pitch, scales, intervals, tonalities, chords
- For musical structure, see 781.3-781.4*
- .23        **Nomenclature and systems of terms**
- .24        **Notation**
- Including neumes, tablature



## *Decimal Classification*

### **781.3–781.4 Musical structure**

*For musical forms, see 781.5*

#### **781.3 Harmony**

Class keyboard harmony for string instruments in 786.3, for wind instruments in 786.7 [*both formerly 781.3*]

#### **.32 Thoro bass (Basso continuo)**

Including realization of figured bass

#### **.36 Modulation**

#### **.4 Melody and counterpoint**

#### **.42 Counterpoint**

Including canon and fugue

#### **.5 Musical forms**

*For canon and fugue, see 781.42*

#### **.52 Sonata**

#### **.55 Dance music**

*For jazz and related forms, see 781.57; ballet music, 782.95*

#### **.56 Program music**

#### **.57 Jazz and related forms**

#### **.572 Ragtime**

#### **.573 Blues**

#### **.574 Hot jazz and swing**

#### **.6 Composition and performance**

*For musical structure, see 781.3–781.4*

#### **.61 Composition**

Class vocal composition [*formerly 781.61*] in 784.028

*For special elements of composition, see 781.64–781.67*

#### **.62 Rhythm and meter**

Class relation of words to music [*formerly 781.62*] in 784.015

## Music

---

- 781.63      Performance  
            Execution, interpretation, expression  
            *For special elements of performance, see 781.64–781.67*
- [.632]      Instrumentation  
            Class in 785.028 4
- .633      Score reading and playing  
            Class memorizing [*formerly* 781.633] in 781.634
- .634      Memorizing [*formerly* 781.633]
- .635      Conducting
- 781.64–781.67 Special elements of composition and performance
- .64      Arrangement (Transcription)  
            Including resolution, instrumental reduction
- .642      Transposition  
            Written and extemporaneous
- .65      Improvisation (Extemporization)
- .66      Accompaniment
- .67      Embellishment  
            Graces, ornaments, decoration
- .7      Music of ethnic and national orientation  
            Scope: folk music [*formerly* 784.4]  
            Class geographical treatment of music in 780.93–780.99
- .71      Of primitive peoples  
            Add area notations 1–9 to 781.71  
  
            781.72–781.79 Of nonprimitive peoples
- .72      Of races without distinct national orientation  
            Divide like 420–490, e.g., Gipsy music 781.729 149
- .73–.79      Of national orientation  
            Add area notations 3–9 to 781.7

## *Decimal Classification*

### **781.9      Other topics**

- .91      Musical instruments [*formerly also 785*]
  - Design, hand construction, care, tuning, repairing, verification
- .96      Words to be sung or recited with music
  - Description, critical appraisal, collections of librettos, scenarios, poems
- .97      Bibliographies and catalogs of scores and parts
  - Scope: thematic catalogs, comprehensive bibliographies of scores and treatises
  - Class bibliographies of treatises on music in 016.78, catalogs and lists of recordings in 789.913
- .971      General bibliographies
- .972      Catalogs [*formerly 781.973*] and bibliographies of individual composers
  - Not limited to one form or medium
- .973      General catalogs
  - Scores held in a specific collection or group of collections
  - Divide like 017.1–017.4, e.g., trade catalogs 781.973 4
  - Class catalogs of individual composers [*formerly 781.973*] in 781.972
- [.98]      Printing and publishing
  - Class in 655

### **782      Dramatic music and production of musical drama**

- .015      Appreciation
  - Analytical guides and program notes
- .028      Composition
  - Writing and arrangement of music, librettos, scenarios
  - Class production in 782.07

## Music

## 782.07 Production and productions

### Training, conducting, performance

Including training in dramatic interpretation [formerly also 784.95]

**Class opera production [formerly 782.07] in 782.107**

## .08 Collections

**Including collections of writings about the subject**

Class collections of stories, plots, analyses of operas by more than one composer in 782.13, of operettas in 782.813, of ballets in 792.84 [all formerly 782.08]

### 782.081–782.082 Of scores and parts

**Scope:** arrangements, abridgments, excerpts, works combining librettos with scores

*For collections of librettos, see 782.085*

.081 By single composers

.082 By more than one composer

.085	Of librettos
------	--------------

## .086 Of stories, plots, analyses

.09 Historical and geographical treatment

## .092 Musicians

### Composers, librettists, performers

## .1 Opera

**Grand, comic, satiric, chamber**

.101 5                      Appreciation

### Analytical guides and program notes

**.1028      Composition**

**Writing and arrangement of music, librettos, scenarios**

**Class production in 782.107**

**.107**      **Production [formerly 782.07] and productions**

### Including training

**.107 1            Conducting and performance**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 782.107 3      Performances of specific operas  
                 Including stage guides [*formerly* 782.12]
- .107 39      Programs  
                 Add area notations 1–9 to 782.107 39
- .108      Collections of writings about the subject  
                 Class collections of scores and parts in 782.15, of librettos in  
                 782.12, of stories, plots, analyses in 782.13
- .109      Historical and geographical treatment
- .109 2      Musicians  
                 Composers, librettists, performers
- .12      Librettos  
                 Class stage guides [*formerly* 782.12] in 782.107 3
- .13      Stories, plots, analyses  
                 Including collections by more than one composer [*formerly*  
                 782.08]
- .15      Scores and parts  
                 Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts, works combining  
                 librettos with scores  
                 *For librettos, see 782.12*
- .152      Collections by more than one composer
- .154      Single works and collections by single composers
- .8      Theater music
- .81      Musical shows  
                 Operettas, musical comedies, revues  
                 Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of  
                 782.101 5 – 782.109 2, e.g., conducting 782.810 71  
                 Divide like 782.12–782.15, e.g., collection of stories, plots, anal-  
                 yses by more than one composer [*formerly* 782.08] 782.813
- .82      Secular cantatas and oratorios  
                 Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of  
                 782.101 5 – 782.109 2, e.g., composition 782.820 28  
                 Divide like 782.12–782.15, e.g., librettos 782.822

## *Music*

---

- 782.83**      **Incidental dramatic music**
- .830 28      Composition and arrangement  
                    Class conducting and performance in **782.830 71**
- .830 71      Conducting and performance
- .835      Scores and parts  
                    Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
- .835 2      Collections by more than one composer
- .835 4      Single works and collections by single composers
- .85      Film music  
                    Divide like **782.83**, e.g., techniques of composition **782.850 28**
- .86      Radio music  
                    Divide like **782.83**, e.g., collections by more than one composer  
                    **782.865 2**
- .87      Television music  
                    Divide like **782.83**, e.g., conducting **782.870 71**
- .9      **Other forms of dramatic music**  
                    Including music for pantomimes, masks, pageants
- .95      Ballet music  
                    Divide like **782.83**, e.g., single works **782.955 4**  
                    Class stories, plots, analyses of ballets by single composers,  
                    librettos, stage guides [*all formerly 782.95*] in **792.84**
- 783**      **Sacred music**  
                    Music composed for public and private worship or dedicated to a  
                    religious purpose
- .015      Appreciation  
                    Analytical guides and program notes

## Decimal Classification

### ► 783.026-783.029 Music for specific religious groups

#### 783.026 Christianity

Divide like 281-289, e.g., music of Methodists 783.026 7

(Optional: specific kinds of sacred music of specific denominations and sects; prefer 783.1-783.9. If option is chosen, add 0 to number resulting from division like 281-289 and divide further like 783.1-783.9, e.g., Methodist church choirs 783.026 708)

#### .029 Other religions

Divide like 292-299, e.g., music of Judaism 783.029 6

(Optional: specific kinds of sacred music of specific religions; prefer 783.1-783.9. If option is chosen, add 0 to number resulting from division like 292-299 and divide further like 783.1-783.9, e.g., liturgical music of Judaism 783.029 602)

#### .073 Performances

#### .073 9 Programs

Add area notations 1-9 to 783.073 9

Class program notes in 783.015

### 783.1-783.9 Specific kinds

Scope: specific kinds of sacred music of specific Christian denominations and sects, of other specific religions; if preferred, class in 783.026-783.029

## SUMMARY

- 783.1 Instrumental music
- .2 Liturgical and ritualistic music
- .3 Oratorios
- .4 Nonliturgical choral pieces
- .5 Nonliturgical chants
- .6 Songs
- .7 Evangelistic music
- .8 Church choirs and vocal groups
- .9 Hymns

### Instrumental music

Treatises on instrumental music and instrumental accompaniment to vocal music

Class scores and parts in 785-789

## Music

### 783.2 Liturgical and ritualistic music

Scope: works combining texts (librettos) with scores

Class texts used by a specific religion with the religion, e.g., liturgy and ritual of Christian church 264

.200 1–.200 7 Standard subdivisions

.200 8 Collections of writings about the subject

Class collections of scores and parts in 783.205

.200 9 Historical and geographical treatment

.205 Scores and parts

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

Divide like 785.115, e.g., collections by more than one composer 783.205 2

783.21–783.29 Liturgical music of Christian church

Divide each subdivision identified by \* like 785.11, e.g., single works of the Mass 783.215 4

.21 \*Mass (Communion service)

*For Common of the Mass, see 783.22; Proper of the Mass, 783.23*

.22 \*Common (Ordinary) of the Mass

Kyrie, Gloria, Credo, Sanctus, Benedictus, Agnus Dei

.23 \*Proper of the Mass

Introit, gradual, tract, sequence, offertory, communion

.24 \*Office hours

Matins, Lauds, Prime, Terce, Sept, None, Vespers, Complin

.26 \*Litanies

.27 \*Lenten and penitential music

.28 \*Joyous and festive music

Including Christmas, Easter liturgical music

.29 Other special services

Solemnities, processions, recessions

<sup>1</sup> Divide as instructed under 783.21–783.29



**783.3**

**Oratorios**

Including Passions

.301 5

**Appreciation**

Analytical guides and program notes

.307 3

**Performances**

.307 39

**Programs**

Add area notations 1–9 to **783.307 39**

Class program notes in **783.301 5**

.308

**Collections of writings about the subject**

Class collections of scores and parts in **783.35**, of librettos in **783.32**

.32

**Librettos**

.35

**Scores and parts**

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts, works combining librettos with scores

*For librettos, see 783.32*

.352

**Collections by more than one composer**

.354

**Single works and collections by single composers**

.4

**Nonliturgical choral pieces**

Anthems, motets, choruses, cantatas

Divide like **783.3**, e.g., collections by more than one composer **783.452**

*For oratorios, see 783.3*

.5

**Nonliturgical chants**

Gregorian, Ambrosian, Anglican, Jewish chants

Divide like **783.3**, e.g., scores of single works **783.554**

**783.6 Songs**



---

**783.62–783.63 Carols**

Class treatises in **783.6**

*For Christmas carols, see 783.65*

**.62 Texts**

**.63 Scores and parts**

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts, works combining texts (librettos) with scores

Divide like **783.35**, e.g., single works **783.634**

*For texts, see 783.62*

**.65 Christmas carols**

Scope: comprehensive works on Christmas music [*formerly 783.66*]

Divide like **783.3**, e.g., single works **783.655 4**

*For a specific kind of Christmas music, see the subject, e.g., oratorios 783.3*

**[.66] Christmas music**

Class in **783.65**

**.67 Other songs for from one to nine parts**

**.672 Texts**

**.675 Scores and parts**

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts, works combining texts (librettos) with scores

Divide like **784.306**, e.g., solos for men **783.675 13**

*For texts, see 783.672*

**.7 Evangelistic music**

Treatises on mission, revival, Sunday school music

Class scores and parts of evangelistic songs for from one to nine parts in **783.675**, for congregational singing in **783.95**

**.8 Church choirs and vocal groups**

Including training and conducting

Class scores and parts of music for choirs with the kind of music, e.g., anthems **783.45**

## Decimal Classification

783.9

### Hymns

Songs for congregational singing

.95

### Scores and parts

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts, works combining texts with scores

Divide like 783.35, e.g., hymnals 783.952

Class texts used by a specific religion with the religion, e.g., texts of hymns for Christian congregations 245



## 784–789 Individual mediums of musical expression

Observe the following table of precedence for works combining two or more mediums, e.g., duets for violin and flute 785.727 1, for soprano and tenor 784.306 22

Voice

Children

Women

Men

String instruments

Arranged as in 787

Wind instruments

Arranged as in 788

Percussion instruments

Arranged as in 789

Keyboard instruments

Accordion

Organ

Harpsichord

Piano

*For dramatic music, see 782*

784

## Voice and vocal music

With or without instrumental accompaniment

Scope: comprehensive works on or combining words and music (texts and scores)

*For sacred music, see 783; words to be sung or recited with music, 781.96; music for orchestra with incidental vocal parts, 785.2*

.015

### Appreciation

Analytical guides and program notes

Including relation of words to music [formerly 781.62]

## Music

---

- 784.028      Composition [*formerly also* 781.61]  
                Writing and arrangement of music and words  
                Class performance in 784.9
- .07          Performances  
                Concerts and recitals  
                Class instruction and study in 784.9
- .073        Programs  
                Add area notations 1–9 to 784.073  
                Class program notes in 784.015
- .079        Festivals, competitions [*both formerly* 784.5], awards
- .08        Collections of writings about the subject  
                Class collections of vocal music in 784.8
- .09        Historical and geographical treatment
- .092        Musicians  
                Composers, librettists and lyricists, singers

### SUMMARY

- 784.1      Choruses and part songs  
.2        Complete choral works  
.3        Songs for from one to nine parts  
.4        Folk songs  
.6        Songs for specific groups and on specific subjects  
.7        Other kinds of songs  
.8        Collections of vocal music  
.9        The voice

---

#### 784.1–784.7 Specific kinds of vocal music

Under each subdivision identified by \* use 001–009 for standard subdivisions, applying the extended meanings of 784.015–784.092, e.g., composition of complete choral works 784.200 28. Class collections of scores and parts in 06, e.g., collections of complete choral works 784.206

#### 784.1–784.3 Vocal music according to number of voices

*For vocal music according to origin, subject, special interest, see 784.4–784.7*

## *Decimal Classification*

### **784.1      \*Choruses and part songs**

Madrigals, glees, rounds, catches, other choral pieces not originally composed for orchestral accompaniment

#### **.106          Scores and parts**

Collections and single works

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

784.106 1 – 784.106 5 For specific kinds and arrangements of voices [*formerly* 784.106 8]

.106 1          Children's voices

.106 2          Women's voices

.106 3          Men's voices

.106 4          Mixt voices

.106 5          Vocal parts with choruses

[.106 8]          For specific kinds and arrangements of voices

Class in 784.106 1 – 784.106 5

### **.2          \*Complete choral works**

Originally composed for chorus and orchestra with or without solo voices

#### **.206          Scores and parts**

Collections and single works

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

### **.3          \*Songs for from one to nine parts**

Vocal chamber music, art songs, dance songs, ballads, ballades, canzonets

#### **.306          Scores and parts**

Collections and single works

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.306 1          One-voice part (Solos)

.306 11          Children

\* Treat standard subdivisions as instructed under 784.1–784.7

- 784.306 12            Women  
                        Soprano, mezzo-soprano, contralto voices
- .306 13              Men  
                        Tenor, baritone, bass voices
- .306 2                Two-voice parts (Duets)  
                        Divide like 784.306 1, following the table of precedence  
                        of mediums under 784-789, e.g., duets for women and  
                        men 784.306 22
- .306 3                Three-voice parts (Trios)  
                        Divide like 784.306 1, following the table of precedence  
                        of mediums under 784-789, e.g., trios for women and  
                        children 784.306 31
- .306 4                Four-voice parts (Quartets)  
                        Divide like 784.306 1, following the table of precedence  
                        of mediums under 784-789, e.g., quartets for men  
                        784.306 43
- .306 5                Five-voice parts (Quintets)  
                        Divide like 784.306 1, following the table of precedence  
                        of mediums under 784-789, e.g., quintets for women  
                        784.306 52
- .306 6                Six-voice parts (Sextets)  
                        Divide like 784.306 1, following the table of precedence  
                        of mediums under 784-789, e.g., sextets for men, women,  
                        children 784.306 61
- .306 7                Seven-, eight-, nine-voice parts (Septets, octets,  
                        nonets)  
                        Divide like 784.306 1, following the table of precedence  
                        of mediums under 784-789, e.g., octets for men  
                        784.306 73

## Decimal Classification

- **784.4–784.7 Vocal music according to origin, subject, special interest**
- 784.4 \*Folk songs**
- Class folk music [*formerly 784.4*] in **781.7**
- For national airs, songs, hymns, see 784.71; songs of specific ethnic and cultural groups, 784.75–784.76*
- [.400 9] Historical and geographical treatment
- Do not use; class in **784.49**
- .406 Scores and parts
- Collections and single works
- Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
- .49 Historical and geographical treatment
- Add area notations 1–9 to **784.49**
- [.5] Festivals and competitions
- Class in **784.079**
- .6 \*Songs for specific groups and on specific subjects
- .606 Scores and parts
- Collections and single works
- Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
- .61 \*For home and community
- Class community singing, singing in the home [*both formerly 784.61*] in **784.96**
- For songs for students and children, see 784.62*
- .610 6 Scores and parts
- Collections and single works
- Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
- \* Treat standard subdivisions as instructed under **784.1–784.7**

## Music

---

- 784.62      \*For students and children
- .620 6      Scores and parts
- Collections and single works
- Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
- .622      \*College and university songs
- Songs for undergraduate, graduate, professional, technical schools, fraternities
- .622 06      Scores and parts
- Collections and single works
- Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
- .623      \*High school songs
- .623 06      Scores and parts
- Collections and single works
- Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
- .624      \*Children's songs
- Scope: elementary school songs
- .624 06      Scores and parts
- Collections and single works
- Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
- .66      \*For societies and service clubs
- Masonic, Rotary, Lions Club songs
- For songs for college fraternities, see 784.622; songs on specific subjects, 784.68*
- .660 6      Scores and parts
- Collections and single works
- Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
- .68      On specific subjects (Topical songs)
- Use 784.680 001 – 784.680 009 for standard subdivisions
- Divide like 001–999, e.g., labor songs 784.683 31
- \* Treat standard subdivisions as instructed under 784.1–784.7



## *Decimal Classification*

### **784.7 Other kinds of songs**

#### **.71 \*National airs, songs, hymns**

Patriotic, martial, political songs

#### **[.710 09] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in **784.719**

#### **.710 6 Scores and parts**

Collections and single works

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

#### **.719 Historical and geographical treatment**

Add area notations **3-9** to **784.719**

#### **784.75-784.76 Songs of specific ethnic and cultural groups**

#### **.75 In United States and Canada**

##### **.751 Indians**

##### **.752 Gipsies**

##### **.755 Anglo-Americans and Celtic-Americans**

##### **.756 \*Negroes**

Minstrel and plantation songs, spirituals

#### **.756 06 Scores and parts**

Collections and single works

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

#### **.76 In other countries**

Divide like **420-490**, e.g., Maori songs **784.769 94**

### **.8 Collections of vocal music**

Too general to be provided for in **784.1-784.7**

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

#### **.81 Solos**

Divide like **784.306 1**, e.g., collections of women's solos **784.812**

\* Treat standard subdivisions as instructed under **784.1-784.7**

- 784.82 Duets  
Divide like 784.306 1, following the table of precedence of mediums under 784-789, e.g., collections of men's duets 784.823
- .83 Trios  
Divide like 784.306 1, following the table of precedence of mediums under 784-789, e.g., collections of trios for men and women 784.832
- .84 Quartets  
Divide like 784.306 1, following the table of precedence of mediums under 784-789, e.g., collections of children's quartets 784.841
- .85 Quintets, sextets, septets, octets, nonets  
Divide like 784.306 1, following the table of precedence of mediums under 784-789, e.g., collections of sextets for men, women, children 784.851
- .87 Collections for male voices
- .88 Collections for female voices
- .9 The voice
- .93 Training and performance  
*For special methods of training and expression, see 784.94; vocal ensemble, 784.96*
- .932 Training  
Voice culture, vocal expression, breathing, pronunciation, tone formation, vowel formation  
*For training for dramatic performance, see 784.95*
- .934 Performance  
Execution, interpretation, expression
- .94 Special methods of training and expression  
Including sight singing, solfeggios, sol-fa
- .949 Whistling

## *Decimal Classification*

- 784.95      Voice training for dramatic performance  
              Class training in dramatic interpretation [*formerly 784.95*] in  
              782.07
- .96          Vocal ensemble  
              Scope: community singing, singing in the home [*both formerly*  
              784.61]
- .962         Training
- .963         Conducting
- .964         Performance  
              Execution, interpretation, expression

## **785–789 Instruments and instrumental music**

*For treatises on sacred instrumental music, see 783.1*

### **785      Instrumental ensembles and their music**

Class general works on instruments in 781.91, on instrumental music  
in 780.01–781.97 [*both formerly 785*]

- .015         Appreciation  
              Analytical guides and program notes
- .028         Composition  
              Including accompaniment, embellishment  
              Class performance in 785.066–785.068
- .028 4       Arrangement  
              Including instrumentation [*formerly 781.632*]
- .06          Organizations
- [.061]       Permanent government organizations  
              Do not use; class in 785.062
- .062         Permanent organizations
- .062 3–.062 9      Specific organizations  
              Scope: concerts and programs  
              Add area notations 3–9 to 785.062



785.066–785.068 Specific kinds of ensembles

Orchestras, bands [*both formerly 785.1*], chamber music ensembles

Scope: training, conducting [*both formerly 785.107*], performance

Add 07 to each subdivision identified by \* for training, conducting, performance

*For specific organizations, see 785.062 3 – 785.062 9*

785.066

\*Orchestras

Scope: string bands

.066 1           \*Full (Symphony) orchestra

.066 2           \*Salon orchestra [*formerly 785.46*]

Chamber, theater, hotel, café orchestra

.066 3           \*String orchestra [*formerly 785.47*]

.066 6           \*Dance orchestra [*formerly 785.41*]

.066 7           \*Jazz orchestra [*formerly 785.42*]

Scope: comprehensive works on jazz orchestra and band

*For jazz band, see 785.067 2*

.067            \*Bands

*For string bands, see 785.066*

.067 1           \*Marching band

Wind, brass, military, school band; drum and bugle corps

.067 108           Drill, marching, drum majoring

.067 2           \*Jazz band [*formerly 785.42*]

.067 5           \*Rhythm and percussion bands [*both formerly 785.43*]

.068            \*Chamber music ensembles

.07             Study, teaching, concerts

.073            Concerts

.073 9           Programs

Add area notations 1–9 to 785.073 9

Class program notes in 785.015

\* Add as instructed under 785.066–785.068

## Decimal Classification

785.09      Historical and geographical treatment  
*For specific organizations, see 785.062 3 – 785.062 9*

.092      Musicians  
            Composers and conductors



### 785.1–785.8 Specific kinds of music

Under each subdivision identified by \* apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of 785.015–785.092, e.g., analytical guides to symphonies 785.110 15 (but do not use the extended meanings of 06 and its subdivisions). Use 08 for collections of writings about the subject; class collections of scores and parts in specific numbers provided, e.g., collections of symphonies 785.115

### SUMMARY

- 785.1      Symphonies and band music
- .2      Music for orchestra with incidental vocal parts
- .3      Miscellaneous music for orchestra
- .4      Music for small ensembles
- .5      Independent overtures for orchestra
- .6      Concertos
- .7      Chamber music
- .8      Suites for orchestra

#### .1      Symphonies and band music

Class orchestras, bands [*both formerly 785.1*] in 785.066–785.068

#### [.107]      Orchestra training and conducting

Class in 785.066–785.068

#### .11      \*Symphonies for orchestra

Scope: symphonies for salon orchestra [*formerly 785.46*], for string orchestra [*formerly 785.47*]

■

#### .115      Scores and parts

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

#### .115 2      Collections by more than one composer

#### .115 4      Single works and collections by single composers

\* Treat standard subdivisions as instructed under 785.1–785.8

## ***Music***

- 785.12      \*Band music**  
Symphonies, music with incidental vocal parts, overtures, suites, miscellaneous music  
Divide like 785.11, e.g., single works 785.125 4  
Class treatises on military band music [*formerly* 785.12] in 785.13  
*For concertos, see 785.6; dance music, 785.41; jazz, 785.42*
- .13          \*Military band music [*formerly* 785.12]**  
Marches and patriotic music
- [.132-.134]      Scores and parts**  
Class in 785.135
- .135          Scores and parts [*formerly* 785.132-785.134]**  
Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts  
Divide like 785.115, e.g., collections by more than one composer 785.135 2
- \*Music for orchestra with incidental vocal parts**  
Divide like 785.11, e.g., collections of orchestral music with voice parts by one composer 785.254
- \*Miscellaneous music for orchestra**  
Not provided for in 785.1-785.2, 785.4-785.8  
Scope: miscellaneous music for salon orchestra [*formerly* 785.46], for string orchestra [*formerly* 785.47]  
Use 785.300 1 - 785.300 9 for standard subdivisions
- .305          Scores and parts**  
Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts  
Divide like 785.115, e.g., collections of miscellaneous pieces by several composers 785.305 2
- .31          \*Serenades and other romantic music**  
Divide like 785.11, e.g., single works 785.315 4
- .32          \*Symphonic poems and other program music**  
Divide like 785.11, e.g., single works 785.325 4

<sup>1</sup> Treat standard subdivisions as instructed under 785.1-785.8

## *Decimal Classification*

- 785.34      \*Variations and other large works**  
Divide like 785.11, e.g., collections of scores by a single composer 785.345 4
- .4          Music for small ensembles**  
*For chamber music, see 785.7*
- .41        \*Dance music**  
Divide like 785.11, e.g., collections of dance music arrangements for orchestra by more than one composer 785.415 2  
Class dance orchestra [*formerly 785.41*] in 785.066 6  
*For jazz, see 785.42; music for rhythm and percussion bands, 785.43*
- .42        \*Jazz**  
Divide like 785.11, e.g., single works 785.425 4  
Class jazz orchestra in 785.066 7, jazz band in 785.067 2 [*both formerly 785.42*]
- .43        \*Music for rhythm and percussion bands**  
Divide like 785.11, e.g., single works 785.435 4  
Class rhythm and percussion bands [*both formerly 785.43*] in 785.067 5
- [.46]      Salon orchestra and its music**  
Class salon orchestra in 785.066 2, symphonies for salon orchestra in 785.11, miscellaneous music in 785.3, overtures in 785.5, suites in 785.8
- [.47]      String orchestra and its music**  
Class string orchestra in 785.066 3, symphonies for string orchestra in 785.11, miscellaneous music in 785.3, overtures in 785.5, suites in 785.8
- .5          \*Independent overtures for orchestra**  
Scope: overtures for salon orchestra [*formerly 785.46*], for string orchestra [*formerly 785.47*]  
Divide like 785.11, e.g., single works 785.554
- \* Treat standard subdivisions as instructed under 785.1–785.8**

**785.6      \*Concertos**

One or more solo instruments with orchestra or band

Scope: concerti grossi

*For music for organ, piano, orchestra, see 786.89*

**.66-.69      Scores and parts**

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

Divide like 786-789, e.g., violin concertos 785.671; then add 0 and divide further like 785.115, e.g., collections of violin concertos by two or more composers 785.671 02

Class compositions with more than one solo instrument by following the table of precedence of mediums under 784-789, e.g., concertos for flute and violin 785.671

**.7            \*Chamber music**

Compositions for two or more different solo instruments

Use 785.700 1 - 785.700 9 for standard subdivisions

*For music for organ and piano, see 786.88*

**.702-.709      Treatises on music for groups of specific sizes**

Divide like 785.72-785.79, e.g., treatises on duets for flute and piano 785.702 851

► **785.71-785.79 Scores and parts**

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

**.71            Collections of music for groups of various sizes**

► **785.72-785.79 Music for groups of specific sizes**

Collections and single works

**.72            Duets**

Divide like 786-789, following the table of precedence of mediums under 784-789, e.g., duets for flute and piano 785.728 51

**.73            Trios**

Divide like 786-789, following the table of precedence of mediums under 784-789, e.g., trios for violin, flute, harp 785.737 1

\* Treat standard subdivisions as instructed under 785.1-785.8



## *Decimal Classification*

- 785.74      **Quartets**  
Divide like 786–789, following the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., string quartets 785.747 1
- .75      **Quintets**  
Divide like 786–789, following the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., quintets for clarinet and strings 785.757 1
- .76      **Sextets**  
Divide like 786–789, following the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., string sextets 785.767 1
- .77      **Septets**  
Divide like 786–789, following the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., brass septets with trumpet 785.778 1
- .78      **Octets**  
Divide like 786–789, following the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., octets including violin 785.787 1
- .79      **Nonets and larger combinations**  
Divide like 786–789, following the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., combinations with violin 785.797 1
- .8      **Suites for orchestra**  
Scope: suites for salon orchestra [*formerly* 785.46], for string orchestra [*formerly* 785.47]  
Divide like 785.11, e.g., single works 785.854

## **786      Keyboard instruments and their music**

*For celesta, see 789.6*

### **SUMMARY**

- 786.1      **Keyboard string instruments and their music**
- .2      **Keyboard string instruments**
- .3      **Training in and performance on keyboard string instruments**
- .4      **Music for keyboard string instruments**
- .5      **Keyboard wind instruments and their music**
- .6      **Organ**
- .7      **Training in and performance on keyboard wind instruments**
- .8      **Music for keyboard wind instruments**
- .9      **Other keyboard instruments**

- 
- 786.1      **Keyboard string instruments and their music**  
             *For instruments, see 786.2; training and performance, 786.3; music, 786.4*
- .101 5      **Appreciation**  
                     Analytical guides and program notes
- .102 8      **Composition**  
                     Including accompaniment, embellishment  
                     Class performance in 786.3
- 102 84      **Arrangement**
- 107      **Performances**  
                     Concerts and recitals  
                     Class instruction and study in 786.3
- 107 3      **Programs**  
                     Add area notations 1-9 to 786.107 3  
                     Class program notes in 786.101 5
- .108      **Collections of writings on the subject**  
                     Class collections of scores and parts in 786.4
- .109      **Historical and geographical treatment**
- .109 2      **Musicians**  
                     Composers and performers
- .2      **Keyboard string instruments**  
                     786.21-786.22 Specific kinds  
                     *For player piano, see 789.72; design, hand construction, care, tuning, repairing, 786.23*
- .21      **Pianoforte (Piano)**  
                     *For early forms, see 786.223*
- .22      **Other instruments**
- .221      Harpsichord, spinet, virginal
- .222      Clavichord
- .223      Forerunners and early forms of pianoforte

## Decimal Classification

- 786.23 Design, hand construction, care, tuning, repairing
- .3 Training in and performance on keyboard string instruments  
Scope: keyboard harmony [*formerly* 781.3], accompaniment
- .31 Hand
- .32 Touch
- .33 Studies and exercises in scales
- .34 Studies and exercises in octaves, chords, arpeggios
- .35 Studies and exercises in pedal
- 786.36–786.38 Graded instruction
- .36 Elementary
- .37 Intermediate
- .38 Advanced
- .4 Music for keyboard string instruments  
Class instructive editions in 786.3
- .405 Scores and parts  
Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts  
Divide like 785.115, e.g., collections for harpsichord by more than one composer 786.405 2
- 786.41–786.49 Specific forms  
Divide each subdivision identified by \* like 785.11, e.g., single piano sonata 786.415 4
- .41 \*Sonatas, sonatinas, rondos
- .42 \*Fantasias, fugues, rhapsodies, arabesques
- .43 \*Romantic and descriptive music  
Nocturnes, meditations, ballads, songs without words
- \* Divide as instructed under 786.41–786.49

- 786.44–786.46 Dances
- 786.44 \*Marches, polonaises, polkas, mazurkas
- .45 \*Other dance forms  
National, classic, idealized; dance suites, square dance music
- .46 \*Modern dance music  
Ballroom dance music, jazz music
- .47 \*Artistic études
- .48 \*Variations and suites
- .49 Music for more than one performer  
Not provided for in 786.41–786.48
- .495 Scores and parts  
Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
- .495 6 One piano, two or more performers
- .495 7 Two pianos, two or more performers
- .495 8 Three or more pianos, three or more performers
- .5 Keyboard wind instruments and their music  
Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of  
786.101 5 – 786.109 2, e.g., composition 786.502 8  
*For a specific instrument, see the subject, e.g., organ 786.6;  
training and performance, 786.7; music, 786.8*
- .6 Organ  
*For electronic organ, see 786.92; reed organ, 786.94*
- [.609] Historical and geographical treatment  
Do not use; class in 786.62
- .62 Historical and geographical treatment  
Add area notations 1–9 to 786.62
- .63 Design, hand construction, care, tuning, repairing

\* Divide as instructed under 786.41–786.49

## *Decimal Classification*

- 786.7 Training in and performance on keyboard wind instruments**  
Scope: keyboard harmony [*formerly 781.3*], accompaniment  
*For accordion and concertina, see 786.97*
- .73 Studies and exercises**  
*For graded instruction, see 786.76–786.78*
- 786.76–786.78 Graded instruction**
- .76 Elementary**
- .77 Intermediate**
- .78 Advanst**
- .8 Music for keyboard wind instruments**  
Class instructive editions in **786.7**  
*For accordion and concertina, see 786.97*
- .805 Scores and parts**  
Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts  
Divide like **785.115**, e.g., arrangements for organ by one composer **786.805 4**
- 786.81–786.89 Specific forms**  
Divide each subdivision identified by \* like **785.11**, e.g., single organ sonata **786.815 4**
- .81 \*Sonatas, sonatinas, similar works**
- .82 \*Fugues, preludes and fugues, toccatas**  
*For preludes, see 786.83*
- .83 \*Preludes**
- .84 \*Interludes**
- .85 \*Postludes**
- .86 \*Offertories**
- .87 \*Voluntaries and improvisations**
- .88 \*Music for organ and piano**
- .89 \*Music for organ, piano, orchestra**

\* Divide as instructed under **786.81–786.89**

## *Music*

### **786.9 Other keyboard instruments**

#### **.92 Electronic organ**

Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of  
786.101 5 – 786.109 2, e.g., programs 786.920 73

Class training and performance in 786.7, music in 786.8

#### **.923 Design, hand construction, care, tuning, repairing**

#### **.94 Reed organ**

Harmonium, melodeon, cabinet organ

Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of  
786.101 5 – 786.109 2, e.g., programs 786.940 73

Class training and performance in 786.7, music in 786.8

#### **.943 Design, hand construction, care, tuning, repairing**

#### **.97 Accordion and concertina and their music**

### **► 787–789 Other instruments and their music**

Divide each subdivision identified by \* like 787.1, e.g., flute  
programs 788.510 739

### **787 String instruments and their music**

#### **.01 \*Bowed instruments and their music [formerly 787.1]**

Class specific instruments in 787.1–787.4

#### **.05 \*Plectral instruments and their music [formerly 787.5]**

Class specific instruments in 787.5–787.9

#### **787.1–787.4 Specific bowed instruments and their music**

Class comprehensive works in 787.01

#### **.1 Violin**

Class comprehensive works on bowed instruments and their music  
[formerly 787.1] in 787.01

#### **.101 5 Appreciation**

Analytical guides and program notes

\* Divide as instructed under 787–789

## *Decimal Classification*

- 787.102 8           Composition  
                    Including accompaniment, embellishment  
                    Class performance in 787.107 14
- .102 84           Arrangement
- .107           Educational aspects and performance
- .107 1           Training and performance
- .107 12           Training  
                    Class instructive editions of scores and parts in  
                    787.151
- .107 14           Performance  
                    Execution, interpretation, expression
- .107 3           Concerts and recitals
- .107 39           Programs  
                    Add area notations 1–9 to 787.107 39  
                    Class program notes in 787.101 5
- .108           Collections of writings about the subject  
                    Class collections of scores and parts in 787.15
- [.108 1]           Criticism and appraisal of musicians  
                    Class in 787.109 2
- .109           Historical and geographical treatment
- .109 2           Musicians  
                    Composers and performers  
                    Including criticism, appraisal [*both formerly 787.108 1*]
- .12           Instruments  
                    Design, hand construction, care, tuning, repairing

**787.15 Music**

► **787.151–787.154 Scores and parts**

Scope: arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.151 Instructive editions

.152 Collections by more than one composer

Divide like 787.154, e.g., collections of accompanied solos  
787.152 2

.154 Single works and collections by single composers

.154 1 Solo, unaccompanied

.154 2 Solo, accompanied

Class chamber music in 785.7

.154 3 Two or more violins, unaccompanied

.154 4 Two or more violins, accompanied

Class chamber music in 785.7

.2 \*Viola

.3 \*Violoncello

.4 Other bowed string instruments

.41 \*Double bass

.42 \*Viols and vielle

► **787.5–787.9 Specific plectral instruments and their music**

Class comprehensive works in 787.05

.5 \*Harp

Class comprehensive works on plectral instruments and their music  
[formerly 787.5] in 787.05

.6 Guitar, mandolin, lute

.61 \*Guitar

For banjo, see 787.7; ukulele, 787.92

\* Divide as instructed under 787–789



## *Decimal Classification*

---

787.65      **\*Mandolin**

.67      **\*Lute**

*For mandolin, see 787.65*

.7      **\*Banjo**

.8      **\*Zither**

.9      **Other plectral instruments**

*Including hurdy-gurdy, dulcimer, psaltery*

.92      **\*Ukulele**

## **788      Wind instruments and their music**

.01      **\*Brass instruments and their music** [*formerly 788.1*]

*Class specific instruments in 788.1–788.4*

.05      **\*Woodwind instruments and their music** [*formerly 788.5*]

*Class specific instruments in 788.5–788.9*

.056      **\*Reed** [*formerly 788.6*]

### **788.1–788.4 Specific brass instruments and their music**

*Class comprehensive works in 788.01*

.1      **\*Trumpet, cornet, bugle**

*Class comprehensive works on brass instruments and their music  
[formerly 788.1] in 788.01*

.2      **\*Trombone**

.4      **Horns and other brass wind instruments**

.41      **\*French horn and hunting horn**

.42      **\*Saxhorn**

.44      **\*Baritone and euphonium**

.45      **\*Ophicleide, key bugle**

.48      **\*Bass horns**

*Tuba, helicon, sousaphone, serpent*

**\* Divide as instructed under 787–789**

## *Music*

788.49

Other

Including alpenhorn

### **788.5–788.9 Specific woodwind instruments and their music**

Class comprehensive works in **788.05**

#### **.5 Flute group**

Wind instruments with mouth hole

Including ocarina

Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of **787.101 5 – 787.109 2**, e.g., performance **788.507 14**

Class comprehensive works on woodwind instruments and their music [*formerly 788.5*] in **788.05**

.51 \*Flute, piccolo, fife

.53 \*Recorder and flageolet

### **788.6–788.9 Specific reed instruments and their music**

Class comprehensive works in **788.056**

#### **.6 Single-reed instruments**

Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of **787.101 5 – 787.109 2**, e.g., appreciation **788.601 5**

Class comprehensive works on reed instruments and their music [*formerly 788.6*] in **788.056**

.62 \*Clarinet and basset horn

.66 \*Saxophone

#### **► 788.7–788.8 Double-reed instruments**

.7 \*Oboe and English horn

.8 \*Bassoon and heckelphone

.9 Other reed instruments

Including jew's harp [*formerly 789.69*], bagpipe, harmonica (mouth organ)

' Divide as instructed under **787–789**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **789 Percussion, mechanical, electrical instruments**

**.01 \*Percussion instruments and their music [*formerly* 789.1]**

Class specific instruments in **789.1–789.6**

**789.1–789.6 Specific percussion instruments and their music**

Class comprehensive works in **789.01**

**.1 \*Membranophones**

Timpano (kettledrum), drum, tambourine, tom-tom

Class comprehensive works on percussion instruments and their music [*formerly* 789.1] in **789.01**

**.2 \*Cymbals**

**.3 \*Triangle**

**.4 Other percussion instruments of indefinite pitch**

Castanets, maracas, gong, rattle, anvil

**.5 \*Bells, carillons, chimes**

**.6 Other percussion instruments of definite pitch**

Including harmonica (musical glasses), glockenspiel, marimba, xylophone, vibraphone, celesta

**.69 Unsophisticated instruments**

Including musical saw, comb

Class jew's harp [*formerly* 789.69] in **788.9**

► **789.7–789.9 Mechanical and electrical reproduction of music**

**.7 Mechanical instruments and devices**

*For music box, see 789.8*

**.71 Barrel organ**

Hand organ, street organ, street piano

**.72 Reproducing and player pianos and orchestration**

· Divide as instructed under **787–789**

## *Music*

### **789.8 Music box**

#### **.9 Electronic musical instruments and music recording**

Including emicon, theremin, trautionium

Class modifications or imitations of a standard instrument with its prototype

#### **.91 Music recording**

Recording on and playing from phonorecords (cylinders, discs, wires, tapes, films)

#### **.911 Mechanical and electronic reproducers**

#### **.912 Recordings**

*For catalogs and lists of recordings, see 789.913*

#### **.913 Catalogs, lists, critical appraisal of recordings**

##### **.913 1 General lists**

789.913 2 – 789.913 6 Special lists and catalogs

##### **.913 2 Of individual composers**

Not clearly identified with any specific form, kind, medium

##### **.913 6 Of specific forms, kinds, mediums**

Scope: individual performers

Divide like 781–789, e.g., catalogs of recordings of violin music 789.913 671, of dance music in several mediums 789.913 615 5

##### **.913 7 General catalogs**

##### **.913 71 Of libraries**

##### **.913 72 Of private collections**

##### **.913 74 Of manufacturers and dealers**

#### **.98 Concrete music (Musique concrète)**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **790 Recreation (Recreational arts)**

Materials, equipment, techniques

#### 790.01–790.09 Standard subdivisions

- .01 Philosophy, theory, programs
- .013 Value, influence, effect
  - .013 2 Psychological aspects of recreation
  - .013 5 Effective use of leisure
- .019 Recreation for specific classes
  - Scope: recreational programs
  - Class psychological aspects in 790.013 2
- .019 1 Families
- .019 2 Specific age groups
  - Including young adults, mature adults
  - For recreation for groups by sex, see 790.019 4; for invalids, convalescents, persons with handicaps, 790.019 6*
- .019 22 Children
- .019 26 Senior citizens
- .019 4 Groups by sex
  - Boys, men, girls, women
  - For recreation for invalids, convalescents, persons with handicaps, see 790.019 6*
- .019 6 Invalids, convalescents, persons with handicaps
- .02 Miscellany
- .023 Hobbies
  - .023 2 Collecting
- .03–.05 Dictionaries, serial publications
- .06 Organizations
- .068 Recreation centers
  - Including use of community centers for recreational purposes
  - Class day camps in 796.542 3
- .07–.09 Other standard subdivisions

## Recreation

### 790.2 The performing arts

Including comprehensive works on stage, motion pictures, radio, television [*formerly 791.4*]

*For music, see 780*

.201-.209 Standard subdivisions

### 791 Public entertainment

.068 Amusement parks

Add area notations 1-9 to 791.068

#### SUMMARY

- 791.1 Traveling shows
- .3 Circuses
- .4 Motion pictures, radio, television
- .5 Miniature, toy, shadow theaters
- .6 Pageantry
- .8 Animal performances

.1 Traveling shows

Including medicine shows

*For circuses, see 791.3*

.12 Minstrel shows and skits

.3 Circuses

► 791.32-791.38 Specific elements of circus performance

.32 Animal performances

.33 Clowns

.34 Acrobatics and trapeze work

.35 Freaks and sideshows

.38 Parades

.39 Amateur circuses

*For specific elements of circus performance, see 791.32-791.38*

## *Decimal Classification*

- 791.4      Motion pictures, radio, television**  
Class comprehensive works on stage, motion pictures, radio, television [*formerly 791.4*] in 790.2
- .43          Motion pictures**  
Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of 792.01–792.09, e.g., make-up for motion pictures 791.430 27  
Class comprehensive works on motion-picture communication [*formerly 791.43*] in 384.8
- [.432]      Script writing**  
Class in 808.066
- .437          Specific films**  
Including production scripts  
Arrange alphabetically by title of film  
*For catalogs and lists of films, see 791.438*
- .438          Catalogs and lists of films**
- .44          Radio**  
Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of 792.01–792.09, e.g., influence of radio 791.440 13  
Class comprehensive works on radiobroadcasting [*formerly 791.44*] in 384.54
- [.442]      Script writing**  
Class in 808.066
- .443          Methods of presentation**  
Live or recorded, network production, announcing, place of commercials
- .447          Specific programs**  
Including production scripts  
Arrange alphabetically by name of program

## *Recreation*

### 791.45      **Television**

Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of  
792.01-792.09, e.g., scenery and lighting for television  
791.450 25

Class comprehensive works on television broadcasting  
[formerly 791.45] in 384.554

### [.452]      **Script writing**

Class in 808.066

### .453      **Methods of presentation**

Live or filmed, color, network production, announcing, place  
of commercials

### .457      **Specific programs**

Including production scripts

Arrange alphabetically by name of program

### .5      **Miniature, toy, shadow theaters**

### .53      **Puppetry**

Operation of marionettes and puppets, producing and staging  
puppet plays

Class making puppets and marionettes [*both formerly 791.53*]  
in 745.592 2

### .538      **Production scripts of puppet plays**

### .6      **Pageantry**

Processions, festivals, illuminations, parades, floats for parades

*For water pageantry, see 797.203; circus parades, 791.38*

### .62      **Pageants**

Scope: school pageants [*formerly 371.895*]

Class plays in 800

### .622      **Religious pageants**

### .624      **Historical and patriotic pageants**



## *Decimal Classification*

### **791.8      Animal performances**

Including cockfighting, rodeos

*For circus animal performances, see 791.32; equestrian sports and animal racing, 798*

### **.82          Bullfighting**

## **792      Theater ( Stage presentations )**

*For miniature, toy, shadow theaters, see 791.5*

### **.01          Philosophy and esthetics**

### **.013        Value, influence, effect**

### **.015        Criticism and appreciation**

Theory and technique

### **.02          Handbooks, techniques, apparatus, miscellany**

792.022–792.028 Handbooks, techniques, apparatus

Scope: school dramatics [*formerly 371.895*], private theatricals [*formerly 793.1*], amateur theatricals

Class miscellany in 792.029

### **.022        Types of stage presentations**

Including municipal theater, showboats

### **.022 2      Amateur theater**

### **.022 3      Little theater movement**

### **.022 4      Summer theater**

### **.022 6      Children's theater**

### **.022 8      Arena theater (Theater in the round)**

### **.023        Supervision**

### **.023 2      Production**

### **.023 3      Direction**

### **.023 6      Programing**

### **.025        Setting**

Scenery, lighting

### **.026        Costuming**

## *Recreation*

---

- 792.027      **Make-up**
- .028      **Acting**  
                Impersonation, improvisation, use of expression and  
                gestures, stage fright
- .029      **Miscellany**
- .029 07      Humorous treatment
- .029 08      Audio-visual treatment
- .029 1-.029 7      Miscellaneous works  
                Divide like standard subdivisions 021-027, e.g., stage as  
                a profession 792.029 3
- .029 9      **Commercial miscellany**  
                House organs, prospectuses, price lists, trade catalogs
- .09      **Historical and geographical treatment**  
                Scope: description, critical appraisal of specific theaters,  
                companies, performances
- .090 9      **Special aspects**  
                Divide like 808.801-808.803, e.g., naturalism in the  
                theater 792.090 912
- .091-.099      **Geographical treatment and persons**

### **792.1-792.8 Specific kinds of dramatic performance**

Under each subdivision identified by \* apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of 792.01-792.09, e.g., acting in pantomime 792.302 8

*For specific productions, see 792.9*

- .1      **\*Tragedy and serious drama**  
                Including historical, Passion, morality, miracle plays
- .2      **\*Comedy and melodrama**  
                Class vaudeville [*formerly 792.2*] in 792.7
- .3      **\*Pantomime**

\* Treat standard subdivisions as instructed under 792.1-792.8

## *Decimal Classification*

- 792.7      \*Vaudeville [formerly 792.2], music hall, variety, cabaret,  
                 night club presentations**
- .8          \*Ballet**
- .809          Historical and geographical treatment**  
                 Class specific performances in **792.84**
- .82          Ballet dancing**  
                 Including choreography
- .84          Specific ballets**  
                 Including collections of stories, plots, analyses of ballets by  
                 more than one composer [*all formerly also 782.08*]; stories,  
                 plots, analyses of ballets by single composers, librettos, stage  
                 guides [*all formerly also 782.95*]
- .9          Specific productions**  
                 Including production scripts (stage guides)  
                 *For specific ballets, see 792.84*
- 793      Indoor games and amusements**  
                 *For indoor games of skill, see 794; games of chance, 795*
- .019          For specific classes**  
                 Divide like **790.019**, e.g., indoor games and amusements for  
                 children **793.019 22**
- [.1]      Private theatricals**  
                 Class in **792.022–792.028**
- .2          Parties and entertainments**
- .21          Children's parties**
- .22          Seasonal parties**  
                 *For children's parties, see 793.21*
- .24          Charades and tableaux**

\* Treat standard subdivisions as instructed under **792.1–792.8**

## *Recreation*

### **793.3 Dancing**

.31 Folk and national dances

[.310 9] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in **793.319**

.319 Historical and geographical treatment

Add area notations 1-9 to **793.319**

.32 Theatrical dancing

*For ballet dancing, see 792.82*

.324 Tap and clog dancing

.33 Ballroom dancing (Round dances)

.34 Square dancing

.35 Dances with accessory features

Sword dance, cotillions, germanes

.38 Balls

.4 Games of action

.5 Forfeit and trick games

.7 Games not characterized by action

*For charades and tableaux, see 793.24*

.73 Puzzles and puzzle games

Including quizzes, literary games, anagrams, acrostics

*For mathematical games and recreations, see 793.74*

.732 Crossword puzzles

.735 Riddles

.74 Mathematical games and recreations

.8 Magic

Scientific recreations, conjuring, juggling, ventriloquism

*For card tricks, see 795.438*

.9 Other indoor diversions

Class paper cutting and folding [*formerly 793.9*] in **736.98**

## Decimal Classification

### 794 Indoor games of skill

*For card games based chiefly on skill, see 795.41*

#### .1 Chess

#### .12 Strategy and tactics

Combinations, sacrifices, traps, pitfalls, attack, counterattack, defense

#### .122 Openings

#### .123 Middle games

#### .124 End games

#### .14 Individual chessmen

Position, moves, power, value

#### .142 Pawns

#### .143 Rooks (Castles)

#### .144 Knights

#### .145 Bishops

#### .146 Queen

#### .147 King

#### .15 Collections of games

#### .152 Master matches

*For matches by individual players, see 794.159*

#### .157 Tournaments and championships

*For tournaments and championship games by individual players, see 794.159*

#### .159 Games, matches, tournaments, championships by individual players

#### .17 Special forms of chess

Blind play, simultaneous play, living chess; automaton, mechanical, electronic chess players

#### .18 Variants of chess

Chinese (chong-kie), Japanese (hogi), three-dimensional

- 794.2      Checkers and similar games**
- .6        Bowling**
- .7        Ball games**
  - Class table tennis [*formerly 794.7*] in **796.346**
  - For bowling, see 794.6; athletic games, 796*
- .72       Billiards**
- .73       Pool**
- 795        Games of chance**
- .01       Theory**
  - Gambling and betting systems, probabilities of winning
- .1        Backgammon, craps, other games with dice**
- .2        Roulette and other wheel and top games**
- .3        Games dependent on drawing numbers or counters**
  - Including dominoes, mah-jongg
- .4        Card games**
- .41       Games based chiefly on skill**
- .412       Poker**
- .413       Whist and bridge whist**
- .414       Auction bridge**
- .415       Contract bridge**
- .415 2       Bidding**
- .415 3       Play of the hand**
- .415 4       Scoring systems**
- .415 8       Collections of games and matches**
- .416       Pinochle**
- .418       Rummy and its variants**
  - Including canasta, samba, bolivia
- .42       Games based chiefly on chance**
  - Baccarat, faro, twenty-one (blackjack)**

## Decimal Classification

795.43 Games and recreations based on position and skill  
Including solitaire, patience

.438 Card tricks

## 796 Athletic and outdoor sports and games

Scope: intramural [*formerly* 371.74], interscholastic [*formerly* 371.75] athletics and games

*For aquatic and air sports, see 797; equestrian sports and animal racing, 798; fishing, hunting, shooting, 799*

.019 Sports for specific classes

Divide like 790.019, e.g., sports for girls 796.019 4

.068 Playgrounds

.077 Coaching

### SUMMARY

- 796.1 Miscellaneous games
- .2 Active games requiring use of equipment
- .3 Ball games
- .4 Athletic exercises and gymnastics
- .5 Outdoor life
- .6 Cycling
- .7 Driving motor vehicles
- .8 Combat sports
- .9 Ice and snow sports

.1 Miscellaneous games

.13 Singing and dancing games

.14 Active games

Leapfrog, hide and seek, puss in corner, prisoner's base

*For active games requiring equipment, see 796.2*

.15 Play with kites and similar toys

.2 Active games requiring equipment

*For ball games, see 796.3*

.21 Roller skating

.24 Pitching games

Quoits, horseshoes

## Recreation

### 796.3 Ball games

#### SUMMARY

- 796.31 Ball thrown or hit by hand
- .32 Inflated ball thrown or hit by hand
- .33 Inflated ball driven by foot
- .34 Racket games
- .35 Ball driven by club, mallet, bat
- .31 Ball thrown or hit by hand
  - Handball, lawn bowling
- .32 Inflated ball thrown or hit by hand
  - Including net ball
- .323 Basketball
  - Apply to the standard subdivisions the *enumeration* in 796.332 020 2 – 796.332 077, e.g., basketball courts 796.323 068
  - .323 2 Strategy and tactics
    - Defensive and offensive play
  - .323 3 Refereeing
  - .323 6 Specific types of basketball
    - For specific games, see 796.323 7; strategy and tactics, 796.323 2*
    - .323 62 Precollege
    - .323 63 College
    - .323 64 Professional
  - .323 7 Specific games
    - .323 72 Intercollegiate games
    - .323 78 League games
  - .323 8 Variants
    - Including basketball for women
- .325 Volleyball



## Decimal Classification

---

- 796.33      Inflated ball driven by foot
  - Including pushball
- .332      American football
- .332 020 2      Handbooks and guides
- .332 020 22      Official rules
- .332 020 24      Spectators' guides
- .332 028      Equipment
  - Balls, goal posts, safety equipment
  - Class technique in 796.332 2
- .332 06      Organizations and facilities
  - Including clubs, leagues
- .332 068      Grounds
  - Layout of gridirons
- .332 07      Study and teaching
- .332 077      Coaching
- .332 2      Strategy and tactics
  - Defensive and offensive play
- .332 22      Formations
  - T, split-T, spread, single-wing back formations
- .332 23      Line play
- .332 24      Backfield play
- .332 25      Passing
- .332 26      Blocking and tackling
- .332 27      Kicking
- .332 3      Refereeing and umpiring
- .332 6      Specific types of American football
  - Including night football
  - For specific games, see 796.332 7; strategy and tactics, 796.332 2*
- .332 62      Precollege
- .332 63      College

## *Recreation*

---

- 796.332 64 Professional
- .332 7 Specific games
- .332 72 Intercollegiate games
  - Including "bowl" games
- .332 78 League games
- .332 8 Variants
  - Football for women, six-man football, touch football
- .333 Rugby
  - Union and League
  - Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of  
796.332 020 2 – 796.332 077, e.g., official rules  
796.333 020 22
- .333 2 Strategy and tactics
  - Defensive and offensive play
- .333 23 Forward play
  - Including scrummaging, line-outs
- .333 24 Halfback play
- .333 25 Three-quarter play
- .333 26 Back play
- .333 3 Refereeing and umpiring
- .333 6 Specific types of rugby
  - For specific games, see 796.333 7; strategy and tactics,  
796.333 2*
- .333 62 Club
  - Including college and university
- .333 63 County
- .333 65 International
- .333 7 Specific games
- .333 72 Club
  - Including college and university
- .333 73 County

*Decimal Classification*

---

- 796.333 74      Tours
- .333 75      International
- .333 8      Variants
- .334      Soccer (Association football)
- Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of  
                796.332 020 2 – 796.332 077, e.g., equipment 796.334 028
- .334 2      Strategy and tactics
- Defensive and offensive play
- .334 22      Formations
- .334 23      Forward play
- .334 24      Halfback play
- .334 25      Back play
- .334 26      Goalkeeping
- .334 3      Refereeing and umpiring
- .334 6      Specific types of soccer
- For specific games, see 796.334 7; strategy and tactics,  
                796.334 2
- .334 62      Amateur
- .334 63      League
- .334 64      Cup competition
- For World Cup competition, see 796.334 66
- .334 66      International
- Including World Cup competition
- .334 7      Specific games
- Divide like 796.334 6, e.g., international games  
                796.334 76
- .334 8      Variants
- .335      Canadian football
- Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of  
                796.332 020 2 – 796.332 077, e.g. coaching 796.335 077
- .335 2      Strategy and tactics
- Defensive and offensive play

## *Recreation*

- 796.335 3 Refereeing and umpiring  
.335 6 Specific types of Canadian football  
*For specific games, see 796.335 7; strategy and tactics, 796.335 2*
- .335 7 Specific games  
.335 8 Variants
- .34 Racket games  
Including court tennis, paddle tennis
- .342 Tennis (Lawn tennis)  
Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of 796.332 020 2 – 796.332.077, e.g., layout of tennis courts 796.342 068
- .342 2 Strategy and tactics  
Defensive and offensive play for men and women
- .342 21 Service  
.342 22 Forehand  
.342 23 Backhand  
.342 27 Singles  
.342 28 Doubles  
.342 3 Refereeing
- .343 Rackets and squash  
.345 Badminton  
.346 Table tennis [*formerly 794.7*]  
.347 Lacrosse
- .35 Ball driven by club, mallet, bat

## **SUMMARY**

796.352	Golf
.353	Polo
.354	Croquet
.355	Field hockey
.357	Baseball
.358	Cricket

## *Decimal Classification*

- 796.352      **Golf**  
    Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of  
    796.332 020 2 – 796.332 077, e.g., official rules  
    796.342 020 22
- .352 2      **Variants**  
        Including miniature golf
- .352 3      **Tactics of play**  
        For men and women  
        Scope: grip, swing, adaptation to specific golf courses
- .352 32      **Play with woods**
- .352 33      **Play with distance irons**
- .352 34      **Play with chipping or pitching irons**
- .352 35      **Putting**
- .352 4      **Refereeing**
- .352 6      **Specific types of golf**  
        *For specific games and matches, see 796.352 7; tactics of  
        play, 796.352 3*
- .352 62      **Amateur**
- .352 64      **Professional**
- .352 7      **Specific games and matches**
- .352 72      **Amateur**
- .352 73      **Open**
- .352 74      **Professional**
- .353      **Polo**
- .354      **Croquet**
- .355      **Field hockey**

## *Recreation*

796.357

### Baseball

Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of  
796.332 020 2 – 796.332 077, e.g., baseball leagues 796.357 06

357 2

#### Strategy and tactics

Defensive and offensive play

357 22

Pitching

357 23

Catching

357 24

Infield play

357 25

Outfield play

357 26

Batting

357 27

Base running

.357 3

#### Umpiring

.357 6

#### Specific types of baseball

Including night baseball

*For specific games, see 796.357 7; strategy and tactics,  
796.357 2*

.357 62

#### Precollege

Including sandlot baseball

.357 63

#### College

.357 64

#### Professional and semiprofessional

.357 7

#### Specific games

.357 72

Intercollegiate games

.357 78

League games

.357 782

World Series games

.357 8

#### Variants

Softball, baseball for girls and women, indoor baseball,  
one old cat

## *Decimal Classification*

- 796.358      **Cricket**  
Apply to the standard subdivisions the extended meanings of  
796.332 020 2 – 796.332 077, e.g., equipment 796.358 028
- .358 2      **Strategy and tactics**  
Defensive and offensive play
- .358 22      **Bowling**
- .358 23      **Fielding**
- .358 24      **Wicket-keeping**
- .358 26      **Batting**
- .358 3      **Umpiring**
- .358 6      **Specific types of cricket**  
*For specific matches, see 796.358 7; strategy and tactics,  
796.358 2*
- .358 62      **Amateur**  
Including school, college and university
- .358 63      **County**
- .358 65      **International**
- .358 7      **Specific matches**  
Divide like 796.358 6, e.g., international matches  
796.358 75
- .358 8      **Variants**  
Including single-wicket cricket
- .4      **Athletic exercises and gymnastics**
- .406 8      **Gymnasiums and stadiums**
- .407 7      **Coaching**
- .41      **Calisthenics**  
Gymnastics, setting-up exercises, lifting with dumbbells and  
weights
- .42      **Track and field athletics**  
*For jumping, vaulting, throwing, see 796.43*
- .420 68      **Athletic fields**

796.426 Running, sprinting, hurdling  
.43 Jumping, vaulting, throwing  
.435 Throwing  
Shot-putting, discus throwing, javelin hurling  
*For pitching games, see 796.24*  
.44 Horizontal and parallel bars  
.46 Trapeze work, rope climbing, wire walking  
.47 Acrobatics, tumbling, trampolining, contortion  
.48 Olympic games  
.5 Outdoor life  
.51 Walking  
*For walking in specific kinds of terrain, see 796.52*  
.52 Walking and exploring in specific kinds of terrain  
.522 Mountains (Alpinism), hills, rocks  
.525 Caves (Spelunking)  
.54 Camping  
.542 Kinds of camps  
.542 2 Institutional  
School, church, YMCA, YWCA, scouts  
*For day camps, see 796.542 3*  
.542 3 Day  
.545 Activities  
Woodcraft, campfires, games  
.56 Dude ranching and farming  
.6 Cycling  
Use of wheeled vehicles driven by manpower  
Including bicycle, soapbox racing  
.7 Driving motor vehicles  

---

796.72-796.76 Racing  
.72 Automobile



## *Decimal Classification*

---

796.75      Motorcycle and motor scooter

.76      Midget car (Karting)

---

►                      796.77–796.79 Driving for pleasure

.77      Sports car

.78      Family car

.79      Trailer travel

### **.8      Combat sports**

Class combat with animals in 791.8

.81      Unarmed combat

.812      Wrestling

.812 2      Continental (Greco-Roman) wrestling

.812 3      Free-style (Catch-as-catch-can) wrestling

.812 5      Sumo (Japanese wrestling)

.815      Jujitsus

.815 01      Kuatsu (Restoration of life)

.815 2      Judo

.815 3      Karate

.815 4      Aikido

.815 9      Other forms

Including kenpo, kung fu, yarwara

.83      Boxing

.86      Fencing

### **.9      Ice and snow sports**

*For ice fishing, see 799.12*

.91      Ice skating

.92      Snowshoeing

.93      Skiing

.95      Tobogganing and coasting

## Recreation

---

796.96      Ice games  
             Including curling

.962        Ice hockey

.97         Iceboating

### 797      Aquatic and air sports

---

#### ►                      797.1–797.2 Aquatic sports

*For fishing, see 799.1*

#### .1      Boating

.12        With specific types of vessels

*For boat racing, see 797.14*

.122       Canoeing

.123       Rowboating

.124       Sailboating

             Including sailing wind-driven yachts [*formerly 797.14*]

.125       Motorboating

             Including sailing motor-driven yachts [*formerly 797.14*]

.14        Boat racing and regattas

             Class sailing wind-driven yachts in 797.124, motor-driven  
             yachts in 797.125 [*both formerly 797.14*]

.17        Minor methods of navigation

.172       Surf riding

.173       Water skiing

#### .2      Swimming and diving

             Use 797.200 1 – 797.200 9 for standard subdivisions

.203       Water pageantry

.21        Swimming

*For submarine swimming, see 797.23*

## *Decimal Classification*

797.23 Submarine swimming  
Skin diving, scuba diving  
Class springboard and precision diving [*formerly 797.23*] in  
797.24

.24 Springboard and precision diving [*formerly 797.23*]

.25 Water games  
Including water polo

.5 Air sports

797.52–797.54 Flying motor-driven aircraft

.52 Racing

.53 Flying for pleasure

.54 Stunt flying

.55 Gliding and soaring

.56 Parachuting (Skydiving)

798 Equestrian sports and animal racing

---

► 798.2–798.6 Equestrian sports

.2 Horsemanship

Class training horses for exhibition and riding [*formerly 798.2*] in  
636.108 88

*For horse racing, see 798.4*

.23 Riding

*For jumping, see 798.25*

[.230 74] Exhibitions

Do not use; class in 798.24

.24 Riding exhibitions

.25 Jumping

## ***Recreation***

### **798.4 Horse racing**

Use 798.400 1 – 798.400 9 for standard subdivisions

#### **.401 Betting [*formerly* 798.48]**

Including pari-mutuel

#### **.43 Flat racing**

Running (galloping), trotting, pacing

#### **.45 Steeplechasing and hurdling**

#### **.46 Harness racing**

#### **[.48] Betting**

Class in 798.401

#### **.6 Driving and coaching**

*For harness racing, see 798.46*

#### **.8 Racing animals other than horses**

### **799 Fishing, hunting, shooting**

Class wildlife conservation practices [*formerly* 799] in 639.9

#### **.1 Fishing**

##### **.11 Fresh-water fishing**

*For specific methods of fishing, see 799.12–799.14; fishing for specific kinds of fish, 799.17*

799.12–799.14 Specific methods of fishing

*For fishing for specific kinds of fish, see 799.17*

##### **.12 Angling**

Still fishing, fly casting, bait casting, spinning, trolling, ice fishing

##### **.13 Net fishing**

Including seining

##### **.14 Other methods of fishing**

Including spear fishing

## *Decimal Classification*

- 799.16      Salt-water fishing  
*For specific methods of fishing, see 799.12–799.14; fishing for specific kinds of fish, 799.17*
- [.160 916 6]      In specific bodies of water  
Do not use; class in 799.166
- .166      In specific bodies of water  
Divide like 551.461–551.469, e.g., fishing in Gulf of Mexico 799.166 3
- .17      Fishing for specific kinds of fish  
Divide like 597.2–597.5, e.g., trout fishing 799.175 5
- .2      **Hunting**
- .202 8      Techniques and equipment  
Selection, care, use of ballistic devices in hunting and shooting  
Including blowpipes, boomerangs, spears, bolas, lassos, slings, nets
- .202 83      Guns [*formerly* 799.21, 799.31]
- .202 832      Rifles
- .202 833      Pistols
- .202 834      Shotguns
- .202 85      Bows and arrows
- [.209]      Historical and geographical treatment  
Do not use; class in 799.29
- 799.21–799.23 Methods  
*For specific kinds of animals, see 799.24–799.27*
- .21      Shooting game  
Class selection, care, use of guns [*formerly* 799.21] in 799.202 83
- .213      With guns
- .215      With bows and arrows

## *Recreation*

- 799.23      Hunting with aid of animals
- .232      With falcons [*formerly* 799.25]
- .234      With dogs [*formerly also* 799.25]
- 799.24–799.27 Specific kinds of animals
- .24      Birds
- Class small game other than birds [*formerly* 799.24] in 799.25
- 799.242–799.244 Of specific habitats
- For specific kinds, see* 799.248
- .242      Land birds
- .243      Bay and shore birds
- .244      Waterfowl
- .248      Specific kinds
- Divide like 598.3–598.9, e.g., ducks 799.248 4
- .25      Small game other than birds [*formerly* 799.24]
- Class hunting with falcons in 799.232, with dogs in 799.234  
            [*both formerly* 799.25]
- .255–.259      Specific kinds [*formerly also* 799.27]
- Divide like 595–599, e.g., rabbits 799.259 322
- .26      Big game other than birds
- For specific kinds, see* 799.27
- .27      Specific kinds of big game other than birds
- Class specific kinds of small game other than birds [*formerly*  
            799.27] in 799.255–799.259
- .271–.278      Mammals
- Divide like 599.1–599.8, e.g., elephants 799.276 1
- .279      Other
- Divide like 595–598, e.g., crocodiles 799.279 814
- .29      Historical and geographical treatment
- Add area notations 1–9 to 799.29

*Decimal Classification*

**799.3      Shooting other than game**

*For selection, care, use of ballistic devices, see 799.202 8*

**.31      With guns**

*Class selection, care, use of guns [formerly 799.31] in  
799.202 83*

**.312      At stationary targets**

**.313      At moving targets**

*Trapshooting, skeet shooting*

**.32      With bows and arrows ( Archery )**

# 800

## 800 Literature (Belles-lettres) and rhetoric

**Scope:** literature itself, works about literature; school plays [*formerly 371.895*], anecdotes of the law [*formerly 340.9*]

Observe the following table of precedence for works combining two or more literary forms, e.g., English poetic drama **822**

Drama  
Poetry  
Fiction  
Essays  
Speeches  
Letters  
Satire and humor  
Miscellany

If preferred, give precedence to satire and humor over all other forms

### 801–807 Standard subdivisions of literature

Class collections and anthologies in **808.8**, history, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment in **809**

#### 801 Philosophy and theory

.3 Value, influence, effect

.9 Nature and character

.92 Psychology

Including literature as a product of creative imagination

.93 Esthetics



## *Decimal Classification*

- 801.95      **Criticism**  
              Theory, technique, history  
              Class works of critical appraisal in **809**
- .950 9      **Historical and geographical treatment**  
              Add area notations 1–9 to **801.950 9**
- 801.951–801.957 **Criticism of specific literary forms**  
              Observe table of precedence under **800**  
              *For textual criticism, see 801.959*
- .951      **Poetry**  
.952      **Drama**  
.953      **Fiction**  
.954      **Essays**  
.955      **Speeches**  
.956      **Letters**  
.957      **Satire and humor**
- .959      **Textual criticism**
- 802      Miscellany about literature**  
    **[.8]      Techniques**  
              Do not use; class in **808.001–808.709**
- 803      Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances**  
**[804]      Essays and lectures**  
              Class in **809**
- 805      Serial publications of and about literature**  
**806      Organizations**  
**807      Study and teaching**

**808 Rhetoric, collections, anthologies**

**808.001–808.709 Rhetoric (Composition)**

Techniques of oral and written communication for clarity and  
esthetic pleasure

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

808.02–808.06 General considerations

.02 Authorship and editorial techniques [*formerly* 029.6]

Preparation of manuscripts

Including preparation of theses [*formerly* 378.242], plagiarism

.023 Research

.025 Writing for publication

.04 Composition in specific languages

*For composition for specific purposes and types of readers, see*  
808.06

.042 In English

.042 01–.042 09 Standard subdivisions

.042 7 Study of composition thru critical reading

.042 75 Literature for learning composition

Collections and single works for critical reading

.043–.049 In other languages

Divide like 430–490, e.g., German composition 808.043;  
then divide further like 808.042, e.g., literature for learning  
German composition 808.043 75

.06 Composition for specific purposes and types of readers

.066 Professional, technical, expository

Including news and editorial writing [*both formerly* 070.43],  
business writing [*formerly* 651.74]; script writing for motion  
pictures [*formerly* 791.432], for radio [*formerly* 791.442],  
for television [*formerly* 791.452]; writing biography [*for-*  
*merly* 920.002]

If preferred, class techniques of writing on specific subjects  
in standard subdivision 014 9

Use 808.066 000 1 – 808.066 000 9 for standard subdivisions

Divide like 001–999, e.g., technical writing 808.066 6; then  
add 0 and divide further like 420–490, e.g., technical writ-  
ing in Spanish 808.066 606

## *Decimal Classification*

808.068 For children

.068 1-.068 7 Specific literary forms

Divide like 808.1-808.7, e.g., storytelling 808.068 543

.068 8 Expository writing

### **808.1-808.7 Specific literary forms**

Observe table of precedence under 800

Class specific forms for children in 808.068

### **.1 Poetry**

.101-.109 Standard subdivisions

.12-.18 Specific kinds

Divide like 808.812-808.818, e.g., lyric poetry 808.14

### **.2 Drama**

.201-.209 Standard subdivisions

.22-.25 Specific mediums, scopes, kinds

Divide like 808.822-808.825, e.g., one-act plays 808.241

### **.3 Fiction**

.301-.309 Standard subdivisions

.31-.38 Specific scopes and types

Divide like 808.831-808.838, e.g., science fiction 808.387 6

### **.4 Essays**

.401-.409 Standard subdivisions

### **.5 Speech**

Scope: voice, expression, gesture

.501-.509 Standard subdivisions

.51 Public speaking (Oratory)

Platform, radio, after-dinner speaking

For debating and public discussion, see 808.53; preaching,  
251

.53 Debating and public discussion

- 808.54      Recitation
  - .543      Storytelling
  - .545      Reading aloud
  - .55      Choral speaking
  - .56      Conversation
  
- .6      Letters
  - .601–.609      Standard subdivisions
  
- .7      Satire and humor
  - .701–.709      Standard subdivisions
  
- .8      Collections and anthologies of literature
  - Scope: works emphasizing equally collections of literary texts and history, description, critical appraisal of literature
  - For history, description, critical appraisal of literature, see 809*
  
- .800 1–.800 4      Of specific periods
  - Divide like standard subdivisions 090 1 – 090 4, e.g., collections of 18th century literature 808.800 33
  
- 808.801–808.803 Displaying specific features
  - .801      Specific qualities
    - Class satire and humor in 808.87
  - .801 2      Realism and naturalism
  - .801 3      Idealism
  - .801 4      Romanticism
  - .801 5      Symbolism, allegory, fantasy
  - .801 6      Tragedy and horror
  - .802      Specific elements
    - For specific themes and subjects, see 808.803*
  - .802 2      Description
  - .802 3      Narrative
  - .802 4      Plot
  - .802 5      Stream of consciousness

## *Decimal Classification*

- 808.802 6      Dialog
- .802 7      Characters
- .803      Specific themes and subjects
- Love, pride, nature, religion, law, medicine, children, dogs,  
the sea, Holy Grail, others

### 808.81–808.88 In specific forms

Observe table of precedence under **800**

Under each subdivision identified by \* add 0 and divide like  
standard subdivisions **090 1 – 090 4**, e.g., 18th century poetry  
**808.810 33**

### SUMMARY

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| <b>808.81</b> | Poetry           |
| .82           | Drama            |
| .83           | Fiction          |
| .84           | Essays           |
| .85           | Speeches         |
| .86           | Letters          |
| .87           | Satire and humor |
| .88           | Miscellany       |

- .81      \*Poetry



### 808.812–808.818 Specific kinds

- .812      Dramatic
- .813      Epic
- .814      Lyric and balladic
- .815      Religious and didactic
- .816      Descriptive
- For lyric, see 808.814*
- .817      Satirical and humorous
- For light and ephemeral verse, see 808.818*
- .818      Light and ephemeral verse
- Including greeting card verse

\* Add 0 and divide as instructed under **808.81–808.88**

*Literature and rhetoric*

- 808.819      Displaying specific features  
                Divide like 808.801–808.803, e.g., poetry about dogs  
                808.819 3  
                *For poetry of specific kinds, see 808.812–808.818*
- .82          \*Drama
- 808.822–808.825 Specific mediums, scopes, kinds
- 808.822–808.823 Drama for mass mediums
- .822          For radio and television
- .823          For motion pictures
- .824          Drama of restricted scope  
                *For drama for mass mediums, see 808.822–808.823*
- .824 1          One-act plays
- .824 5          Monologs
- .825          Specific kinds of drama  
                *For drama for mass mediums, see 808.822–808.823; drama  
                of restricted scope, 808.824*
- .825 1          Tragedy and serious drama  
                *Including historical, Passion, morality, miracle plays*
- .825 2          Comedy and melodrama
- .825 7          Variety and miscellaneous
- .829          Displaying specific features  
                Divide like 808.801–808.803, e.g., drama about Lincoln  
                808.829 27  
                *For drama of specific mediums, scopes, kinds, see  
                808.822–808.825*

\* Add 0 and divide as instructed under 808.81–808.88

## Decimal Classification

---

808.83      \*Fiction

►                      808.831–808.838 Specific scopes and types

►                      808.831–808.836 Specific scopes

*For specific types, see 808.838*

.831              Short stories

.832              Novelets and novellas

.833              Novels

.836              Cartoon fiction (Comics)

.838              Specific types

.838 1              Historical and period

.838 3              Sociological, psychological, realistic

.838 4              Occupational

.838 5              Love and romance

.838 7              Adventure

.838 72              Mystery and suspense

.838 74              Western

.838 76              Science

.839              Displaying specific features

Divide like 808.801–808.803, e.g., fiction about dogs  
808.839 3

*For fiction of specific scopes and types, see  
808.831–808.838*

.84              \*Essays

.849              Displaying specific features

Divide like 808.801–808.803, e.g., essays on nature  
808.849 3

\* Add 0 and divide as instructed under 808.81–808.88

*Literature and rhetoric*

808.85      **\*Speeches**

808.851–808.856 Specific kinds

.851      Public speeches (Oratory)

Platform, radio, after-dinner speeches

Including speeches and toasts for special occasions

*For debates and public discussions, see 808.853*

.853      Debates and public discussions

.854      Recitations

.855      Texts for choral speaking

.856      Conversations

.859      Displaying specific features

Divide like 808.801–808.803, e.g., descriptive speeches  
808.859 22

*For speeches of specific kinds, see 808.851–808.856*

.86      **\*Letters**

.869      Displaying specific features

Divide like 808.801–808.803, e.g., letters on nature  
808.869 3

.87      **\*Satire and humor**

.879      Displaying specific features

Divide like 808.801–808.803, e.g., literary humor on specific  
subjects 808.879 3

.88      **\*Miscellany**

808.882–808.888 Specific kinds

.882      Quotations and epigrams

.883      Diaries, journals, reminiscences

.888      Prose literature

*For a specific form of prose literature, see the form, e.g.,  
essays 808.84*

<sup>1</sup> Add 0 and divide as instructed under 808.81–808.88



## *Decimal Classification*

- 808.89      For and by persons having common characteristics  
              Class literature displaying specific features in 808.801–808.803  
              *For literature in specific forms, see 808.81–808.88*
- .899          Specific characteristics
- .899 1        Of specific regions  
              Not limited by continent, country, locality  
              Add area notation 1 to 808.899  
              *For persons of specific classes, see 808.899 2*
- .899 2        Of specific classes
- .899 201–.899 279      Specific occupations  
                          Divide like 920.1–927.9, e.g., physicians 808.899 261
- .899 28        Specific age groups and sexes
- 
- 808.899 282 – 808.899 285 Age groups
- 899 282        Children
- 899 282 6        Boys
- 899 282 7        Girls
- 899 283        Adolescents
- 899 283 6        Young men
- 899 283 7        Young women
- 899 285        Aged
- 
- 808.899 286 – 808.899 287 Sexes
- For age groups, see 808.899 282 – 808.899 285*
- .899 286        Men
- .899 287        Women
- .899 3–.899 9      Resident in specific continents, countries, localities  
              Add area notations 3–9 to 808.899  
              Class literatures of specific languages in 810–890  
              *For persons of specific classes, see 808.899 2*
- [.9]          Literatures of artificial languages  
              Class in 899

**809 History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment of literature**

Scope: essays and lectures [*both formerly 804*]

Class theory, technique, history of literary criticism in **801.95**

**.01-.04 Of specific periods**

Divide like standard subdivisions **090 1 – 090 4**, e.g., 18th century literature **809.033**

**.1-.7 In specific forms**

Divide like **808.81–808.87**, e.g., science fiction **809.387 6**

**.8 For and by persons having common characteristics**

*For literature in specific forms, see 809.1–809.7; displaying specific features, 809.9*

**.89 Specific characteristics**

**.891 Of specific regions**

Not limited by continent, country, locality

Add area notation 1 to **809.89**

*For persons of specific classes, see 809.892*

**.892 Of specific classes**

**.892 01-.892 79 Specific occupations**

Divide like **920.1–927.9**, e.g., physicians **809.892 61**

**.892 8 Specific age groups and sexes**

Divide like **808.899 28**, e.g., girls **809.892 827**

**.893-.899 Resident in specific continents, countries, localities**

Including literature of countries using more than one language [*formerly 809.94–809.99*]

Add area notations 3–9 to **809.89**

Class literatures of specific languages in **810–890**

*For persons of specific classes, see 809.892*

*Decimal Classification*

**809.9      Displaying specific features**

*For literature in specific forms, see 809.1–809.7*

**.91–.92      Specific qualities and elements**

Divide like 808.801–808.802, e.g., tragedy and horror 809.916

**.93          Other**

**.933          Specific themes and subjects**

**.935          Emphasizing subject values**

Literary appraisal of works not basically literature

Divide like 001–999, e.g., Bible as literature  
[formerly 220.88] 809.935 22

**[.94–.99]      Literature of countries using more than one language**

Class in 809.893–809.899

## 810–890 Literatures of specific languages

By language in which originally written

Scope: literature in dialect

If preferred, class translations into a language requiring local emphasis with the literature of that language

Divide as below, but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific literature, place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., literature of Arabic language **8A0** (preceding **810**); then divide as instructed under **820–890**

## 810 American literature in English

English-language literature of Western Hemisphere and Hawaii

### 810.1–818.5 Standard subdivisions and specific forms

If desired, distinguish literature of a specific country by initial letter, e.g., literature of Canada **C810.1–C818.5**, of United States **U810.1–U818.5**; or, if preferred, class literatures not requiring local emphasis in **819**

#### .1–.7 Standard subdivisions

#### .8 Collections and anthologies by more than one author

Class collected works of single authors not limited to or chiefly identified with one specific form [*formerly 810.81*] in **818.1–818.5**

#### .800 1–.800 5 From specific periods

Divide like **810.900 1 – 810.900 5**, e.g., collections of later 20th century United States literature **810.800 54**

#### .801–.803 Displaying specific features

Divide like **808.801–808.803**, e.g., tragedy **810.801 6**

#### .809 For and by persons having common characteristics

*For literature displaying specific features, see 810.801–810.803*

#### .809 1 Of specific regions

Add area notation 1 to **810.809**

*For persons of specific classes, see 810.809 2*

## *Decimal Classification*

- 810.809 2            Of specific classes
- .809 201–.809 279    Specific occupations  
                                 Divide like 920.1–927.9, e.g., painters 810.809 275
- .809 28            Specific age groups and sexes  
                                 Divide like 808.899 28, e.g., women 810.809 287
- .809 7–.809 8        Resident in specific countries and localities  
                                 Do not use for literatures of specific countries if they are  
                                 otherwise separately identified as suggested under  
                                 810.1–818.5  
                                 Add area notations 7–8 to 810.809  
                                 *For persons resident in Hawaii see 810.809 9 of*  
                                 *specific classes, 810.809 2*
- .809 9            Resident in Hawaii  
                                 *For persons of specific classes, see 810.809 2*

### **.9        History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment**

Class description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment of single authors not limited to or chiefly identified with one specific form in 818.1–818.5



#### 810.900 1 – 810.900 5 Specific periods of United States literature

If literatures of specific countries are separately identified as suggested under 810.1–818.5, assign appropriate periods to each. Periods for Canadian literature follow:

- 3      Colonial period to 1867
  - 4      Later 19th century, 1867–1900
  - 5      20th century
  - 52     Early, 1900–1945
  - 54     Later, 1945–
- .900 1            Colonial period, 1607–1776
- .900 2            Post-Revolutionary period, 1776–1830
- .900 3            Middle 19th century, 1830–1861
- .900 4            Later 19th century, 1861–1900
- .900 5            20th century
- .900 52           Early, 1900–1945
- .900 54           Later, 1945–

*American literature in English*

[810.903–.904] Specific periods of United States literature

Do not use; class in 810.900 1 – 810.900 5

.91–.93 Displaying specific features

Divide like 808.801–808.803, e.g., tragedy 810.916

.99 For and by persons having common characteristics

*For literature displaying specific features, see 810.91–810.93*

.991 Of specific regions

Add area notation 1 to 810.99

*For persons of specific classes, see 810.992*

.992 Of specific classes

.992 01–.992 79 Specific occupations

Divide like 920.1–927.9, e.g., Christian clergymen  
810.992 2

.992 8 Specific age groups and sexes

Divide like 808.899 28, e.g., women 810.992 87

.997–.998 Resident in specific countries and localities

Do not use for literatures of specific countries if they are  
otherwise separately identified as suggested under  
810.1–818.5

Add area notations 7–8 to 810.99

*For persons resident in Hawaii, see 810.999; of specific  
classes, 810.992*

.999 Resident in Hawaii

*For persons of specific classes, see 810.992*

## *Decimal Classification*

### **811-818 Specific forms**

Observe table of precedence under 800

If preferred, class description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form in 818 with or without period subdivision

#### **811 Poetry**

.001-.007 Standard subdivisions

.008 Collections and anthologies by more than one author

.008 01-.008 03 Displaying specific features

Divide like 808.801-808.803, e.g., poetry about persons 811.008 027

.009 History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment

.009 1-.009 3 Displaying specific features

Divide like 808.801-808.803, e.g., dialog in poetry 811.009 26

.02-.08 Specific kinds

History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, collections of works of more than one author

Divide like 808.812-808.818, e.g., lyric poetry 811.04

.1-.5 Specific periods

Divide like 810.900 1 - 810.900 5, e.g., early 20th century United States poetry 811.52

Class in each period without further subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of kind of poetry

Under each period use 01-09 for standard subdivisions, dividing 08-09 like 811.008-811.009, e.g., critical appraisal of dialog 092 6

*American literature in English*

**812 Drama**

**.001-.009 Standard subdivisions**

Divide like **811.001-811.009**, e.g., critical appraisal of dialog  
**812.009 26**

**.02-.05 Specific mediums, scopes, kinds**

History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment,  
collections of works of more than one author

Divide like **808.822-808.825**, e.g., comedy drama **812.052**

**.1-.5 Specific periods**

Divide like **810.900 1 - 810.900 5**, e.g., early 20th century  
United States drama **812.52**

Class in each period without further subdivision description,  
critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected  
works of single authors regardless of medium, scope, or kind of  
drama

Under each period use **01-09** for standard subdivisions, dividing  
**08-09** like **811.008-811.009**, e.g., critical appraisal of dialog **092 6**

**813 Fiction**

If preferred, do not class works of fiction

**.001-.009 Standard subdivisions**

Divide like **811.001-811.009**, e.g., critical appraisal of dialog  
**813.009 26**

**.01-.08 Specific scopes and types**

History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment,  
collections of works of more than one author

Divide like **808.831-808.838**, e.g., short stories **813.01**

**.1-.5 Specific periods**

Divide like **810.900 1 - 810.900 5**, e.g., early 20th century United  
States fiction **813.52**

Class in each period without further subdivision description,  
critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected  
works of single authors regardless of scope or type of fiction

Under each period use **01-09** for standard subdivisions, dividing  
**08-09** like **811.008-811.009**, e.g., critical appraisal of dialog **092 6**



## *Decimal Classification*

### **814      Essays**

#### **.001-.009      Standard subdivisions**

Divide like **811.001-811.009**, e.g., collections of essays displaying specific features **814.008 01 - 814.008 03**

#### **.1-.5      Specific periods**

Divide like **810.900 1 - 810.900 5**, e.g., early 20th century United States essays **814.52**

Class in each period without further subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors

Under each period use **01-09** for standard subdivisions, dividing **08-09** like **811.008-811.009**, e.g., collections of essays displaying specific features **080 1 - 080 3**

### **815      Speeches**

#### **.001-.009      Standard subdivisions**

Divide like **811.001-811.009**, e.g., critical appraisal **815.009**

#### **.01-.06      Specific kinds**

History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, collections of works of more than one person

Divide like **808.851-808.856**, e.g., conversations **815.06**

#### **.1-.5      Specific periods**

Divide like **810.900 1 - 810.900 5**, e.g., early 20th century United States speeches **815.52**

Class in each period without further subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of kind of speeches

Under each period use **01-09** for standard subdivisions, dividing **08-09** like **811.008-811.009**, e.g., collections of speeches displaying specific features **080 1 - 080 3**

## *American literature in English*

### **816 Letters**

#### **.001-.009 Standard subdivisions**

Divide like **811.001-811.009**, e.g., collections of letters displaying specific features **816.008 01 - 816.008 03**

#### **.1-.5 Specific periods**

Divide like **810.900 1 - 810.900 5**, e.g., early 20th century United States letters **816.52**

Class in each period without further subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors

Under each period use **01-09** for standard subdivisions, dividing **08-09** like **811.008-811.009**, e.g., collections of letters about persons **080 27**

### **817 Satire and humor**

#### **.001-.009 Standard subdivisions**

Divide like **811.001-811.009**, e.g., critical appraisal of dialog **817.009 26**

#### **.1-.5 Specific periods**

Divide like **810.900 1 - 810.900 5**, e.g., early 20th century United States satire and humor **817.52**

Class in each period without further subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors

Under each period use **01-09** for standard subdivisions, dividing **08-09** like **811.008-811.009**, e.g., collections of satire and humor about persons **080 27**

### **818 Miscellany**

(Optional: class here with or without period subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form; prefer **811-818**)

#### **.001-.007 Standard subdivisions**

#### **.008 Collections and anthologies by more than one author**

#### **.009 History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **818.02-.08      Specific kinds**

History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, collections of works of more than one author

Divide like **808.882-808.888**, e.g., quotations and epigrams  
**818.02**

### **818.1-818.5 Specific periods of United States miscellany**

Scope: collected works of single authors not limited to or chiefly identified with one specific form [*formerly 810.81*]

If literatures of specific countries are separately identified as suggested under **810.1-818.5**, assign appropriate periods to each as suggested under **810.900 1 - 810.900 5**

#### **.1      Colonial period, 1607-1776**

#### **.102      Quotations and epigrams**

Including description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors

#### **.102 01-.102 09      Standard subdivisions**

Divide like **818.001-818.009**, e.g., collections and anthologies by more than one author **818.102 08**

#### **.103      Diaries, journals, reminiscences**

Including description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors

#### **.103 01-.103 09      Standard subdivisions**

Divide like **818.001-818.009**, e.g., collections and anthologies by more than one author **818.103 08**

## *American literature in English*

818.108

### Prose literature

Including description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, collected works of single authors

*For a specific form of prose literature, see the form, e.g., essays 814*

.108 01-.108 09

### Standard subdivisions

Divide like **818.001-818.009**, e.g., collections and anthologies by more than one author **818.108 08**

.109

### Single authors not limited to or chiefly identified with one specific form

Description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, collected works

.2-.5

### Other periods

Divide like **810.900 2 - 810.900 5**, e.g., early 20th century United States miscellany **818.52**; then add 0 and divide further like **818.1**, e.g., collected works of a single early 20th century United States author not limited to or chiefly identified with one specific form **818.520 9**

819

### Literatures not requiring local emphasis

In libraries emphasizing United States literature: Canadian and other; in libraries emphasizing Canadian literature: United States and other

(Optional; prefer **810.1-818.5**)

## *Decimal Classification*

### **820–890 Other literatures**

Divide each literature identified by \* like 810.1–818.5, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment of Dutch literature displaying specific features 839.310 91–839.310 93. Under literatures having more than one entry in this table, divide each entry identified by \* like the corresponding number or numbers under 810.1–818.5, e.g., English lyric poetry 821.04. Note, however, in subdivision 09 that period divisions and geographical range of authors are different for each specific literature, and are shown below where their use is recommended; they may be supplied elsewhere as needed, for literatures requiring local emphasis, by use of letter notation

### **820 Of English and Anglo-Saxon languages**

Use 820.01–820.09 for standard subdivisions

#### **820.1–828.9 English**

If desired, distinguish literature of a specific country by initial letter, e.g., literature of England **E820.1–E828.9**, of Ireland **Ir820.1–Ir828.5**, of Scotland **S820.1–S828.9**, of Wales **W820.1–W828.9** (or of all British Isles **B820.1–B828.9**), of Australia **A820.1–A828.3**, of India **In820.1–In828.3**; or, if preferred, class literatures not requiring local emphasis in **828.99**

*For American literature in English, see 810*

- .1–.7 Standard subdivisions**
- .8 \*Collections and anthologies by more than one author**
- .9 \*History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment**

\* Divide as instructed under 820–890

## *English and Anglo-Saxon literatures*

820.900 1 – 820.900 9 Historical periods of British literature

If literatures of specific countries are separately identified as suggested under **820.1–828.9**, assign appropriate periods to each. Periods for literatures of certain countries follow:

### **Asian countries:**

- 1 Early period to 1858
- 2 1858–1947
- 3 Later 20th century, 1947–

### **Australia:**

- 1 Early period to 1890
- 2 Early 20th century, 1890–1945
- 3 Later 20th century, 1945–

### **Ireland:**

- 1 Medieval and early modern to 1660
- 2 Late 17th and 18th centuries, 1660–1800
- 3 19th century, 1800–1900
- 4 Irish literary revival, 1900–1945
- 5 Later 20th century, 1945–

### **New Zealand:**

- 1 Early period to 1907
- 2 20th century, 1907–

### **South Africa:**

- 1 To 1909
- 2 Early 20th century, 1909–1961
- 3 Later 20th century, 1961–

820.900 1	Early English period, 1066–1400
.900 2	Pre-Elizabethan period, 1400–1558
.900 3	Elizabethan period, 1558–1625
.900 4	Post-Elizabethan period, 1625–1702
.900 5	Queen Anne period, 1702–1745
.900 6	Later 18th century, 1745–1800
.900 7	Early 19th century, 1800–1837
.900 8	Victorian period, 1837–1900
.900 9	1900–
.900 91	20th century
.900 912	Early, 1900–1945
.900 914	Later, 1945–

## Decimal Classification

820.994-.999

For and by persons resident in specific countries and localities

Do not use for literatures of specific countries if they are otherwise separately identified as suggested under 820.1-828.9

Add area notations 4-6, 9 to 820.99

### 821-828 Specific forms

Observe table of precedence under 800

If preferred, class description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form in 828 with or without period subdivision

821     \*Poetry

822     \*Drama

.3       Elizabethan period, 1558-1625

.33      William Shakespeare

If desired, subarrange works about and by Shakespeare according to the following table, which may be adapted for use with any specific author:

A Authorship controversies

(Optional: bibliography; prefer 016)

B Biography

D Critical appraisal

*For individual works, see O-Z*

E Textual criticism

*For individual works, see O-Z*

F Sources, allusions, learning

G Societies, concordances, miscellany

H Quotations, condensations, adaptations

(Optional: tales based on Shakespeare; prefer fiction under specific literature)

I Complete works in English without notes

J Complete works in English with notes

K Complete works in translation

L Partial collections in English without notes

M Partial collections in English with notes

N Partial collections in translation

#### O-Z Individual works

Under each, use first number for texts, second number for descriptive and critical works, e.g., text of Hamlet S7, criticism of Hamlet S8

<sup>1</sup> Divide as instructed under 820-890

## *English and Anglo-Saxon literatures*

### **O-R Comedies**

- O1-2** All's well that ends well
- O3-4** As you like it
- O5-6** The comedy of errors
- O7-8** Love's labour's lost
- P1-2** Measure for measure
- P3-4** The merchant of Venice
- P5-6** The merry wives of Windsor
- P7-8** A midsummer night's dream
- Q1-2** Much ado about nothing
- Q3-4** The taming of the shrew
- Q5-6** The tempest
- Q7-8** Twelfth night
- R1-2** The two gentlemen of Verona
- R3-4** The winter's tale

### **S-V Tragedies**

- S1-2** Antony and Cleopatra
- S3-4** Coriolanus
- S5-6** Cymbeline
- S7-8** Hamlet
- T1-2** Julius Caesar
- T3-4** King Lear
- T5-6** Macbeth
- T7-8** Othello
- U1-2** Pericles
- U3-4** Romeo and Juliet
- U5-6** Timon of Athens
- U7-8** Titus Andronicus
- V1-2** Troilus and Cressida

### **W-X Histories**

- W1-2** Henry IV, parts 1-2
- W3-4** Henry V
- W5-6** Henry VI, parts 1-3
- W7-8** Henry VIII
- X1-2** King John
- X3-4** Richard II
- X5-6** Richard III

### **Y1-2 Poems**

*For specific poems, see Y3-8*

### **Y3-8 Specific poems**

- Y3-4** Venus and Adonis
- Y5-6** The rape of Lucrece
- Y7-8** Sonnets

### **Z Spurious and doubtful works**



**823      \*Fiction**

If preferred, do not class works of fiction

**824      \*Essays**

**825      \*Speeches**

**826      \*Letters**

**827      \*Satire and humor**

**828      \*Miscellany**

(Optional: class here with or without period subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form; prefer 821–828)

**.99      English-language literatures not requiring local emphasis**

In libraries emphasizing British literature: Australian, Indian, other;  
in libraries emphasizing Australian literature: British, Indian, other

(Optional; prefer 820.1–828.9)

**829      Anglo-Saxon (Old English)**

**.1          Poetry**

*For Caedmon, see 829.2; Beowulf, 829.3; Cynewulf, 829.4*

**.2          Caedmon**

**.3          Beowulf**

**.4          Cynewulf**

\* Divide as instructed under 820–890

## **830 Of Germanic languages**

Use 830.01–830.09 for standard subdivisions

### **830.1–838.9 German**

**.1–.7 Standard subdivisions**

**.8 \*Collections and anthologies by more than one author**

**.9 \*History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment**

830.900 1 – 830.900 9 Historical periods

.900 1 Early medieval period to 1150

.900 2 Later medieval period, 1150–1300

.900 3 Period of decline, 1300–1517

.900 4 Reformation period, 1517–1625

.900 5 Period of imitation, 1625–1750

.900 6 Classical period, 1750–1830

.900 7 Postclassical period, 1830–1856

.900 8 Later 19th century, 1856–1900

.900 9 1900–

.900 91 20th century

.900 912 Early, 1900–1945

.900 914 Later, 1945–

**.994–.999 For and by persons resident in specific countries and localities**

Add area notations 4–9 to 830.99

### **831–838 Specific forms**

Observe table of precedence under 800

If preferred, class description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form in 838 with or without period subdivision

**831 \*Poetry**

**832 \*Drama**

\* Divide as instructed under 820–890

**833    \*Fiction**

If preferred, do not class works of fiction

**834    \*Essays**

**835    \*Speeches**

**836    \*Letters**

**837    \*Satire and humor**

**838    \*Miscellany**

(Optional: class here with or without period subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form; prefer 831-838)

**839    Other Germanic languages**

Divide like 439, e.g., literature of Frisian language 839.2; if the single entry or any one of the several entries for a specific language under 439 is identified by \*, divide its literature further as instructed under 820-890, e.g., Frisian drama 839.22, Old Norse poetry 839.61. Entered below are those specific languages for which the use of period divisions is recommended

*For literatures of English and Anglo-Saxon languages, see 820*

**.2    \*Frisian**

- |          |                                |
|----------|--------------------------------|
| .209 001 | Early period to 1609           |
| .209 002 | 17th-18th centuries, 1609-1800 |
| .209 003 | 19th century, 1800-1900        |
| .209 004 | 20th century, 1900-            |

**.3    Dutch, Flemish, Afrikaans**

**.31    \*Dutch**

- |             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| .310 900 1  | Medieval period to 1450       |
| .310 900 2  | Renaissance period, 1450-1600 |
| .310 900 3  | 17th century                  |
| .310 900 4  | 18th century                  |
| .310 900 5  | 19th century                  |
| .310 900 6  | 20th century                  |
| .310 900 62 | Early, 1900-1945              |
| .310 900 64 | Later, 1945-                  |

\* Divide as instructed under 820-890

## *Germanic literatures*

### 839.32      **\*Flemish**

.320 900 5-.320 900 6

Historical periods

Divide like 839.310 900 5 – 839.310 900 6, e.g.,  
history of Flemish literature of 19th century  
839.320 900 5

### .36      **\*Afrikaans**

.360 900 1

Early period to 1875

.360 900 2

1875-1904

.360 900 3

Early 20th century, 1904-1924

.360 900 4

Mid-20th century, 1924-1961

.360 900 5

Later 20th century, 1961-

### .4      **\*Low German (Plattdeutsch)**

.409 001

Early period to 1600

.409 002

17th-19th centuries, 1600-1900

.409 003

20th century, 1900-

### .6      **West Scandinavian languages**

.61-.68      **\*Old Norse (Old Icelandic)**

.69      **\*Modern Icelandic**

.690 900 1

Early period, 1500-1720

.690 900 2

Age of enlightenment, 1720-1835

.690 900 3

Renaissance, 1835-1900

.690 900 4

20th century, 1900-

### .7      **\*Swedish**

.709 001

Medieval period to 1520

.709 002

Reformation period, 1520-1640

.709 003

Age of Stjernhjelm, 1640-1740

.709 004

Age of Dalin, 1740-1780

.709 005

Age of Gustavus, 1780-1800

.709 006

19th century

.709 007

20th century

.709 007 2

Early, 1900-1945

.709 007 4

Later, 1945-

\* Divide as instructed under 820-890

## *Decimal Classification*

### **839.8      Danish and Norwegian**

#### **.81      \*Danish**

- .810 900 1      Medieval period to 1500
- .810 900 2      Reformation period, 1500–1560
- .810 900 3      Learned period, 1560–1700
- .810 900 4      Age of Holberg, 1700–1750
- .810 900 5      Period of enlightenment, 1750–1800
- .810 900 6      19th century
- .810 900 7      20th century
- .810 900 72      Early, 1900–1945
- .810 900 74      Later, 1945–

#### **.82      \*Norwegian (Bokmaal)**

- .820 900 1–.820 900 7      Historical periods  
Divide like 839.810 900 1 – 839.810 900 7, e.g.,  
history of Norwegian (Bokmaal) literature of  
19th century 839.820 900 6

#### **.83      \*New Norse (Landsmaal)**

- .830 900 6–.830 900 7      Historical periods  
Divide like 839.810 900 6 – 839.810 900 7, e.g.,  
history of New Norse (Landsmaal) literature  
of later 20th century 839.830 900 74

\* Divide as instructed under 820–890



## **840–860 Of Romance languages**

Class comprehensive works in **879.9**

### **840 French, Provençal, Catalan**

Use **840.01–840.09** for standard subdivisions

#### **840.1–848.9 French**

If desired, distinguish literature of a specific country by initial letter, e.g., literature of Canada **C840.1–C848.5**, of France **F840.1–F848.9**; or, if preferred, class literatures not requiring local emphasis in **848.99**

**.1–.7 Standard subdivisions**

**.8 \*Collections and anthologies by more than one author**

**.9 \*History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment**

\* Divide as instructed under **820–890**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **840.900 1 – 840.900 9 Historical periods of literature of France**

If literatures of specific countries are separately identified as suggested under **840.1–848.9**, assign appropriate periods to each. Periods for literatures of Belgium and Canada follow:

#### **Belgium:**

- 1** Early period to 1830
- 2** 19th century, 1830–1900
- 3** 20th century
- 32** Early, 1900–1945
- 34** Later, 1945–

#### **Canada:**

- 3** Colonial period to 1867
- 4** Later 19th century, 1867–1900
- 5** 20th century
- 52** Early, 1900–1945
- 54** Later, 1945–

840.900 1	Early period to 1400
.900 2	15th century
.900 3	16th century
.900 4	Classical period, 1600–1715
.900 5	18th century, 1715–1789
.900 6	Revolution and Empire, 1789–1815
.900 7	Constitutional monarchy, 1815–1848
.900 8	Later 19th century, 1848–1900
.900 9	1900–
.900 91	20th century
.900 912	Early, 1900–1945
.900 914	Later, 1945–
.994–.999	For and by persons resident in specific count localities

Do not use for literatures of specific countries if otherwise separately identified as suggested under **840.1–848.9**

Add area notations **4–9** to **840.99**

**841–848 Specific forms**

Observe table of precedence under 800

If preferred, class description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form in 848 with or without period subdivision

**841     \*Poetry**

**842     \*Drama**

**843     \*Fiction**

If preferred, do not class works of fiction

**844     \*Essays**

**845     \*Speeches**

**846     \*Letters**

**847     \*Satire and humor**

**848     \*Miscellany**

(Optional: class here with or without period subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form; prefer 841–848)

**.99     French-language literatures not requiring local emphasis**

In libraries emphasizing Canadian literature: literature of France, Belgium, other; in libraries emphasizing literature of France: literature of Canada, Belgium, other

(Optional: prefer 840.1–848.9)

‘ Divide as instructed under 820–890



*Decimal Classification*

**849 Provençal and Catalan**

Use 849.001–849.009 for standard subdivisions

**849.01–849.85 Provençal**

- .01–.07      Standard subdivisions
- .08          \*Collections and anthologies by more than one author
- .09          \*History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment

849.090 01 – 849.090 05 Historical periods

- .090 01      Early period to 1100
- .090 02      Golden age, 1100–1300
- .090 03      14th and 15th centuries
- .090 04      Decline and revival, 1500–1900
- .090 05      20th century
- .090 052      Early, 1900–1945
- .090 054      Later, 1945–

**.1–.8      \*Specific forms**

**.9          \*Catalan**

- .909 001      First period to 1350
- .909 002      Second period, 1350–1450
- .909 003      Golden age, 1450–1500
- .909 004      Decline and revival, 1500–1900
- .909 005      20th century
- .909 005 2      Early, 1900–1945
- .909 005 4      Later, 1945–

\* Divide as instructed under 820–890

## **850 Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic**

Use 850.01–850.09 for standard subdivisions

### **850.1–858.9 Italian**

**.1–.7 Standard subdivisions**

**.8 \*Collections and anthologies by more than one author**

**.9 \*History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment**

---

850.900 1 – 850.900 9 Historical periods

.900 1 Early period to 1375

.900 2 Period of classical learning, 1375–1492

.900 3 Age of Leo X, 1492–1542

.900 4 Later 16th century, 1542–1585

.900 5 Period of decline, 1585–1748

.900 6 Period of renovation, 1748–1814

.900 7 Early 19th century, 1814–1859

.900 8 Later 19th century, 1859–1900

.900 9 1900–

.900 91 20th century

.900 912 Early, 1900–1945

.900 914 Later, 1945–

**.994–.999 For and by persons resident in specific countries and localities**

Add area notations 4–9 to 850.99

---

### **851–858 Specific forms**

Observe table of precedence under 800

If preferred, class description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form in 858 with or without period subdivision

**851 \*Poetry**

**852 \*Drama**

Divide as instructed under 820–890

## *Decimal Classification*

### **853      \*Fiction**

If preferred, do not class fiction

### **854      \*Essays**

### **855      \*Speeches**

### **856      \*Letters**

### **857      \*Satire and humor**

### **858      \*Miscellany**

(Optional: class here with or without period subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form; prefer **851–858**)

### **859      Romanian and Rhaeto-Romanic**

Use **859.001–859.009** for standard subdivisions

#### **859.01–859.83 Romanian**

.01–.07      Standard subdivisions

.08          \*Collections and anthologies by more than one author

.09          \*History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment

►                      859.090 01 – 859.090 03 Historical periods

.090 01              Early period to 1800

.090 02              19th century, 1800–1900

.090 03              20th century

.090 032             Early, 1900–1945

.090 034             Later, 1945–

.1–.8          \*Specific forms

.9              Rhaeto-Romanic languages

Divide as instructed under **820–890**

## **860 Spanish and Portuguese**

Use 860.01–860.09 for standard subdivisions

### **860.1–868.6 Spanish**

If desired, distinguish literature of a specific country by initial letter, e.g., literature of Chile **Ch860.1–Ch868.4**, of Colombia **Co860.1–Co868.4**, of Mexico **M860.1–M868.4** (or, of all American countries **A860.1–A868.4**), of Spain **S860.1–S868.6**; or, if preferred, class literatures not requiring local emphasis in **868.99**

- .1–.7 Standard subdivisions**
- .8 \*Collections and anthologies by more than one author**
- .9 \*History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment**

► **860.900 1 – 860.900 6 Historical periods of literature of Spain**

If literatures of specific countries are separately identified as suggested under **860.1–868.6**, assign appropriate periods to each. Periods for Hispanic-American literatures follow:

- 1 Colonial and revolutionary period, 1519–1826**
  - 2 19th century, 1826–1888**
  - 3 Period of modernism and realism, 1888–1910**
  - 4 20th century, 1910–**
  - 42 Early, 1910–1945**
  - 44 Later, 1945–**
- 
- .900 1 Early period to 1369**
  - .900 2 Age of imitation, 1369–1516**
  - .900 3 Golden age, 1516–1700**
  - .900 4 18th century**
  - .900 5 19th century**
  - .900 6 20th century**
  - .900 62 Early, 1900–1945**
  - .900 64 Later, 1945–**

\* Divide as instructed under **820–890**

## *Decimal Classification*

860.994-.999      For and by persons resident in specific countries and localities

Do not use for literatures of specific countries if they are otherwise separately identified as suggested under **860.1–868.6**

Add area notations **4–9** to **860.99**



### **861–868 Specific forms**

Observe table of precedence under **800**

If preferred, class description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form in **868** with or without period subdivision

**861      \*Poetry**

**862      \*Drama**

**863      \*Fiction**

If preferred, do not class works of fiction

**864      \*Essays**

**865      \*Speeches**

**866      \*Letters**

**867      \*Satire and humor**

**868      \*Miscellany**

(Optional: class here with or without period subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form; prefer **861–868**)

### **.99      Spanish-language literatures not requiring local emphasis**

In libraries emphasizing Mexican literature: literature of other Hispanic-American countries and of Spain, other; in libraries emphasizing literature of Spain: Hispanic-American and other

(Optional: prefer **860.1–868.6**)

\* Divide as instructed under **820–890**

## *Spanish and Portuguese literatures*

### **869      Portuguese**

869.01–869.84 Standard subdivisions and specific forms

Scope: literature in Galician (Gallegan) dialect [*formerly 869.9*]

If desired, distinguish literature of a specific country by initial letter, e.g., literature of Brazil **B869.01–B869.84**, of Portugal **P869.01–P869.84**; or, if preferred, class literatures not requiring local emphasis in **869.899**

.01–.07      Standard subdivisions

.08          \*Collections and anthologies by more than one author

.09          \*History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment

869.090 01 – 869.090 04 Historical periods of literature of Portugal

If literatures of specific countries are separately identified as suggested under **869.01–869.84**, assign appropriate periods to each. Periods for Brazilian literature follow:

- 1      Period of formation, 1500–1750
- 2      Period of transformation, 1750–1830
- 3      Period of growing autonomy, 1830–1921
- 4      20th century, 1921–

.090 01              Early period to 1500

.090 02              16th–18th centuries, 1500–1800

.090 03              19th century

.090 04              20th century

.090 041              Early, 1900–1945

.090 042              Later, 1945–

.099 4–.099 9      For and by persons resident in sp  
localities

Do not use for literatures of specific countries if they are otherwise separately identified as suggested under **869.01–869.84**

Add area notations 4–9 to **869.099**

\* Divide as instructed under **820–890**

## *Decimal Classification*

**.1–.8    \*Specific forms**

**.899    Literatures not requiring local emphasis**

In libraries emphasizing Brazilian literature: literature of Portugal and other; in libraries emphasizing literature of Portugal: Brazilian and other

(Optional: prefer 869.01–869.84)

**[.9]    Galician (Gallegan)**

Class in 869.01–869.84

## **870    Of Italic languages**

Use 870.01–870.09 for standard subdivisions

### **870.1–878.04 Latin**

Classical Latin; classical revival (medieval and modern) Latin  
[formerly 879]

**.1–.7    Standard subdivisions**

**.8    \*Collections and anthologies by more than one author**

Class collected works of single authors not limited to or chiefly identified with one specific form [formerly 870.81] in  
878.01–878.04

**.9    \*History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment**

►                      870.900 1 – 870.900 4 Historical periods

.900 1              Roman period to ca. 500

.900 2              Pre-Carolingian period, ca. 500–ca. 750

.900 3              Medieval period, ca. 750–1350

.900 4              Modern period, 1350–

.993–.999        By and for persons resident in specific countries and localities

Add area notations 3–9 to 870.99

\* Divide as instructed under 820–890

## **871–878 Specific forms**

Observe table of precedence under 800

If preferred, class description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form in 878 with or without period subdivision

### **.871 Poetry**

*For dramatic poetry, see 872; epic poetry, 873; lyric poetry, 874*

.001–.009    \*Standard subdivisions

.01–.04    Specific periods

Divide like 870.900 1 – 870.900 4, e.g., poetry of Roman period 871.01

Class in each period without further subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors

Under each period use 01–09 for standard subdivisions, dividing 08–09 like 811.008–811.009, e.g., critical appraisal of dialog 092 6

### **872 Dramatic poetry and drama**

Divide like 871, e.g., history 872.009

### **873 Epic poetry and fiction**

Divide like 871, e.g., collections of Roman period 873.010 8

### **874 Lyric poetry**

Divide like 871, e.g., collections of modern period 874.040 8

### **875 Speeches**

Divide like 871, e.g., critical appraisal 875.009

### **876 Letters**

Divide like 871, e.g., collections of medieval period 876.030 8

### **877 Satire and humor**

Divide like 871, e.g., collections 877.008

\* Divide as instructed under 820–890



## *Decimal Classification*

### **878      Miscellany**

(Optional: class here with or without period subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form; prefer **871–878**)

.000 1–.000 9      Standard subdivisions

Divide like **818.001–818.009**, e.g., collections by more than one author **878.000 8**

.002–.008      Specific kinds

History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, collections of works of more than one author

Divide like **808.882–808.888**, e.g., quotations and epigrams **878.002**

.01–.04      Specific periods

Scope: collected works of single authors not limited to or chiefly identified with one specific form [*formerly 870.81*]

Divide like **870.900 1 – 870.900 4**, e.g., miscellany of modern period **878.04**; then add **0** and divide further like **818.1**, e.g., quotations and epigrams of modern period **878.040 2**

### **879      Other Italic languages**

Class classical revival (medieval and modern) Latin literature [*formerly 879*] in **870.1–878.04**

.9      Romance languages

Class literatures of specific Romance languages in **840–860**

.99      Osco-Umbrian languages

## *Greek literatures*

### **880 Of classical languages and modern Greek**

*For literature of Latin language, see 870.1–878.04*

.01–.09      **Standard subdivisions of literature of classical languages**



#### **880.1–888.03 Classical Greek**

Ancient Greek; medieval (Byzantine) Greek [*formerly 889*]

.1–.7      **Standard subdivisions**

.8      **\*Collections and anthologies by more than one author**

Class collected works of single authors not limited to or chiefly identified with one specific form [*formerly 880.81*] in  
**888.01–888.03**

.9      **\*History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment**

880.900 1 – 880.900 3 Historical periods

.900 1      Ancient period to ca. 500

.900 2      Medieval and Byzantine periods, ca. 500–1600

.900 3      Modern period, 1600–

.993–.999      **By and for persons resident in specific countries and localities**

Add area notations 3–9 to **880.99**

#### **881–888 Specific forms**

Observe table of precedence under **800**

If preferred, class description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form in **888** with or without period subdivision

### **881 Poetry**

*For dramatic poetry, see 882; epic poetry, 883; lyric poetry, 884*

.001–.009      **\*Standard subdivisions**

• Divide as instructed under **820–890**

## *Decimal Classification*

- 881.01-.03**      **Specific periods**  
Divide like **880.900 1 – 880.900 3**, e.g., poetry of ancient period **881.01**  
Class in each period without further subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors  
Under each period use **01–09** for standard subdivisions, dividing **08–09** like **811.008–811.009**, e.g., critical appraisal of dialog **092 6**
- 882**      **Dramatic poetry and drama**  
Divide like **881**, e.g., history **882.009**
- 883**      **Epic poetry and fiction**  
Divide like **881**, e.g., collections of ancient period **883.010 8**
- 884**      **Lytic poetry**  
Divide like **881**, e.g., single authors of modern period **884.03**
- 885**      **Speeches**  
Divide like **881**, e.g., history of ancient Greek oratory **885.010 9**
- 886**      **Letters**  
Divide like **881**, e.g., collections of Byzantine period **886.020 8**
- 887**      **Satire and humor**  
Divide like **881**, e.g., collections **887.008**
- 888**      **Miscellany**  
(Optional: class here with or without period subdivision description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, single and collected works of single authors regardless of form; prefer **881–888**)
- .000 1–.000 9**      **Standard subdivisions**  
Divide like **818.001–818.009**, e.g., collections by more than one author **888.000 8**

## *Greek literatures*

### 888.002-.008      Specific kinds

History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment, collections of works of more than one author

Divide like 808.882-808.888, e.g., quotations and epigrams 888.002

### .01-.03      Specific periods

Scope: collected works of single authors not limited to or chiefly identified with one specific form [*formerly* 880.81]

Divide like 880.900 01 - 880.900 3, e.g., miscellany of ancient period 888.01; then add 0 and divide further like 818.1, e.g., quotations and epigrams of ancient period 888.010 2

## 889      \*Modern Greek

Katharevusa and Demotic

Class medieval (Byzantine) Greek literature [*formerly* 889] in 880.1-888.03

.090 01      Early period to 1821

.090 02      19th century, 1821-1900

.090 03      20th century

.090 032      Early, 1900-1945

.090 034      Later, 1945-

\* Divide as instructed under 820-890

## **890 Of other languages**

### **891 East Indo-European and Celtic languages**

Divide like 491, e.g., literature of modern Persian language 891.55; if the single entry or any one of the several entries for a specific language under 491 is identified by \*, divide its literature further as instructed under 820-890, e.g., modern Persian poetry 891.551, Wendish poetry 891.881. Entered below are those specific languages for which the use of period divisions is recommended

#### **.4 Modern Indic languages**

Add 090 0 to each and divide further as follows, e.g., history of contemporary Hindi literature 891.430 900 7

- 1 To 1345
- 2 1345-1645
- 3 1645-1845
- 4 1845-1895
- 5 1895-1920
- 6 1920-1940
- 7 1940-

#### **.5 Iranian languages**

##### **.55 \*Modern Persian**

- |            |  |
|------------|--|
| .550 900 1 | Period of formal development, ca.<br>1000-1389 |
| .550 900 2 | Period of traditionalism, 1389-1900            |
| .550 900 3 | 20th century, 1900-                            |

#### **.6 Celtic languages**

##### **.62 \*Irish Gaelic**

- |            |                                  |
|------------|----------------------------------|
| .620 900 1 | Early period to 1171             |
| .620 900 2 | Period of decline, 1171-1700     |
| .620 900 3 | Period of renaissance, 1700-1850 |
| .620 900 4 | Modern period, 1850-             |

##### **.66 \*Welsh**

- |            |                      |
|------------|----------------------|
| .660 900 1 | Early period to 1600 |
| .660 900 2 | Later period, 1600-  |

<sup>1</sup> Divide as instructed under 820-890

## *Other literatures*

### **891.7 East Slavic languages**

Use 891.700 1 – 891.700 9 for standard subdivisions

#### **891.701–891.784 Russian**

- .701–.707** Standard subdivisions
- .708** \*Collections and anthologies by more than one author
- .709** \*History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment

---

#### **891.709 001 – 891.709 004 Historical periods**

- .709 001** Early period to 1700
- .709 002** 18th century, 1700–1800
- .709 003** 19th century, 1800–1917
- .709 004** 20th century, 1917–
- .709 004 2** Early, 1917–1945
- .709 004 4** Later, 1945–
- .71–.78** \*Specific forms
- .79** \*Ukrainian
- .790 900 1** Early period to 1798
- .790 900 2** 19th century, 1798–1917
- .790 900 3** 20th century, 1917–

### **.8 Balto-Slavic languages**

- .82** \*Serbo-Croatian
  - .820 900 1** Early period to ca. 1550
  - .820 900 2** Period of renaissance, ca. 1550–1700
  - .820 900 3** 18th century, 1700–1800
  - .820 900 4** 19th century, 1800–1900
  - .820 900 5** 20th century, 1900–
- .84** \*Slovenian
  - .840 900 1–.840 900 5** Historical periods

Divide like 891.820 900 1 – 891.820 900 5, e.g.,  
history of 20th century Slovenian literature  
**891.840 900 5**

\* Divide as instructed under 820–890

## *Decimal Classification*

---

### **891.85      \*Polish**

.850 900 1	Early period to 1400
.850 900 2	Period of development, 1400–1500
.850 900 3	Golden age, 1500–1600
.850 900 4	Period of decline, 1600–1700
.850 900 5	18th century, 1700–1795
.850 900 6	Period of renaissance, 1795–1919
.850 900 7	20th century, 1919–

### **.86      \*Czech**

.860 900 1	Early period to 1400
.860 900 2	Reformation period, 1400–1450
.860 900 3	Humanist period, 1450–1620
.860 900 4	Period of decline, 1620–1900
.860 900 5	20th century, 1900–

### **.9      Baltic and other East Indo-European languages**

#### **.92      \*Lithuanian**

.920 900 1	Early period to 1800
.920 900 2	19th century, 1800–1900
.920 900 3	20th century, 1900–

#### **.93      \*Latvian (Lettish)**

.930 900 1–.930 900 3	Historical periods
	Divide like 891.920 900 1 – 891.920 900 3, e.g., history of 19th century Latvian literature 891.930 900 2

#### **.99      Other**

#### **.992      \*Armenian**

.992 090 01	Early period to 600
.992 090 02	600–1000
.992 090 03	1000–1400
.992 090 04	1400–1850
.992 090 05	Modern period, 1850–

\* Divide as instructed under 820–890

## *Other literatures*

### **892 Semitic languages**

Divide like 492, e.g., literature of East Aramaic (Syriac) language 892.3; if the single entry or any one of the several entries for a specific language under 492 is identified by \*, divide its literature further as instructed under 820–890, e.g., Syriac poetry 892.31, Hebrew poetry 892.41. Entered below are those specific languages for which the use of period divisions is recommended

#### **.4 Hebraic languages**

Use 892.400 1 – 892.400 9 for standard subdivisions

##### **892.401–892.486 Hebrew**

.401–.407 Standard subdivisions

.408 \*Collections and anthologies by more than one author

.409 \*History, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment

##### **892.409 001 – 892.409 006 Historical periods**

.409 001 Early period to 700

.409 002 Medieval period, 700–1700

.409 003 18th century, 1700–1820

.409 004 19th century, 1820–1885

.409 005 1885–1945

.409 006 Later 20th century, 1945–

.41–.48 \*Specific forms

.49 \*Yiddish

.490 900 1 Early period to 1700

.490 900 2 Period of enlightenment, 1700–1860

.490 900 3 Golden age and modern period, 1860–

#### **.7 \*Arabic (North Arabic)**

.709 001 Pre-Islamic period to 622

.709 002 Early Islamic and Mukhadrami period, 622–661

.709 003 661–1258

.709 003 2 Umayyad period, 661–750

.709 003 4 Abbasid period, 750–1258

.709 004 Period of decline, 1258–1800

.709 005 Period of renaissance, 1800–1945

.709 006 Contemporary period, 1945–

<sup>1</sup> Divide as instructed under 820–890



## *Decimal Classification*

### **893 Hamitic and other languages**

Divide like 493, e.g., Coptic literature 893.2; if the language entry under 493 is identified by \*, divide its literature further as instructed under 820–890, e.g., Coptic poetry 893.21

### **894 Ural-Altaic, Paleosiberian, Dravidian languages**

Divide like 494, e.g., Estonian literature 894.545; if the language entry under 494 is identified by \*, divide its literature further as instructed under 820–890, e.g., Estonian fiction 894.545 3, Lapp poetry 894.551. Entered below are those specific languages for which the use of period divisions is recommended

#### **.3 Turkic family**

##### **.35 \*Turkish**

.350 900 1 Early period to 1500

.350 900 2 Middle period, 1500–1850

.350 900 3 Modern period, 1850–

#### **.5 Finno-Ugric languages**

##### **.51 Ugric languages**

##### **.511 \*Magyar (Hungarian)**

.511 090 01–.511 090 03 Historical periods

Divide like 891.920 900 1 – 891.920 900 3,  
e.g., history of 20th century Hungarian  
literature 894.511 090 03

##### **.54 Western Finnic languages**

##### **.541 \*Finnish (Suomi)**

.541 090 01–.541 090 03 Historical periods

Divide like 891.920 900 1 – 891.920 900 3,  
e.g., history of 20th century Finnish  
literature 894.541 090 03

##### **.545 \*Estonian**

.545 090 01 Early period to 1861

.545 090 02 Modern period, 1861–

#### **.8 Dravidian languages**

Add 090 0 to each and divide further as instructed under 891.4,  
e.g., history of contemporary Tamil literature 894.811 090 07

\* Divide as instructed under 820–890

## **895 Languages of East and Southeast Asia**

Divide like **495**, e.g., Korean literature **895.7**; if the single entry or any one of the several entries for a specific language under **495** is identified by \*, divide its literature further as instructed under **820-890**, e.g., Korean poetry **895.71**, Tibetan poetry **895.41**. Entered below are those specific languages for which the use of period divisions is recommended

### **.1 \*Chinese**

- .109 001 Classical age, 15th-3d centuries B.C.
- .109 002 Middle epoch, 2d century B.C.-7th century A.D.
- .109 003 Renaissance and neoclassicism, ca. 700-ca. 1000
- .109 004 Age of reason, and rise of drama and novel, ca. 1000-1912
- .109 005 20th century, 1912-

### **.6 \*Japanese**

- .609 001 Early period to 1185
- .609 002 1185-1603
- .609 003 Tokugawa period, 1603-1868
- .609 004 Late 19th and early 20th centuries, 1868-1945
- .609 005 Later 20th century, 1945-

### **.7 \*Korean**

- .709 001 Early period to 1392
- .709 002 Yi period, 1392-1910
- .709 003 Early 20th century, 1910-1945
- .709 004 Later 20th century, 1945-

### **.8 \*Burmese**

- .809 001-.809 003 Historical periods
- Divide like **891.920 900 1 - 891.920 900 3**, e.g.,  
contemporary Burmese literature **895.809 003**

\* Divide as instructed under **820-890**

## *Decimal Classification*

### **895.9      Other languages of Southeast Asia**

**.91      \*Thai**

**.910 900 1–.910 900 3      Historical periods**

Divide like 891.920 900 1 – 891.920 900 3, e.g.,  
contemporary Thai literature 895.910 900 3

### **896      African languages**

Divide like 496, e.g., Hausa literature 896.91; if the language entry  
under 496 is identified by \*, divide its literature further as instructed  
under 820–890, e.g., Hausa poetry 896.911

### **897      North American Indian languages**

Divide like 497, e.g., literature in Na-Dene languages 897.2

### **898      South American Indian languages**

### **899      Austronesian and other languages**

Including literatures of artificial languages [*formerly* 808.9]

Divide like 499, e.g., literature of Tagalog language 899.211; if the  
language entry under 499 is identified by \*, divide its literature  
further as instructed under 820–890, e.g., Tagalog poetry 899.211 1

\* Divide as instructed under 820–890

## 900 General geography and history and related disciplines

Use 900.1–900.9 for standard subdivisions

Class historical and geographical treatment of a specific subject with the subject

### ► 901–908 Standard subdivisions of general history

Class history of specific continents, countries, localities in 930–990

#### 901 Philosophy and theory

##### .9 Civilization

Man's spiritual, intellectual, social, material situation and progress

If preferred, class in 909

Divide like standard subdivisions 090 2 – 090 4, e.g., civilization in the years 500–1000 901.921

Class areal treatment in 910

Class civilization of ancient world [*formerly* 901.9] in 913.03

#### 902 Miscellany

##### .02 Synopses, chronologies, manuals

#### 903 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

#### 904 Collected accounts of specific events

Scope: adventure [*formerly* 910.4]

##### .5 Events of natural origin

Earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, tidal waves, floods, storms

##### .7 Events induced by man

Battles, explosions, fires; mine, transportation, nuclear accidents

#### 905 Serial publications

#### 906 Organizations

## *Decimal Classification*

**907 Study and teaching**

**908 Collections and anthologies**

**909 World history**

Use 909.001–909.009 for standard subdivisions

(Optional: civilization; prefer 901.9)

Class history of ancient world to ca. 500 A.D. in 930

.07 Medieval, to 1450/1500

Including Crusades

.08 Modern, 1450/1500–

.09 Regional treatment

Not limited by continent, country, locality

Divide like area notation 1, e.g., history of the Jews

909.097 492 4; then add 0 and divide further like

909.1–909.8, e.g., history of the Jews in 18th

century 909.097 492 407

.1 500–1199

.2 1200–1299

.3 1300–1399

.4 1400–1499

.5 1500–1599

.6 1600–1699

.7 1700–1799

.8 1800–

.81 1800–1899

.82 1900–

.821 1900–1919

*For World War I, see 940.3*

.822 1920–1929

.823 1930–1939

.824 1940–1949

*For World War II, see 940.53*

.825 1950–1959

.826 1960–1969

## *General geography*

### **910 General geography**

Areal differentiation and traveler's observation of the earth (physical geography [*formerly* 551.4]) and man's civilization upon it

Use 910.001–910.008 for standard subdivisions; but class charts and plans in 912

**.02 The earth (Physical geography)**

Add area notations 14–16 to 910.02

**.03 Man and his civilization**

Add area notation 1 to 910.03

**.09 Historical and regional treatment**

**.091 Geography of regions**

Not limited by continent, country, locality

Add area notation 1 to 910.09

**.093–.099 Discovery, exploration, growth of geographic knowledge**

Add area notations 3–9 for countries responsible to 910.09, e.g., discoveries and explorations by Portuguese 910.094 69

Class geography of specific continents, countries, localities in 913–919

**.1 Topical geography**

(Optional; prefer specific subject, e.g., economic geography 330.91–330.99)

Divide like 001–899, e.g., economic geography 910.133; then add 0 and add area notations 1–9, e.g., economic geography of British Isles 910.133 042

**.2–.3 Miscellany and dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of travel**

**.4 Accounts of travel**

Class comprehensive works on adventure [*formerly* 910.4] in 904

Class collections and anthologies of travels in 910.8

*For discovery and exploration, see 910.093–910.099; scientific travels, 508.3*

**.41 Trips around the world**

### *Decimal Classification*

- 910.45      Ocean travel and seafaring life  
              *For trips around the world, see 910.41*
- .453          Voyages of adventure  
              Shipwrecks, mutinies, buried treasure, pirates' expeditions
- .5-9         Other standard subdivisions of travel  
              Class travel in specific continents, countries, localities in 913-919
- 911          Historical geography  
              Growth and changes in political divisions  
              Add area notations 1-9 to 911  
              Class general geography of ancient world [*formerly 911*] in 913
- 912          Graphic representations of earth's surface  
              Atlases, maps, charts, plans  
              *For map projections, see 526.8*
- .014 8         Map scales and symbols [*formerly 526.88*]
- .1            Specific subjects and regions
- .100 1-.189 9      Specific subjects  
                    Divide like 001-899, e.g., maps locating art centers  
                    912.17
- .19           Regions  
                    Divide like area notation 1, e.g., maps of Western Hemisphere  
                    [*formerly 912.2*] 912.198 12
- [.2]          Western Hemisphere  
              Class in 912.198 12
- .3-9         Specific continents, countries, localities  
              Add area notations 3-9 to 912

## General geography

### 913–919 Geography of specific continents, countries, localities

Scope: comprehensive works on geography and history of specific continents, countries, localities

If preferred, class in 930–990

Class history of specific continents, countries, localities in 930–990, geography of regions in 910.091

*For historical geography, see 911; graphic representations of earth's surface, 912*

### 913 Geography of ancient world [*formerly 911*]

Including prehistoric archeology [*formerly 571*]

Use 913.001–913.008 for standard subdivisions

Class archeology of modern period [*formerly 913*] in 914–919

.02 The earth (Physical geography)

.03 Man and his civilization [*formerly also 901.9*]

.031 Archeology

Study of man's past civilizations thru discovery, collection, interpretation of his material remains

.031 028 Techniques

.031 028 2 Discovery of remains

.031 028 3 Excavation of remains

.031 028 5 Interpretation of remains

913.031 1 – 913.031 6 Specific archeological ages

.031 1 Eolithic Age

.031 2 Paleolithic (Old Stone) Age

.031 3 Mesolithic Age

.031 4 Neolithic (New Stone) Age

.031 5 Copper and Bronze Age

.031 6 Iron Age

.032–.035 Specific periods

Divide like standard subdivisions 090 12 – 090 15, e.g., civilization of 1st century A.D. 913.035

*For specific archeological ages, see 913.031 1 – 913.031 6*



## *Decimal Classification*

### 913.04 Travel

Divide like standard subdivision 090 1, e.g., general travels in 5th century A.D. 913.045

### .09 Regions

Not limited by continent, country, locality

Add area notation 1 to 913.09

### .3 Continents, countries, localities

Add area notation 3 to 913, e.g., geography of ancient Italian peninsula 913.37; then add further as instructed under 914-919, e.g., travel under Roman Republic 913.370 42



## 914-919 Geography of modern world

Including archeology of modern period [*formerly* 913]

Add area notations 4-9 to 91, e.g., geography of British Isles 914.2; then add further as follows:

001-008 Standard subdivisions

02 The earth (Physical geography)

03 Man and his civilization

Scope: archeology

Divide like historical periods in subdivisions of 930-990

04 Travel

Divide like historical periods in subdivisions of 930-990

09 Regions

Divide like area notation 1, e.g., rivers 096 93

A specific example of addition under a place appears at 914.2

Class customs of specific continents, countries, localities in modern world [*formerly* 914-919] in 390.09

## 914 Europe

Add area notation 4 to 91; then add further as instructed under 914-919; an example follows

### .2 British Isles

Use 914.200 1 - 914.200 8 for standard subdivisions

[.200 9] Regions

Do not use; class in 914.209

## *General geography*

- 914.202      **The earth (Physical geography)**
- .203      **Man and his civilization**
- Scope: archeology
- Divide like 942.01–942.08, e.g., civilization of Stuart England 914.203 6
- .204      **Travel**
- Divide like 942.01–942.08, e.g., travel in later 20th century England 914.204 85
- .209      **Regions**
- Divide like area notation 1, e.g., geography of rivers in British Isles 914.209 693
- 915      Asia**
- Add area notation 5 to 91; then add further as instructed under 914–919, e.g., the earth of Japan 915.202
- 916      Africa**
- Add area notation 6 to 91; then add further as instructed under 914–919, e.g., geography of South African mountain areas 916.809 43
- 917      North America**
- Add area notation 7 to 91; then add further as instructed under 914–919, e.g., Southern home life [*formerly* 973.784] 917.503 7
- .03      **Man and his civilization**
- Class Indians in 970.1
- 918      South America**
- Add area notation 8 to 91; then add further as instructed under 914–919, e.g., 20th century civilization of Brazil 918.103 6
- .03      **Man and his civilization**
- Class Indians in 980.1
- 919      Other parts of world**
- Add area notation 9 to 91; then add further as instructed under 914–919, e.g., civilization of Australia 919.403

## *Decimal Classification*

### **920 General biography, genealogy, insignia**

Including biography of Indians of North America [*formerly* 970.2], of South America [*formerly* 980.2], of slaves [*formerly* 326.92]

Use 920.000 1 – 920.000 9 for standard subdivisions

Class biography of persons associated with a specific subject with the subject

**.001–.008 Standard subdivisions of biography**

Class writing biography [*formerly* 920.002] in 808.066

**.009 Historical and geographical treatment of biography**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in  
920.03–920.09

920.02–920.09 General collections of biography

**.02 Not limited geographically**

**.03–.09 By continent, country, locality**

Add area notations 3–9 to 920.0, e.g., collections of biographies of Englishmen 920.042

► **920.1–928.9 Biography of specific classes of persons**

(Optional; prefer standard subdivision 092)

**.1 \*Bibliographers**

**.2 \*Librarians and book collectors**

**.3 \*Encyclopedists**

**.4 \*Publishers and booksellers**

**.5 \*Journalists and news commentators**

**.7 \*Persons by sex**

**.71 \*Men**

**.72 \*Women**

**.9 \*Persons associated with other subjects**

Not provided for in 920.1–920.5, 921–928

Divide like 001–999, e.g., astrologers 920.913 35

Optional; prefer standard subdivision 092

**921      \*Philosophers and psychologists**

►                      **921.1–921.8 Modern Western philosophers and psychologists**

.1      **\*United States and Canadian**

.2      **\*British**

English, Scottish, Irish, Welsh

.3      **\*German and Austrian**

.4      **\*French**

.5      **\*Italian**

.6      **\*Spanish and Portuguese**

.7      **\*Russian**

.8      **\*Other**

Add area notations 4–9 to 921.8

.9      **\*Ancient, medieval, Oriental**

Divide like 181–189, e.g., Aristotelian philosophers 921.95

**922      \*Religious leaders, thinkers, workers**

Scope: collected biographies of communicants of specific religions and sects

**922.1–922.8 Christians**

.1      **\*Apostolic and Oriental churches**

Add area notations 3–9 to 922.1

.2      **\*Roman Catholics**

.21      **\*Popes**

.22      **\*Saints**

.24–.29      **\*Other**

Add area notations 4–9 to 922.2

.3      **\*Anglicans**

Add area notations 4–9 to 922.3

Optional; prefer standard subdivision 092

*Decimal Classification*

- 922.4      \*Lutherans, Huguenots, continental Protestants**  
Add area notations 4–9 to 922.4
- .5          \*Presbyterians, Congregationalists, American Reformed**  
Add area notations 4–9 to 922.5
- .6          \*Baptists, Disciples of Christ, Adventists**  
Add area notations 4–9 to 922.6
- .7          \*Methodists**  
Add area notations 4–9 to 922.7
- .8          \*Members of other Christian sects**
- .81        \*Unitarians and Universalists**  
Add area notations 4–9 to 922.81
- .83        \*Latter-Day Saints (Mormons)**  
Add area notations 4–9 to 922.83
- .84        \*Swedenborgians**  
Add area notations 4–9 to 922.84
- .85        \*Christian Scientists**  
Add area notations 4–9 to 922.85
- .86        \*Friends (Quakers)**  
Add area notations 4–9 to 922.86
- .87        \*Mennonites**  
Add area notations 4–9 to 922.87
- .88        \*Shakers**  
Add area notations 4–9 to 922.88
- .89        \*Others**
- .9        \*Adherents of other religions**
- .91        \*Atheists, Deists, Theosophists**

\* Optional; prefer standard subdivision 092

- 922.94      **\*Adherents of Brahmanism and related religions**
- .943      **\*Buddhists**
- .944      **\*Jains**
- .945      **\*Hindus**
- .95      **\*Parsees**
- .96      **\*Adherents of Judaism**
- .97      **\*Moslems**
- .99      **\*Others**

**923      \*Persons in social sciences**

**.1      \*Heads of state**

Kings, queens, presidents

Add area notations 3-9 to 923.1

**.2      \*Persons in political science**

Legislators, governors, politicians, statesmen, diplomats, nobility

Add area notations 3-9 to 923.2

*For heads of state, see 923.1*

**.3      \*Persons in economics**

**.31      \*Labor leaders**

Add area notations 3-9 to 923.31

**.33-.39      \*Others**

Add area notations 3-9 to 923.3

**.4      \*Persons in law**

**.41      \*Criminals**

Add area notations 3-9 to 923.41

**.43-.49      \*Others**

Add area notations 3-9 to 923.4

Optional; prefer standard subdivision 092

## *Decimal Classification*

### **923.5      \*Public administrators and military persons**

Add area notations 3–9 to 923.5

*For heads of state, see 923.1; legislators, governors, politicians, statesmen, 923.2*

### **.6          \*Philanthropists, humanitarians, social reformers**

Add area notations 3–9 to 923.6

### **.7          \*Educators**

Add area notations 3–9 to 923.7

### **.8          \*Persons in commerce, communication, transportation**

Add area notations 3–9 to 923.8

### **.9          \*Explorers, geographers, pioneers, frontiersmen**

Add area notations 3–9 to 923.9

### **924        \*Philologists and lexicographers**

Divide like 420–490, e.g., Hispanic philologists 924.6

### **925        \*Scientists**

Divide like 510–590, e.g., botanists 925.8

### **926        \*Persons in technology**

Divide like 610–690, e.g., engineers 926.2

Class publishers and booksellers in 920.4

### **927        \*Persons in the arts**

Divide like 710–790, e.g., baseball players 927.963 57

*For persons in literature, see 928*

### **928        \*Persons in literature**

Writers and critics of belles-lettres, historians, biographers

Divide like 810–890, e.g., Russian writers 928.917

\* Optional; prefer standard subdivision 092

*General biography, genealogy, insignia*

**929      Genealogy, names, insignia**

**.1      Genealogy**

*For sources, see 929.3; family histories, 929.2*

**.2      Family histories**

*For royal houses, peerage, gentry, see 929.7*

**.3      Genealogical sources**

Registers, wills, tax lists, census records, court records compiled for genealogical purposes

*For epitaphs, see 929.5*

**.4      Personal names**

**.5      Epitaphs**

**.6      Heraldry**

*For armorial bearings, see 929.8*

**.7      Royal houses, peerage, landed gentry**

Scope: rank, precedence, titles of honor

**.709      Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by country in 929.72–929.79

**.71      Orders of knighthood**

*For Christian orders of knighthood, see 271.79*

►      929.72–929.79 Treatment by country

**.72      Great Britain and Ireland**

**.73–.79      Other countries of Europe**

Divide like area notations 43–49, e.g., royal houses of France 929.74

**.799 9      Countries outside Europe**

Add area notations 3–9 to 929.799 9

**.8      Armorial bearings**

Coats of arms, crests, seals

**.9      Flags**

National, state, ship, ownership flags

Class military use in 355.15



► **930–990 Geographical treatment of  
general history**

History of specific continents, countries, localities

(Optional: geography of specific places; prefer 913–919)

Class regional treatment of general history in 909.09

Add area notations 3–9 to 9, e.g., general history of British Isles  
942; then, unless otherwise specified, add further as follows:

001–008      Standard subdivisions

009          Regions

Divide like area notation 1, e.g., cite

009 732

01–09      Historical periods

As shown in the schedules that follow

Unless others are specified, divide historical periods under each  
subdivision of a country like those under the country

A specific example of addition under a place appears at 938

**930 The ancient world to ca. 500 A.D.**

Use 930.01–930.09 for standard subdivisions and regions

Divide like standard subdivision 090 1, e.g., world history in the 1st  
century A.D. 930.5

**931 \*China to 420 A.D.**

**932 \*Egypt**

.01      Earliest history to 332 B.C.

.02      Greco-Roman period, 332 B.C.–640 A.D.

**933 \*Palestine to 70 A.D.**

**934 \*India**

.01      Early civilizations to ca. 1500 B.C.

.02      Vedic period, ca. 1500–ca. 600 B.C.

.03      Growth of civilizations, ca. 600–ca. 322 B.C.

.04      Mauryas, ca. 322–185 B.C.

.05      Changing dynasties, 185 B.C.–318 A.D.

.06      Guptas, 318–500

.07      Invasions and reign of Harsha, 500–647

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

**935 \*Mesopotamia and Iranian Plateau**

- .01 Elamite, Sumerian, Akkadian period to ca. 1900 B.C.
- .02 Babylonian Empire and Kingdom of Mitanni, ca. 1900–ca. 900 B.C.
- .03 Assyrian Empire, ca. 900–625 B.C.
- .04 Median and Neo-Babylonian (Chaldean) Empires, 625–550 B.C.
- .05 Persian Empire, 550–332 B.C.
- .06 Hellenistic, Seleucid, Parthian periods, 332 B.C.–226 A.D.
- .07 Neo-Persian (Sassanian) Empire, 226–642

**936 \*Europe north and west of Italian peninsula**

**937 \*Italian peninsula and adjacent territories**

- .01 Earliest period and Roman Kingdom to ca. 500 B.C.
- .02 Roman Republic, ca. 500–31 B.C.

*For specific periods, see 937.03–937.05*

937.03–937.05 Specific periods under the Republic

- .03 Unification of Italy, ca. 500–264 B.C.
- .04 Punic Wars, 264–146 B.C.
- .05 Civil strife, 146–31 B.C.
- .06 Roman Empire, 31 B.C.–476 A.D.

*For specific periods, see 937.07–937.09*

937.07–937.09 Specific periods under the Empire

- .07 Early and middle periods, 31 B.C.–284 A.D.
- .08 Period of absolutism, 284–395
- .09 Final period, 395–476

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

## *Decimal Classification*

### **938 Greece**

.001-.008 Standard subdivisions

.009 Regions

Divide like area notation 1, e.g., history of cities of ancient Greece 938.009 732

938.01-938.09 Historical periods

.01 Mythical age to 775 B.C.

.02 Formation of states, 775-500 B.C.

.03 Persian Wars, 500-479 B.C.

.04 Athenian supremacy, 479-431 B.C.

.05 Peloponnesian War, 431-404 B.C.

.06 Spartan and Theban supremacy, 404-362 B.C.

.07 Macedonian era, 362-323 B.C.

.08 Hellenistic period, 323-146 B.C.

.09 Roman era, 146 B.C.-323 A.D.



938.1-938.9 Geographical divisions

.1 \*Macedonia

Add 0 and divide like 938.01-938.09, e.g., Hellenistic period 938.108

.2 \*Thessaly, Epirus, adjacent Ionian islands

Add 0 and divide like 938.01-938.09, e.g., Roman era 938.209

.3 \*Acarnania, Aetolia, Locris, Doris, Phocis, Ithaca

Add 0 and divide like 938.01-938.09, e.g., Persian Wars period 938.303

.4 \*Boeotia, Megaris, Euboea

Add 0 and divide like 938.01-938.09, e.g., mythical age 938.401

\* Add as instructed under 930-990

*General history of ancient world*

**938.5      \*Attica**

Add 0 and divide like 938.01–938.09, e.g., under Pericles 938.504

**.6      \*Peloponnesus and adjacent Ionian islands**

Add 0 and divide like 938.01–938.09, e.g., under Spartan supremacy 938.606

**.7      \*Corinthia and Achaea**

Add 0 and divide like 938.01–938.09, e.g., Peloponnesian War period 938.705

**.8      \*Elis, Arcadia, Argolis**

Add 0 and divide like 938.01–938.09, e.g., Macedonian era 938.807

**.9      \*Messenia, Laconia, Sparta**

Add 0 and divide like 938.01–938.09, e.g., period of formation of states 938.902

**939      Other parts of ancient world to ca. 640 A.D.**

**.1      \*Greek Archipelago**

Add 0 and divide like 938.01–938.09, e.g., Hellenistic period 939.108

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

► **940–990 The modern world**

**940 Europe**

From fall of Rome, 476, to present

Use 940.01–940.09 for standard subdivisions and regions

**SUMMARY**

- 940.1 Middle Ages, 476–1453
- .2 Modern period, 1453–
- .3 World War I, 1914–1918
- .4 Military history of World War I (Conduct of the war)
- .5 20th century, 1918–
  
- .1 Middle Ages, 476–1453
- .11 Invasions and rise of new nations, 476–800
- .14 Age of feudalism, 800–1100
- .17 Later Middle Ages, 1100–1453
  - For period of the Crusades, see 940.18*
- .18 Period of the Crusades, 1096–1270
  
- .2 Modern period, 1453–
  - Class here 15th century
  - For World War I, see 940.3; 20th century, 1918–940.5*
- .21 Renaissance period, 1453–1517
- .22 Reformation to French Revolution, 1517–1789
  - For 1517–1648, see 940.23; 1648–1789, 940.25*
- .23 Reformation period, 1517–1648
  - For Thirty Years' War, see 940.24*
- .232 16th century, 1517–1618
- .24 Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648

## *General history of Europe*

- 940.25      Late 17th and 18th centuries, 1648–1789
- .252      1648–1715
- Class here 17th century
- .252 6      War of the Spanish Succession, 1701–1714
- .253      18th century, 1715–1789
- .253 2      War of the Austrian Succession, 1740–1748
- .253 4      Seven Years' War, 1756–1763
- .27      Napoleonic era and wars, 1789–1815
- Including Napoleonic wars in specific European countries  
            [formerly 941–949]
- .28      19th century, 1815–1914
- .282      1815–1830
- .283      1830–1848
- .284      Year of revolution, 1848
- .285      1848–1860
- .286      1860–1870
- .287      1870–1900
- .288      1900–1914
- .3      World War I, 1914–1918
- For military history, see 940.4
- .302 2      Audio-visual materials [formerly 940.49]
- .31      Social, political, economic history
- For diplomatic history, see 940.32
- .311      Causes
- .311 2      Political and diplomatic
- .311 3      Economic
- .311 4      Social and psychological
- .312      Efforts to preserve or restore peace

## *Decimal Classification*

- 940.314 Political, diplomatic, economic results  
Class results in and effects on a specific country with history of the country
- .314 1 Treaties and conferences  
*For consequences of treaties and conferences, see 940.314 2*
- .314 2 Consequences of treaties and conferences
- .314 22 Reparations
- .314 24 Territorial questions
- .314 25 Establishment of new nations
- .314 26 Establishment of mandates
- .314 4 Reconstruction
- .315 Relation of specific classes of persons to the war  
Use 940.315 000 1 – 940.315 000 9 for standard subdivisions  
Class participation of specific classes of persons in the conduct of the war in 940.4  
*For noncombatants, pacifists, enemy sympathizers, see 940.316*
- .315 001–.315 199 Generalists, philosophers, psychologists  
Divide like 001–199, e.g., librarians and the war 940.315 02
- .315 2 Clergy and church groups
- .315 21–.315 28 Major Christian groups  
Divide like 281–288, e.g., Roman Catholic Church and the war 940.315 22
- .315 289 Other Christian groups  
Divide like 289, e.g., Friends and the war 940.315 289 6
- .315 29 Other religious groups and their clergy  
Divide like 294–299, e.g., rabbis and the war 940.315 296
- .315 3–.315 8 Other classes of persons  
Divide like 300–800, e.g., musicians and the war 940.315 78
- .315 9 Refugees

## *General history of Europe*

- 940.316 Noncombatants, pacifists, enemy sympathizers
  - .316 1 Children and other noncombatants
  - .316 2 Pacifists
  - .316 3 Enemy sympathizers
- .32 Diplomatic history
  - For diplomatic causes, see 940.311 2; efforts to preserve or restore peace, 940.312; diplomatic results, 940.314*
  - .322 Allies and associated powers
    - Add area notations 4-9 to 940.322
  - .324 Central Powers
    - Add area notations 4-9 to 940.324
  - .325 Neutrals
    - Add area notations 4-9 to 940.325
  - .33 Participation of specific groups of countries
    - For participation of specific countries, see 940.34-940.39; a specific activity, the subject, e.g., diplomatic history 940.32*
    - .332 Allies and associated powers
    - .334 Central Powers
    - .335 Neutrals
  - .34-.39 Participation of specific countries
    - Scope: mobilization in specific countries
    - Add area notations 4-9 to 940.3
    - For military participation of specific countries, see 940.409; a specific activity, the subject, e.g., efforts to preserve or restore peace 940.312*
- .4 Military history of World War I (Conduct of the war)
  - Use 940.400 1 - 940.400 8 for standard subdivisions
  - .401 Strategy
    - .401 2 Allies and associated powers
    - .401 3 Central Powers



## *Decimal Classification*

- 940.402 Mobilization  
*For mobilization in specific countries, see 940.34–940.39*
- .403 Racial minorities as troops
- .405 Repressive measures and atrocities  
*For internment camps, see 940.472*
- .409 Military participation of specific countries  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.409

## SUMMARY

- 940.41 Land operations
- .42–.43 Specific land campaigns and battles
- .44 Aerial operations
- .45 Naval operations
- .46 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
- .47 Prisons, health, social services
- .48 Other topics
- .41 Land operations  
Scope: combined operations  
*For specific land campaigns and battles, see 940.42–940.43; aerial operations, 940.44; naval operations, 940.45*
- 940.412–940.413 Military units  
Scope: organization, history, rosters, service records  
Class units engaged in a special service with the subject  
*For operations in specific theaters, see 940.414–940.416; rolls of honor and lists of dead, 940.467*
- .412 Of Allies and associated powers  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.412
- .413 Of Central Powers  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.413
- 940.414–940.416 Operations in specific theaters
- .414 In Europe
- .414 3 German fronts

## *General history of Europe*

940.414 4      French front  
                  Class here western front  
                  *For German fronts, see 940.414 3*

.414 5      Italian front

.414 7      Russian front  
                  Class here eastern front  
                  *For German fronts, see 940.414 3*

.415      In Asia

.416      In Africa

---

### 940.42-940.43 Specific land campaigns and battles

.42      1914-1916

.421      1914, western front

.422      1914, eastern front

.423      1914, other areas

.424      1915, western and Austro-Italian fronts

.425      1915, eastern front

.426      1915, other areas

.427      1916, European fronts

.427 2      Western and Austro-Italian fronts

.427 5      Eastern front

.429      1916, other areas

.429 1      Asia Minor

.43      1917-1918

.431      1917, western and Austro-Italian fronts

.432      1917, eastern front

.433      1917, other areas

.434      1918, western and Austro-Italian fronts

                  Including final German offensives

*For final allied offensives, see 940.435-940.436*

## *Decimal Classification*

940.435-940.436 Final allied offensives

940.435 July 18-September 24

.436 September 25-November 11

.437 1918, eastern front

.438 1918, other areas

.439 Armistice, November 11, 1918

.44 Aerial operations

.441 Services

Observation, scouting, artillery, detecting, range finding, signaling, bombing, auxiliary land and naval fighting, antisubmarine activities, coast patrol

*For specific events, see 940.444-940.448*

442 Air raids

*For specific events, see 940.444-940.448*

.443 Bases

---

940.444-940.448 Specific events

444 Of 1914

445 Of 1915

446 Of 1916

447 Of 1917

448 Of 1918

.449 Operations of specific countries

Scope: aircraft, fliers, units

Add area notations 4-9 to 940.449

*For specific events, see 940.444-940.448*

45 Naval operations

451 Submarine warfare

451 2 German use

451 3 Allied use

Add area notations 4-9 to 940.451 3

## *General history of Europe*

- 940.451 4            Specific events
- .451 6            Antisubmarine warfare
- .452            Blockades and blockade running  
                    *For specific events, see 940.454–940.458*
- .453            Bases
- 940.454–940.458 Specific events  
                    *For specific events in submarine warfare, see 940.451 4*
- .454            Of 1914
- .455            Of 1915
- .456            Of 1916
- .457            Of 1917
- .458            Of 1918
- .459            Operations of specific countries  
                    Scope: ships, crews, units  
                    Add area notations 4–9 to 940.459  
                    *For specific events, see 940.454–940.458*
- .46            Celebrations, commemorations, memorials  
                    Including commemorative meetings, flag presentations,  
                    decorations and awards  
                    Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific  
                    event with the event
- .465            Monuments and cemeteries  
                    Add area notations 4–9 to 940.465
- .467            Rolls of honor and lists of dead  
                    Add area notations 4–9 to 940.467
- .47            Prisons, health, social services
- .472            Prisons and internment camps  
                    Add area notations 4–9 to 940.472, e.g., prison and intern-  
                    ment camps maintained by Germany 940.472 43
- .473            Exchange of prisoners

## Decimal Classification

---

- 940.475      Medical services  
                 *For hospitals, see 940.476*
- .475 2      Sanitary affairs
- .475 3      Ambulance companies
- .475 4-.475 9      Services of specific countries  
                 Add area notations 4-9 to 940.475
- .476      Hospitals
- .476 3      In specific places  
                 Add area notations 4-9 to 940.476 3  
                 *For hospitals maintained by specific countries, see*  
                 *940.476 4 - 940.476 9*
- .476 4-.476 9      Maintained by specific countries  
                 Add area notations 4-9 to 940.476
- .477      Relief and welfare work
- .477 1      Activities of Red Cross
- .477 8      Activities conducted by specific countries  
                 Add area notations 4-9 to 940.477 8  
                 *For activities of Red Cross, see 940.477 1*
- .477 9      Activities in specific places  
                 Add area notations 4-9 to 940.477 9  
                 *For activities conducted by specific countries, see*  
                 *940.477 8; activities of Red Cross, 940.477 1*
- .478      Religious life and chaplain services
- .48      Other topics

---

### 940.481-940.482 Personal narratives

Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject

- .481      Individuals from Allies and associated powers  
                 Add area notations 4-9 to 940.481
- .482      Individuals from Central Powers  
                 Add area notations 4-9 to 940.482

## *General history of Europe*

- 940.483–940.484 Military life and customs
- 940.483 Of Allies and associated powers  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.483, e.g., life in United States Navy 940.483 73
- .484 Of Central Powers  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.484, e.g., life in Luftwaffe 940.484 43
- .485 Secret service and spies  
*For secret service and spies of Allies and associated powers, see 940.486; of Central Powers, 940.487*
- .486 Secret service and spies of Allies and associated powers  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.486
- .487 Secret service and spies of Central Powers  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.487
- .488 Propaganda
- .488 6 By Allies and associated powers  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.488 6
- .488 7 By Central Powers  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.488 7
- .488 9 Propaganda in specific countries  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.488 9  
Class propaganda by one side or one country in 940.488 6 – 940.488 7
- [.49] Audio-visual materials  
Class in 940.302 2
- .5 20th century, 1918–
- .51 1918–1930
- .52 1930–1939

## *Decimal Classification*

- 940.53            World War II, 1939–1945  
                    *For military history, see 940.54*
- .530 22            Audio-visual materials [*formerly 940.549*]
- .531                Social, political, economic history  
                    *For diplomatic history, see 940.532*
- .531 1             Causes
- .531 12            Political and diplomatic
- .531 13            Economic
- .531 14            Social and psychological
- .531 2             Efforts to preserve or restore peace
- .531 4             Political, diplomatic, economic results  
                    Including conferences, treaties  
                    Class results in and effects on a specific country with  
                    history of the country
- .531 44            Reconstruction
- .531 5             Relation of specific classes of persons to the war  
                    Use 940.531 500 01 – 940.531 500 09 for standard  
                    subdivisions  
                    Class participation of specific classes of persons in the  
                    conduct of the war in 940.54  
                    *For noncombatants, pacifists, enemy sympathizers, see*  
                    940.531 6
- .531 500 1–.531 519 9    Generalists, philosophers, psychologists  
                    Divide like 001–199, e.g., librarians and the war  
                    940.531 502
- .531 52            Clergy and church groups
- .531 521–.531 528        Major Christian groups  
                    Divide like 281–288, e.g., Roman Catholic Church  
                    and the war 940.531 522
- .531 528 9            Other Christian groups  
                    Divide like 289, e.g., Friends and the war  
                    940.531 528 96
- .531 529            Other religious groups and their clergy  
                    Divide like 294–299, e.g., rabbis and the war  
                    940.531 529 6

## *General history of Europe*

---

- 940.531 53--531 58      Other classes of persons  
                                Divide like 300-800, e.g., musicians and the war  
                                940.531 578
- .531 59                    Refugees
- .531 6                    Noncombatants, pacifists, enemy sympathizers
- .531 61                   Children and other noncombatants
- .531 62                   Pacifists
- .531 63                   Enemy sympathizers
- .532                    Diplomatic history  
                                *For diplomatic causes, see 940.531 12; efforts to preserve or  
                                restore peace, 940.531 2; diplomatic results, 940.531 4*
- .532 2                    United Nations  
                                Including anti-Axis national groups, governments in exile  
                                Add area notations 4-9 to 940.532 2
- .532 4                    Axis Powers  
                                Including pro-Axis national groups  
                                Add area notations 4-9 to 940.532 4
- .532 5                    Neutrals  
                                Add area notations 4-9 to 940.532 5
- .533                    Participation of specific groups of countries  
                                *For participation of specific countries, see 940.534-940.539;  
                                a specific activity, the subject, e.g., diplomatic history  
                                940.532*
- .533 2                    United Nations
- .533 4                    Axis Powers
- .533 5                    Neutrals
- .533 6                    Occupied countries  
                                *For countries occupied by Axis Powers, see 940.533 7; by  
                                United Nations, 940.533 8*
- .533 7                    Countries occupied by Axis Powers
- .533 8                    Countries occupied by United Nations



## Decimal Classification

- 940.534-.539      Participation of specific countries
- Scope: governments in exile, underground movements, anti-Axis national groups, pro-Axis national groups, mobilization
- Add area notations 4-9 to 940.53
- For military participation of specific countries, see 940.540 9; a specific activity, the subject, e.g., efforts to preserve or restore peace 940.531 2*

- .54      Military history of World War II (Conduct of the war)
- Use 940.540 01 - 940.540 08 for standard subdivisions

- .540 1      Strategy
- .540 12      United Nations
- .540 13      Axis Powers
- .540 2      Mobilization
- For mobilization in specific countries, see 940.534-940.539*
- .540 3      American Negroes and Indians as troops
- .540 4      Other ethnic groups as troops
- .540 5      Repressive measures and atrocities
- For internment camps, see 940.547 2*
- .540 9      Military participation of specific countries
- Add area notations 4-9 to 940.540 9

## SUMMARY

- 940.541      Operations
- .542      Specific campaigns and battles
- .544      Aerial operations
- .545      Naval operations
- .546      Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
- .547      Prisons, health, social services
- .548      Other topics
- .541      Operations
- For specific campaigns and battles, see 940.542; aerial operations, 940.544; naval operations, 940.545*

## *General history of Europe*

940.541 2 – 940.541 3 Military units

Scope: organization, history, rosters, service records

Class units engaged in a special service with the subject

*For rolls of honor and lists of dead, see 940.546 7*

940.541 2

Of United Nations

Add area notations 4–9 to 940.541 2

.541 3

Of Axis Powers

Add area notations 4–9 to 940.541 3

.542

Specific campaigns and battles

.542 1

In European theater

.542 3

In Middle East and African theaters

.542 5

In east and southeast Asian and East Indian theaters

.542 6

In Pacific Ocean theater

*For East Indian theater, see 940.542 5*

.542 8

In American theater

.542 9

In other areas

.544

Aerial operations

Scope: combined air and naval operations

Including antiaircraft defenses

*For naval operations, see 940.545*

.544 1

Services

Observation, scouting, range finding, signaling, bombing, auxiliary land and naval fighting, antisubmarine operations, coast patrol, balloon barrage

.544 2

Campaigns and battles

*For specific campaigns and battles, see 940.542*

.544 3

Bases

Add area notations 4–9 to 940.544 3, e.g., air bases in England 940.544 342

### *Decimal Classification*

- 940.544 9      Operations of specific countries  
                  Scope: aircraft, fliers, units  
                  Add area notations 4–9 to 940.544 9  
                  *For campaigns and battles, see 940.544 2*
- .545            Naval operations  
                  *For specific campaigns and battles, see 940.542*
- .545 1           Submarine warfare
- .545 16          Antisubmarine warfare
- .545 2           Blockades and blockade running
- .545 3           Bases
- .545 9           Operations of specific countries  
                  Scope: ships, crews, units  
                  Add area notations 4–9 to 940.545 9
- .546            Celebrations, commemorations, memorials  
                  Including commemorative meetings, flag presentations,  
                  decorations and awards  
                  Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific  
                  event with the event
- .546 5           Monuments and cemeteries  
                  Add area notations 4–9 to 940.546 5
- .546 7           Rolls of honor and lists of dead  
                  Add area notations 4–9 to 940.546 7
- .547            Prisons, health, social services
- .547 2           Prisons and internment camps  
                  Add area notations 4–9 to 940.547 2, e.g., prison and  
                  internment camps maintained by Germany 940.547 243
- .547 3           Exchange of prisoners

## *General history of Europe*

---

- 940.547 5            Medical services  
                         *For hospitals, see 940.547 6*
- .547 52            Sanitary affairs
- .547 53            Ambulance companies
- .547 54-.547 59    Services of specific countries  
                         Add area notations 4-9 to 940.547 5
- .547 6            Hospitals
- .547 63            In specific places  
                         Add area notations 4-9 to 940.547 63  
                         *For hospitals maintained by specific countries, see*  
                         *940.547 64 - 940.547 69*
- .547 64-.547 69    Maintained by specific countries  
                         Add area notations 4-9 to 940.547 6
- .547 7            Relief and welfare work
- .547 71            Activities of Red Cross
- .547 78            Activities conducted by specific countries  
                         Add area notations 4-9 to 940.547 78  
                         *For activities of Red Cross, see 940.547 71*
- .547 79            Activities in specific places  
                         Add area notations 4-9 to 940.547 79  
                         *For activities conducted by specific countries,*  
                         *940.547 78; activities of Red Cross, 940.547 71*
- .547 8            Religious life and chaplain services
- .548            Other topics
- 940.548 1 - 940.548 2 Personal narratives  
                         Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject
- .548 1            Individuals from United Nations  
                         Add area notations 4-9 to 940.548 1
- .548 2            Individuals from Axis Powers  
                         Add area notations 4-9 to 940.548 2

## *Decimal Classification*

- 940.548 3 – 940.548 4 Military life and customs
- 940.548 3 Of United Nations  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.548 3, e.g., life in United States Navy 940.548 373
- .548 4 Of Axis Powers  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.548 4, e.g., life in Luftwaffe 940.548 443
- .548 5 Unconventional warfare  
Intelligence, subversion, sabotage, infiltration  
*For unconventional warfare of United Nations, 940.548 6; of Axis Powers, 940.548 7; psychological warfare, 940.548 8*
- .548 6 Unconventional warfare of United Nations  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.548 6
- .548 7 Unconventional warfare of Axis Powers  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.548 7
- .548 8 Psychological warfare (Propaganda)
- .548 86 By United Nations  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.548 86
- .548 87 By Axis Powers  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.548 87
- .548 89 Propaganda in specific countries  
Add area notations 4–9 to 940.548 89  
Class propaganda by one side or one country in 940.548 86 – 940.548 87
- [.549] Audio-visual materials  
Class in 940.530 22
- .55 Later 20th century, 1945–

## *General history of Europe*



### **941–949 Specific parts of Europe**

Class Napoleonic wars in specific European countries [*formerly* 941–949] in 940.27

#### **941 Scotland and Ireland**

Use 941.000 1 – 941.000 9 for standard subdivisions and regions

.001–.009      Standard subdivisions and regions of Scotland

941.01–941.08 Historical periods of Scotland

.01      Gaelic period to 1057

.02      Efforts at control by England, 1057–1314

         Including Battle of Bannockburn, 1314

.03      Early period of independence, 1314–1424

.04      James I–James V, 1424–1542

.05      Reformation period, 1542–1603

.06      Personal union with England, 1603–1707

.07      18th century, 1707–1837

.08      19th–20th centuries, 1837–

.081      20th century, 1901–

#### **.5 Ireland**

Use 941.501–941.509 for standard subdivisions and regions

941.51–941.59 Historical periods

.51      Early history to 1086

         Including Battle of Clontarf, 1014

.52      Disorder and English conquest, 1086–1171

.53      Under House of Plantagenet, 1171–1399

.54      Under Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485

.55      Under Tudors, 1485–1603

.56      Under Stuarts, 1603–1691

.57      18th century, 1691–1800

## *Decimal Classification*

941.58      19th century, 1801–1900

.59      20th century, 1900–

            Including Irish Free State, Eire

.6      **\*Ulster**

            Class here Northern Ireland

[.605]      Under Government of Ireland Act, 1920–

            Class in 941.609

.609      Under Government of Ireland Act, 1920–  
            [formerly 941.605]

**942      \*British Isles**

### **SUMMARY**

942.01      Early history to 1066  
            .02      Norman period, 1066–1154  
            .03      House of Plantagenet, 1154–1399  
            .04      Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485  
            .05      Tudor period, 1485–1603  
            .06      Stuart period, 1603–1714  
            .07      House of Hanover, 1714–1837  
            .08      Victoria and House of Windsor, 1837–

.01      Early history to 1066

.02      Norman period, 1066–1154

.021      William I, 1066–1087

            Including Battle of Hastings

.022      William II, 1087–1100

.023      Henry I, 1100–1135

.024      Stephen, 1135–1154

.03      House of Plantagenet, 1154–1399

.031      Henry II, 1154–1189

.032      Richard I, 1189–1199

.033      John, 1199–1216

.034      Henry III, 1216–1272

.035      Edward I, 1272–1307

‘ Add as instructed under 930–990

*General history of Europe*

---

- 942.036 Edward II, 1307–1327  
.037 Edward III, 1327–1377  
*For Hundred Years' War, see 944.025*  
.038 Richard II, 1377–1399  
.04 Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485  
.041 Henry IV, 1399–1413  
.042 Henry V, 1413–1422  
.043 Henry VI, 1422–1461  
.044 Edward IV, 1461–1483  
.045 Edward V, 1483  
.046 Richard III, 1483–1485  
.05 Tudor period, 1485–1603  
.051 Henry VII, 1485–1509  
.052 Henry VIII, 1509–1547  
.053 Edward VI, 1547–1553  
.054 Mary, 1553–1558  
.055 Elizabeth I, 1558–1603  
.06 Stuart period, 1603–1714  
*For Anglo-Dutch Wars, see 949.204*  
.061 James I, 1603–1625  
.062 Charles I, 1625–1649  
.063 Commonwealth, 1649–1660  
*For protectorate of Oliver Cromwell, see 942.064; of Richard Cromwell, 942.065*  
.064 Oliver Cromwell, 1653–1658  
.065 Richard Cromwell, 1658–1659  
.066 Charles II, 1660–1685 (Restoration)  
.067 James II, 1685–1688  
.068 William III (of Orange) and Mary, 1689–1702  
.069 Anne, 1702–1714



## Decimal Classification

---

- 942.07      House of Hanover, 1714–1837
- .071      George I, 1714–1727
- .072      George II, 1727–1760
- .073      George III, 1760–1820  
            Including formation of United Kingdom
- .074      George IV, 1820–1830
- .075      William IV, 1830–1837
- .08      Victoria and House of Windsor, 1837–
- .081      Victoria, 1837–1901
- .082      20th century, 1901–  
            Including reign of Edward VII, 1901–1910  
            *For George V, see 942.083; period of World War II,*  
            *942.084; later 20th century, 942.085*
- .083      George V, 1910–1936
- .084      Period of World War II, 1936–1945  
            Reigns of Edward VIII, 1936 and George VI, 1936–1952
- .085      Later 20th century, 1945–  
            Reign of Elizabeth II, 1952–

## 943      Central Europe

Use 943.000 1 – 943.000 9 for standard subdivisions and regions

- .001–.009      Standard subdivisions and regions of Germany

943.01–943.08 Historical periods of Germany

### SUMMARY

- 943.01      Early period and Empire of Charlemagne to 843
- .02      Early Holy Roman Empire, 843–1519
- .03      Period of Reformation and Counterreformation,  
            1519–1618
- .04      17th century, 1618–1705
- .05      Rise of Prussia, 1705–1790
- .06      Period of Napoleonic Wars, 1790–1815
- .07      Unification, 1815–1866
- .08      Empire, Third Reich, republics, 1866–

## *General history of Europe*

- 943.01      Early period and Empire of Charlemagne to 843
- .02      Early Holy Roman Empire, 843–1519
- .021      Carolingian emperors, 843–911
- .022      Conrad I and Saxon emperors, 911–1024
- .023      Salian ( Franconian ) emperors and Lothair II,  
            1024–1137
- .024      Early Hohenstaufen period, 1138–1197
- .025      Later Hohenstaufen period and Interregnum,  
            1198–1273
- .026      Early Hapsburgs and others, 1273–1378
- .027      House of Luxemburg, 1378–1438
- .028      Albert II and Frederick III, 1438–1493
- .029      Maximilian I, 1493–1519
- .03      Period of Reformation and Counterreformation,  
            1519–1618
- .031      Charles V, 1519–1556  
            Including wars with France and Schmalkaldic League
- .032      Ferdinand I, 1556–1564
- .033      Maximilian II, 1564–1576
- .034      Rudolf II, 1576–1612
- .035      Matthias, 1612–1619
- .04      17th century, 1618–1705
- .041      Period of Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648  
            *For Matthias, see 943.035; Ferdinand II, 943.042;  
            Ferdinand III, 943.043*
- .042      Ferdinand II, 1619–1637
- .043      Ferdinand III, 1637–1657
- .044      Leopold I, 1658–1705
- .05      Rise of Prussia, 1705–1790
- .051      Joseph I, Emperor, 1705–1711
- .052      Charles VI, Emperor, 1711–1740

*Decimal Classification*

- 943.053      Frederick the Great, King of Prussia, 1740–1786  
                  *For Emperor Charles VII, see 943.054; Francis I, 943.055;  
                  Joseph II, 943.057*
- .054          Charles VII, Emperor, 1742–1745
- .055          Francis I, Emperor, 1745–1765  
                  Including period of Seven Years' War, 1756–1763 [*formerly*  
                  943.056]
- [.056]        Period of Seven Years' War  
                  Class in 943.055
- .057          Joseph II, Emperor, 1765–1790
- .06          Period of Napoleonic Wars, 1790–1815  
                  Including Confederation of the Rhine
- .07          Unification, 1815–1866  
                  Including Schleswig-Holstein Wars, 1864–1866
- .08          Empire, Third Reich, republics, 1866–
- .081         North German Confederation, 1866–1871  
                  *For Franco-German War, see 943.082*
- .082         Franco-German War, 1870–1871
- .083         William I, 1871–1888
- .084         Frederick and William II, 1888–1918
- .085         Weimar Republic, 1918–1933
- .086         Third Reich, 1933–1945
- .087         Later 20th century, 1945–
- .1          \*Northeastern Germany  
                  Class here East Germany
- .108 7       German Democratic Republic, 1949–

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

## *General history of Europe*

### **943.6      \*Austria**

- .602            Medieval period to 1500
- .603            16th to 18th centuries, 1500-1815
- .604            19th century, 1815-1919
- .605            20th century, 1919-

### **.7            \*Czechoslovakia**

- .702            Kingdom of Bohemia to 1918
- .703            Republic, 1918-1945
- .704            Later 20th century, 1945-

### **.8            \*Poland**

- .802            Early period to 1795
- .803            Period of foreign rule, 1795-1918
- .804            Republic, 1918-1939
- .805            Later 20th century, 1939-

### **.9            Other parts of central Europe**

#### **.91            \*Hungary**

- .910 2            Arpad dynasty, 894-1301
- .910 3            Period of elective kings, 1301-1526
- .910 4            Period of foreign rule, 1526-1918
- .910 5            20th century, 1918-

### **944            \*France**

#### **SUMMARY**

- 944.01            Early history to 987
- .02            Growth of royal power, 987-1589
- .03            House of Bourbon, 1589-1789
- .04            Revolution, 1789-1804
- .05            First Empire, 1804-1815
- .06            Restoration, 1815-1848
- .07            Second Republic and Second Empire, 1848-1870
- .08            Third, Fourth, Fifth Republics, 1870-
- .01            Early history to 987
  - Gaul; Merovingian dynasty, 486-751; Carolingian dynasty, 751-987

<sup>1</sup> Add as instructed under 930-990

### *Decimal Classification*

- 944.02      Growth of royal power, 987–1589  
              Including wars with Italy, 1494–1559
- 944.021–944.024 House of Capet, 987–1328
- .021          Hugh Capet, Robert II, Henry I, 987–1060
- .022          Philip I, Louis VI, Louis VII, 1060–1180
- .023          Philip II, Louis VIII, Louis IX, 1180–1270
- .024          Philip III, Philip IV, Louis X, John I, Philip V, Charles  
              IV, 1270–1328
- 944.025–944.027 House of Valois, 1328–1498
- .025          Philip VI, John II, Charles V, 1328–1380  
              Including Hundred Years' War
- .026          Charles VI and Charles VII, 1380–1461
- .027          Louis XI, Charles VIII, Louis XII, 1461–1515
- 944.028–944.029 House of Angoulême, 1515–1589
- .028          Francis I and Henry II, 1515–1559  
              *For wars with Charles V, see 943.031*
- .029          Francis II, Charles IX, Henry III, 1559–1589
- .03          House of Bourbon, 1589–1789
- .031          Henry IV, 1589–1610
- .032          Louis XIII, 1610–1643
- .033          Louis XIV, 1643–1715
- .034          Louis XV, 1715–1774
- .035          Louis XVI, 1774–1792
- .04          Revolution, 1789–1804
- .041          Period of Estates-General, National Assembly,  
              Legislative Assembly, 1789–1792
- .042          First Republic, 1792–1799  
              *For National Convention, see 944.043; Directory, 944.045*

## *General history of Europe*

- 944.043      National Convention, 1792-1795  
                     *For Reign of Terror, see 944.044*
- .044      Reign of Terror, 1793-1794
- .045      Directory, 1795-1799
- .046      Consulate, 1799-1804
- .05      First Empire, 1804-1815  
                     Including reign of Louis XVIII, 1814-1615; Hundred Days,  
                     1815  
                     *For Napoleonic Wars, see 940.27*
- .06      Restoration, 1815-1848
- .061      Louis XVIII, 1815-1824
- .062      Charles X, 1824-1830
- .063      Louis Philippe, 1830-1848 (July Monarchy)
- .07      Second Republic and Second Empire, 1848-1870
- .08      Third, Fourth, Fifth Republics, 1870-
- .081      Third Republic, 1870-1945  
                     *For Franco-German War, see 943.082*
- .081 4      Period of World War I, 1914-1918
- .081 5      Between the wars, 1918-1939
- .081 6      Period of World War II, 1939-1945
- .082      Fourth Republic, 1945-1958
- .083      Fifth Republic, 1958-

## 945      **\*Italy and adjacent territories**

- .01      Gothic and Lombard kingdoms, 476-774
- .02      Frankish rule, 774-962
- .03      German emperors, 962-1122
- .04      12th and 13th centuries, 1122-1300
- .05      Renaissance period, 1300-1494

\* Add as instructed under 930-990

### *Decimal Classification*

- 945.06      Period of European aggression, 1494–1796  
*For French wars with Italy, see 944.02; Spanish and Austrian domination, 1527–1796, 945.07*
- .07      Spanish and Austrian domination, 1527–1796
- .08      Growth of nationalism, 1796–1870
- .09      Unified kingdom, Fascist regime, Republic, 1870–  
            Including reigns of Victor Emmanuel II, Humbert I, Victor  
            Emmanuel III, 1870–1947
- .091      Fascist regime, 1918–1946
- .092      Republic, 1946–

## **946      Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands**

Use 946.000 1 – 946.000 9 for standard subdivisions and regions

- .001–.009      Standard subdivisions and regions of Spain
- 946.01–946.08 Historical periods of Spain
- .01      Early history to 711
- .02      Moorish dynasties, 711–1479
- .03      Union of Castile and Aragon, 1479–1516  
            Reign of Ferdinand V and Isabella I
- .04      Early Hapsburg rulers, 1516–1598  
            Charles I, Philip II
- .05      Later Hapsburg rulers, and Bourbon rulers, 1598–1808
- 946.051–946.053 Hapsburgs
- .051      Philip III, 1598–1621
- .052      Philip IV, 1621–1665
- .053      Charles II, 1665–1700
- .054      Bourbon rulers, 1700–1808  
            *For specific Bourbons, see 946.055–946.058*

► 946.055-946.058 Specific Bourbons

- 946.055 Philip V, 1700-1746  
Including War of Jenkins' Ear
- .056 Ferdinand VI, 1746-1759
- .057 Charles III, 1759-1788
- .058 Charles IV, 1788-1808
- .06 Period of Peninsular War and rule of Joseph Bonaparte,  
1808-1814
- .07 Bourbon restoration, 1814-1868  
Reigns of Ferdinand VII and Isabella II
- .08 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1868-  
Including revolution, 1868-1871; second Bourbon restoration,  
1871-1873; First Republic, 1873-1874; reigns of Alfonso XII  
and Alfonso XIII, 1875-1931  
*For Spanish-American War, see 973.89*
- .081 Second Republic, 1931-1939
- .082 Regime of Francisco Franco, 1939-
- .9 \*Portugal
- .901 Early history to 1143
- .902 Rise and fall of empire, 1143-1640
- .903 Restoration of Portuguese monarchy, 1640-1910
- .904 20th century, 1910-  
Including Republic, 1910-1926; Novo Estado, 1933-

947 Eastern Europe

Use 947.000 1 - 947.000 9 for standard subdivisions and regions

- .001-.009 Standard subdivisions and regions of Russia

► 947.01-947.08 Historical periods of Russia

- .01 Origins to 862
- .02 Kievan period, 862-1240

\* Add as instructed under 930-990



### *Decimal Classification*

- 947.03 Tatar suzerainty, 1240–1480
- .04 Growth of nationalism, 1480–1689
  - Including Livonian War, 1557–1582
- .05 Peter I (the Great), 1689–1725
  - Including Great Northern War, 1700–1721
- .06 Growth of empire, 1725–1796
- .07 Early 19th century, 1796–1855
  - Including period of invasion by Napoleon, 1812; Crimean War, 1853–1856
- .08 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1855–
  - Including reigns of Alexander II, Alexander III, Nicholas II; Russo-Turkish War, 1877–1878
  - For Russo-Japanese War, see 952.031*
- .084 Communist regime, 1917– (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, 1923– )
  - For later 20th century, see 947.085*
- .084 1 Revolutions, Kerensky, Lenin, 1917–1924
- .084 2 Period of Stalin, 1924–1953
  - For Russo-Finnish War, see 947.103*
- .085 Later 20th century, 1953–
- .1 \*Finland
- .101 Early history to end of Swedish rule, 1809
- .102 19th century, 1809–1917
- .103 Independence, 1917–
  - Including Russo-Finnish War, 1939–1940
- 948 \*Scandinavia
- .01 Early history to 800
- .02 Period of migration and conquest, 800–1387
- .03 Period of union, 1387–1523

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

*General history of Europe*

---

- 948.04      Reformation and rise of Sweden, 1523-1648
- .05      Period of conflict, 1648-1792  
            *For Great Northern War, see 947.05*
- .06      Napoleonic era, 1792-1814
- .07      19th century, 1814-1905
- .08      20th century, 1905-
- .1      **\*Norway**
- .101      Early history to 1387
- .102      Union with Denmark, 1387-1814
- .103      Union with Sweden, 1814-1905
- .104      20th century, 1905-
- .5      **\*Sweden**
- .501      Early history to 1523
- .502      Vasa dynasty, 1523-1654  
            *For Livonian War, see 947.04*
- .503      Decline of power, 1654-1818  
            *For Great Northern War, see 947.05*
- .504      19th century, 1818-1905
- .505      20th century, 1905-
- .9      **\*Denmark**
- .901      Early history to 1387
- .902      Union with Norway and Sweden, 1387-1523
- .903      Union with Norway, 1523-1814  
            *For Great Northern War, see 947.05*
- .904      19th century, 1814-1906  
            *For Schleswig-Holstein Wars, see 943.07*
- .905      20th century, 1906-

· Add as instructed under 930-990

## *Decimal Classification*

### **949 Other parts of Europe**

#### **.1 \*Northwestern islands**

#### **.12 \*Iceland**

.120 1 Early history to 1262

.120 2 Medieval period, 1262-1550

.120 3 Early modern period, 1550-1848

.120 4 Modern period, 1848-

#### **.2 \*Netherlands (Holland)**

.201 Early history to 1477

.202 Hapsburg rule, 1477-1568

.203 Struggle for independence, 1568-1648

.204 Dutch Republic, 1648-1795

Including Anglo-Dutch Wars, 1652-1653, 1665-1667; Great Wars against England, France, and allies, 1672-1678; Coalition War, 1690-1697

.205 Napoleonic era, 1795-1830

.206 19th century, 1830-1901

.207 20th century, 1901-

#### **.3 Southern Low Countries**

Use 949.300 01 - 949.300 09 for standard subdivisions and regions

.300 1-.300 9 Standard subdivisions and regions of Belgium

► 949.301-949.304 Historical periods of Belgium

.301 Early history to 1477

.302 Foreign rule, 1477-1830

.303 19th century, 1830-1909

.304 20th century, 1909-

#### **.35 \*Luxembourg**

.350 1 Early history to 1482

.350 2 Foreign rule, 1482-1830

.350 3 19th century, 1830-1890

.350 4 20th century, 1890-

† Add as instructed under 930-990

## *General history of Europe*

---

- 949.4 \*Switzerland**
- .401 Early history to 1291
  - .402 Struggle for independence, 1291-1499
  - .403 Period of the Reformation, 1499-1648
  - .404 Period of internal strife, 1648-1789
  - .405 Napoleonic period, 1789-1815
  - .406 19th century, 1815-1900
  - .407 20th century, 1900-
- .5 \*Greece**
- .501 Eastern Roman (Byzantine) Empire, 323-717  
Including wars against Avars and Persians
  - .502 Period of Byzantine prosperity, 717-1057
  - .503 Dissolution of Byzantine Empire, 1057-1204
  - .504 Latin and Greek states, 1204-1453
  - .505 Turkish domination, 1453-1821
  - .506 Monarchy, 1821-1924  
Including Greco-Turkish War, 1896-1897  
*For Balkan Wars, see 949.6*
  - .507 20th century, 1924-
- .6 \*Balkan Peninsula**
- Including Balkan Wars, 1912-1913
- .61 \*Turkey in Europe (Turkish Thrace)**
- Add 0 and divide like 956.101-956.103, e.g., later 20th century,  
949.610 3
- .65 \*Albania**
- .650 1 Early history to 1912
  - .650 2 Early 20th century, 1912-1946
  - .650 3 Later 20th century, 1946-

\* Add as instructed under 930-990

## *Decimal Classification*

### **949.7      Yugoslavia and Bulgaria**

Use 949.700 01 – 949.700 09 for standard subdivisions and regions

.700 1–.700 9      Standard subdivisions and regions of Yugoslavia

#### **►      949.701–949.702 Historical periods of Yugoslavia**

.701      Early history to 1918

*For Balkan Wars, see 949.6*

.702      20th century, 1918–

.77      \*Bulgaria

.770 1      Early history to 1878

.770 2      Autonomy and independence, 1878–1946

*For Balkan Wars, see 949.6*

.770 3      Later 20th century, 1946–

.8      \*Romania

.801      Foreign domination to 1861

.802      Monarchy, 1861–1947

*For Balkan Wars, see 949.6*

.803      Later 20th century, 1947–

.9      \*Aegean Sea islands and Crete

Add 0 and divide like 949.501–949.507, e.g., early Byzantine period 949.901

.98      \*Crete

.980 1      Early history to 961

.980 2      Greek and Venetian periods, 961–1664

.980 3      Turkish domination, 1664–1898

.980 4      20th century, 1898–

<sup>1</sup> Add as instructed under 930–990

## 950 Asia

Use 950.01-950.09 for standard subdivisions and regions

- .1 Early history to 1162
- .2 Mongol and Tatar Empires, 1162-1480
  - Including reigns of Genghis Khan, ca. 1200-1227; Kublai Khan, ca. 1259-1294; Timur (Tamerlane), ca. 1336-1405
- .3 European exploration and conquest, 1480-1905
- .4 20th century, 1905-
  - .41 Early 20th century, 1905-1945
  - .42 Later 20th century, 1945-

## 951 China and adjacent areas

Use 951.000 1 - 951.000 9 for standard subdivisions and regions

- .001-.009 Standard subdivisions and regions of China

### 951.01-951.05 Historical periods of China

- .01 Early history, 420-960
- .02 Sung to Ming dynasties, 960-1644
  - .025 Yüan (Mongol) dynasty, 1260-1368
  - .026 Ming dynasty, 1368-1644
- .03 Ch'ing (Manchu) dynasty, 1644-1912
  - For Sino-Japanese War, see 952.031*
- .04 Early 20th century, 1912-1949
  - .041 Early Republic, 1912-1927
  - .042 Nationalist government, 1927-1949
- .05 People's Republic, 1949-

### .9 \*Korea

- .901 Early history to 1392
- .902 Yi dynasty, 1392-1910

\* Add as instructed under 930-990

### *Decimal Classification*

951.903 Japanese period, 1910–1945

.904 Later 20th century, 1945–

.904 2 Korean War, 1950–1953

.904 3 Postwar period, 1953–

## **952 Japan and adjacent islands**

Use 952.000 1 – 952.000 9 for standard subdivisions and regions

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions and regions of Japan

► 952.01–952.04 Historical periods of Japan

.01 Early history to 1185

.02 Feudal period, 1185–1868

.025 Tokugawa (Edo) period, 1603–1868

.03 Re-establishment of imperial power, 1868–1945

.031 Meiji period, 1868–1912

Including Sino-Japanese War, 1894–1895; Russo-Japanese War, 1904–1905

.032 Taishō period, 1912–1926

.033 Early Shōwa period, 1926–1945

.04 Later Shōwa period (Postwar period), 1945–

## **953 \*Arabian Peninsula and adjacent areas**

.02 Medieval history, 622–1517

.03 Period of Ottoman rule, 1517–1740

.04 Struggles to overthrow Turks, 1740–1926

.05 20th century, 1926–

## **954 \*South Asia**

.02 Asian dynasties and European penetration, 647–1774

.021 Early period, 647–997

.022 Moslem conquests, 997–1206

.023 Slave kings, Khalji and Tughluk dynasties, 1206–1413

.024 Sayyid and Lodi dynasties, 1413–1526

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

### *General history of Asia*

- 954.025      Mogul Empire, 1526-1707
- .029      European penetration, 1707-1774
- .03      British rule, 1774-1947
- .031      East India Company, 1774-1858
- .031 7      Sepoy Mutiny, 1857
- .035      Control by crown, 1858-1947
- .04      Independence and partition, 1947-
- 
- .9      **\*Pakistan**
- 
- .904      Independence and partition, 1947-
- 
- .93      **\*Ceylon**
- .930 1      Early history to 1795
- .930 2      British period, 1795-1948.
- .930 3      Independence, 1948-
- 
- 955      **\*Iran ( Persia )**
- .02      Medieval history, 642-1499
- .03      Rise and fall of Persian dynasties, 1499-1794
- .04      19th century, 1794-1906
- .05      20th century, 1906-
- 
- 956      **\*Middle East**
- .1      **\*Asia Minor and adjacent islands**  
        Class here Turkey
- 
- .101      Medieval and modern history, ca. 640-1918  
        *For Russo-Turkish War, see 947.08; Greco-Turkish War,*  
        *949.506*
- 
- .102      Early 20th century, 1918-1945
- .103      Later 20th century, 1945-

\* Add as instructed under 930-990



### *Decimal Classification*

- 956.4      **\*South central Asia Minor and Cyprus**
  - .45      **\*Cyprus**
    - .450 1      Early history to 1571
    - .450 2      Turkish domination, 1571–1878
    - .450 3      British period, 1878–1960
    - .450 4      Independence, 1960–
  - .7      **\*Iraq**
    - .702      Medieval history, 642–1553
    - .703      Period of Ottoman rule, 1553–1920
    - .704      Mandate and independence, 1920–
  - .9      **\*Eastern Mediterranean**
    - .91      **\*Syria**
      - .910 2      Medieval history, 640–1516
      - .910 3      Period of Ottoman rule, 1516–1920
      - .910 4      Mandate and independence, 1920–  
Including period of United Arab Republic
    - .92      **\*Lebanon**
      - .920 3      Medieval and modern history, 640–1926
      - .920 4      Separation from Syria, 1926–
    - .94      **\*Israel**
      - .940 01      Zionism
      - .940 2      Pre-Islamic period, 70–640
      - .940 3      Medieval and modern history, 640–1917
      - .940 4      British control, 1917–1948
      - .940 5      Independence, 1948–
    - .95      **\*Jordan**
      - .950 3      Medieval and modern history, 640–1923
      - .950 4      Mandate and independence, 1923–

• Add as instructed under 930–990

General history of Asia

**\*Siberia (Asiatic Russia)**

- .03 Pre-Russian period to 1581
- .07 Scattered settlement, 1581-1855
- .08 Expanded settlement and exploitation, 1855-  
Divide like 947.08, e.g., Siberia under Stalin 957.084 2

**958 \*Central Asia**

**.1 \*Afghanistan**

- .101 Early history to 1221
- .102 Foreign rulers, 1221-1709
- .103 Afghan rulers, 1709-1919
- .104 20th century, 1919-

**.4 \*Turkestan**

- .407 Pre-Russian period to 1855
- .408 Russian period, 1855-  
Divide like 947.08, e.g., later 20th century 958.408 5

**.5 \*Turkmenistan (Turkmen Soviet Socialist Republic)**

Add 0 and divide like 958.407-958.408, e.g., pre-Russian period  
958.507

**.6 \*Tadzhikistan (Tadzhik Soviet Socialist Republic)**

Add 0 and divide like 958.407-958.408, e.g., Russian period  
958.608

**.7 \*Uzbekistan (Uzbek Soviet Socialist Republic)**

Add 0 and divide like 958.407-958.408, e.g., later 20th century  
958.708 5

\* Add as instructed under 930-990

**959      \*Southeast Asia**

**.1      \*Burma**

.102      Early history to 1826

.103      Period of British conquest, 1826-1885

.104      British rule, 1885-1948

.105      Independence, 1948-

**.3      \*Thailand (Siam)**

.302      Early history to 1782

.303      19th century, 1782-1910

.304      20th century, 1910-

**.4      \*Laos**

.403      Medieval and modern history to 1949

.404      Late 20th century, 1949-

**.5      \*Malaysia**

.503      Medieval and modern history to 1946

.504      Middle 20th century, 1946-1963

.505      Federation, 1963-

**.6      \*Cambodia**

        Add 0 and divide like 959.403-959.404, e.g., postwar Cambodia  
        959.604

**.7      \*Vietnam**

.703      Medieval and modern history to 1949

            Including French Indo-China

.704      Late 20th century, 1949-

• Add as instructed under 930-990

## 960 Africa

Use 960.01-960.09 for standard subdivisions and regions

.2 Early history, 640-1900

.3 20th century

### 961 \*North Africa

.02 Early history, 640-1830

*For Tripolitan War with the United States, see 973.47; Algerian War, 973.53*

.03 19th and 20th centuries, 1830-

.1 \*Tunisia

.102 Period of Arab rule, 647-1516

.103 Period of Ottoman rule, 1516-1881

.104 Late 19th and 20th centuries, 1881-1956

.105 Independence, 1956-

.2 \*Libya

.202 Periods of Arab and Ottoman rule, 644-1911

.203 Period of Italian rule, 1911-1952

.204 Independence, 1952-

### 962 Egypt and Sudan

Use 962.000 1 - 962.000 9 for standard subdivisions and regions

.001-.009 Standard subdivisions and regions of Egypt

► 962.02-962.05 Historical periods of Egypt

.02 Period of Arab rule, 640-1517

.03 Period of Ottoman rule, 1517-1882

.04 British occupation and protectorate, 1882-1922

.05 Independence, 1922-

Including United Arab Republic

*For period of United Arab Republic in Syria, see 956.910 4*

\* Add as instructed under 930-990

## *Decimal Classification*

### **962.4      \*Sudan**

- .402      From Arab invasion, 7th century, to 1820
- .403      Period of Egyptian and British rule, 1820–1956  
            (Anglo-Egyptian Sudan)
- .404      Independence, 1956–

### **963      \*Ethiopia**

- .02      Period of Arab rule, 640–1543
- .03      Period of conquest, 1543–1855
- .04      Later 19th century, 1855–1896  
            Including Ethiopian War, 1895–1896
- .05      Early 20th century, 1896–1941
- .056      Italo-Ethiopian War, 1935–1936
- .057      Italian rule, 1936–1941
- .06      Independence restored, 1941–

### **964      Northwest African coast and offshore islands**

Use 964.000 1 – 964.000 9 for standard subdivisions and regions

- .001–.009      Standard subdivisions and regions of Morocco

#### **►      964.02–964.04 Historical periods of Morocco**

- .02      Periods of Arab and Berber rule, 647–1830
- .03      19th century, 1830–1900  
            Including Spanish-Moroccan War, 1859–1860
- .04      Early 20th century, 1900–1956
- .05      Independence, 1956–

### **965      \*Algeria**

- .02      Periods of Arab, Berber, Ottoman rule, 647–1830
- .03      Later 19th century, 1830–1900
- .04      20th century, 1900–1962
- .05      Independence, 1962–

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

*General history of Africa*

**966      \*West Africa and offshore islands**

**.1          \*Mauritania**

- .101          Early history to 1903
- .103          French period, 1903–1960
- .105          Independence, 1960–

**.2          \*Mali**

- .201          Early history to 1902
- .203          French period, 1902–1960 ( French Sudan )
- .205          Independence, 1960–

**.25        \*Upper Volta**

- .250 1          Early history to 1904
- .250 3          French period, 1904–1960
- .250 5          Independence, 1960–

**.26        \*Niger**

Add 0 and divide like 966.250 1 – 966.250 5, e.g., independence  
966.260 5

**.3          \*Senegal**

- .301          Early history to 1895
- .303          French period, 1895–1960
- .305          Independence, 1960–

**.4          \*Sierra Leone**

- .401          Early history to 1787
- .402          British colony, 1787–1896
- .403          Colony and protectorate, 1896–1961
- .404          Independence, 1961–

**.5          \*Upper Guinea area**

**.51        \*The Gambia**

- .510 1          Early history to 1807
- .510 2          British colony, 1807–1965
- .510 3          Independence, 1965–

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

*Decimal Classification*

---

- 966.52      **\*Guinea republic**  
    .520 1      Early history to 1882  
    .520 3      French period, 1882-1958 (French Guinea)  
    .520 5      Independence, 1958-
- .57      **\*Portuguese Guinea**  
    .570 1      Early history to 1879  
    .570 2      Colony, 1879-
- .58      **\*Cape Verde Islands**  
    .580 1      Early history to 1900  
    .580 2      20th century, 1900-
- .6      **\*Liberia**  
    .601      Early history to 1847  
    .602      Late 19th and early 20th centuries, 1847-1945  
    .603      Later 20th century, 1945-
- .68      **\*Ivory Coast**  
            Add 0 and divide like 966.250 1 - 966.250 5, e.g., French period  
            966.680 3
- .7      **\*Ghana**  
    .701      Early history to 1874  
    .703      British colony, 1874-1957 (Gold Coast)  
    .705      Independence, 1957-
- .8      **\*Dahomey**  
            Add 0 and divide like 966.250 1 - 966.250 5, e.g., early history  
            966.801
- .81      **\*Togo**  
    .810 1      Early history to 1894  
    .810 2      German period, 1894-1914  
    .810 3      Anglo-French period, 1914-1960  
    .810 4      Independence, 1960-

\* Add as instructed under 930-990

## *General history of Africa*

### **966.9      \*Nigeria**

- .901            Early history to 1886
- .903            British colony, 1886–1960
- .905            Independence, 1960–

### **967      \*Central Africa and offshore islands**

#### **.1      \*Lower Guinea area**

##### **.11      \*Cameroun**

- .110 1            Early history to 1884
- .110 2            German period, 1884–1916
- .110 3            Anglo-French period, 1916–1959
- .110 4            Independence, 1960–

#### **.2      \*Gabon and Congo**

##### **.21      \*Gabon**

- .210 1            Early history to 1839
- .210 2            French period, 1839–1960
- .210 4            Independence, 1960–

##### **.24      \*Congo (Former Middle Congo)**

- .240 1            Early history to 1885
- .240 3            French period, 1885–1960
- .240 5            Independence, 1960–

#### **.3      \*Angola**

- .301            Early history to 1648
- .302            17th–19th centuries, 1648–1900
- .303            20th century, 1900–

#### **.4      \*Central African Republic and Chad**

##### **.41      \*Central African Republic**

- .410 1            Early history to 1890
- .410 3            French period, 1890–1960 (Ubangi-Shari)
- .410 5            Independence, 1960–

**\* Add as instructed under 930–990**



*Decimal Classification*

---

967.43	<b>*Chad</b>
.430 1	Early history to 1850
.430 2	Colonial period, 1850-1960
.430 4	Independence, 1960-
<b>.5</b>	<b>*Congo (Former Belgian Congo)</b>
.501	Early history to 1885
.502	Belgian period, 1885-1960
.503	Independence, 1960-
<b>.57</b>	<b>*Rwanda and Burundi (Ruanda-Urundi)</b>
.570 1	Early history to 1899
.570 2	German period, 1899-1917
.570 3	Belgian period, 1917-1962
.571	<b>*Rwanda</b>
.571 04	Independence, 1962-
.572	<b>*Burundi</b>
.572 04	Independence, 1962-
<b>.6</b>	<b>*Uganda and Kenya</b>
.61	<b>*Uganda</b>
.610 1	Early history to 1894
.610 3	British period, 1894-1962
.610 4	Independence, 1962-
.62	<b>*Kenya</b>
.620 1	Early history to 1895
.620 3	British period, 1895-1963
.620 4	Independence, 1963-
<b>.7</b>	<b>*Somaliland and Socotra</b>
.71	<b>*French Somaliland</b>
.710 1	Early history to 1881
.710 3	French period, 1881-

**\* Add as instructed under 930-990**

*General history of Africa*

**967.73      \*Somalia**

- .730 1      Early history to 1884
- .730 3      British and Italian control, 1884–1960
- .730 5      Independence, 1960–

**.8      \*Tanganyika and Zanzibar ( Tanzania )**

- .804      United Republic, 1964–

**.81      \*Zanzibar and adjacent islands**

- .810 1      Early history to 1700
- .810 2      Arab rule, 1700–1890
- .810 3      British protectorate, 1890–1963
- .810 4      Independence, 1963–

**.82      \*Tanganyika**

- .820 1      Early history to 1884
- .820 2      German period, 1884–1916
- .820 3      British period, 1916–1961
- .820 4      Independence, 1961–

**.9      \*Mozambique**

Add 0 and divide like 967.301–967.303, e.g., 20th century 967.903

**968      \*South Africa**

- .02      Early history to 1488
- .03      Period of exploration and settlement, 1488–1814
- .04      19th century, 1814–1909
  - For South African ( Boer ) War, see 968.2*
- .05      Union, 1909–1961
- .06      Republic, 1961–

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

## *Decimal Classification*

### **968.2      \*Transvaal**

Including South African (Boer) War, 1899–1902

### **.9          \*Rhodesia and Nyasaland**

.901          Early history to 1888

.902          British control, 1888–1953

.903          Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland (Central  
African Federation), 1953–1963

.904          Post-Federation, 1964–

### **969      \*South Indian Ocean islands**

#### **.1          \*Madagascar (Malagasy Republic)**

.101          Early history to 1895

.103          ,      French period, 1895–1960

.105          Independence, 1960–

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

*General history of North America*

**970 North America**

Use 970.001–970.009 for standard subdivisions and regions

Class Indians in 970.1

970.01–970.05 Historical periods

- .01      **Discovery and exploration to ca. 1600**  
          (Optional; prefer 973.1)
- .02      1600–1700
- .03      1700–1800
- .04      1800–1900
- .05      1900–
- .051      To end of World War I, 1900–1918
- .052      From end of World War I to end of World War II,  
          1918–1945
- .053      Since World War II, 1945–

**.1 Indians of North America**

History and civilization

*For specific tribes, see 970.3; Indians in specific places, 970.4;  
government relations, 970.5*

**[.2] Biography of Indians**

Class biographies of persons associated with a specific subject in  
standard subdivision 092, of persons not so related in 920

**.3 Specific Indian tribes**

Including Aztecs [*formerly* 972.014], Mayas [*formerly* 972.015]

Arrange alphabetically by names of tribes

*For government relations, see 970.5*

## Decimal Classification

### 970.4      **Indians in specific places**

Including pre-Hispanic Indians in Mexico [*formerly* 972.01], in Central America [*formerly* 972.801], in Guatemala [*formerly* 972.810 1], in British Honduras [*formerly* 972.820 1], in Honduras [*formerly* 972.830 1], in El Salvador [*formerly* 972.840 1], in Nicaragua [*formerly* 972.850 1], in Costa Rica [*formerly* 972.860 1], in West Indies [*formerly* 972.901], in Cuba [*formerly* 972.910 1], in Jamaica [*formerly* 972.920 1], in Dominican Republic [*formerly* 972.930 1], in Haiti [*formerly* 972.940 1], in Puerto Rico [*formerly* 972.950 1]

Divide like area notation 7, e.g., Indians in Arizona 970.491

*For specific tribes, see 970.3; government relations, 970.5*

### .5            **Government relations with Indians**

History and policy

Class Indian wars of a specific place and period with history of the appropriate place and period, e.g., Black Hawk War 973.56

Class a specific subject of government relations [*formerly* 970.5] with the subject

### [.6]        **Specific subjects in relation to Indians**

Class with the subject

### 971        **\*Canada**

.01           Early history to 1763

.011          Exploration and early settlement, 1497-1632

.016          French and English expansion, 1632-1689

.018          Struggle of France and England for supremacy,  
1689-1763

*For King William's War, Queen Anne's War, see 973.25;  
King George's War, French and Indian War, 973.26*

.02           Early British rule, 1763-1791

.024          Settlement by Loyalists from United States, 1774-1789

.03           Period of the separate colonies, 1791-1841

.034          Period of War of 1812, 1812-1814

.038          Rebellion, 1837-1838

.039          Union of Upper and Lower Canada, 1841

\* Add as instructed under 930-990

*General history of North America*

---

- 971.04 Growth of responsible government, 1841–1867
  - .048 Fenian invasions, 1866–1871
  - .049 Confederation under British North America Act, 1867
  - .05 Dominion of Canada during period 1867–1914
  - .051 Riel's first (Red River) rebellion, 1869–1870
  - .054 Riel's second (Northwest) rebellion, 1885
  - .06 20th century, 1914–
  - .061 Period of World War I, 1914–1921
  - .062 Period between World Wars, 1921–1935
  - .063 Mid-20th century, 1935–1957
  - .064 Later 20th century, 1957–
- .1 **\*British Columbia**
  - .101 Discovery and early exploration, 1774–1790
  - .102 Settlement and colony, 1790–1871
  - .103 Province of Canada, 1871–1945
  - .104 Postwar period, 1945–
- .2 **\*Northern territories and prairie provinces**
  - .201 Early history to 1869
  - .202 Incorporation into Canada, 1869–1945
  - .203 Postwar period, 1945–
- .3 **\*Ontario**
  - .301 Early history to 1791
  - .302 Upper Canada and Union Act, 1791–1867
  - .303 Province of Canada, 1867–1945
  - .304 Postwar period, 1945–
- .4 **\*Quebec**
  - .401 French period to 1763
  - .402 British period, 1763–1867
  - .403 Province of Canada, 1867–1945
  - .404 Postwar period, 1945–

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

### *Decimal Classification*

**971.5      \*New Brunswick**

- .501      Early history to 1784
- .502      Separate province, 1784–1867
- .503      Province of Canada, 1867–1945
- .504      Postwar period, 1945–

**.6      \*Nova Scotia**

- .601      Early history to 1763
- .602      British colony, 1763–1867
- .603      Province of Canada, 1867–1945
- .604      Postwar period, 1945–

**.7      \*Prince Edward Island**

- .701      Early history to 1769
- .702      Separate province, 1769–1873
- .703      Province of Canada, 1873–1945
- .704      Postwar period, 1945–

**.8      \*Newfoundland and adjacent islands**

- .801      Early history to 1855
- .802      Responsible government, 1855–1933
- .803      Suspension of parliamentary government, 1933–1949
- .804      Province of Canada, 1949–

**.9      \*Labrador territory of province of Newfoundland**

Add 0 and divide like 971.801–971.804, e.g., postwar history  
971.904

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

*General history of North America*

**972 Middle America**

Use 972.000 1 – 972.000 9 for standard subdivisions and regions

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions and regions of Mexico

[.01] Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1516

Class in 970.4

[.014] Aztecs

Class in 970.3

[.015] Mayas

Class in 970.3

► 972.02–972.08 Historical periods of Mexico

.02 Colonial period, 1516–1810

.03 Revolutionary period and independence, 1810–1822

.04 First empire and republic, 1822–1845

.05 Period of war with United States, 1845–1848

*For Mexican War, see 973.62*

.06 Reaction and reform, 1848–1861

.07 European intervention, 1861–1867

.08 Republic, 1867–

.081 Under constitution of 1857, 1867–1917

.082 Under constitution of 1917, 1917–

.8 \*Central America

[.801] Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1502

Class in 970.4

.802 Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1535

.803 Colonial period, 1535–1821

.804 19th century, 1821–1900

.805 20th century, 1900–

\* Add as instructed under 930–990



## *Decimal Classification*

- 972.81      **\*Guatemala**  
Add 0 and divide like 972.802–972.805, e.g., colonial period,  
1535–1821 972.810 3  
Class pre-Hispanic Indians to 1502 [*formerly* 972.810 1] in  
970.4
- .82      **\*British Honduras (Belize)**  
Add 0 and divide like 972.802–972.805, e.g., colonial period,  
1535–1821 972.820 3  
Class pre-Hispanic Indians to 1502 [*formerly* 972.820 1] in;  
970.4
- .83      **\*Honduras**  
Add 0 and divide like 972.802–972.805, e.g., colonial period,  
1535–1821 972.830 3  
Class pre-Hispanic Indians to 1502 [*formerly* 972.830 1] in  
970.4
- .84      **\*El Salvador**  
Add 0 and divide like 972.802–972.805, e.g., colonial period,  
1535–1821 972.840 3  
Class pre-Hispanic Indians to 1502 [*formerly* 972.840 1] in  
970.4
- .85      **\*Nicaragua**  
Add 0 and divide like 972.802–972.805, e.g., colonial period,  
1535–1821 972.850 3  
Class pre-Hispanic Indians to 1502 [*formerly* 972.850 1] in  
970.4
- .86      **\*Costa Rica**  
Add 0 and divide like 972.802–972.805, e.g., colonial period,  
1535–1821 972.860 3  
Class pre-Hispanic Indians to 1502 [*formerly* 972.860 1] in  
970.4

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

*General history of North America*

**972.9      \*West Indies ( Antilles)**

[.901]      Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1492

Class in 970.4

.902      Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492–1608

.903      17th and 18th centuries, 1608–1801

.904      19th century, 1801–1902

.905      20th century, 1902–

.91      \*Cuba and adjacent islands

[.910 1]      Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1492

Class in 970.4

.910 2      Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492–1514

.910 3      First colonial period, 1514–1763

.910 4      Second colonial period, 1763–1810

.910 5      Third colonial period, 1810–1899

*For Spanish-American War, see 973.89*

.910 6      20th century, 1899–

.910 61      American military occupation, 1899–1902

.910 62      First republic, 1902–1933

.910 63      Second republic, 1933–1958

.910 64      Regime of Fidel Castro, 1959–

.92      \*Jamaica and adjacent islands

[.920 1]      Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1494

Class in 970.4

.920 2      16th century, 1494–1607

.920 3      17th and 18th centuries, 1607–1832

.920 31      Later Spanish rule, 1607–1655

.920 32      English conquest to Great Earthquake, 1655–1692

.920 33      Great Earthquake to antislavery struggle, 1692–1782

.920 34      Antislavery struggle to emancipation, 1782–1832

.920 4      Later 19th century, 1832–1904

.920 5      First part of 20th century, 1904–1962

.920 6      Independence, 1962–

<sup>1</sup> Add as instructed under 930–990

## *Decimal Classification*

---

- 972.93      **\*Dominican Republic**
- [.930 1]      Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1492  
                    Class in 970.4
- .930 2      Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492-1608
- .930 3      17th and 18th centuries, 1608-1801
- .930 4      19th century, 1801-1902
- .930 5      20th century, 1902-
- .930 53      Regime of Trujillo, 1930-1961
- .930 54      Later 20th century, 1961-
- .94      **\*Haiti**
- [.940 1]      Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1492  
                    Class in 970.4
- .940 2      Spanish rule, 1492-1625
- .940 3      French colony, 1625-1804
- .940 4      Independence and republic, 1804-1915
- .940 5      American occupation, 1915-1934
- .940 6      Republic, 1934-
- .95      **\*Puerto Rico**
- [.950 1]      Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1493  
                    Class in 970.4
- .950 2      Discovery and early colonial period, 1493-1602
- .950 3      17th and 18th centuries, 1602-1804
- .950 4      19th century, 1804-1900
- .950 5      20th century, 1900-
- .950 53      Commonwealth, 1952-
- .983      **\*Trinidad and Tobago**
- .983 02      16th-18th centuries, 1498-1797
- .983 03      British period, 1797-1962
- .983 04      Independence, 1962-

\* Add as instructed under 930-990

## *General history of North America*

### **973 United States**

Use 973.01-973.09 for standard subdivisions and regions

#### **973.1-973.9 Historical periods**

#### **SUMMARY**

- 973.1** Discovery and exploration to 1607
- .2** Colonial period, 1607-1775
- .3** Revolution and confederation, 1775-1789
- .4** Constitutional period, 1789-1809
- .5** Early 19th century, 1809-1845
- .6** Middle 19th century, 1845-1861
- .7** Administration of Abraham Lincoln, 1861-1865  
(Civil War)
- .8** Later 19th century, 1865-1901 (Period of reconstruction)
- .9** 20th century, 1901-

#### **.1 Discovery and exploration to 1607**

Scope: discovery and exploration of America; if preferred, class in 970.01

Class discoveries and explorations in a specific country with history of the country

#### **.11 Pre-Columbian claims**

*For Chinese claims, see 973.12; Norse, 973.13; Welsh, 973.14*

#### **.12 Chinese claims**

#### **.13 Norse claims**

#### **.14 Welsh claims**

#### **.15 Discoveries by Columbus**

#### **.16 Spanish and Portuguese explorations**

#### **.17 English explorations**

#### **.18 French explorations**

#### **.19 Explorations of other nations**

#### **Colonial period, 1607-1775**

Class local history in 974-975

#### **.21 Virginia settlements, 1607-1620**

### *Decimal Classification*

- 973.22      Other early settlements, 1620-1643  
              By English in New England and elsewhere, by Dutch on  
              Hudson River, by Swedes on Delaware River  
              Including Pequot War, 1636-1638
- .23          Middle 17th century, 1643-1664
- .24          Later 17th century, 1664-1689  
              Including King Philip's War, 1675-1676
- .25          Period of early French wars, 1689-1732  
              Including King William's War, Queen Anne's War
- .26          Extension of English rule, 1732-1763  
              Including King George's War, French and Indian War
- .27          End of colonial period, 1763-1775  
              Including Pontiac's conspiracy, 1763-1764
- .3          Revolution and confederation, 1775-1789
- .302 2      Audio-visual materials [*formerly* 973.39]

### SUMMARY

- 973.31      Social, political, economic history
- .32      Diplomatic history
- .33      Land operations
- .34      Military units
- .35      Naval history
- .36      Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
- .37      Prisons and health services
- .38      Other topics
- .31      Social, political, economic history  
          *For diplomatic history, see 973.32*
- .311      Causes
- .311 1      Stamp Act, 1765-1766
- .311 2      Commercial restrictions  
              Navigation Acts, Townshend Acts, burning of the  
              Gaspée, 1772  
              *For tax on tea, see 973.311 5*
- .311 3      Quartering of troops and Boston Massacre, 1770

## *General history of North America*

---

- 973.311 4      Taxation and representation
- .311 5      Tax on tea and Boston Tea Party, 1773
- .311 6      Boston Port Bill, 1774
- .312      Continental Congress
- .313      Declarations of independence, 1775–1776
- .314      Loyalists (Tories)
  - For settlement of Loyalists in Canada, see 971.024*
- .315      Relation of specific classes of persons to the Revolution
  - Use 973.315 000 1 – 973.315 000 9 for standard subdivisions
  - Divide like 001–999, e.g., clergy and the Revolution 973.315 2
- .316      Results
  - For Treaty of Peace, see 973.317; Confederation, 973.318*
- .317      Treaty of Peace, 1783
- .318      Confederation, 1783–1789
- .32      Diplomatic history
  - Relations of United States with other nations
  - Divide like area notation 4, e.g., relations with France 973.324
- .33      Land operations
  - Scope: comprehensive works on land and naval operations
  - For naval operations, see 973.35*
- .331      Operations of 1775
  - .331 1      Battles of Lexington and Concord
  - .331 2      Battle of Bunker Hill
- .332      Operations of 1776 – January 3, 1777
  - Including Battles of Trenton and Princeton
- .333      Operations of 1777
  - For Battles of Trenton and Princeton, see 973.332; winter at Valley Forge, 973.334 1*

## *Decimal Classification*

- 973.334      Operations of 1778
- .334 1      Winter at Valley Forge, 1777-1778
- .335      Operations of 1779
- .336      Operations of 1780
- .337      Operations of 1781
- .338      Operations of 1782
- .339      Operations of 1783
- .34      Military units
- Scope: organization, history, rosters, service records
- Class units engaged in a special service with the subject
- For land operations, see 973.33; naval units, 973.35; rolls of honor and lists of dead, 973.36*
- .341      British side
- For mercenary troops, see 973.342; Indian allies, 973.343*
- .342      Mercenary troops
- .343      Indian allies
- 973.344-973.347 American side
- .344      Troops from northern states
- Divide like area notation 74, e.g., Pennsylvania troops 973.344 8
- .345      Troops from southern states
- Divide like area notation 75, e.g., Virginia troops 973.345 5
- .346      Auxiliary troops
- Including Polish, Swedish, Spanish
- For French troops, see 973.347*
- .347      French troops
- .35      Naval history
- Operations, ships, units
- Including privateering

## *General history of North America*

- 973.36      Celebrations, commemorations, memorials  
              Including rolls of honor, lists of dead  
              Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event
- .37          Prisons and health services  
              Including exchange of prisoners
- .371        British prisons and prison ships
- .372        American prisons
- .375        Medical services  
              *For hospitals, see 973.376*
- .376        Hospitals
- .38          Other topics  
              Including personal narratives  
              Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject
- .381        Treason  
              *For treason of Benedict Arnold, see 973.382; of Charles Lee, 973.383*
- .382        Treason of Benedict Arnold
- .383        Treason of Charles Lee
- 973.385–973.386 Secret service and spies
- .385        American
- .386        British
- .388        Propaganda
- [.39]       Audio-visual materials  
              Class in 973.302 2
- .4          Constitutional period, 1789–1809
- .41        Administration of George Washington, 1789–1797  
              *For Indian wars, see 973.42; second term, 973.43*
- .42        Indian wars, 1790–1791



### *Decimal Classification*

- 973.43 Washington's second term, 1793-1797
- .44 Administration of John Adams, 1797-1801  
*For troubles with France, see 973.45*
- .45 Troubles with France, 1797-1800
- .46 Administration of Thomas Jefferson, 1801-1809  
*For Tripolitan War, see 973.47; second term, 973.48*
- .47 Tripolitan War, 1801-1805
- .48 Jefferson's second term, 1805-1809
- .5 Early 19th century, 1809-1845
- .51 Administration of James Madison, 1809-1817  
*For War of 1812, see 973.52; war with Algeria, 973.53*
- .52 War of 1812, 1812-1814
- .520 22 Audio-visual materials [*formerly 973.529*]
- .521 Social, political, economic history  
Including causes, results  
*For diplomatic history, see 973.522*
- .522 Diplomatic history  
Relations of United States with other nations
- .523 Land operations  
Scope: comprehensive works on land and naval operations  
Including campaigns and battles in the North and Canada  
*For naval operations, see 973.525*
- .523 8 Operations in the South  
Including Battle of Bladensburg, burning of Washington,  
bombardment of Fort McHenry  
*For Battle of New Orleans, see 973.523 9*
- .523 9 Battle of New Orleans

## General history of North America

- 973.524      **Military units**  
    Scope: organization, history, rosters, service records  
    Class units engaged in a special service with the subject  
        *For land operations, see 973.523; naval units, 973.525; rolls of honor and lists of dead, 973.526*
- .524 1      British troops
- .524 2      Indian allies of British
- .524 4-.524 7      American troops  
    Divide like area notations 74-77, e.g., Pennsylvania troops 973.524 48
- .525      **Naval history**  
    Operations, ships, units  
    Including privateering
- .525 4      Battle of Lake Erie
- .525 6      Battle of Lake Champlain
- .526      **Celebrations, commemorations, memorials**  
    Including rolls of honor, lists of dead  
    Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event
- .527      **Prisons and health services**  
    Including exchange of prisoners
- .527 5      **Medical services**  
    Including hospitals
- .528      **Other topics**  
    Including personal narratives  
    Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject
- .528 5      Secret service and spies
- [.529]      **Audio-visual materials**  
    Class in 973.520 22
- .53      **War with Algeria, 1815**

### *Decimal Classification*

- 973.54 Administration of James Monroe, 1817–1825  
Including First Seminole War, 1818
- .55 Administration of John Quincy Adams, 1825–1829
- .56 Administration of Andrew Jackson, 1829–1837  
Including Black Hawk War, 1832
- .561 Nullification
- .57 Administration of Martin Van Buren, 1837–1841  
Including Second Seminole War, 1835–1842
- .58 Administrations of William Henry Harrison and John Tyler, 1841–1845
- .6 Middle 19th century, 1845–1861
- .61 Administration of James Knox Polk, 1845–1849  
*For Mexican War, see 973.62*
- .62 Mexican War, 1845–1848
- .620 22 Audio-visual materials [*formerly 973.629*]
- .621 Social, political, economic history  
Including causes, results  
*For diplomatic history, see 973.622*
- .622 Diplomatic history  
Relations of United States with other nations
- .623 Land operations  
Scope: comprehensive works on land and naval operations  
*For naval operations, see 973.625*
- .624 Military units  
Organization, history, rosters, service records  
Class units engaged in a special service with the subject  
*For land operations, see 973.623; naval units, 973.625; rolls of honor and lists of dead, 973.626*
- .625 Naval history  
Operations, ships, units

## *General history of North America*

- 973.626      Celebrations, commemorations, memorials  
              Including rolls of honor, lists of dead  
              Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific  
              event with the event
- .627      Prisons and health services
- .627 5      Medical services  
              Including hospitals
- .628      Personal narratives  
              Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the  
              subject
- [.629]      Audio-visual materials  
              Class in 973.620 22
- .63      Administration of Zachary Taylor, 1849–1850
- .64      Administration of Millard Fillmore, 1850–1853
- .66      Administration of Franklin Pierce, 1853–1857
- .68      Administration of James Buchanan, 1857–1861
- .7      Administration of Abraham Lincoln, 1861–1865 (Civil  
War)
- .702 2      Audio-visual materials [*formerly* 973.79]

## SUMMARY

- 973.71      Social, political, economic history
- .72      Diplomatic history
- .73      Land operations
- .74      Military units
- .75      Naval history
- .76      Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
- .77      Prisons, health, social services
- .78      Other topics
- .71      Social, political, economic history  
              *For diplomatic history, see 973.72*
- .711      Causes
- .711 2      Extension of slavery

## *Decimal Classification*

- 973.711 3      **Compromises**  
Missouri Compromise, Compromise of 1850, Wilmot Proviso
- .711 4      **Abolition movement**
- .711 5      **Fugitive slaves**  
Including underground railway, Dred Scott decision
- .711 6      **John Brown's raid**
- .712      **Efforts to preserve peace**
- .713      **The South and secession**  
Confederate States of America in the war
- .714      **Results**  
Including Emancipation Proclamation, establishment of Freedmen's Bureau  
*For period of reconstruction, see 973.8*
- .715      **Relation of specific classes of persons to the war**  
Use 973.715 000 1 – 973.715 000 9 for standard subdivisions  
Divide like 001–899, e.g., college students and the war 973.715 378  
*For southern Union sympathizers, see 973.717; northern Confederate sympathizers, 973.718*
- .715 9      **Refugees**
- .717      **Southern Union sympathizers**
- .718      **Northern Confederate sympathizers**
- .72      **Diplomatic history**  
Including relations of Union with other nations
- .721      **Relations of Confederacy with other nations**
- .73      **Land operations**  
Scope: comprehensive works on land and naval operations  
*For naval operations, see 973.75*
- .730 1      **Strategy**
- .730 12      **Union side**
- .730 13      **Confederate side**

## *General history of North America*

- 973.731      Opening phase, 1861-1862  
Bombardment of Fort Sumter, First Battle of Bull Run (Manassas); operations in the West, May 1861-February 1862, in the South, July 1861-April 1862
- .732      Spring and summer, 1862  
Campaigns to open Mississippi River: capture of Forts Henry and Donelson, fall of Nashville, occupation of Memphis, Battle of Shiloh (Pittsburg Landing), capture of New Orleans, siege of Corinth; Peninsular campaign of Army of the Potomac from siege of Yorktown to Second Battle of Bull Run (Manassas)
- .733      Summer and fall, 1862  
Including campaigns in the South other than those connected with opening the Mississippi, April 1862-June 1863; in the West, June 1862-January 1863; in Texas, New Mexico, Arizona to May 1863; Burnside's offensive, Battle of Fredericksburg
- .733 6      Lee's invasion of Maryland  
Including Battles of Harper's Ferry, South Mountain, Antietam (Sharpsburg)
- .734      Summer, 1863  
Including trans-Mississippi campaigns to end of year; western campaigns: siege of Port Hudson, Louisiana; eastern campaigns: Hooker's offensive, Battle of Chancellorsville
- .734 4      Siege and fall of Vicksburg
- .734 9      Battle of Gettysburg
- .735      Fall, 1863  
Including campaigns in the South: bombardment of Fort Sumter and Charleston, Chickamauga and Knoxville campaigns
- .735 9      Chattanooga campaign  
Including Battles of Lookout Mountain, Missionary Ridge
- .736      Winter and spring, 1864  
Campaigns in the East, January-May; in the South, January-November; Union offensive from Wilderness to Cold Harbor, Peninsular campaign, engagements at New Market, Lynchburg, Monocacy, Fort Stevens

## *Decimal Classification*

- 973.737 Summer and fall, 1864  
Including Sherman's Atlanta campaign, Sheridan in the Shenandoah Valley, siege of Petersburg
- .737 8 Sherman's march to the sea and Savannah campaign
- .738 Final phase, 1865
- .74 Military units  
Scope: organization, history, rosters, service records  
Class units engaged in a special service with the subject  
*For land operations, see 973.73; naval units, 973.75; rolls of honor and lists of dead, 973.76*
- .741 Union troops  
*For state organizations, see 973.744-973.749*
- .741 5 Negroes
- .742 Confederate troops  
*For state organizations, see 973.744-973.749*
- .744-.749 State organizations  
Divide like area notations 74-79, e.g., Ohio troops 973.747 1
- .75 Naval history  
Including operations, privateering, blockade running, Union ships and units
- .752 Battle of Monitor and Merrimac
- .754 Battle of Kearsarge and Alabama
- .757 Confederate Navy  
Ships and units
- .76 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials  
Including rolls of honor, lists of dead  
Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event

## *General history of North America*

- 973.77 Prisons, health, social services  
Including exchange of prisoners
- .771 Confederate prisons
- .772 Union prisons
- .775 Medical services  
*For hospitals, see 973.776*
- .776 Hospitals
- .777 Welfare work  
Including United States Sanitary Commission, postwar relief work
- .778 Religious life and chaplain services
- .78 Other topics

### 973.781–973.782 Personal narratives

Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject

- .781 Individuals from Union side
- .782 Individuals from Confederate side
- .783 Military life and customs of Union side
- .784 Military life and customs of Confederate side  
Class Southern home life [*formerly 973.784*] in 917.503 7

---

### 973.785–973.786 Secret service and spies

- .785 Union
- .786 Confederate
- .788 Propaganda
- [.79] Audio-visual materials  
Class in 973.702 2



### *Decimal Classification*

- 973.8      **Later 19th century, 1865–1901 (Period of reconstruction)**
- .81          Administration of Andrew Johnson, 1865–1869
- .82          Administration of Ulysses Simpson Grant, 1869–1877
- .83          Administration of Rutherford Birchard Hayes, 1877–1881
- .84          Administrations of James Abram Garfield and Chester  
              Alan Arthur, 1881–1885
- .85          First administration of Grover Cleveland, 1885–1889
- .86          Administration of Benjamin Harrison, 1889–1893
- .87          Second administration of Grover Cleveland, 1893–1897
- .88          Administration of William McKinley, 1897–1901
- For Spanish-American War, see 973.89*
- .89          Spanish-American War, 1898
- .890 22        Audio-visual materials [*formerly 973.899*]
- .891          Social, political, economic history
- Including causes, results
- For diplomatic history, see 973.892*
- .892          Diplomatic history
- Relations of United States with other nations
- .893          Land operations
- Scope: comprehensive works on land and naval operations
- For naval operations, see 973.895*
- .893 3        Cuban campaign
- .893 5        Puerto Rican campaign
- .893 7        Philippine campaign
- .894          Military units
- Organization, history, rosters, service records
- Class units engaged in a special service with the subject
- For land operations, see 973.893; naval units, 973.895;*  
              *rolls of honor and lists of dead, 973.896*
- .895          Naval history
- Operations, ships, units

## *General history of North America*

---

- 973.896 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials  
Including rolls of honor, lists of dead  
Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event
- .897 Prisons, health, social services
- .897 5 Medical services  
Including hospitals
- .898 Personal narratives  
Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject
- [.899] Audio-visual materials  
Class in 973.890 22
- .9 20th century, 1901–
- .91 Early 20th century, 1901–1953
- .911 Administration of Theodore Roosevelt, 1901–1909
- .912 Administration of William Howard Taft, 1909–1913
- .913 Administration of Woodrow Wilson, 1913–1921
- .914 Administration of Warren Gamaliel Harding, 1921–1923
- .915 Administration of Calvin Coolidge, 1923–1929
- .916 Administration of Herbert Clark Hoover, 1929–1933
- .917 Administration of Franklin Delano Roosevelt, 1933–1945
- .918 Administration of Harry S. Truman, 1945–1953
- .92 Later 20th century, 1953–
- .921 Administration of Dwight David Eisenhower, 1953–1961
- .922 Administration of John Fitzgerald Kennedy, 1961–1963
- .923 Administration of Lyndon Baines Johnson, 1963–

*Decimal Classification*

► **974–979 Specific states of United States**

**974 \*Northeastern states**

- .01 Discovery and early settlement to 1620
- .02 Colonial period, 1620–1776
- .03 Revolution to Civil War, 1776–1865
- .04 Since Civil War, 1865–

**974.1–974.6 New England**

**.1 \*Maine**

- .101 Discovery and early settlement to 1620
- .102 Colonial period, 1620–1776
- .103 Postcolonial period and statehood, 1776–1865
- .104 Modern period, 1865–

**.2 \*New Hampshire**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., colonial period  
974.202

**.3 \*Vermont**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., early settlement  
974.301

**.4 \*Massachusetts**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., colonial period  
974.402

**.5 \*Rhode Island**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., modern period  
974.504

**.6 \*Connecticut**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., postcolonial period  
974.603

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

General history of North America

974.7-974.9 Middle Atlantic states

974.7

**\*New York**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101-974.104, e.g., New Amsterdam  
974.702

.8

**\*Pennsylvania**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101-974.104, e.g., modern period  
974.804

.9

**\*New Jersey**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101-974.104, e.g., colonial period  
974.902

975

**\*Southeastern states ( South Atlantic states )**

Add 0 and divide like 974.01-974.04, e.g., colonial period 975.02

.1

**\*Delaware**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101-974.104, e.g., colonial period  
975.102

.2

**\*Maryland**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101-974.104, e.g., postcolonial period  
975.203

.3

**\*District of Columbia ( Washington )**

.301

Early period to 1800

.302

Federal city, 1800-1865

.303

Postwar period and early 20th century, 1865-1933

.304

Metropolis and world capital, 1933-

.4

**\*West Virginia**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101-974.104, e.g., modern period  
975.404

.5

**\*Virginia**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101-974.104, e.g., colonial period  
975.502

\* Add as instructed under 930-990

## *Decimal Classification*

### **975.6      \*North Carolina**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., modern period  
975.604

### **.7            \*South Carolina**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., colonial period  
975.702

### **.8            \*Georgia**

Add 0 and divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., discovery and early  
settlement 975.801

### **.9            \*Florida**

.901            Early Spanish period, 1513–1763

.902            English period, 1763–1783

.903            Spanish period, 1783–1821

.904            Territorial period, 1821–1845

.905            Post-territorial period and statehood, 1845–1865

.906            Modern period, 1865–

### **976          \*South central states**

.01            Discovery and early exploration to 1700

.02            Foreign domination, 1700–1800

.03            Early 19th century, 1800–1865

.04            Since Civil War, 1865–

### **►                              976.1–976.4 Gulf states**

#### **.1            \*Alabama**

.101            Discovery and early exploration, 1539–1701

.102            French period, 1701–1763

.103            British period, 1763–1783

.104            Spanish and territorial periods, 1783–1817

.105            Territorial period and statehood, 1817–1865

.106            Modern period, 1865–

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

## *General history of North America*

### **976.2      \*Mississippi**

Add 0 and divide like 976.101-976.106, e.g., British period  
976.203

### **.3            \*Louisiana**

.301            Discovery and early exploration, 1528-1718

.302            French period, 1718-1763

.303            Spanish period, 1763-1803

.304            French and territorial periods, 1803-1812

.305            Early statehood, 1812-1865

.306            Modern period, 1865-

### **.4            \*Texas**

.401            Discovery and early exploration, 1519-1680

.402            Spanish and French periods, 1680-1821

.403            Mexican period, 1821-1836

.404            Republic, 1836-1846

.405            Early statehood, 1846-1865

.406            Modern period, 1865-

### **.6            \*Oklahoma**

.601            Discovery and early exploration, 1541-1682

.602            French and Spanish periods, 1682-1803

.603            Indian Territory, 1803-1866

.604            Territorial period and statehood, 1866-1907

.605            Modern period, 1907-

### **.7            \*Arkansas**

.701            Discovery and early exploration, 1541-1686

.702            French and Spanish periods, 1686-1803

.703            Preterritorial and territorial periods, 1803-1836

.704            Early statehood, 1836-1865

.705            Modern period, 1865-

\* Add as instructed under 930-990

## *Decimal Classification*

### **976.8      \*Tennessee**

- .801      Discovery and early exploration, 1541–1682
- .802      French, Spanish, English periods, 1682–1769
- .803      Early settlement and territorial period, 1769–1796  
            Including District of Washington, State of Franklin
- .804      Early statehood, 1796–1865
- .805      Modern period, 1865–

### **.9          \*Kentucky**

- .901      Discovery and early exploration, 1584–1736
- .902      French and territorial period, 1736–1792  
            Including Transylvania Colony
- .903      Early statehood, 1792–1865
- .904      Modern period, 1865–

### **977      \*North central states**

- .01      Discovery and early settlement to 1787
- .02      Early 19th century, 1787–1865
- .03      Since Civil War, 1865–

### **►                      977.1–977.6 Lake states**

#### **.1          \*Ohio**

- .101      Discovery and early settlement to 1763
- .102      British and early United States periods, 1763–1787
- .103      Territorial period and early statehood, 1787–1865
- .104      Modern period, 1865–

#### **.2          \*Indiana**

Add 0 and divide like 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period  
977.203

#### **.3          \*Illinois**

Add 0 and divide like 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period  
977.303

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

## *General history of North America*

---

### **977.4      \*Michigan**

Add 0 and divide like 977.101-977.104, e.g., modern period  
977.404

### **.5            \*Wisconsin**

Add 0 and divide like 977.101-97.104, e.g., territorial period  
977.503

### **.6            \*Minnesota**

.601            Discovery and early settlement to 1660

.602            French period, 1660-1783

.603            Preterritorial period, 1783-1849

.604            Territorial period and early statehood, 1849-1900

.605            Modern period, 1900-

### **.7            \*Iowa**

.701            Discovery and early settlement, 1673-1838

.702            Territorial period and early statehood, 1838-1900

.703            Modern period, 1900-

### **.8            \*Missouri**

.801            Discovery and early settlement, 1673-1750

.802            French and Spanish periods, 1750-1803

.803            Territorial period and early statehood, 1803-1900

.804            Modern period, 1900-

### **978        \*Western states**

.01            Early history to 1800

.02            19th century, 1800-1900

.03            20th century, 1900-

### **.1            \*Kansas**

.101            Discovery and early exploration, 1541-1803

.102            Territorial period, 1803-1861

.103            Statehood, 1861-

Add as instructed under 930-990



## *Decimal Classification*

### **978.2      \*Nebraska**

- .201      Discovery and early exploration, 1739-1854
- .202      Territorial period, 1854-1867
- .203      Statehood, 1867-

### **.3      \*South Dakota**

- .301      Discovery and early exploration, 1743-1861
- .302      Territorial period, 1861-1889
- .303      Statehood, 1889-

### **.4      \*North Dakota**

Add 0 and divide like 978.301-978.303, e.g., territorial period  
978.402

### **►                      978.6-978.9 Rocky Mountains states**

#### **.6      \*Montana**

- .601      Discovery and early exploration, 1803-1864
- .602      Territorial period, 1864-1899
- .603      Statehood, 1899-

#### **.7      \*Wyoming**

- .701      Discovery and early exploration, 1743-1868
- .702      Territorial period, 1868-1890
- .703      Statehood, 1890-

#### **.8      \*Colorado**

- .801      Discovery and early exploration, 1541-1803
- .802      Acquisition and territorial period, 1803-1876
- .803      Statehood, 1876-

#### **.9      \*New Mexico**

- .901      Discovery and early exploration, 1540-1598
- .902      Spanish period, 1598-1821
- .903      Mexican period, 1821-1848
- .904      Territorial period, 1848-1912
- .905      Statehood, 1912-

† Add as instructed under 930-990

*General history of North America*

**979      \*States of Great Basin and Pacific Slope**

Add 0 and divide like 978.01–978.03, e.g., 20th century 979.03

**.1      \*Arizona**

Add 0 and divide like 978.901–978.905, e.g., territorial period 979.104

**.2      \*Utah**

.201      Discovery and early exploration, 1776–1848

.202      Territorial period, 1848–1896

.203      Statehood, 1896–

**.3      \*Nevada**

.301      Discovery and early exploration, 1825–1861

.302      Territorial period and early statehood, 1861–1900

.303      Modern period, 1900–

**.4      \*California**

.401      Discovery and early exploration, 1542–1769

.402      Spanish period, 1769–1822

.403      Mexican period, 1822–1848

.404      Territorial period and early statehood, 1848–1900

.405      Modern period, 1900–

**.5      \*Oregon**

.501      Discovery and early exploration, 1543–1778

.502      Spanish and British periods, 1778–1819

.503      Preterritorial and territorial periods, 1819–1859

.504      Statehood, 1859–

**.6      \*Idaho**

.601      Discovery and early exploration, 1805–1863

.602      Territorial period, 1863–1890

.603      Statehood, 1890–

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

### *Decimal Classification*

**979.7      \*Washington**

- .701      Discovery and early exploration, 1592-1818
- .702      British and preterritorial periods, 1818-1853
- .703      Territorial period, 1853-1889
- .704      Statehood, 1889-

**.8      \*Alaska**

- .801      Discovery and early exploration, 1741-1799
- .802      Russian period, 1799-1867
- .803      Preterritorial period, 1867-1912
- .804      Territorial period, 1912-1959
- .805      Statehood, 1959-

\* Add as instructed under 930-990

*General history of South America*

**980 South America**

Use 980.001–980.009 for standard subdivisions and regions

Class Indians in 980.1

980.01–980.03 Historical periods

**.01 Early history to 1806**

Discovery, exploration, colonization

**.02 Wars of Independence, 1806–1830**

**.03 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1830–**

**.1 Indians of South America**

History and civilization

*For specific tribes, see 980.3; Indians in specific places, 980.4;  
government relations, 980.5*

**[.2] Biography of Indians**

Class biographies of persons associated with a specific subject in  
standard subdivision 092, of persons not so related in 920

**.3 Specific Indian tribes**

Including Incas [*formerly* 985.01]

Arrange alphabetically by names of tribes

*For government relations, see 980.5*

**.4 Indians in specific places**

Including pre-Hispanic Indians in Argentina [*formerly* 982.01], in  
Chile [*formerly* 983.01], in Bolivia [*formerly* 984.01], in Peru  
[*formerly* 985.01], in Colombia [*formerly* 986.101], in Panama  
[*formerly* 986.201], in Venezuela [*formerly* 987.01], in Paraguay  
[*formerly* 989.201], in Uruguay [*formerly* 989.501]

Divide like area notation 8, e.g., Indians in Brazil 980.41

*For specific tribes, see 980.3; government relations, 980.5*

**.5 Government relations with Indians**

History and policy

Class a specific subject of government relations [*formerly* 970.5]  
with the subject

**[.6] Specific subjects in relation to Indians**

Class with the subject

*Decimal Classification*

**981      \*Brazil**

- .01      Discovery and conquest to 1534
- .02      Hereditary captaincies, 1534–1549
- .03      Colonial period, 1549–1822
- .04      Empire, 1822–1889
  - For Paraguayan War, see 989.205*
- .05      First republic, 1889–1930
- .06      20th century, 1930–

**982      \*Argentina**

- [.01]      Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1516
  - Class in **980.4**
- .02      Discovery, conquest, colonization, 1516–1810
- .03      Revolutionary period and Wars of Independence, 1810–1829
- .04      Republic, 1829–1861
- .05      Constitutional period, 1861–1910
  - For Paraguayan War, see 989.205*
- .06      20th century, 1910–

**983      \*Chile**

- [.01]      Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1535
  - Class in **980.4**
- .02      Discovery and conquest, 1535–1560
- .03      Colonial period, 1560–1810
- .04      Republic, 1810–1830
- .05      Autocratic republic, 1830–1861
- .06      Later republics, 1861–
- .061      Liberal republic, 1861–1891
  - Including war with Spain, War of the Pacific, 1879–1883

\* Add as instructed under **930–990**

*General history of South America*

- 983.062 Revolution of 1891  
.063 Democratic republic, 1891–1924  
.064 Republic, 1924–
- 984 \*Bolivia**
- [.01] Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1532  
Class in **980.4**
- .02 Discovery and conquest, 1532–1559  
.03 Colonial period, 1559–1809  
.04 Republic, 1809–1899  
.041 War of Independence, 1809–1825  
.042 First republic, 1825–1831  
.044 Administration of Andrés Santa Cruz, 1831–1839  
Including confederation with Peru, 1835–1836
- .045 Period of boundary wars, 1839–1883  
*For War of the Pacific, see 983.061*
- .046 Conservative republic, 1883–1899  
.05 20th century, 1899–

**985 \*Peru**

- [.01] Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1519  
Class Incas in **980.3**, comprehensive works on pre-Hispanic  
Indians in Peru in **980.4**
- .02 Discovery and conquest, 1519–1555  
.03 Colonial period, 1555–1808  
.04 Independence, 1808–1824  
.05 Rise of military power, 1824–1867  
Including confederation with Bolivia, 1835–1836
- .06 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1867–  
.061 1867–1883  
*For War of the Pacific, see 983.061*

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

*Decimal Classification*

985.062            Reconstruction, 1883–1895

.063            20th century, 1895–

**986        \*Northwestern South America and Panama**

**.1        \*Colombia**

.101            Discovery and conquest to 1550

Class pre-Hispanic Indians [*formerly 986.101*] in 980.4

.102            Colonial period, 1550–1810

.103            Independence, 1810–1819

.104            Republic of Colombia, 1819–1830

.105            New Granada, 1831–1863

.106            Later republics, 1863–

.106 1           United States of Colombia, 1863–1886

.106 2           Republic of Colombia, 1886–1930

.106 3           Later 20th century, 1930–

**.2        \*Panama**

.201            Discovery and conquest to 1550

Class pre-Hispanic Indians [*formerly 986.201*] in 980.4

.202            Colonial period, 1550–1821

.203            19th century, 1821–1903

.204            Independence, 1903–1904

.205            Republic, 1904–

**.6        \*Ecuador**

.601            Discovery and conquest to 1561

.602            Colonial period, 1562–1809

.603            Independence, 1810–1822

.604            Quito Presidency as part of Greater Colombia,  
1822–1830

.605            Republic, 1830–1859

.606            Restoration, 1860–1895

.607            20th century, 1896–

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

**987      \*Venezuela**

- [.01]      Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1498  
            Class in 980.4
- .02      Discovery and conquest, 1498–1528
- .03      Colonial period, 1528–1806
- .04      Independence, 1806–1819
- .05      Venezuela as part of Greater Colombia, 1819–1830
- .06      Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1830–
- .061      Republic, 1830–1864
- .062      Federal period, 1864–1900
- .063      20th century, 1900–

**988      \*Guiana**

- .01      Early history to 1815
- .02      1815–1945
- .03      Later 20th century, 1945–

**989      Other parts of South America**

**.2      \*Paraguay**

- [.201]      Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1524  
            Class in 980.4
- .202      Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1524–1537
- .203      Colonial period, 1537–1811
- .204      Independence, 1811–1814
- .205      Dictatorship, 1814–1870  
            Including Paraguayan War, 1865–1870
- .206      Republic, 1870–1902
- .207      20th century, 1902–

\* Add as instructed under 930–990



## *Decimal Classification*

### **989.5      \*Uruguay**

[.501]      Pre-Hispanic Indians to 1516

Class in 980.4

.502      Discovery and conquest, 1516–1724

.503      Colonial period, 1724–1811

.504      Independence, 1811–1825

.505      Republic and national state, 1825–1886

.505 5      National state, 1830–1886

*For Paraguayan War, see 989.205*

.506      Late 19th and 20th centuries, 1886–

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

## 990 Other parts of world

Use 990.01–990.09 for standard subdivisions and regions

### 991–996 Pacific Ocean islands (Oceania)

#### ► 991–995 Southwest Pacific

## 991 Malay Archipelago

Use 991.000 1 – 991.000 9 for standard subdivisions and regions

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions and regions of Indonesia

#### ► 991.01–991.03 Historical periods of Indonesia

.01 Early history to 1602

.012 Hindu-Buddhist era to 1478

.015 Moslem rule, 1478–1602

.02 Dutch period, 1602–1945

.021 East India Company, 1602–1798

.022 Netherlands East Indies, 1798–1945

Including Java War, 1825–1830

.03 Republic, 1945–

.15 \*North Borneo

Add 0 and divide like 959.503–959.505, e.g., middle 20th century 991.150 4

.4 \*Philippine Islands

.401 Discovery and early history to 1564

.402 Spanish period, 1564–1898

.402 7 Insurrection, 1896–1898

.403 United States period, 1898–1946

.403 1 Insurrection, 1898–1901

.403 2 United States rule, 1901–1935

.403 5 Commonwealth, 1935–1946

.404 Republic, 1946–

\* Add as instructed under 930–990

## *Decimal Classification*

### **992    \*Sunda Islands**

Add 0 and divide like 991.01–991.03, e.g., Republic 992.03

### **993    \*New Zealand and Melanesia**

#### **.1        \*New Zealand**

.101        Early history to 1840  
              Including Maori period

.102        Colonial period, 1840–1907

.103        Dominion status, 1907–

### **994    \*Australia**

.01        Early history to 1788

.02        Settlement and early growth, 1788–1851

.03        Colonial administration, 1851–1901

.04        Commonwealth, 1901–1945

.05        Later 20th century, 1945–

### **995    \*New Guinea (Papua)**

### **996    Other parts of Pacific**

#### **.9        North central Pacific**

Use 996.900 01 – 996.900 09 for standard subdivisions and regions

.900 1–.900 9        Standard subdivisions and regions of Hawaii

#### **►        996.902–996.904 Historical periods of Hawaii**

.902        Native rule and republic to 1898

.902 8        Revolution and republic, 1893–1898

.903        Annexation by United States and territorial period,  
              1898–1959

.904        Statehood, 1959–

### **997    \*Atlantic Ocean islands**

### **998    \*Arctic islands**

### **999    \*Antarctica**

\* Add as instructed under 930–990





